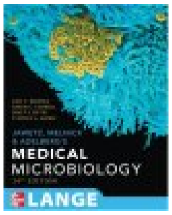


Lange Medical Microbiology, 24th Edition:

Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg

McGraw-Hill Medical 2007 (832 pages)
ISBN / ASIN: 0071476660

The landmark clinical guide to the role microorganisms play in human health and illnesses -extensively revised and updated

Table of Contents

I Fundamentals of Microbiology

II Immunology

III Bacteriology

IV Virology

V Mycology

VI Parasitology

VII Diagnostic Medical Microbiology & Clinical Correlation

Copyright Information

Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology, Twenty-Fourth Edition

ISBN-13: 978-0-07147666-9
ISBN-10: 0-07-147666-0
ISSN: 1054-2744

Notice

Medicine is an ever-changing science. As new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment and drug therapy are required. The authors and the publisher of this work have checked with sources believed to be reliable in their efforts to provide information that is complete and generally in accord with the standards accepted at the time of publication. However, in view of the possibility of human error or changes in medical sciences, neither the authors nor the publisher nor any other party who has been involved in the preparation or publication of this work warrants that the information contained herein is in every respect accurate or complete, and they disclaim all responsibility for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from use of the information contained in this work. Readers are encouraged to confirm the information contained herein with other sources. For example and in particular, readers are advised to check the product information sheet included in the package of each drug they plan to administer to be certain that the information contained in this work is accurate and that changes have not been made in the recommended dose or in the contraindications for administration. This recommendation is of particular importance in connection with new or infrequently used drugs.

INTERNATIONAL EDITION ISBN-13: 978-0-07-128735-7, ISBN-10: 0-07-128735-3

Editors

Geo. F. Brooks, MD
Professor of Laboratory Medicine
and Microbiology and Immunology
Chief, Microbiology Section
Clinical Laboratories
University of California
San Francisco

Karen C. Carroll, MD
Professor of Pathology
The Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine
Director, Division Medical Microbiology
The Johns Hopkins Hospital
Baltimore

Janet S. Butel, PhD
Distinguished Service Professor
Chair, Department of Molecular Virology and Microbiology
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston

Stephen A. Morse, PhD
Associate Director for Science
Bioterrorism Preparedness and Response Program
National Center for Infectious Diseases
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta

Preface

The goals for the twenty-fourth edition of *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology* have remained the same as those of the first edition published in September, 1954: "...to provide a brief, accurate, and up-to-date presentation of those aspects of medical microbiology that are of particular significance in the fields of clinical infections and chemotherapy." The current edition reflects the remarkable advances that have been made since that time in our knowledge of microbes and the molecular mechanisms of microbial disease as well as in the development of modern laboratory and diagnostic technologies. The DNA sequences of many pathogenic microorganisms of humans are known. In this edition, and in future editions, there will be meaningful changes based on the understanding developed from the study of the sequences and the molecular mechanisms of disease. The twenty-fourth edition includes several completely revised chapters and an extensive upgrade to the current status of knowledge.

Karen C. Carroll, MD, Professor of Pathology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, has been added as an author of chapters previously authored by Dr. Brooks. Her background is internal medicine and infectious diseases as well as clinical microbiology. We think that her expertise will add significantly to the current and future editions and we welcome her participation.

Geo. F. Brooks
San Francisco
March 2007

Janet S. Butel
Houston

Stephen A. Morse
Atlanta

THE SCIENCE OF MICROBIOLOGY: INTRODUCTION

Microbiology is the study of microorganisms, a large and diverse group of microscopic organisms that exist as single cells or cell clusters; it also includes viruses, which are microscopic but not cellular. Microorganisms have a tremendous impact on all life and the physical and chemical make-up of our planet. They are responsible for cycling the chemical elements essential for life, including carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, hydrogen, and oxygen; more photosynthesis is carried out by microorganisms than by green plants. It has been estimated that 5×10^{30} microbial cells exist on earth; excluding cellulose, these cells constitute about 90% of the biomass of the entire biosphere. Humans also have an intimate relationship with microorganisms; more than 90% of the cells in our bodies are microbes.

BIOLOGIC PRINCIPLES ILLUSTRATED BY MICROBIOLOGY

Nowhere is biologic diversity demonstrated more dramatically than by microorganisms, creatures that are not directly visible to the unaided eye. In form and function, be it biochemical property or genetic mechanism, analysis of microorganisms takes us to the limits of biologic understanding. Thus, the need for originality—one test of the merit of a scientific hypothesis—can be fully met in microbiology. A useful hypothesis should provide a basis for generalization, and microbial diversity provides an arena in which this challenge is ever-present.

Prediction, the practical outgrowth of science, is a product created by a blend of technique and theory. Biochemistry, molecular biology, and genetics provide the tools required for analysis of microorganisms. Microbiology, in turn, extends the horizons of these scientific disciplines. A biologist might describe such an exchange as mutualism, ie, one that benefits all of the contributing parties. Lichens are an example of microbial mutualism. Lichens consist of a fungus and phototropic partner, either an alga (a eukaryote) or a cyanobacterium (a prokaryote). The phototropic component is the primary producer, whereas the fungus provides the phototroph with an anchor and protection from the elements. In biology, mutualism is called symbiosis, a continuing association of different organisms. If the exchange operates primarily to the benefit of one party, the association is described as parasitism, a relationship in which a host provides the primary benefit to the parasite. Isolation and characterization of a parasite—eg, a pathogenic bacterium or virus—often require effective mimicry in the laboratory of the growth environment provided by host cells. This demand sometimes represents a major challenge to the investigator.

The terms "mutualism," "symbiosis," and "parasitism" relate to the science of ecology, and the principles of environmental biology are implicit in microbiology. Microorganisms are the products of evolution, the biologic consequence of natural selection operating upon a vast array of genetically diverse organisms. It is useful to keep the complexity of natural history in mind before generalizing about microorganisms, the most heterogeneous subset of all living creatures.

A major biologic division separates the eukaryotes, organisms containing a membrane-bound nucleus, from prokaryotes, organisms in which DNA is not physically separated from the cytoplasm. As described below and in Chapter 2, further major distinctions can be made between eukaryotes and prokaryotes. Eukaryotes, for example, are distinguished by their relatively large size and by the presence of specialized membrane-bound organelles such as mitochondria.

As described more fully below, eukaryotic microorganisms—or, phylogenetically speaking, the Eukarya—are unified by their distinct cell structure and phylogenetic history. Among the groups of eukaryotic microorganisms are the algae, the protozoa, the fungi, and the slime molds.

The unique properties of viruses set them apart from living creatures. Eukaryotes and prokaryotes are organisms because they contain all of the enzymes required for their replication and possess the biologic equipment necessary for the production of metabolic energy. Thus, eukaryotes and prokaryotes stand distinguished from viruses, which depend upon host cells for these necessary functions.

VIRUSES

Viruses lack many of the attributes of cells, including the ability to replicate. Only when it infects a cell does a virus acquire the key attribute of a living system: reproduction. Viruses are known to infect all cells, including microbial cells. Host-virus interactions tend to be highly specific, and the biologic range of viruses mirrors the diversity of potential host cells. Further diversity of viruses is exhibited by their broad array of strategies for replication and survival.

A viral particle consists of a nucleic acid molecule, either DNA or RNA, enclosed in a protein coat, or capsid (sometimes itself enclosed by an envelope of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates). Proteins—frequently glycoproteins—in the capsid determine the specificity of interaction of a virus with its host cell. The capsid protects the nucleic acid and facilitates attachment and penetration of the host cell by the virus. Inside the cell, viral nucleic acid redirects the host's enzymatic machinery to functions associated with replication of the virus. In some cases, genetic information from the virus can be incorporated as DNA into a host chromosome. In other instances, the viral genetic information can serve as a basis for cellular manufacture and release of copies of the virus. This process calls for replication of the viral nucleic acid and production of specific viral proteins. Maturation consists of assembling newly synthesized nucleic acid and protein subunits into mature viral particles which are then liberated into the extracellular environment. Some very small viruses require the assistance of another virus in the host cell for their duplication. The delta agent, also known as hepatitis D virus, is too small to code for even a single capsid protein and needs help from hepatitis B virus for transmission. Viruses are known to infect a wide variety of plant and animal hosts as well as protists, fungi, and bacteria. However, most viruses are able to infect specific types of cells of only one host species.

A number of transmissible plant diseases are caused by viroids—small, single-stranded, covalently closed circular RNA molecules existing as highly base-paired rod-like structures; they do not possess capsids. They range in size from 246 to 375 nucleotides in length. The extracellular form of the viroid is naked RNA—there is no capsid of any kind. The RNA molecule contains no protein-encoding genes, and the viroid is therefore totally dependent on host functions for its replication. Viroid RNA is replicated by the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase of the plant host; preemption of this enzyme may contribute to viroid pathogenicity.

The RNAs of viroids have been shown to contain inverted repeated base sequences at their 3' and 5' ends, a characteristic of transposable elements (see Chapter 7) and retroviruses. Thus, it is likely that they have evolved from transposable elements or retroviruses by the deletion of internal sequences.

The general properties of animal viruses pathogenic for humans are described in Chapter 29. Bacterial viruses are described in Chapter 7.

PRIONS

A number of remarkable discoveries in the past 3 decades have led to the molecular and genetic characterization of the transmissible agent causing *scrapie*, a degenerative central nervous system disease of sheep. Studies have identified a scrapie-specific protein in preparations from scrapie-infected brains of sheep which is capable of reproducing the symptoms of scrapie in previously uninfected sheep. Attempts to identify additional components, such as nucleic acid, have been unsuccessful. To distinguish this agent from viruses and viroids, the term *prion* was introduced to emphasize its proteinaceous and infectious nature. The cellular form of the prion protein (PrP^c) is encoded by the host's chromosomal DNA. PrP^c is a sialoglycoprotein with a molecular weight of 33,000–35,000 and a high content of α-helical secondary structure that is sensitive to proteases and soluble in detergent. PrP^c is expressed on the surface of neurons via a glycosylphosphatidyl inositol anchor in both infected and uninfected brains. An abnormal isoform of this protein (PrP^{res}) is the only known component of the prion and is associated with transmissibility. It has the same amino acid sequence as PrP^c, but differs physically from the normal cellular isoform by its high beta-sheet content, its insolubility in detergents, its propensity to aggregate, and its partial resistance to proteolysis. It is believed that PrP^{res} induces PrP^c to fold or refold into the prion form.

There are additional prion diseases of importance. Kuru, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker disease, and fatal familial insomnia affect humans. Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), which is thought to result from the ingestion of feeds and bone meal prepared from rendered sheep offal, has been responsible for the deaths of more than 170,000 cattle in Great Britain since its discovery in 1985. A new variant of CJD has been associated with human exposure to BSE in the UK and France. A common feature of all of these diseases is the conversion of a host-encoded sialoglycoprotein to a protease-resistant form as a consequence of infection.

Human prion diseases are unique in that they manifest as sporadic, genetic, and infectious diseases. The study of prion biology is an important emerging area of biomedical investigation, and much remains to be learned.

PROKARYOTES

The primary distinguishing characteristics of the prokaryotes are their relatively small size, usually on the order of 1 μm in diameter, and the absence of a nuclear membrane. The DNA of almost all bacteria is a circle with a length of about 1 mm; this is the prokaryotic chromosome. Most prokaryotes have only a single chromosome. The chromosomal DNA must be folded more than a thousandfold just to fit within the prokaryotic cell membrane. Substantial evidence suggests that the folding may be orderly and may bring specified regions of the DNA into proximity. The specialized region of the cell containing DNA is termed the *nucleoid* and can be visualized by electron microscopy as well as by light microscopy after treatment of the cell to make the nucleoid visible. Thus, it would be a mistake to conclude that subcellular differentiation, clearly demarcated by membranes in eukaryotes, is lacking in prokaryotes. Indeed, some prokaryotes form membrane-bound subcellular structures with specialized function such as the chromatophores of photosynthetic bacteria (see Chapter 2).

Prokaryotic Diversity

The small size of the prokaryotic chromosome limits the amount of genetic information it can contain. Recent data based on genome sequencing indicate that the number of genes within a prokaryote may vary from 468 in *Mycoplasma genitalium* to 7825 in *Streptomyces coelicolor*, and many of these genes must be dedicated to essential functions such as energy generation, macromolecular synthesis, and cellular replication. Any one prokaryote carries relatively few genes that allow physiologic accommodation of the organism to its environment. The range of potential prokaryotic environments is unimaginably broad, and it follows that the prokaryotic group encompasses a heterogeneous range of specialists, each adapted to a rather narrowly circumscribed niche.

The range of prokaryotic niches is illustrated by consideration of strategies used for generation of metabolic energy. Light from the sun is the chief source of energy for life. Some prokaryotes such as the purple bacteria convert light energy to metabolic energy in the absence of oxygen production. Other prokaryotes, exemplified by the blue-green bacteria (cyanobacteria), produce oxygen that can provide energy through respiration in the absence of light. Aerobic organisms depend upon respiration with oxygen for their energy. Some anaerobic organisms can use electron acceptors other than oxygen in respiration. Many anaerobes carry out fermentations in which energy is derived by metabolic rearrangement of chemical growth substrates. The tremendous chemical range of potential growth substrates for aerobic or anaerobic growth is mirrored in the diversity of prokaryotes that have adapted to their utilization.

Prokaryotic Communities

A useful survival strategy for specialists is to enter into consortia, arrangements in which the physiologic characteristics of different organisms contribute to survival of the group as a whole. If the organisms within a physically interconnected community are directly derived from a single cell, the community is a clone that may contain up to 10^8 cells. The biology of such a community differs substantially from that of a single cell. For example, the high cell number virtually assures the presence within the clone of at least one cell carrying a variant of any gene on the chromosome. Thus, genetic variability—the wellspring of the evolutionary process called natural selection—is assured within a clone. The high number of cells within clones also is likely to provide physiologic protection to at least some members of the group. Extracellular polysaccharides, for example, may afford protection against potentially lethal agents such as antibiotics or heavy metal ions. Large amounts of polysaccharides produced by the high number of cells within a clone may allow cells within the interior to survive exposure to a lethal agent at a concentration that might kill single cells.

Many bacteria exploit a cell-cell communication mechanism called quorum sensing to regulate the transcription of genes involved in diverse physiologic processes, including bioluminescence, plasmid conjugal transfer, and the production of virulence determinants. Quorum sensing depends on the production of one or more diffusible signal molecules termed, autoinducers or pheromones, which enable a bacterium to monitor its own cell population density. It is an example of multicellular behavior in prokaryotes.

A distinguishing characteristic of prokaryotes is their capacity to exchange small packets of genetic information. This information may be carried on plasmids, small and specialized genetic elements that are capable of replication within at least one prokaryotic cell line. In some cases, plasmids may be transferred from one cell to another and thus may carry sets of specialized genetic information through a population. Some plasmids exhibit a broad host range that allows them to convey sets of genes to diverse organisms. Of particular concern are drug resistance plasmids that may render diverse bacteria resistant to antibiotic treatment.

The survival strategy of a single prokaryotic cell line may lead to a range of interactions with other organisms. These may include symbiotic relationships illustrated by complex nutritional exchanges among organisms within the human gut. These exchanges benefit both the microorganisms and their human host. Parasitic interactions can be quite deleterious to the host. Advanced symbiosis or parasitism can lead to loss of functions that may not allow growth of the symbiont or parasite independent of its host.

The mycoplasmas, for example, are parasitic prokaryotes that have lost the ability to form a cell wall. Adaptation of these organisms to their parasitic environment has resulted in incorporation of a substantial quantity of cholesterol into their cell membranes. Cholesterol, not found in other prokaryotes, is assimilated from the metabolic environment provided by the host. Loss of function is exemplified also by obligate intracellular parasites, the chlamydiae and rickettsiae. These bacteria are extremely small (0.2–0.5 µm in diameter) and depend upon the host cell for many essential metabolites and coenzymes. This loss of function is reflected by the presence of a smaller genome with fewer genes (see Table 7–1).

The most widely distributed examples of bacterial symbionts appear to be chloroplasts and mitochondria, the energy-yielding organelles of eukaryotes. A substantial body of evidence points to the conclusion that ancestors of these organelles were endosymbionts, prokaryotes that established symbiosis within the cell membrane of the ancestral eukaryotic host. The presence of multiple copies of the organelles may have contributed to the relatively large size of eukaryotic cells and to their capacity for specialization, a trait ultimately reflected in the evolution of differentiated multicellular organisms.

Classification of the Prokaryotes

An understanding of any group of organisms requires their classification. An appropriate classification system allows a scientist to choose characteristics that allow swift and accurate categorization of a newly encountered organism. The categorization allows prediction of many additional traits shared by other members of the category. In a hospital setting, successful classification of a pathogenic organism may provide the most direct route to its elimination. Classification may also provide a broad understanding of relationships among different organisms, and such information may have great practical value. For example, elimination of a pathogenic organism will be relatively long-lasting if its habitat is occupied by a nonpathogenic variant.

The principles of prokaryotic classification are discussed in Chapter 3. At the outset it should be recognized that any prokaryotic characteristic might serve as a potential criterion for classification. However, not all criteria are equally effective in grouping organisms. Possession of DNA, for example, is a useless criterion for distinguishing organisms because all cells contain DNA. The presence of a broad host range plasmid is not a useful criterion because such plasmids may be found in diverse hosts and need not be present all of the time. Useful criteria may be structural, physiologic, biochemical, or genetic. Spores—specialized cell structures that may allow survival in extreme environments—are useful structural criteria for classification because well-characterized subsets of bacteria form spores. Some bacterial groups can be effectively subdivided on the basis of their ability to ferment specified carbohydrates. Such criteria may be ineffective when applied to other bacterial groups that may lack any fermentative capability. A biochemical test, the Gram stain, is an effective criterion for classification because response to the stain reflects fundamental and complex differences in the bacterial cell surface that divide most bacteria into two major groups.

Genetic criteria are increasingly employed in bacterial classification, and many of these advances are made possible by the development of recombinant DNA technology. It is now possible to design DNA probes that swiftly identify organisms carrying specified genetic regions with common ancestry. Comparison of DNA sequences for some genes led to the elucidation of phylogenetic relationships among prokaryotes. Ancestral cell lines can be traced, and organisms can be grouped on the basis of their evolutionary affinities. These investigations have led to some striking conclusions. For example, comparison of cytochrome c sequences suggests that all eukaryotes, including humans, arose from one of three different groups of purple photosynthetic bacteria. This conclusion in part explains the evolutionary origin of eukaryotes, but it does not fully take into account the generally accepted view that the eukaryotic cell was derived from the evolutionary merger of different prokaryotic cell lines.

Bacteria & Archaebacteria: The Major Subdivisions Within the Prokaryotes

A major success in molecular phylogeny has been the demonstration that prokaryotes fall into two major groups. Most investigations have been directed to one group, the bacteria. The other group, the archaebacteria, has received relatively little attention until recently, in part because many of its representatives are difficult to study in the laboratory. Some archaebacteria, for example, are killed by contact with oxygen, and others grow at temperatures exceeding that of boiling water. Before molecular evidence became available, the major subgroupings of archaebacteria seemed disparate. The methanogens carry out an anaerobic respiration that gives rise to methane; the halophiles demand extremely high salt concentrations for growth; and the thermoacidophiles require high temperature and acidity. It has now been established that these prokaryotes share biochemical traits such as cell wall or membrane components that set the group entirely apart from all other living organisms. An intriguing trait shared by archaebacteria and eukaryotes is the presence of introns within genes. The function of introns—segments of DNA that interrupt informational DNA within genes—is not established. What is known is that introns represent a fundamental characteristic shared by the DNA of archaebacteria and eukaryotes. This common trait has led to the suggestion that—just as mitochondria and chloroplasts appear to be evolutionary derivatives of the bacteria—the eukaryotic nucleus may have arisen from an archaebacterial ancestor.

PROTISTS

The "true nucleus" of eukaryotes (from Gr *karyon* "nucleus") is only one of their distinguishing features. The membrane-bound organelles, the microtubules, and the microfilaments of eukaryotes form a complex intracellular structure unlike that found in prokaryotes. The agents of motility for eukaryotic cells are flagella or cilia—complex multistranded structures that do not resemble the flagella of prokaryotes. Gene expression in eukaryotes takes place through a series of events achieving physiologic integration of the nucleus with the endoplasmic reticulum, a structure that has no counterpart in prokaryotes. Eukaryotes are set apart by the organization of their cellular DNA in chromosomes separated by a distinctive mitotic apparatus during cell division.

In general, genetic transfer among eukaryotes depends upon fusion of haploid gametes to form a diploid cell containing a full set of genes derived from each gamete. The life cycle of many eukaryotes is almost entirely in the diploid state, a form not encountered in prokaryotes. Fusion of gametes to form reproductive progeny is a highly specific event and establishes the basis for eukaryotic species. This term can be applied only metaphorically to the prokaryotes, which exchange fragments of DNA through recombination. Taxonomic groupings of eukaryotes frequently are based on shared morphologic properties, and it is noteworthy that many taxonomically useful determinants are those associated with reproduction. Almost all successful eukaryotic species are those in which closely related cells, members of the same species, can recombine to form viable offspring. Structures that contribute directly or indirectly to the reproductive event tend to be highly developed and—with minor modifications among closely related species—extensively conserved.

Microbial eukaryotes—protists—are members of the four following major groups: algae, protozoa, fungi, and slime molds. It should be noted that these groupings are not necessarily phylogenetic: Closely related organisms may have been categorized separately because underlying biochemical and genetic similarities may not have been recognized.

Algae

The term "algae" has long been used to denote all organisms that produce O_2 as a product of photosynthesis. One major subgroup of these organisms—the blue-green bacteria, or cyanobacteria—are prokaryotic and no longer are termed algae. This classification is reserved exclusively for photosynthetic eukaryotic organisms. All algae contain chlorophyll in the photosynthetic membrane of their subcellular chloroplast. Many algal species are unicellular microorganisms. Other algae may form extremely large multicellular structures. Kelps of brown algae sometimes are several hundred meters in length.

Protozoa

Protozoa are unicellular nonphotosynthetic protists. The most primitive protozoa appear to be flagellated forms that in many respects resemble representatives of the algae. It seems likely that the ancestors of these protozoa were algae that became heterotrophs—the nutritional requirements of such organisms are met by organic compounds. Adaptation to a heterotrophic mode of life was sometimes accompanied by loss of chloroplasts, and algae thus gave rise to the closely related protozoa. Similar events have been observed in the laboratory to be the result of either mutation or physiologic adaptation.

From flagellated protozoa appear to have evolved the ameboid and the ciliated types; intermediate forms are known that have flagella at one stage in the life cycle and pseudopodia (characteristic of the ameba) at another stage. A fourth major group of protozoa, the sporozoa, are strict parasites that are usually immobile; most of which reproduce sexually and asexually in alternate generations by means of spores.

Fungi

The fungi are nonphotosynthetic protists growing as a mass of branching, interlacing filaments ("hyphae") known as a mycelium. Although the hyphae exhibit cross-walls, the cross-walls are perforated and allow free passage of nuclei and cytoplasm. The entire organism is thus a coenocyte (a multinucleated mass of continuous cytoplasm) confined within a series of branching tubes. These tubes, made of polysaccharides such as chitin, are homologous with cell walls. The mycelial forms are called molds; a few types, yeasts, do not form a mycelium but are easily recognized as fungi by the nature of their sexual reproductive processes and by the presence of transitional forms.

The fungi probably represent an evolutionary offshoot of the protozoa; they are unrelated to the actinomycetes, mycelial bacteria that they superficially resemble. The major subdivisions (phyla) of fungi are: Chytridiomycota, Zygomycota (the zygomycetes), Ascomycota (the ascomycetes), Basidiomycota (the basidiomycetes), and the "deuteromycetes" (or imperfect fungi).

The evolution of the ascomycetes from the phycomycetes is seen in a transitional group, members of which form a zygote but then transform this directly into an ascus. The basidiomycetes are believed to have evolved in turn from the ascomycetes. The classification of fungi is discussed further in Chapter 45.

Slime Molds

These organisms are characterized by the presence, as a stage in their life cycle, of an ameboid multinucleate mass of cytoplasm called a plasmodium. The plasmodium of a slime mold is analogous to the mycelium of a true fungus. Both are coenocytic. In the latter, cytoplasmic flow is confined to the branching network of chitinous tubes, whereas in the former the cytoplasm can flow in all directions. This flow causes the plasmodium to migrate in the direction of its food source, frequently bacteria. In response to a chemical signal, 3',5'-cyclic AMP (see Chapter 7), the plasmodium, which reaches macroscopic size, differentiates into a stalked body that can produce individual motile cells. These cells, flagellated or ameboid, initiate a new round in the life cycle of the slime mold. The cycle frequently is initiated by sexual fusion of single cells.

The life cycle of the slime molds illustrates a central theme of this chapter: the interdependency of living forms. The growth of slime molds depends upon nutrients provided by bacterial or, in some cases, plant cells. Reproduction of the slime molds via plasmodia can depend upon intercellular recognition and fusion of cells from the same species. Full understanding of a microorganism requires both knowledge of the other organisms with which it coevolved and an appreciation of the range of physiologic responses that may contribute to survival.

REFERENCES

Books

Lederberg J (editor): *Encyclopedia of Microbiology,* 4 vols. Academic Press, 1992.

Pelczar MJ Jr, Chan ECS, Krieg NR: *Microbiology: Concepts and Applications.* McGraw-Hill, 1993.

Reisser W (editor): *Algae and Symbiosis: Plants, Animals, Fungi, Viruses, Interactions Explored.* Biopress, 1992.

Sleigh MA: *Protozoa and Other Protists.* Chapman & Hall, 1990.

Articles & Reviews

Belay ED: Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies in humans. Annu Rev Microbiol 1999;53:283. [PMID: 10547693]

Diener TO: Viroids and the nature of viroid diseases. Arch Virol 1999;15(Suppl):203.

Olsen GJ, Woese CR: The winds of (evolutionary) change: Breathing new life into microbiology. J Bacteriol 1994;176:1. [PMID: 8282683]

Prusiner SB: Biology and genetics of prion diseases. Annu Rev Microbiol 1994;48:655.

Schloss PD, Handlesman J: Status of the microbial census. Microbiol Molec Biol Rev 2004;68:686.Whitman WB, Coleman DC, Wiebe WJ: Prokaryotes: The unseen majority. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1998;95:6578. [PMID: 7826022]

INTRODUCTION

In this chapter we discuss the basic structure and function of the components that make up eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells. The chapter begins with a discussion of the microscope. Historically, it was the microscope that first revealed the presence of bacteria and later, the secrets of cell structure. Today, it remains a powerful tool in cell biology.

OPTICAL METHODS

The Light Microscope

The resolving power of the light microscope under ideal conditions is about half the wavelength of the light being used. (Resolving power is the distance that must separate two point sources of light if they are to be seen as two distinct images.) With yellow light of a wavelength of 0.4 μm, the smallest separable diameters are thus about 0.2 μm, ie, one-third the width of a typical prokaryotic cell. The useful magnification of a microscope is the magnification that makes visible the smallest resolvable particles. Several types of light microscopes are commonly used in microbiology:

Bright-Field Microscope

The bright-field microscope is most commonly used in microbiology courses and consists of two series of lenses (objective and ocular lens), which function together to resolve the image. These microscopes generally employ a 100-power objective lens with a 10-power ocular lens, thus magnifying the specimen 1000 times. Particles 0.2 μm in diameter are therefore magnified to about 0.2 mm and so become clearly visible. Further magnification would give no greater resolution of detail and would reduce the visible area (field) .

With this microscope, specimens are rendered visible because of the differences in contrast between them and the surrounding medium. Many bacteria are difficult to see well because of their lack of contrast with the surrounding medium. Dyes (stains) can be used to stain cells or their organelles and increase their contrast so that they can be more easily seen in the bright-field microscope.

Phase Contrast Microscope

The phase contrast microscope was developed to improve contrast differences between cells and the surrounding medium, making it possible to see living cells without staining them; with bright-field microscopes, killed and stained preparations must be used. The phase contrast microscope takes advantage of the fact that light waves passing through transparent objects, such as cells, emerge in different phases depending on the properties of the materials through which they pass. This effect is amplified by a special ring in the objective lens of a phase contrast microscope, leading to the formation of a dark image on a light background.

Dark-Field Microscope

The dark-field microscope is a light microscope in which the lighting system has been modified to reach the specimen from the sides only. This is accomplished through the use of a special condenser that both blocks direct light rays and deflects light off a mirror on the side of the condenser at an oblique angle. This creates a "dark field" that contrasts against the highlighted edge of the specimens and results when the oblique rays are reflected from the edge of the specimen upward into the objective of the microscope. Resolution by dark-field microscopy is quite high. Thus, this technique has been particularly useful for observing organisms such as *Treponema pallidum* , a spirochete which is less than 0.2 μm in diameter and therefore cannot be observed with a bright-field or phase contrast microscope (Figure 21).

Figure 21.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Positive darkfield examination. Treponemes are recognized by their characteristic corkscrew shape and deliberate forward and backward movement with rotation about the longitudinal axis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Morse SA, Moreland AA, Thompson SE [editors]: *Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Disease.* Gower, 1990.)

Fluorescence Microscope

The fluorescence microscope is used to visualize specimens that fluoresce, which is the ability to absorb short wavelengths of light (ultraviolet) and give off light at a longer wavelength (visible). Some organisms fluoresce naturally because of the presence within the cells of naturally fluorescent substances such as chlorophyll. Those that do not naturally fluoresce may be stained with a group of fluorescent dyes called fluorochromes. Fluorescense microscopy is widely used in clinical diagnostic microbiology. For example, the fluorochrome auramine O, which glows yellow when exposed to ultraviolet light, is strongly absorbed by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* , the bacterium that causes tuberculosis. When the dye is applied to a specimen suspected of containing *M tuberculosis* and exposed to ultraviolet light, the bacterium can be detected by the appearance of bright yellow organisms against a dark background.

The principal use of fluorescence microscopy is a diagnostic technique called the fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique or immunofluorescence. In this technique, specific antibodies (eg, antibodies to *Legionella pneumophila*) are chemically labeled with a fluorochrome such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC). These fluorescent antibodies are then added to a microscope slide containing a clinical specimen. If the specimen contains *L pneumophila* , the fluorescent antibodies will bind to antigens on the surface of the bacterium, causing it to fluoresce when exposed to ultraviolet light.

Differential Interference Contrast (DIC) Microscope

Differential interference contrast microscopes employ a polarizer to produce polarized light. The polarized light beam passes through a prism that generates two distinct beams; these beams pass through the specimen and enter the objective lens where they are recombined into a single beam. Because of slight differences in refractive index of the substances each beam passed through, the combined beams are not totally in phase but instead create an interference effect, which intensifies subtle differences in cell structure. Structures such as spores, vacuoles, and granules appear three dimensional. DIC microscopy is particularly useful for observing unstained cells because of its ability to generate images that reveal internal cell structures that are less apparent by bright-field techniques.

The Electron Microscope

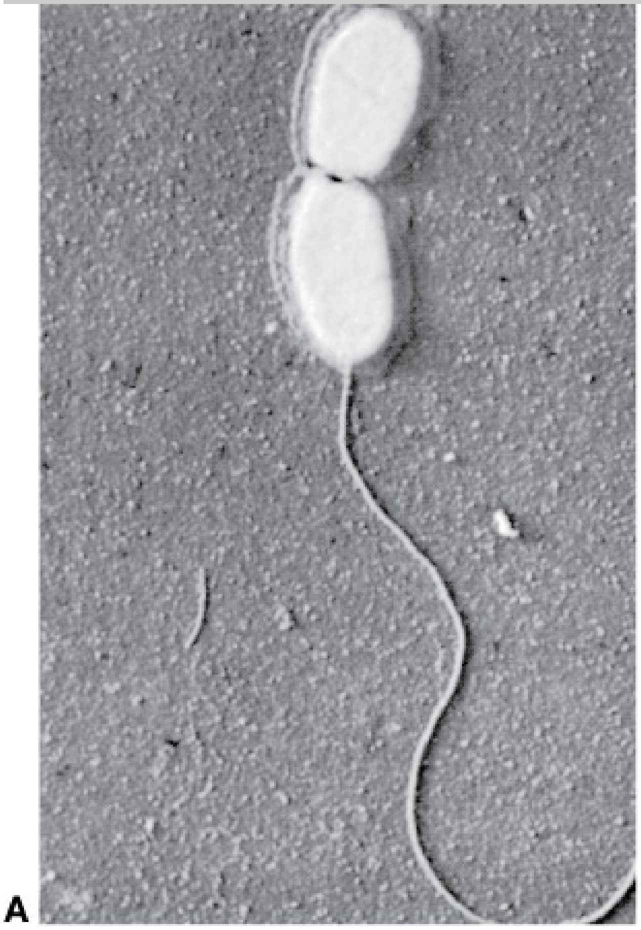
The high resolving power of the electron microscope has enabled scientists to observe the detailed structures of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. The superior resolution of the electron microscope is due to the fact that electrons have a much shorter wavelength than the photons of white light.

There are two types of electron microscopes in general use: the transmission electron microscope (TEM), which has many features in common with the light microscope, and the scanning electron microscope (SEM). The TEM was the first to be developed and employs a beam of electrons projected from an electron gun and directed or focused by an electromagnetic condenser lens onto a thin specimen. As the electrons strike the specimen, they are differentially scattered by the number and mass of atoms in the specimen; some electrons pass through the specimen and are gathered and focused by an electromagnetic objective lens, which presents an image of the specimen to the projector lens system for further enlargement. The image is visualized by allowing it to impinge on a screen that fluoresces when struck with the electrons. The image can be recorded on photographic film. TEM can resolve particles 0.001 µm apart. Viruses, with diameters of 0.010.2 µm, can be easily resolved.

The SEM generally has a lower resolving power than the TEM; however, it is particularly useful for providing three-dimensional images of the surface of microscopic objects. Electrons are focused by means of lenses into a very fine point. The interaction of electrons with the specimen results in the release of different forms of radiation (eg, secondary electrons) from the surface of the material, which can be captured by an appropriate detector, amplified, and then imaged on a television screen.

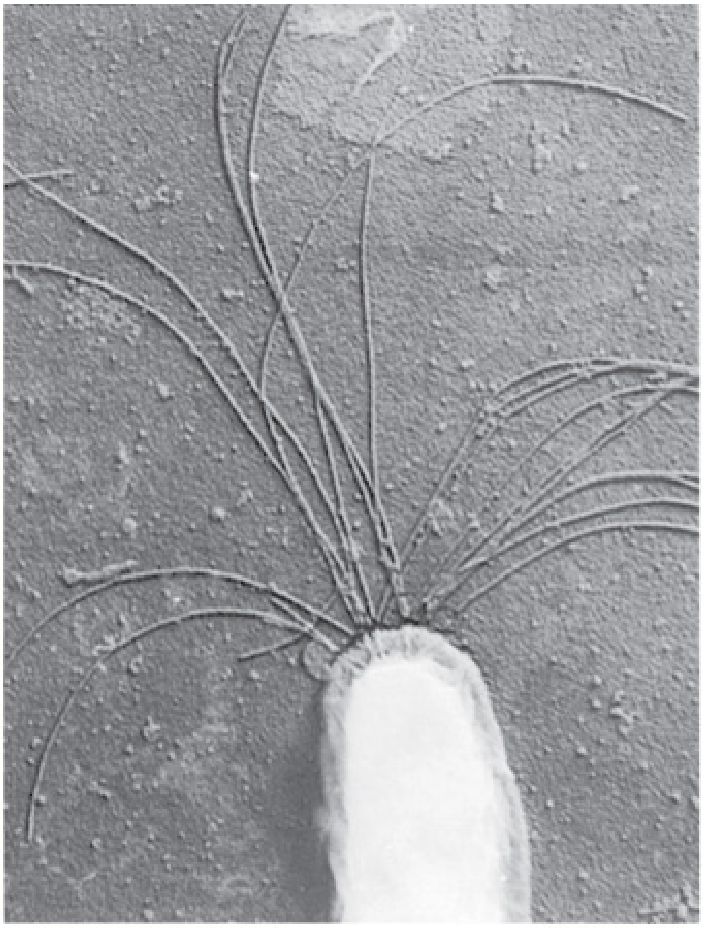
An important technique in electron microscopy is the use of "shadowing." This involves depositing a thin layer of heavy metal (such as platinum) on the specimen by placing it in the path of a beam of metal ions in a vacuum. The beam is directed at a low angle to the specimen, so that it acquires a "shadow" in the form of an uncoated area on the other side. When an electron beam is then passed through the coated preparation in the electron microscope and a positive print is made from the "negative" image, a three-dimensional effect is achieved (eg, see Figure 222).

Figure 222.



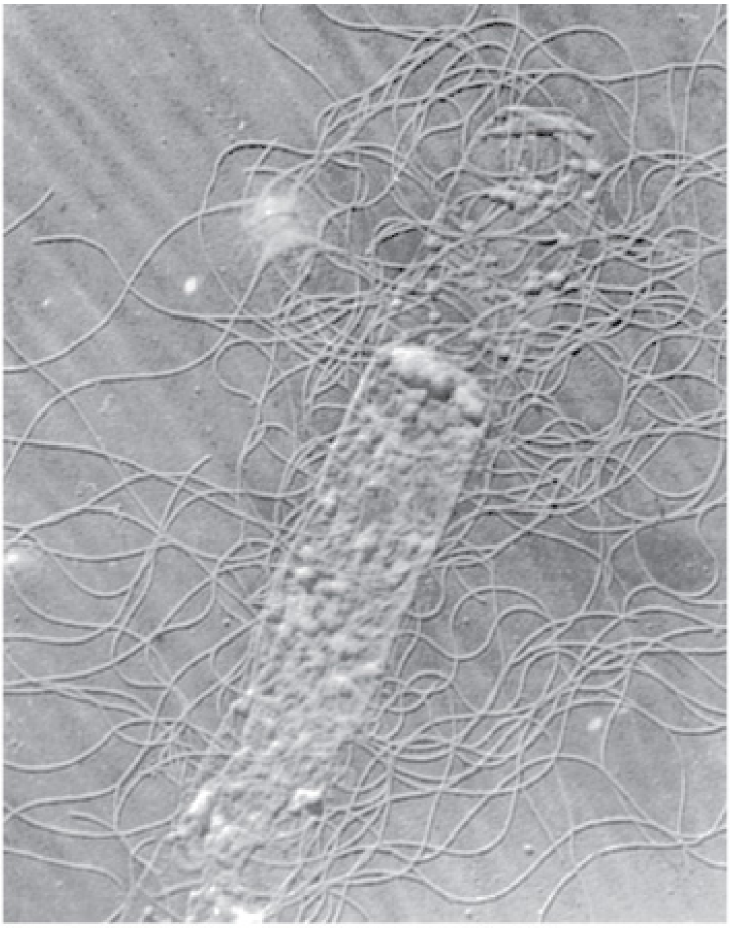
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

B



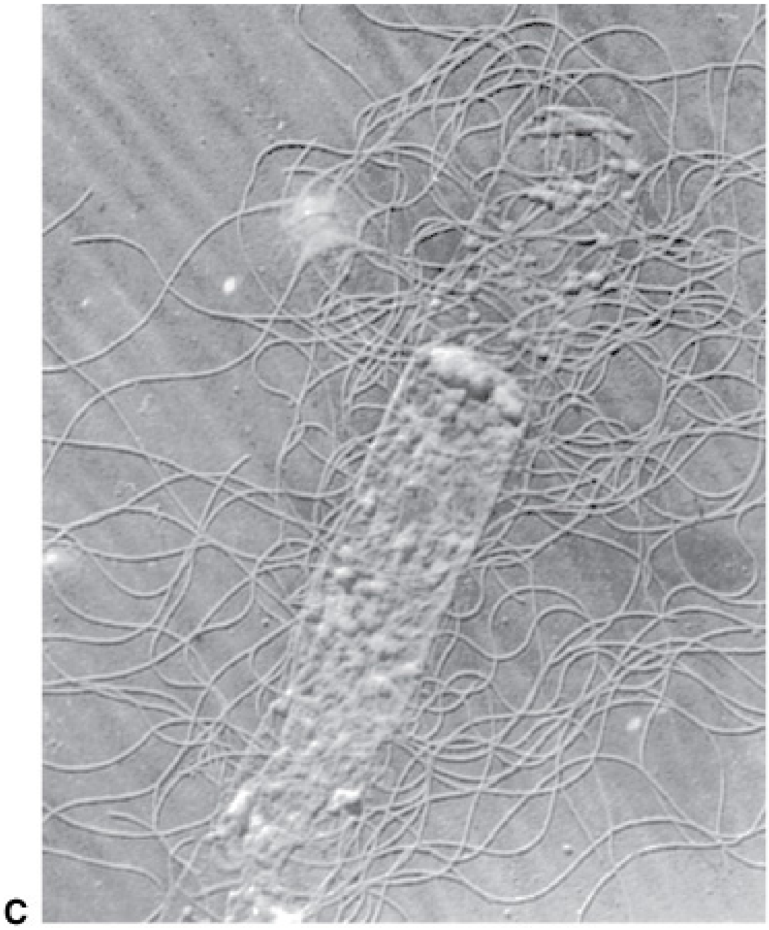
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

C



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Bacterial flagellation. A: *Vibrio metchnikovii,* a monotrichous bacterium (7500 x).

(Courtesy of van Iterson W: Biochim Biophys Acta 1947;1:527.)

B: Electron micrograph of *Spirillum serpens,* showing lophotrichous flagellation (9000 x).

(Courtesy of van Iterson W: Biochim Biophys Acta 1947;1:527.)

C: Electron micrograph of *Proteus vulgaris,* showing peritrichous flagellation (9000 x). Note basal granules.

(Courtesy of Houwink A, van Iterson W: Biochim Biophys Acta 1950;5:10.)

Other important techniques in electron microscopy include the use of ultrathin sections of embedded material, a method of freeze-drying specimens that prevents the distortion caused by conventional drying procedures, and the use of negative staining with an electron-dense material such as phosphotungstic acid or uranyl salts (eg, see Figure 421). Without these heavy metal salts, there would not be enough contrast to detect the details of the specimen.

Confocal Scanning Laser Microscope

The confocal scanning laser microscope (CSLM) couples a laser light source to a light microscope. In confocal scanning laser microscopy, a laser beam is bounced off a mirror that directs the beam through a scanning device. Then the laser beam is directed through a pinhole that precisely adjusts the plane of focus of the beam to a given vertical layer within the specimen. By precisely illuminating only a single plane of the specimen, illumination intensity drops off rapidly above and below the plane of focus, and stray light from other planes of focus are minimized. Thus, in a relatively thick specimen, various layers can be observed by adjusting the plane of focus of the laser beam.

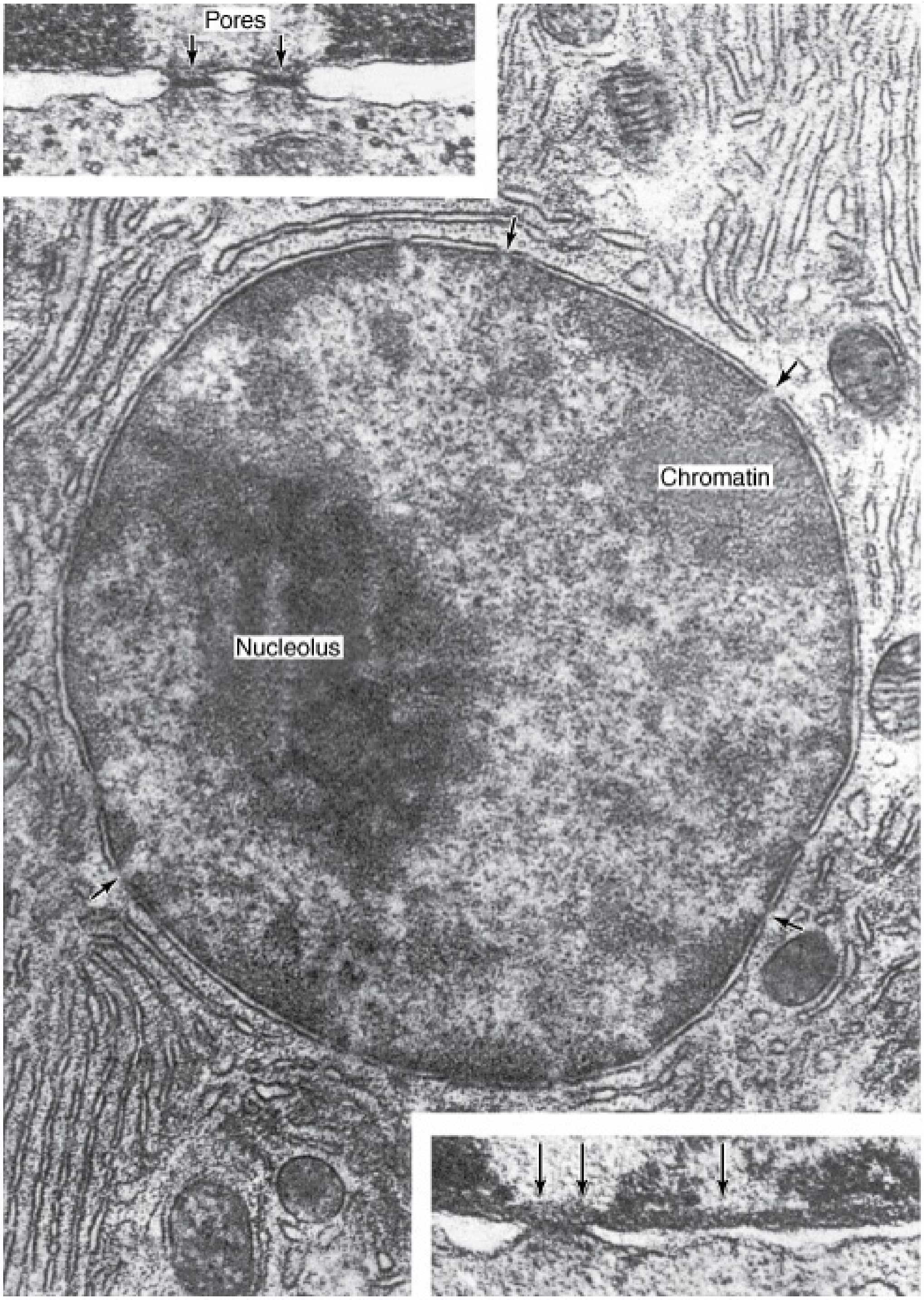
Cells are often stained with fluorescent dyes to make them more visible. Alternatively, false color images can be generated by adjusting the microscope in such a way as to make different layers take on different colors. The CSLM is equipped with computer software to assemble digital images for subsequent image processing. Thus, images obtained from different layers can be stored and then digitally overlaid to reconstruct a three-dimensional image of the entire specimen.

EUKARYOTIC CELL STRUCTURE

The Nucleus

The nucleus contains the cell's genome. It is bounded by a membrane that consists of a pair of unit membranes separated by a space of variable thickness. The inner membrane is usually a simple sac, but the outermost membrane is, in many places, continuous with the endoplasmic reticulum. The nuclear membrane exhibits selective permeability due to pores, which consist of a complex of several proteins whose function is to import substances into and export substances out of the nucleus. The chromosomes of eukaryotic cells contain linear DNA macromolecules arranged as a double helix. They are only visible with a light microscope when the cell is undergoing division and the DNA is in a highly condensed form; at other times, the chromosomes are not condensed and appear as in Figure 22. Eukaryotic DNA macromolecules are associated with basic proteins called histones that bind to the DNA by ionic interactions.

Figure 22.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of a thin section of a typical eukaryotic nucleus showing a prominent nucleolus and large aggregations of heterochromatin against the nuclear membrane, which is traversed by pores (at arrows). Inset upper left: Two nuclear pores and their pore diaphragms. Inset lower right: The fibrous lamina present in the inner aspect of the nuclear envelope. Several mitochondria are visible in the cytoplasm.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Fawcett DW: *Bloom and Fawcett, A Textbook of Histology,* 12th ed. Copyright 1994. By permission of Chapman & Hall, New York, NY.)

A structure often visible within the nucleus is the nucleolus, an area rich in RNA that is the site of ribosomal RNA synthesis (Figure 22). Ribosomal proteins synthesized in the cytoplasm are transported into the nucleolus and combine with ribosomal RNA to form the small and large subunits of the eukaryotic ribosome. These are then exported to the cytoplasm where they associate to form an intact ribosome that can function in protein synthesis.

Cytoplasmic Structures

The cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells is characterized by the presence of an endoplasmic reticulum, vacuoles, self-reproducing plastids, and an elaborate cytoskeleton composed of microtubules, microfilaments, and intermediate filaments.

The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is a network of membrane-bound channels continuous with the nuclear membrane. Two types of endoplasmic reticulum are recognized: rough, which contains attached 80S ribosomes, and smooth, which does not (Figure 22). Rough ER is a major producer of glycoproteins and also produces new membrane material that is transported throughout the cell; smooth ER participates in the synthesis of lipids and in some aspects of carbohydrate metabolism. The Golgi apparatus consists of a stack of membranes that function in concert with the ER to chemically modify and sort products of the ER into those destined to be secreted and those that function in other membranous structures of the cell.

The plastids include mitochondria and chloroplasts. Several lines of evidence suggest that mitochondria and chloroplasts were descendents of ancient prokaryotic organisms and arose from the engulfment of a prokaryotic cell by a larger cell (endosymbiosis). Mitochondria are of prokaryotic size, and its membrane, which lacks sterols, is much less rigid than the eukaryotic cell's cytoplasmic membrane, which does contain sterols. Mitochondria contain two sets of membranes. The outermost membrane is rather permeable having numerous minute channels that allow passage of ions and small molecules (eg, ATP). Invagination of the outer membrane forms a system of inner folded membranes called cristae. The cristae are the sites of enzymes involved in respiration and ATP production. Cristae also contain specific transport proteins that regulate passage of metabolites into and out of the mitochondrial matrix. The matrix contains a number of enzymes, in particular those of the citric acid cycle. Chloroplasts are photosynthetic cell organelles that are capable of converting the energy of sunlight into chemical energy through photosynthesis. Chlorophyll and all other components needed for photosynthesis are located in a series of flattened membrane discs called thylakoids. The size, shape, and number of chloroplasts per cell vary markedly; in contrast to mitochondria, chloroplasts are generally much larger than prokaryotes. Mitochondria and chloroplasts contain their own DNA, which exists in a covalently closed circular form and codes for some (not all) of their constituent proteins and transfer RNAs. Mitochondria and chloroplasts also contain 70S ribosomes, the same as those of prokaryotes.

Some eukaryotic microorganisms (eg, *Trichomonas vaginalis*) lack mitochondria and contain instead a membrane-enclosed respiratory organelle called the hydrogenosome. Hydrogenosomes may have arisen by endosymbiosis and some have been identified that contain DNA and ribosomes. The hydrogenosome, while similar in size to mitochondria, lacks cristae and the enzymes of the tricarboxylic acid cycle. Pyruvate is taken up by the hydrogenosome and H_2 , CO_2 , acetate, and ATP are produced.

Lysosomes are membrane-enclosed sacs that contain various digestive enzymes that the cell uses to digest macromolecules such as proteins, fats, and polysaccharides. The lysosome allows these enzymes to be partitioned away from the cytoplasm proper where they could destroy key cellular macromolecules if not contained. Following the hydrolysis of macromolecules in the lysosome, the resulting monomers pass from the lysosome into the cytoplasm where they serve as nutrients.

The peroxisome is a membrane-enclosed structure whose function is to produce H_2O_2 from the reduction of O_2 by various hydrogen donors. The H_2O_2 produced in the peroxisome is subsequently degraded to H_2O and O_2 by the enzyme catalase.

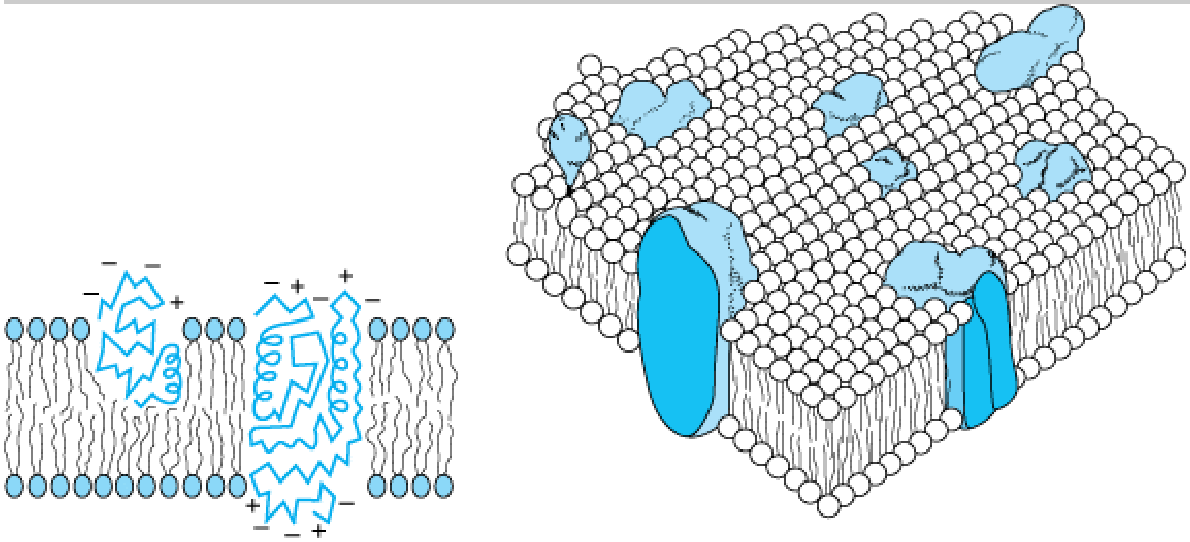
The cytoskeleton is a three-dimensional structure that fills the cytoplasm. The primary types of fibers comprising the cytoskeleton are microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules. Microfilaments are about 36 nm in diameter and are polymers composed of subunits of the protein actin. These fibers form scaffolds throughout the cell defining and maintaining the shape of the cell. Microfilaments can also carry out cellular movements including gliding, contraction, and cytokinesis.

Microtubules are cylindrical tubes, 2025 nm in diameter and are composed of subunits of the protein tubulin. Microtubules assist microfilaments in maintaining cell structure, form the spindle fibers for separating chromosomes during mitosis, and also play an important role in cell motility. Intermediate filaments are about 10 nm in diameter and provide tensile strength for the cell.

Surface Layers

The cytoplasm is enclosed within a plasma membrane composed of protein and phospholipid, similar to the prokaryotic cell membrane illustrated later (see Figure 210). Most animal cells have no other surface layers; however, plant cells have an outer cell wall composed of cellulose. Many eukaryotic microorganisms also have an outer cell wall, which may be composed of a polysaccharide such as cellulose or chitin or may be inorganic, eg, the silica wall of diatoms.

Figure 210.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

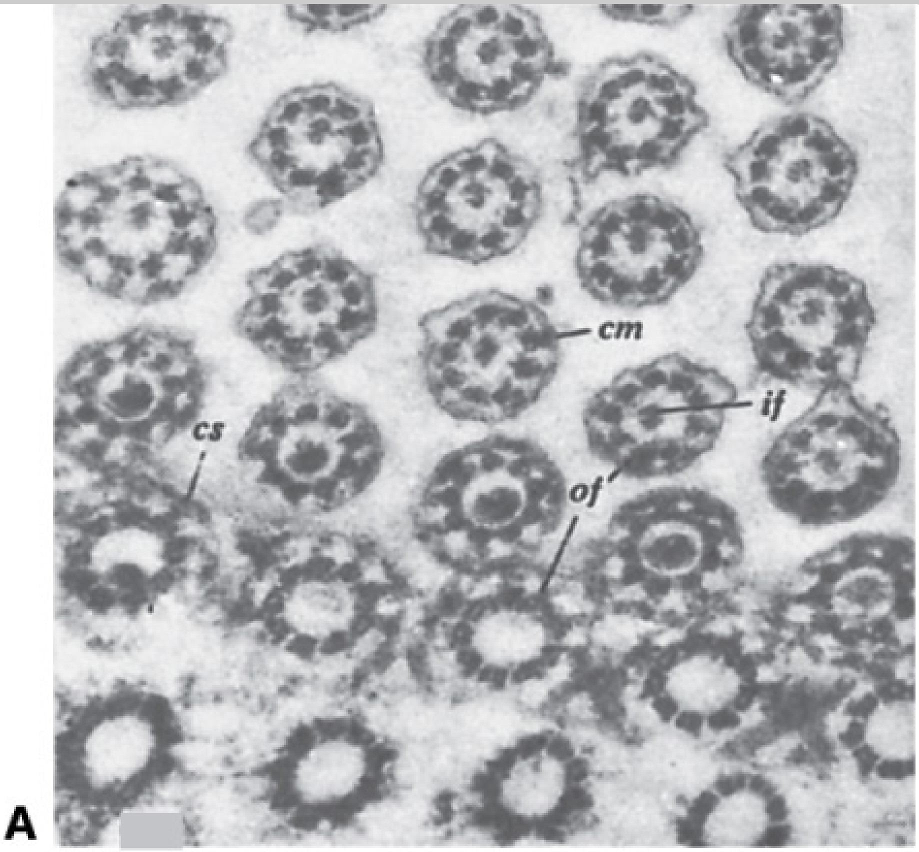
A model of membrane structure. Folded polypeptide molecules are visualized as embedded in a phospholipid bilayer, with their hydrophilic regions protruding into the intracellular space, extracellular space, or both.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Singer SJ, Nicolson AL: The fluid mosaic model of the structure of cell membranes. Science 1972;175:720. Copyright 1972 by the American Association for the Advancement of Science.)

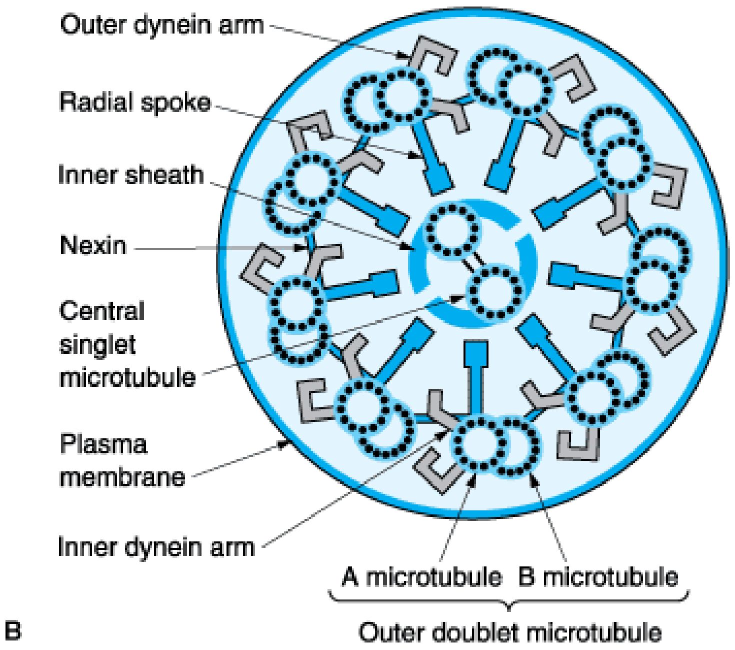
Motility Organelles

Many eukaryotic microorganisms have organelles called flagella (eg, *Trichomonas vaginalis*) or cilia (eg, *Balantidium coli*) that move with a wave-like motion to propel the cell through water. Eukaryotic flagella emanate from the polar region of the cell, whereas cilia, which are shorter than flagella, surround the cell. Both the flagella and the cilia of eukaryotic cells have the same basic structure and biochemical composition. Both consist of a series of microtubules, hollow protein cylinders composed of a protein called tubulin, surrounded by a membrane. The arrangement of the microtubules is called the "9 + 2 system" because it consists of nine peripheral pairs of microtubules surrounding two single central microtubules (Figure 23).

Figure 23.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Fine structure of eukaryotic flagella and cilia (31,500 x). A: Cross section through surface layer of the ciliate protozoan glaucoma, which cuts across a field of cilia just within the cell membrane (lower half) as well as outside the cell membrane (upper half). (cm, cell membrane; cs, cell surface; if, inner fibrils; of, outer fibrils) B: Diagram of the parts of a flagellum or cilium. The various projections from the microtubules link the microtubules together and occur at regular intervals along the length of the axoneme.

(A, Electron micrograph taken by D. Pitelka. Reproduced, with permission, from Stanier RY, Doudoroff M, Adelberg EA: *The Microbial World,* 2nd ed. Copyright 1963. By permission of Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ. B, Reproduced, with permission, from Roberts A et al: *Molecular Biology of the Cell,* 4th ed. Garland Science, 2002.)

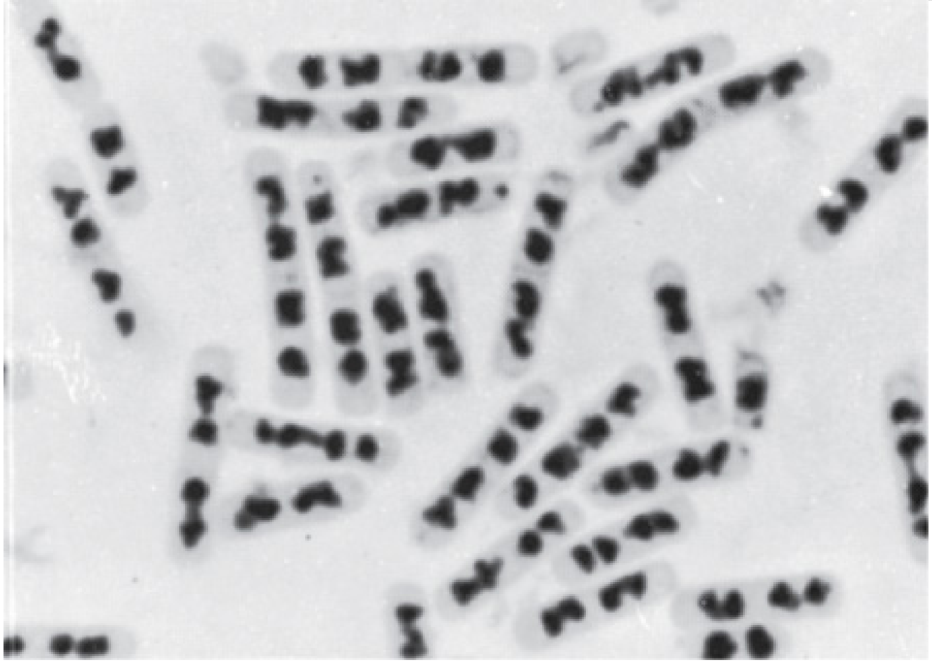
PROKARYOTIC CELL STRUCTURE

The prokaryotic cell is simpler than the eukaryotic cell at every level, with one exception: The cell envelope is more complex.

The Nucleoid

Prokaryotes have no true nuclei; instead they package their DNA in a structure known as the nucleoid. The nucleoid can be seen with the light microscope in stained material (Figure 24). It is Feulgen-positive, indicating the presence of DNA. The negatively charged DNA is at least partially neutralized by small polyamines and magnesium ions, but histone-like proteins exist in bacteria and presumably play a role similar to that of histones in eukaryotic chromatin.

Figure 24.



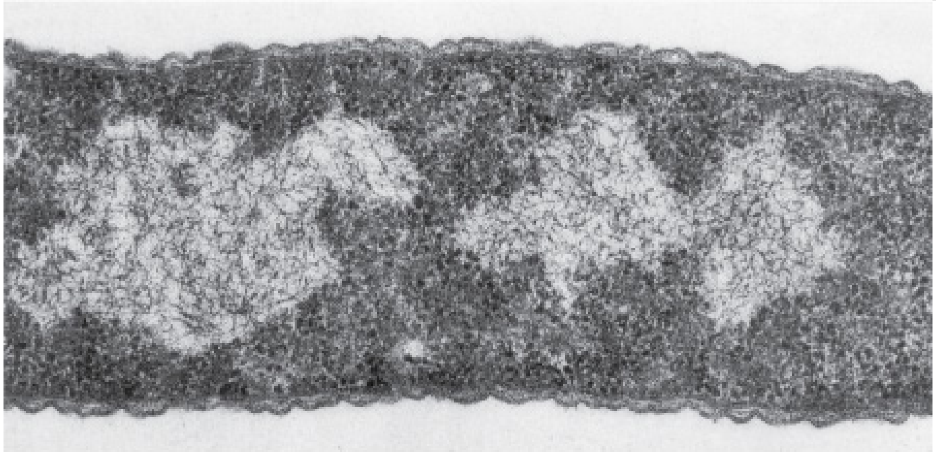
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Nucloids of *Bacillus cereus* (2500 x).

(Courtesy of Robinow C: Bacteriol Rev 1956;20:207.)

Electron micrographs of a typical prokaryotic cell such as Figure 25 reveal the absence of a nuclear membrane and a mitotic apparatus. The exception to this rule is the planctomycetes, a divergent group of aquatic bacteria, which have a nucleoid surrounded by a nuclear envelope consisting of two membranes. The distinction between prokaryotes and eukaryotes that still holds is that prokaryotes have no eukaryotic-type mitotic apparatus. The nuclear region (Figure 25) is filled with DNA fibrils. The nucleoid of most bacterial cells consists of a single continuous circular molecule ranging in size from 0.58 to almost 10 million base pairs. However, a few bacteria have been shown to have two, three, or even four dissimilar chromosomes. For example, *Vibrio cholerae* and *Brucella melitensis* have two dissimilar chromosomes. There are exceptions to this rule of circularity because some prokaryotes (eg, *Borrelia burgdorferi* and *Streptomyces coelicolor*) have been shown to have a linear chromosome.

Figure 25.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Thin section of *E coli* cell fixed with osmium tetroxide and postfixed with aqueous uranyl acetate showing two nuclear regions filled with DNA fibrils.

(Courtesy of Robinow C, Kellenberger E: Microbiol Rev 1994;58:211.)

In bacteria, the number of nucleoids, and therefore the number of chromosomes, depends on the growth conditions (Figure 24). Rapidly growing bacteria have more nucleoids per cell than slowly growing ones; however, when multiple copies are present they are all the same (ie, prokaryotic cells are haploid).

Cytoplasmic Structures

Prokaryotic cells lack autonomous plastids, such as mitochondria and chloroplasts; the electron transport enzymes are localized instead in the cytoplasmic membrane. The photosynthetic pigments (carotenoids, bacteriochlorophyll) of photosynthetic bacteria are contained in intracytoplasmic membrane systems of various morphologies. Membrane vesicles (chromatophores) or lamellae are commonly observed membrane types. Some photosynthetic bacteria have specialized non-unit membrane-enclosed structures called chlorosomes. In some cyanobacteria (formerly known as blue-green algae), the photosynthetic membranes often form multilayered structures known as thylakoids (Figure 26). The major accessory pigments used for light harvesting are the phycobilins found on the outer surface of the thylakoid membranes.

Figure 26.

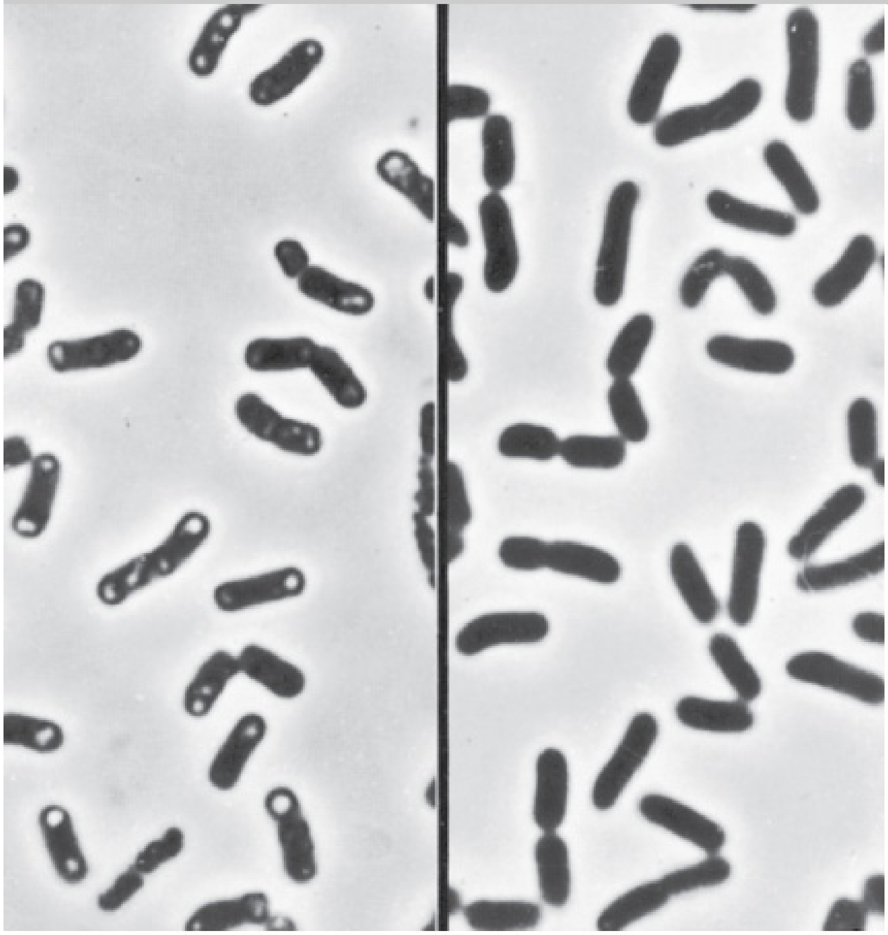
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Thin section of a cyanobacterium, anacystis (80,500 x). (*l,* lamellae bearing photosynthetic pigments; *cw,* cell wall; *n,* nuclear region.)

(Reprinted by permission of the Rockefeller Institute Press, from Ris H, Singh RN: J Biophys Biochem Cytol 1961;9:63.)

Bacteria often store reserve materials in the form of insoluble granules, which appear as refractile bodies in the cytoplasm when viewed in a phase contrast microscope. These so-called inclusion bodies almost always function in the storage of energy or as a reservoir of structural building blocks. Most cellular inclusions are bounded by a thin nonunit membrane consisting of lipid, which serves to separate the inclusion from the cytoplasm proper. One of the most common inclusion bodies consists of poly-β-hydroxybutyric acid (PHB), a lipid-like compound consisting of chains of β-hydroxybutyric acid units connected through ester linkages. PHB is produced when the source of nitrogen, sulfur, or phosphorous is limited and there is excess carbon in the medium (Figure 27). Another storage product formed by prokaryotes when carbon is in excess is glycogen, which is a polymer of glucose. PHB and glycogen are used as carbon sources when protein and nucleic acid synthesis are resumed. A variety of prokaryotes are capable of oxidizing reduced sulfur compounds such as hydrogen sulfide and thiosulfate, producing intracellular granules of elemental sulfur. As the reduced sulfur source becomes limiting, the sulfur in the granules is oxidized, usually to sulfate, and the granules slowly disappear. Many bacteria accumulate large reserves of inorganic phosphate in the form of granules of polyphosphate. These granules can be degraded and used as sources of phosphate for nucleic acid and phospholipid synthesis to support growth. These granules are sometimes termed volutin granules or metachromatic granules because they stain red with a blue dye. They are characteristic features of the corynebacteria (Chapter 13).

Figure 2-7.

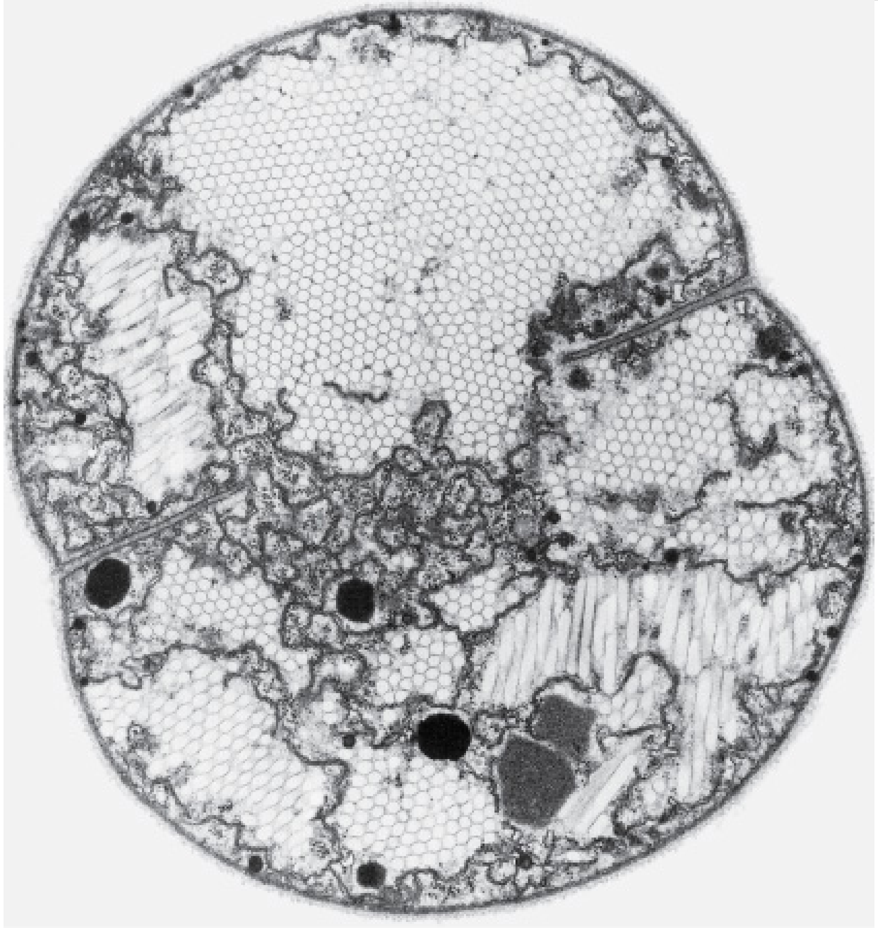


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Formation and utilization of poly-β-hydroxybutyric acid in *Bacillus megaterium* (1900x). Left: Cells grown on glucose plus acetate, showing granules (light areas). Right: Cells from the same culture after 24 hours' further incubation in the presence of a nitrogen source but without an exogenous carbon source. The polymer has been completely metabolized. Phase contrast photomicrograph taken by Dr JF Wilkinson.

Certain groups of autotrophic bacteria that fix carbon dioxide to make their biochemical building blocks contain polyhedral bodies surrounded by a protein shell (carboxysomes) containing the key enzyme of CO_2 fixation, ribulosebisphosphate carboxylase. Magnetosomes are intracellular crystal particles of the iron mineral magnetite (Fe_3O_4) that allow certain aquatic bacteria to exhibit magnetotaxis (ie, migration or orientation of the cell with respect to the earth's magnetic field). Magnetosomes are surrounded by a nonunit membrane containing phospholipids, proteins, and glycoproteins. Gas vesicles are found almost exclusively in microorganisms from aquatic habitats, where they provide buoyancy. The gas vesicle membrane is a 2 nm thick layer of protein, impermeable to water and solutes but permeable to gases; thus, gas vesicles exist as gas-filled structures surrounded by the constituents of the cytoplasm (Figure 28).

Figure 28.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Transverse section of a dividing cell of the cyanobacterium microcystis species showing hexagonal stacking of the cylindric gas vesicles (31,500x).

(Micrograph by HS Pankratz. Reproduced, with permission, from Walsby AE: Gas vesicles. Microbiol Rev 1994;58:94.)

Bacteria contain proteins resembling both the actin and nonactin cytoskeletal proteins of eukaryotic cells as additional proteins that play cytoskeletal roles. Actin homologs (eg, MreB, Mbl) perform a variety of functions, helping to determine cell shape, segregate chromosomes, and localize proteins with the cell. Nonactin homologs (eg, FtsZ) and unique bacterial cytoskeletal proteins (eg, SecY, MinD) are involved in determining cell shape and in regulation of cell division and chromosome segregation.

The Cell Envelope

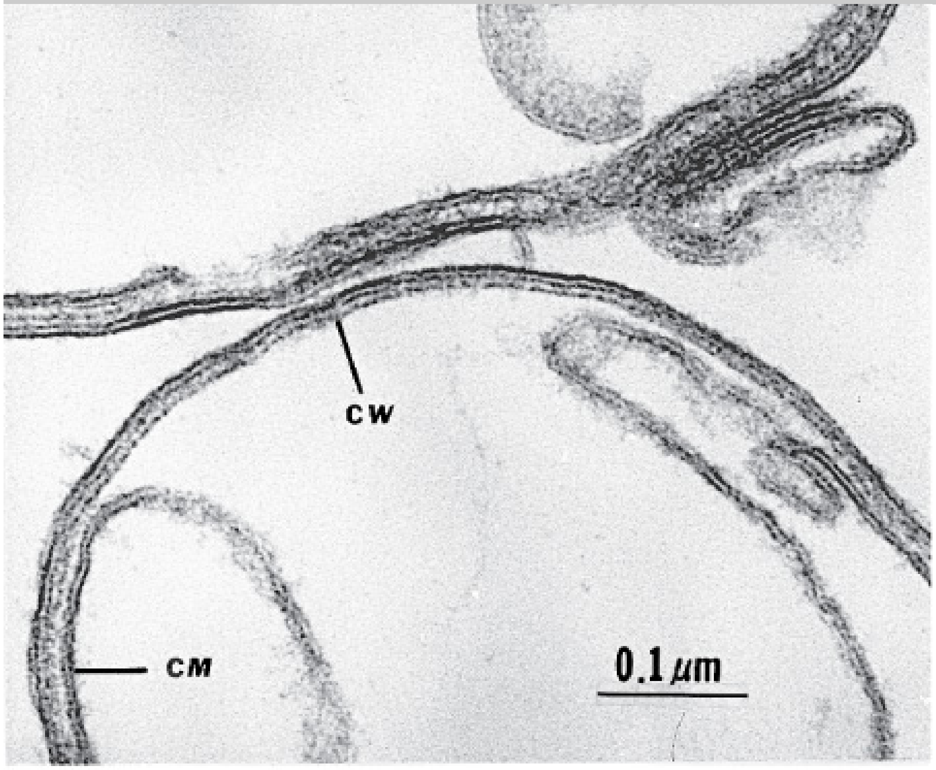
Prokaryotic cells are surrounded by complex envelope layers that differ in composition among the major groups. These structures protect the organisms from hostile environments, such as extreme osmolarity, harsh chemicals, and even antibiotics.

The Cell Membrane

STRUCTURE

The bacterial cell membrane, also called the cytoplasmic membrane, is visible in electron micrographs of thin sections (Figure 29). It is a typical "unit membrane" composed of phospholipids and upward of 200 different kinds of proteins. Proteins account for approximately 70% of the mass of the membrane, which is a considerably higher proportion than that of mammalian cell membranes. Figure 210 illustrates a model of membrane organization. The membranes of prokaryotes are distinguished from those of eukaryotic cells by the absence of sterols, the only exception being mycoplasmas that incorporate sterols, such as cholesterol, into their membranes when growing in sterol-containing media.

Figure 29.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The cell membrane. Fragments of the cell membrane (CM) are seen attached to the cell wall (CW) in preparations made from *Escherichia coli.*

(Reproduced, with permission, from Schnaitman CA: Solubilization of the cytoplasmic membrane of *Escherichia coli* by Triton X-100. J Bacteriol 1971;108:545.)

The cell membranes of the Archaea (see Chapter 1) differ from those of the Bacteria. Some Archaeal cell membranes contain unique lipids, isoprenoids, rather than fatty acids, linked to glycerol by an ether rather than an ester linkage. Some of these lipids have no phosphate groups, and therefore, they are not phospholipids. In other species the cell membrane is made up of a lipid monolayer consisting of long lipids (about twice as long as a phospholipid) with glycerol ethers at both ends (diglycerol tetraethers). The molecules orient themselves with the polar glycerol groups on the surfaces and the nonpolar hydrocarbon chain in the interior. These unusual lipids contribute to the ability of many Archaea to grow under environmental conditions such as high salt, low pH, or very high temperature.

FUNCTION

The major functions of the cytoplasmic membrane are (1) selective permeability and transport of solutes; (2) electron transport and oxidative phosphorylation, in aerobic species; (3) excretion of hydrolytic exoenzymes; (4) bearing the enzymes and carrier molecules that function in the biosynthesis of DNA, cell wall polymers, and membrane lipids; and (5) bearing the receptors and other proteins of the chemotactic and other sensory transduction systems.

At least 50% of the cytoplasmic membrane must be in the semifluid state in order for cell growth to occur. At low temperatures, this is achieved by greatly increased synthesis and incorporation of unsaturated fatty acids into the phospholipids of the cell membrane.

Permeability and Transport

The cytoplasmic membrane forms a hydrophobic barrier impermeable to most hydrophilic molecules. However, several mechanisms (transport systems) exist that enable the cell to transport nutrients into and waste products out of the cell. These transport systems work against a concentration gradient to increase the concentration of nutrients inside the cell, a function that requires energy in some form. There are three general transport mechanisms involved in membrane transport: passive transport, active transport, and group translocation.

PASSIVE TRANSPORT

This mechanism relies on diffusion, uses no energy, and operates only when the solute is at higher concentration outside than inside the cell. Simple diffusion accounts for the entry of very few nutrients including dissolved oxygen, carbon dioxide, and water itself. Simple diffusion provides neither speed nor selectivity. Facilitated diffusion also uses no energy so the solute never achieves an internal concentration greater than what exists outside the cell. However, facilitated diffusion is selective. Channel proteins form selective channels that facilitate the passage of specific molecules. Facilitated diffusion is common in eukaryotic microorganisms (eg, yeast), but is rare in prokaryotes. Glycerol is one of the few compounds that enters prokaryotic cells by facilitated diffusion.

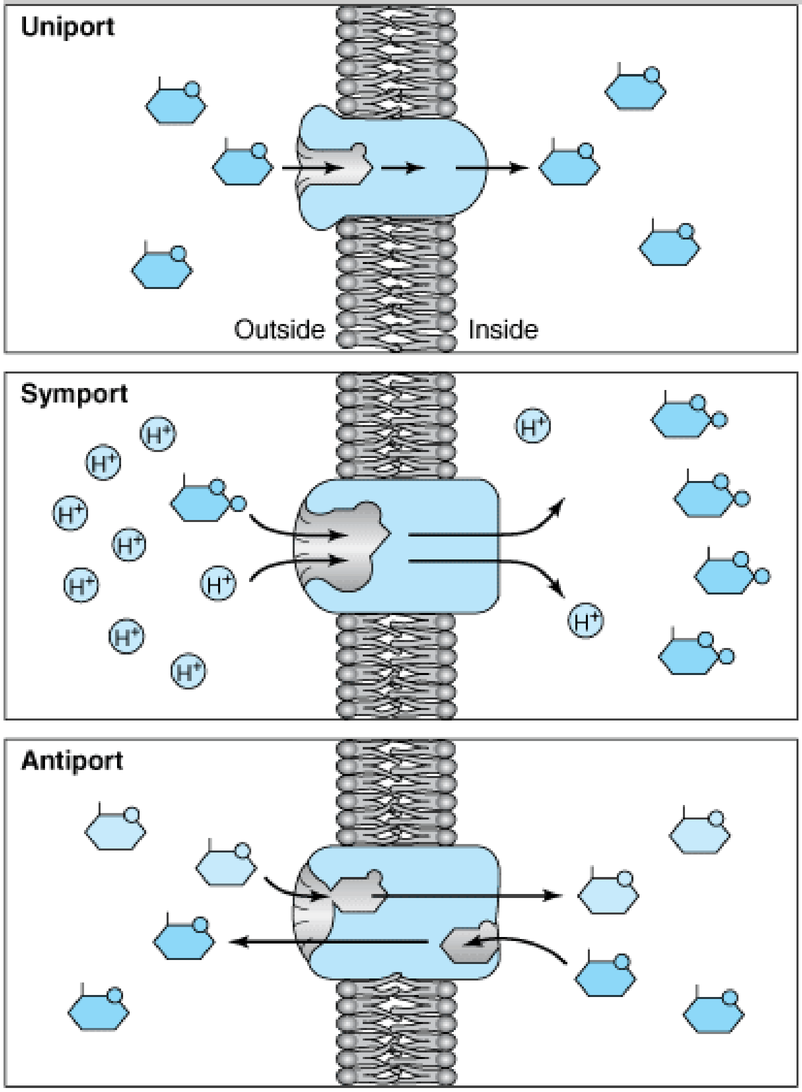
ACTIVE TRANSPORT

Many nutrients are concentrated more than a thousand fold as a result of active transport. There are two types of active transport mechanisms depending upon the source of energy employed: ion-coupled transport and ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transport.

Ion-Coupled Transport

These systems move a molecule across the cell membrane at the expense of a previously established ion gradient such as proton-motive or sodium-motive force. There are three basic types: uniport, symport, and antiport (Figure 211). Ion-coupled transport is particularly common in aerobic organisms, which have an easier time generating an ion-motive force than do anaerobes. Uniporters catalyze the transport of a substrate independent of any coupled ion. Symporters catalyze the simultaneous transport of two substrates in the same direction by a single carrier; for example, an H^+ gradient can permit symport of an oppositely charged ion (eg, glycine) or a neutral molecule (eg, galactose). Antiporters catalyze the simultaneous transport of two like-charged compounds in opposite directions by a common carrier (eg, H^+ :Na^+). Approximately 40% of the substrates transported by *Escherichia coli* utilize this mechanism.

Figure 211.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Three types of porters: uniporters (top), symporters (middle), and antiporters (bottom). Uniporters catalyze the transport of a single species independently of any other, symporters catalyze the cotransport of two dissimilar species (usually a solute and a positively charged ion, H^+) in the same direction, and antiporters catalyze the exchange transport of two similar solutes in opposite directions. A single transport protein may catalyze just one of these processes, two of these processes, or even all three of these processes, depending on conditions. Uniporters, symporters, and antiporters have been found to be structurally similar and evolutionarily related, and they function by similar mechanisms.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Saier MH Jr: Peter Mitchell and his chemiosmotic theories. ASM News 1997;63:13.)

ABC Transport

This mechanism employs ATP directly to transport solutes into the cell. In gram-negative bacteria, the transport of many nutrients is facilitated by specific binding proteins located in the periplasmic space; in gram-positive cells the binding proteins are attached to the outer surface of the cell membrane. These proteins function by transferring the bound substrate to a membrane-bound protein complex. Hydrolysis of ATP is then triggered, and the energy is used to open the membrane pore and allow the unidirectional movement of the substrate into the cell. Approximately 40% of the substrates transported by *E coli* utilize this mechanism.

GROUP TRANSLOCATION

In addition to true transport, in which a solute is moved across the membrane without change in structure, bacteria use a process called group translocation (vectorial metabolism) to effect the net uptake of certain sugars (eg, glucose and mannose), the substrate becoming phosphorylated during the transport process. In a strict sense, group translocation is not active transport because no concentration gradient is involved. This process allows bacteria to utilize their energy resources efficiently by coupling transport with metabolism. In this process, a membrane carrier protein is first phosphorylated in the cytoplasm at the expense of phosphoenolpyruvate; the phosphorylated carrier protein then binds the free sugar at the exterior membrane face and transports it into the cytoplasm, releasing it as sugar-phosphate. Such systems of sugar transport are called phosphotransferase systems. Phosphotransferase systems are also involved in movement towards these carbon sources (chemotaxis) and in the regulation of several other metabolic pathways (catabolite repression).

SPECIAL TRANSPORT PROCESSES

Iron (Fe) is an essential nutrient for the growth of almost all bacteria. Under anaerobic conditions, Fe is generally in the +2 oxidation state and soluble. However, under aerobic conditions, Fe is generally in the +3 oxidation state and insoluble. The internal compartments of animals contain virtually no free Fe; it is sequestered in complexes with such proteins as transferrin and lactoferrin. Some bacteria solve this problem by secreting siderophores compounds that chelate Fe and promote its transport as a soluble complex. One major group of siderophores consists of derivatives of hydroxamic acid ($CONH_2$ OH), which chelate Fe^{3+} very strongly. The iron-hydroxamate complex is actively transported into the cell by the cooperative action of a group of proteins that span the outer membrane, periplasm, and inner membrane. The iron is released, and the hydroxamate can exit the cell and be used again for iron transport.

Some pathogenic bacteria use a fundamentally different mechanism involving specific receptors that bind host transferrin and lactoferrin (as well as other iron-containing host proteins). The Fe is removed and transported into the cell by an energy-dependent process.

Electron Transport and Oxidative Phosphorylation

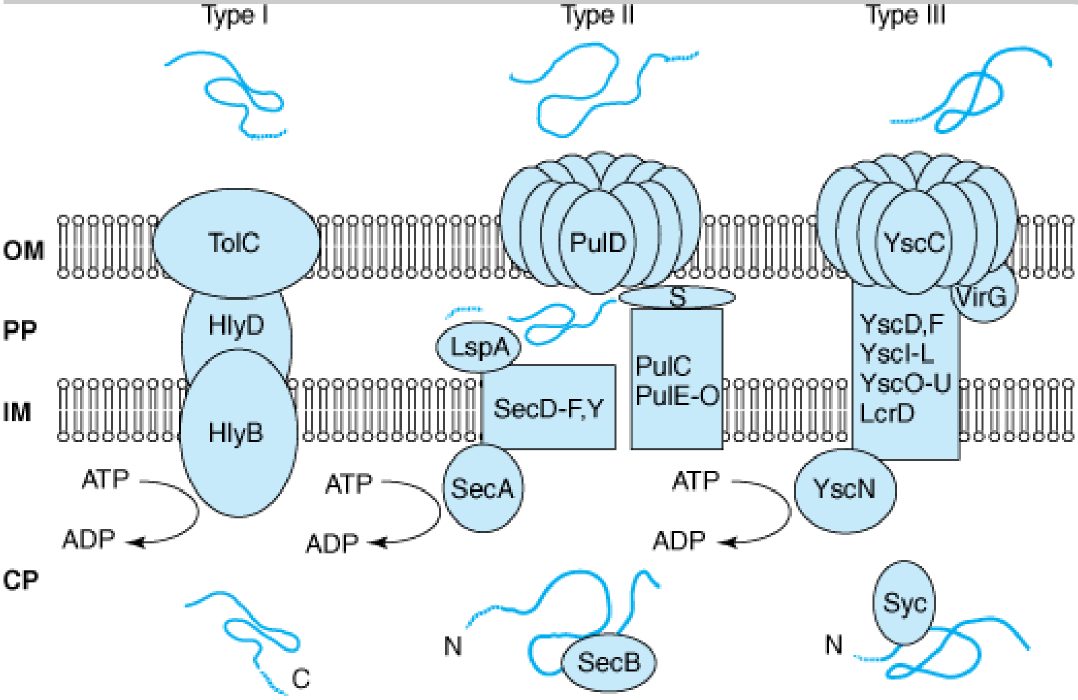
The cytochromes and other enzymes and components of the respiratory chain, including certain dehydrogenases, are located in the cell membrane. The bacterial cell membrane is thus a functional analog of the mitochondrial membranea relationship which has been taken by many biologists to support the theory that mitochondria have evolved from symbiotic bacteria. The mechanism by which ATP generation is coupled to electron transport is discussed in Chapter 6.

Excretion of Hydrolytic Exoenzymes and Pathogenicity Proteins

All organisms that rely on macromolecular organic polymers as a source of nutrients (eg, proteins, polysaccharides, lipids) excrete hydrolytic enzymes that degrade the polymers to subunits small enough to penetrate the cell membrane. Higher animals secrete such enzymes into the lumen of the digestive tract; bacteria (both gram-positive and gram-negative) secrete them directly into the external medium or into the periplasmic space between the peptidoglycan layer and the outer membrane of the cell wall in the case of gram-negative bacteria (see The Cell Wall, below).

In gram-positive bacteria, proteins are secreted directly, but proteins secreted by gram-negative bacteria must traverse the outer membrane as well. Five pathways of protein secretion have been described in gram-negative bacteria: the type I, type II, type III, type IV, and type V secretion systems. A schematic overview of the type I, type II, and type III systems is presented in Figure 212. Proteins secreted by the type I and type III pathways traverse the inner membrane (IM) and outer membrane (OM) in one step, whereas proteins secreted by the type II and type V pathways cross the IM and OM in separate steps. Proteins secreted by the type II and type V pathways are synthesized on cytoplasmic ribosomes as preproteins containing an extra leader or signal sequence of 15 to 40 amino acidsmost commonly about 30 amino acidsat the amino terminal and require the sec system for transport across the IM. In *E coli,* the sec pathway comprises a number of IM proteins (SecD to SecF, SecY), a cell membrane-associated ATPase (SecA) that provides energy for export, a chaperone (SecB) that binds to the preprotein, and the periplasmic signal peptidase. Following translocation, the leader sequence is cleaved off by the membrane-bound signal peptidase and the mature protein is released into the periplasmic space. In contrast, proteins secreted by the type I and type III systems do not have a leader sequence and are exported intact.

Figure 212.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic overview of the type I, II, and III secretion systems as exemplified by alpha-hemolysin secretion by *E coli* (type I), pullulanase secretion by *Klebsiella oxytoca* (type II), and Yop secretion by yersinia (type III). OM, outer membrane; PP, periplasm; IM, inner membrane; CP, cytoplasm. ATP hydrolysis by HlyB, SecA, and YscN is indicated. The localization of the secretion signals is shown in the secreted proteins (dark lines). N, amino terminal; C, carboxyl terminal. For type III secretion, the secretion signal may reside in the 5' region of the mRNA encoding the secreted protein. Type II and type III secretions involve cytoplasmic chaperones (SecB and Syc, respectively), which bind to presecretory proteins. In type II secretion, the amino terminal signal sequence is cleaved off by a periplasmic peptidase (LspA) after export of the protein via the *sec* pathway. Type II and type III secretions share a homologous multimeric outer membrane component (PulD, YscC), while the accessory proteins S and VirG, which facilitate outer membrane insertion of PulD and YscC, respectively, differ in the two systems.

(Courtesy of Hueck CJ: Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1998;62:379.)

Although proteins secreted by the type II and type V systems are similar in the mechanism by which they cross the IM, differences exist in how they traverse the OM. Proteins secreted by the type II system are transported across the OM by a multiprotein complex (Figure 212). This is the primary pathway for the secretion of extracellular degradative enzymes by gram-negative bacteria. Elastase, phospholipase C, and exotoxin A are secreted by this system in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.* However, proteins secreted by the type V system autotransport across the outer membrane by virtue of a carboxyl terminal sequence which is enzymatically removed upon release of the protein from the OM. Some extracellular proteinseg, the IgA protease of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and the vacuolating cytotoxin of *Helicobacter pylori* are secreted by this system.

The type I and type III secretion pathways are *sec*- independent and thus do not involve amino terminal processing of the secreted proteins. Protein secretion by these pathways occurs in a continuous process without the presence of a cytoplasmic intermediate. Type I secretion is exemplified by the α-hemolysin of *E coli* and the adenylyl cyclase of *Bordetella pertussis.* Type I secretion requires three secretory proteins: an IM ATP-binding cassette (ABC transporter), which provides energy for protein secretion; an OM protein; and a membrane fusion protein, which is anchored in the inner membrane and spans the periplasmic space (Figure 212). Instead of a signal peptide, the information is located within the carboxyl terminal 60 amino acids of the secreted protein.

The type III secretion pathway is a contact-dependent system. It is activated by contact with a host cell, and then injects a toxin protein into the host cell directly. The type III secretion apparatus is composed of approximately 20 proteins, most of which are located in the IM. Most of these IM components are homologous to the flagellar biosynthesis apparatus of both gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria. As in type I secretion, the proteins secreted via the type III pathway are not subject to amino terminal processing during secretion.

Type IV pathways secrete either polypeptide toxins (directed against eukaryotic cells) or protein-DNA complexes either between two bacterial cells or between a bacterial and a eukaryotic cell. Type IV secretion is exemplified by the protein-DNA complex delivered by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* into a plant cell. Additionally, *B pertussis* and *H pylori* possess type IV secretion systems that mediate secretion of pertussis toxin and interleukin-8-inducing factor, respectively.

Biosynthetic Functions

The cell membrane is the site of the carrier lipids on which the subunits of the cell wall are assembled (see the discussion of synthesis of cell wall substances in Chapter 6) as well as of the enzymes of cell wall biosynthesis. The enzymes of phospholipid synthesis are also localized in the cell membrane.

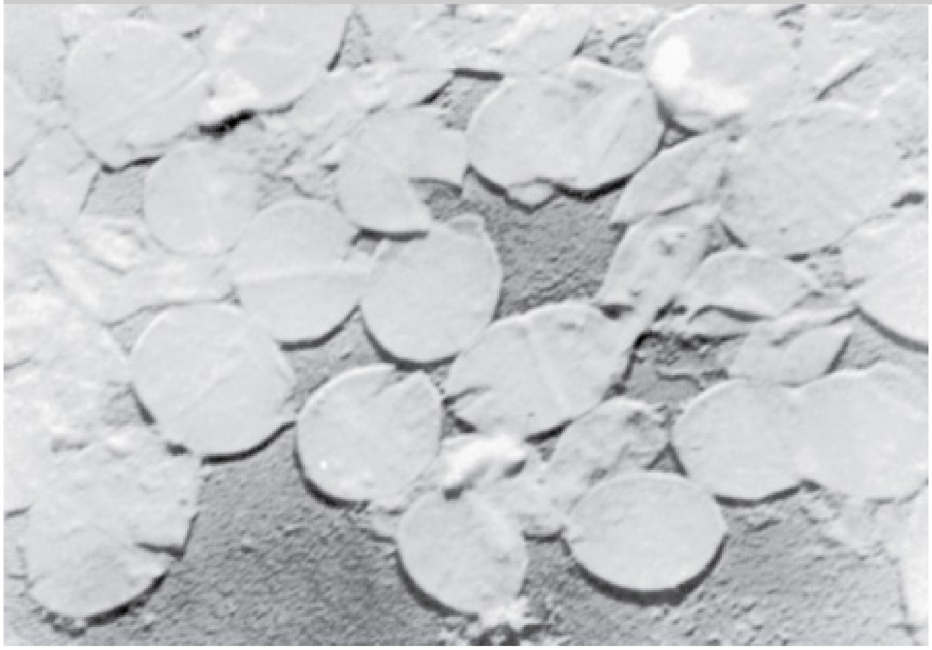
Chemotactic Systems

Attractants and repellents bind to specific receptors in the bacterial membrane (see Flagella below). There are at least 20 different chemoreceptors in the membrane of *E coli,* some of which also function as a first step in the transport process.

The Cell Wall

The internal osmotic pressure of most bacteria ranges from 5 atm to 20 atm as a result of solute concentration via active transport. In most environments, this pressure would be sufficient to burst the cell were it not for the presence of a high-tensile-strength cell wall (Figure 213). The bacterial cell wall owes its strength to a layer composed of a substance variously referred to as murein, mucopeptide, or peptidoglycan (all are synonyms). The structure of peptidoglycan will be discussed below.

Figure 213.



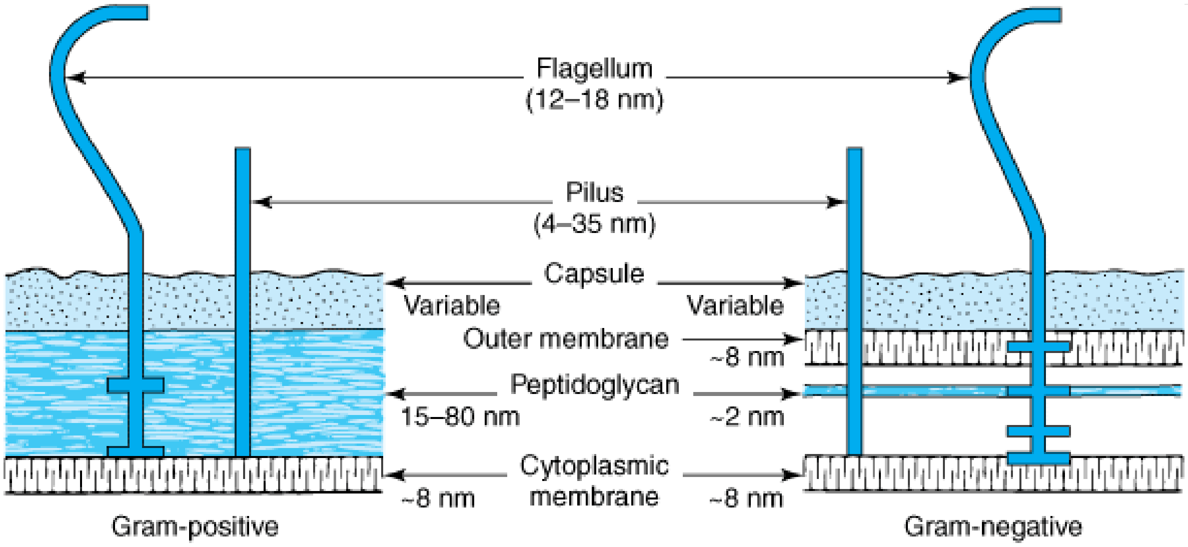
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Cell walls of *Streptococcus faecalis,* removed from protoplasts by mechanical disintegration and differential centrifugation (11,000 x).

(Courtesy of Salton M, Home R: Biochim Biophys Acta 1951;7:177.)

Most bacteria are classified as gram-positive or gram-negative according to their response to the Gram staining procedure. This procedure was named for the histologist Hans Christian Gram, who developed this differential staining procedure in an attempt to stain bacteria in infected tissues. The Gram stain depends on the ability of certain bacteria (the gram-positive bacteria) to retain a complex of crystal violet (a purple dye) and iodine after a brief wash with alcohol or acetone. Gram-negative bacteria do not retain the dye-iodine complex and become translucent, but they can then be counterstained with safranin (a red dye). Thus, gram-positive bacteria look purple under the microscope, and gram-negative bacteria look red. The distinction between these two groups turns out to reflect fundamental differences in their cell envelopes (Figure 214).

Figure 214.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Comparison of the structures of gram-positive and gram-negative cell envelopes. The region between the cytoplasmic membrane and the outer membrane of the gram-negative envelope is called the periplasmic space.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Ingraham JL, Maale O, Neidhardt FC: *Growth of the Bacterial Cell.* Sinauer Associates, 1983.)

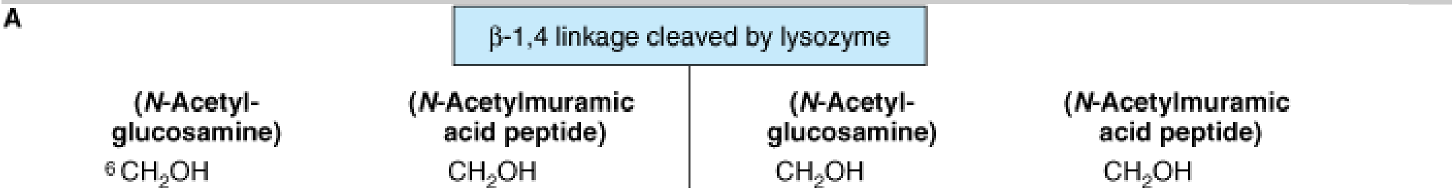
In addition to giving osmotic protection, the cell wall plays an essential role in cell division as well as serving as a primer for its own biosynthesis. Various layers of the wall are the sites of major antigenic determinants of the cell surface, and one componentthe lipopolysaccharide of gram-negative cell wallsis responsible for the nonspecific endotoxin activity of gram-negative bacteria. The cell wall is, in general, nonselectively permeable; one layer of the gram-negative wall, howeverthe outer membranehinders the passage of relatively large molecules (see below).

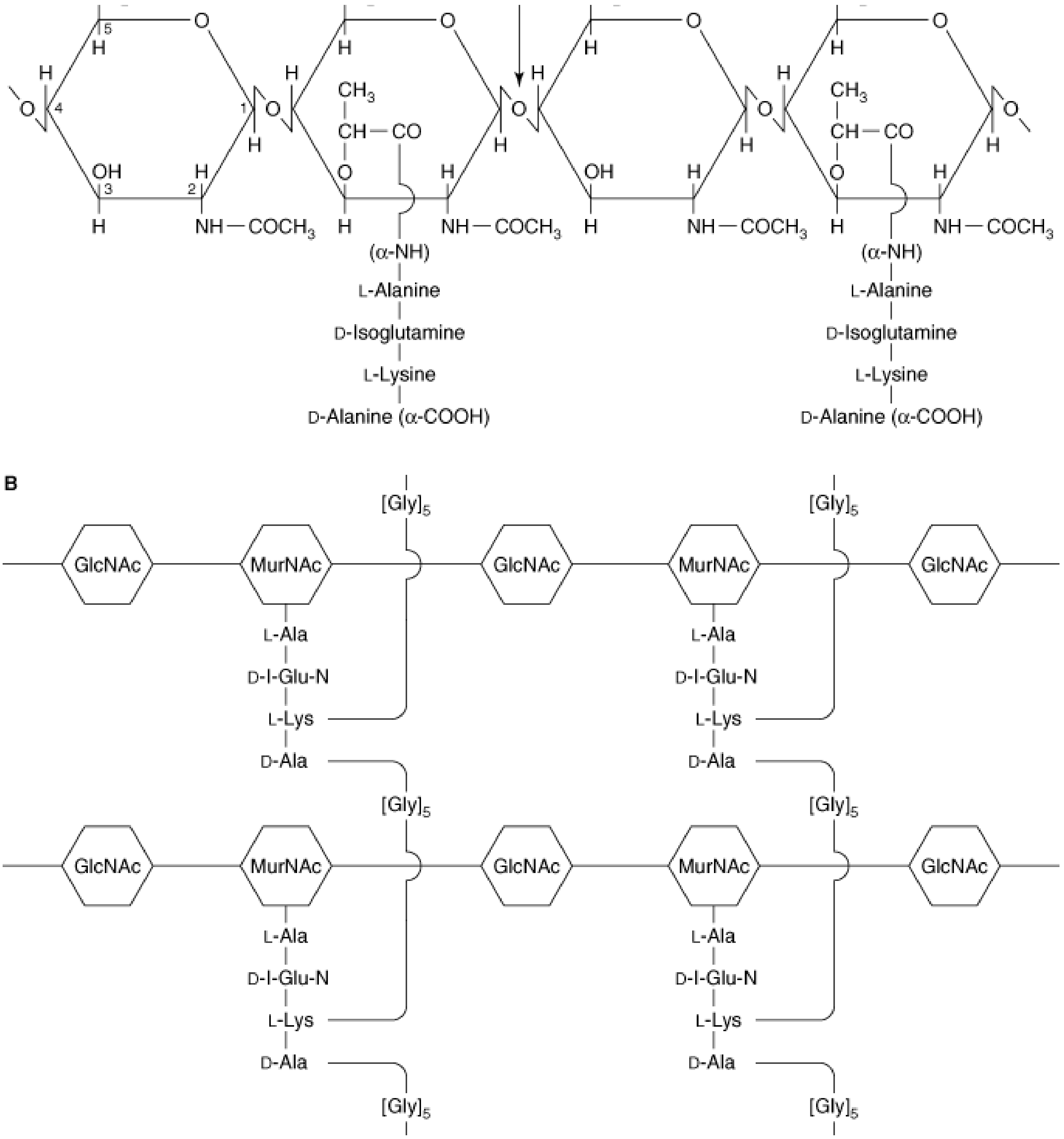
The biosynthesis of the cell wall and the antibiotics that interfere with this process are discussed in Chapter 6.

THE PEPTIDOGLYCAN LAYER

Peptidoglycan is a complex polymer consisting, for the purposes of description, of three parts: a backbone, composed of alternating *N*- acetylglucosamine and *N*- acetylmuramic acid; a set of identical tetrapeptide side chains attached to *N*- acetylmuramic acid; and a set of identical peptide cross-bridges (Figure 215). The backbone is the same in all bacterial species; the tetrapeptide side chains and the peptide cross-bridges vary from species to species, those of *Staphylococcus aureus* being illustrated in Figure 215. In many gram-negative cell walls, the cross-bridge consists of a direct peptide linkage between the diaminopimelic acid (DAP) amino group of one side chain and the carboxyl group of the terminal D -alanine of a second side chain.

Figure 215.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: A segment of the peptidoglycan of *Staphylococcus aureus.* The backbone of the polymer consists of alternating subunits of *N*- acetylglucosamine and *N*- acetylmuramic acid connected by β1→4 linkages. The muramic acid residues are linked to short peptides, the composition of which varies from one bacterial species to another. In some species, the L -lysine residues are replaced by diaminopimelic acid, an amino acid that is found in nature only in prokaryotic cell walls. Note the D -amino acids, which are also characteristic constituents of prokaryotic cell walls. The peptide chains of the peptidoglycan are cross-linked between parallel polysaccharide backbones, as shown in Figure 215B. B: Schematic representation of the peptidoglycan lattice that is formed by cross-linking. Bridges composed of pentaglycine peptide chains connect the α-carboxyl of the terminal D -alanine residue of one chain with the ε-amino group of the L -lysine residue of the next chain. The nature of the cross-linking bridge varies among different species.

The tetrapeptide side chains of all species, however, have certain important features in common. Most have L -alanine at position 1 (attached to *N*- acetylmuramic acid), D -glutamate or substituted D -glutamate at position 2, and D -alanine at position 4. Position 3 is the most variable one: Most gram-negative bacteria have diaminopimelic acid at this position, to which is linked the lipoprotein cell wall component discussed below. Gram-positive bacteria usually have L -lysine at position 3; however, some may have diaminopimelic acid or another amino acid at this position.

Diaminopimelic acid is a unique element of bacterial cell walls. It is never found in the cell walls of *Archaea* or eukaryotes. Diaminopimelic acid is the immediate precursor of lysine in the bacterial biosynthesis of that amino acid (see Figure 618). Bacterial mutants that are blocked prior to diaminopimelic acid in the biosynthetic pathway grow normally when provided with diaminopimelic acid in the medium; when given L -lysine alone, however, they lyse, since they continue to grow but are specifically unable to make new cell wall peptidoglycan.

The fact that all peptidoglycan chains are cross-linked means that each peptidoglycan layer is a single giant molecule. In gram-positive bacteria, there are as many as 40 sheets of peptidoglycan, comprising up to 50% of the cell wall material; in gram-negative bacteria, there appears to be only one or two sheets, comprising 510% of the wall material. Bacteria owe their shapes, which are characteristic of particular species, to their cell wall structure.

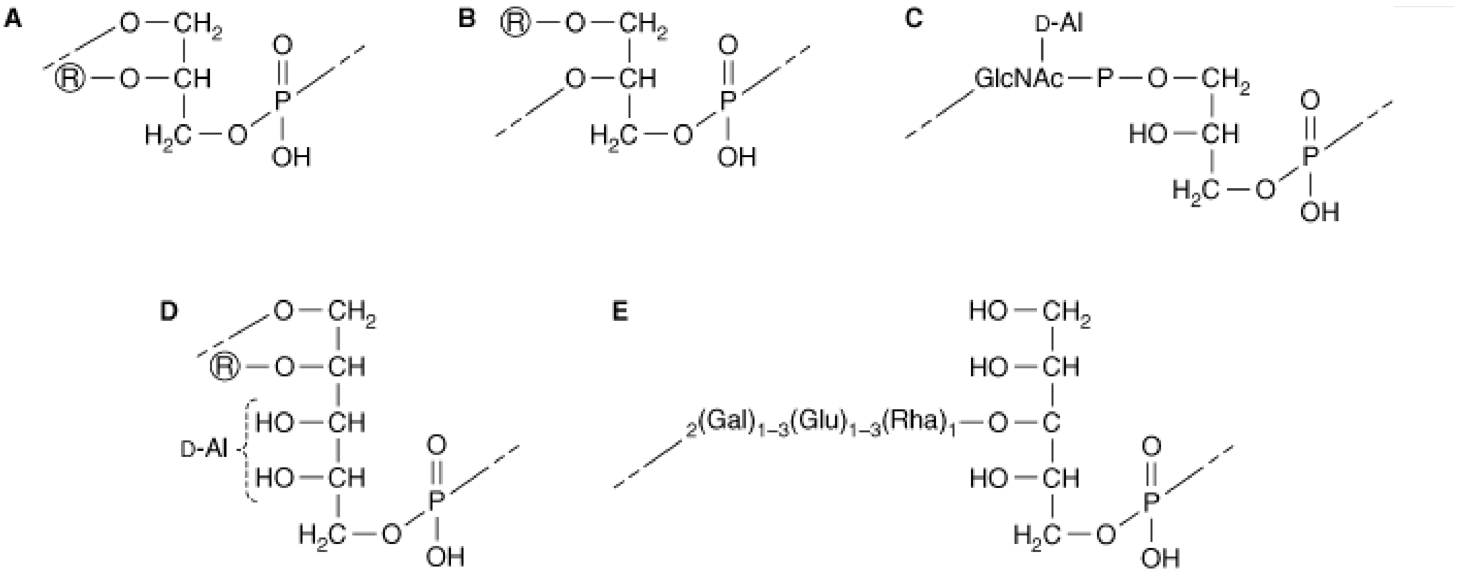
SPECIAL COMPONENTS OF GRAM-POSITIVE CELL WALLS

Most gram-positive cell walls contain considerable amounts of teichoic and teichuronic acids, which may account for up to 50% of the dry weight of the wall and 10% of the dry weight of the total cell. In addition, some gram-positive walls may contain polysaccharide molecules.

Teichoic and Teichuronic Acids

The term teichoic acids encompasses all wall, membrane, or capsular polymers containing glycerophosphate or ribitol phosphate residues. These polyalcohols are connected by phosphodiester linkages and usually have other sugars and D -alanine attached (Figure 216A). Because they are negatively charged, teichoic acids are partially responsible for the negative charge of the cell surface as a whole. There are two types of teichoic acids: wall teichoic acid (WTA), covalently linked to peptidoglycan, and membrane teichoic acid, covalently linked to membrane glycolipid. Because the latter are intimately associated with lipids, they have been called lipoteichoic acids (LTA). Together with peptidoglycan, WTA and LTA make up a polyanionic network or matrix that provides functions relating to the elasticity, porosity, tensile strength, and electrostatic properties of the envelope. Although not all gram-positive bacteria have conventional LTA and WTA, those that lack these polymers generally have functionally similar ones.

Figure 216A.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

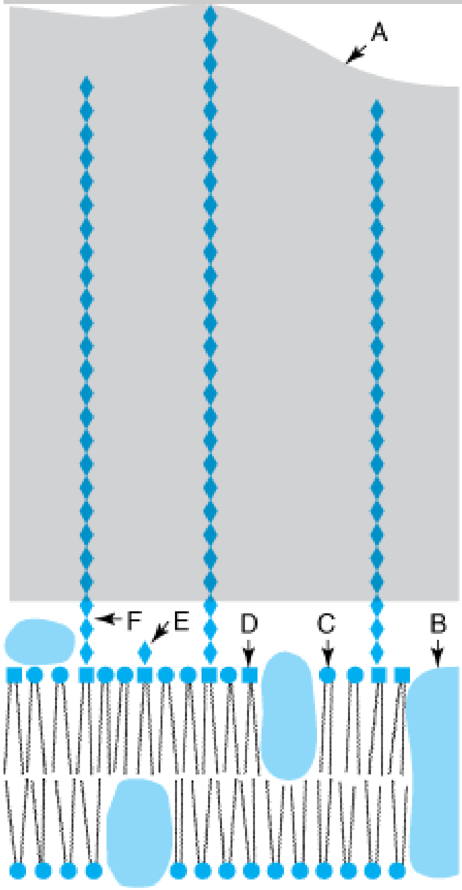
Repeat units of some teichoic acids. A: Glycerol teichoic acid of *Lactobacillus casei* 7469 (R, D -alanine). B: Glycerol teichoic acid of *Actinomyces antibioticus* (R, D -alanine). C: Glycerol teichoic acid of *Staphylococcus lactis* 13. D -Alanine occurs on the 6 position of *N* -acetylglucosamine. D: Ribitol teichoic acids of *Bacillus subtilis* (R, glucose) and *Actinomyces streptomycini* (R, succinate). (The D -alanine is attached to position 3 or 4 of ribitol.) E: Ribitol teichoic acid of the type 6 pneumococcal capsule. (Reproduced, with permission, from Stanier RY, Doudoroff M, Adelberg EA: *The Microbial World* , 2nd ed. Copyright 1963. By permission of Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ.)

The repeat units of some teichoic acids are shown in Figure 216A. The repeat units may be glycerol, joined by 1,3- or 1,2-linkages; ribitol, joined by 1,5-linkages, or more complex units in which glycerol or ribitol is joined to a sugar residue such as glucose, galactose, or *N*- acetylglucosamine. The chains may be 30 or more repeat units in length, though chain lengths of ten or less are common.

Most teichoic acids contain large amounts of D -alanine, usually attached to position 2 or 3 of glycerol or position 3 or 4 of ribitol. In some of the more complex teichoic acids, however, D -alanine is attached to one of the sugar residues. In addition to D -alanine, other substituents may be attached to the free hydroxyl groups of glycerol and ribitol, eg, glucose, galactose, *N*- acetylglucosamine, *N*- acetylgalactosamine, or succinate. A given species may have more than one type of sugar substituent in addition to D -alanine; in such cases, it is not certain whether the different sugars occur on the same or on separate teichoic acid molecules. The composition of the teichoic acid formed by a given bacterial species can vary with the composition of the growth medium.

The teichoic acids constitute major surface antigens of those gram-positive species that possess them, and their accessibility to antibodies has been taken as evidence that they lie on the outside surface of the peptidoglycan. Their activity is often increased, however, by partial digestion of the peptidoglycan; thus, much of the teichoic acid may lie between the cytoplasmic membrane and the peptidoglycan layer, possibly extending upward through pores in the latter (Figure 216B). In the pneumococcus (*Streptococcus pneumoniae*), the teichoic acids bear the antigenic determinants called Forssman antigen. In *Streptococcus pyogenes* , LTA is associated with the M protein that protrudes from the cell membrane through the peptidoglycan layer. The long M protein molecules together with the LTA form microfibrils that facilitate the attachment of *S pyogenes* to animal cells.

Figure 216B.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Lipoteichoic acids. A model of the cell wall and membrane of a gram-positive bacterium, showing lipoteichoic acid molecules extending through the cell wall. The wall teichoic acids, covalently linked to muramic acid residues of the peptidoglycan layer, are not shown. (A, cell wall; B, protein; C, phospholipid; D, glycolipid; E, phosphatidyl glycolipid; F, lipoteichoic acid.) (From Van Driel D et al: Cellular location of the lipoteichoic acids of *Lactobacillus fermenti* NCTC 6991 and *Lactobacillus casei* NCTC 6375. J Ultrastruct Res 1971;43:483.)

The teichuronic acids are similar polymers, but the repeat units include sugar acids (such as *N*-acetylmannosuronic or D -glucosuronic acid) instead of phosphoric acids. They are synthesized in place of teichoic acids when phosphate is limiting.

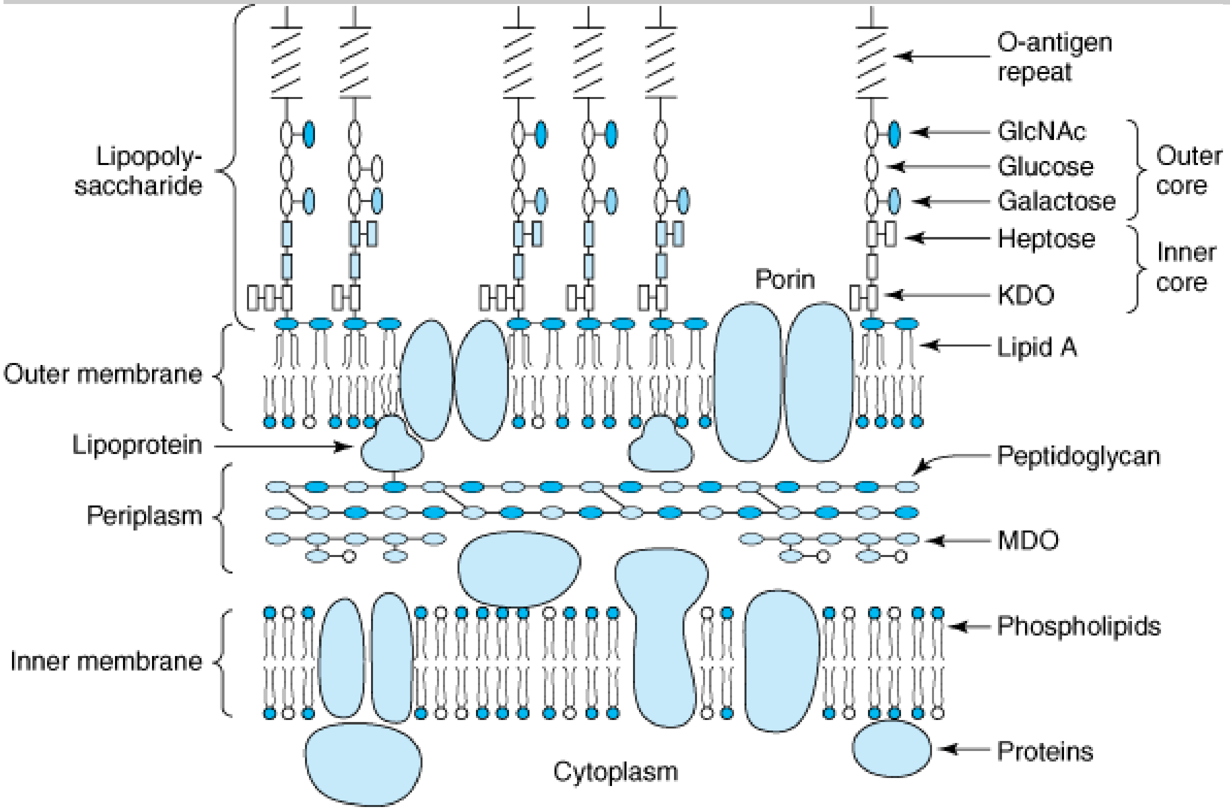
Polysaccharides

The hydrolysis of gram-positive walls has yielded, from certain species, neutral sugars such as mannose, arabinose, rhamnose, and glucosamine and acidic sugars such as glucuronic acid and mannuronic acid. It has been proposed that these sugars exist as subunits of polysaccharides in the cell wall; the discovery, however, that teichoic and teichuronic acids may contain a variety of sugars (Figure 216A) leaves the true origin of these sugars uncertain.

SPECIAL COMPONENTS OF GRAM-NEGATIVE CELL WALLS

Gram-negative cell walls contain three components that lie outside of the peptidoglycan layer: lipoprotein, outer membrane, and lipopolysaccharide (Figure 217).

Figure 217.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Molecular representation of the envelope of a gram-negative bacterium. Ovals and rectangles represent sugar residues, whereas circles depict the polar head groups of the glycerophospholipids (phosphatidylethanolamine and phosphatidylglycerol). (MDO, membrane-derived oligosaccharides.) The core region shown is that of *E coli* K-12, a strain that does not normally contain an O-antigen repeat unless transformed with an appropriate plasmid.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Raetz CRH: Bacterial endotoxins: Extraordinary lipids that activate eucaryotic signal transduction. J Bacteriol 1993;175:5745.)

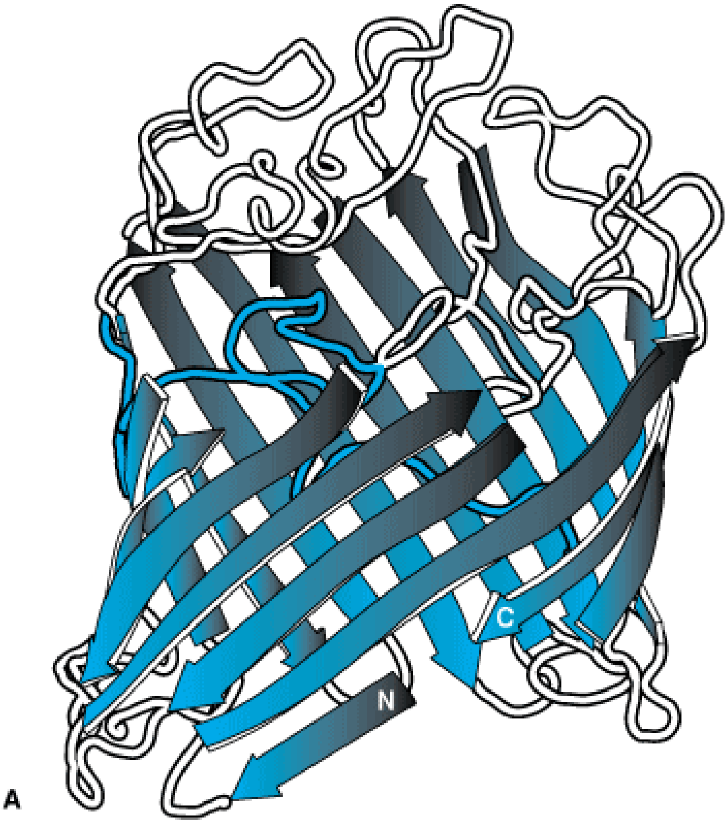
Outer Membrane

The outer membrane is chemically distinct from all other biological membranes. It is a bilayered structure; its inner leaflet resembles in composition that of the cell membrane while its outer leaflet contains a distinctive component, a lipopolysaccharide (LPS) (see below). As a result, the leaflets of this membrane are asymmetrical, and the properties of this bilayer differ considerably from those of a symmetrical biologic membrane such as the cell membrane.

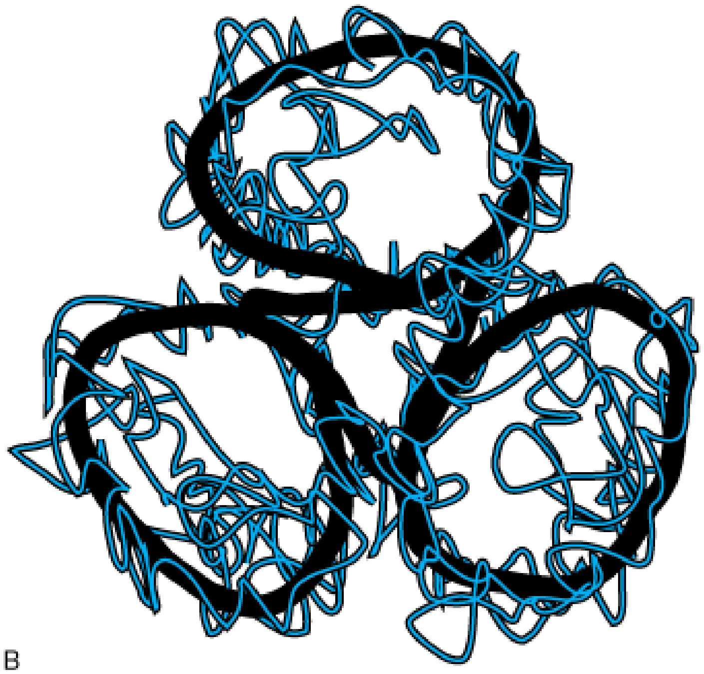
The ability of the outer membrane to exclude hydrophobic molecules is an unusual feature among biologic membranes and serves to protect the cell (in the case of enteric bacteria) from deleterious substances such as bile salts. Because of its lipid nature, the outer membrane would be expected to exclude hydrophilic molecules as well. However, the outer membrane has special channels, consisting of protein molecules called porins, that permit the passive diffusion of low-molecular-weight hydrophilic compounds like sugars, amino acids, and certain ions. Large antibiotic molecules penetrate the outer membrane relatively slowly, which accounts for the relatively high antibiotic resistance of gram-negative bacteria. The permeability of the outer membrane varies widely from one gram-negative species to another; in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* for example, which is extremely resistant to antibacterial agents, the outer membrane is 100 times less permeable than that of *E coli.*

The major proteins of the outer membrane, named according to the genes that code for them, have been placed into several functional categories on the basis of mutants in which they are lacking and on the basis of experiments in which purified proteins have been reconstituted into artificial membranes. Porins, exemplified by OmpC, D, and F and PhoE of *E coli* and *Salmonella* Typhimurium, are trimeric proteins that penetrate both faces of the outer membrane (Figure 218). They form relatively nonspecific pores that permit the free diffusion of small hydrophilic solutes across the membrane. The porins of different species have different exclusion limits, ranging from molecular weights of about 600 in *E coli* and *S typhimurium* to more than 3000 in *P aeruginosa.*

Figure 218.

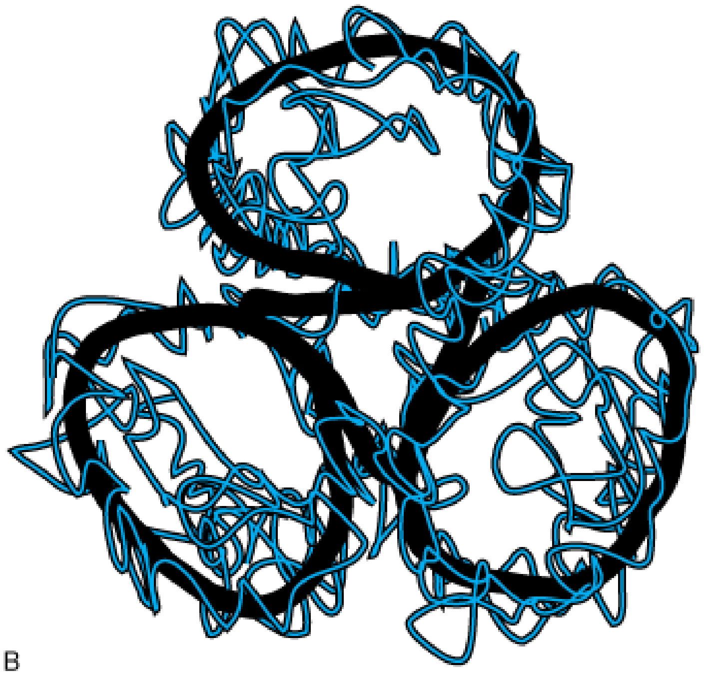


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



B

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



B

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Copyright © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved.

A: General fold of a porin monomer (OmpF porin from *E coli*). The large hollow β-barrel structure is formed by antiparallel arrangement of 16 β-strands. The strands are connected by short loops or regular turns on the periplasmic rim (bottom), whereas long irregular loops face the cell exterior (top). The internal loop, which connects β-strands 5 and 6 and extends inside the barrel, is highlighted in dark. The chain terminals are marked. The surface closest to the viewer is involved in subunit contacts. B: Schematic representation of the OmpF trimer. The view is from the extracellular space along the molecular threefold symmetry axis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Schirmer T: General and specific porins from bacterial outer membranes. J Struct Biol 1998;121:101.)

Members of a second group of outer membrane proteins, which resemble porins in many ways, are exemplified by LamB and Tsx. LamB, an inducible porin that is also the receptor for lambda bacteriophage, is responsible for most of the transmembrane diffusion of maltose and maltodextrins; Tsx, the receptor for T6 bacteriophage, is responsible for the transmembrane diffusion of nucleosides and some amino acids. LamB allows some passage of other solutes; however, its relative specificity may reflect weak interactions of solutes with configuration-specific sites within the channel.

The OmpA protein is an abundant protein in the outer membrane. The OmpA protein participates in the anchoring of the outer membrane to the peptidoglycan layer; it is also the sex pilus receptor in F-mediated bacterial conjugation (Chapter 7).

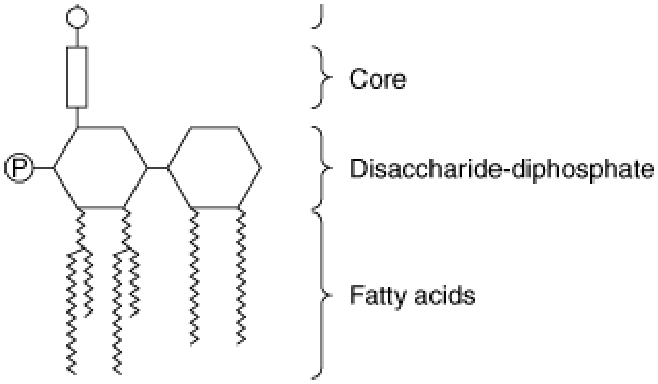
The outer membrane also contains a set of less abundant proteins that are involved in the transport of specific molecules such as vitamin B_{12} and iron-siderophore complexes. They show high affinity for their substrates and probably function like the classic carrier transport systems of the cytoplasmic membrane. The proper function of these proteins requires energy coupled through a protein called TonB. Additional minor proteins include a limited number of enzymes, among them phospholipases and proteases.

The topology of the major proteins of the outer membrane, based on cross-linking studies and analyses of functional relationships, is shown in Figure 217. The outer membrane is connected to both the peptidoglycan layer and the cytoplasmic membrane. The connection with the peptidoglycan layer is primarily mediated by the outer membrane lipoprotein (see below). About one-third of the lipoprotein molecules are covalently linked to peptidoglycan and help hold the two structures together. A noncovalent association of some of the porins with the peptidoglycan layer plays a lesser role in connecting the outer membrane with this structure. Outer membrane proteins are synthesized on ribosomes bound to the cytoplasmic surface of the cell membrane; how they are transferred to the outer membrane is still uncertain, but one hypothesis suggests that transfer occurs at zones of adhesion between the cytoplasmic and outer membranes, which are visible in the electron microscope. Unfortunately, firm evidence for such areas of adhesion has proven hard to come by.

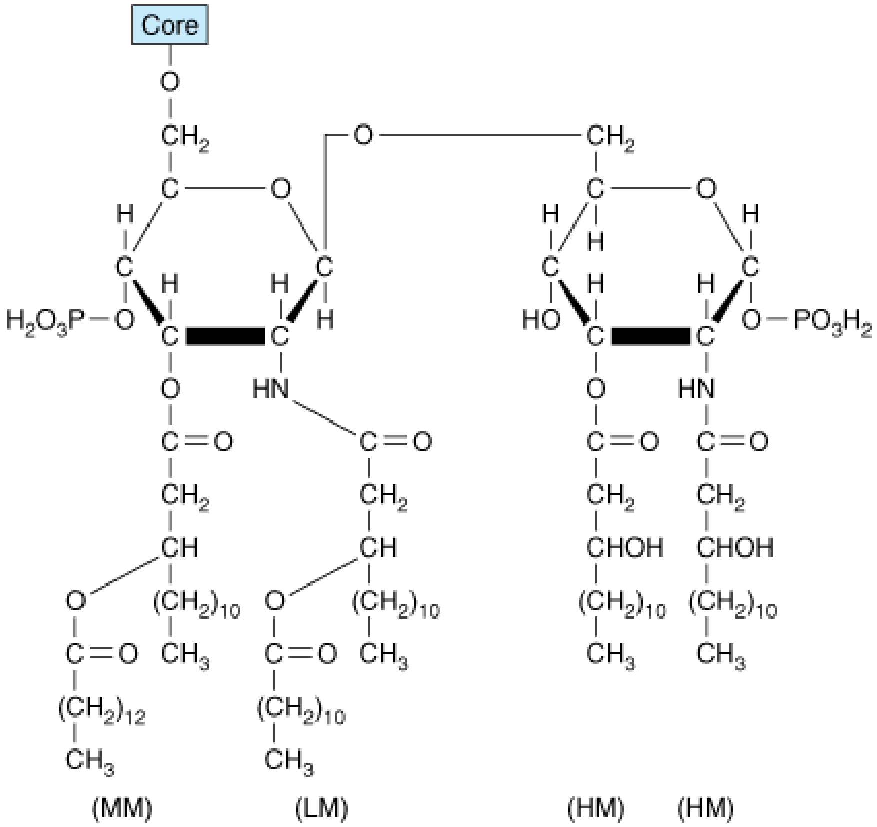
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS)

The LPS of gram-negative cell walls consists of a complex glycolipid, called lipid A, to which is attached a polysaccharide made up of a core and a terminal series of repeat units (Figure 219A). The lipid A component is embedded in the outer leaflet of the membrane anchoring the LPS. LPS is synthesized on the cytoplasmic membrane and transported to its final exterior position. The presence of LPS is required for the function of many outer membrane proteins.

Figure 219.



B. Lipid A



C. Core

Glu-GlcNAc
Gal
Glu-Gal
Hep
Hep-P-P-Eth
KDO
KDO-KDO-P-Eth • N

KDO = Keto-deoxy-octulonate
Hep = L-Glycero-D-mannoheptose
HM = β-Hydroxymyristic acid (C_{14})
LM = Lauroxymyristic acid
MM = Myristoxymyristic acid
Eth • N = Ethanolamine
Glu = Glucose
GlcNAc = *N*-Acetylglucosamine
Gal = Galactose

D. Repeat unit

Example:
(repeated up to 25 times)

Mannose
Rhamnose
Galactose

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The lipopolysaccharide (LPS) of the gram-negative cell envelope. A: A segment of the polymer, showing the arrangements of the major constituents. B: The structure of lipid A of *Salmonella* Typhimurium. C: The polysaccharide core. D: A typical repeat unit (*Salmonella* Newington). Serologic specificity is determined in part by the type of bond (α or β) between monosaccharide units.

Lipid A consists of phosphorylated glucosamine disaccharide units to which are attached a number of long-chain fatty acids (Figure 219B). β-Hydroxymyristic acid, a C14 fatty acid, is always present and is unique to this lipid; the other fatty acids, along with substituent groups on the phosphates, vary according to the bacterial species.

The polysaccharide core, shown in Figure 219C, is similar in all gram-negative species that have LPS and includes two characteristic sugars, ketodeoxyoctanoic acid (KDO) and a heptose. Each species, however, contains a unique repeat unit, that of *Salmonella* Newington being shown in Figure 219D. The repeat units are usually linear trisaccharides or branched tetra- or pentasaccharides. The repeat unit is referred to as the O antigen. The hydrophilic carbohydrate chains of the O antigen cover the bacterial surface and exclude hydrophobic compounds.

The negatively charged LPS molecules are noncovalently cross-bridged by divalent cations (ie, Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}); this stabilizes the membrane and provides a barrier to hydrophobic molecules. Removal of the divalent cations with chelating agents or their displacement by polycationic antibiotics such as polymyxins and aminoglycosides renders the outer membrane permeable to large hydrophobic molecules.

LPS, which is extremely toxic to animals, has been called the endotoxin of gram-negative bacteria because it is firmly bound to the cell surface and is released only when the cells are lysed. When LPS is split into lipid A and polysaccharide, all of the toxicity is associated with the former. The O antigen is highly immunogenic in a vertebrate animal. Antigenic specificity is conferred by the O antigen as this antigen is highly variable among species and even in strains within a species. The number of possible antigenic types is very great: Over 1000 have been recognized in salmonella alone.

Not all gram-negative bacteria have outer membrane LPS composed of a variable number of repeated oligosaccharide units (see Figure 219); the outer membrane glycolipids of bacteria that colonize mucosal surfaces (eg, *Neisseria meningitidis* , *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* , *Haemophilus influenzae* , and *Haemophilus ducreyi*) have relatively short, multiantennary (ie, branched) glycans. These smaller glycolipids have been compared with the "R-type" truncated LPS structures, which lack O-antigens and are produced by rough mutants of enteric bacteria such as *E coli* . However, their structures more closely resemble those of the glycosphingolipids of mammalian cell membranes, and they are more properly termed lipooligosaccharides (LOS). These molecules exhibit extensive antigenic and structural diversity even within a single strain. LOS is an important virulence factor. Epitopes have been identified on LOS which mimic host structures and may enable these organisms to evade the immune response of the host. Some LOS (eg, those from *N gonorrhoeae, N meningitidis,* and *H ducreyi*) have a terminal *N* -acetyllactosamine (Gal→4-GlcNAc) residue which is immunochemically similar to the precursor of the human erythrocyte i antigen. In the presence of a bacterial enzyme called sialyltransferase and a host or bacterial substrate (cytidine monophospho-*N* -acetylneuraminic acid, CMP-NANA), the *N* -acetyllactosamine residue is sialylated. This sialylation, which occurs in vivo, provides the organism with the environmental advantages of molecular mimicry of a host antigen and the biologic masking thought to be provided by sialic acids.

Lipoprotein

Molecules of an unusual lipoprotein cross-link the outer membrane and peptidoglycan layers (Figure 217). The lipoprotein contains 57 amino acids, representing repeats of a 15-amino-acid sequence; it is peptide-linked to DAP residues of the peptidoglycan tetrapeptide side chains. The lipid component, consisting of a diglyceride thioether linked to a terminal cysteine, is noncovalently inserted in the outer membrane. Lipoprotein is numerically the most abundant protein of gram-negative cells (ca 700,000 molecules per cell). Its function (inferred from the behavior of mutants that lack it) is to stabilize the outer membrane and anchor it to the peptidoglycan layer.

The Periplasmic Space

The space between the inner and outer membranes, called the periplasmic space, contains the peptidoglycan layer and a gel-like solution of proteins. The periplasmic space is approximately 2040% of the cell volume, which is far from insignificant. The periplasmic proteins include binding proteins for specific substrates (eg, amino acids, sugars, vitamins, and ions), hydrolytic enzymes (eg, alkaline phosphatase and 5'-nucleotidase) that break down nontransportable substrates into transportable ones, and detoxifying enzymes (eg, β-lactamase and aminoglycoside-phosphorylase) that inactivate certain antibiotics. The periplasm also contains high concentrations of highly branched polymers of D -glucose, eight to ten residues long, which are variously substituted with glycerol phosphate and phosphatidylethanolamine residues; some contain O-succinyl esters. These so-called membrane-derived oligosaccharides appear to play a role in osmoregulation, since cells grown in media of low osmolarity increase their synthesis of these compounds 16-fold.

THE ACID-FAST CELL WALL

Some bacteria, notably the tubercle bacillus (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) and its relatives have cell walls that contain large amounts of waxes, complex branched hydrocarbons (70 to 90 carbons long) known as mycolic acids. The cell wall is composed of peptidoglycan and an external asymmetric lipid bilayer; the inner leaflet contains mycolic acids linked to an arabinoglycan and the outer leaflet contains other extractable lipids. This is a highly ordered lipid bilayer in which proteins are embedded forming water-filled pores through which nutrients and certain drugs can pass slowly. Some compounds can also penetrate the lipid domains of the cell wall albeit slowly. This hydrophobic structure renders these bacteria resistant to many harsh chemicals including detergents and strong acids. If a dye is introduced into these cells by brief heating or treatment with detergents, it cannot be removed by dilute hydrochloric acid, as in other bacteria. These organisms are therefore called acid-fast. The permeability of the cell wall to hydrophilic molecules is 100- to 1000-fold lower than for *E coli* and may be responsible for the slow growth rate of mycobacteria.

CELL WALLS OF THE ARCHAEA

The Archaea do not have cell walls like the Bacteria. Some have a simple S-layer (see below) often comprised of glycoproteins. Some Archaea have a rigid cell wall composed of polysaccharides or a peptidoglycan called pseudomurein. The pseudomurein differs from the peptidoglycan of bacteria by having L -amino acids rather than D -amino acids and disaccharide units with an α-1,3 rather than a β-1,4 linkage. Archaea that have a pseudomurein cell wall are gram positive.

CRYSTALLINE SURFACE LAYERS

Many bacteria, both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria as well as archaebacteria, possess a two-dimensional crystalline, subunit-type layer lattice of protein or glycoprotein molecules (S-layer) as the outermost component of the cell envelope. In both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, this structure is sometimes several molecules thick. In some Archaea, they are the only layer external to the cell membrane.

S-layers are generally composed of a single kind of protein molecule, sometimes with carbohydrates attached. The isolated molecules are capable of self-assembly, ie, they make sheets similar or identical to those present on the cells. S-layer proteins are resistant to proteolytic enzymes and protein-denaturing agents. The function of the S-layer is uncertain but is probably protective. In some cases, it has been shown to protect the cell from wall-degrading enzymes, from invasion by *Bdellovibrio bacteriovorous* (a predatory bacterium), and from bacteriophages. It also plays a role in the maintenance of cell shape in some species of archaebacteria, and it may be involved in cell adhesion to host epidermal surfaces.

ENZYMES THAT ATTACK CELL WALLS

The β1→4 linkage of the peptidoglycan backbone is hydrolyzed by the enzyme lysozyme, which is found in animal secretions (tears, saliva, nasal secretions) as well as in egg white. Gram-positive bacteria treated with lysozyme in low-osmotic-strength media lyse; if the osmotic strength of the medium is raised to balance the internal osmotic pressure of the cell, free spherical bodies called protoplasts are liberated. The outer membrane of the gram-negative cell wall prevents access of lysozyme unless disrupted by an agent such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), a compound that chelates divalent cations; in osmotically protected media, cells treated with EDTA-lysozyme form spheroplasts that still possess remnants of the complex gram-negative wall, including the outer membrane.

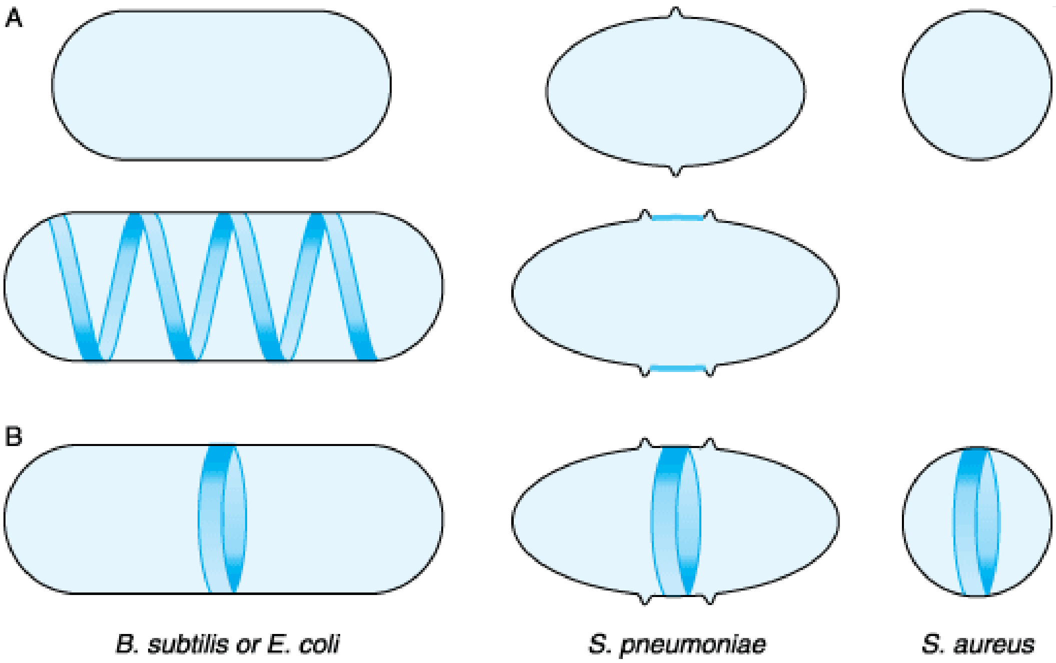
Bacteria themselves possess a number of autolysins, hydrolytic enzymes that attack peptidoglycan, including muramidases, glucosaminidases, endopeptidases, and carboxypeptidases. These enzymes catalyze the turnover or degradation of peptidoglycan in bacteria. These enzymes presumably participate in cell wall growth and turnover and in cell separation, but their activity is most apparent during the dissolution of dead cells (autolysis).

Enzymes that degrade bacterial cell walls are also found in cells that digest whole bacteria, eg, protozoa and the phagocytic cells of higher animals.

CELL WALL GROWTH

Cell wall synthesis is necessary for cell division; however, the incorporation of new cell wall material varies with the shape of the bacterium. Rod-shaped bacteria (eg, *E coli, Bacillus subtilis*) have two modes of cell wall synthesis; new peptidoglycan is inserted along a helical path leading to elongation of the cell, and is inserted in a closing ring around the future division site, leading to the formation of the division septum. Coccoid cells such as *S aureus* do not seem to have an elongation mode of cell wall synthesis. Instead, new peptidoglycan is inserted only at the division site. A third form of cell wall growth is exemplified by *S pneumoniae,* which are not true cocci, as their shape is not totally round, but instead have the shape of a rugby ball. *S pneumoniae* synthesize cell wall not only at the septum but also at the so-called "equatorial rings" (Figure 220).

Figure 220.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Incorporation of new cell wall in differently shaped bacteria. Rod-shaped bacteria such as *Bacillus subtilis* or *Escherichia coli* have two modes of cell wall synthesis: New peptidoglycan is inserted along a helical path (A), leading to elongation of the lateral wall, and is inserted in a closing ring around the future division site, leading to the formation of the division septum (B). *Streptococcus pneumoniae* cells have the shape of a rugby ball and elongate by inserting new cell wall material at the so-called equatorial rings (A), which correspond to an outgrowth of the cell wall that encircles the cell. An initial ring is duplicated, and the two resultant rings are progressively separated, marking the future division sites of the daughter cells. The division septum is then synthesized in the middle of the cell (B). Round cells such as *Staphylococcus aureus* do not seem to have an elongation mode of cell wall synthesis. Instead, new peptidoglycan is inserted only at the division septum (B). Elongation-associated growth is indicated in the lighter color, and division-associated growth is indicated in the darker color.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Scheffers DJ and Pinho MG: Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2005;69:585.)

PROTOPLASTS, SPHEROPLASTS, AND L FORMS

Removal of the bacterial wall may be accomplished by hydrolysis with lysozyme or by blocking peptidoglycan synthesis with an antibiotic such as penicillin. In osmotically protective media, such treatments liberate protoplasts from gram-positive cells and spheroplasts (which retain outer membrane and entrapped peptidoglycan) from gram-negative cells.

If such cells are able to grow and divide, they are called L forms. L forms are difficult to cultivate and usually require a medium that is solidified with agar as well as having the right osmotic strength. L forms are produced more readily with penicillin than with lysozyme, suggesting the need for residual peptidoglycan.

Some L forms can revert to the normal bacillary form upon removal of the inducing stimulus. Thus, they are able to resume normal cell wall synthesis. Others are stable and never revert. The factor that determines their capacity to revert may again be the presence of residual peptidoglycan, which normally acts as a primer in its own biosynthesis.

Some bacterial species produce L forms spontaneously. The spontaneous or antibiotic-induced formation of L forms in the host may produce chronic infections, the organisms persisting by becoming sequestered in protective regions of the body. Since L-form infections are relatively resistant to antibiotic treatment, they present special problems in chemotherapy. Their reversion to the bacillary form can produce relapses of the overt infection.

THE MYCOPLASMAS

The mycoplasmas are cell wall-lacking bacteria containing no peptidoglycan. There are also wall-less Archaea, but they have been less well studied. Genomic analysis places the mycoplasmas close to the gram-positive bacteria from which they may have been derived. Mycoplasmas lack a target for cell wall-inhibiting antimicrobial agents (eg, penicillins and cephalosporins) and are therefore resistant to these drugs. Some, like *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* , an agent of pneumonia, contain sterols in their membranes. The difference between L forms and mycoplasmas is that when the murein is allowed to reform, L forms revert to their original bacteria shape, but mycoplasmas never do.

Capsule & Glycocalyx

Many bacteria synthesize large amounts of extracellular polymer when growing in their natural environments. With one known exception (the poly-D -glutamic acid capsules of *Bacillus anthracis* and *Bacillus licheniformis*), the extracellular material is polysaccharide (Table 21). The terms capsule and slime layer are frequently used to describe polysaccharide layers; the more inclusive term glycocalyx is also used. Glycocalyx is defined as the polysaccharide-containing material lying outside the cell. A condensed, well-defined layer closely surrounding the cell that excludes particles, such as India ink, is referred to as a capsule (Figure 221). If the glycocalyx is loosely associated with the cell and does not exclude particles, it is referred to as a slime layer. Extracellular polymer is synthesized by enzymes located at the surface of the bacterial cell. *Streptococcus mutans,* for example, uses two enzymesglucosyl transferase and fructosyl transferaseto synthesize long-chain dextrans (poly-D -glucose) and levans (poly-D -fructose) from sucrose. These polymers are called homopolymers. Polymers containing more than one kind of monosaccharide are called heteropolymers.

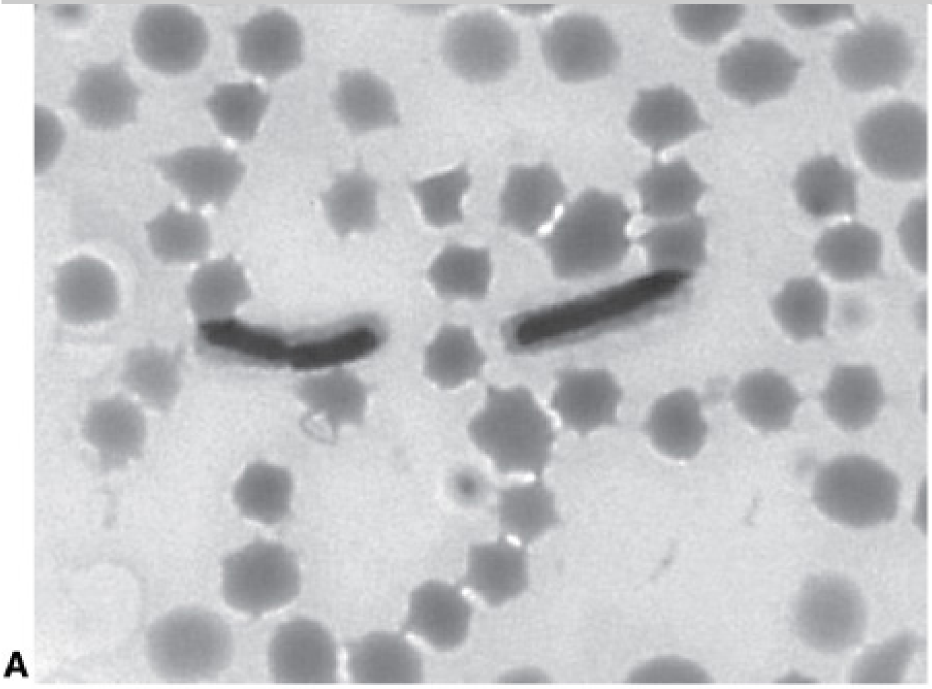
Table 21. Chemical Composition of the Extracellular Polymer in Selected Bacteria.

Bacillus anthracis
Polypeptide
D -Glutamic acid
Enterobacter aerogenes
Complex polysaccharide
Glucose, fucose, glucuronic acid
Neisseria meningitidis
Homopolymers and heteropolymers, eg,
Serogroup A
Partially O-acetylated *N* -acetylmannosaminephosphate
Serogroup B
N -Acetylneuraminic acid (sialic acid)
Serogroup C
Acetylated sialic acid
Serogroup 135
Galactose, sialic acid
Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcus)
Complex polysaccharide (many types), eg,
Type II
Rhamnose, glucose, glucuronic acid

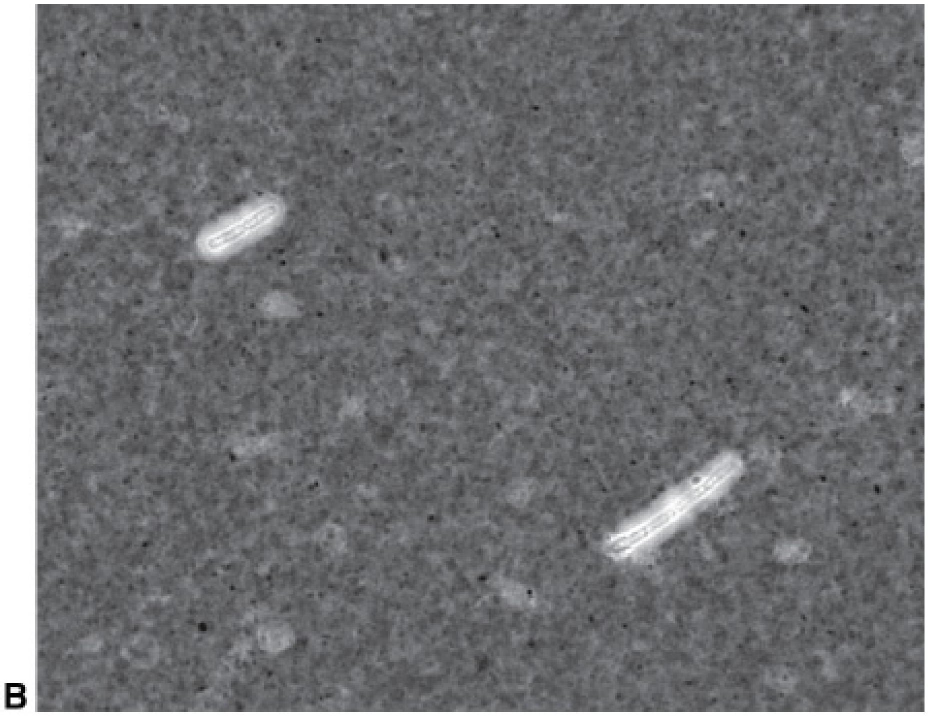
Type III
Glucose, glucuronic acid
Type VI
Galactose, glucose, rhamnose
Type XIV
Galactose, glucose, *N* -acetylglucosamine
Type XVIII
Rhamnose, glucose
Streptococcus pyogenes (group A)
Hyaluronic acid
N -Acetylglucosamine, glucuronic acid
Streptococcus salivarius
Levan
Fructose

Organism	Polymer	Chemical Subunits

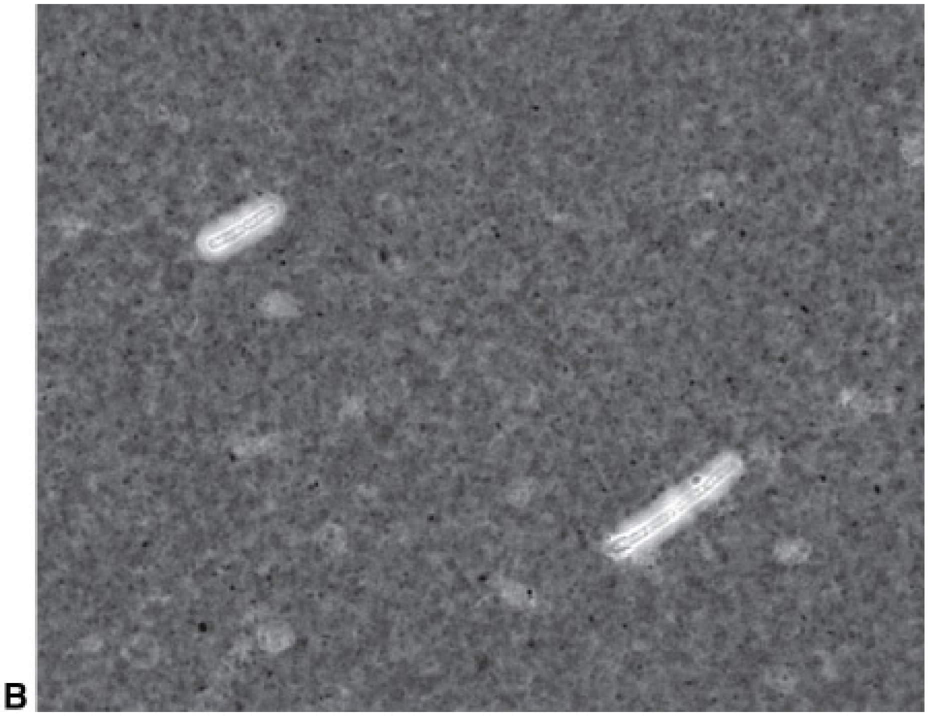
Figure 221.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Copyright © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved.

Bacterial capsules. A: *Bacillus anthracis* M'Faydean capsule stain, grown at 35 C, in defibrinated horse blood. B: Demonstration of the presence of a capsule in *Bacillus anthracis* by negative staining with India ink. This method is useful for improving visualization of encapsulated bacteria in clinical samples such as blood, blood culture bottles, or cerebrospinal fluid. (CDC, courtesy of Larry Stauffer, Oregon State Public Health Laboratory.)

The capsule contributes to the invasiveness of pathogenic bacteriaencapsulated cells are protected from phagocytosis unless they are coated with anticapsular antibody. The glycocalyx plays a role in the adherence of bacteria to surfaces in their environment, including the cells of plant and animal hosts. *S mutans,* for example, owes its capacity to adhere tightly to tooth enamel to its glycocalyx. Bacterial cells of the same or different species become entrapped in the glycocalyx, which forms the layer known as plaque on the tooth surface; acidic products excreted by these bacteria cause dental caries (Chapter 11). The essential role of the glycocalyx in this processand its formation from sucroseexplains the correlation of dental caries with sucrose consumption by the human population. Because outer polysaccharide layers bind a significant amount of water, the glycocalyx layer may also play a role in resistance to desiccation.

Flagella

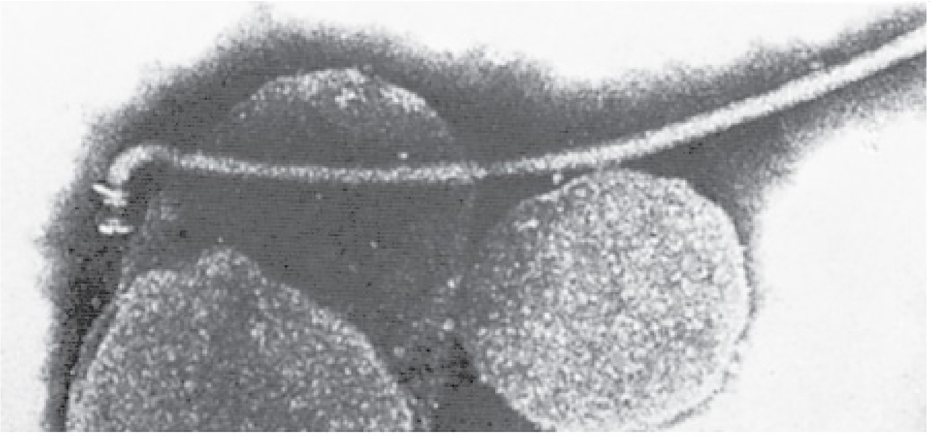
STRUCTURE

Bacterial flagella are thread-like appendages composed entirely of protein, 1230 nm in diameter. They are the organs of locomotion for the forms that possess them. Three types of arrangement are known: monotrichous (single polar flagellum), lophotrichous (multiple polar flagella), and peritrichous (flagella distributed over the entire cell). The three types are illustrated in Figure 222.

A bacterial flagellum is made up of several thousand molecules of a protein subunit called flagellin. In a few organisms (eg, caulobacter), flagella are composed of two types of flagellin, but in most only a single type is found. The flagellum is formed by the aggregation of subunits to form a helical structure. If flagella are removed by mechanically agitating a suspension of bacteria, new flagella are rapidly formed by the synthesis, aggregation, and extrusion of flagellin subunits; motility is restored within 36 minutes. The flagellins of different bacterial species presumably differ from one another in primary structure. They are highly antigenic (H antigens), and some of the immune responses to infection are directed against these proteins.

The flagellum is attached to the bacterial cell body by a complex structure consisting of a hook and a basal body. The hook is a short curved structure that appears to act as the universal joint between the motor in the basal structure and the flagellum. The basal body bears a set of rings, one pair in gram-positive bacteria and two pairs in gram-negative bacteria. An electron micrograph and interpretative diagrams of the gram-negative structure are shown in Figures 223 and 224; the rings labeled L and P are absent in gram-positive cells. The complexity of the bacterial flagellum is revealed by genetic studies, which show that over 40 gene products are involved in its assembly and function.

Figure 223.

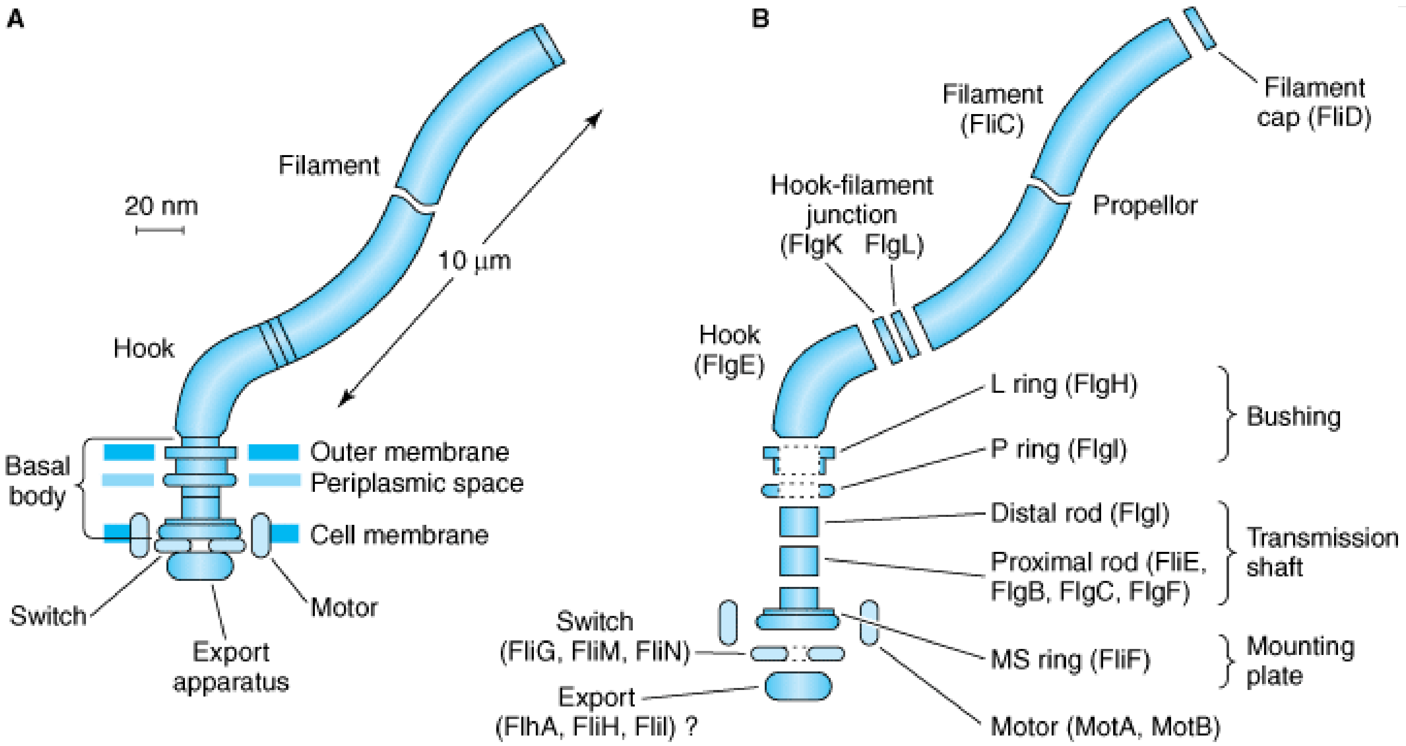


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of a negatively stained lysate of *Rhodospirillum molischianum,* showing the basal structure of an isolated flagellum.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Cohen-Bazire G, London L: Basal organelles of bacterial flagella. J Bacteriol 1967;94:458.)

Figure 224.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: General structure of the flagellum of a gram-negative bacterium, such as *E coli* or *S Typhimurium* . The filament-hook-basal body complex has been isolated and extensively characterized. The location of the export apparatus has not been demonstrated. B: An exploded diagram of the flagellum showing the substructures and the proteins from which they are constructed. The FliF protein is responsible for the M-ring feature, S-ring feature, and collar feature of the substructure shown, which is collectively termed the MS ring. The location of FliE with respect to the MS ring and the rodand the order of the FlgB, FlgC, and FlgF proteins within the proximal rod is not known.

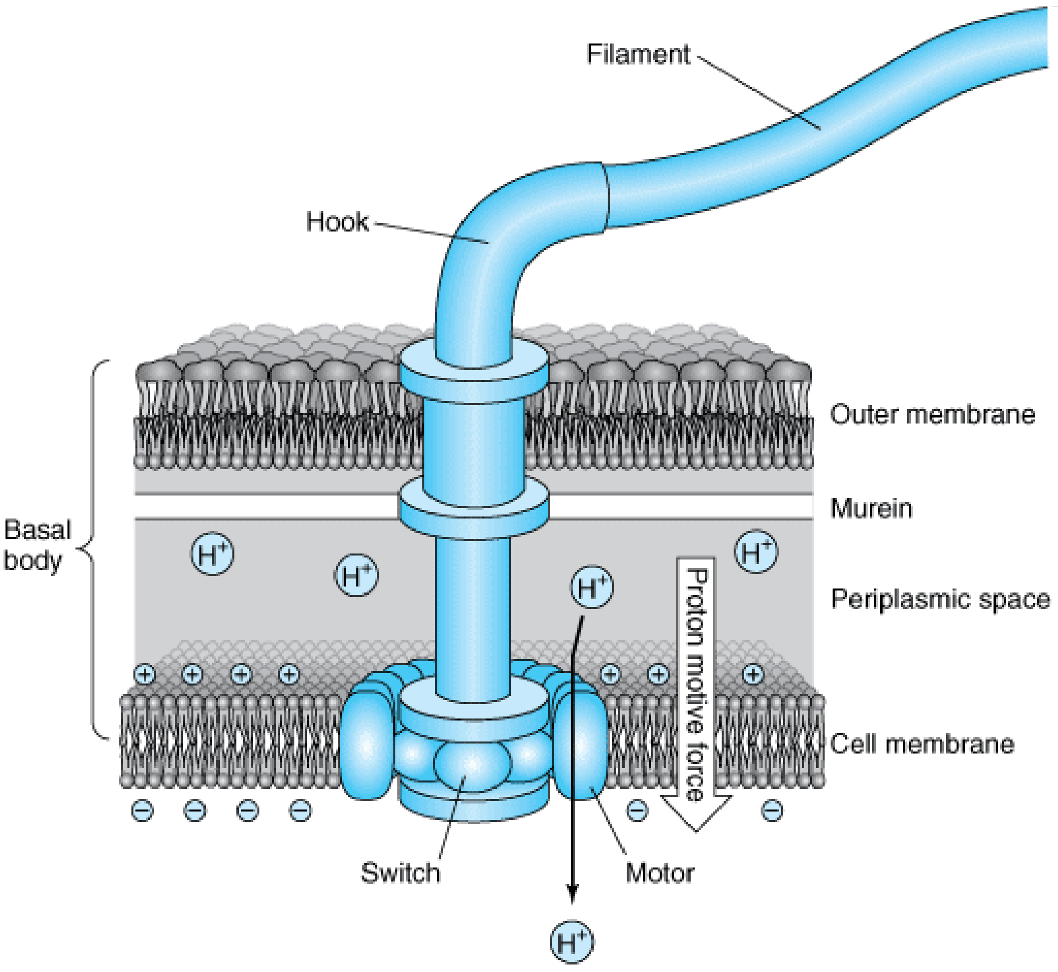
(From Macnab RM: Genetics and biogenesis of bacterial flagella. Annu Rev Genet 1992;26:131. Reproduced with permission from *Annual Review of Genetics,* Volume 26, 1992 by Annual Reviews.)

Flagella are made stepwise (Figure 224). First the basal body is assembled and inserted into the cell envelope. Then the hook is added, and finally, the filament is assembled progressively by the addition of flagellin subunits to its growing tip. The flagellin subunits are extruded through a hollow central channel in the flagella; when it reaches the tip it condenses with its predecessors, and thus the filament elongates.

MOTILITY

Bacterial flagella are semirigid helical rotors to which the cell imparts a spinning movement. Rotation is driven by the flow of protons into the cell down the gradient produced by the primary proton pump (see above); in the absence of a metabolic energy source, it can be driven by a proton motive force generated by ionophores. Bacteria living in alkaline environments (alkalophiles) use the energy of the sodium ion gradientrather than the proton gradientto drive the flagellar motor (Figure 225).

Figure 225.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structural components within the basal body of the flagellum allow the inner portion of this structure, the rods of the basal body, and the attached hook-filament complex to rotate. The outer rings remain statically in contact with the inner and outer cell membranes and cell wall (murein), anchoring the flagellum complex to the bacterial cell envelope. Rotation is driven by the flow of protons through the motor from the periplasmic space, outside the cell membrane, into the cytoplasm in response to the electric field and proton gradient across the membrane, which together comprise the proton motive force. A switch determines the direction of rotation, which in turn determines whether the bacteria swim forward (due to counterclockwise rotation of the flagellum) or tumble (due to clockwise rotation of the flagellum).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Saier MH Jr: Peter Mitchell and his chemiosmotic theories. ASM News 1997;63:13.)

All of the components of the flagellar motor are located in the cell envelope. Flagella attached to isolated, sealed cell envelopes rotate normally when the medium contains a suitable substrate for respiration or when a proton gradient is artificially established.

When a peritrichous bacterium swims, its flagella associate to form a posterior bundle that drives the cell forward in a straight line by counterclockwise rotation. At intervals, the flagella reverse their direction of rotation and momentarily dissociate, causing the cell to tumble until swimming resumes in a new, randomly determined direction. This behavior makes possible the property of chemotaxis: A cell that is moving away from the source of a chemical attractant tumbles and reorients itself more frequently than one that is moving toward the attractant, the result being the net movement of the cell toward the source. The presence of a chemical attractant (such as a sugar or an amino acid) is sensed by specific receptors located in the cell membrane (in many cases, the same receptor also participates in membrane transport of that molecule). The bacterial cell is too small to be able to detect the existence of a spatial chemical gradient (ie, a gradient between its two poles); rather, experiments show that it detects temporal gradients, ie, concentrations that decrease with time during which the cell is moving away from the attractant source and increase with time during which the cell is moving toward it.

Some compounds act as repellants rather than attractants. One mechanism by which cells respond to attractants and repellents involves a cGMP-mediated methylation and demethylation of specific proteins in the membrane. Attractants cause a transient inhibition of demethylation of these proteins, while repellents stimulate their demethylation.

The mechanism by which a change in cell behavior is brought about in response to a change in the environment is called sensory transduction. Sensory transduction is responsible not only for chemotaxis but also for aerotaxis (movement toward the optimal oxygen concentration), phototaxis (movement of photosynthetic bacteria toward the light), and electron acceptor taxis (movement of respiratory bacteria toward alternative electron acceptors, such as nitrate and fumarate). In these three responses, as in chemotaxis, net movement is determined by regulation of the tumbling response.

Pili (Fimbriae)

Many gram-negative bacteria possess rigid surface appendages called pili (L "hairs") or fimbriae (L "fringes"). They are shorter and finer than flagella; like flagella, they are composed of structural protein subunits termed pilins. Some pili contain a single type of pilin, others more than one. Minor proteins termed adhesins are located at the tips of pili and are responsible for the attachment properties. Two classes can be distinguished: ordinary pili, which play a role in the adherence of symbiotic and pathogenic bacteria to host cells, and sex pili, which are responsible for the attachment of donor and recipient cells in bacterial conjugation (see Chapter 7). Pili are illustrated in Figure 226, in which the sex pili have been coated with phage particles for which they serve as specific receptors.

Figure 226.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Surface appendages of bacteria. Electron micrograph of a cell of *E coli* possessing three types of appendages: ordinary pili (short, straight bristles), a sex pilus (longer, flexible, with phage particles attached), and several flagella (longest, thickest). Diameters: ordinary pili: 7 nm; sex pili: 8.5 nm; flagella: 25 nm.

(Courtesy of J Carnahan and C Brinton.)

Motility via pili is completely different from flagellar motion. Pilin molecules are arranged helically to form a straight cylinder that does not rotate and lacks a complete basal body. Their tips strongly adhere to surfaces at a distance from the cells. Pili then depolymerize from the inner end, thus retracting inside the cell. The result is that the bacterium moves in the direction of the adhering tip. This kind of surface motility is called twitching and is widespread among piliated bacteria. Unlike flagella, pili grow from the inside of the cell outward.

The virulence of certain pathogenic bacteria depends on the production not only of toxins but also of "colonization antigens," which are ordinary pili that provide the cells with adherent properties. In enteropathogenic *E coli* strains, both the enterotoxins and the colonization antigens (pili) are genetically determined by transmissible plasmids, as discussed in Chapter 7.

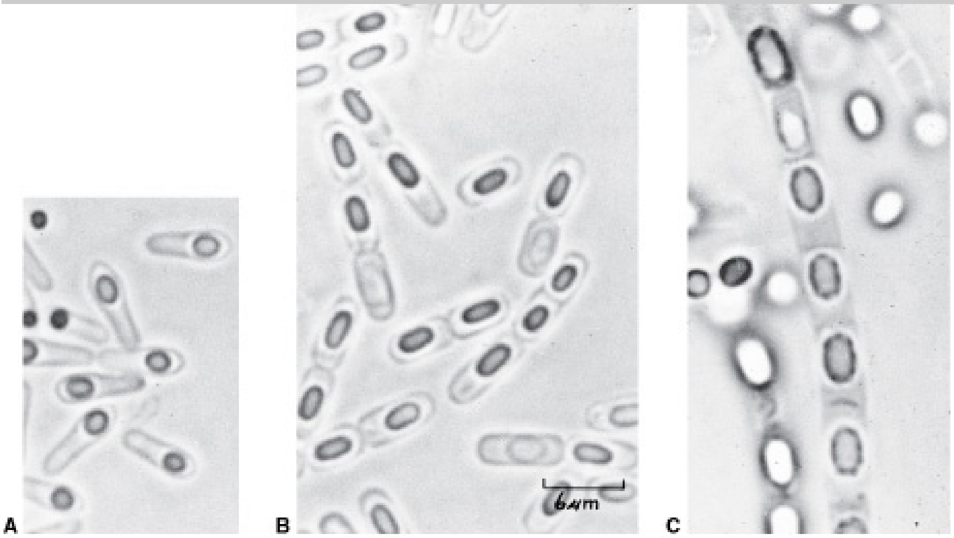
In one group of gram-positive cocci, the streptococci, fimbriae are the site of the main surface antigen, the M protein. Lipoteichoic acid, associated with these fimbriae, is responsible for the adherence of group A streptococci to epithelial cells of their hosts.

Pili of different bacteria are antigenically distinct and elicit the formation of antibodies by the host. Antibodies against the pili of one bacterial species will not prevent the attachment of another species. Some bacteria (see Chapter 21), such as *N gonorrhoeae,* are able to make pili of different antigenic types (antigenic variation) and thus can still adhere to cells in the presence of antibodies to their original type of pili. Like capsules, pili inhibit the phagocytic ability of leukocytes.

Endospores

Members of several bacterial genera are capable of forming endospores (see Figure 227). The two most common are gram-positive rods: the obligately aerobic genus *Bacillus* and the obligately anaerobic genus *Clostridium* . The other bacteria known to form endospores are *Thermoactinomyces, Sporolactobacillus, Sporosarcina, Sporotomaculum, Sporomusa,* and *Sporohalobacter* . These organisms undergo a cycle of differentiation in response to environmental conditions: The process, sporulation, is triggered by near depletion of any of several nutrients (carbon, nitrogen, or phosphorous). Each cell forms a single internal spore that is liberated when the mother cell undergoes autolysis. The spore is a resting cell, highly resistant to desiccation, heat, and chemical agents; when returned to favorable nutritional conditions and activated (see below), the spore germinates to produce a single vegetative cell.

Figure 227.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Sporulating cells of bacillus species. A: Unidentified bacillus from soil. B: *B cereus.* C: *B megaterium.*

(Reproduced, with permission, from Robinow CF, in: Structure. Vol 1 of: *The Bacteria: A Treatise on Structure and Function.* Gunsalus IC, Stanier RY [editors]. Academic Press, 1960.)

SPORULATION

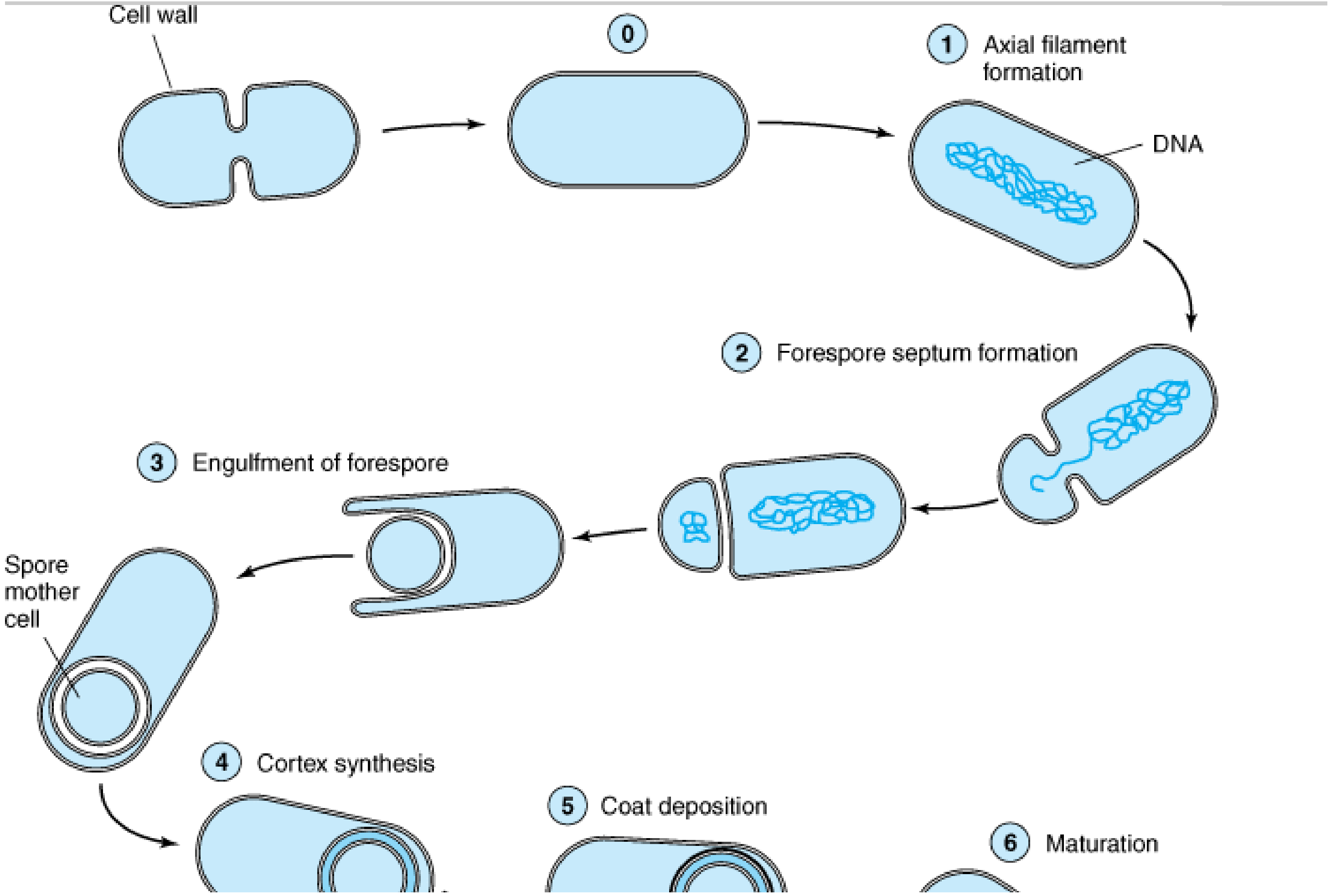
The sporulation process begins when nutritional conditions become unfavorable, near depletion of the nitrogen or carbon source (or both) being the most significant factor. Sporulation occurs massively in cultures that have terminated exponential growth as a result of this near depletion.

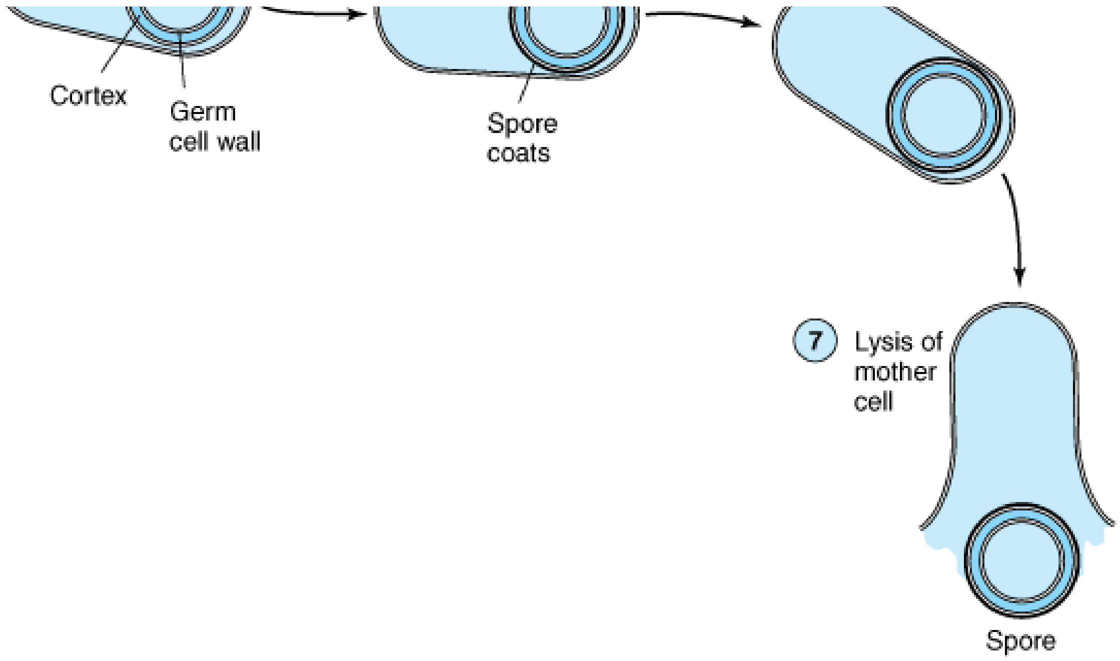
Sporulation involves the production of many new structures, enzymes, and metabolites along with the disappearance of many vegetative cell components. These changes represent a true process of differentiation: A series of genes whose products determine the formation and final composition of the spore are activated. These changes involve alterations in the transcriptional specificity of RNA polymerase, which is determined by the association of the polymerase core protein with one or another promoter-specific protein called a sigma factor. During vegetative growth, a sigma factor designated σ^A predominates. Then, during sporulation, five other sigma factors are formed that cause various spore genes to be expressed at various times in specific locations.

The sequence of events in sporulation is highly complex: Differentiation of a vegetative cell of *B subtilis* into an endospore takes about 7 hours under laboratory conditions. Different morphologic and chemical events occur at sequential stages of the process. Seven different stages have been identified.

Morphologically, sporulation begins with the formation of an axial filament (Figure 228). The process continues with an infolding of the membrane so as to produce a double membrane structure whose facing surfaces correspond to the cell wall-synthesizing surface of the cell envelope. The growing points move progressively toward the pole of the cell so as to engulf the developing spore.

Figure 228.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The stages of endospore formation.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Merrick MJ: Streptomyces. In: *Developmental Biology of Procaryotes.* Parish JH [editor]. Univ California Press, 1979.)

The two spore membranes now engage in the active synthesis of special layers that will form the cell envelope: the spore wall and the cortex, lying outside the facing membranes. In the newly isolated cytoplasm, or core, many vegetative cell enzymes are degraded and are replaced by a set of unique spore constituents.

PROPERTIES OF ENDOSPORES

Core

The core is the spore protoplast. It contains a complete nucleus (chromosome), all of the components of the protein-synthesizing apparatus, and an energy-generating system based on glycolysis. Cytochromes are lacking even in aerobic species, the spores of which rely on a shortened electron transport pathway involving flavoproteins. A number of vegetative cell enzymes are increased in amount (eg, alanine racemase), and a number of unique enzymes are formed (eg, dipicolinic acid synthetase). Spores contain no reduced pyridine nucleotides or ATP. The energy for germination is stored as 3-phosphoglycerate rather than as ATP.

The heat resistance of spores is due in part to their dehydrated state and in part to the presence in the core of large amounts (515% of the spore dry weight) of calcium dipicolinate, which is formed from an intermediate of the lysine biosynthetic pathway (see Figure 618). In some way not yet understood, these properties result in the stabilization of the spore enzymes, most of which exhibit normal heat lability when isolated in soluble form.

Spore Wall

The innermost layer surrounding the inner spore membrane is called the spore wall. It contains normal peptidoglycan and becomes the cell wall of the germinating vegetative cell.

Cortex

The cortex is the thickest layer of the spore envelope. It contains an unusual type of peptidoglycan, with many fewer cross-links than are found in cell wall peptidoglycan. Cortex peptidoglycan is extremely sensitive to lysozyme, and its autolysis plays a role in spore germination.

Coat

The coat is composed of a keratin-like protein containing many intramolecular disulfide bonds. The impermeability of this layer confers on spores their relative resistance to antibacterial chemical agents.

Exosporium

The exosporium is a lipoprotein membrane containing some carbohydrate.

GERMINATION

The germination process occurs in three stages: activation, initiation, and outgrowth.

Activation

Most endospores cannot germinate immediately after they have formed. But they can germinate after they have rested for several days or are first activated, in a nutritionally rich medium, by one or another agent that damages the spore coat. Among the agents that can overcome spore dormancy are heat, abrasion, acidity, and compounds containing free sulfhydryl groups.

Initiation

Once activated, a spore will initiate germination if the environmental conditions are favorable. Different species have evolved receptors that recognize different effectors as signaling a rich medium: Thus, initiation is triggered by L -alanine in one species and by adenosine in another. Binding of the effector activates an autolysin that rapidly degrades the cortex peptidoglycan. Water is taken up, calcium dipicolinate is released, and a variety of spore constituents are degraded by hydrolytic enzymes.

Outgrowth

Degradation of the cortex and outer layers results in the emergence of a new vegetative cell consisting of the spore protoplast with its surrounding wall. A period of active biosynthesis follows; this period, which terminates in cell division, is called outgrowth. Outgrowth requires a supply of all nutrients essential for cell growth.

STAINING

Stains combine chemically with the bacterial protoplasm; if the cell is not already dead, the staining process itself will kill it. The process is thus a drastic one and may produce artifacts.

The commonly used stains are salts. **Basic stains** consist of a colored cation with a colorless anion (eg, methylene blue$^+$ chloride$^-$); **acidic stains** are the reverse (eg, sodium$^+$ eosinate$^-$). Bacterial cells are rich in nucleic acid, bearing negative charges as phosphate groups. These combine with the positively charged basic dyes. Acidic dyes do not stain bacterial cells and hence can be used to stain background material a contrasting color (see Negative Staining, below).

The basic dyes stain bacterial cells uniformly unless the cytoplasmic RNA is destroyed first. Special staining techniques can be used, however, to differentiate flagella, capsules, cell walls, cell membranes, granules, nucleoids, and spores.

The Gram Stain

An important taxonomic characteristic of bacteria is their response to Gram stain. The Gram-staining property appears to be a fundamental one, since the Gram reaction is correlated with many other morphologic properties in phylogenetically related forms (Chapter 3). An organism that is potentially gram-positive may appear so only under a particular set of environmental conditions and in a young culture.

The Gram-staining procedure (see Chapter 47 for details) begins with the application of a basic dye, crystal violet. A solution of iodine is then applied; all bacteria will be stained blue at this point in the procedure. The cells are then treated with alcohol. Gram-positive cells retain the crystal violet-iodine complex, remaining blue; gram-negative cells are completely decolorized by alcohol. As a last step, a counterstain (such as the red dye safranin) is applied so that the decolorized gram-negative cells will take on a contrasting color; the gram-positive cells now appear purple.

The basis of the differential Gram reaction is the structure of the cell wall, as discussed earlier in this chapter.

The Acid-Fast Stain

Acid-fast bacteria are those that retain carbolfuchsin (basic fuchsin dissolved in a phenol-alcohol-water mixture) even when decolorized with hydrochloric acid in alcohol. A smear of cells on a slide is flooded with carbolfuchsin and heated on a steam bath. Following this, the discolorization with acid-alcohol is carried out, and finally a contrasting (blue or green) counterstain is applied (see Chapter 47). Acid-fast bacteria (mycobacteria and some of the related actinomycetes) appear red; others take on the color of the counterstain.

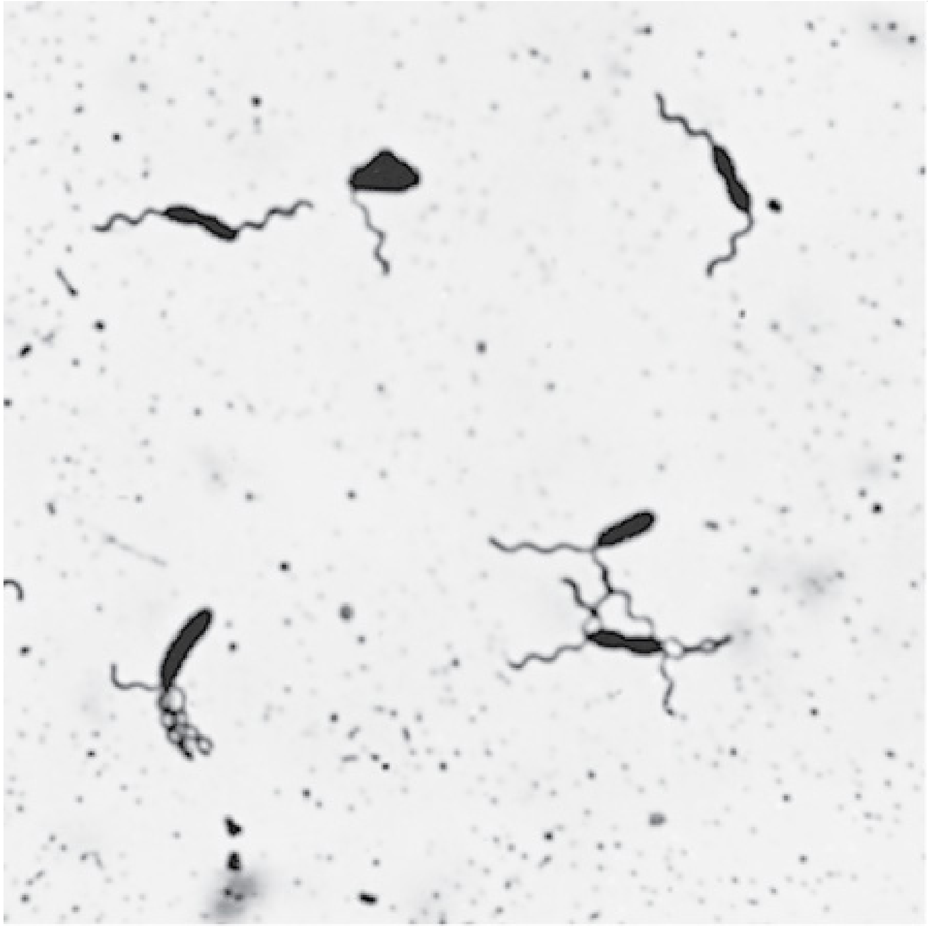
Negative Staining

This procedure involves staining the background with an acidic dye, leaving the cells contrastingly colorless. The black dye nigrosin is commonly used. This method is used for those cells or structures difficult to stain directly (Figure 221B).

The Flagella Stain

Flagella are too fine (1230 nm in diameter) to be visible in the light microscope. However, their presence and arrangement can be demonstrated by treating the cells with an unstable colloidal suspension of tannic acid salts, causing a heavy precipitate to form on the cell walls and flagella. In this manner, the apparent diameter of the flagella is increased to such an extent that subsequent staining with basic fuchsin makes the flagella visible in the light microscope. Figure 229 shows cells stained by this method.

Figure 229.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Flagella stain of pseudomonas species.

(Courtesy of Leifson E: J Bacteriol 1951;62:377.)

In peritrichous bacteria, the flagella form into bundles during movement, and such bundles may be thick enough to be observed on living cells by darkfield or phase contrast microscopy.

The Capsule Stain

Capsules are usually demonstrated by the negative staining procedure or a modification of it (Figure 221). One such "capsule stain" (Welch method) involves treatment with hot crystal violet solution followed by a rinsing with copper sulfate solution. The latter is used to remove excess stain because the conventional washing with water would dissolve the capsule. The copper salt also gives color to the background, with the result that the cell and background appear dark blue and the capsule a much paler blue.

Staining of Nucleoids

Nucleoids are stainable with the Feulgen stain, which is specific for DNA (see Figure 24).

The Spore Stain

Spores are most simply observed as intracellular refractile bodies in unstained cell suspensions or as colorless areas in cells stained by conventional methods (Figure 227). The spore wall is relatively impermeable, but dyes can be made to penetrate it by heating the preparation. The same impermeability then serves to prevent decolorization of the spore by a period of alcohol treatment sufficient to decolorize vegetative cells. The latter can finally be counterstained. Spores are commonly stained with malachite green or carbolfuchsin.

MORPHOLOGIC CHANGES DURING GROWTH

Cell Division

Most bacteria divide by binary fission into two equal progeny cells. In a growing culture of a rod-shaped bacterium such as *E coli* , cells elongate and then form a partition that eventually separates the cell into two daughter cells. The partition is referred to as a septum and is a result of the inward growth of the cytoplasmic membrane and cell wall from opposing directions until the two daughter cells are pinched off. The chromosomes, which have doubled in number preceding the division, are distributed equally to the two daughter cells.

Although bacteria lack a mitotic spindle, the septum is formed in such a way as to separate the two sister chromosomes formed by chromosomal replication. This is accomplished by the attachment of the chromosome to the cell membrane. According to one model, completion of a cycle of DNA replication triggers active membrane synthesis between the sites of attachment of the two sister chromosomes. The chromosomes are then pushed apart by the inward growth of the septum, one copy going to each daughter cell.

Cell Groupings

If the cells remain temporarily attached following division, certain characteristic groupings result. Depending on the plane of division and the number of divisions through which the cells remain attached, the following may occur in the coccal forms: chains (streptococci), pairs (diplococci), cubical bundles (sarcinae), or flat plates. Rods may form pairs or chains.

Following fission of some bacteria, characteristic post-division movements occur. For example, a "whipping" motion can bring the cells into parallel positions; repeated division and whipping result in the "palisade" arrangement characteristic of diphtheria bacilli.

REFERENCES

Books

Balows A et al (editors): *The Prokaryotes, A Handbook on the Biology of Bacteria: Ecophysiology, Isolation, Identification, Applications.* 2nd ed. Vols 1, 2, 3, and 4. Springer, 1992.

Drlica K, Riley M (editors): *The Bacterial Chromosome.* American Society for Microbiology, 1990.

Moat AG, Foster JW: *Microbial Physiology,* 3rd ed. Wiley-Liss, 1995.

Schaechter M, Ingraham JL, Neidhardt FC: *Microbe* . American Society for Microbiology, 2006.

Sonenshein AL, Hoch JA, Losick R: Bacillus subtilis *and Its Closest Relatives.* American Society for Microbiology, 2002.

Articles & Reviews

Bermudes D, Hinkle G, Margulis L: Do prokaryotes contain microtubules? Microbiol Rev 1994;58:387. [PMID: 7968920]

Biagini GA, Finlay BJ, Lloyd D: Evolution of the hydrogenosome. FEMS Microbiol Letter 1997;155:133. [PMID: 9351194]

Blair DF: How bacteria sense and swim. Annu Rev Microbiol 1995;49:489. [PMID: 8561469]

Craig L, Pique ME, Tainer JA: Type IV pilus structure and bacterial pathogenicity. Nature Rev Microbiol 2004;2:363.

Engelhardt H, Heinz C, Niederweis M: A tetrameric porin limits the cell wall permeability of *Mycobacterium smegmatis* . J Biol Chem 2002;277:37567.

Hinnebusch J, Tilly K: Linear plasmids and chromosomes in bacteria. Mol Microbiol 1993;10:917. [PMID: 7934868]

Hueck CJ: Type III protein secretion systems in bacterial pathogens of animals and plants. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1998;62:379. [PMID: 9618447]

Koch AL: The biophysics of the gram-negative periplasmic space. Crit Rev Microbiol 1998;62:379.

Liu J, Barry CE III, Besra GS, Nikaido H: Mycolic acid structure determines the fluidity of the mycobacterial cell wall. J Biol Chem 1996;271:29545.

Messner P et al: III. Biochemistry of S-layers. FEMS Microbiol Rev 1997;20:25. [PMID: 9276927]

Naroninga N: Morphogenesis of *Escherichia coli.* Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1998;62:110.

Neuhaus FC, Baddiley J: A continuum of anionic charge: Structures and functions of D -alanyl-teichoic acids in gram-positive bacteria. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2003;67:686.

Nikaido H: Molecular basis of bacterial outer membrane permeability revisited. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2003;67:593.

Rachel R et al: Fine structure of S-layers. FEMS Microbiol Rev 1997;20:13.

Raetz CRH: Bacterial endotoxins: Extraordinary lipids that activate eucaryotic signal transduction. J Bacteriol 1993;175:5745. [PMID: 8376321]

Robinow C, Kellenberger E: The bacterial nucleoid revisited. Microbiol Rev 1994;58:211. [PMID: 7521510]

Scheffers DJ, Pinho MG: Bacterial cell wall synthesis: New insights from localization studies. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2005;69:585.

Schirmer T: General and specific porins from bacterial outer membranes. J Struct Biol 1998;121:101. [PMID: 9615433]

Vaara M: Agents that increase the permeability of the outer membrane. Microbiol Rev 1992;56:395. [PMID: 1406489]

Walsby AE: Gas vesicles. Microbiol Rev 1994;58:94. [PMID: 8177173]

Whittaker CJ, Klier CM, Kolenbrander PE: Mechanisms of adhesion by oral bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 1996;50:513. [PMID: 8905090]

DEFINITIONS

Classification, **nomenclature**, and **identification** are the three separate but interrelated areas of **taxonomy**. Classification can be defined as the arrangement of organisms into taxonomic groups (taxa) on the basis of similarities or relationships. Classification of prokaryotic organisms such as bacteria requires a knowledge obtained by experimental as well as observational techniques, because biochemical, physiologic, genetic, and morphologic properties are often necessary for an adequate description of a taxon. Nomenclature is naming an organism by international rules according to its characteristics. Identification refers to the practical use of a classification scheme: (1) to isolate and distinguish desirable organisms from undesirable ones; (2) to verify the authenticity or special properties of a culture; or, in a clinical setting, (3) to isolate and identify the causative agent of a disease. The latter may permit the selection of pharmacologic treatment specifically directed toward their eradication (Chapter 10). Identification schemes are not classification schemes, though there may be a superficial similarity. An identification scheme for a group of organisms can be devised only after that group has first been classified, ie, recognized as being different from other organisms.

CRITERIA FOR CLASSIFICATION OF BACTERIA

Suitable criteria for purposes of bacterial classification include many of the properties that were described in the preceding chapter. Valuable information can be obtained microscopically by observing cell shape and the presence or absence of specialized structures such as spores or flagella. Staining procedures such as the Gram stain can provide reliable assessment of the nature of cell surfaces. Some bacteria produce characteristic pigments, and others can be differentiated on the basis of their complement of extracellular enzymes; the activity of these proteins often can be detected as zones of clearing surrounding colonies grown in the presence of insoluble substrates (eg, zones of **hemolysis** in agar medium containing red blood cells). The use of specific antibodies can give a rapid indication of similar surface structures carried by independently isolated bacteria. Tests such as the oxidase test, which uses an artificial electron acceptor, can be used to distinguish organisms on the basis of the presence of a respiratory enzyme, cytochrome c. Simple biochemical tests can ascertain the presence of characteristic metabolic functions. Criteria leading to successful grouping of some related organisms include measurement of their sensitivity to antibiotics.

All of the foregoing properties are determined, directly or indirectly, by the genes of the examined organisms. Developments in molecular biology now make it possible to investigate the relatedness of genes or genomes by comparing sequences from different bacteria (Chapter 7).

The value of a taxonomic criterion depends upon the biologic group being compared. Traits shared by all or none of the members of a group cannot be used to distinguish its members, but they may define a group (eg, all staphylococci produce the enzyme catalase). In addition, genetic instability can cause some traits to be highly variable within a biologic group or even within a single cell line. For example, antibiotic resistance genes or genes encoding enzymes (lactose utilization, etc) may be carried on plasmids (Chapter 7), extrachromosomal genetic elements that may be transferred among unrelated bacteria or that may be lost from a subset of bacterial strains identical in all other respects. Most criteria for classification depend upon growth of the microorganism in the laboratory (Chapter 5). Organisms such as the pathogenic treponemes (Chapter 25) sometimes do not grow in the laboratory, and in these instances techniques that reveal relatedness by measurement of nucleic acid hybridization or by DNA sequence analysis may be of particular value.

IDENTIFICATION & CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

Keys

Keys organize bacterial traits in a manner that permits efficient identification of organisms. The ideal system should contain the minimum number of features required for a correct identification. Groups are split into smaller subgroups on the basis of the presence (+) or absence (–) of a diagnostic character. Continuation of the process with different characters guides the investigator to the smallest defined subgroup containing the analyzed organism. In the early stages of this process, organisms may be assigned to subgroups on the basis of characteristics that do not reflect genetic relatedness. It would be perfectly reasonable, for example, for a key to bacteria to include a group such as "bacteria forming red pigments" even though this would include such unrelated forms as *Serratia marcescens* (Chapter 16) and purple photosynthetic bacteria (Chapter 6). These two bacterial assemblages occupy distinct niches and depend upon entirely different forms of energy metabolism. Nevertheless, preliminary grouping of the assemblages would be useful because it would immediately make it possible for an investigator having to identify a red-pigmented culture to narrow the range of possibilities to relatively few types.

Numerical Taxonomy

Numerical taxonomy (also called computer taxonomy, phenetics, or taxometrics) became widely used in the 1960s. Numerical classification schemes use a large number (frequently 100 or more) of unweighted taxonomically useful characteristics. The computer clusters different strains at selected levels of overall similarity (usually > 80% at the species level) on the basis of the frequency with which they share traits. In addition, numerical classification provides percentage frequencies of positive character states for all strains within each cluster. Such data provide a basis for the construction of a frequency matrix for identification of unknown strains against the defined taxa. Computerized databases have been used to develop diagnostic tests that identify clinically relevant isolates through numerical codes or probabilistic systems.

Phylogenetic Classifications: Toward an Understanding of Evolutionary Relationships among Bacteria

Phylogenetic classifications are measures of the genetic divergence of different phyla (biologic divisions). Close phylogenetic relatedness of two organisms implies that they share a recent ancestor, and the fossil record has made such inferences relatively easy to draw for most representatives of plants and animals. No such record exists for bacteria, and in the absence of molecular evidence, the distinction between convergent and divergentevolution for bacterial traits can be difficult to establish.

The genetic properties of bacteria may allow some genes to be exchanged among distantly related organisms. Furthermore, multiplication of bacteria is almost entirely vegetative, and their mechanisms of genetic exchange rarely involve recombination among large portions of their genomes (Chapter 7). Therefore, the concept of a species—the fundamental unit of eukaryotic phylogenies—has an entirely different meaning when applied to bacteria. A eukaryotic species is a biologic group capable of interbreeding to produce viable offspring. The current species definition for bacteria is pragmatic, operational, and universally applicable and serves the community well. A species is a category that circumscribes a genomically coherent group of individual isolates or strains sharing a high degree of similarity in many independent features, comparably tested under highly standardized conditions. The decision to circumscribe clusters of organisms within a bacterial species is made by the taxonomist, who may choose to subdivide the group into biotypes and to cluster species with genera. Broader groupings such as families may be proposed.

The formal ranks used in the taxonomy of bacteria are listed in Table 3–1. For practical purposes, only the ranks of the family, genus, and species are commonly used.

Table 3–1. Taxonomic Ranks.

Formal Rank	Example
Kingdom	Prokaryotae
Division	Gracilicutes
Class	Scotobacteria
Order	Eubacteriales
Family	Enterobacteriaceae
Genus	*Escherichia*
Species	*coli*

There is considerable genetic diversity among bacteria. Chemical characterization of bacterial DNA revealed a wide range of nucleotide base compositions when DNA from different bacterial sources was compared. The G (guanine) and C (cytosine) compositions of DNA from a single source were always equal, as were the A (adenine) and T (thymine) compositions. These data provided an important clue concerning the base pairing of complementary strands in the physical structure of DNA (Chapter 7). The evidence also showed that the G + C content of closely related bacteria was similar. This was the first indication that the chemical properties of DNA from different organisms could give an indication of their genetic relatedness. Physical studies revealed that the relatedness of DNA from similar organisms could be discerned by measurement of the ability of their chromosomal DNA to cross-hybridize. Currently, the parameter DNA-DNA similarity and, whenever determinable, the difference in thermal denaturation midpoint (ΔT_m) are the standards for species delineation.

DNA sequencing has become a routine laboratory procedure, and comparison of the DNA sequences of divergent genes can give a measure of their relatedness. Genes for different functions have diverged at different rates, but in general, the relative rates of divergence are similar. Thus, DNA sequence differences among rapidly diverging genes can be used to ascertain the genetic distance of closely related groups of bacteria, and sequence differences among slowly diverging genes can be used to measure the relatedness of widely divergent groups of bacteria.

Ribosomes have an essential role in the synthesis of protein. Genes encoding ribosomal RNAs and ribosomal proteins have been highly conserved throughout evolution and have diverged more slowly than other chromosomal genes. Comparison of the nucleotide sequence of 16S ribosomal RNA from a range of biologic sources revealed evolutionary relationships among widely divergent organisms and has led to the elucidation of a new kingdom, the archaebacteria.

More recently, hybridization of DNA to high-density oligonucleotide arrays has been used for species identification.

Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology

The possibility that one might draw inferences about phylogenetic relationships among bacteria is reflected in the organization of the latest edition of *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. First published in 1923, the *Manual* is an effort to classify known bacteria and to make this information accessible in the form of a key. A companion volume, *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology,* serves as an aid in the identification of those bacteria that have been described and cultured.

In 1980, the International Committee on Systematic Bacteriology published an approved list of bacterial names. This list of about 2500 species replaces a former list that had grown to over 30,000 names; since January 1, 1980, only the new list of names has been considered valid.

Because it is likely that emerging information concerning phylogenetic relationships will lead to further modifications in the organization of bacterial groups within *Bergey's Manual,* its designations must be regarded as provisional.

DESCRIPTION OF THE MAJOR CATEGORIES & GROUPS OF BACTERIA

As discussed in Chapter 2, there are two different groups of prokaryotic organisms: eubacteria and archaebacteria. Eubacteria contain the more common bacteria, ie, those with which most people are familiar. Archaebacteria do not produce peptidoglycan, a major difference between them and typical eubacteria. They also differ from eubacteria in that they live in extreme environments (eg, high temperature, high salt, or low pH) and carry out unusual metabolic reactions, such as the formation of methane. A key to the four major categories of bacteria and the groups of bacteria comprising these categories is presented in Table 3–2. The four major categories are based on the character of the cell wall: gram-negative eubacteria that have cell walls, gram-positive eubacteria that have cell walls, eubacteria lacking cell walls, and the archaebacteria.

Table 3–2. Major Categories and Groups of Bacteria That Cause Disease in Humans Used As an Identification Scheme in *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology*, 9th Ed.

I. Gram-negative eubacteria that have cell walls	
Group 1: The spirochetes	Treponema
	Borrelia
	Leptospira
Group 2: Aerobic/microaerophilic, motile helical/vibroid gram-negative bacteria	Campylobacter
	Helicobacter
	Spirillum
Group 3: Nonmotile (or rarely motile) curved bacteria	None

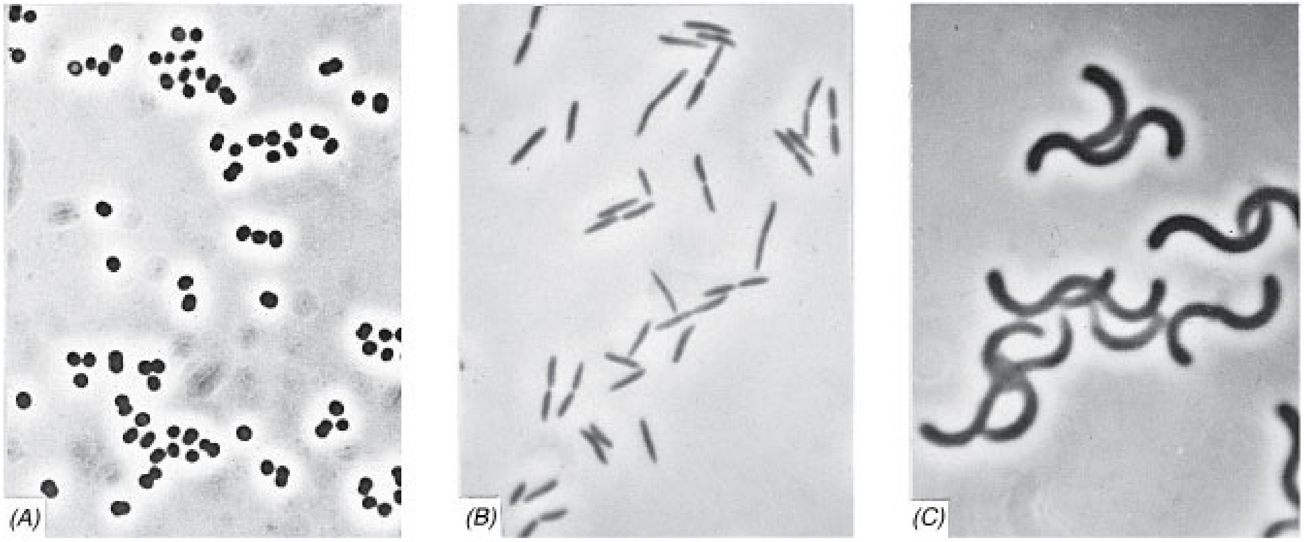
Group 4: Gram-negative aerobic/microaerophilic rods and cocci	Alcaligenes
	Bordetella
	Brucella
	Francisella
	Legionella
	Moraxella
	Neisseria
	Pseudomonas
	Rochalimaea
	Bacteroides (some species)
Group 5: Facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods	Escherichia (and related coliform bacteria)
	Klebsiella
	Proteus
	Providencia
	Salmonella
	Shigella
	Yersinia
	Vibrio
	Haemophilus
	Pasteurella
Group 6: Gram-negative, anaerobic, straight, curved, and helical rods	Bacteroides
	Fusobacterium
	Prevotella
Group 7: Dissimilatory sulfate- or sulfur-reducing bacteria	None
Group 8: Anaerobic gram-negative cocci	None
Group 9: The rickettsiae and chlamydiae	Rickettsia
	Coxiella
	Chlamydia
Group 10: Anoxygenic phototrophic bacteria	None
Group 11: Oxygenic phototrophic bacteria	None
Group 12: Aerobic chemolithotrophic bacteria and assorted organisms	None
Group 13: Budding or appendaged bacteria	None
Group 14: Sheathed bacteria	None

Group 15: Nonphotosynthetic, nonfruiting gliding bacteria	Capnocytophaga
Group 16: Fruiting gliding bacteria: the myxobacteria	None
II. Gram-positive bacteria that have cell walls	
Group 17: Gram-positive cocci	Enterococcus
	Peptostreptococcus
	Staphylococcus
	Streptococcus
Group 18: Endospore-forming gram-positive rods and cocci	Bacillus
	Clostridium
Group 19: Regular, nonsporing gram-positive rods	Erysepelothrix
	Listeria
Group 20: Irregular, nonsporing gram-positive rods	Actinomyces
	Corynebacterium
	Mobiluncus
Group 21: The mycobacteria	Mycobacterium
Groups 22–29: Actinomycetes	Nocardia
	Streptomyces
	Rhodococcus
III. Cell wall-less eubacteria: The mycoplasmas or mollicutes	
Group 30: Mycoplasmas	Mycoplasma
	Ureaplasma
IV. Archaebacteria	
Group 31: The methanogens	None
Group 32: Archaeal sulfate reducers	None
Group 33: Extremely halophilic archaebacteria	None
Group 34: Cell wall-less archaebacteria	None
Group 35: Extremely thermophilic and hyperthermophilic sulfur metabolizers	None

Gram-Negative Eubacteria that Have Cell Walls

This is a heterogeneous group of bacteria that have a complex (gram-negative type) cell envelope consisting of an outer membrane, an inner, thin peptidoglycan layer (which contains muramic acid and is present in all but a few organisms that have lost this portion of the cell envelope), and a cytoplasmic membrane. The cell shape (Figure 3–1) may be spherical, oval, straight or curved rods, helical, or filamentous; some of these forms may be sheathed or encapsulated. Reproduction is by binary fission, but some groups reproduce by budding. Fruiting bodies and myxospores may be formed by the myxobacteria. Motility, if present, occurs by means of flagella or by gliding. Members of this category may be phototrophic or nonphototrophic (Chapter 5) bacteria and include aerobic, anaerobic, facultatively anaerobic, and microaerophilic species; some members are obligate intracellular parasites.

Figure 3–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The cell shapes that occur among unicellular true bacteria. (A) Coccus. (B) Rod. (C) Spiral. (Phase contrast, 1500 x.)

(Reproduced, with permission, from Stanier RY, Doudoroff M, Adelberg EA: *The Microbial World,* 3rd ed. Copyright © 1970. By permission of Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ.)

Gram-Positive Eubacteria that Have Cell Walls

These bacteria have a cell wall profile of the gram-positive type; cells generally, but not always, stain gram-positive. Cells may be spherical, rods, or filaments (Figure 3–1); the rods and filaments may be nonbranching, or may show true branching. Reproduction is generally by binary fission. Some bacteria in this category produce spores as resting forms (endospores). These organisms are generally chemosynthetic heterotrophs (Chapter 5) and include aerobic, anaerobic, and facultatively anaerobic species. The groups within this category include simple asporogenous and sporogenous bacteria as well as the structurally complex actinomycetes and their relatives.

Eubacteria Lacking Cell Walls

These are microorganisms that lack cell walls (commonly called mycoplasmas and comprising the class Mollicutes) and do not synthesize the precursors of peptidoglycan. They are enclosed by a unit membrane, the plasma membrane (Figure 3–2). They resemble the L forms (Chapter 26) that can be generated from many species of bacteria (notably gram-positive eubacteria); unlike L forms, however, mycoplasmas never revert to the walled state, and there are no antigenic relationships between mycoplasmas and eubacterial L forms.

Figure 3–2.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of cells of a member of the mycoplasma group, the agent of bronchopneumonia in the rat (1960 ×).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Klieneberger-Nobel E, Cuckow FW: A study of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group by electron microscopy. J Gen Microbiol 1955;12:99.)

Six genera have been designated as mycoplasmas (Chapter 26) on the basis of their habitat and requirement for cholesterol; however, only two genera contain animal pathogens. Mycoplasmas are highly pleomorphic organisms and range in size from vesicle-like forms to very small (0.2 μm), filtrable forms. Reproduction may be by budding, fragmentation, or binary fission, singly or in combination. Most species require a complex medium for growth and tend to form characteristic "fried egg" colonies on a solid medium. A unique characteristic of the mollicutes is that some genera require cholesterol for growth; unesterified cholesterol is a unique component of the membranes of both sterol-requiring and non-sterol-requiring species if present in the medium.

The Archaebacteria

These prokaryotic organisms are predominantly inhabitants of extreme terrestrial and aquatic environments (high salt, high temperature, anaerobic); some are symbionts in the digestive tract of animals. The archaebacteria consist of aerobic, anaerobic, and facultatively anaerobic organisms that are chemolithotrophs, heterotrophs, or facultative heterotrophs (Chapter 5). Some species are mesophiles, while other are capable of growing at temperatures above 100 °C. These hyperthermophilic archaebacteria are uniquely adapted for growth and multiplication at high temperatures. With few exceptions enzymes isolated from these organism are intrinsically more thermostable than their counterparts from mesophilic organisms. Some of these thermostable enzymes, such as the DNA polymerase from *Thermus aquaticus* (Taq polymerase), are important components of DNA amplification methods such as the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Archaebacteria can be distinguished from eubacteria in part by their lack of peptidoglycan cell wall, possession of isoprenoid diether or diglycerol tetraether lipids, and characteristic ribosomal RNA sequences. Archaebacteria also share some molecular features with eukaryotes (Table 3–3). Cells may have a diversity of shapes, including spherical, spiral, and plate- or rod-shaped; unicellular and multicellular forms in filaments or aggregates also occur. Multiplication occurs by either binary fission, budding, constriction, fragmentation, or by unknown mechanisms.

Table 3–3. Some Characteristics Shared by Archaebacteria and Eukaryotic Cells Which Are Absent in Eubacteria.

Characteristic	Eubacteria	Archaebacteria, Eukaryotes
Elongation factor-2 (EF-2) contains the amino acid diphthamide and is therefore ADP-ribosylable by diphtheria toxin	No	Yes
The methionyl initiator tRNA is not formylated	No	Yes
Some tRNA genes contain introns	No	Yes
Protein synthesis is inhibited by anisomycin but not by chloramphenicol	No	Yes
DNA-dependent RNA polymerases are multi-component enzymes and are insensitive to the antibiotics rifampin and streptolydigin	No	Yes

SUBTYPING & ITS APPLICATION

Under certain circumstances (such as an epidemic) it is important to distinguish between strains of a given species or to identify a particular strain. This is called subtyping; it is done by examining bacterial isolates for characteristics that allow discrimination below the species level. For any subtyping system to be effective, it must differentiate case from noncase isolates. Classically, subtyping has been accomplished by biotyping, serotyping, antimicrobial susceptibility testing, bacteriophage typing, and bacteriocin typing. For example, more than 130 serogroups of *Vibrio cholerae* have been identified based on antigenic differences in the O polysaccharide of the LPS; however, only the O1 and O139 serogroups are associated with epidemic and pandemic cholera. Within these serogroups, only strains that produce cholera toxin are virulent and cause the disease cholera; nontoxigenic *V cholerae* O1 strains, which are not associated with epidemic cholera, have been isolated from environmental specimens, from food, and from patients with sporadic diarrhea.

Clonality with respect to isolates of microorganisms from a common-source outbreak is an important concept in the epidemiology of infectious diseases. Exposure to a common source of an etiologic agent has been associated with numerous outbreaks of infections. Generally, these infectious microorganisms are clonal; in other words, they are the progeny of a single cell and thus, for all practical purposes, are genetically identical. Thus, subtyping plays an important role in identifying these particular microorganisms. Recent advances in biotechnology have dramatically improved our ability to subtype microorganisms. Hybridoma technology has resulted in the development of monoclonal antibodies against cell surface antigens, which have been used to create highly standardized antibody-based subtyping systems.

Multilocus enzyme electrophoresis (MLEE), which has been a standard method for investigating eukaryotic population genetics, has also been used to study the genetic diversity and clonal structure of pathogenic microorganisms. MLEE involves the determination of the mobilities of a set of soluble enzymes (usually 15 to 25 enzymes) by starch gel electrophoresis. Because the rate of migration of a protein during electrophoresis and its net electrostatic charge are determined by its amino acid sequence, mobility variants (referred to as electromorphs or allozymes) of an enzyme are due to amino acid substitutions in the polypeptide sequence, which reflects changes in the DNA sequence encoding the polypeptide. The enzyme-encoding structural genes of *Escherichia coli* exhibit extensive genetic diversity; however, by using MLEE, investigators at the Centers for Disease Control were able to ascertain that strains of *E coli* serotype O157:H7, a recently recognized pathogen associated with outbreaks of hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic uremic syndrome (Chapter 16), were descended from a clone that is widely distributed in North America.

The characterization or identification of isolates has been improved by applying physical methods to prokaryotic cells, such as Fourier transformed infrared spectroscopy (FTIR), pyrolysis-mass spectrometry, and matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization with time-of-flight (Maldi/Tof) or spray ionization mass spectrometry.

Developments in nucleic acid isolation, amplification, and sequencing since 1975 have led to the development of nucleic acid-based subtyping systems. These include plasmid profile analysis, restriction endonuclease analysis, ribotyping, pulsed field gel electrophoresis, PCR amplification and restriction endonuclease digestion of specific genes, arbitrarily primed PCR, and nucleic acid sequence analysis. Plasmid profile analysis was the first, and is technically the simplest, DNA-based technique applied to epidemiologic studies. Plasmids, which are extrachromosomal genetic elements, are isolated from each isolate and then separated by agarose gel electrophoresis to determine their number and size. However, plasmids of identical size but very different sequence or function can exist in many bacteria. Thus, digesting the plasmids with restriction endonucleases and then comparing the number and size of the resulting restriction fragments often provide additional useful information. Plasmid analysis has been shown to be most useful for examining outbreaks that are restricted in time and place (eg, an outbreak in a hospital) and when combined with other subtyping methods.

The use of restriction endonucleases to cleave DNA into discrete fragments is one of the most basic procedures in molecular biology. Restriction endonucleases recognize short DNA sequences (restriction sequence) and they cleave double-stranded DNA within or adjacent to this sequence. Restriction sequences range from 4 to more than 12 bases in length and occur throughout the bacterial chromosome. The short restriction sequences occur more frequently than the longer restriction sequences. Thus, enzymes that recognize the commonly occurring four base-pair restriction sequences will produce more fragments than enzymes that recognize infrequently occurring eight base-pair restriction sequences. Several subtyping methods employ restriction endonuclease-digested DNA. The basic method involves digesting DNA with an enzyme that recognizes a frequently occurring restriction site and separating the hundreds of fragments, which range from approximately 0.5 kb to 50 kb in length, by agarose gel electrophoresis followed by visualization under ultraviolet light after staining with ethidium bromide. One of the major limitations of this technique is the difficulty in interpreting the complex profiles consisting of hundreds of bands that may be unresolved and overlapping. The use of restriction endonucleases that cut at infrequently occurring restriction sites has circumvented this problem. Digestion of DNA with these enzymes generally results in 5 to 20 fragments ranging from approximately 10 kb to 800 kb in length. Separation of these large DNA fragments is accomplished by a technique called pulsed field gel electrophoresis (PFGE), which requires specialized equipment. Theoretically, all bacterial isolates are typeable by this method. Its advantage is that the restriction profile consists of a few well-resolved bands representing the entire bacterial chromosome in a single gel.

Southern blot analysis, named after the investigator who developed the technique, has been used as a subtyping method to identify isolates associated with outbreaks. Following agarose gel electrophoresis, the separated restriction fragments are transferred to a nitrocellulose or nylon membrane. Using a labeled fragment of DNA as a probe, it is possible to identify the restriction fragments containing sequences (loci) that are homologous to the probe. Variations in the number and size of these fragments are referred to as restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLPs) and reflect variations in both the number of loci that are homologous to the probe and the location of restriction sites that are within or flanking those loci. Ribotyping is a method that uses Southern blot analysis to detect polymorphisms of rRNA genes, which are present in all bacteria. Because ribosomal sequences are highly conserved, they can be detected with a common probe prepared from the 16S and 23S rRNA of *E coli.* Many organisms have multiple copies (five to seven) of these genes, resulting in patterns with a sufficient number of bands to provide good discriminatory power; however, ribotyping will be of limited value for some microorganisms like mycobacteria, which have only a single copy of these genes.

The genomic era is now upon us, as over 340 microbial genomes have been sequenced in the last 10 years, and with it have come bioinformatics tools to mine this wealth of DNA sequence information to identify novel targets for pathogen subtyping, such as the repetitive sequences that have been found in different species (see Chapter 7). These repetitive sequences have been termed microsatellite and minisatellite DNA and have repeat units that range from 1 to 10 bp and 10 to 100 bp, respectively. They are commonly referred to as variable number tandem repeats, or VNTR. VNTR have been found in regions controlling gene expression and within open reading frames. The repeat unit and the number of copies repeated side by side defines each VNTR locus. A genotyping approach using PCR, referred to as multiple-locus VNTR analysis (MLVA) takes advantage of the levels of diversity generated by both repeat unit size variation and copy number among a number of characterized loci. It has proved especially useful in subtyping monomorphic species such as *Bacillus anthracis*, *Yersinia pestis*, and *Francisella tularensis*. Genotyping methods are progressing towards the identification of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP) in both open reading frames and intergenic regions to address a diverse range of epidemiologic and evolutionary questions.

The field of microbial forensics developed in the wake of bioterrorist attacks with spores of *Bacillus anthracis* in the fall of 2001. Microbial forensics is part of the criminal investigation and involves the use of many of the techniques described above to identify the precise strain and substrain of the microorganism used in a biocrime to identify its forensically meaningful source—the perpetrators of the attack.

NONCULTURE METHODS FOR THE IDENTIFICATION OF PATHOGENIC MICROORGANISMS

Attempts to estimate total numbers of bacteria, archaebacteria, and viruses are frustrating because of difficulties such as detection in and recovery from the environment, our incomplete knowledge of obligate microbial associations, and the problem of species concept in these groups. Nevertheless, estimates suggest that the numbers of uncultured microbial taxa greatly exceed those of the cultured organisms (Table 3–4). However, more recent estimates suggest that the number of bacterial species in the world range from 10^7 to 10^9. Until very recently, microbial identification required the isolation of pure cultures (or in some instances defined cocultures) followed by testing for multiple physiologic and biochemical traits. Clinicians have long been aware of human diseases that are associated with visible but nonculturable microorganisms. Scientists are now employing a PCR-assisted approach using rRNA to identify pathogenic microorganisms in situ. The first phase of this approach involves the extraction of DNA from a suitable specimen, the use of standard molecular techniques to obtain a clone library, the retrieval of rDNA sequence information, and a comparative analysis of the retrieved sequences. This yields information on the identity or relatedness of the sequences in comparison with the available data base. In the second phase, proof that the sequences are from cells in the original specimen is obtained by in situ hybridization using sequence-specific probes. This approach has been used in the identification of pathogenic microorganisms. For example, a previously uncharacterized actinomycete has been identified as the Whipple-disease-associated rod-shaped bacterium, for which the name *Tropheryma whipplei* has been proposed. The rRNA approach has also been used to identify the etiologic agent of bacillary angiomatosis as *Bartonella henselae* and to show that the opportunistic pathogen *Pneumocystis jiroveci* is a member of the fungi.

Table 3–4. Known and Estimated Numbers of Biologic Species.[1]

Group	Known Species	Estimated Total Species	Percentage of Known Species
Viruses	5,000	130,000	4%
Bacteria	4,760	40,000	12%
Fungi	69,000	1,500,000	5%
Algae	40,000	60,000	67%
Protozoa	30,800	100,000	31%

[1] Modified from Bull AT et al: Biodiversity as a source of innovation in biotechnology. Ann Rev Microbiol 1992;46:219.

REFERENCES

Books

Boone DR, Castenholz RW (editors): *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. Vol 1. *The Archaea and the Deeply Branching and Phototrophic Bacteria*, 2nd ed. Springer, 2001.

Breeze RG, Budowle B, Schutzer SE (editors): *Microbial Forensics*. Elsevier, 2005.

Brenner DJ, Krieg NR, Staley JT (editors): *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. Vol 2. *The Proteobacteria*. Part A. *Introductory Essays*. Springer, 2005.

Brenner DJ, Krieg NR, Staley JT (editors): *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. Vol 2. *The Proteobacteria*. Part B. *The Gammaproteobacteria*. Springer, 2005.

Brenner DJ, Krieg NR, Staley JT (editors): *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. Vol 2. *The Proteobacteria*. Part C. *The Alpha-, Beta-, Delta-, and Episilonproteobacteria*. Springer, 2005

Holt JG et al (editors): *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology*, 9th ed. Williams & Wilkins, 1994.

Persing DH et al (editors): *Molecular Microbiology. Diagnostic Principles and Practice*. ASM Press, 2004.

Riley LW: *Molecular Epidemiology of Infectious Diseases. Principles and Practices*. ASM Press, 2004.

Articles & Reviews

Amann RI, Ludwig W, Schleiffer K-H: Phylogenetic identification and in situ detection of individual microbial cells without culture. Microbiol Rev 1995;59:143.

Curtis TP, Sloan WT, Scannell JW: Estimating prokaryotic diversity and its limits. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2002;99:10494.

Edman JC et al: Ribosomal RNA sequence shows *Pneumocystis carinii* to be a member of the fungi. Nature (London) 1988;334:519.

Fernandez LA: Exploring prokaryotic diversity: there are other molecular worlds. Molec Microbiol 2005;55:5.

Fredericks DN, Relman DA: Sequence-based identification of microbial pathogens: A reconsideration of Koch's postulates. Clin Microbiol Rev 1996;9:18.

Rosello-Mora R, Amann R: The species concept for prokaryotes. FEMS Microbiol Rev 2001;25:39.

Schloss PD, Handelsman J: Status of the microbial census. Microbiol Molec Biol Rev 2004;68:686.

Stringer JR et al: A new name (*Pneumocystis jiroveci*) for Pneumocystis from humans. Emerg Infect Dis 2002;8:891.

Whitman WB, Coleman DC, Wiebe WJ: Prokaryotes: the unseen majority. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95:6578.

SURVIVAL OF MICROORGANISMS IN THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT

The population of microorganisms in the biosphere is roughly constant: Growth is counterbalanced by death. The survival of any microbial group within its niche is determined in large part by successful competition for nutrients and by maintenance of a pool of living cells during nutritional deprivation. It is increasingly evident that many microorganisms exist in consortia formed by representatives of different genera. Other microorganisms, often characterized as single cells in the laboratory, form cohesive colonies in the natural environment.

Most of our understanding of microbial physiology has come from the study of isolated cell lines growing under optimal conditions, and this knowledge forms the basis for this section. Nevertheless, it should be remembered that many microorganisms compete in the natural environment while under nutritional stress, a circumstance that may lead to a physiologic state quite unlike that observed in the laboratory. Furthermore, it should be recognized that a vacant microbial niche in the environment will soon be filled. Public health procedures that eliminate pathogenic microorganisms by clearing their niche are likely to be less successful than methods that leave the niche occupied by successful nonpathogenic competitors.

THE MEANING OF GROWTH

Growth is the orderly increase in the sum of all the components of an organism. Thus, the increase in size that results when a cell takes up water or deposits lipid or polysaccharide is not true growth. Cell multiplication is a consequence of growth; in unicellular organisms, growth leads to an increase in the number of individuals making up a population or culture.

The Measurement of Microbial Concentrations

Microbial concentrations can be measured in terms of cell concentration (the number of viable cells per unit volume of culture) or of biomass concentration (dry weight of cells per unit volume of culture). These two parameters are not always equivalent, because the average dry weight of the cell varies at different stages in the history of a culture. Nor are they of equal significance: In studies of microbial genetics or the inactivation of cells, cell concentration is the significant quantity; in studies on microbial biochemistry or nutrition, biomass concentration is the significant quantity.

CELL CONCENTRATION

The viable cell count (Table 41) is usually considered the measure of cell concentration. However, for many purposes the turbidity of a culture, measured by photoelectric means, may be related to the viable count in the form of a standard curve. A rough visual estimate is sometimes possible: A barely turbid suspension of *Escherichia coli* contains about 10^7 cells per milliliter, and a fairly turbid suspension contains about 10^8 cells per milliliter. In using turbidimetric measurements, it must be remembered that the correlation between turbidity and viable count can vary during the growth and death of a culture; cells may lose viability without producing a loss in turbidity of the culture.

Table 41. Example of a Viable Count.

Dilution	Plate Count[1]
Undiluted	Too crowded to count
10^1	
10^2	510
10^3	72
10^4	6
10^5	1

[1] Each count is the average of three replicate plates.

BIOMASS DENSITY

In principle, biomass can be measured directly by determining the dry weight of a microbial culture after it has been washed with distilled water. In practice, this procedure is cumbersome, and the investigator customarily prepares a standard curve that correlates dry weight with turbidity. Alternatively, the concentration of biomass can be estimated indirectly by measuring an important cellular component such as protein or by determining the volume occupied by cells that have settled out of suspension.

EXPONENTIAL GROWTH

The Growth Rate Constant

The growth rate of cells unlimited by nutrient is first-order: The rate of growth (measured in grams of biomass produced per hour) is the product of the growth rate constant, *k,* and the biomass concentration, *B:*

$$\frac{dB}{dt} = kB \qquad (1)$$

Rearrangement of equation (1) demonstrates that the growth rate constant is the rate at which cells are producing more cells:

$$k = \frac{B\,dt}{dB} \qquad (2)$$

A growth rate constant of 4.3 h^1 , one of the highest recorded, means that each gram of cells produces 4.3 g of cells per hour during this period of growth. Slowly growing organisms may have growth rate constants as low as 0.02 h^1 . With this growth rate constant, each gram of cells in the culture produces 0.02 g of cells per hour.

Integration of equation (1) yields

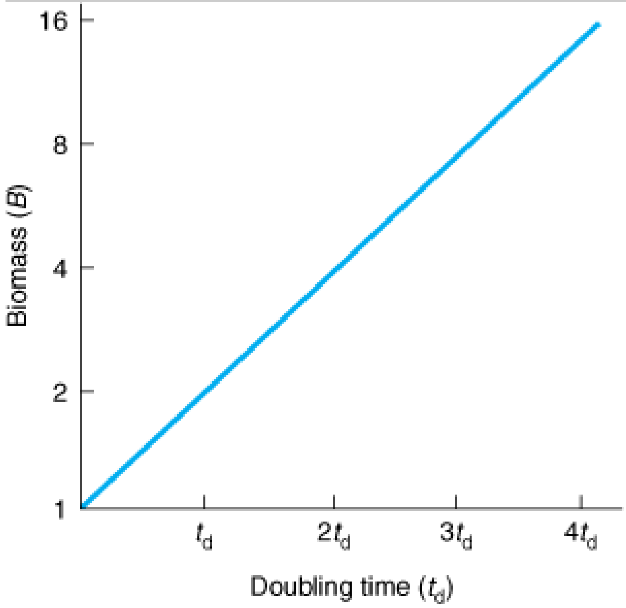
$$\ln\frac{B_1}{B_0} = 2.3\log_{10}\frac{B_1}{B_0} = k(t_1 - t_0) \qquad (3)$$

The natural logarithm of the ratio of B_1 (the biomass at time 1 [t_1]) to B_0 (the biomass at time zero [t_0]) is equal to the product of the growth rate constant (k) and the difference in time (t_1 t_0). Growth obeying equation (3) is termed exponential because biomass increases exponentially with respect to time. Linear plots of exponential growth can be produced by plotting the logarithm of biomass concentration (B) as a function of time (t).

Calculation of the Growth Rate Constant & Prediction of the Amount of Growth

Many bacteria reproduce by binary fission, and the average time required for the population, or the biomass, to double is known as the generation time or doubling time (t_d). Usually the t_d is determined by plotting the amount of growth on a semilogarithmic scale as a function of time; the time required for doubling the biomass is t_d (Figure 41). The growth rate constant can be calculated from the doubling time by substituting the value 2 for B_1/B_0 and t_d for t_1 t_0 in equation (3), which yields

Figure 41.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Exponential growth. The biomass (B) doubles with each doubling time (t_d).

$$\ln 2 = kt_d$$

$$k = \frac{\ln 2}{t_d} \qquad (4)$$

A rapid doubling time corresponds to a high growth rate constant. For example, a doubling time of 10 minutes (0.17 hour) corresponds to a growth rate constant of 4.1 h^1 . The relatively long doubling time of 35 hours corresponds to a growth rate constant of 0.02 h^1 .

The calculated growth rate constant can be used either to determine the amount of growth that will occur in a specified period of time or to calculate the amount of time required for a specified amount of growth.

The amount of growth within a specified period of time can be predicted on the basis of the following rearrangement of equation (3):

$$\log_{10}\frac{B_1}{B_0} = \frac{k(t_1 - t_0)}{2.3} \qquad (5)$$

For example, it is possible to determine the amount of growth that would occur if a culture with a growth rate constant of 4.1 h^{-} 1 grew exponentially for 5 hours:

$$\log_{10}\frac{B_1}{B_0} = \frac{4.1\text{h}^{-1} \times 5\text{h}}{2.3} \qquad (6)$$

In this example, the increase in biomass is 10^9 ; a single bacterial cell with a dry weight of 2 x 10^{13} g would give rise to 0.2 mg of biomass, a quantity that would densely populate a 5-mL culture. Clearly, this rate of growth cannot be sustained for a long period of time. Another 5 hours of growth at this rate would produce 200 kg dry weight of biomass, or roughly a ton of cells.

Another rearrangement of equation (3) allows calculation of the amount of time required for a specified amount of growth to take place. In equation (7), shown below, *N,* cell concentration, is substituted for *B* , biomass concentration, to permit calculation of the time required for a specified increase in cell number.

$$t_1 - t_0 = \frac{2.3\log_{10}(N_1/N_0)}{k} \qquad (7)$$

Using equation (7), it is possible, for example, to determine the time required for a slowly growing organism with a growth rate constant of 0.02 h^1 to grow from a single cell into a barely turbid cell suspension with a concentration of 10^7 cells/mL.

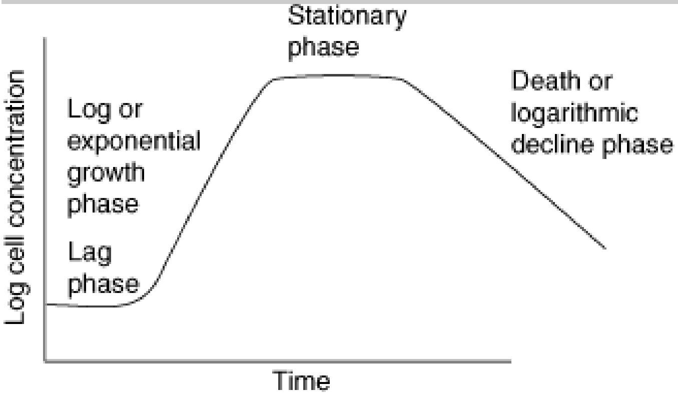
$$t_1 - t_0 = \frac{2.3 \times 7}{0.02\text{h}^{-1}} \qquad (8)$$

Solution of equation (8) reveals that about 800 hoursslightly more than a monthwould be required for this amount of growth to occur. The survival of slowly growing organisms implies that the race for biologic survival is not always to the swiftthose species flourish that compete successfully for nutrients and avoid annihilation by predators and other environmental hazards.

THE GROWTH CURVE

If a fixed volume of liquid medium is inoculated with microbial cells taken from a culture that has previously been grown to saturation and the number of viable cells per milliliter is determined periodically and plotted, a curve of the type shown in Figure 42 is usually obtained. The phases of the bacterial growth curve shown in Figure 42 are reflections of the events in a population of cells, not in individual cells. This type of culture is referred to as a batch culture. The typical growth curve may be discussed in terms of four phases (Table 42).

Figure 42.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A bacterial growth curve.

Table 42. Phases of the Microbial Growth Curve.

Phase	Growth Rate
Lag	Zero
Exponential	Constant
Maximum stationary	Zero
Decline	Negative (death)

The Lag Phase

The lag phase represents a period during which the cells, depleted of metabolites and enzymes as the result of the unfavorable conditions that existed at the end of their previous culture history, adapt to their new environment. Enzymes and intermediates are formed and accumulate until they are present in concentrations that permit growth to resume.

If the cells are taken from an entirely different medium, it often happens that they are genetically incapable of growth in the new medium. In such cases a long lag may occur, representing the period necessary for a few mutants in the inoculum to multiply sufficiently for a net increase in cell number to be apparent.

The Exponential Phase

During the exponential phase, the mathematics of which has already been discussed, the cells are in a steady state. New cell material is being synthesized at a constant rate, but the new material is itself catalytic, and the mass increases in an exponential manner. This continues until one of two things happens: either one or more nutrients in the medium become exhausted, or toxic metabolic products accumulate and inhibit growth. For aerobic organisms, the nutrient that becomes limiting is usually oxygen. When the cell concentration exceeds about 1×10^7 /mL (in the case of bacteria), the growth rate will decrease unless oxygen is forced into the medium by agitation or by bubbling in air. When the bacterial concentration reaches 45×10^9 /mL, the rate of oxygen diffusion cannot meet the demand even in an aerated medium, and growth is progressively slowed.

The Maximum Stationary Phase

Eventually, the exhaustion of nutrients or the accumulation of toxic products causes growth to cease completely. In most cases, however, cell turnover takes place in the stationary phase: There is a slow loss of cells through death, which is just balanced by the formation of new cells through growth and division. When this occurs, the total cell count slowly increases although the viable count stays constant.

The Phase of Decline: The Death Phase

After a period of time in the stationary phase, which varies with the organism and with the culture conditions, the death rate increases until it reaches a steady level. The mathematics of steady-state death is discussed below. In most cases the rate of cell death is much slower than that of exponential growth. Frequently, after the majority of cells have died, the death rate decreases drastically, so that a small number of survivors may persist for months or even years. This persistence may in some cases reflect cell turnover, a few cells growing at the expense of nutrients released from cells that die and lyse.

MAINTENANCE OF CELLS IN THE EXPONENTIAL PHASE

Cells can be maintained in the exponential phase by transferring them repeatedly into fresh medium of identical composition while they are still growing exponentially. This is referred to as continuous culture; the most common type of continuous culture device used is a chemostat.

The Chemostat

This device consists of a culture vessel equipped with an overflow siphon and a mechanism for dripping in fresh medium from a reservoir at a regulated rate. The medium in the culture vessel is stirred by a stream of sterile air; each drop of fresh medium that enters causes a drop of culture to siphon out.

The medium is prepared so that one nutrient limits growth yield. The vessel is inoculated, and the cells grow until the limiting nutrient is exhausted; fresh medium from the reservoir is then allowed to flow in at such a rate that the cells use up the limiting nutrient as fast as it is supplied. Under these conditions, the cell concentration remains constant and the growth rate is directly proportionate to the flow rate of the medium.

DEFINITION & MEASUREMENT OF DEATH

The Meaning of Death

For a microbial cell, death means the irreversible loss of the ability to reproduce (grow and divide). The empirical test of death is the culture of cells on solid media: A cell is considered dead if it fails to give rise to a colony on any medium. Obviously, then, the reliability of the test depends upon choice of medium and conditions: A culture in which 99% of the cells appear "dead" in terms of ability to form colonies on one medium may prove to be 100%

viable if tested on another medium. Furthermore, the detection of a few viable cells in a large clinical specimen may not be possible by directly plating a sample, as the sample fluid itself may be inhibitory to microbial growth. In such cases, the sample may have to be diluted first into liquid medium, permitting the outgrowth of viable cells before plating.

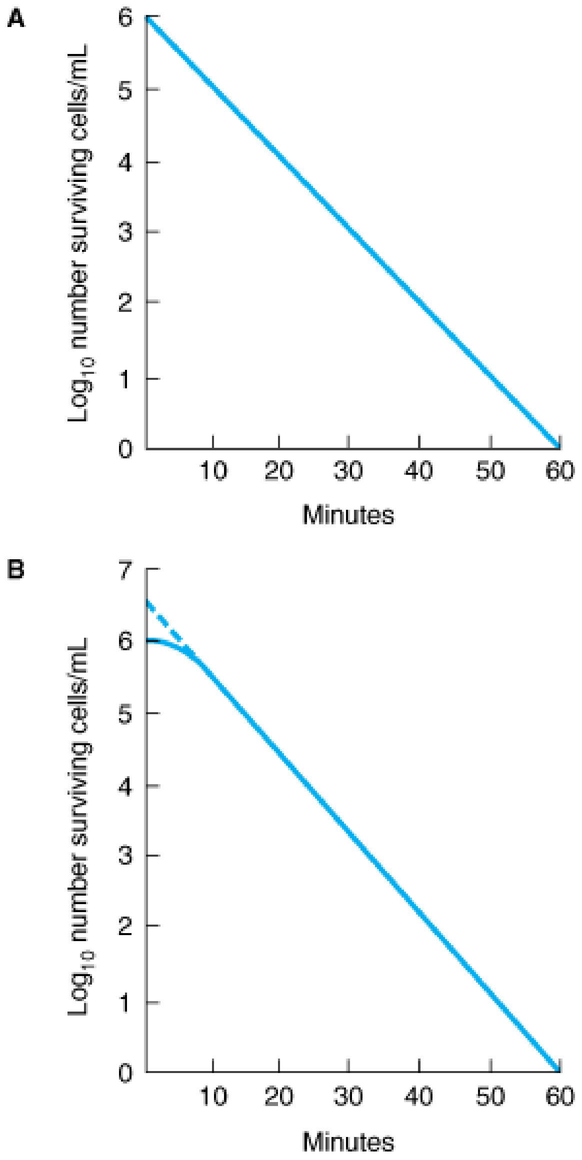
The conditions of incubation in the first hour following treatment are also critical in the determination of "killing." For example, if bacterial cells are irradiated with ultraviolet light and plated immediately on any medium, it may appear that 99.99% of the cells have been killed. If such irradiated cells are first incubated in a suitable buffer for 20 minutes, however, plating will indicate only 10% killing. In other words, irradiation determines that a cell will "die" if plated immediately but will live if allowed to repair radiation damage before plating.

A microbial cell that is not physically disrupted is thus "dead" only in terms of the conditions used to test viability.

The Measurement of Death

When dealing with microorganisms, one does not customarily measure the death of an individual cell, but the death of a population. This is a statistical problem: Under any condition that may lead to cell death, the probability of a given cell's dying is constant per unit time. For example, if a condition is employed that causes 90% of the cells to die in the first 10 minutes, the probability of any one cell dying in a 10-minute interval is 0.9. Thus, it may be expected that 90% of the surviving cells will die in each succeeding 10-minute interval, and a death curve similar to those shown in Figure 43 will be obtained.

Figure 43.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Death curve of a suspension of 10^6 viable microorganisms per mL. A: Single-hit curve. B: Multi-hit curve. The straight-line portion extrapolates to 6.5, corresponding to 4 × 10^6 cells. The number of targets is thus 4 × 10^6 , or four per cell.

The number of cells dying in each time interval is thus a function of the number of survivors present, so that death of a population proceeds as an exponential process according to the general formula

$$S = S_0 e^{-kt} \qquad (9)$$

where S_0 is the number of survivors at time zero, and S is the number of survivors at any later time t . As in the case of exponential growth, k represents the rate of exponential death when the fraction ln (S/S_0) is plotted against time.

The one-hit curve shown in Figure 43A is typical of the kinetics of inactivation observed with many antimicrobial agents. The fact that it is a straight line from time zero (dose zero)rather than exhibiting an initial shouldermeans that a single "hit" by the inactivating agent is sufficient to kill the cell; ie, only a single target must be damaged in order for the entire cell to be inactivated. Such a target might be the chromosome of a uninucleate bacterium or the cell membrane; conversely, it could not be an enzyme or other cell constituent that is present in multiple copies.

A cell that contains several copies of the target to be inactivated exhibits a multi-hit curve of the type shown in Figure 43B. Extrapolation of the straight-line portion of the curve to the ordinate permits an estimate of the number of targets (eg, 4 in Figure 43B).

Sterilization

In practice, we speak of "sterilization" as the process of killing all of the organisms in a preparation. From the above considerations, however, we see that no set of conditions is guaranteed to sterilize a preparation. Consider Figure 43, for example. At 60 minutes, there is one organism (10^0) left per milliliter. At 70 minutes there would be 10^1, at 80 minutes 10^2, etc. By 10^2 organisms per milliliter we mean that in a total volume of 100 mL, one organism would survive. How long, then, does it take to "sterilize" the culture? All we can say is that after any given time of treatment, the probability of having any surviving organisms in 1 mL is that given by the curve in Figure 43. After 2 hours, in the above example, the probability is 1×10^6. This would usually be considered a safe sterilization time, but a 1000-liter lot might still contain one viable organism.

Note that such calculations depend upon the curve's remaining unchanged in slope over the entire time range. Unfortunately, it is very common for the curve to bend upward after a certain period, as a result of the population being heterogeneous with respect to sensitivity to the inactivation agent. Extrapolations are dangerous and can lead to errors such as those encountered in early preparations of sterile poliovaccine.

The Effect of Drug Concentration

When antimicrobial substances (drugs) are used to inactivate microbial cells, it is commonly observed that the concentration of drug employed is related to the time required to kill a given fraction of the population by the following expression:

$$C^n t = K \qquad (10)$$

In this equation, C is the drug concentration, t is the time required to kill a given fraction of the cells, and n and K are constants.

This expression says that, for example, if $n = 6$ (as it is for phenol), then doubling the concentration of the drug will reduce the time required to achieve the same extent of inactivation 64-fold. That the effectiveness of a drug varies with the sixth power of the concentration suggests that six molecules of the drug are required to inactivate a cell, although there is no direct chemical evidence for this conclusion.

In order to determine the value of n for any drug, inactivation curves are obtained for each of several concentrations, and the time required at each concentration to inactivate a fixed fraction of the population is determined. For example, let the first concentration used be C_1 and the time required to inactivate 99% of the cells be t_1. Similarly, let C_2 and t_2 be the second concentration and time required to inactivate 99% of the cells. From equation (10), we see that

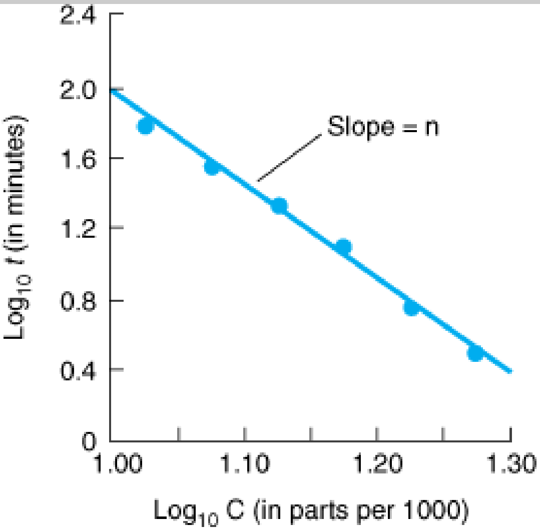
$$C_1^n t_1 = C_2^n t_2 \qquad (11)$$

Solving for *n* gives

$$n = \frac{\log t_2 - \log t_1}{\log C_1 - \log C_2} \qquad (12)$$

Thus, *n* can be determined by measuring the slope of the line that results when log *t* is plotted against log *C* (Figure 44). If *n* is experimentally determined in this manner, *K* can be determined by substituting observed values for *C, t,* and *n* in equation (10).

Figure 44.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Relationship between drug concentration and time required to kill a given fraction of a cell population.

ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

Definitions

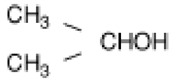
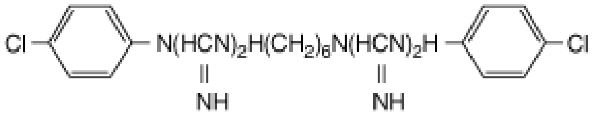
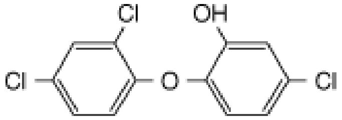
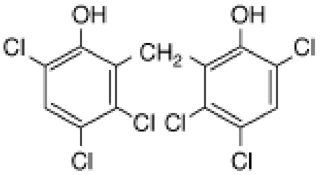
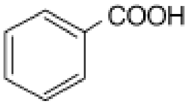
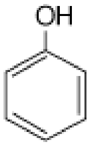
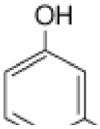
The following terms are commonly employed in connection with antimicrobial agents and their uses.

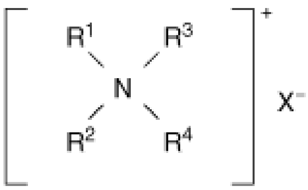
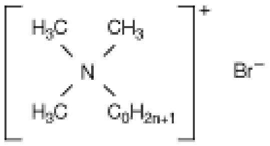
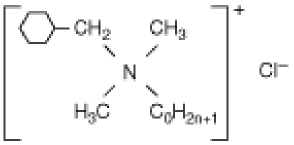
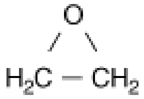
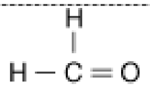
BIOCIDE

A general term describing a chemical agent, usually broad-spectrum, that inactivates microorganisms (Table 43). Biocides can be antiseptics, disinfectants, or preservatives. The activity of biocides against microorganisms depends on: 1) the external physical environment; 2) the nature, structure, composition, and condition of the microorganism itself; and 3) the ability of the microorganism to degrade or inactivate the biocide.

Table 43. Some Common Biocides Used for Antisepsis, Disinfection, Preservation, and Other Purposes.

Agent	Formula	Uses

Alcohols Ethanol	$CH_3\text{–}CHOH$	Antisepsis, disinfection, preservation
Isopropanol	 $(CH_3)_2CHOH$	
Aldehydes Glutaraldehyde	 $O=C(H)CH_2CH_2CH_2C(H)=O$	Disinfection, sterilization, preservation
Formaldehyde	 $H_2C=O$	
Biguanides Chlorhexidine		Antisepsis, antiplaque activity, preservation, disinfection
Bisphenols Triclosan		Antisepsis, antiplaque activity
Hexachlorophene		Deodorant, preservation
Halogen-releasing agents Chlorine compounds	→OCl^-, HOCl, Cl_2	Disinfection, antisepsis
Iodine compounds	→I_2	
Heavy metal derivatives Silver compounds	Ag	Preservation, antisepsis
Mercury compounds	Hg	Disinfection
Organic acids Benzoic acid		Preservation
Propionic acid	CH_3-CH_2-COOH	Sodium or calcium salt used for preservation
Peroxygens Hydrogen peroxide	H_2O_2	Disinfection, sterilization
Ozone	O_3	
Peracetic acid	CH_3COOOH	
Phenols and cresols Phenol		Disinfection, preservation
Cresol		

		
Quaternary ammonium compounds		Disinfection, antisepsis, preservation
Cetrimide		Disinfection, antisepsis, preservation
Benzalkonium chloride		
Vapor phase Ethylene oxide		Sterilization, disinfection
Formaldehyde		
Hydrogen peroxide	H_2O_2	

BACTERIOSTATIC

A specific term referring to the property by which a biocide is able to inhibit bacterial multiplication; multiplication resumes upon removal of the agent. (The terms "fungistatic" and "sporostatic" refer to biocides that inhibit the growth of fungi and spores, respectively.)

BACTERICIDAL

A specific term referring to the property by which a biocide is able to kill bacteria. Bactericidal action differs from bacteriostasis only in being irreversible; ie, the "killed" organism can no longer reproduce, even after being removed from contact with the agent. In some cases, the agent causes lysis (dissolution) of the cells; in other cases, the cells remain intact and may even continue to be metabolically active. (The terms "fungicidal," "sporicidal," and "virucidal" refer to the property whereby biocides are able to kill fungi, spores, and viruses, respectively.)

STERILIZATION

A physical or chemical process that completely destroys or removes all microbial life, including spores.

DISINFECTANTS

Products or biocides used to kill microorganisms on inanimate objects or surfaces. Disinfectants are not necessarily sporicidal, but are sporostatic, inhibiting germination or outgrowth.

SEPTIC

Characterized by the presence of pathogenic microbes in living tissue.

ANTISEPTIC

A biocide or product that destroys or inhibits the growth of microorganisms in or on living tissue.

ASEPTIC

Characterized by the absence of pathogenic microbes.

PRESERVATION

The prevention of multiplication of microorganisms in formulated products, including pharmaceuticals and foods.

ANTIBIOTICS

Naturally occurring or synthetic organic compounds which inhibit or destroy selective bacteria, generally at low concentrations.

Modes of Action

DAMAGE TO DNA

A number of physical and chemical agents act by damaging DNA; these include ionizing radiations, ultraviolet light, and DNA-reactive chemicals. Among the last category are alkylating agents and other compounds that react covalently with purine and pyrimidine bases to form DNA adducts or interstrand cross-links. Radiations damage DNA in several ways: Ultraviolet light, for example, induces cross-linking between adjacent pyrimidines on one or the other of the two polynucleotide strands, forming pyrimidine dimers; ionizing radiations produce breaks in single and double strands. Radiation-induced and chemically induced DNA lesions kill the cell mainly by interfering with DNA replication. See Chapter 7 for a discussion of DNA repair systems.

PROTEIN DENATURATION

Proteins exist in a folded, three-dimensional state determined by intramolecular covalent disulfide linkages and a number of noncovalent linkages such as ionic, hydrophobic, and hydrogen bonds. This state is called the tertiary structure of the protein; it is readily disrupted by a number of physical or chemical agents, causing the protein to become nonfunctional. The disruption of the tertiary structure of a protein is called protein denaturation.

DISRUPTION OF CELL MEMBRANE OR WALL

The cell membrane acts as a selective barrier, allowing some solutes to pass through and excluding others. Many compounds are actively transported through the membrane, becoming concentrated within the cell. The membrane is also the site of enzymes involved in the biosynthesis of components of the cell envelope. Substances that concentrate at the cell surface may alter the physical and chemical properties of the membrane, preventing its normal functions and therefore killing or inhibiting the cell.

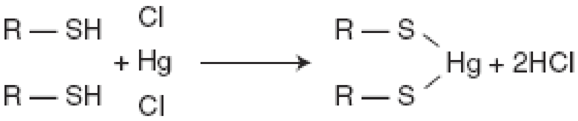
The cell wall acts as a corseting structure, protecting the cell against osmotic lysis. Thus, agents that destroy the wall (eg, lysozyme) or prevent its normal synthesis (eg, penicillin) may bring about lysis of the cell.

REMOVAL OF FREE SULFHYDRYL GROUPS

Enzyme proteins containing cysteine have side chains terminating in sulfhydryl groups. In addition to these, coenzymes such as coenzyme A and dihydrolipoate contain free sulfhydryl groups. Such enzymes and coenzymes cannot function unless the sulfhydryl groups remain free and reduced. Oxidizing agents thus interfere with metabolism by forming disulfide linkages between neighboring sulfhydryl groups:

$$\mathrm{R{-}SH + HS{-}R \xrightarrow{-2H} R{-}S{-}S{-}R}$$

Many metals such as mercuric ion likewise interfere by combining with sulfhydryls:



There are many sulfhydryl enzymes in the cell; therefore, oxidizing agents and heavy metals do widespread damage.)

CHEMICAL ANTAGONISM

The interference by a chemical agent with the normal reaction between a specific enzyme and its substrate is known as "chemical antagonism." The antagonist acts by combining with some part of the holoenzyme (either the protein apoenzyme, the mineral activator, or the coenzyme), thereby preventing attachment of the normal substrate. ("Substrate" is here used in the broad sense to include cases in which the inhibitor combines with the apoenzyme, thereby preventing attachment to it of coenzyme.)

An antagonist combines with an enzyme because of its chemical affinity for an essential site on that enzyme. Enzymes perform their catalytic function by virtue of their affinity for their natural substrates; hence any compound structurally resembling a substrate in essential aspects may also have an affinity for the enzyme. If this affinity is great enough, the "analog" will displace the normal substrate and prevent the proper reaction from taking place.

Many holoenzymes include a mineral ion as a bridge either between enzyme and coenzyme or between enzyme and substrate. Chemicals that combine readily with these minerals will again prevent attachment of coenzyme or substrate; for example, carbon monoxide and cyanide combine with the iron atom in heme-containing enzymes and prevent their function in respiration.

Chemical antagonists can be conveniently discussed under two headings: antagonists of energy-yielding processes, and antagonists of biosynthetic processes. The former include poisons of respiratory enzymes (carbon monoxide, cyanide) and of oxidative phosphorylation (dinitrophenol); the latter include analogs of the building blocks of proteins (amino acids) and of nucleic acids (nucleotides). In some cases the analog simply prevents incorporation of the normal metabolite (eg, 5-methyltryptophan prevents incorporation of tryptophan into protein), and in other cases the analog replaces the normal metabolite in the macromolecule, causing it to be nonfunctional. The incorporation of *p* -fluorophenylalanine in place of phenylalanine in proteins is an example of the latter type of antagonism.

Reversal of Antibacterial Action

In the section on definitions, the point was made that bacteriostatic action is, by definition, reversible. Reversal can be brought about in several ways.

REMOVAL OF AGENT

When cells that are inhibited by the presence of a bacteriostatic agent are removed by centrifugation, washed thoroughly in the centrifuge, and resuspended in fresh growth medium, they will resume normal multiplication.

REVERSAL BY SUBSTRATE

When a chemical antagonist of the analog type binds reversibly with the enzyme, it is possible to displace it by adding a high concentration of the normal substrate. Such cases are termed "competitive inhibition." The ratio of inhibitor concentration to concentration of substrate reversing the inhibition is called the antimicrobial index; it is usually very high (10010,000), indicating a much greater affinity of enzyme for its normal substrate.

INACTIVATION OF AGENT

An agent can often be inactivated by adding to the medium a substance that combines with it, preventing its combination with cellular constituents. For example, mercuric ion can be inactivated by addition to the medium of sulfhydryl compounds such as thioglycolic acid.

PROTECTION AGAINST LYSIS

Osmotic lysis can be prevented by making the medium isotonic for naked bacterial protoplasts. Concentrations of 1020% sucrose are required. Under such conditions penicillin-induced protoplasts remain viable and continue to grow as L forms.

Resistance to Antibacterial Agents

The ability of bacteria to become resistant to antibacterial agents is an important factor in their control. The mechanisms by which resistance is acquired are discussed in Chapters 7: Microbial Genetics and 10: Antimicrobial Chemotherapy.

Physical Agents

HEAT

Application of heat is the simplest means of sterilizing materials, provided the material is itself resistant to heat damage. A temperature of 100 C will kill all but spore forms of bacteria within 23 minutes in laboratory-scale cultures; a temperature of 121 C for 15 minutes is utilized to kill spores. Steam is generally used, both because bacteria are more quickly killed when moist and because steam provides a means for distributing heat to all parts of the sterilizing vessel. At sea level, steam must be kept at a pressure of 15 lb/sq in (psi) in excess of atmospheric pressure to obtain a temperature of 121 C; autoclaves or pressure cookers are used for this purpose. At higher altitudes, the pressure would need to be higher than 15 psi to reach 121 C. For sterilizing materials that must remain dry, circulating hot air electric ovens are available; since heat is less effective on dry material, it is customary to apply a temperature of 160170 C for 1 hour or more.

Under the conditions described above (ie, excessive temperatures applied for long periods of time), heat acts by denaturing cell proteins and nucleic acids and by disrupting cell membranes.

RADIATION

Ultraviolet light and ionizing radiations have various applications as sterilizing agents. Their modes of action are discussed above.

Chemical Agents

The chemical structures and uses of biocides are shown in Table 43.

ALCOHOLS

Ethyl alcohol, isopropyl alcohol, and *n* -propanol exhibit rapid, broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity against vegetative bacteria, viruses, and fungi but are not sporicidal. Activity is optimal when they are diluted to a concentration of 6090% with water.

ALDEHYDES

Glutaraldehyde is used for low-temperature disinfection and sterilization of endoscopes and surgical equipment. It is normally used as a 2% solution to achieve sporicidal activity. Formaldehyde is bactericidal, sporicidal, and virucidal.

BIGUANIDES

Chlorhexidine is widely used in handwashing and oral products and as a disinfectant and preservative. Mycobacteria are generally highly resistant.

BISPHENOLS

The bisphenols are widely used in antiseptic soaps and hand rinses. In general, they are broad-spectrum but have little activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and molds. Triclosan and hexachlorophene are bactericidal and sporostatic.

HALOGEN-RELEASING AGENTS

The most important types of chlorine-releasing agents are sodium hypochlorite, chlorine dioxide, and sodium dichloroisocyanurate, which are oxidizing agents that destroy the cellular activity of proteins. Hypochlorous acid is the active compound responsible for the bactericidal and virucidal effect of these compounds. At higher concentrations, these compounds are sporicidal. Iodine is rapidly bactericidal, fungicidal, tuberculocidal, virucidal, and sporicidal. Iodophors (eg, povidone-iodine) are complexes of iodine and a solubilizing agent or carrier, which acts as a reservoir of the active I_2 .

HEAVY METAL DERIVATIVES

Silver sulfadiazine, a combination of two antibacterial agents, Ag^+ and sulfadiazine, has a broad spectrum of activity. Binding to cell components such as DNA may be responsible for its inhibitory properties.

ORGANIC ACIDS

Organic acids are used as preservatives in the pharmaceutical and food industries. Benzoic acid is fungistatic; propionic acid is both bacteriostatic and fungistatic.

PEROXYGENS

Hydrogen peroxide has broad-spectrum activity against viruses, bacteria, yeasts, and bacterial spores. Sporicidal activity requires higher concentrations (1030%) of H_2O_2 and longer contact times.

PHENOLS

Phenol and many phenolic compounds have antiseptic, disinfectant, or preservative properties.

QUATERNARY AMMONIUM COMPOUNDS

These compounds have two regions in their molecular structures, one a water-repelling (hydrophobic) group and the other a water-attracting (hydrophilic) group. Cationic detergents, as exemplified by quaternary ammonium compounds (QACs), are useful antiseptics and disinfectants. QACs have been used for a variety of clinical purposes (eg, preoperative disinfection of unbroken skin) as well as for cleaning hard surfaces. They are sporostatic; they inhibit the outgrowth of spores but not the actual germination process. QACs are also mycobacteriostatic and have an effect on lipid-enveloped but not lipid-nonenveloped viruses.

VAPOR-PHASE STERILANTS

Heat-sensitive medical devices and surgical supplies can be effectively sterilized by vapor-phase systems employing ethylene oxide, formaldehyde, hydrogen peroxide, or peracetic acid.

Chemotherapeutic Agents

The natures and modes of action of these drugs are discussed in Chapter 10.

REFERENCES

Books

Block SS (editor): *Disinfection, Sterilization, and Preservation,* 5th ed. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins 2001.

Gerhardt P et al (editors): *Manual of Methods for General Bacteriology.* American Society for Microbiology, 1981.

Kjelleberg S (editor): *Starvation in Bacteria.* Plenum Press, 1993.

Olmstad RN (editor): *APIC Infection Control and Applied Epidemiology: Principles and Practices.* Mosby Year Book, 1996.

Russell AD, Hugo WB, Ayliffe GAJ (editors): *Principles and Practice of Disinfection, Preservation and Sterilization,* 3rd ed. Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1999.

Articles & Reviews

Donohue WD: The cell cycle of *Escherichia coli.* Annu Rev Microbiol 1993;47:199.

Kjelleberg S et al: The transient phase between growth and nongrowth of heterotrophic bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 1987;41:25. [PMID: 3318670]

Kolter R, Siegels DA, Tormo A: The stationary phase of the bacterial life cycle. J Bacteriol 1992;174:345. [PMID: 1729229]

McDonnell G, Russell AD: Antiseptics and disinfectants: Activity, action, and resistance. Clin Microbiol Rev 1999;12:147. [PMID: 9880479]

Sancar A, Sancar GB: DNA repair enzymes. Annu Rev Biochem 1988;57:29. [PMID: 3052275]

Siegels DA, Kolter R: Life after log. J Bacteriol 1992;174:345.

THE GROWTH, SURVIVAL, & DEATH OF MICROORGANISMS: INTRODUCTION

Cultivation is the process of propagating organisms by providing the proper environmental conditions. Growing microorganisms are making replicas of themselves, and they require the elements present in their chemical composition. Nutrients must provide these elements in metabolically accessible form. In addition, the organisms require metabolic energy in order to synthesize macromolecules and maintain essential chemical gradients across their membranes. Factors that must be controlled during growth include the nutrients, pH, temperature, aeration, salt concentration, and ionic strength of the medium.

REQUIREMENTS FOR GROWTH

Most of the dry weight of microorganisms is organic matter containing the elements carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, and sulfur. In addition, inorganic ions such as potassium, sodium, iron, magnesium, calcium, and chloride are required to facilitate enzymatic catalysis and to maintain chemical gradients across the cell membrane.

For the most part, the organic matter is in macromolecules formed by anhydride bonds between building blocks. Synthesis of the anhydride bonds requires chemical energy, which is provided by the two phosphodiester bonds in ATP (adenosine triphosphate; see Chapter 6). Additional energy required to maintain a relatively constant cytoplasmic composition during growth in a range of extracellular chemical environments is derived from the proton motive force. The proton motive force is the potential energy that can be derived by passage of a proton across a membrane. In eukaryotes, the membrane may be part of the mitochondrion or the chloroplast. In prokaryotes, the membrane is the cytoplasmic membrane of the cell.

The proton motive force is an electrochemical gradient with two components: a difference in pH (hydrogen ion concentration) and a difference in ionic charge. The charge on the outside of the bacterial membrane is more positive than the charge on the inside, and the difference in charge contributes to the free energy released when a proton enters the cytoplasm from outside the membrane. Metabolic processes that generate the proton motive force are discussed in Chapter 6. The free energy may be used to move the cell, to maintain ionic or molecular gradients across the membrane, to synthesize anhydride bonds in ATP, or for a combination of these purposes. Alternatively, cells given a source of ATP may use its anhydride bond energy to create a proton motive force that in turn may be used to move the cell and to maintain chemical gradients.

In order to grow, an organism requires all of the elements in its organic matter and the full complement of ions required for energetics and catalysis. In addition, there must be a source of energy to establish the proton motive force and to allow macromolecular synthesis. Microorganisms vary widely in their nutritional demands and their sources of metabolic energy.

SOURCES OF METABOLIC ENERGY

The three major mechanisms for generating metabolic energy are fermentation, respiration, and photosynthesis. At least one of these mechanisms must be employed if an organism is to grow.

Fermentation

The formation of ATP in fermentation is not coupled to the transfer of electrons. Fermentation is characterized by *substrate phosphorylation*, an enzymatic process in which a pyrophosphate bond is donated directly to ADP (adenosine diphosphate) by a phosphorylated metabolic intermediate. The phosphorylated intermediates are formed by metabolic rearrangement of a fermentable substrate such as glucose, lactose, or arginine. Because fermentations are not accompanied by a change in the overall oxidation-reduction state of the fermentable substrate, the elemental composition of the products of fermentation must be identical to those of the substrates. For example, fermentation of a molecule of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) by the Embden-Meyerhof pathway (see Chapter 6) yields a net gain of two pyrophosphate bonds in ATP and produces two molecules of lactic acid ($C_3H_6O_3$).

Respiration

Respiration is analogous to the coupling of an energy-dependent process to the discharge of a battery. Chemical reduction of an oxidant (electron acceptor) through a specific series of electron carriers in the membrane establishes the proton motive force across the bacterial membrane. The reductant (electron donor) may be organic or inorganic: For example, lactic acid serves as a reductant for some organisms, and hydrogen gas is a reductant for other organisms. Gaseous oxygen (O_2) often is employed as an oxidant, but alternative oxidants that are employed by some organisms include carbon dioxide (CO_2), sulfate ($SO_4{}^{2}$), and nitrate ($NO_3{}^{-}$).

Photosynthesis

Photosynthesis is similar to respiration in that the reduction of an oxidant via a specific series of electron carriers establishes the proton motive force. The difference in the two processes is that in photosynthesis the reductant and oxidant are created photochemically by light energy absorbed by pigments in the membrane; thus, photosynthesis can continue only as long as there is a source of light energy. Plants and some bacteria are able to invest a substantial amount of light energy in making water a reductant for carbon dioxide. Oxygen is evolved in this process, and organic matter is produced. Respiration, the energetically favorable oxidation of organic matter by an electron acceptor such as oxygen, can provide photosynthetic organisms with energy in the absence of light.

NUTRITION

Nutrients in growth media must contain all the elements necessary for the biologic synthesis of new organisms. In the following discussion, nutrients are classified according to the elements they supply.

Carbon Source

As mentioned above, plants and some bacteria are able to use photosynthetic energy to reduce carbon dioxide at the expense of water. These organisms belong to the group of *autotrophs*, creatures that do not require organic nutrients for growth. Other autotrophs are the *chemolithotrophs*, organisms that use an inorganic substrate such as hydrogen or thiosulfate as a reductant and carbon dioxide as a carbon source.

Heterotrophs require organic carbon for growth, and the organic carbon must be in a form that can be assimilated. Naphthalene, for example, can provide all the carbon and energy required for respiratory heterotrophic growth, but very few organisms possess the metabolic pathway necessary for naphthalene assimilation. Glucose, on the other hand, can support the fermentative or respiratory growth of many organisms. It is important that growth substrates be supplied at levels appropriate for the microbial strain that is being grown: Levels that will support the growth of one organism may inhibit the growth of another organism.

Carbon dioxide is required for a number of biosynthetic reactions. Many respiratory organisms produce more than enough carbon dioxide to meet this requirement, but others require a source of carbon dioxide in their growth medium.

Nitrogen Source

Nitrogen is a major component of proteins, nucleic acids, and other compounds, accounting for approximately 5% of the dry weight of a typical bacterial cell. Inorganic dinitrogen (N_2) is very prevalent, as it comprises 80% of the earth's atmosphere. It is also a very stable compound, primarily because of the high activation energy required to break the nitrogennitrogen triple bond. However, nitrogen may be supplied in a number of different forms, and microorganisms vary in their abilities to assimilate nitrogen (Table 51). The end product of all pathways for nitrogen assimilation is the most reduced form of the element, ammonia (NH_3). When NH_3 is available, it diffuses into most bacteria through transmembrane channels as dissolved gaseous NH_3 rather than ionic ammonium ion (NH_4^+).

Table 51. Sources of Nitrogen in Microbial Nutrition.

Compound	Valence of N
NO_3^-	+5
NO_2^-	+3
N_2	0
NH_4^+	3
RNH_2[1]	3

[1] R = organic radical.

The ability to assimilate N_2 reductively via NH_3 , which is called nitrogen fixation, is a property unique to prokaryotes, and relatively few bacteria are capable of breaking the nitrogennitrogen triple bond. This process (see Chapter 6) requires a large amount of metabolic energy and is readily inactivated by oxygen. The capacity for nitrogen fixation is found in widely divergent bacteria that have evolved quite different biochemical strategies to protect their nitrogen-fixing enzymes from oxygen.

Most microorganisms can use NH_3 as a sole nitrogen source, and many organisms possess the ability to produce NH_3 from amines (RNH_2) or from amino acids ($RCHNH_2COOH$), generally intracellularly. Production of NH_3 from the deamination of amino acids is called ammonification. Ammonia is introduced into organic matter by biochemical pathways involving glutamate and glutamine. These pathways are discussed in Chapter 6.

Many microorganisms possess the ability to assimilate nitrate (NO_3^-) and nitrite (NO_2^-) reductively by conversion of these ions into NH_3. These processes are termed assimilatory nitrate reduction and assimilatory nitrite reduction, respectively. These pathways for assimilation differ from pathways used for dissimilation of nitrate and nitrite. The dissimilatory pathways are used by organisms that employ these ions as terminal electron acceptors in respiration. Some autotrophic bacteria (eg, *Nitrosomonas*, *Nitrobacter*) are able to convert NH_3 to gaseous N_2 under anaerobic conditions; this process is known as denitrification. Our understanding of the nitrogen cycle continues to evolve. In the mid 1990s, the anammox reaction was discovered. The reaction

$$NH_4^+ + NO_2^- \rightarrow N_2 + 2H_2O$$

in which ammonia is oxidized by nitrite, is a microbial process that occurs in anoxic waters of the ocean and is a major pathway by which nitrogen is returned to the atmosphere.

Sulfur Source

Like nitrogen, sulfur is a component of many organic cell substances. It forms part of the structure of several coenzymes and is found in the cysteinyl and methionyl side chains of proteins. Sulfur in its elemental form cannot be used by plants or animals. However, some autotrophic bacteria can oxidize it to sulfate (SO_4^{2}). Most microorganisms can use sulfate as a sulfur source, reducing the sulfate to the level of hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Some microorganisms can assimilate H_2S directly from the growth medium, but this compound can be toxic to many organisms.

Phosphorus Source

Phosphate (PO_4^{3}) is required as a component of ATP, nucleic acids, and such coenzymes as NAD, NADP, and flavins. In addition, many metabolites, lipids (phospholipids, lipid A), cell wall components (teichoic acid), some capsular polysaccharides, and some proteins are phosphorylated. Phosphate is always assimilated as free inorganic phosphate (P_i).

Mineral Sources

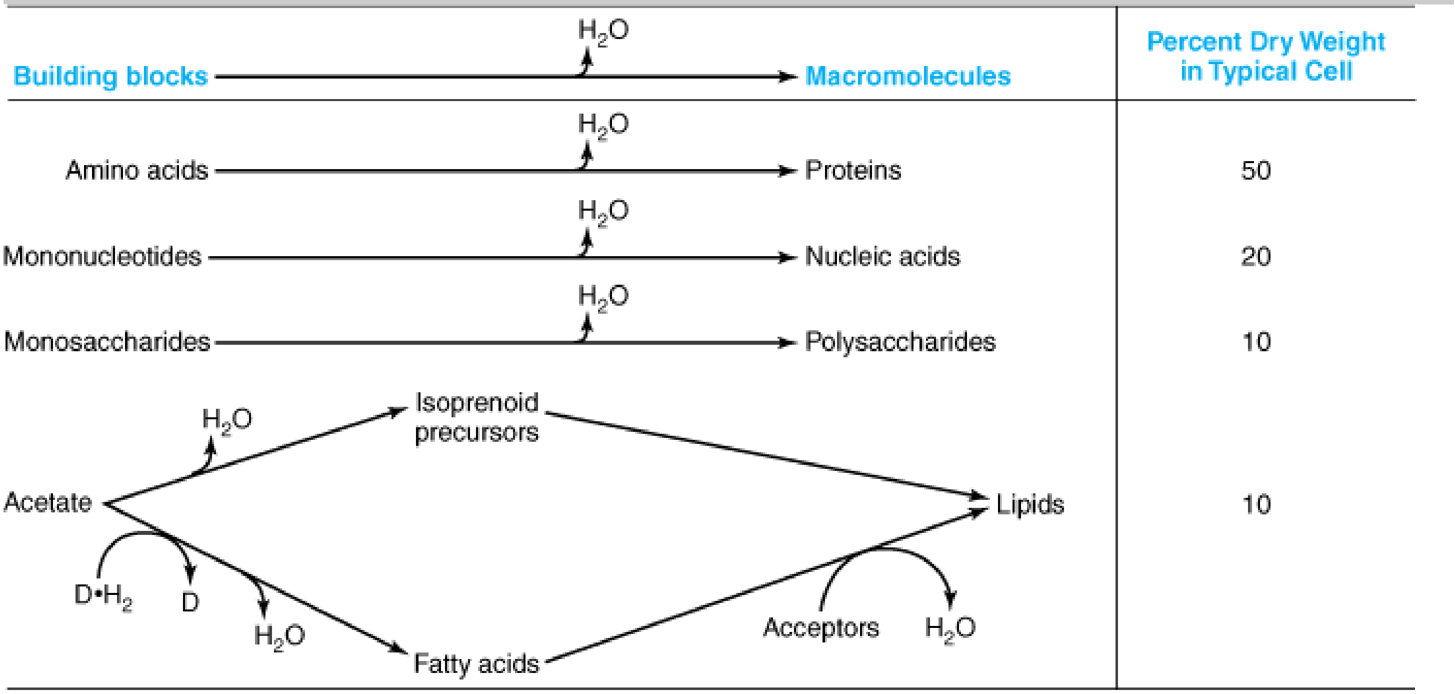
Numerous minerals are required for enzyme function. Magnesium ion (Mg^{2+}) and ferrous ion (Fe^{2+}) are also found in porphyrin derivatives: magnesium in the chlorophyll molecule, and iron as part of the coenzymes of the cytochromes and peroxidases. Mg^{2+} and K^+ are both essential for the function and integrity of ribosomes. Ca^{2+} is required as a constituent of gram-positive cell walls, though it is dispensable for gram-negative bacteria. Many marine organisms require Na^+ for growth. In formulating a medium for the cultivation of most microorganisms, it is necessary to provide sources of potassium, magnesium, calcium, and iron, usually as their ions (K^+, Mg^{2+}, Ca^{2+}, and Fe^{2+}). Many other minerals (eg, Mn^{2+}, Mo^{2+}, Co^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, and Zn^{2+}) are required; these frequently can be provided in tap water or as contaminants of other medium ingredients.

The uptake of iron, which forms insoluble hydroxides at neutral pH, is facilitated in many bacteria and fungi by their production of siderophores compounds that chelate iron and promote its transport as a soluble complex. These include hydroxamates ($CONH_2OH$) called sideramines, and derivatives of catechol (eg, 2,3-dihydroxy-benzoylserine). Plasmid-determined siderophores play a major role in the invasiveness of some bacterial pathogens (see Chapter 7).

Growth Factors

A growth factor is an organic compound which a cell must contain in order to grow but which it is unable to synthesize. Many microorganisms, when provided with the nutrients listed above, are able to synthesize all of the building blocks for macromolecules (Figure 51): amino acids; purines, pyrimidines, and pentoses (the metabolic precursors of nucleic acids); additional carbohydrates (precursors of polysaccharides); and fatty acids and isoprenoid compounds. In addition, free-living organisms must be able to synthesize the complex vitamins that serve as precursors of coenzymes.

Figure 51.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Macromolecular synthesis. Polymerization of building blocks into macromolecules is achieved largely by the introduction of anhydride bonds. Formation of fatty acids from acetate requires several steps of biochemical reduction using organic hydrogen donors ($D \bullet H_2$).

Each of these essential compounds is synthesized by a discrete sequence of enzymatic reactions; each enzyme is produced under the control of a specific gene. When an organism undergoes a gene mutation resulting in failure of one of these enzymes to function, the chain is broken and the end product is no longer produced. The organism must then obtain that compound from the environment: The compound has become a growth factor for the organism. This type of mutation can be readily induced in the laboratory.

Different microbial species vary widely in their growth factor requirements. The compounds involved are found in and are essential to all organisms; the differences in requirements reflect differences in synthetic abilities. Some species require no growth factors, while otherslike some of the lactobacillihave lost, during evolution, the ability to synthesize as many as 30 to 40 essential compounds and hence require them in the medium.

ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS AFFECTING GROWTH

A suitable growth medium must contain all the nutrients required by the organism to be cultivated, and such factors as pH, temperature, and aeration must be carefully controlled. A liquid medium is used; the medium can be gelled for special purposes by adding agar or silica gel. Agar, a polysaccharide extract of a marine alga, is uniquely suitable for microbial cultivation because it is resistant to microbial action and because it dissolves at 100 C but does not gel until cooled below 45 C; cells can be suspended in the medium at 45 C and the medium quickly cooled to a gel without harming them.

Nutrients

On the previous pages, the function of each type of nutrient is described and a list of suitable substances presented. In general, the following must be provided: (1) hydrogen donors and acceptors: about 2 g/L; (2) carbon source: about 1 g/L; (3) nitrogen source: about 1 g/L; (4) minerals: sulfur and phosphorus, about 50 mg/L of each, and trace elements, 0.11 mg/L of each; (5) growth factors: amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines, about 50 mg/L of each, and vitamins, 0.11 mg/L of each.

For studies of microbial metabolism, it is usually necessary to prepare a completely synthetic medium in which the exact characteristics and concentration of every ingredient are known. Otherwise, it is much cheaper and simpler to use natural materials such as yeast extract, protein digest, or similar substances. Most free-living microbes will grow well on yeast extract; parasitic forms may require special substances found only in blood or in extracts of animal tissues. Nevertheless, there are parasitic microbes (eg, *Treponema pallidum*) that cannot be grown in vitro or that grow inside eukaryotic cells (eg, *Chlamydia trachomatis*).

For many organisms, a single compound (such as an amino acid) may serve as energy source, carbon source, and nitrogen source; others require a separate compound for each. If natural materials for nonsynthetic media are deficient in any particular nutrient, they must be supplemented.

Hydrogen Ion Concentration (pH)

Most organisms have a fairly narrow optimal pH range. The optimal pH must be empirically determined for each species. Most organisms (neutralophiles) grow best at a pH of 6.08.0, although some forms (acidophiles) have optima as low as pH 3.0 and others (alkaliphiles) have optima as high as pH 10.5.

Microorganisms regulate their internal pH over a wide range of external pH values by pumping protons in or out of their cells. Acidophiles maintain an internal pH of about 6.5 over an external range of 1.05.0; neutralophiles maintain an internal pH of about 7.5 over an external range of 5.58.5; and alkaliphiles maintain an internal pH of about 9.5 over an external range of 9.011.0. Internal pH is regulated by a set of proton transport systems in the cytoplasmic membrane, including a primary, ATP-driven proton pump and a Na^{+} /H^{+} exchanger. A K^{+} /H^{+} exchange system has also been proposed to contribute to internal pH regulation in neutralophiles.

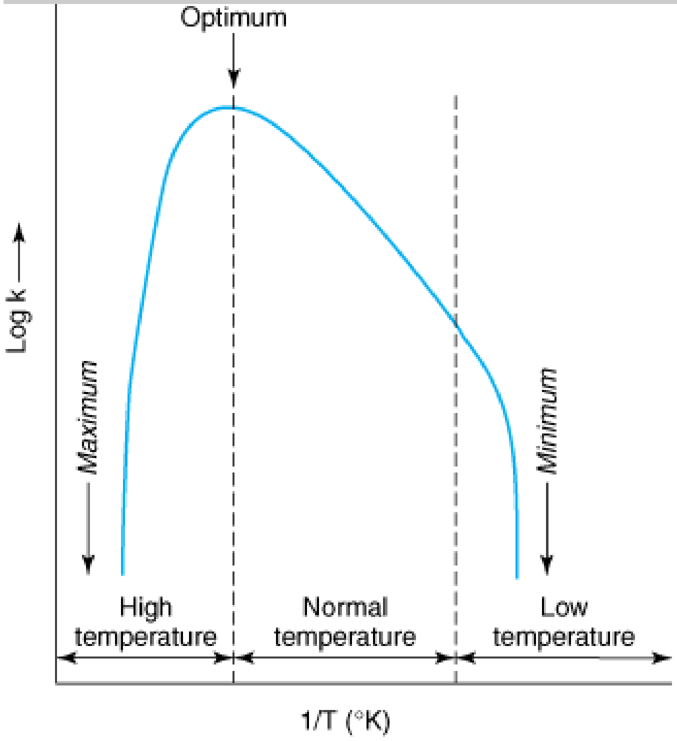
Temperature

Different microbial species vary widely in their optimal temperature ranges for growth: Psychrophilic forms grow best at low temperatures (1520 C); mesophilic forms grow best at 3037 C; and most thermophilic forms grow best at 5060 C. Some organisms are hyperthermophilic and can grow at well above the temperature of boiling water, which exists under high pressure in the depths of the ocean. Most organisms are mesophilic; 30 C is optimal for many free-living forms, and the body temperature of the host is optimal for symbionts of warm-blooded animals.

The upper end of the temperature range tolerated by any given species correlates well with the general thermal stability of that species' proteins as measured in cell extracts. Microorganisms share with plants and animals the heat-shock response, a transient synthesis of a set of "heat-shock proteins," when exposed to a sudden rise in temperature above the growth optimum. These proteins appear to be unusually heat-resistant and to stabilize the heat-sensitive proteins of the cell.

The relationship of growth rate to temperature for any given microorganism is seen in a typical Arrhenius plot (Figure 52). Arrhenius showed that the logarithm of the velocity of any chemical reaction (log k) is a linear function of the reciprocal of the temperature (1/T); since cell growth is the result of a set of chemical reactions, it might be expected to show this relationship. Figure 52 shows this to be the case over the normal range of temperatures for a given species; log k decreases linearly with 1/T. Above and below the normal range, however, log k drops rapidly, so that maximum temperature values are defined.

Figure 52.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

General form of an Arrhenius plot of bacterial growth.

(After Ingraham JL: Growth of psychrophilic bacteria. J Bacteriol 1958;76(1):7580.)

Beyond their effects on growth rate, extremes of temperature kill microorganisms. Extreme heat is used to sterilize preparations (see Chapter 4); extreme cold also kills microbial cells, although it cannot be used safely for sterilization. Bacteria also exhibit a phenomenon called cold shock : the killing of cells by rapidas opposed to slowcooling. For example, the rapid cooling of *Escherichia coli* from 37 C to 5 C can kill 90% of the cells. A number of compounds protect cells from either freezing or cold shock; glycerol and dimethyl sulfoxide are most commonly used.

Aeration

The role of oxygen as hydrogen acceptor is discussed in Chapter 6. Many organisms are obligate aerobes, specifically requiring oxygen as hydrogen acceptor; some are facultative, able to live aerobically or anaerobically; and others are obligate anaerobes, requiring a substance other than oxygen as hydrogen acceptor and being sensitive to oxygen inhibition.

The natural by-products of aerobic metabolism are the reactive compounds hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) and superoxide (O_2^-). In the presence of iron, these two species can generate hydroxyl radicals (OH), which can damage any biologic macromolecule:

$$O_2^- + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{Fe^{3+}/Fe^{2+}} O_2 + OH^- + \bullet OH$$

Many aerobes and aerotolerant anaerobes are protected from these products by the presence of superoxide dismutase, an enzyme that catalyzes the reaction

$$2O_2^- + 2H^+ \longrightarrow O_2 + H_2O_2$$

and by the presence of catalase, an enzyme that catalyzes the reaction

$$2H_2O_2 \longrightarrow 2H_2O + O_2$$

Some fermentative organisms (eg, *Lactobacillus plantarum*) are aerotolerant but do not contain catalase or superoxide dismutase. Oxygen is not reduced, and therefore H_2O_2 and O_2^- are not produced. All strict anaerobes lack both superoxide dismutase and catalase. Some anaerobic organisms (eg, *Peptococcus anaerobius*) have considerable tolerance to oxygen as a result of their ability to produce high levels of an enzyme (NADH oxidase) that reduces oxygen to water according to the reaction

$$NADH + H^+ + 1/2O_2 \longrightarrow NAD^+ + H_2O$$

Hydrogen peroxide owes much of its toxicity to the damage it causes to DNA. DNA repair-deficient mutants are exceptionally sensitive to hydrogen peroxide; the *recA* gene product, which functions in both genetic recombination and repair, has been shown to be more important than either catalase or superoxide dismutase in protecting *E coli* cells against hydrogen peroxide toxicity.

The supply of air to cultures of aerobes is a major technical problem. Vessels are usually shaken mechanically to introduce oxygen into the medium, or air is forced through the medium by pressure. The diffusion of oxygen often becomes the limiting factor in growing aerobic bacteria; when a cell concentration of 45×10^9 /mL is reached, the rate of diffusion of oxygen to the cells sharply limits the rate of further growth.

Obligate anaerobes, on the other hand, present the problem of oxygen exclusion. Many methods are available for this: Reducing agents such as sodium thioglycolate can be added to liquid cultures; tubes of agar can be sealed with a layer of petrolatum and paraffin; the culture vessel can be placed in a container from which the oxygen is removed by evacuation or by chemical means; or the organism can be handled within an anaerobic glove-box.

Ionic Strength & Osmotic Pressure

To a lesser extent, such factors as osmotic pressure and salt concentration may have to be controlled. For most organisms, the properties of ordinary media are satisfactory; however, for marine forms and organisms adapted to growth in strong sugar solutions, for example, these factors must be considered. Organisms requiring high salt concentrations are called halophilic; those requiring high osmotic pressures are called osmophilic.

Most bacteria are able to tolerate a wide range of external osmotic pressures and ionic strengths because of their ability to regulate internal osmolality and ion concentration. Osmolality is regulated by the active transport of K^+ ions into the cell; internal ionic strength is kept constant by a compensating excretion of the positively charged organic polyamine putrescine. Since putrescine carries several positive charges per molecule, a large drop in ionic strength is effected at only a small cost in osmotic strength.

CULTIVATION METHODS

Two problems will be considered: the choice of a suitable medium and the isolation of a bacterial organism in pure culture.

The Medium

The technique used and the type of medium selected depend upon the nature of the investigation. In general, three situations may be encountered: (1) One may need to raise a crop of cells of a particular species that is on hand; (2) one may need to determine the numbers and types of organisms present in a given material; or (3) one may wish to isolate a particular type of microorganism from a natural source.

GROWING CELLS OF A GIVEN SPECIES

Microorganisms observed microscopically to be growing in a natural environment may prove exceedingly difficult to grow in pure culture in an artificial medium. Certain parasitic forms, for example, have never been cultivated outside the host. In general, however, a suitable medium can be devised by carefully reproducing the conditions found in the organism's natural environment. The pH, temperature, and aeration are easy to duplicate; the nutrients present the major problem. The contribution made by the living environment is important and difficult to analyze; a parasite may require an extract of the host tissue, and a free-living form may require a substance excreted by a microorganism with which it is associated in nature. Considerable experimentation may be necessary in order to determine the requirements of the organism, and success depends upon providing a suitable source of each category of nutrient listed at the beginning of this chapter. The cultivation of obligate parasites such as chlamydiae is discussed in Chapter 28.

MICROBIOLOGIC EXAMINATION OF NATURAL MATERIALS

A given natural material may contain many different microenvironments, each providing a niche for a different species. Plating a sample of the material under one set of conditions will allow a selected group of forms to produce colonies but will cause many other types to be overlooked. For this reason, it is customary to plate out samples of the material using as many different media and conditions of incubation as is practicable. Six to eight different culture conditions are not an unreasonable number if most of the forms present are to be discovered.

Since every type of organism present must have a chance to grow, solid media are used and crowding of colonies is avoided. Otherwise, competition will prevent some types from forming colonies.

ISOLATION OF A PARTICULAR TYPE OF MICROORGANISM

A small sample of soil, if handled properly, will yield a different type of organism for every microenvironment present. For fertile soil (moist, aerated, rich in minerals and organic matter) this means that hundreds or even thousands of types can be isolated. This is done by selecting for the desired type. One gram of soil, for example, is inoculated into a flask of liquid medium that has been made up for the purpose of favoring one type of organism, eg, aerobic nitrogen fixers (azotobacter). In this case, the medium contains no combined nitrogen and is incubated aerobically. If cells of azotobacter are present in the soil, they will grow well in this medium; forms unable to fix nitrogen will grow only to the extent that the soil has introduced contaminating fixed nitrogen into the medium. When the culture is fully grown, therefore, the percentage of azotobacter in the total population will have increased greatly; the method is thus called "enrichment culture." Transfer of a sample of this culture to fresh medium will result in further enrichment of azotobacter; after several serial transfers, the culture can be plated out on a solidified enrichment medium and colonies of azotobacter isolated.

Liquid medium is used to permit competition and hence optimal selection, even when the desired type is represented in the soil as only a few cells in a population of millions. Advantage can be taken of "natural enrichment." For example, in looking for kerosene oxidizers, oil-laden soil is chosen, since it is already an enrichment environment for such forms.

Enrichment culture, then, is a procedure whereby the medium is prepared so as to duplicate the natural environment ("niche") of the desired microorganism, thereby selecting for it. An important principle involved in such selection is the following: The organism selected for will be the type whose nutritional requirements are barely satisfied. Azotobacter, for example, grows best in a medium containing organic nitrogen, but its minimum requirement is the presence of N_2 ; hence it is selected for in a medium containing N_2 as the sole nitrogen source. If organic nitrogen is added to the medium, the conditions no longer select for azotobacter but rather for a form for which organic nitrogen is the minimum requirement.

When searching for a particular type of organism in a natural material, it is advantageous to plate the organisms obtained on a differential medium if available. A differential medium is one that will cause the colonies of a particular type of organism to have a distinctive appearance. For example, colonies of *E coli* have a characteristic iridescent sheen on agar containing the dyes eosin and methylene blue (EMB agar). EMB agar containing a high concentration of one sugar will also cause organisms which ferment that sugar to form reddish colonies. Differential media are used for such purposes as recognizing the presence of enteric bacteria in water or milk and the presence of certain pathogens in clinical specimens.

Table 52 presents examples of enrichment culture conditions and the types of bacteria they will select. However, in spite of our best efforts, many environments contain numerous uncultured bacteria.

Table 52. Some Enrichment Cultures.

N_2

CO_2

Aerobic or anaerobic
Dark
None
Light
Cyanobacteria
Alcohol, fatty acids, etc
Anaerobic
Dark
None
Air
Dark
Azotobacter

Glucose
Anaerobic
Dark
Clostridium pasteurianum
Air
Dark
Azotobacter
$NaNO_3$

CO_2

Aerobic or anaerobic
Dark
None
Light
Green algae and cyanobacteria
Alcohol, fatty acids, etc
Anaerobic
Dark
Denitrifiers
Air
Dark
Aerobes
Glucose
Anaerobic
Dark
Fermenters
Air
Dark
Aerobes
NH_4 Cl

CO_2

Anaerobic
Dark
None
Aerobic
Dark
Nitrosomonas
Aerobic or anaerobic
Light
Green algae and cyanobacteria
Alcohol, fatty acids, etc
Anaerobic
Dark
Sulfate or carbonate reducers
Aerobic
Dark

Aerobes
Glucose
Anaerobic
Dark
Fermenters
Aerobic
Dark
Aerobes

Nitrogen Source	Carbon Source	Atmosphere	Illumination	Predominant Organism Initially Enriched

Note: Constituents of all media: $MgSO_4$, K_2 HPO_4 , $FeCl_3$, $CaCl_2$, $CaCO_3$, trace elements.

Isolation of Microorganisms in Pure Culture

In order to study the properties of a given organism, it is necessary to handle it in pure culture free of all other types of organisms. To do this, a single cell must be isolated from all other cells and cultivated in such a manner that its collective progeny also remain isolated. Several methods are available.

PLATING

Unlike cells in a liquid medium, cells in or on a gelled medium are immobilized. Therefore, if few enough cells are placed in or on a gelled medium, each cell will grow into an isolated colony. The ideal gelling agent for most microbiologic media is agar, an acidic polysaccharide extracted from certain red algae. A 1.52% suspension in water dissolves at 100 C, forming a clear solution that gels at 45 C. Thus, a sterile agar solution can be cooled to 50 C, bacteria or other microbial cells added, and then the solution quickly cooled below 45 C to form a gel. (Although most microbial cells are killed at 50 C, the time-course of the killing process is sufficiently slow at this temperature to permit this procedure; see Figure 43.) Once gelled, agar will not again liquefy until it is heated above 80 C, so that any temperature suitable for the incubation of a microbial culture can subsequently be used. In the pour-plate method, a suspension of cells is mixed with melted agar at 50 C and poured into a Petri dish. When the agar solidifies, the cells are immobilized in the agar and grow into colonies. If the cell suspension is sufficiently dilute, the colonies will be well separated, so that each has a high probability of being derived from a single cell. To make certain of this, however, it is necessary to pick a colony of the desired type, suspend it in water, and replate. Repeating this procedure several times ensures that a pure culture will be obtained.

Alternatively, the original suspension can be streaked on an agar plate with a wire loop. As the streaking continues, fewer and fewer cells are left on the loop, and finally the loop may deposit single cells on the agar. The plate is incubated, and any well-isolated colony is then removed, resuspended in water, and again streaked on agar. If a suspension (and not just a bit of growth from a colony or slant) is streaked, this method is just as reliable as and much faster than the pour-plate method.

DILUTION

A much less reliable method is that of extinction dilution. The suspension is serially diluted, and samples of each dilution are plated. If only a few samples of a particular dilution exhibit growth, it is presumed that some of the colonies started from single cells. This method is not used unless plating is for some reason impossible. An undesirable feature of this method is that it can only be used to isolate the predominant type of organism in a mixed population.

REFERENCES

Adams MW: Enzymes and proteins from organisms that grow near or above 100 degrees C. Annu Rev Med 1993;47:627. [PMID: 8257111]

Koch AL: Microbial physiology and ecology of slow growth. Microbiol Molec Biol Rev 1997;61:305. [PMID: 9293184]

Lederberg J (editor): *Encyclopedia of Microbiology,* 4 vol. Academic Press, 1992.

Maier RM, Pepper IL, Gerba CP: *Environmental Microbiology.* Academic Press, 1992.

Marzlut GA: Regulation of sulfur and nitrogen metabolism in filamentary fungi. Annu Rev Microbiol 1993;42:89.

Pelczar MJ Jr, Chan ECS, Krieg NR: *Microbiology: Concepts and Applications*. McGraw-Hill, 1993.

Schloss PD, Handelsman J: Status of the microbial census. Microbiol Molec Biol Rev 2004;68:686.

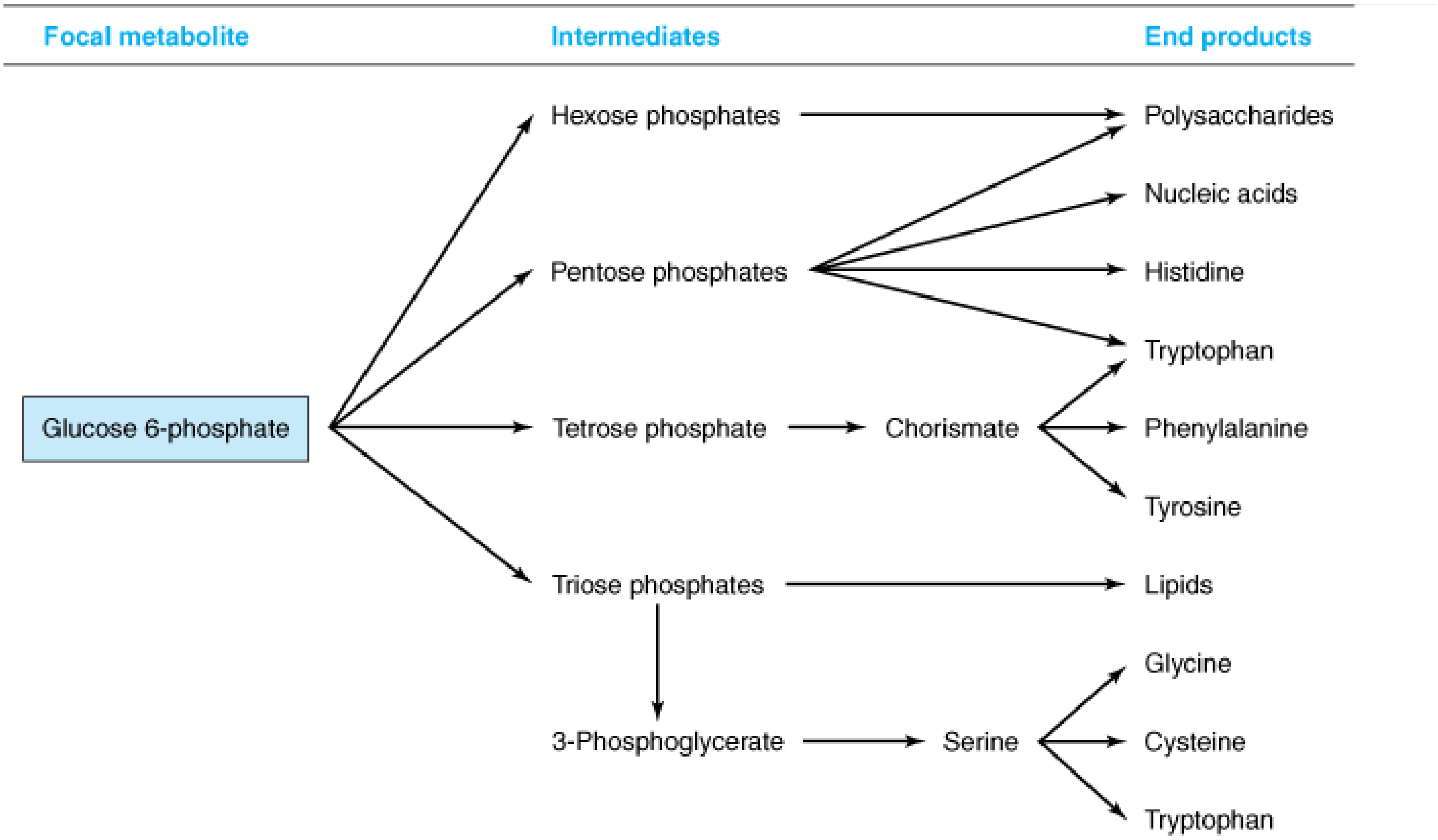
Lange Microbiology >Chapter 6. Microbial Metabolism>

ROLE OF METABOLISM IN BIOSYNTHESIS & GROWTH

Microbial growth requires the polymerization of biochemical building blocks into proteins, nucleic acids, polysaccharides, and lipids. The building blocks must come preformed in the growth medium or must be synthesized by the growing cells. Additional biosynthetic demands are placed by the requirement for coenzymes that participate in enzymatic catalysis. Biosynthetic polymerization reactions demand the transfer of anhydride bonds from ATP. Growth demands a source of metabolic energy for the synthesis of anhydride bonds and for the maintenance of transmembrane gradients of ions and metabolites.

The biosynthetic origins of building blocks and coenzymes can be traced to relatively few precursors, called focal metabolites. Figures 61, 62, 63, and 64 illustrate how the respective focal metabolites glucose 6-phosphate, phosphoenolpyruvate, oxaloacetate, and α-ketoglutarate give rise to most biosynthetic end products. Microbial metabolism can be divided into four general categories: (1) pathways for the interconversion of focal metabolites, (2) assimilatory pathways for the formation of focal metabolites, (3) biosynthetic sequences for the conversion of focal metabolites to end products, and (4) pathways that yield metabolic energy for growth and maintenance.

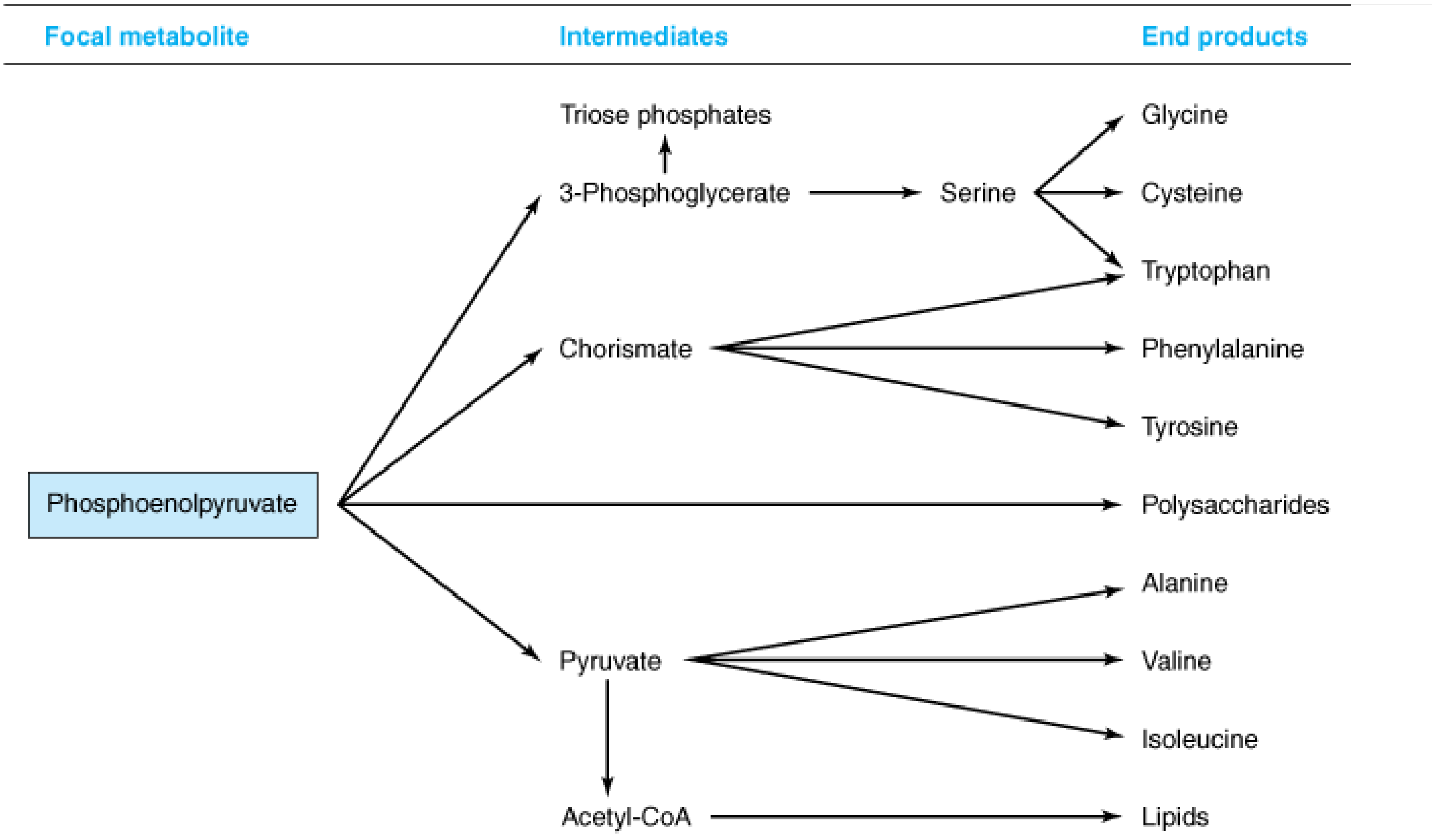
Figure 61.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biosynthetic end products formed from glucose 6-phosphate. Carbohydrate phosphate esters of varying chain length serve as intermediates in the biosynthetic pathways.

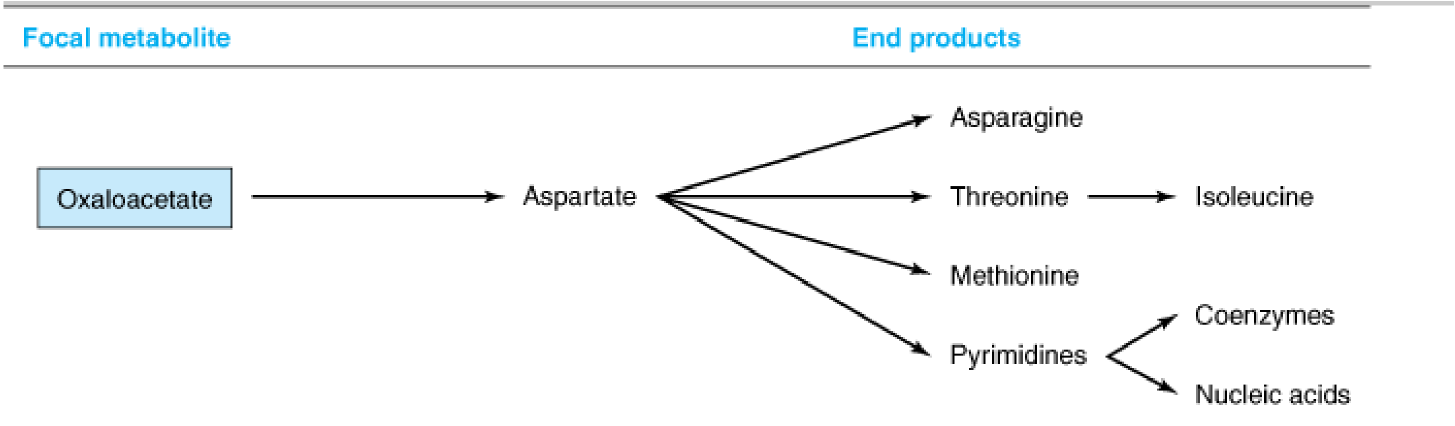
Figure 62.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biosynthetic end products formed from phosphoenolpyruvate.

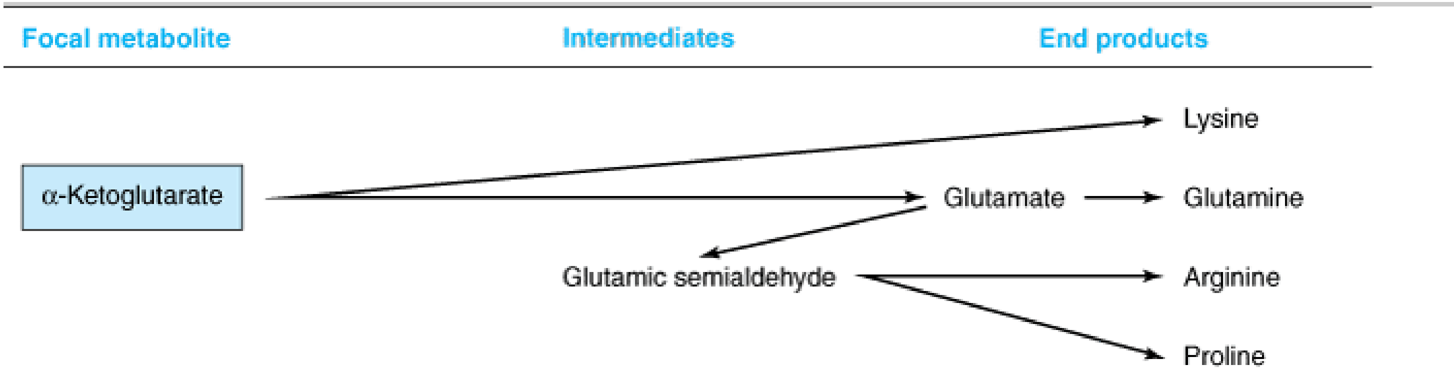
Figure 63.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biosynthetic end products formed from oxaloacetate. The end products aspartate, threonine, and pyrimidines serve as intermediates in the synthesis of additional compounds.

Figure 64.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biosynthetic end products formed from α-ketoglutarate.

When provided with building blocks and a source of metabolic energy, a cell synthesizes macromolecules. The sequence of building blocks within a macromolecule is determined in one of two ways. In nucleic acids and proteins, it is template-directed: DNA serves as the template for its own synthesis and for the synthesis of the various types of RNA; messenger RNA serves as the template for the synthesis of proteins. In carbohydrates and lipids, on the other hand, the arrangement of building blocks is determined entirely by enzyme specificities. Once the macromolecules have been synthesized, they self-assemble to form the supramolecular structures of the cell, eg, ribosomes, membranes, cell wall, flagella, and pili.

The rate of macromolecular synthesis and the activity of metabolic pathways must be regulated so that biosynthesis is balanced. All of the components required for macromolecular synthesis must be present for orderly growth, and control must be exerted so that the resources of the cell are not expended on products that do not contribute to growth or survival.

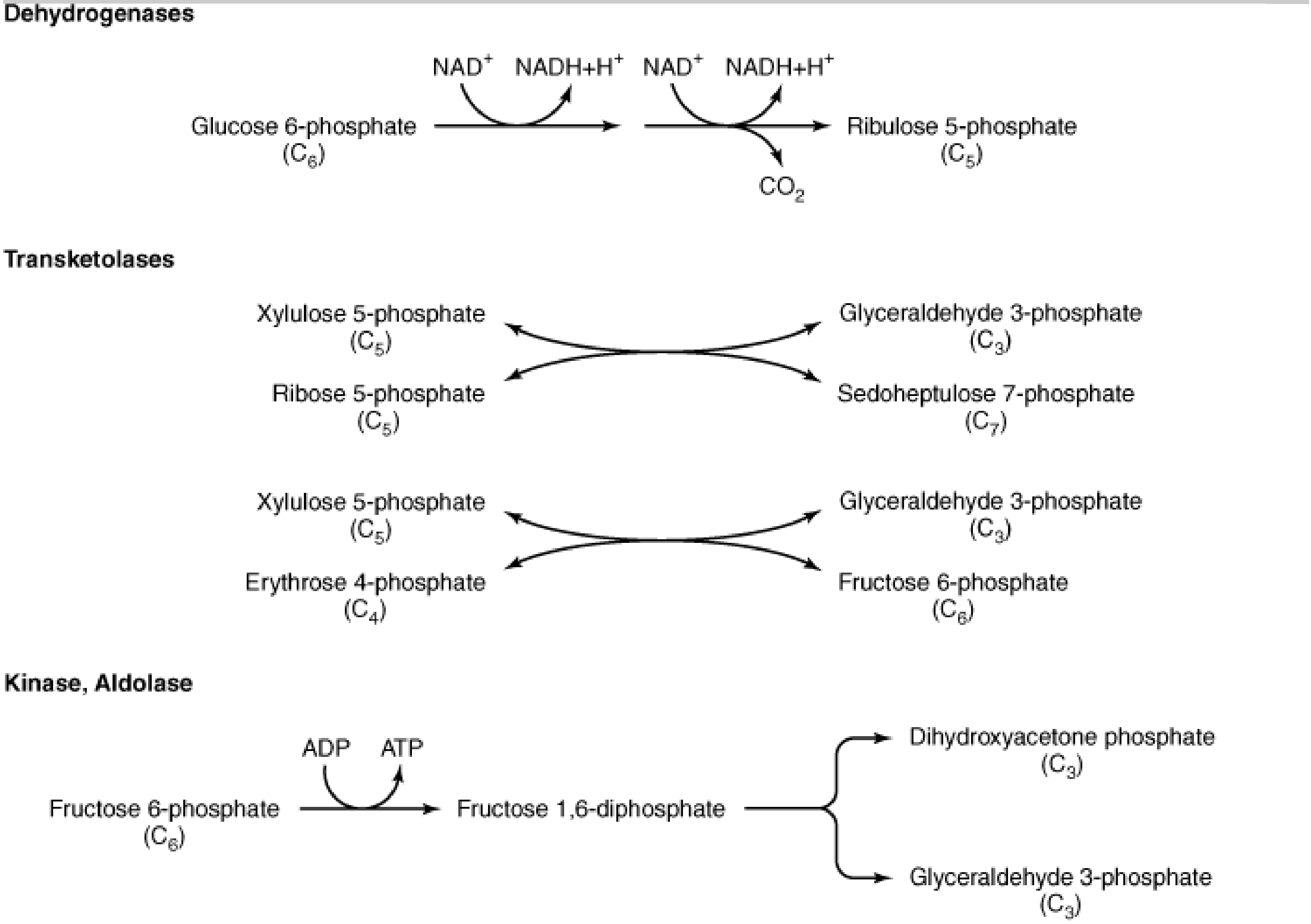
This chapter contains a review of microbial metabolism and its regulation. Microorganisms represent extremes of evolutionary divergence, and a vast array of metabolic pathways are found within the group. For example, any of more than half a dozen different metabolic pathways may be used for assimilation of a relatively simple compound, benzoate, and a single pathway for benzoate assimilation may be regulated by any of more than half a dozen control mechanisms. Our goal will be to illustrate the principles that underlie metabolic pathways and their regulation. The primary principle that determines metabolic pathways is that they are achieved by organizing relatively few biochemical type reactions in a specific order. Many biosynthetic pathways can be deduced by examining the chemical structures of the starting material, the end product, and, perhaps, one or two metabolic intermediates. The primary principle underlying metabolic regulation is that enzymes tend to be called into play only when their catalytic activity is demanded. The activity of an enzyme may be changed by varying either the amount of enzyme or the amount of substrate. In some cases, the activity of enzymes may be altered by the binding of specific effectors, metabolites that modulate enzyme activity.

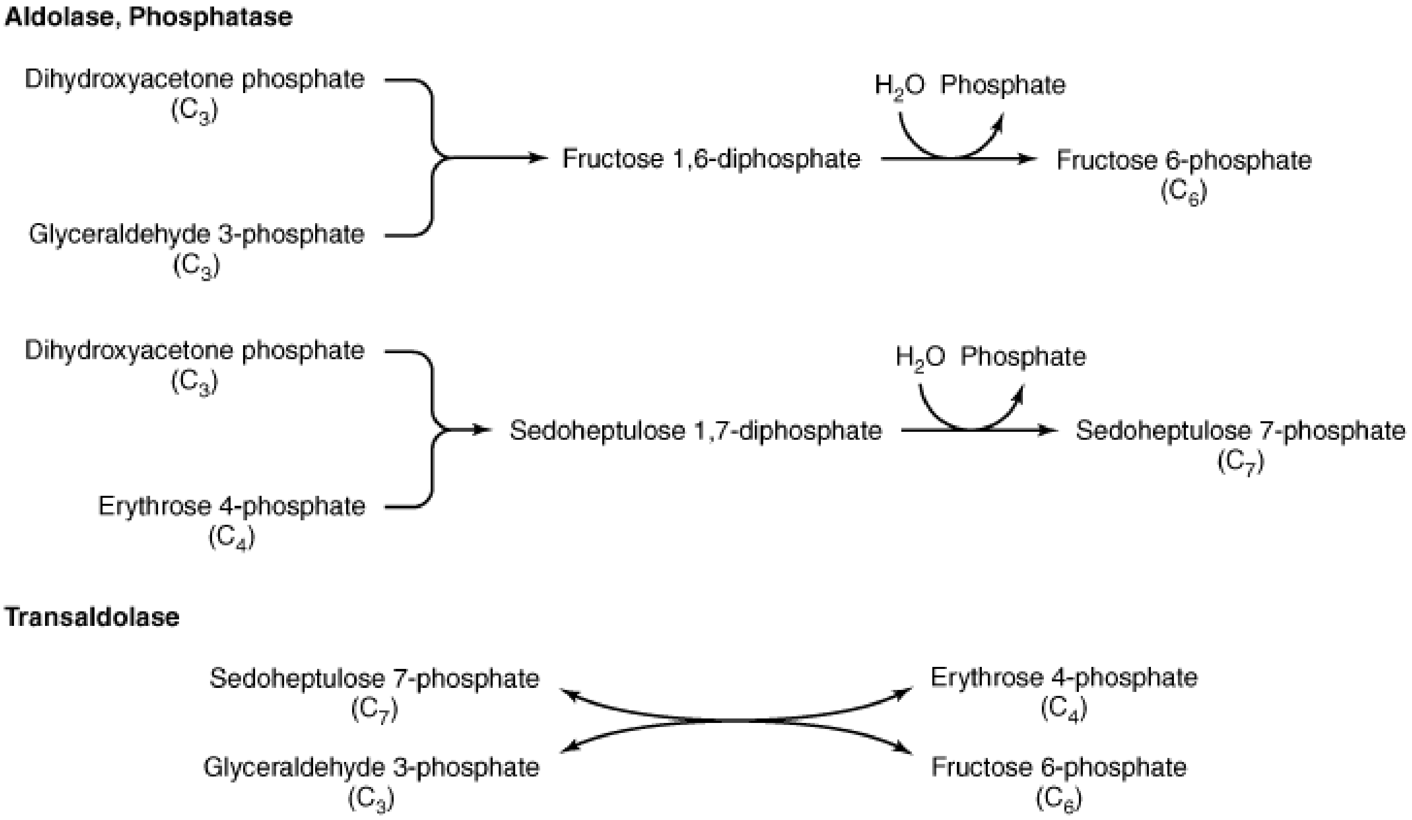
FOCAL METABOLITES & THEIR INTERCONVERSION

Glucose 6-Phosphate & Carbohydrate Interconversions

Figure 61 illustrates how glucose 6-phosphate is converted to a range of biosynthetic end products via phosphate esters of carbohydrates with different chain lengths. Carbohydrates possess the empirical formula $(CH_2O)_n$, and the primary objective of carbohydrate metabolism is to change n, the length of the carbon chain. Mechanisms by which the chain lengths of carbohydrate phosphates are interconverted are summarized in Figure 65. In one case, oxidative reactions are used to remove a single carbon from glucose 6-phosphate, producing the pentose derivative ribulose 5-phosphate. Isomerase and epimerase reactions interconvert the most common biochemical forms of the pentoses: ribulose 5-phosphate, ribose 5-phosphate, and xylulose 5-phosphate. Transketolases transfer a two-carbon fragment from a donor to an acceptor molecule. These reactions allow pentoses to form or to be formed from carbohydrates of varying chain lengths. As shown in Figure 65, two pentose 5-phosphates (n = 5) are interconvertible with triose 3-phosphate (n = 3) and heptose 7-phosphate (n = 7); pentose 5-phosphate (n = 5) and tetrose 4-phosphate (n = 4) are interconvertible with triose 3-phosphate (n = 3) and hexose 6-phosphate (n = 6).

Figure 65.





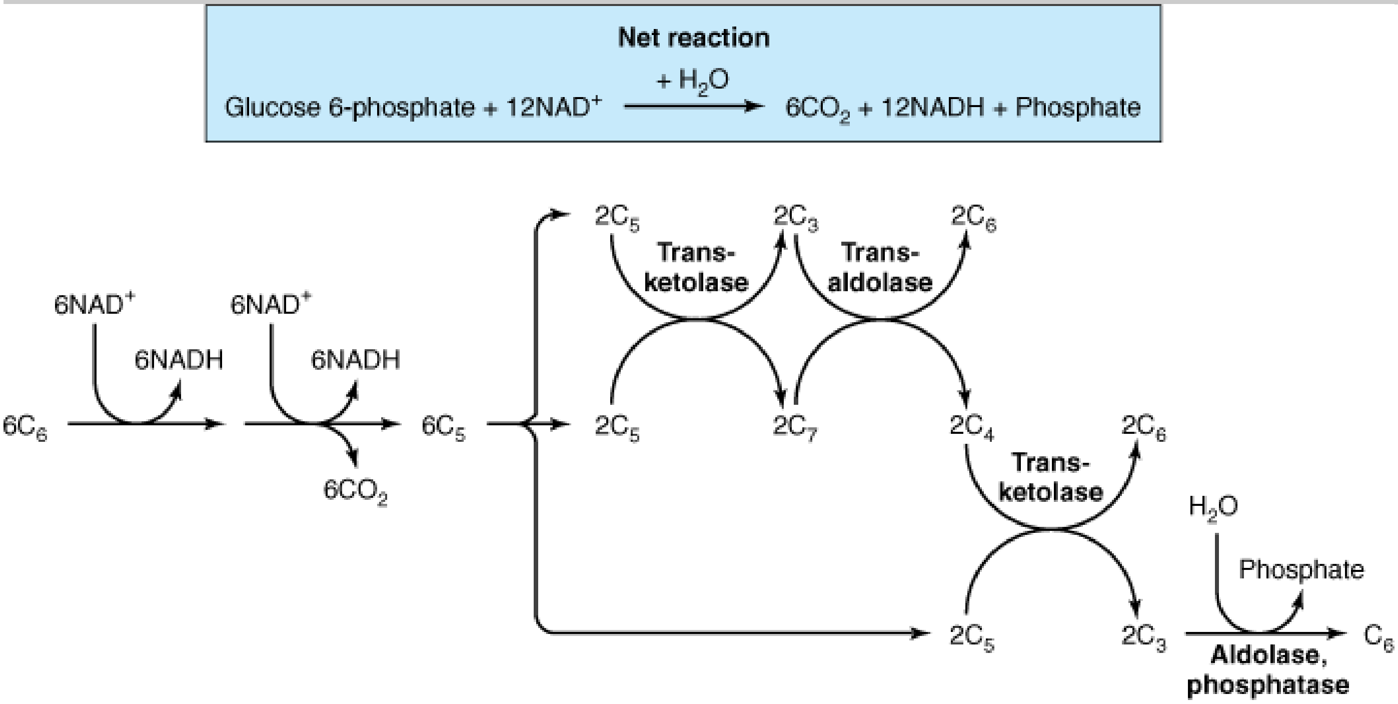
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biochemical mechanisms for changing the length of carbohydrate molecules. The general empirical formula for carbohydrate phosphate esters, ($C_n H_{2n} O_n$)-*N* -phosphate, is abbreviated (C_n) in order to emphasize changes in chain length.

The six-carbon hexose chain of fructose 6-phosphate can be converted to two three-carbon triose derivatives by the consecutive action of a kinase and an aldolase on fructose 6-phosphate. Alternatively, aldolases, acting in conjunction with phosphatases, can be used to lengthen carbohydrate molecules: Triose phosphates give rise to fructose 6-phosphate; a triose phosphate and tetrose 4-phosphate form heptose 7-phosphate. The final form of carbohydrate chain length interconversion is the transaldolase reaction, which interconverts heptose 7-phosphate and triose 3-phosphate with tetrose 4-phosphate and hexose 6-phosphate.

The coordination of different carbohydrate rearrangement reactions to achieve an overall metabolic goal is illustrated by the hexose monophosphate shunt (Figure 66). This metabolic cycle is used by cyanobacteria for the reduction of NAD^+ to NADH, which serves as a reductant for respiration in the dark. Many organisms use the hexose monophosphate shunt to reduce $NADP^+$ to NADPH, which is used for biosynthetic reduction reactions. The first steps in the hexose monophosphate shunt are the oxidative reactions that shorten six hexose 6-phosphates (abbreviated as six C_6 in Figure 66) to six pentose 5-phosphates (abbreviated six C_5). Carbohydrate rearrangement reactions convert the six C_5 molecules to five C_6 molecules so that the oxidative cycle may continue.

Figure 66.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The hexose monophosphate shunt. Oxidative reactions (Figure 65) reduce NAD^+ and produce CO_2 , resulting in the shortening of the six hexose phosphates (abbreviated C_6) to six pentose phosphates (abbreviated C_5). Carbohydrate rearrangements (Figure 65) convert the pentose phosphates to hexose phosphates so that the oxidative cycle may continue.

Clearly, all reactions for interconversion of carbohydrate chain lengths are not called into play at the same time. Selection of specific sets of enzymes, essentially the determination of the metabolic pathway taken, is dictated by the source of carbon and the biosynthetic demands of the cell. For example, a cell given triose phosphate as a source of carbohydrate will use the aldolase-phosphatase combination to form fructose 6-phosphate; the kinase that acts on fructose 6-phosphate in its conversion to triose phosphate would not be expected to be active under these circumstances. If demands for pentose 5-phosphate are high, as in the case of photosynthetic carbon dioxide assimilation, transketolases that can give rise to pentose 5-phosphates are very active.

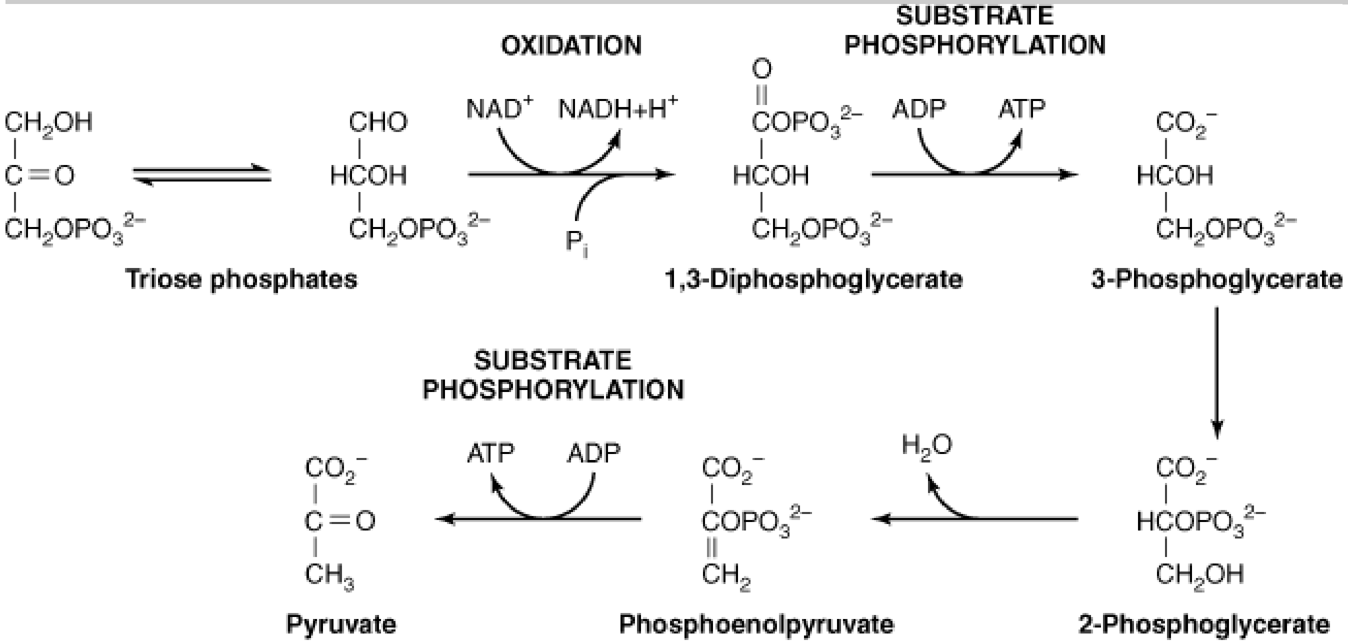
In sum, glucose 6-phosphate can be regarded as a focal metabolite because it serves both as a direct precursor for metabolic building blocks and as a source of carbohydrates of varying length that are used for biosynthetic purposes. Glucose 6-phosphate itself may be generated from other phosphorylated carbohydrates by selection of pathways from a set of reactions for chain length interconversion. The reactions chosen are determined by the genetic potential of the cell, the primary carbon source, and the biosynthetic demands of the organism. Metabolic regulation is required to ensure that reactions which meet the requirements of the organism are selected.

Formation & Utilization of Phosphoenolpyruvate

Triose phosphates, formed by the interconversion of carbohydrate phosphoesters, are converted to phosphoenolpyruvate by the series of reactions shown in Figure 67. Oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate by

NAD^+ is accompanied by the formation of the acid anhydride bond on the one carbon of 1,3-diphosphoglycerate. This phosphate anhydride is transferred in a substrate phosphorylation to ADP, yielding an energy-rich bond in ATP. Another energy-rich phosphate bond is formed by dehydration of 2-phosphoglycerate to phosphoenolpyruvate; via another substrate phosphorylation, phosphoenolpyruvate can donate the energy-rich bond to ADP, yielding ATP and pyruvate. Thus, two energy-rich bonds in ATP can be obtained by the metabolic conversion of triose phosphate to pyruvate. This is an oxidative process, and in the absence of an exogenous electron acceptor, the NADH generated by oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate must be oxidized to NAD^+ by pyruvate or by metabolites derived from pyruvate. The products formed as a result of this process vary and, as described later in this chapter, can be used in the identification of clinically significant bacteria.

Figure 67.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Formation of phosphoenolpyruvate and pyruvate from triose phosphate. The figure draws attention to two sites of substrate phosphorylation and to the oxidative step that results in the reduction of NAD^+ to NADH. Repetition of this energy-yielding pathway demands a mechanism for oxidizing NADH to NAD^+ . Fermentative organisms achieve this goal by using pyruvate or metabolites derived from pyruvate as oxidants.

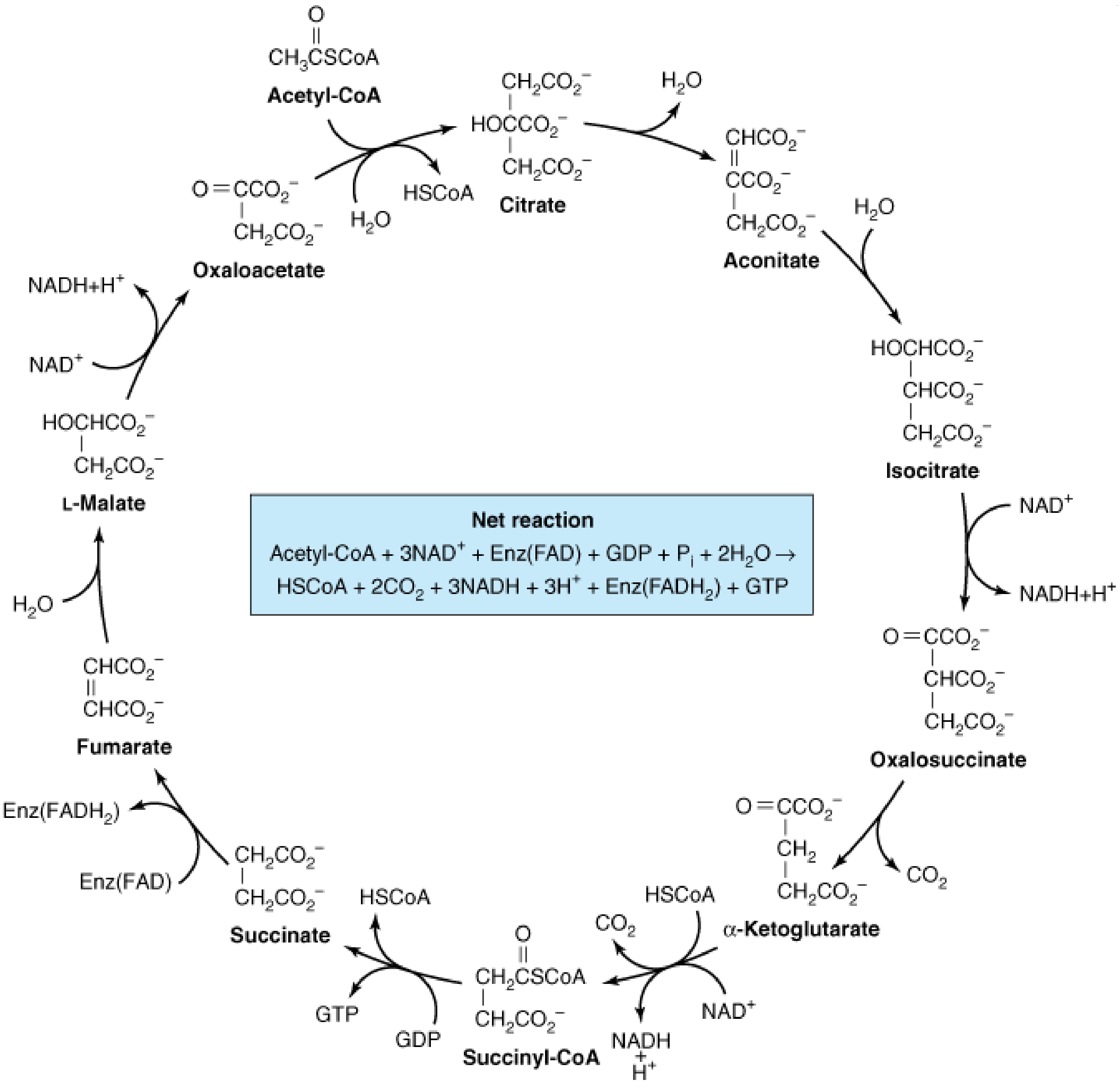
Formation of phosphoenolpyruvate from pyruvate requires a substantial amount of metabolic energy, and two anhydride ATP bonds invariably are invested in the process. Some organisms*Escherichia coli,* for exampledirectly phosphorylate pyruvate with ATP, yielding AMP and inorganic phosphate (P_i). Other organisms use two metabolic steps: One ATP pyrophosphate bond is invested in the carboxylation of pyruvate to oxaloacetate, and a second pyrophosphate bond (often carried by GTP rather than ATP) is used to generate phosphoenolpyruvate from oxaloacetate.

Formation & Utilization of Oxaloacetate

As described above, many organisms form oxaloacetate by the ATP-dependent carboxylation of pyruvate. Other organisms, such as *E coli,* which form phosphoenolpyruvate directly from pyruvate, synthesize oxaloacetate by carboxylation of phosphoenolpyruvate.

Succinyl-CoA is a required biosynthetic precursor for the synthesis of porphyrins and other essential compounds. Some organisms form succinyl-CoA by reduction of oxaloacetate via malate and fumarate. These reactions represent a reversal of the metabolic flow observed in the conventional tricarboxylic acid cycle (see Figure 610).

Figure 610.



Net reaction

$$\text{Acetyl-CoA} + 3NAD^+ + \text{Enz(FAD)} + GDP + P_i + 2H_2O \rightarrow$$
$$HSCoA + 2CO_2 + 3NADH + 3H^+ + \text{Enz}(FADH_2) + GTP$$

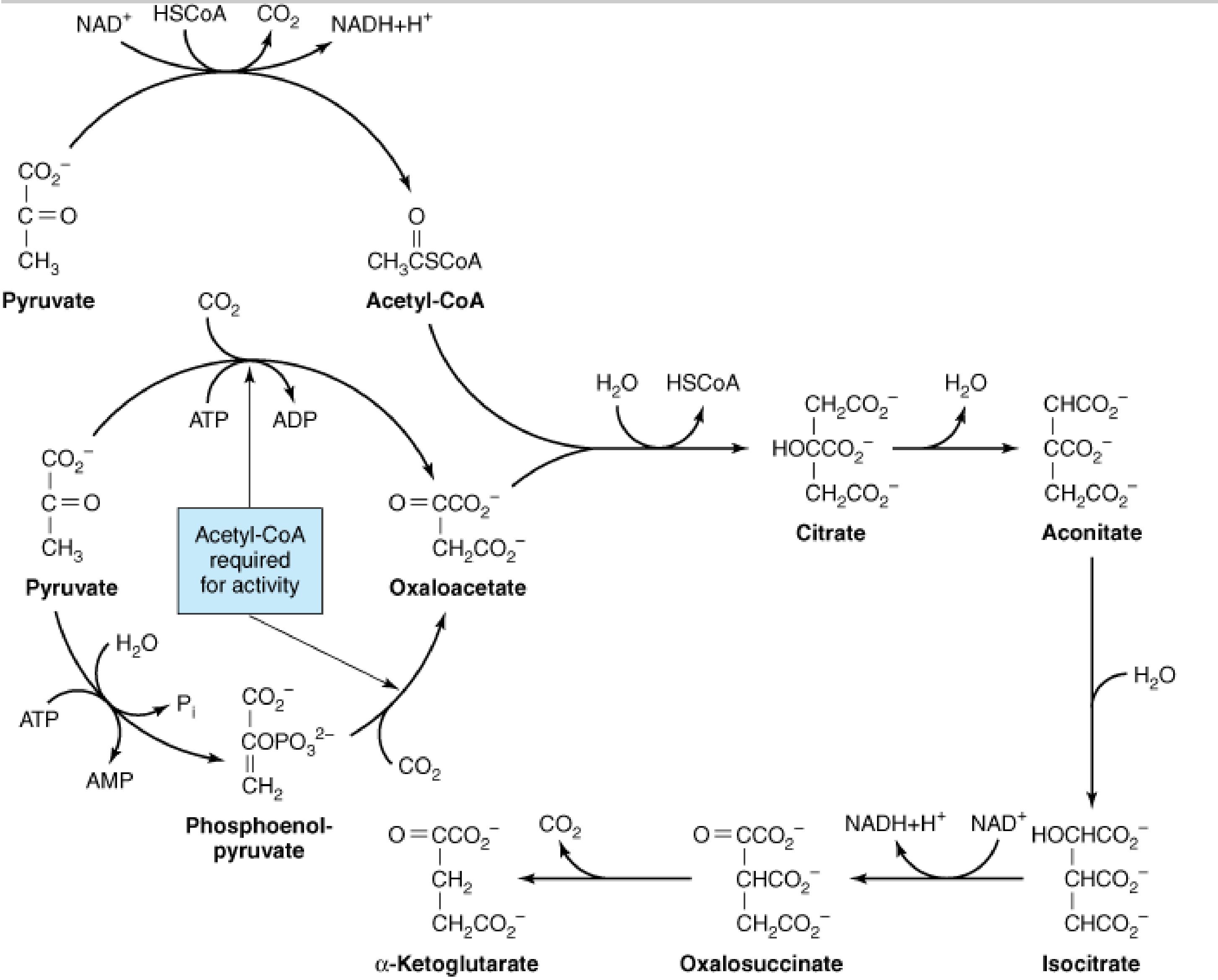
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The tricarboxylic acid cycle. There are four oxidative steps, three giving rise to NADH and one giving rise to a reduced flavoprotein, $Enz(FADH_2)$. The cycle can continue only if electron acceptors are available to oxidize the NADH and reduced flavoprotein.

Formation of α-Ketoglutarate from Pyruvate

Conversion of pyruvate to α-ketoglutarate requires a metabolic pathway that diverges and then converges (Figure 68). In one branch, oxaloacetate is formed by carboxylation of pyruvate or phosphoenolpyruvate. In the other branch, pyruvate is oxidized to acetyl-CoA. It is noteworthy that, regardless of the enzymatic mechanism used for the formation of oxaloacetate, acetyl-CoA is required as a positive metabolic effector for this process. Thus, the synthesis of oxaloacetate is balanced with the production of acetyl-CoA. Condensation of oxaloacetate with acetyl-CoA yields citrate. Isomerization of the citrate molecule produces isocitrate, which is oxidatively decarboxylated to α-ketoglutarate.

Figure 68.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

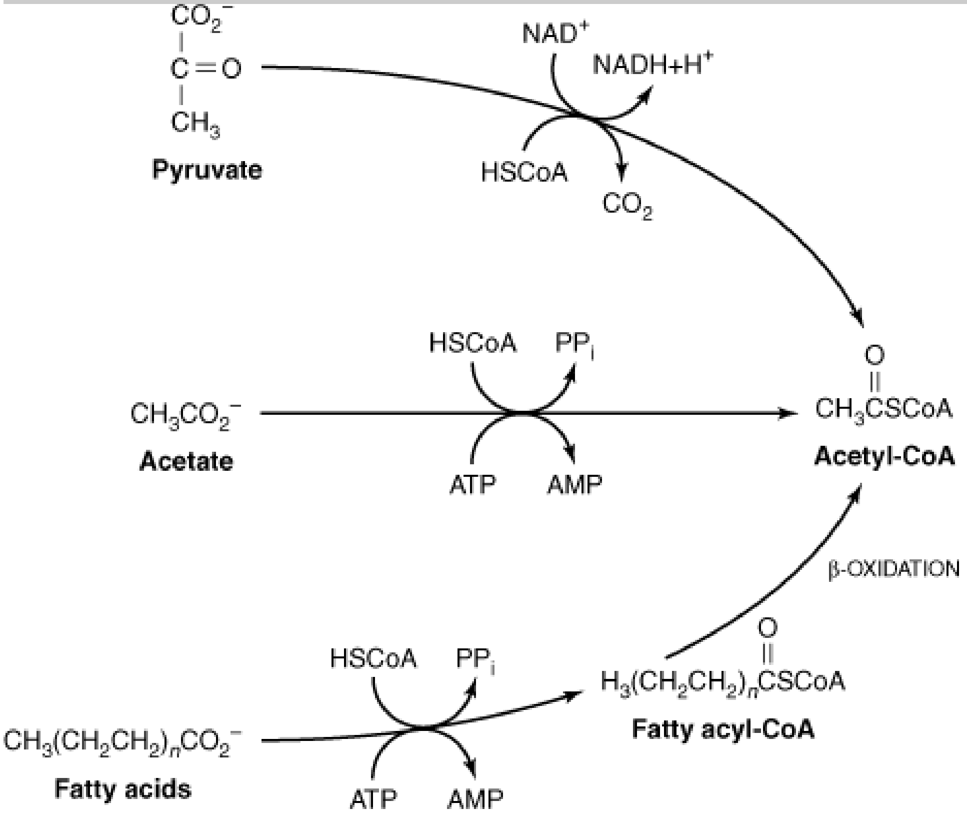
Conversion of pyruvate to α-ketoglutarate. Pyruvate is converted to α-ketoglutarate by a branched biosynthetic pathway. In one branch, pyruvate is oxidized to acetyl-CoA; in the other, pyruvate is carboxylated to oxaloacetate.

ASSIMILATORY PATHWAYS

Growth with Acetate

Acetate is metabolized via acetyl-CoA, and many organisms possess the ability to form acetyl-CoA (Figure 69). Acetyl-CoA is used in the biosynthesis of α-ketoglutarate, and in most respiratory organisms, the acetyl fragment in acetyl-CoA is oxidized completely to carbon dioxide via the tricarboxylic acid cycle (Figure 610). The ability to utilize acetate as a net source of carbon, however, is limited to relatively few microorganisms and plants. Net synthesis of biosynthetic precursors from acetate is achieved by coupling reactions of the tricarboxylic acid cycle with two additional reactions catalyzed by isocitrate lyase and malate synthase. As shown in Figure 611, these reactions allow the *net* oxidative conversion of two acetyl moieties from acetyl-CoA to one molecule of succinate. Succinate may be used for biosynthetic purposes after its conversion to oxaloacetate, α-ketoglutarate, phosphoenolpyruvate, or glucose 6-phosphate.

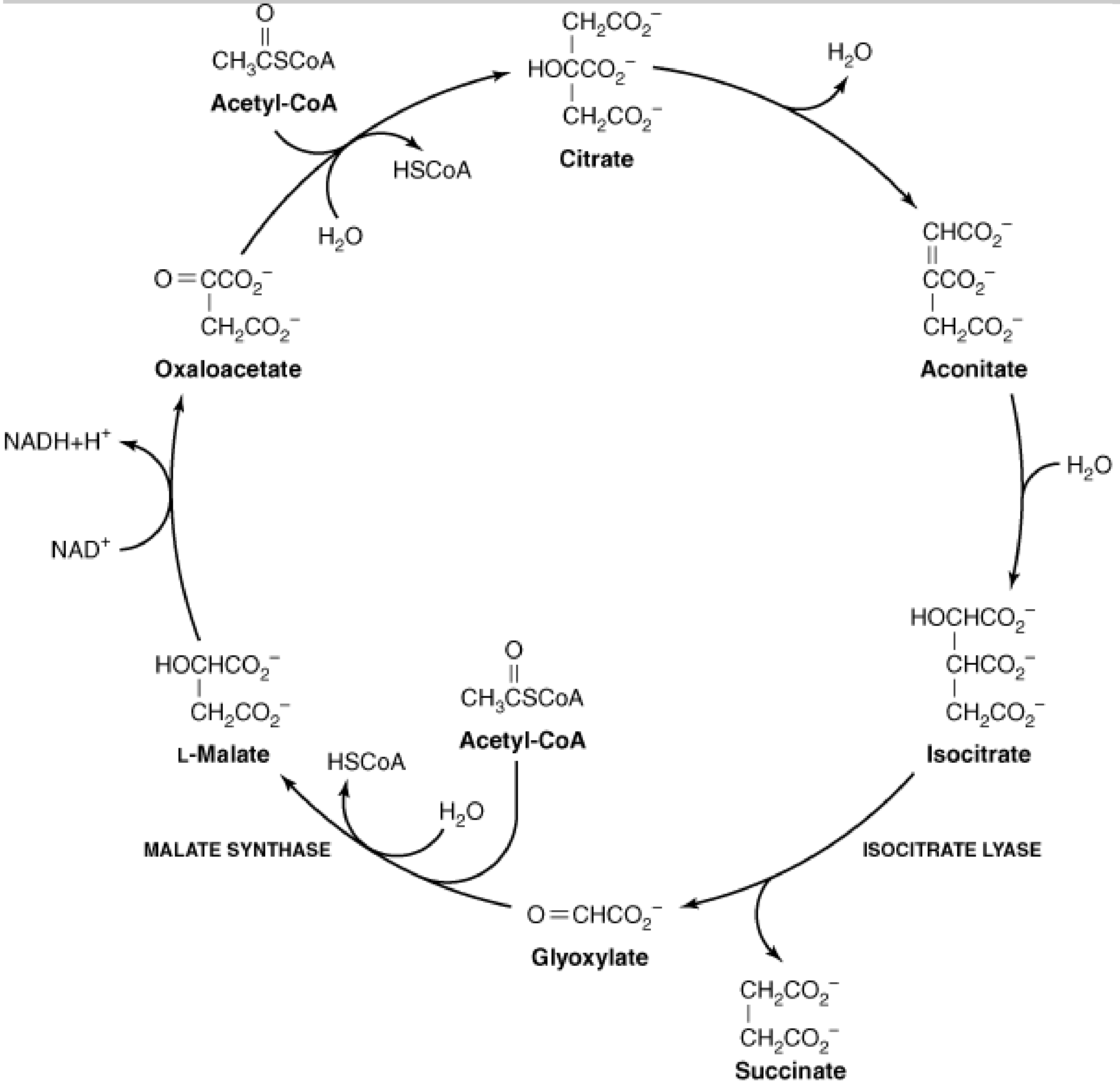
Figure 69.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biochemical sources of acetyl-CoA.

Figure 611.



Net reaction

2Acetyl-CoA + NAD^+ + $2H_2O$ → Succinate + 2HSCoA + NADH + H^+

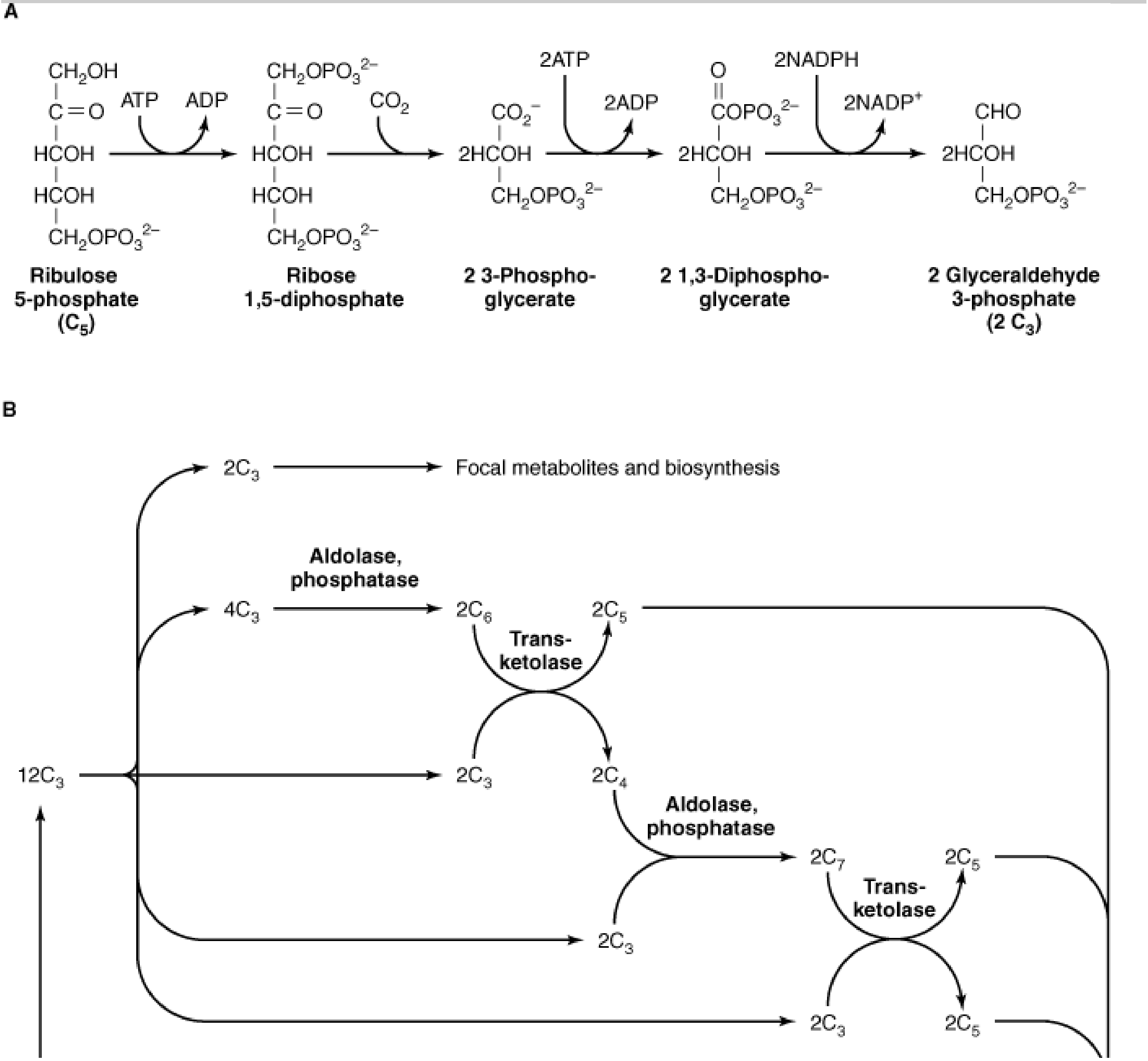
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

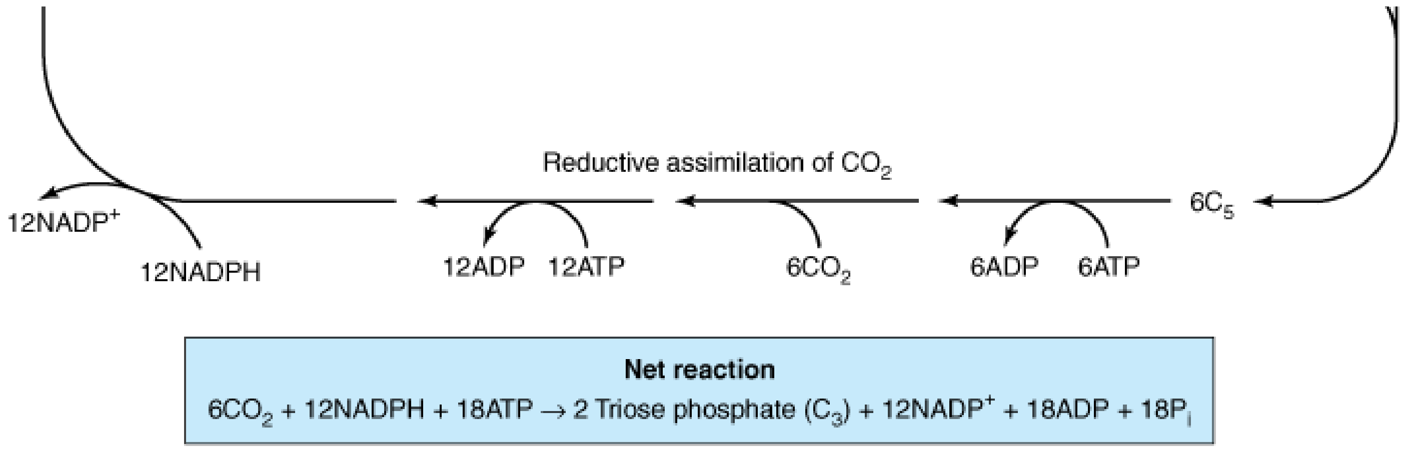
The glyoxylate cycle. Note that the reactions which convert malate to isocitrate are shared with the tricarboxylic acid cycle (Figure 610). Metabolic divergence at the level of isocitrate and the action of two enzymes, isocitrate lyase and malate synthase, modify the tricarboxylic acid cycle so that it reductively converts two molecules of acetyl-CoA to succinate.

Growth with Carbon Dioxide: The Calvin Cycle

Like plants and algae, a number of microbial species can use carbon dioxide as a sole source of carbon. In almost all of these organisms, the primary route of carbon assimilation is via the Calvin cycle, in which carbon dioxide and ribulose diphosphate combine to form two molecules of 3-phosphoglycerate (Figure 612A). 3-Phosphoglycerate is phosphorylated to 1,3-diphosphoglycerate, and this compound is reduced to the triose derivative, glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate. Carbohydrate rearrangement reactions (Figure 65) allow triose phosphate to be converted to the pentose derivative ribulose 5-phosphate, which is phosphorylated to regenerate the acceptor molecule, ribulose 1,5-diphosphate (Figure 612B). Additional reduced carbon, formed by the reductive assimilation of carbon dioxide, is converted to focal metabolites for biosynthetic pathways.

Figure 612.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The Calvin cycle. A: Reductive assimilation of CO_2 . ATP and NADPH are used to reductively convert pentose 5-phosphate (C_5) to two molecules of triose phosphate (C_3). B: The Calvin cycle is completed by carbohydrate rearrangement reactions (Figure 65) that allow the net synthesis of carbohydrate and the regeneration of pentose phosphate so that the cycle may continue.

Cells that can use carbon dioxide as a sole source of carbon are termed autotrophic, and the demands for this pattern of carbon assimilation can be summarized briefly as follows: In addition to the primary assimilatory reaction giving rise to 3-phosphoglycerate, there must be a mechanism for regenerating the acceptor molecule, ribulose 1,5-diphosphate. This process demands the energy-dependent reduction of 3-phosphoglycerate to the level of carbohydrate. Thus, autotrophy requires carbon dioxide, ATP, NADPH, and a specific set of enzymes.

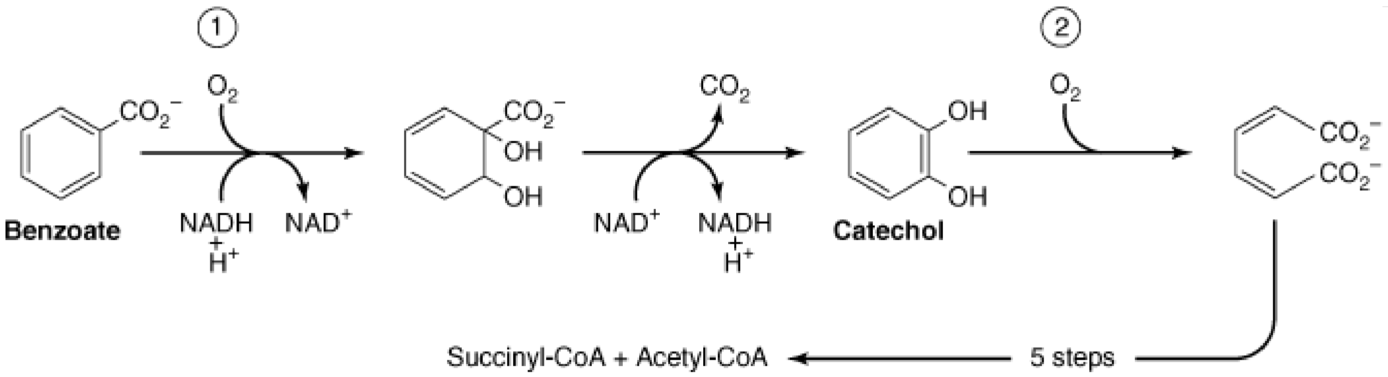
Depolymerases

Many potential growth substrates occur as building blocks within the structure of biologic polymers. These large molecules are not readily transported across the cell membrane and often are affixed to even larger cellular structures. Many microorganisms elaborate extracellular depolymerases that hydrolyze proteins, nucleic acids, polysaccharides, and lipids. The pattern of depolymerase activities can be useful in the identification of microorganisms.

Oxygenases

Many compounds in the environment are relatively resistant to enzymatic modification, and utilization of these compounds as growth substrates demands a special class of enzymes, oxygenases. These enzymes directly employ the potent oxidant molecular oxygen as a substrate in reactions that convert a relatively intractable compound to a form in which it can be assimilated by thermodynamically favored reactions. The action of oxygenases is illustrated in Figure 613, which shows the role of two different oxygenases in the utilization of benzoate.

Figure 613.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The role of oxygenases in aerobic utilization of benzoate as a carbon source. Molecular oxygen participates directly in the reactions that disrupt the aromaticity of benzoate and catechol.

Reductive Pathways

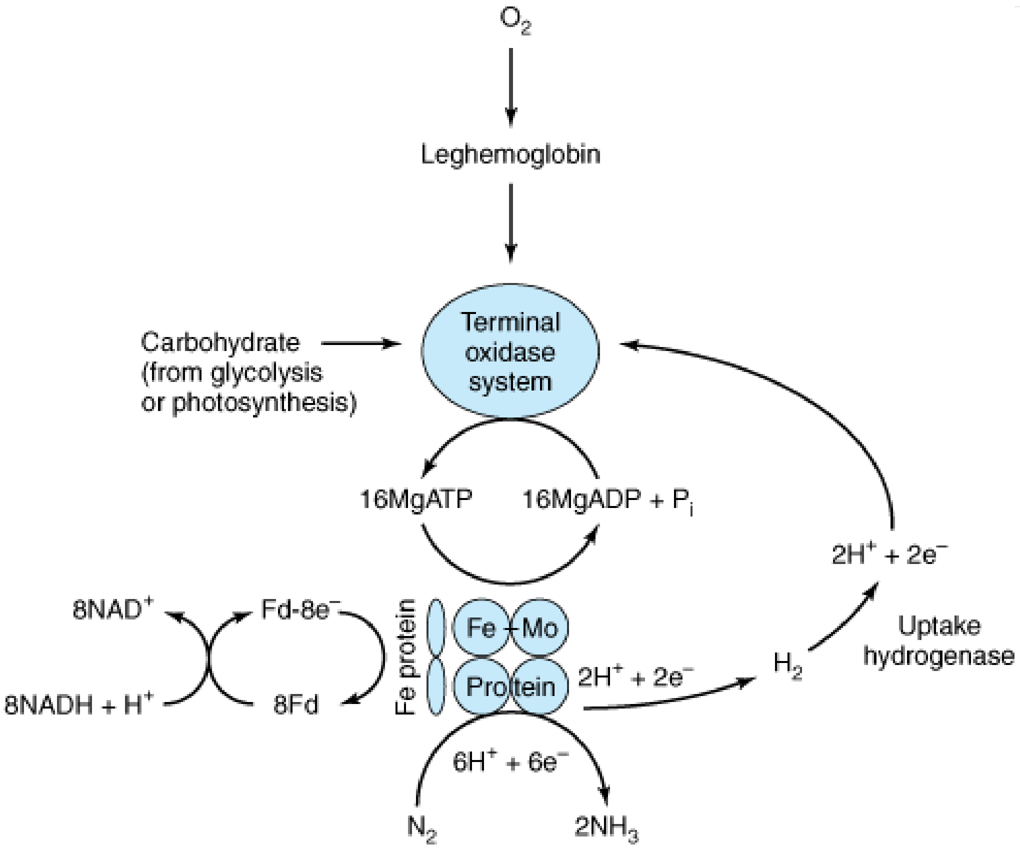
Some microorganisms live in extremely reducing environments that favor chemical reactions which would not occur in organisms using oxygen as an electron acceptor. In these organisms, powerful reductants can be used to drive reactions that allow the assimilation of relatively intractable compounds. An example is the reductive assimilation of benzoate, a process in which the aromatic ring is reduced and opened to form the dicarboxylic acid pimelate. Further metabolic reactions convert pimelate to focal metabolites.

Nitrogen Assimilation

The reductive assimilation of molecular nitrogen, also referred to as nitrogen fixation, is required for continuation of life on our planet. Nitrogen fixation is accomplished by a variety of bacteria and cyanobacteria using a multicomponent nitrogenase enzyme complex. Despite the variety of organisms capable of fixing nitrogen, the nitrogenase complex is similar in most of them (Figure 614). Nitrogenase is a complex of two enzymesone enzyme (dinitrogenase reductase) contains iron and the other (dinitrogenase) contains iron and molybdenum. Together, these enzymes catalyze the following reaction:

$$N_2 + 6H^+ + 6e^- + 12ATP \longrightarrow 2NH_3 + 12ADP + 12P_i$$

Figure 614.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

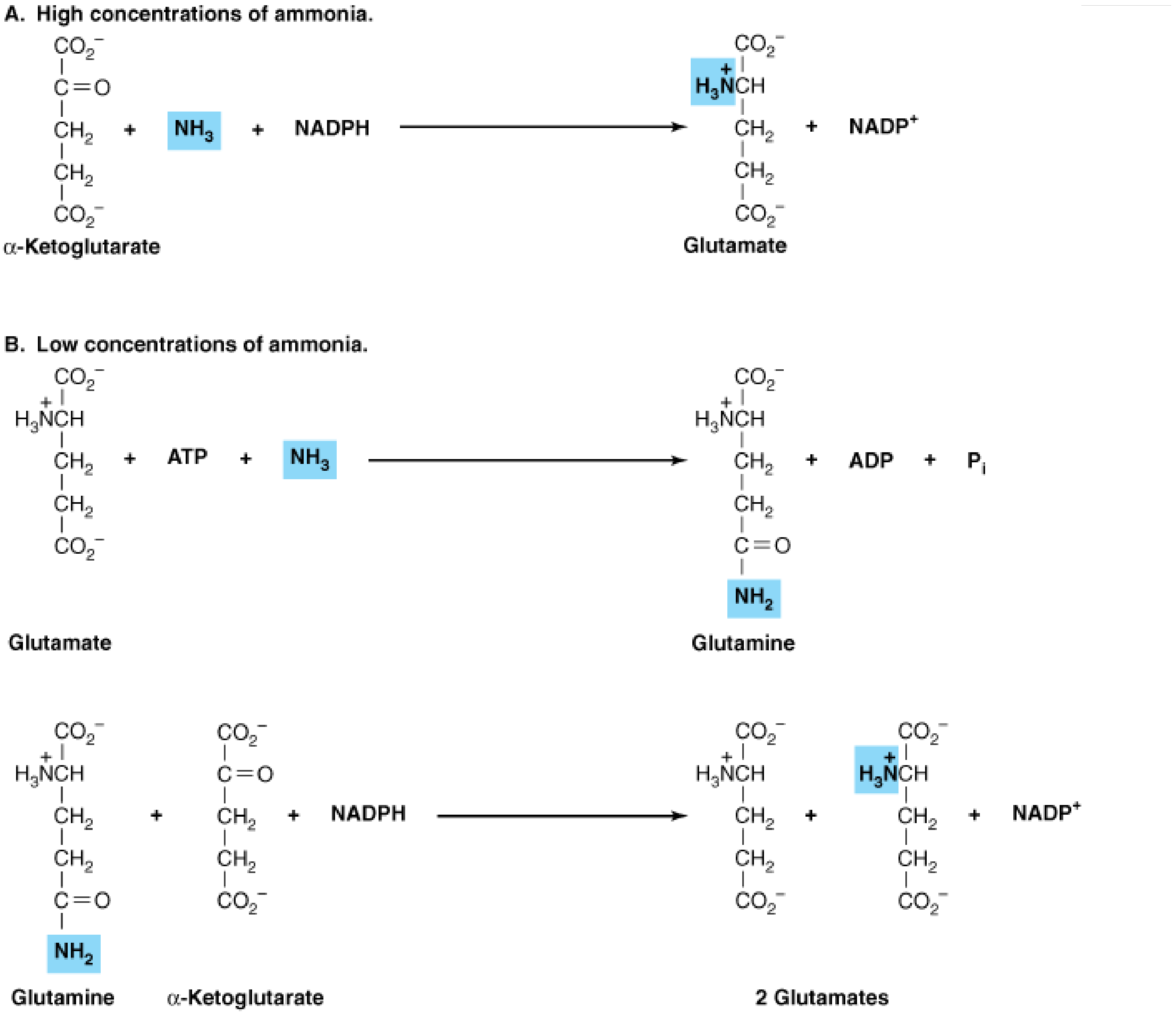
Reduction of N_2 to two molecules of NH_3 . In addition to reductant, the nitrogenase reaction requires a substantial amount of metabolic energy. The number of ATP molecules required for reduction of a single nitrogen molecule to ammonia is uncertain; the value appears to lie between 12 and 16. The overall reaction requires $8NADH + H^+$. Six of these are used to reduce N_2 to $2NH_3$, and two are used to form H_2 . The uptake hydrogenase returns H_2 to the system, thus conserving energy. (Redrawn and reproduced, with permission, from Moat AG, Foster JW: *Microbial Physiology,* 4th ed. Wiley-Liss, 2002. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.)

Because of the high activation energy of breaking the very strong triple bond that joins two nitrogen atoms, this reductive assimilation of nitrogen demands a substantial amount of metabolic energy. Somewhere between 20 and 24 molecules of ATP are hydrolyzed as a single N_2 molecule is reduced to two molecules of NH_3 .

Additional physiologic demands are placed by the fact that nitrogenase is readily inactivated by oxygen. Aerobic organisms that employ nitrogenase have developed elaborate mechanisms to protect the enzyme against inactivation. Some form specialized cells in which nitrogen fixation takes place, and others have developed elaborate electron transport chains to protect nitrogenase against inactivation by oxygen. The most significant of these bacteria in agriculture are the Rhizobiaceae, organisms that fix nitrogen symbiotically in the root nodules of leguminous plants.

The capacity to use ammonia as a nitrogen source is widely distributed among organisms. The primary portal of entry of nitrogen into carbon metabolism is glutamate, which is formed by reductive amination of α-ketoglutarate. As shown in Figure 615, there are two biochemical mechanisms by which this can be achieved. One, the single-step reduction catalyzed by glutamate dehydrogenase (Figure 615A), is effective in environments in which there is an ample supply of ammonia. The other, a two-step process in which glutamine is an intermediate (Figure 615B), is employed in environments in which ammonia is in short supply. The latter mechanism allows cells to invest the free energy formed by hydrolysis of a pyrophosphate bond in ATP into the assimilation of ammonia from the environment.

Figure 615.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Mechanisms for the assimilation of NH_3 . A: When the NH_3 concentration is high, cells are able to assimilate the compound via the glutamate dehydrogenase reaction. B: When, as most often is the case, the NH_3 concentration is low, cells couple the glutamine synthase and glutamate synthase reactions in order to invest the energy produced by hydrolysis of a pyrophosphate bond into ammonia assimilation.

The amide nitrogen of glutamine, an intermediate in the two-step assimilation of ammonia into glutamate (Figure 615B), is also transferred directly into organic nitrogen appearing in the structures of purines, pyrimidines, arginine, tryptophan, and glucosamine. The activity and synthesis of glutamine synthase are regulated by the ammonia supply and by the availability of metabolites containing nitrogen derived directly from the amide nitrogen of glutamine.

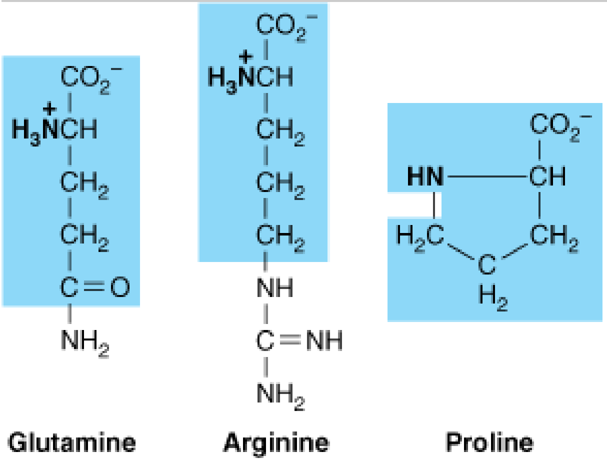
Most of the organic nitrogen in cells is derived from the α-amino group of glutamate, and the primary mechanism by which the nitrogen is transferred is transamination. The usual acceptor in these reactions is an α-keto acid, which is transformed to the corresponding α-amino acid. α-Ketoglutarate, the other product of the transamination reaction, may be converted to glutamate by reductive amination (Figure 615).

BIOSYNTHETIC PATHWAYS

Tracing the Structures of Biosynthetic Precursors: Glutamate & Aspartate

In many cases, the carbon skeleton of a metabolic end product may be traced to its biosynthetic origins. Glutamine, an obvious example, clearly is derived from glutamate (Figure 616). The glutamate skeleton in the structures of arginine and proline (Figure 616) is less obvious but readily discernible. Similarly, the carbon skeleton of aspartate, directly derived from the focal metabolite oxaloacetate, is evident in the structures of asparagine, threonine, methionine, and pyrimidines (Figure 617). In some cases, different carbon skeletons combine in a biosynthetic pathway. For example, aspartate semialdehyde and pyruvate combine to form the metabolic precursors of lysine, diaminopimelic acid, and dipicolinic acid (Figure 618). The latter two compounds are found only in prokaryotes. Diaminopimelic acid is a component of peptidoglycan in the cell wall, and dipicolinic acid represents a major component of endospores.

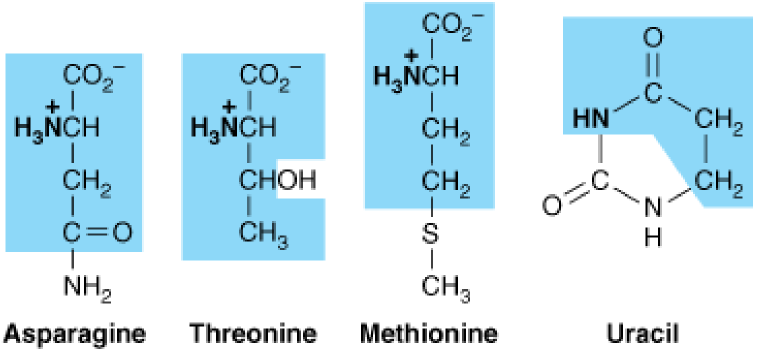
Figure 616.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Amino acids formed from glutamate.

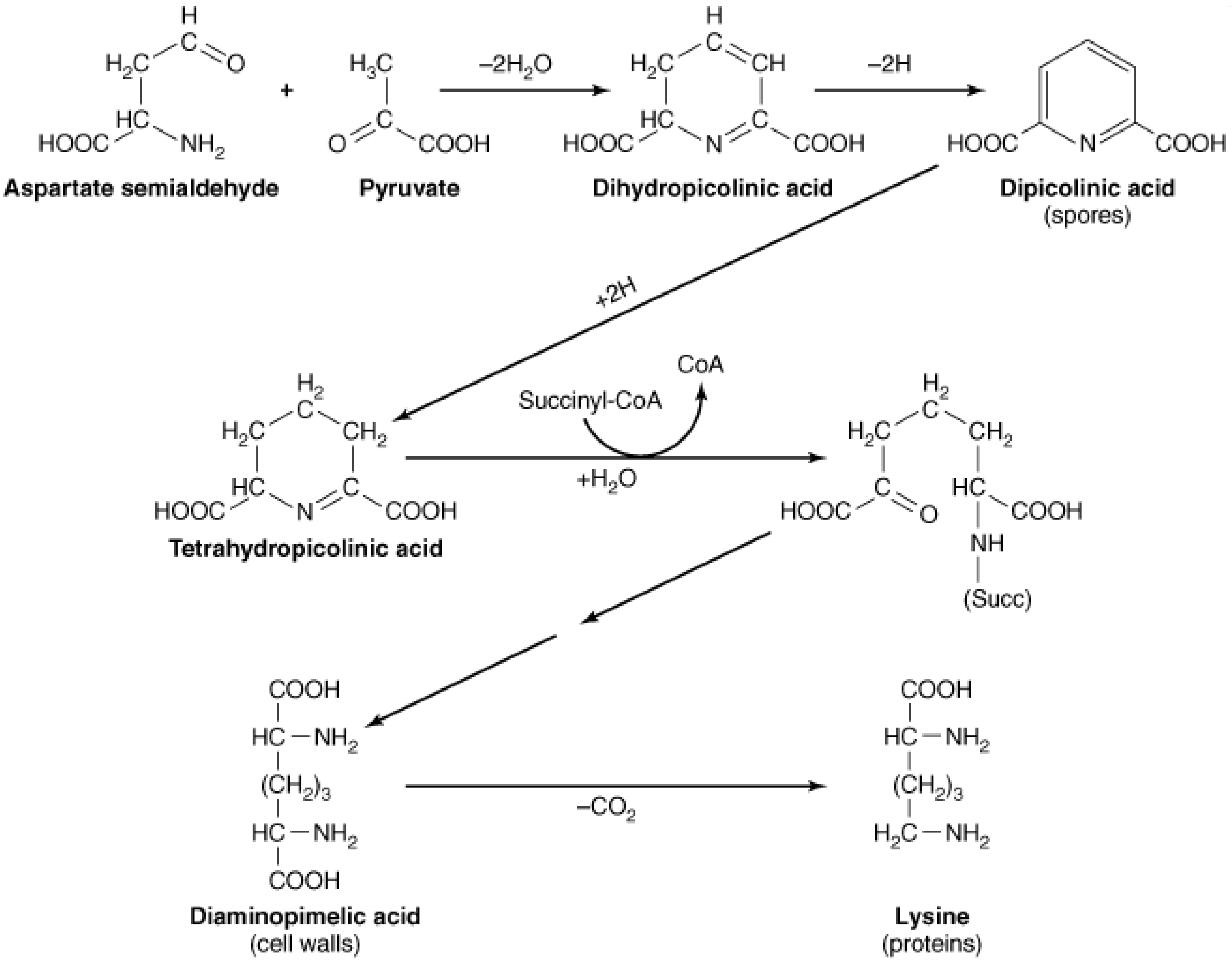
Figure 617.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Biosynthetic end products formed from aspartate.

Figure 618.



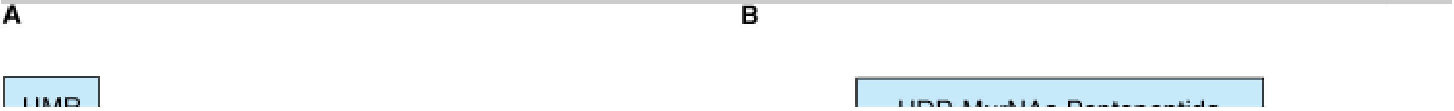
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

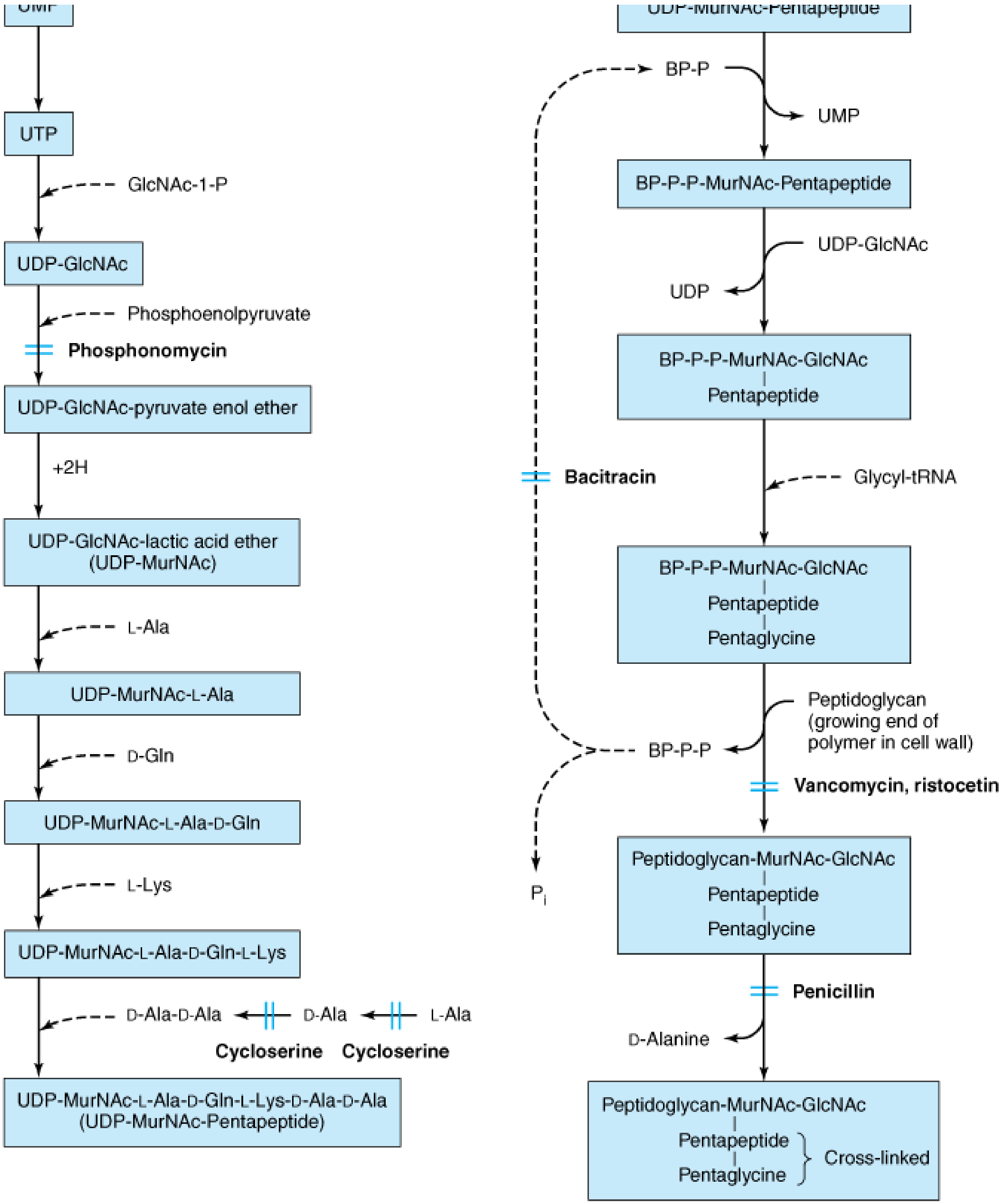
Biosynthetic end products formed from aspartate semialdehyde and pyruvate.

Synthesis of Cell Wall Peptidoglycan

The structure of peptidoglycan is shown in Figure 219; the pathway by which it is synthesized is shown in simplified form in Figure 619. The synthesis of peptidoglycan begins with the stepwise synthesis in the cytoplasm of UDP-*N* -acetylmuramic acid-pentapeptide. *N* -acetylglucosamine is first attached to UDP and then converted to UDP-*N*-acetylmuramic acid by condensation with phosphoenolpyruvate and reduction. The amino acids of the pentapeptide are sequentially added, each addition catalyzed by a different enzyme and each involving the split of ATP to ADP + P_i .

Figure 619.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's*

Medical Microbiology, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The biosynthesis of cell wall peptidoglycan, showing the sites of action of six antibiotics. BP = bactoprenol; MurNAc = *N* -acetylmuramic acid; GlcNAc = *N* -acetylglucosamine. A: Synthesis of UDP-acetylmuramic acid-pentapeptide. B: Synthesis of peptidoglycan from UDP-acetylmuramic acid-pentapeptide, UDP-*N* -acetylglucosamine, and glycyl residues. (See Figure 219 for structure of peptidoglycan.)

The UDP-*N*- acetylmuramic acid-pentapeptide is attached to bactoprenol (a lipid of the cell membrane) and receives a molecule of *N* -acetylglucosamine from UDP. The pentaglycine derivative is next formed in a series of reactions using glycyl-tRNA as the donor; the completed disaccharide is polymerized to an oligomeric intermediate before being transferred to the growing end of a glycopeptide polymer in the cell wall.

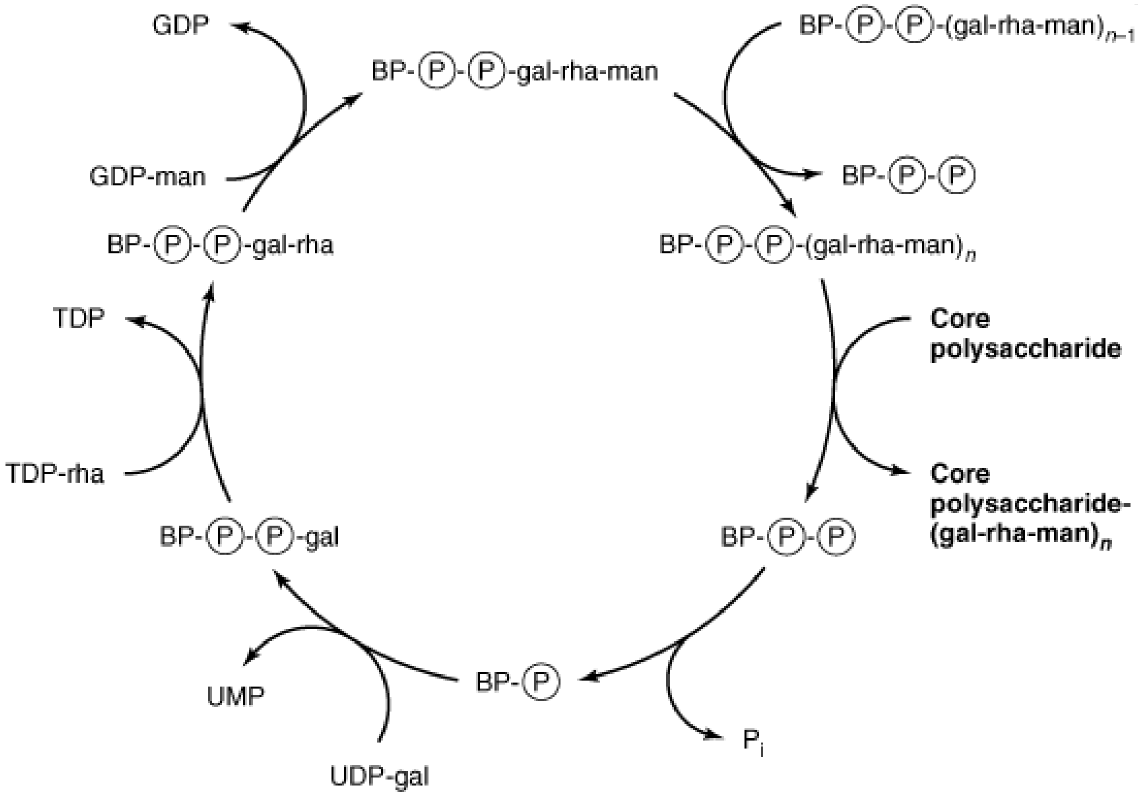
Final cross-linking is accomplished by a transpeptidation reaction in which the free amino group of a pentaglycine residue displaces the terminal D -alanine residue of a neighboring pentapeptide. Transpeptidation is catalyzed by one of a set of enzymes called penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs). PBPs bind penicillin and other β-lactam antibiotics covalently due, in part, to a structural similarity between these antibiotics and the pentapeptide precursor. Some PBPs have transpeptidase or carboxypeptidase activities, their relative rates perhaps controlling the degree of cross-linking in peptidoglycan (a factor important in cell septation).

The biosynthetic pathway is of particular importance in medicine, as it provides a basis for the selective antibacterial action of several chemotherapeutic agents. Unlike their host cells, bacteria are not isotonic with the body fluids. Their contents are under high osmotic pressure, and their viability depends on the integrity of the peptidoglycan lattice in the cell wall being maintained throughout the growth cycle. Any compound that inhibits any step in the biosynthesis of peptidoglycan causes the wall of the growing bacterial cell to be weakened and the cell to lyse. The sites of action of several antibiotics are shown in Figure 619.

Synthesis of Cell Envelope Lipopolysaccharide

The general structure of the antigenic lipopolysaccharide of gram-negative cell envelopes is shown in Figure 220. The biosynthesis of the repeating end-group, which gives the cell envelope its antigenic specificity, is shown in Figure 620. Note the resemblance to peptidoglycan synthesis: In both cases, a series of subunits is assembled on a lipid carrier in the membrane and then transferred to open ends of the growing polymer.

Figure 620.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Synthesis of the repeating unit of the polysaccharide side chain of *Salmonella newington* and its transfer to the lipopolysaccharide core. BP = bactoprenol.

Synthesis of Extracellular Capsular Polymers

The capsular polymers, a few examples of which are listed in Table 21, are enzymatically synthesized from activated subunits. No membrane-bound lipid carriers have been implicated in this process. The presence of a capsule is often environmentally determined: Dextrans and levans, for example, can only be synthesized using the disaccharide sucrose (fructose-glucose) as the source of the appropriate subunit, and their synthesis thus depends on the presence of sucrose in the medium.

Synthesis of Reserve Food Granules

When nutrients are present in excess of the requirements for growth, bacteria convert certain of them to intracellular reserve food granules. The principal ones are starch, glycogen, poly-β-hydroxybutyrate (PBHB), and volutin, which consists mainly of inorganic polyphosphate. The type of granule formed is species-specific. The granules are degraded when exogenous nutrients are depleted.

PATTERNS OF MICROBIAL ENERGY-YIELDING METABOLISM

As described in Chapter 5, there are two major metabolic mechanisms for generating the energy-rich acid pyrophosphate bonds in ATP: substrate phosphorylation (the direct transfer of a phosphate anhydride bond from an organic donor to ADP) and phosphorylation of ADP by inorganic phosphate. The latter reaction is energetically unfavorable and must be driven by a transmembrane electrochemical gradient, the proton motive force. In respiration, the electrochemical gradient is created from externally supplied reductant and oxidant. Energy released by transfer of electrons from the reductant to the oxidant through membrane-bound carriers is coupled to the formation of the transmembrane electrochemical gradient. In photosynthesis, light energy generates membrane-associated reductants and oxidants; the proton motive force is generated as these electron carriers return to the ground state. These processes are discussed below.

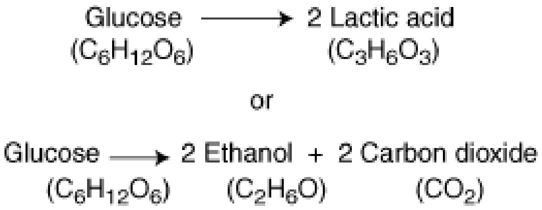
Pathways of Fermentation

STRATEGIES FOR SUBSTRATE PHOSPHORYLATION

In the absence of respiration or photosynthesis, cells are entirely dependent upon substrate phosphorylation for their energy: Generation of ATP must be coupled to chemical rearrangement of organic compounds. Many compounds can serve as fermentable growth substrates, and many pathways for their fermentation have evolved. These pathways have the following three general stages: (1) Conversion of the fermentable compound to the phosphate donor for substrate phosphorylation. This stage often contains metabolic reactions in which NAD^+ is reduced to NADH. (2) Phosphorylation of ADP by the energy-rich phosphate donor. (3) Metabolic steps that bring the products of the fermentation into chemical balance with the starting materials. The most frequent requirement in the last stage is a mechanism for oxidation of NADH, generated in the first stage of fermentation, to NAD^+ so that the fermentation may proceed. In the following sections, examples of each of the three stages of fermentation are considered.

FERMENTATION OF GLUCOSE

The diversity of fermentative pathways is illustrated by consideration of some of the mechanisms used by microorganisms to achieve substrate phosphorylation at the expense of glucose. In principle, the phosphorylation of ADP to ATP can be coupled to either of two chemically balanced transformations:



$$\underset{(C_6H_{12}O_6)}{\text{Glucose}} \longrightarrow \underset{(C_3H_6O_3)}{\text{2 Lactic acid}}$$

or

$$\underset{(C_6H_{12}O_6)}{\text{Glucose}} \longrightarrow \underset{(C_2H_6O)}{\text{2 Ethanol}} + \underset{(CO_2)}{\text{2 Carbon dioxide}}$$

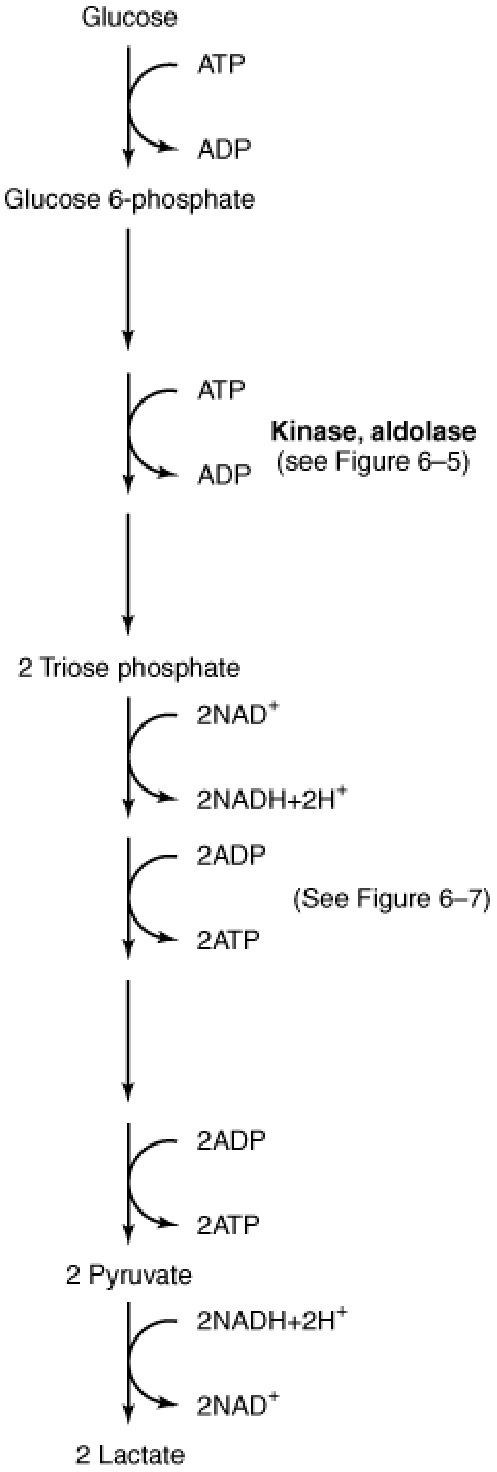
The biochemical mechanisms by which these transformations are achieved vary considerably.

In general, the fermentation of glucose is initiated by its phosphorylation to glucose 6-phosphate. There are two mechanisms by which this can be achieved: (1) Extracellular glucose may be transported across the cytoplasmic membrane into the cell and then phosphorylated by ATP to yield glucose 6-phosphate and ADP. (2) In many microorganisms, extracellular glucose is phosphorylated as it is being transported across the cytoplasmic membrane by an enzyme system in the cytoplasmic membrane that phosphorylates extracellular glucose at the expense of phosphoenolpyruvate, producing intracellular glucose 6-phosphate and pyruvate. The latter process is an example of vectorial metabolism, a set of biochemical reactions in which both the structure and the location of a substrate are altered. It should be noted that the choice of ATP or phosphoenolpyruvate as a phosphorylating agent does not alter the ATP yield of fermentation, because phosphoenolpyruvate is used as a source of ATP in the later stages of fermentation (Figure 67).

THE EMBDEN-MEYERHOF PATHWAY

This pathway (Figure 621), a commonly encountered mechanism for the fermentation of glucose, uses a kinase and an aldolase (Figure 65) to transform the hexose (C_6) phosphate to two molecules of triose (C_3) phosphate. Four substrate phosphorylation reactions accompany the conversion of the triose phosphate to two molecules of pyruvate. Thus, taking into account the two ATP pyrophosphate bonds required to form triose phosphate from glucose, the Embden-Meyerhof pathway produces a net yield of two ATP pyrophosphate bonds. Formation of pyruvate from triose phosphate is an oxidative process, and the NADH formed in the first metabolic step (Figure 621) must be converted to NAD^+ for the fermentation to proceed; two of the simpler mechanisms for achieving this goal are illustrated in Figure 622. Direct reduction of pyruvate by NADH produces lactate as the end product of fermentation and thus results in acidification of the medium. Alternatively, pyruvate may be decarboxylated to acetaldehyde, which is then used to oxidize NADH, resulting in production of the neutral product ethanol. The pathway taken is determined by the evolutionary history of the organism and, in some microorganisms, by the growth conditions.

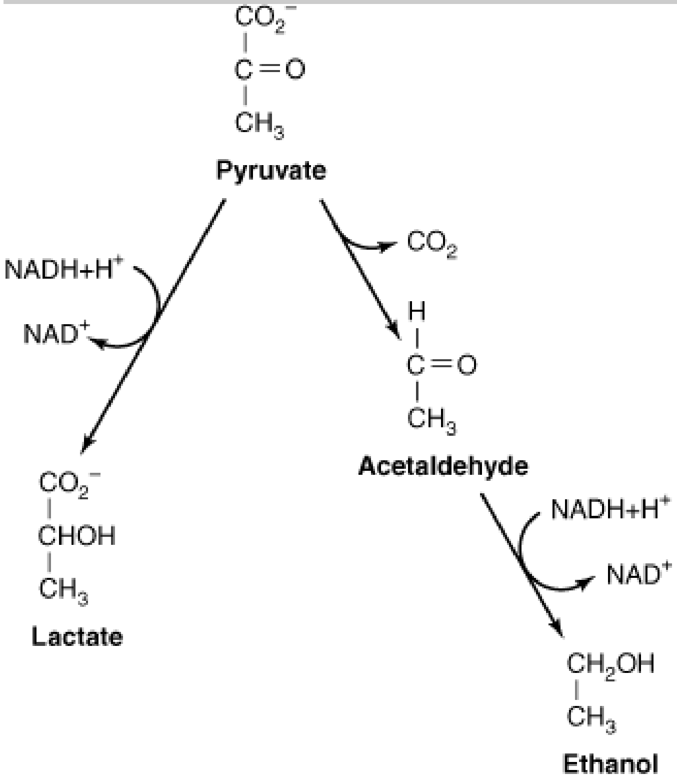
Figure 621.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The Embden-Meyerhof pathway.

Figure 622.



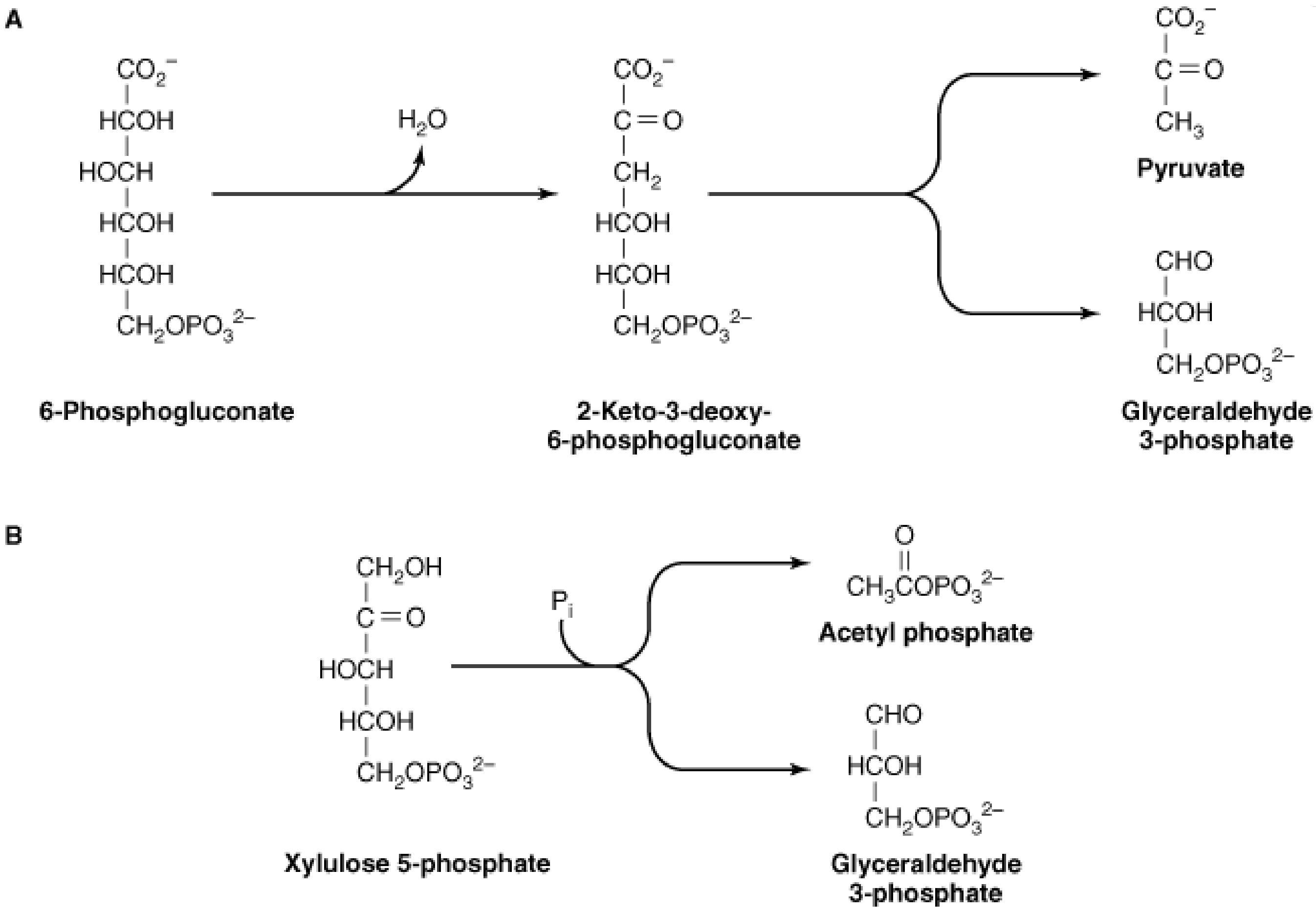
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Two biochemical mechanisms by which pyruvate can oxidize NADH. Left: Direct formation of lactate, which results in net production of lactic acid from glucose. Right: Formation of the neutral products carbon dioxide and ethanol.

THE ENTNER-DOUDOROFF AND HETEROLACTATE FERMENTATIONS

Alternative pathways for glucose fermentation include some specialized enzyme reactions, and these are shown in Figure 623. The Entner-Doudoroff pathway diverges from other pathways of carbohydrate metabolism by a dehydration of 6-phosphogluconate followed by an aldolase reaction that produces pyruvate and triose phosphate (Figure 623A). The heterolactate fermentation and some other fermentative pathways depend upon a phosphoketolase reaction (Figure 623B) that phosphorolytically cleaves a ketose-phosphate to produce acetyl phosphate and triose phosphate. The acid anhydride acetyl phosphate may be used to synthesize ATP or may allow the oxidation of two NADH molecules to NAD^+ as it is reduced to ethanol.

Figure 623.

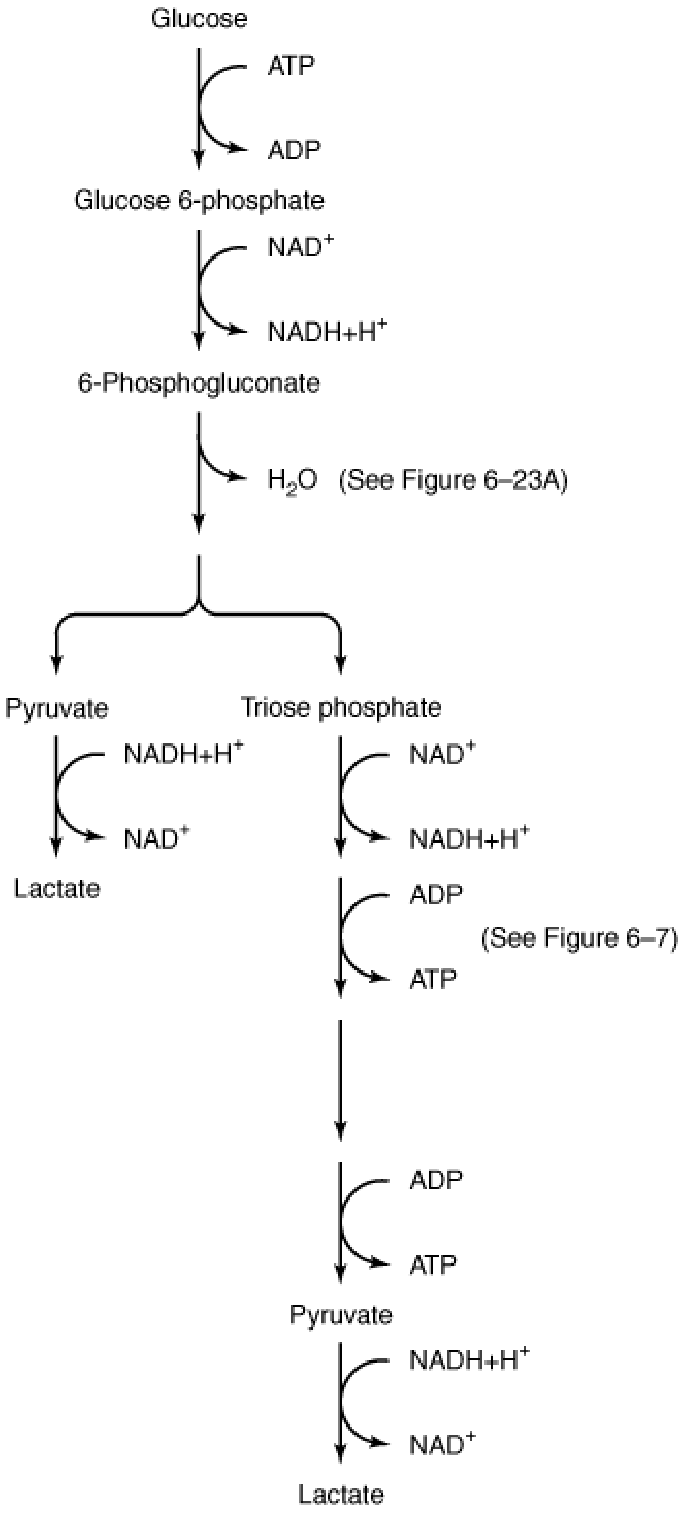


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Reactions associated with specific pathways of carbohydrate fermentation. A: Dehydratase and aldolase reactions used in the Entner-Doudoroff pathway. B: The phosphoketolase reaction. This reaction, found in several pathways for fermentation of carbohydrates, generates the mixed acid anhydride acetyl phosphate, which can be used for substrate phosphorylation of ADP.

The overall outlines of the respective Entner-Doudoroff and heterolactate pathways are shown in Figures 624 and 625. The pathways yield only a single molecule of triose phosphate from glucose, and the energy yield is correspondingly low: Unlike the Embden-Meyerhof pathway, the Entner-Doudoroff and heterolactate pathways yield only a single net substrate phosphorylation of ADP per molecule of glucose fermented. Why have the alternative pathways for glucose fermentation been selected in the natural environment? In answering this question, two facts should be kept in mind. First, in direct growth competition between two microbial species, the rate of substrate utilization can be more important than the amount of growth. Second, glucose is but one of many carbohydrates encountered by microorganisms in their natural environment. Pentoses, for example, can be fermented quite efficiently by the heterolactate pathway.

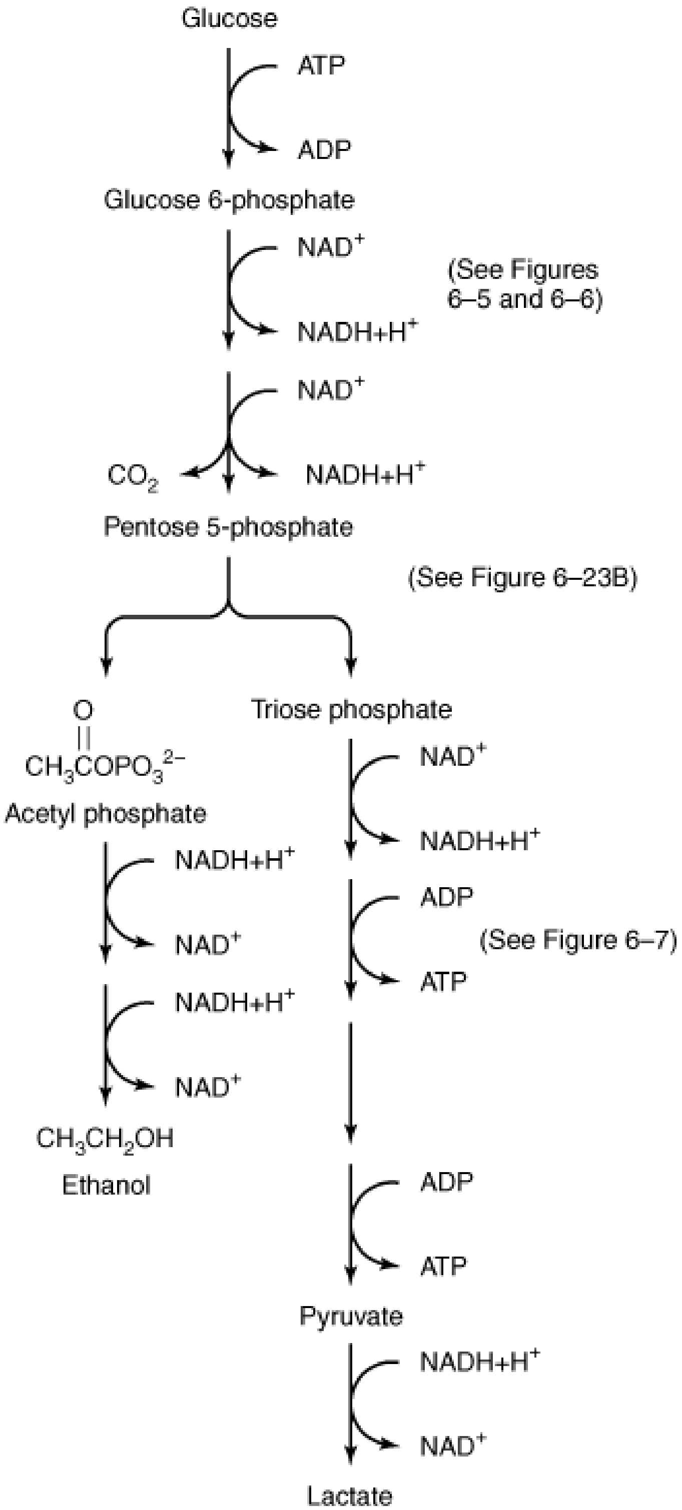
Figure 624.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The Entner-Doudoroff pathway.

Figure 625.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The heterolactic fermentation of glucose.

ADDITIONAL VARIATIONS IN CARBOHYDRATE FERMENTATIONS

Pathways for carbohydrate fermentation can accommodate many more substrates than described here, and the end products may be far more diverse than suggested thus far. For example, there are numerous mechanisms for oxidation of NADH at the expense of pyruvate. One such pathway is the reductive formation of succinate. Many clinically significant bacteria form pyruvate from glucose via the Embden-Meyerhof pathway, and they may be distinguished on the basis of reduction products formed from pyruvate, reflecting the enzymatic constitution of different species. The major products of fermentation, listed in Table 61, form the basis for many diagnostic tests.

Table 61. Microbial Fermentations Based on the Embden-Meyerhof Pathway.

Ethanol
Some fungi (notably some yeasts)
Ethanol, CO_2 .

Lactate (homofermentation)
Streptococcus
Lactate (accounting for at least 90% of the energy source carbon).
Some species of Lactobacillus
Lactate (heterofermentation)
Enterobacter
Ethanol, acetoin, 2,3-butylene glycol, CO_2 , lactate, acetate, formate. (Total acids = 21 mol.[1])

Aeromonas
Bacillus polymyxa
Propionate
Clostridium propionicum
Propionate, acetate, succinate, CO_2 .

Propionibacterium
Corynebacterium diphtheriae
Some species of
Neisseria
Veillonella
Micromonospora
Mixed acid
Escherichia
Lactate, acetate, formate, succinate, H_2 , CO_2 , ethanol. (Total acids = 159 mol.[1])

Salmonella
Shigella
Proteus
Butanol-butyrate
Butyribacterium
Butanol, butyrate, acetone, isopropanol, acetate, ethanol, H_2 , CO_2 .

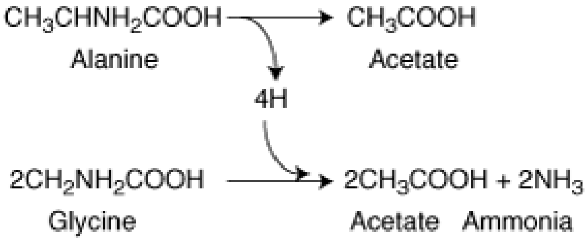
Zymosarcina maxima
Some species of
Clostridium

Fermentation	Organisms	Products

[1] Per 100 mol of glucose fermented.

FERMENTATION OF OTHER SUBSTRATES

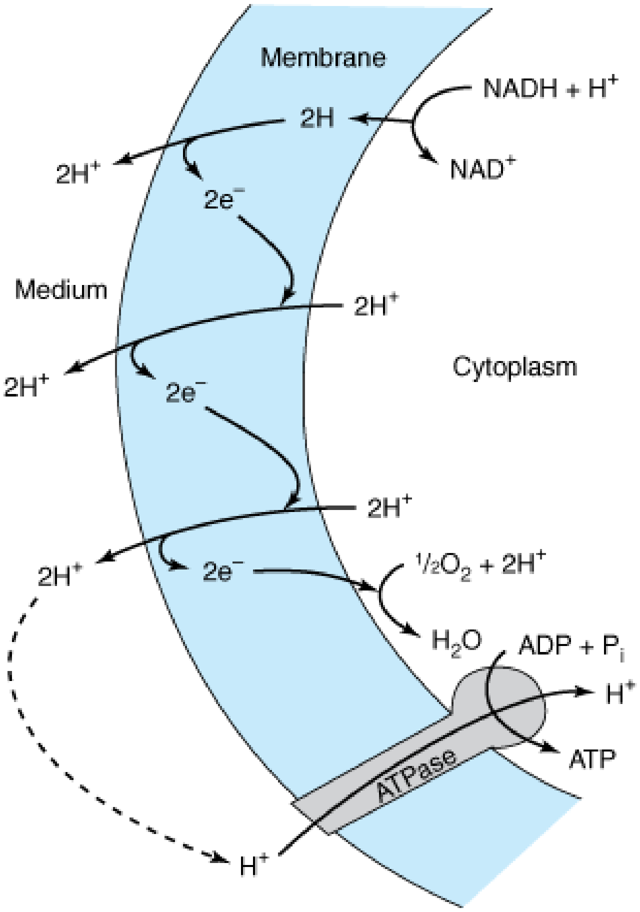
Carbohydrates are by no means the only fermentable substrates. Metabolism of amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines may allow substrate phosphorylations to occur. For example, arginine may serve as an energy source by giving rise to carbamoyl phosphate, which can be used to phosphorylate ADP to ATP. Some organisms ferment pairs of amino acids, using one as an electron donor and the other as an electron acceptor:



Patterns of Respiration

Respiration requires a closed membrane. In bacteria, the membrane is the cell membrane. Electrons are passed from a chemical reductant to a chemical oxidant through a specific set of electron carriers within the membrane, and as a result, the proton motive force is established (Figure 626); return of protons across the membrane is coupled to the synthesis of ATP. As suggested in Figure 626, the biologic reductant for respiration frequently is NADH, and the oxidant often is oxygen.

Figure 626.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The coupling of electron transport in respiration to the generation of ATP. The indicated movements of protons and electrons are mediated by carriers (flavoprotein, quinone, cytochromes) associated with the membrane. The flow of protons down their electrochemical gradient, via the membrane ATPase, furnishes the energy for the generation of ATP from ADP and P_i . See text for explanation.

Tremendous microbial diversity is exhibited in the sources of reductant used to generate NADH, and many microorganisms can use electron acceptors other than oxygen. Organic growth substrates are converted to focal metabolites that may reduce NAD^+ to NADH either by the hexose monophosphate shunt (Figure 66) or by the tricarboxylic acid cycle (Figure 610). Additional reductant may be generated during the breakdown of some growth substrates, eg, fatty acids (Figure 69).

Some bacteria, called chemolithotrophs, are able to use inorganic reductants for respiration. These energy sources include hydrogen, ferrous iron, and several reduced forms of sulfur and nitrogen. ATP derived from respiration and NADPH generated from the reductants can be used to drive the Calvin cycle (Figure 612).

Compounds and ions other than O_2 may be used as terminal oxidants in respiration. This ability, the capacity for anaerobic respiration, is a widespread microbial trait. Suitable electron acceptors include nitrate, sulfate, and carbon dioxide. Respiratory metabolism dependent upon carbon dioxide as an electron acceptor is a property found among representatives of a large microbial group, the *archaebacteria*. Representatives of this group possess, for example, the ability to reduce carbon dioxide to acetate as a mechanism for generating metabolic energy.

Bacterial Photosynthesis

Photosynthetic organisms use light energy to separate electronic charge, to create membrane-associated reductants and oxidants as a result of a photochemical event. Transfer of electrons from the reductant to the oxidant creates a proton motive force. Many bacteria carry out a photosynthetic metabolism that is entirely independent of oxygen. Light is used as a source of metabolic energy, and carbon for growth is derived either from organic compounds (*photoheterotroph*) or from a combination of an inorganic reductant (eg, thiosulfate) and carbon dioxide (*photolithotroph*). These bacteria possess a single photosystem that, although sufficient to provide energy for the synthesis of ATP and for the generation of essential transmembrane ionic gradients, does not allow the highly exergonic reduction of $NADP^+$ at the expense of water. This process, essential for oxygen-evolving photosynthesis, rests upon additive energy derived from the coupling of two different photochemical events, driven by two independent photochemical systems. Among prokaryotes, this trait is found solely in the cyanobacteria (blue-green bacteria). Among eukaryotic organisms, the trait is shared by algae and plants in which the essential energy-providing organelle is the chloroplast.

REGULATION OF METABOLIC PATHWAYS

In their normal environment, microbial cells generally regulate their metabolic pathways so that no intermediate is made in excess. Each metabolic reaction is regulated not only with respect to all others in the cell but also with respect to the concentrations of nutrients in the environment. Thus, when a sporadically available carbon source suddenly becomes abundant, the enzymes required for its catabolism increase in both amount and activity; conversely, when a building block (such as an amino acid) suddenly becomes abundant, the enzymes required for its biosynthesis decrease in both amount and activity.

The regulation of enzyme activity as well as enzyme synthesis provides both fine control and coarse control of metabolic pathways. For example, the inhibition of enzyme activity by the end product of a pathway constitutes a mechanism of fine control, since the flow of carbon through that pathway is instantly and precisely regulated. The inhibition of enzyme synthesis by the same end product, on the other hand, constitutes a mechanism of coarse control. The preexisting enzyme molecules continue to function until they are diluted out by further cell growth, although unnecessary protein synthesis ceases immediately.

The mechanisms by which the cell regulates enzyme activity are discussed in the following section. The regulation of enzyme synthesis is discussed in Chapter 7.

The Regulation of Enzyme Activity

ENZYMES AS ALLOSTERIC PROTEINS

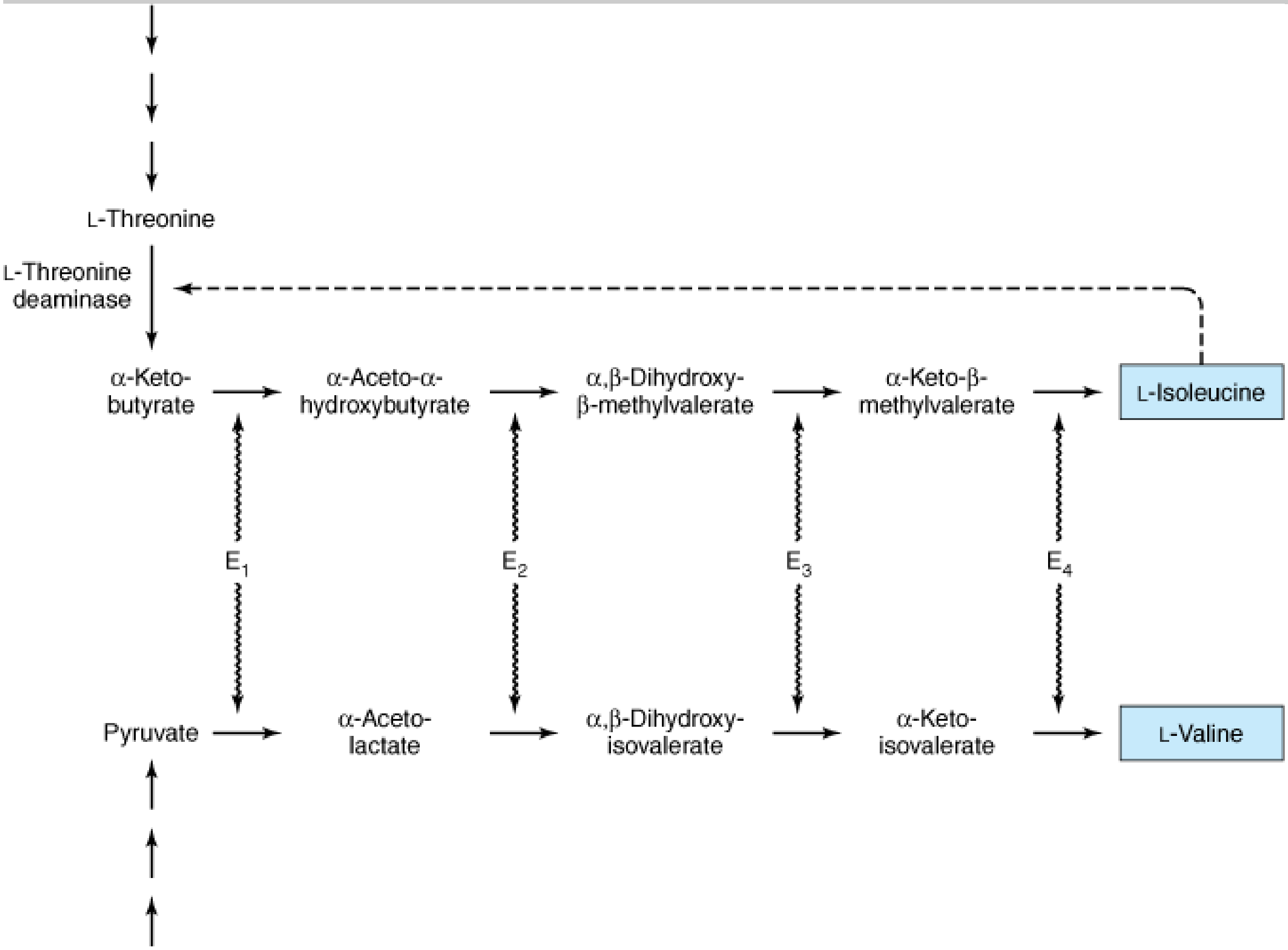
In many cases, the activity of an enzyme catalyzing an early step in a metabolic pathway is inhibited by the end product of that pathway. Such inhibition cannot depend on competition for the enzyme's substrate binding site, however, because the structures of the end product and the early intermediate (substrate) are usually quite different. Instead, inhibition depends on the fact that regulated enzymes are *allosteric*: Each enzyme possesses not only a catalytic site, which binds substrate, but also one or more other sites that bind small regulatory molecules, or *effectors*. The binding of an effector to its site causes a conformational change in the enzyme such that the affinity of the catalytic site for the substrate is reduced (allosteric inhibition) or increased (allosteric activation).

Allosteric proteins are usually oligomeric. In some cases, the subunits are identical, each subunit possessing both a catalytic site and an effector site; in other cases, the subunits are different, one type possessing only a catalytic site and the other only an effector site.

FEEDBACK INHIBITION

The general mechanism which has evolved in microorganisms for regulating the flow of carbon through biosynthetic pathways is the most efficient that one can imagine. The end product in each case allosterically inhibits the activity of the firstand only the firstenzyme in the pathway. For example, the first step in the biosynthesis of isoleucine not involving any other pathway is the conversion of L -threonine to α-ketobutyric acid, catalyzed by threonine deaminase. Threonine deaminase is allosterically and specifically inhibited by L -isoleucine and by no other compound (Figure 627); the other four enzymes of the pathway are not affected (although their synthesis is repressed).

Figure 627.



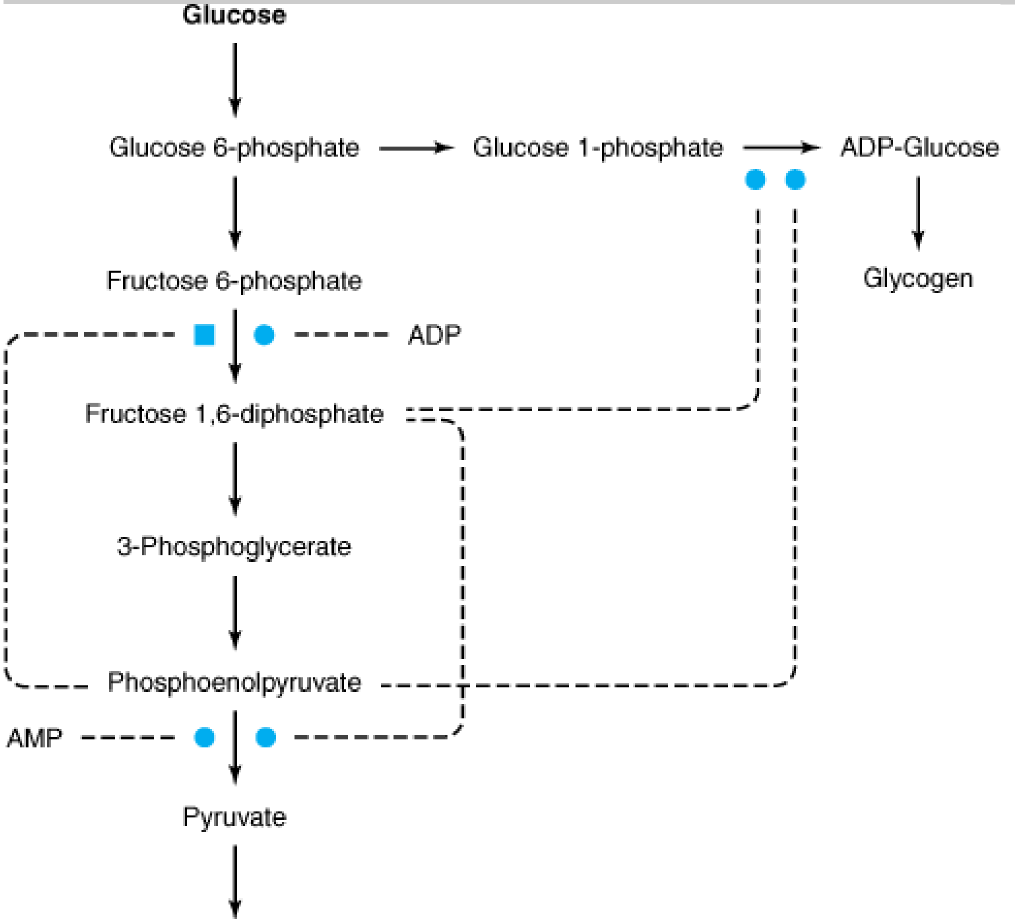
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Feedback inhibition of L -threonine deaminase by L -isoleucine (dashed line). The pathways for the biosynthesis of isoleucine and valine are mediated by a common set of four enzymes, as shown.

ALLOSTERIC ACTIVATION

In some cases, it is advantageous to the cell for an end product or an intermediate to activate rather than inhibit a particular enzyme. In the breakdown of glucose by *E coli,* for example, overproduction of the intermediates glucose 6-phosphate and phosphoenolpyruvate signals the diversion of some glucose to the pathway of glycogen synthesis; this is accomplished by the allosteric activation of the enzyme converting glucose 1-phosphate to ADP-glucose (Figure 628).

Figure 628.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Regulation of glucose utilization by a combination of allosteric activation ● and allosteric inhibition ■

(After Stanier RY, Adelberg EA, Ingraham JL: *The Microbial World,* 4th ed. Prentice-Hall, 1976.)

COOPERATIVITY

Many oligomeric enzymes, possessing more than one substrate binding site, show cooperative interactions of substrate molecules. The binding of substrate by one catalytic site increases the affinity of the other sites for additional substrate molecules. The net effect of this interaction is to produce an exponential increase in catalytic activity in response to an arithmetic increase in substrate concentration.

COVALENT MODIFICATION OF ENZYMES

The regulatory properties of some enzymes are altered by covalent modification of the protein. For example, the response of glutamine synthetase to metabolic effectors is altered by adenylylation, the covalent attachment of ADP to a specific tyrosyl side chain within each enzyme subunit. The enzymes controlling adenylylation also are controlled by covalent modification. The activity of other enzymes is altered by their phosphorylation.

ENZYME INACTIVATION

The activity of some enzymes is removed by their hydrolysis. This process can be regulated and sometimes is signaled by covalent modification of the enzyme targeted for removal.

REFERENCES

Books

Atlas RM, Bartha R: *Microbial Ecology: Fundamentals and Applications,* 4th ed. Benjamin Cummings, 1998.

Hurst CJ et al (editors): *Manual of Environmental Microbiology,* 2nd ed. ASM Press, 2002.

Maier RM, Pepper IL, Gerba CP: *Environmental Microbiology.* Academic Press, 2000.

Moat AG, Foster JW: *Microbial Physiology,* 4th ed. Wiley-Liss, 2002.

Neidhardt FC et al (editors): *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella. Cellular and Molecular Biology,* 2nd ed. Vols 1 and 2. ASM Press, 1996.

Schaechter M, Ingraham JL, Neidhardt FC: *Microbe* . ASM Press, 2006.

Articles & Reviews

Gibson J, Harwood CS: Metabolic diversity in aromatic compound utilization by anaerobic microbes. Annu Rev Microbiol 2002;56:345. [PMID: 12142480]

Hillen W, Stlke: Regulation of carbon catabolism in *Bacillus* species. Annu Rev Microbiol 2000;54:849. [PMID: 11018147]

Ishihama A: Functional modulation of *Escherichia coli* RNA polymerase. Annu Rev Microbiol 2000;54:499. [PMID: 11018136]

Peters JW, Fisher K, Dean DR: Nitrogenase structure and function. Annu Rev Microbiol 1995;49:335. [PMID: 8561464]

Roberts IS: The biochemistry and genetics of capsular polysaccharide production in bacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 1996;50:285. [PMID: 8905082]

Russell JB, Cook GM: Energetics of bacterial growth: Balance of anabolic and catabolic reactions. Microbiol Rev 1995;59:48. [PMID: 7708012]

Silvers S, Phung LT: Bacterial heavy metal resistance: New surprises. Annu Rev Microbiol 1996;50:753.

Van Rhijn P, Vanderleyden J: The *Rhizobium*- plant symbiosis. Microbiol Rev 1995;59:124.

INTRODUCTION

The science of genetics defines and analyzes heredity, or constancy and change in the vast array of physiologic functions that form the properties of organisms. The unit of heredity is the gene, a segment of DNA that carries in its nucleotide sequence information for a specific biochemical or physiologic property. The traditional approach to genetics has been to identify genes on the basis of their contribution to phenotype, or the collective structural and physiologic properties of a cell or an organism. A phenotypic property, be it eye color in a human or resistance to an antibiotic in a bacterium, is generally observed at the level of the organism. The chemical basis for variation in phenotype is change in genotype, or alteration in the sequence of DNA within a gene or in the organization of genes.

Traditional microbial genetics is based largely upon observation of growth. Phenotypic variation has been observed on the basis of a gene's capacity to permit growth under conditions of selection; eg, a bacterium containing a gene that confers resistance to ampicillin can be distinguished from a bacterium lacking the gene by its growth in the presence of the antibiotic, which serves as the agent of selection. Note that selection of the gene requires its expression, which under appropriate conditions can be observed at the level of phenotype.

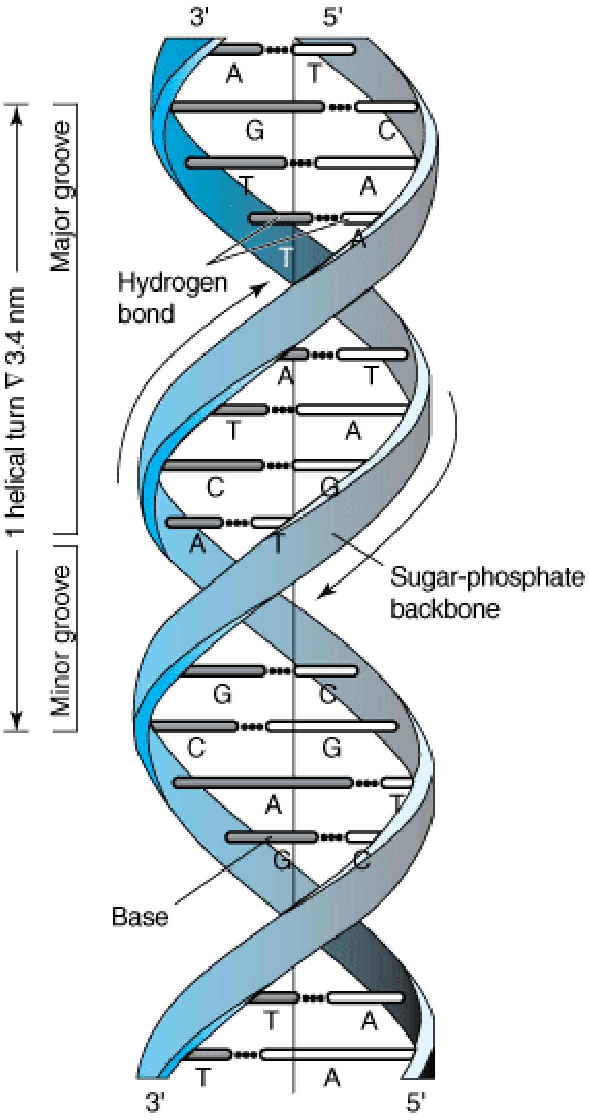
Microbial genetics has revealed that genes consist of DNA, an observation that laid the foundation for molecular biology. Subsequent investigations of bacteria revealed the presence of restriction enzymes that cleave DNA at specific sites, giving rise to DNA restriction fragments. Plasmids were identified as small genetic elements capable of independent replication in bacteria and yeasts. The introduction of a DNA restriction fragment into a plasmid allows the fragment to be amplified many times. Amplification of specific regions of DNA also can be achieved with bacterial enzymes using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) or other enzyme-based methods of nucleic acid amplification (eg, transcription-mediated amplification). DNA inserted into plasmids within such regions can be placed under control of high-expression bacterial promoters that allow encoded proteins to be expressed at high levels. Thus, bacterial genetics fostered development of genetic engineering, a technology that has been responsible for tremendous advances in the field of medicine.

ORGANIZATION OF GENES

The Structure of DNA & RNA

Genetic information is stored as a sequence of bases in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). (In RNA bacteriophages [eg, Qβ, MS2] and some RNA viruses [eg, influenza and reovirus], genetic information is stored as a sequence of bases in ribonucleic acid [RNA]. See Chapter 29.) Most DNA molecules are double-stranded, with complementary bases (A-T; G-C) paired by hydrogen bonding in the center of the molecule (Figure 71). The orientation of the two DNA strands is described as antiparallel ; one strand is chemically oriented in a 5' to 3' direction, while its complementary strand runs 3' to 5'. The complementarity of the bases enables one strand (template strand) to provide the information for copying or expression of information in the other strand (coding strand; Figure 72). The base pairs are stacked within the center of the DNA double helix (Figure 71), and they determine its genetic information. Each helical turn of the helix has one major groove and one minor groove. Many proteins with the capacity to bind DNA and regulate gene expression interact predominately with the major groove where atoms comprising the bases are more exposed. Each of the four bases is bonded to phospho-2'-deoxyribose to form a nucleotide. The negatively charged phosphodiester backbone of DNA faces the solvent. The length of a DNA molecule is usually expressed in thousands of base pairs, or kilobase pairs (kbp). A small virus may contain a single DNA molecule of 5 kbp, whereas the single DNA molecule that forms the *Escherichia coli* chromosome is 4639 kbp. Each base pair is separated from the next by about 0.34 nm, or 3.4×10^7 mm, so that the total length of the *E coli* chromosome is roughly 1 mm. Since the overall dimensions of the bacterial cell are roughly 1000-fold smaller than this length, it is evident that a substantial amount of folding, or supercoiling, contributes to the physical structure of the molecule in vivo.

Figure 71.

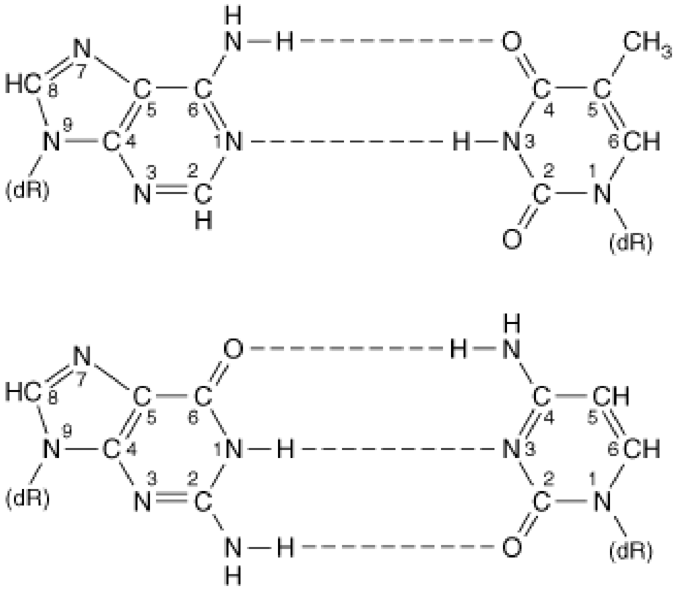


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A schematic drawing of the Watson-Crick structure of DNA, showing helical sugar-phosphate backbones of the two strands held together by hydrogen bonding between the bases.

(Redrawn from Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria,* 2nd ed. ASM Press, 2002.)

Figure 72.



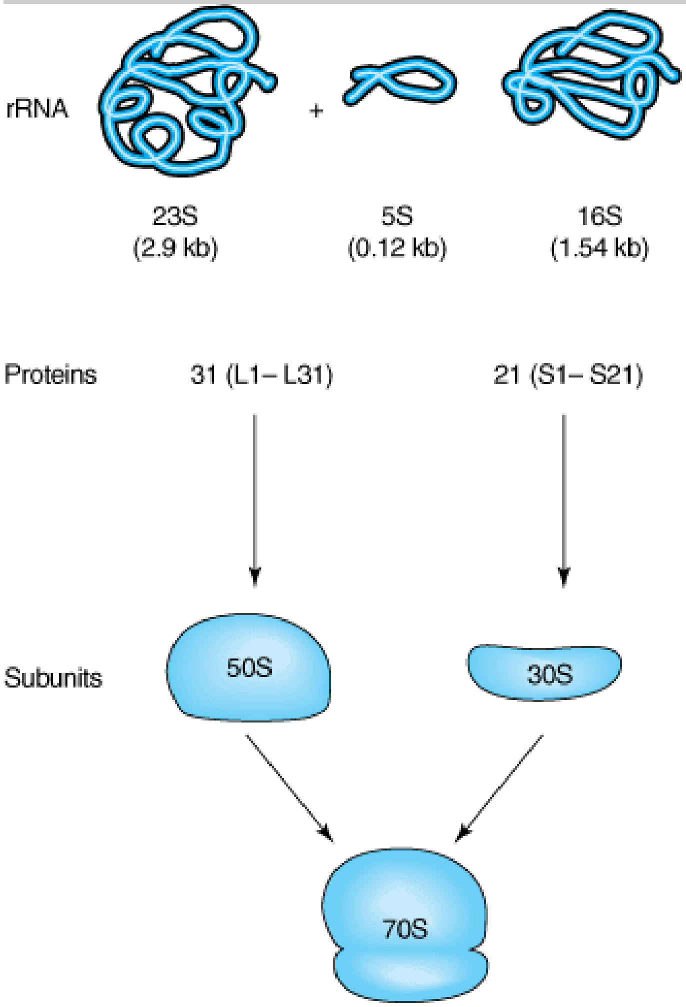
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Normal base-pairing in DNA. Hydrogen bonds are indicated by dotted lines. (dR, deoxyribose of the sugar-phosphate backbone of DNA.) Top: Adenine-thymine pair. Bottom: Guanine-cytosine pair.

Ribonucleic acid (RNA) most frequently occurs in single-stranded form. The base uracil (U) serves in RNA the hybridization function that thymine (T) serves in DNA, so the complementary bases that determine the structure of RNA are A-U and C-G. The overall structure of single-stranded RNA molecules is determined by hybridization between base sequences that form loops, with the result that single-stranded RNA molecules assume a compact structure capable of expressing genetic information contained in DNA.

The most general function of RNA is communication of DNA gene sequences in the form of messenger RNA (mRNA) to ribosomes. The ribosomes, which contain ribosomal RNA (rRNA) and proteins, translate this message into the primary structure of proteins via aminoacyl-transfer RNAs (tRNAs). RNA molecules range in size from the small tRNAs, which contain fewer than 100 bases, to mRNAs, which may carry genetic messages extending to several thousand bases. Bacterial ribosomes contain three kinds of rRNA with respective sizes of 120, 1540, and 2900 bases and a number of proteins (Figure 73). Corresponding rRNA molecules in eukaryotic ribosomes are somewhat larger. The need for expression of individual genes changes in response to physiologic demand, and requirements for flexible gene expression are reflected in the rapid metabolic turnover of most mRNAs. On the other hand, tRNAs and rRNAswhich are associated with the universally required function of protein synthesistend to be stable and together account for more than 95% of the total RNA in a bacterial cell. A few RNA molecules have been shown to function as enzymes (ribozymes). For example, the 23S RNA in the 50S ribosomal subunit (Figure 73) catalyzes the formation of the peptide bond during protein synthesis. Some small RNA molecules (sRNA) function as regulators by either binding near the 5' end of a mRNA, preventing ribosomes from translating that message, or by base pairing directly with a strand of DNA near the promoter preventing transcription.

Figure 73.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The composition of a ribosome containing one copy each of the 16S, 23S, and 5S RNAs as well as many proteins. The proteins of the large 50S subunit are designated L1 to L31. The proteins of the small 30S subunit are designated S1 to S21.

(Redrawn from Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria,* 2nd ed. ASM Press, 2002.)

The Eukaryotic Genome

The **genome** is the totality of genetic information in an organism. Almost all of the eukaryotic genome is carried on two or more linear chromosomes separated from the cytoplasm within the membrane of the nucleus. Diploid eukaryotic cells contain two **homologues** (divergent evolutionary copies) of each chromosome. **Mutations**, or genetic changes, frequently cannot be detected in diploid cells because the contribution of one gene copy compensates for changes in the function of its homologue. A gene that does not achieve phenotypic expression in the presence of its homologue is **recessive**, whereas a gene that overrides the effect of its homologue is **dominant**. The effects of mutations can be most readily discerned in **haploid** cells, which carry only a single copy of most genes. Yeast cells (which are eukaryotic) are frequently investigated because they can be maintained and analyzed in the haploid state.

Eukaryotic cells contain mitochondria and, in some cases, chloroplasts. Within each of these organelles is a circular molecule of DNA that contains a few genes whose function relates to that particular organelle. Most genes associated with organelle function, however, are carried on eukaryotic chromosomes. Many yeasts contain an additional genetic element, an independently replicating 2-μm circle containing about 6.3 kbp of DNA. Such small circles of DNA, termed plasmids, are frequently encountered in the genetics of prokaryotes. The small size of plasmids renders them amenable to genetic manipulation and, after their alteration, may allow their introduction into cells. Therefore, plasmids are frequently called upon in genetic engineering.

Repetitive DNA, which occurs in large quantities in eukaryotic cells, has been increasingly identified in prokaryotes. In eukaryotic genomes, repetitive DNA is infrequently associated with coding regions and is located primarily in extragenic regions. These short-sequence repeats (SSRs) or short tandemly repeated sequences (STRs) occur in several copies to thousands of copies dispersed throughout the genome. The presence of prokaryotic SSRs is well documented, and some show extensive-length polymorphisms (see Chapter 3). This variability is thought to be caused by slipped-strand mispairing and is an important prerequisite for bacterial phase variation and adaptation. Many eukaryotic genes are interrupted by introns, intervening sequences of DNA that are missing in mRNA that is translated. Introns have been observed in archaeal genes but with a few rare exceptions are not found in eubacteria (see Table 33).

The Prokaryotic Genome

Most prokaryotic genes are carried on the bacterial chromosome. Genome sequence data from more than 340 microbial genomes have indicated that most (>90%) prokaryotic genomes consist of a single circular DNA molecule containing from 580 kbp to more than 5220 kbp of DNA (Table 71). A few bacteria (eg, *Brucella* species, *Burkholderia pseudomallei* , and *B. mallei*) have genomes consisting of two circular DNA molecules. Many bacteria contain additional genes on plasmids that range in size from several to 100 kbp. DNA circles (chromosome and plasmid), which contain genetic information necessary for their own replication, are called replicons. Membranes do not separate bacterial genes from cytoplasm as in eukaryotes. With few exceptions, bacterial genes are haploid.

Table 71. Comparison of Genome Sizes in Selected Prokaryotes, Bacteriophages, and Viruses.

Prokaryotes	
Archae	
Methanococcus jannaschii	1660
Archaeoglobus fulgidus	2180
Eubacteria	
Mycoplasma genitalium	580
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	820
Borrelia burgdorferi	910
Chlamydia trachomatis	1040
Rickettsia prowazekii	

		1112
	Treponema pallidum	1140
	Chlamydia pneumoniae	1230
	Helicobacter pylori	1670
	Haemophilus influenzae	1830
	Francisella tularensis	1893
	Coxiella burnetii	1995
	Neisseria meningitidis serogroup A	2180
	Neisseria meningitidis serogroup B	2270
	**Brucella melitensis*	2117 + 1178
	Mycobacterium tuberculosis	4410
	Escherichia coli	4640
	Bacillus anthracis	5227
	**Burkholderia pseudomallei*	4126 + 3182
Bacteriophage	Lambda	48
Viruses	Ebola	19
	Variola major	186
	Vaccinia	192
	Cytomegalovirus	229

	Organism	Size (kbp)

*Organisms with two different circular chromosomes.

Some bacterial species can invade higher organisms because they possess specific genes for pathogenic determinants. These genes are often clustered together in the DNA and are referred to as pathogenicity islands. These gene blocks can be quite largeup to at least 200 kband can code for many virulence genes. Pathogenicity islands have a different G + C content from the rest of the genome, are linked to tRNA genes, are flanked by direct repeats, and contain diverse genes important for pathogenesisincluding adhesins, invasins, and exotoxinsas well as those that are probably involved in mobilization.

Genes essential for bacterial growth are carried on the chromosome, and plasmids carry genes associated with specialized functions (Table 72). Many plasmids carry genes that mediate their transfer from one organism to another as well as other genes associated with acquisition or rearrangement of DNA. Therefore, genes with independent evolutionary origins may be assimilated by plasmids that are widely disseminated among bacterial populations. A consequence of such genetic events has been observed in the swift spread among bacterial populations of plasmid-borne resistance to antibiotics after their liberal use in hospitals.

Table 72. Examples of Metabolic Activities Determined by Plasmids.

Organism	Activity
Pseudomonas species	Degradation of camphor, toluene, octane, salicylic acid
Bacillus stearothermophilus	α-Amylase
Alcaligenes eutrophus	Utilization of H_2 as oxidizable energy source
Escherichia coli	Sucrose uptake and metabolism, citrate uptake
Klebsiella species	Nitrogen fixation
Streptococcus (group N)	Lactose utilization, galactose phosphotransferase system, citrate metabolism
Rhodospirillum rubrum	Synthesis of photosynthetic pigment
Flavobacterium species	Nylon degradation

Transposons are genetic elements that contain several kbp of DNA, including the information necessary for their migration from one genetic locus to another. In doing so, they create insertion mutations. The involvement of relatively short transposons (7502000 bp long), known as insertion elements, produces the majority of insertion mutations. These insertion elements (also known as insertion sequence [IS] elements) carry only the genes for enzymes needed to promote their own transposition. Almost all bacteria carry IS elements, with each species harboring its own characteristic ones. Related IS elements can sometimes be found in different bacteria. Plasmids also carry IS elements, which are important in the formation of high-frequency recombinant (Hfr) strains (see below). Complex transposons carry genes for specialized functions such as antibiotic resistance and are flanked by insertion sequences. Unlike plasmids, transposons do not contain genetic information necessary for their own replication. Selection of transposons depends upon their replication as part of a replicon. Detection or genetic exploitation of transposons is achieved by selection of the specialized genetic information (normally, resistance to an antibiotic) that they carry.

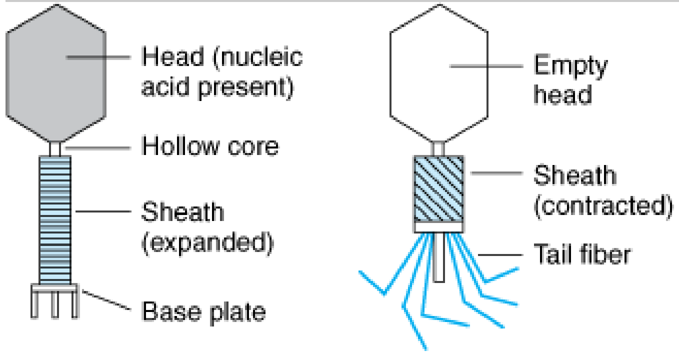
The Viral Genome

Viruses are capable of survival, but not growth, in the absence of a cell host. Replication of the viral genome depends upon the metabolic energy and the macromolecular synthetic machinery of the host. Frequently, this form of genetic parasitism results in debilitation or death of the host cell. Therefore, successful propagation of the virus requires (1) a stable form that allows the virus to survive in the absence of its host, (2) a mechanism for invasion of a host cell, (3) genetic information required for replication of the viral components within the cell, and (4) additional information that may be required for packaging the viral components and liberating the resulting virus from the host cell.

Distinctions are frequently made between viruses associated with eukaryotes and viruses associated with prokaryotes, the latter being termed bacteriophage. With over 5000 isolates of known morphology, phages constitue the largest of all viral groups. Much of our understanding of virusesindeed, many fundamental concepts of molecular biologyhas emerged from investigation of the bacteriophage, and it is this group of viruses that is discussed in this chapter.

Bacteriophages occur in over 140 bacterial genera and many different habitats. The nucleic acid molecule of bacteriophages is surrounded by a protein coat. Some phages also contain lipid. Considerable variability is found in the nucleic acid of phages. Many phages contain double-stranded DNA; others contain double-stranded RNA, single-stranded RNA, or single stranded-DNA. Unusual bases such as hydroxymethylcytosine are sometimes found in the phage nucleic acid. Bacteriophages exhibit a wide variety of morphologies. Many phages contain specialized syringe-like structures (ie, tails) that bind to receptors on the cell surface and inject the phage nucleic acid into a host cell (Figure 74); other phages appear cubic, filamentous, or pleomorphic.

Figure 74.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Diagrams of phage T2 based on electron micrographic observation.

Phages can be distinguished on the basis of their mode of propagation. Lytic phages produce many copies of themselves as they kill their host cell. The most thoroughly studied lytic phages, the T-even (eg, T2, T4) phages of *Escherichia coli,* have demonstrated the need for precisely timed expression of viral genes in order to coordinate events associated with phage formation. Temperate phages are able to enter a nonlytic prophage state in which replication of their nucleic acid is linked to replication of host cell DNA. Bacteria carrying prophages are termed lysogenic because a physiologic signal can trigger a lytic cycle resulting in death of the host cell and liberation of many copies of the phage. The best characterized temperate phage is the *E coli* phage λ (lambda). Genes that determine the lytic or lysogenic response to λ infection have been identified and their complex interactions explored in detail.

Filamentous phages, exemplified by the well-studied *E coli* phage M13, are exceptional in several respects. Their filaments contain single-stranded DNA complexed with protein and are extruded from their hosts, which are debilitated but not killed by the phage infection. Engineering of DNA into phage M13 has provided single strands that are valuable sources for DNA analysis and manipulation.

REPLICATION

Double-stranded DNA is synthesized by semiconservative replication. As the parental duplex unwinds, each strand serves as a template (ie, the source of sequence information) for DNA replication. New strands are synthesized with their bases in an order complementary to that in the preexisting strands. When synthesis is complete, each daughter molecule contains one parental strand and one newly synthesized strand.

Eukaryotic DNA

Replication of eukaryotic DNA begins at several growing points along the linear chromosome. Accurate replication of the ends of linear chromosomes requires enzymatic activities different from the normal functions associated with DNA replication. These activities may involve telomeres, specialized DNA sequences (carried on the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes) that seem to be associated with accurate replication of chromosome ends. Eukaryotes have evolved specialized machinery, called a spindle, that pulls daughter chromosomes into separate nuclei newly formed by the process of mitosis. More extensive division of nuclei by meiosis halves the chromosomal number of diploid cells to form haploid cells. Accurate segregation of chromosomes during the reductive divisions of meiosis is an important factor in maintaining chromosomal structure within a species. Frequently, the haploid cells are gametes. Formation of gametes followed by their fusion to form diploid zygotes is the primary source of genetic variability via recombination in eukaryotes.

Bacterial DNA

Bacteria lack anything resembling the complex structures associated with the segregation of eukaryotic chromosomes into different daughter nuclei. The replication of bacterial DNA begins at one point and moves in both directions (ie, bidirectional replication) from there. In the process, the two old strands of DNA are separated and used as templates to synthesize new strands (semiconservative replication). The structure where the two strands are separated and the new synthesis is occurring is referred to as the replication fork. Replication of the bacterial chromosome is tightly controlled, and the number of each chromosome (when more than one is present) per growing cell falls between one and four. Some bacterial plasmids may have as many as 30 copies in one bacterial cell, and mutations causing relaxed control of plasmid replication can result in even higher copy numbers.

The replication of circular double-stranded bacterial DNA begins at the *ori* locus and involves interactions with several proteins. In *E coli,* chromosome replication terminates in a region called *ter.* The origin (*ori*) and termination sites (*ter*) for replication are located at opposite points on the circular DNA chromosome. The two daughter chromosomes are separated, or resolved, before cell division, so that each progeny gets one of the daughter DNAs. This can be accomplished with the aid of topoisomerases or by recombination. Similar processes lead to the replication of plasmid DNA, except that in some cases replication is unidirectional.

Transposons

Transposons do not carry the genetic information required to couple their own replication to cell division, and their propagation therefore depends on their physical integration with a bacterial replicon. This association is fostered by the ability of transposons to form copies of themselves, which may be inserted within the same replicon or may be integrated into another replicon. The specificity of sequence at the insertion site is generally low, so that transposons often seem to insert in a random pattern. Many plasmids are transferred among bacterial cells, and insertion of a transposon into such a plasmid can lead to its dissemination throughout a population.

Phage

Bacteriophages exhibit considerable diversity in the nature of their nucleic acid, and this diversity is reflected in different modes of replication. Fundamentally different propagation strategies are exhibited by lytic and temperate phages. Lytic phages produce many copies of themselves in a single burst of growth. Temperate phages establish themselves as prophages either by becoming part of an established replicon or by forming an independent replicon.

The double-stranded DNA of many lytic phages is linear, and the first stage in their replication is the formation of circular DNA. This process depends upon cohesive ends, complementary single-stranded tails of DNA that hybridize. Ligation, formation of a phosphodiester bond between the tails, gives rise to covalently bonded circular DNA that may undergo replication in a manner similar to that used for other replicons. Cleavage of the circles produces linear DNA that is packaged inside protein coats to form daughter phages.

The single-stranded DNA of filamentous phages is converted to a circular double-stranded replicative form. One strand of the replicative form is used as a template in a continuous process that produces single-stranded DNA. The template is a rolling circle, and the single-stranded DNA it produces is cleaved and packaged with protein for extracellular extrusion.

Represented among the single-stranded RNA phages are the smallest extracellular particles containing information that allows for their own replication. The RNA of phage MS2, for example, contains (in fewer than 4000 nucleotides) three genes that can act as mRNA following infection. One gene encodes the coat protein, and another encodes an RNA polymerase that forms a double-stranded RNA replicative form. Single-stranded RNA produced from the replicative form is the core of new infective particles. The mechanism of propagation of RNA bacteriophage via RNA intermediates contrasts strongly with propagation of retroviruses, animal RNA viruses that use RNA as a template for DNA synthesis.

Some temperate bacteriophages, exemplified by *E coli* phage P1, can be established in the prophage state as plasmids. The double-stranded DNA of other temperate bacteriophages is established as prophage by its insertion into the host chromosome. The site of insertion may be quite specific, as exemplified by integration of *E coli* phage λ at a single *int* locus on the bacterial chromosome. The specificity of integration is determined by identity of the shared DNA sequence by the *int* locus and a corresponding region of the phage genome. Other temperate phages, such as *E coli* phage Mu, integrate in any of a wide range of chromosomal sites and in this respect resemble transposons.

Prophages contain genes required for lytic replication (also called vegetative replication), and expression of these genes is repressed during maintenance of the prophage state. A manifestation of repression is that established prophage frequently confers cellular immunity against lytic infection by similar phage. A cascade of molecular interactions triggers derepression (release from repression), so that a prophage undergoes vegetative replication, leading to formation of a burst of infectious particles. Artificial stimuli such as ultraviolet light may cause depression of prophage. The switch between lysogenypropagation of the phage genome with the hostand vegetative phage growth at the expense of the cell may be determined in part by the cell's physiologic state. A nongrowing cell will not support vegetative growth of phage, whereas a vigorously growing cell contains sufficient energy and building blocks to support rapid phage replication.

TRANSFER OF DNA

Interstrain transfer of DNA among prokaryotes is widespread and makes a major contribution to the remarkable genetic diversity of bacteria. Genetic recombination among bacteria is quite unlike the fusion of zygotes observed with eukaryotes. Bacterial genetic exchange is typified by transfer of a relatively small fragment of a donor genome to a recipient cell. Successful genetic recombination demands that this donor DNA be replicated in the recombinant organism. Replication can be achieved either by integration of the donor DNA into the recipient's replicon or by establishment of donor DNA as an independent replicon.

Restriction & Other Constraints on Gene Transfer

Restriction enzymes (restriction endonucleases) provide bacteria with a mechanism to distinguish between their own DNA and DNA from other biologic sources. These enzymes hydrolyze DNA at restriction sites determined by specific DNA sequences ranging from four to 13 bases. In this specificity of sequence recognition lies the selectivity of DNA fragment preparation that is the foundation of much genetic engineering. Each bacterial strain that possesses a restriction system is able also to disguise these recognition sites in its own DNA by modifying them through methylation of an adenine or cytosine residue within the site. These restriction-modification systems fall into two broad classes: type I systems, in which the restriction and modification activities are combined in a single multisubunit protein, and type II systems, which consist of separate endonucleases and methylases. A direct biologic consequence of restriction can be cleavage of donor DNA before it has an opportunity to become established as part of a recombinant replicon. Therefore, many recipients used in genetic engineering are dysfunctional in the *res* genes associated with restriction.

Some plasmids exhibit a narrow host range and are able to replicate only in a closely related set of bacteria. Other plasmids, exemplified by some drug resistance plasmids, replicate in a wide range of bacterial recombinants. However, not all types of plasmids can stably coexist in a cell. Some types will interfere with the replication or partitioning of another type, so that if two such plasmids are introduced into the same cell, one or the other will be lost at a higher than normal rate when the cell divides. The phenomenon is called plasmid incompatibility; two plasmids that cannot stably coexist belong to the same incompatibility (Inc) group, while two plasmids that can stably coexist belong to different Inc groups.

Mechanisms of Recombination

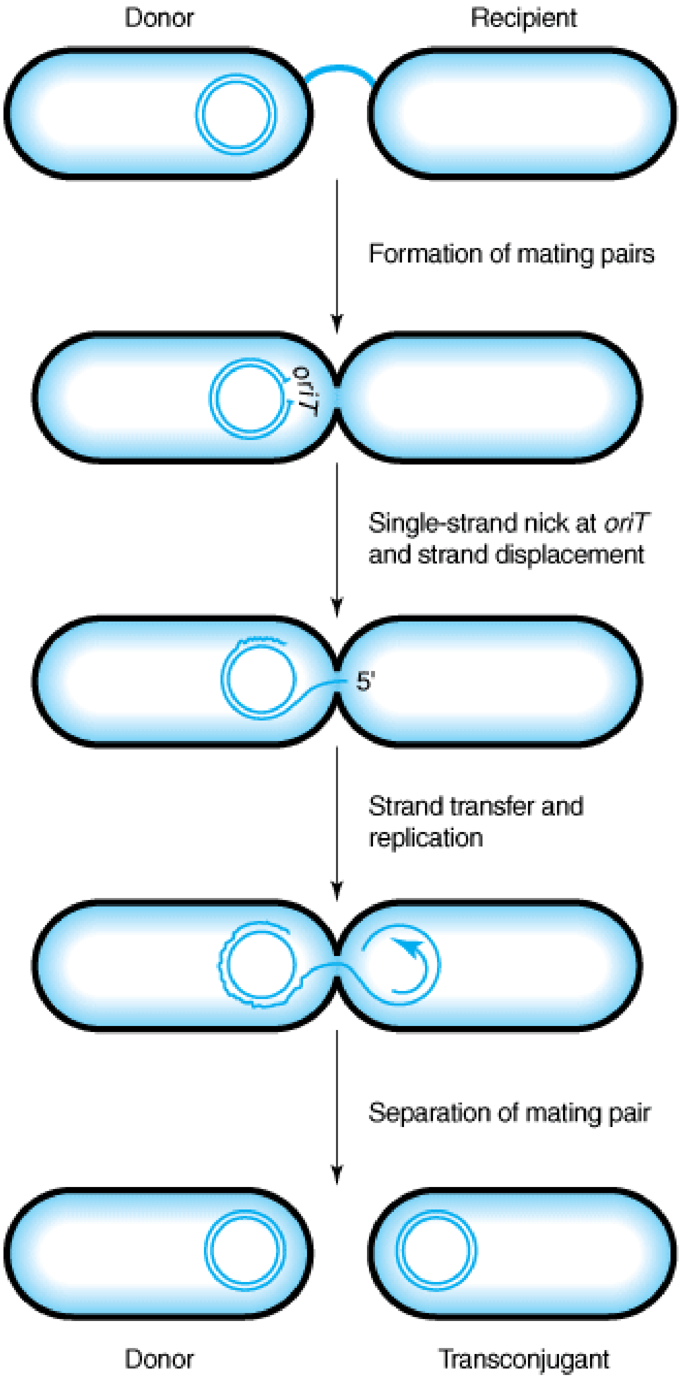
Donor DNA that does not carry information necessary for its own replication must recombine with recipient DNA in order to become established in a recipient strain. The recombination may be homologous, a consequence of close similarity in the sequences of donor and recipient DNA, or nonhomologous, the result of enzyme-catalyzed recombination between dissimilar DNA sequences. Homologous recombination almost always involves exchange between genes that share common ancestry. The process requires a set of genes designated *rec,* and dysfunctions in these genes give rise to bacteria that can maintain closely homologous genes in the absence of recombination. Nonhomologous recombination depends on enzymes encoded by the integrated DNA and is most clearly exemplified by the insertion of DNA into a recipient to form a copy of a donor transposon.

The mechanism of recombination mediated by *rec* gene products is reciprocal: Introduction of a donor sequence into a recipient is mirrored by transfer of the homologous recipient sequence into the donor DNA. Increasing scientific attention is being paid to the role of gene conversion the nonreciprocal transfer of DNA sequences from donor to recipientin the acquisition of genetic diversity.

Mechanisms of Gene Transfer

The DNA composition of organisms can be remarkably fluid. DNA can be transferred from one organism to another, and that DNA can be stably incorporated in the recipient, permanently changing its genetic composition. This process is called lateral transfer or horizontal gene transfer to differentiate it from the inheritance of parental genes, a process called vertical inheritance. Three broad mechanisms mediate efficient movement of DNA between cellsconjugation, transduction, and transformation. In conjugation, only one strand of DNA is transferred (Figure 75). The recipient completes the structure of double-stranded DNA by synthesizing the strand that complements the strand acquired from the donor. In transduction, donor DNA is carried in a phage coat and is transferred into the recipient by the mechanism used for phage infection. Transformation, the direct uptake of donor DNA by the recipient cell, may be natural or forced. Relatively few bacterial species are naturally competent for transformation; these species assimilate donor DNA in linear form. Forced transformation is induced in the laboratory, where, after treatment with high salt and temperature shock, many bacteria are rendered competent for the assimilation of extracellular plasmids. The capacity to force bacteria to incorporate extracellular plasmids by transformation is fundamental to genetic engineering.

Figure 75.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Mechanism of DNA transfer during conjugation. The donor cell produces a pilus, which is encoded by the plasmid and contacts a potential recipient cell that does not contain the plasmid. Retraction of the pilus brings the cells into close contact, and a pore forms in the adjoining cell membranes. Formation of the mating pair signals the plasmid to begin transfer from a single-stranded nick at *oriT.* The nick is made by plasmid encoded *tra* functions. The 5' end of a single strand of the plasmid is transferred to the recipient through the pore. During transfer, the plasmid in the donor is replicated, its DNA synthesis being primed by the 3' OH of the *oriT* nick. Replication of the single strand in the recipient proceeds by a different mechanism with

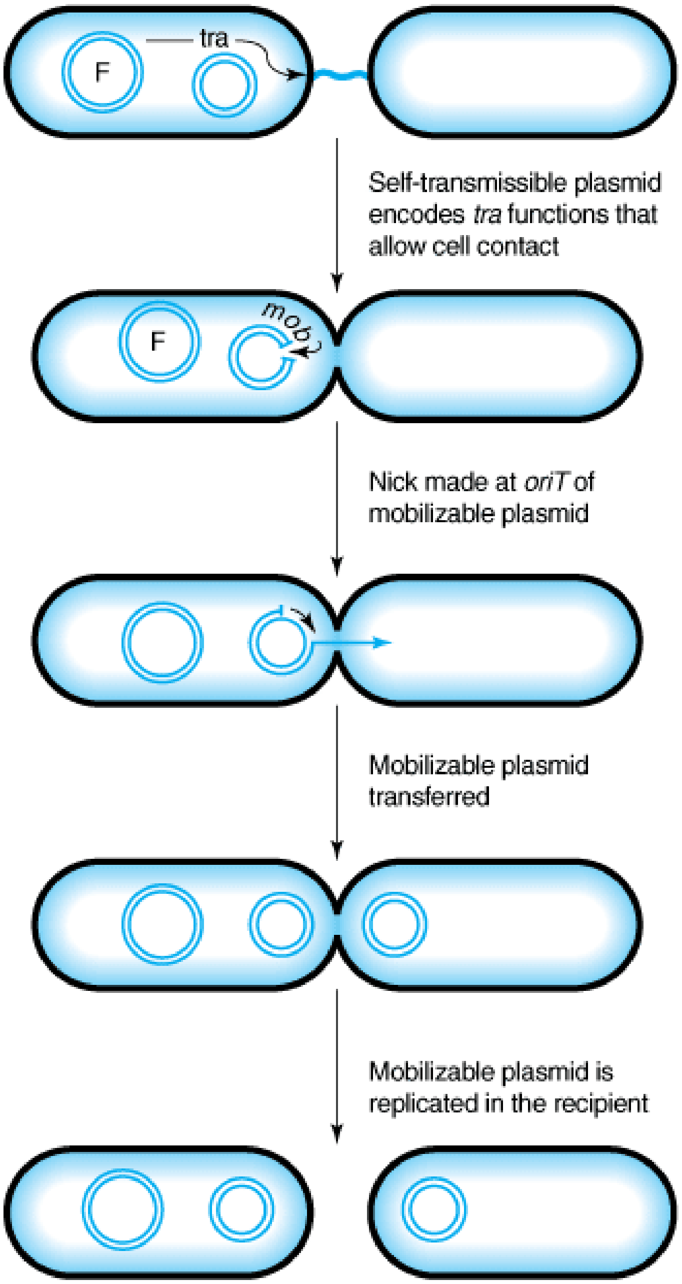
RNA primers. Both cells now contain double-stranded plasmids, and the mating pair separates.

(Redrawn from Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria.* ASM Press, 1997.)

CONJUGATION

Plasmids are the genetic elements most frequently transferred by conjugation. Genetic functions required for transfer are encoded by the *tra* genes, which are carried by self-transmissible plasmids. Some self-transmissible plasmids can mobilize other plasmids or portions of the chromosome for transfer. In some cases mobilization is achieved because the *tra* genes provide functions necessary for transfer of an otherwise nontransmissible plasmid (Figure 76). In other cases, the self-transmissible plasmid integrates with the DNA of another replicon and, as an extension of itself, carries a strand of this DNA into a recipient cell.

Figure 76.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

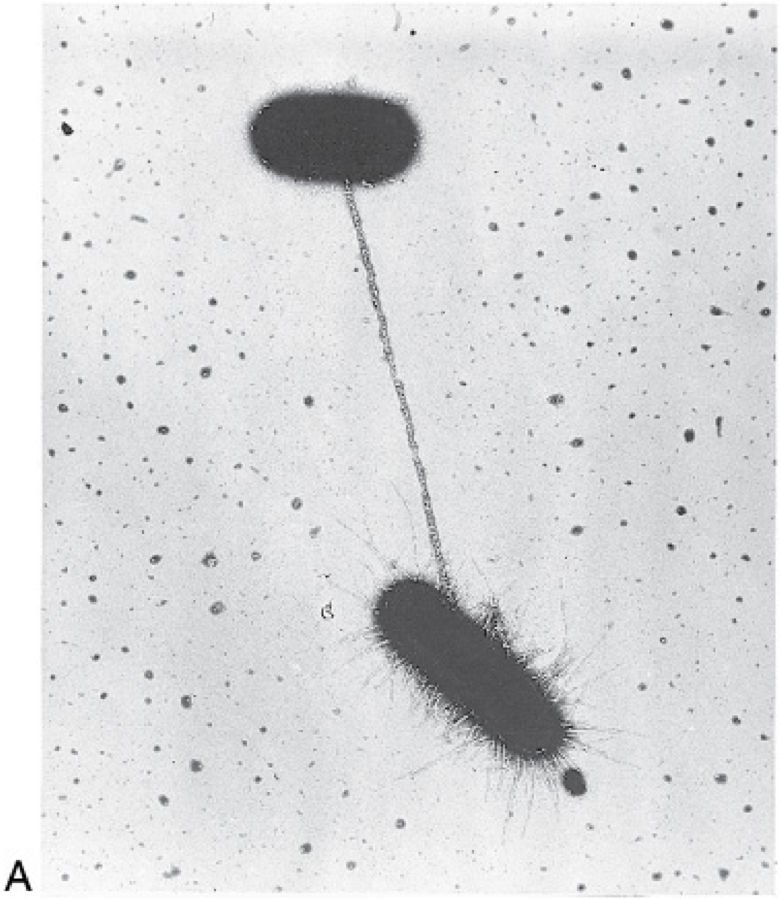
Mechanism of plasmid mobilization. The donor cell carries two plasmids, a self-transmissible plasmid, F, which encodes the *tra* functions that promote cell contact and plasmid transfer, and a mobilizable plasmid. The *mob* functions encoded by the mobilizable plasmid make a single-stranded nick at *oriT* in the *mob* region. Transfer and replication of the mobilizable plasmid then occur. The self-transmissible plasmid may also transfer.

(Redrawn from Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria.* ASM Press, 2nd ed. 2002.)

Genetic analysis of *E coli* was greatly advanced by elucidation of fertility factors carried on a plasmid designated F^+

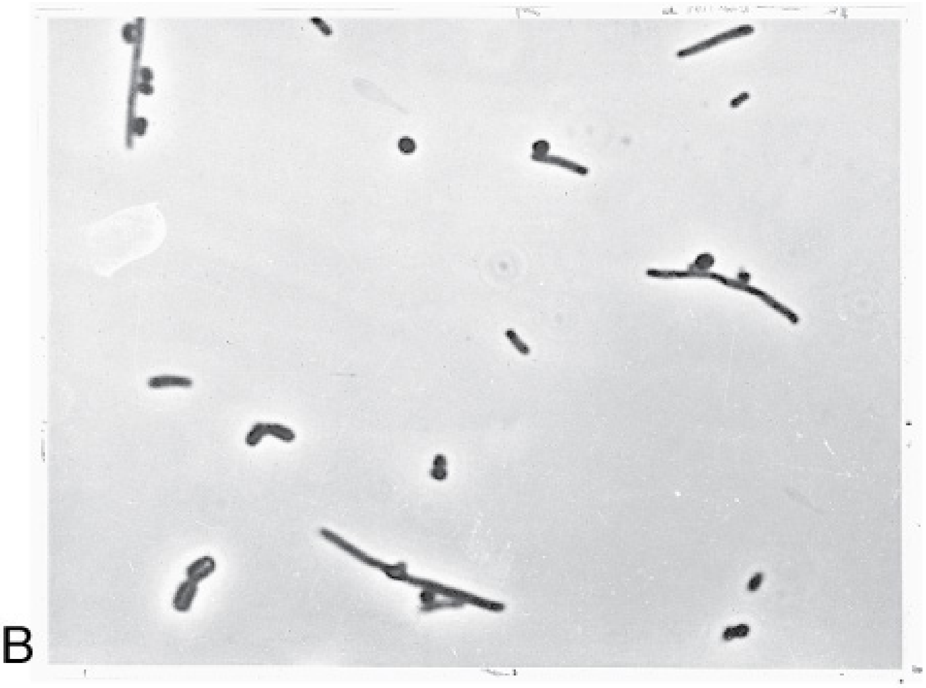
. This plasmid confers certain donor characteristics upon cells; these characteristics include a sex pilus, an extracellular multimeric protein extrusion that attaches donor cells to recipient organisms lacking the fertility factor. A bridge between the cells allows a strand of the F^+ plasmid, synthesized by the donor, to pass into the recipient, where the complementary strand of DNA is formed (Figure 77). The F^+ fertility factor can integrate into numerous loci in the chromosome of donor cells. The integrated fertility factor creates Hfr donors from which chromosomal DNA is transferred (from the site of insertion) in a direction determined by the orientation of insertion (Figure 78).

Figure 77.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

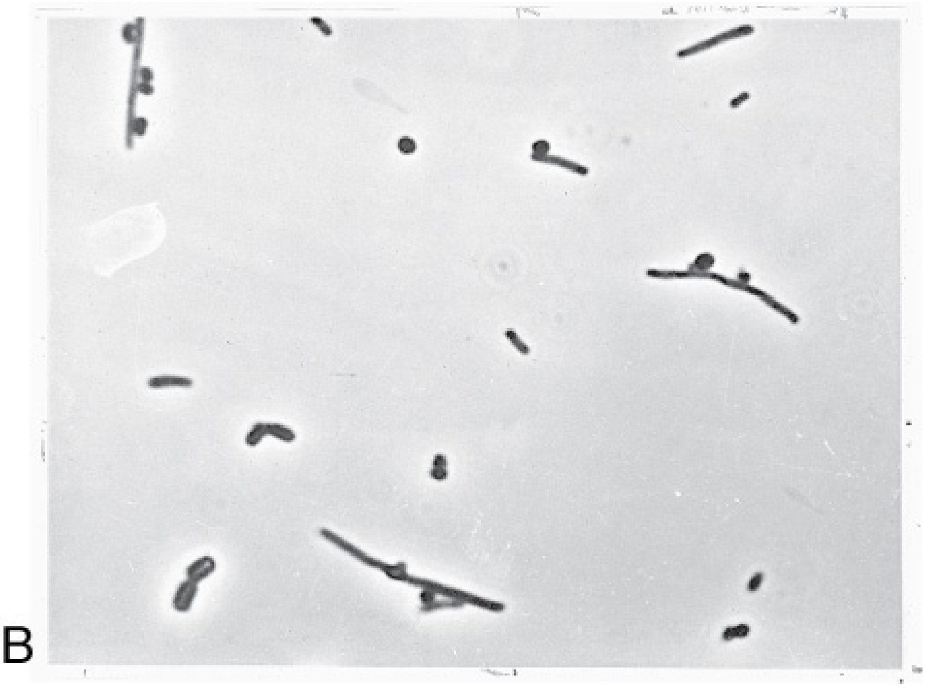
B



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

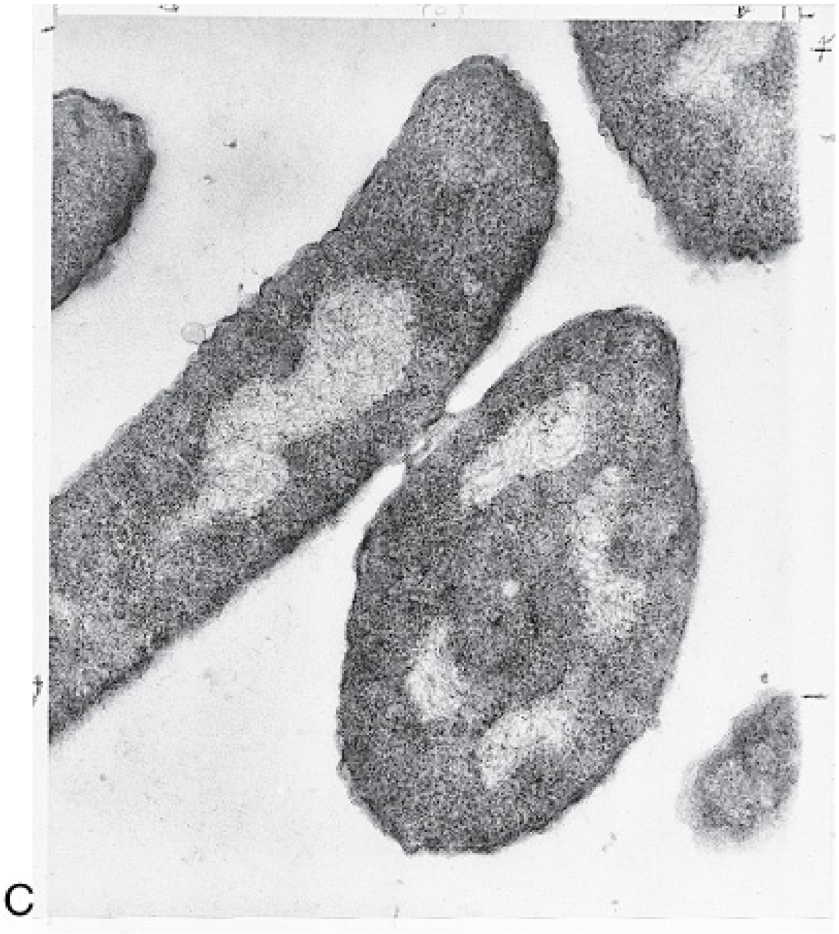
C

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



B

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

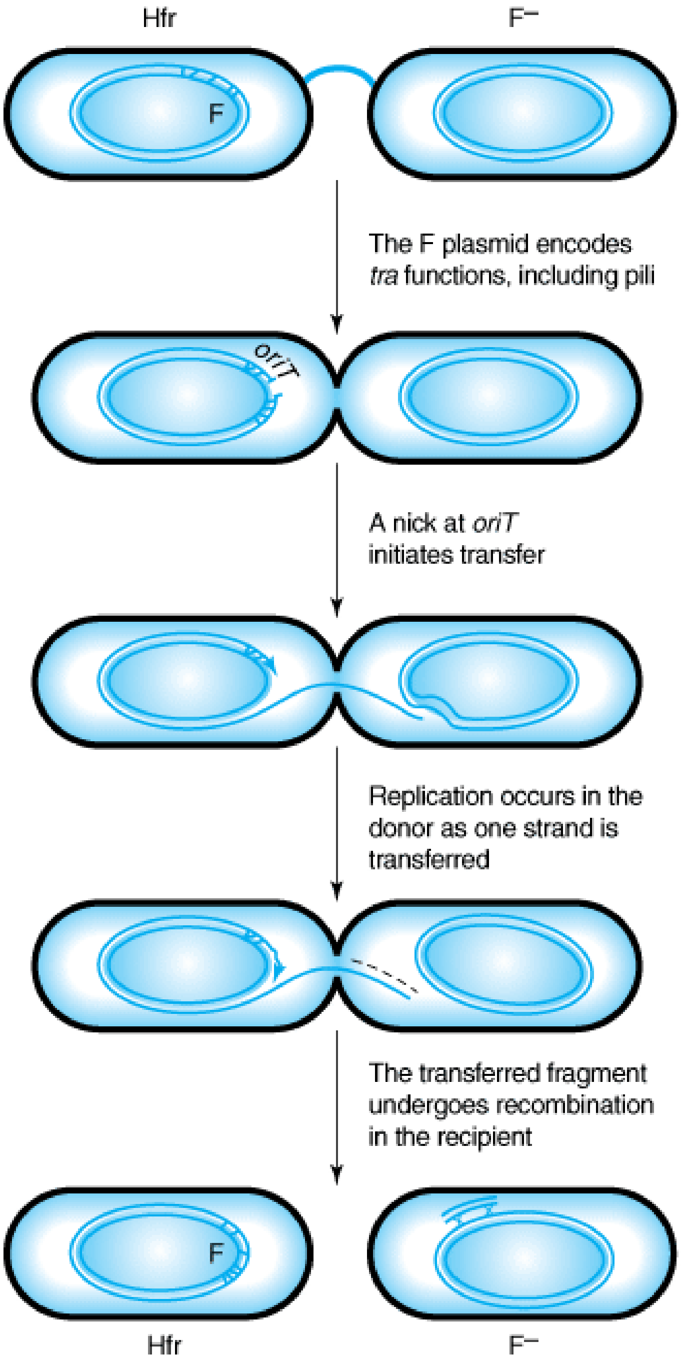


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: A male and a female cell joined by an F pilus (sex pilus). The F pilus has been "stained" with male-specific RNA phage particles. The male cell also possesses ordinary F pili, which do not adsorb male-specific phages and are not involved in mating. B: Mating pairs of *E coli* cells. Hfr cells are elongated. C: Electron micrograph of a thin section of a mating pair. The cell walls of the mating partners are in intimate contact in the "bridge" area.

(Electron micrograph [A] by Carnahan J and Brinton C. By permission of Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ. Photographs [B] and [C] from Gross JD and Caro LG: DNA transfer in bacterial conjugation. J Mol Biol 1966;16:269.)

Figure 78.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Transfer of chromosomal DNA by an integrated plasmid. Formation of mating pairs, nicking of the F *oriT* sequence, and transfer of the 5' end of a single strand of F DNA proceed as in transfer of the F plasmid. Transfer of a covalently linked chromosomal DNA will also occur as long as the mating pair is stable. Complete chromosome transfer rarely occurs, and so the recipient cell remains F$^-$, even after mating. Replication in the donor usually accompanies DNA transfer. Some replication of the transferred single strand may also occur. Once in the recipient cell, the transferred DNA may recombine with homologous sequences in the recipient chromosome.

(Redrawn from Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria,* 2nd ed. ASM Press, 2002.)

The rate of chromosomal transfer from Hfr cells is constant, and compilation of results from many conjugation experiments has allowed preparation of an *E coli* genetic map in which distances between loci are measured in number of minutes required for transfer in conjugation. A similar map has been constructed for the related coliform bacterium *Salmonella* Typhimurium, and comparison of the two maps shows related patterns of gene organization, although several major chromosomal rearrangements have accompanied divergence of the two bacterial species.

Analogous procedures with other plasmids have enabled researchers to map the circular chromosomes of members of distant bacterial genera; eg, drug resistance plasmids, termed R factors, can promote chromosomal transfer from diverse bacteria, including *Pseudomonas* species. Comparison of chromosomal maps of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Pseudomonas putida* shows that few, albeit significant, genetic rearrangements accompanied divergence of these two closely related species. *Pseudomonas* maps have little in common with those of the biologically distant coliform bacteria.

Integration of chromosomal DNA into a conjugal plasmid can produce a recombinant repliconan F (fertility) prime, or R (resistance) prime, depending on the plasmidin which the integrated chromosomal DNA can be replicated on the plasmid independently of the chromosome. This occurs when the integrated plasmid (eg, F) is bracketed by two copies of an IS element. Bacteria carrying gene copies, a full set on the chromosome and a partial set on a prime, are partial diploids, or merodiploids, and are useful for complementation studies. A wild-type gene frequently complements its mutant homologue, and selection for the wild-type phenotype can allow maintenance of merodiploids in the laboratory. Such strains can allow analysis of interactions between different alleles, genetic variants of the same gene. Merodiploids frequently are genetically unstable because recombination between the plasmid and the homologous chromosome can result in loss or exchange of mutant or wild-type alleles. This problem can frequently be circumvented by maintenance of merodiploids in a genetic background in which *recA,* a gene required for recombination between homologous segments of DNA, has been inactivated by mutation.

Homologous genes from different organisms may have diverged to an extent that prevents recombination between them but does not alter the capacity of one gene to complement the missing activity of another. For example, the genetic origin of an enzyme required for amino acid biosynthesis is unlikely to influence catalytic activity in the cytoplasm of a biologically distant host. A merodiploid carrying a gene for such an enzyme would also carry flanking genes derived from the donor organism. Therefore, conventional microbial genetics, based on selection of prime plasmids, can be used to isolate genes from fastidious organisms in *E coli* or *P aeruginosa.* The significance of this technology lies in its ability to simplify or to circumvent the relatively expensive procedures demanded by genetic engineering.

TRANSDUCTION

Transduction is phage-mediated genetic recombination in bacteria. In simplest terms, a transducing particle might be regarded as bacterial DNA in a phage coat. Even a lytic phage population may contain some particles in which the phage coat surrounds DNA derived from the bacterium rather than from the phage. Such populations have been used to transfer genes from one bacterium to another. Temperate phages are preferred vehicles for gene transfer because infection of recipient bacteria under conditions that favor lysogeny minimizes cell lysis and thus favors survival of recombinant strains. Indeed a recipient bacterium carrying an appropriate prophage may form a repressor that renders the cell immune to lytic infection; such cells may still take up bacterial DNA from transducing particles. Transducing mixtures carrying donor DNA can be prepared under conditions that favor the lytic phage cycle.

The size of DNA in transducing particles is usually no more than several percent of the bacterial chromosome, and therefore cotransduction transfer of more than one gene at a timeis limited to linked bacterial genes. The process is of particular value in mapping genes that lie too close together to be placed in map order on the basis of conjugal transfer. Mutant phages can be identified on the basis of the morphology of the plaque they form by lysis of a lawn of bacteria growing on solidified agar medium. Genetic maps for phages have been constructed by analysis of plaques arising from bacteria that have been simultaneously infected with two different phages.

Pathogenicity islands are often transported by phages. For example, two phages transport pathogenicity islands responsible for converting a benign form of *Vibrio cholerae* into the pathogenic form responsible for epidemic cholera (see Chapter 18).

The speed with which phages recombine and replicate has made them central subjects for study of these processes, and many generalizations concerning the underlying mechanisms have emerged from phage genetics. The capacity of phages to make rapid replicas of their DNA makes them valuable to genetic engineering. Of particular value are recombinant phages engineered so that they contain DNA inserts from another biologic source. Inserted DNA can be replicated with the swiftness that characterizes phage DNA and regained in a form useful for manipulation. Single-stranded DNA, produced by phage M13 and its derivatives, serves as a template for sequencing and site-directed mutagenesis.

TRANSFORMATION

Direct uptake of donor DNA by recipient cells depends on their competence for transformation. Natural occurrence of this property is unusual among bacteria, and some of these strains are transformable only in the presence of competence factors, produced only at a specific point in the growth cycle. Other strains readily undergo natural transformation, and these organisms offer promise for genetic engineering because of the ease with which they incorporate modified DNA into their chromosomes. Naturally competent transformable bacteria are found in several genera and include *Bacillus subtilis, Haemophilus influenzae, Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae.* DNA fragments containing genes from such organisms can be readily identified on the basis of their ability to transform mutant cells to the wild type. These techniques represent a substantial advance over the laborious procedures used by Avery and his associates to demonstrate that the pneumococcus transforming principle was DNA.

Natural transformation is an active process demanding specific proteins produced by the recipient cell. Many bacteria, unable to undergo natural transformation, can be forced to incorporate plasmids by treatment with calcium chloride and temperature shock. Transformation with engineered recombinant plasmids by this procedure is a cornerstone of modern molecular biology because it enables DNA from diverse biologic sources to be established as part of well-characterized bacterial replicons.

MUTATION & GENE REARRANGEMENT

Spontaneous Mutations

Mutations are changes in DNA sequence. Spontaneous mutations for a given gene generally occur with a frequency of 10^8 10^6 in a population derived from a single bacterium. The mutations include base substitutions, deletions, insertions, and rearrangements. Base substitutions can arise as a consequence of mispairing between complementary bases during replication. In *E coli,* this occurs about once every 10^{10} times it incorporates a nucleotide. Establishment of such mutations is minimized by enzymes associated with mismatch repair, a process that essentially proofreads a newly synthesized strand to ensure that it perfectly complements its template. The enzymes distinguish the newly synthesized strand from the preexisting strand on the basis of methylation of adenine in GATC sequences of the preexisting strand. A special DNA repair system, the SOS response, is called into play in cells in which DNA has been damaged.

Many base substitutions escape detection at the phenotypic level because they do not significantly disrupt the function of the gene product. For example, missense mutations, which result in substitution of one amino acid for another, may be without discernible phenotypic effect. Nonsense mutations terminate synthesis of proteins and thus result in a protein truncated at the site of mutation. The gene products of nonsense mutations are usually inactive.

The consequences of deletion or insertion mutations also are severe because they can drastically alter the amino acid sequence of gene products. As described below, accurate expression of DNA sequences depends on translation of nucleotide triplet codons in perfect phase. Insertion or deletion of a single nucleotide disrupts the phase of translation and thus introduces an entirely different protein sequence distal to the amino acid codon altered by the mutation.

A substantial fraction of spontaneous mutations are deletions that remove large portions of genes or even sets of genes. Deletions involve recombination between directly repeated sequences (eg, IS elements) and almost never revert. Other spontaneous mutations cause duplication, frequently in tandem, of comparable lengths of DNA. Such mutations usually are unstable and revert readily. Other mutations can invert lengthy DNA sequences or transpose such sequences to new loci. Comparative gene maps of related bacterial strains have shown that such rearrangements can be fixed in natural populations. These observations point to the fact that linear separation of DNA fragments does not completely disrupt possibilities for physical and chemical interaction among them.

Mutagens

The frequency of mutation is greatly enhanced by exposure of cells to mutagens. Ultraviolet (UV) light is a physical mutagen that damages DNA by linking neighboring thymine bases to form dimers. Sequence errors can be introduced during enzymatic repair of this genetic damage. Chemical mutagens may act by altering either the chemical or the physical structure of DNA. Reactive chemicals alter the structure of bases in DNA. For example, nitrous acid (HNO_2) substitutes hydroxyl groups for amino groups. The resulting DNA has altered template activity during subsequent rounds of replication. Frameshift mutations introduction or removal of a single base pair from DNAare caused by slight slippage of DNA strands. This slippage is favored by acridine dyes, which can intercalate between bases.

In general, the direct effect of chemical or physical mutagens is damage to DNA. The resulting mutations are introduced by enzymes associated with replication or repair. Mutations that change the properties of these enzymes can make them biologic mutagens, the products of mutator genes. Other forms of biologic mutagenesis are insertions into repair genes caused by transposons such as the phage Mu.

Reversion & Suppression

Regaining an activity lost as a consequence of mutation, termed phenotypic reversion, may or may not result from restoration of the original DNA sequence, as would be demanded by genotypic reversion. Frequently, a mutation at a second locus, called a suppressor mutation, restores the lost activity. In intragenic suppression, after a primary mutation has changed an enzyme's structure so that its activity has been lost, a second mutation, at a different site in the enzyme's gene, restores the structure required for activity. Extragenic suppression is caused by a second mutation lying outside the originally affected gene. Well-characterized examples are nonsense suppressors, which are usually a mutation in a tRNA gene that changes the anticodon of the tRNA so that it can pair with the nonsense codon and allow introduction of amino acids at sites where nonsense mutations cause the termination of the synthesis of the protein.

GENE EXPRESSION

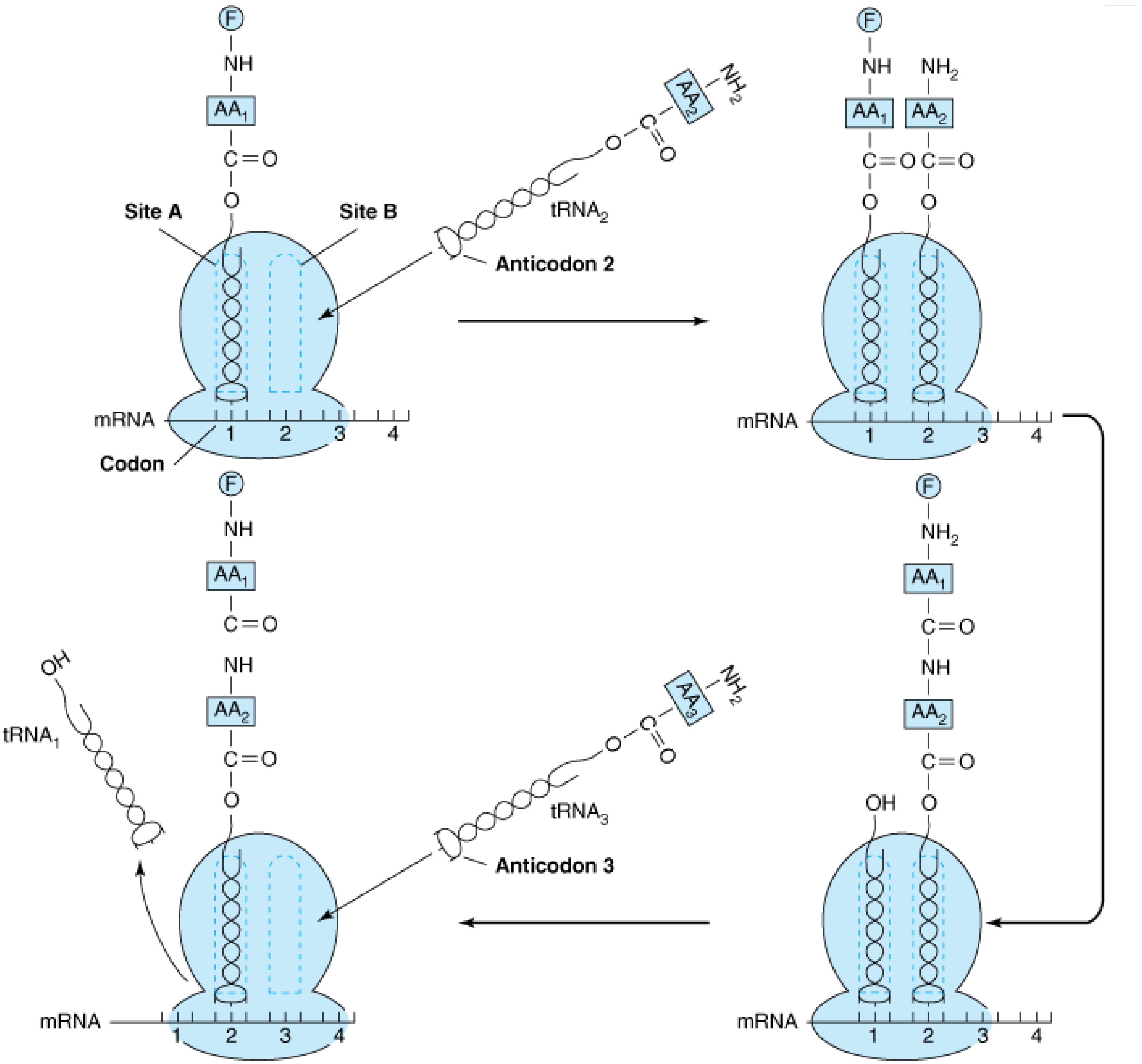
The tremendous evolutionary separation of eukaryotic and prokaryotic genomes is illustrated by comparing their mechanisms of gene expression, which share certain properties. In both groups, genetic information is encoded in DNA, transcribed into mRNA, and translated on ribosomes through tRNA into the structure of proteins (Figure 79). The triplet nucleotide codons used in translation are generally shared, and many enzymes associated with macromolecular synthesis in the two biologic groups have similar properties. Beyond these generalizations, there are striking differences between eukaryotes and prokaryotes at each step in gene expression. The mechanism by which the sequence of nucleotides in a gene determines the sequence of amino acids in a protein is as follows:

(1) RNA polymerase forms a single polyribonucleotide strand, called "messenger RNA" (mRNA), using DNA as a template; this process is called transcription. The mRNA has a nucleotide sequence complementary to a template strand in the DNA double helix if read in the 3' to 5' direction.

(2) Amino acids are enzymatically activated and transferred to specific adapter molecules of RNA, called "transfer RNA" (tRNA). Each adapter molecule has a triplet of bases (anticodon) complementary to a triplet of bases on mRNA, and at one end its specific amino acid. The triplet of bases on mRNA is called the codon for that amino acid.

(3) mRNA and tRNA come together on the surface of the ribosome. As each tRNA finds its complementary nucleotide triplet on mRNA, the amino acid that it carries is put into peptide linkage with the amino acid of the preceding (neighboring) tRNA molecule. The enzyme peptidyltransferase (which is actually the 23S RNA, ie, a ribozyme) catalyzes the formation of the peptide bond. The ribosome moves along the mRNA, the polypeptide growing sequentially until the entire mRNA molecule has been translated into a corresponding sequence of amino acids. This process, called translation, is diagrammed in Figure 79.

Figure 79.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Four stages in the lengthening of a polypeptide chain on the surface of a 70S ribosome. Top left: A tRNA molecule bearing the anticodon complementary to codon 1 at one end and AA_1 at the other, binds to site A. AA_1 is attached to the tRNA through its carboxyl group; its amino nitrogen bears a formyl group (F). Top right: A tRNA molecule bearing AA_2 binds to site B; its anticodon is complementary to codon 2. Bottom right: An enzyme complex catalyzes the transfer of AA_1 to the amino group of AA_2 , forming a peptide bond. (Note that transfer in the opposite direction is blocked by the prior formylation of the amino group of AA_1 .) Bottom left: The ribosome moves to the right, so that sites A and B are now opposite codons 2 and 3; in the process, $tRNA_1$ is displaced and $tRNA_2$ moves to site A. Site B is again vacant and is ready to accept $tRNA_3$ bearing AA_3 . (When the polypeptide is completed and released, the formyl group is enzymatically removed.)

(Redrawn and reproduced by permission of Stanier RY, Doudoroff M, Adelberg EA: *The Microbial World,* 3rd ed. Copyright 1970. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ.)

Genes associated with related functions are frequently clustered in prokaryotes, whereas such clustering among eukaryotic genes is unusual. Enhancer sequences are regions of eukaryotic DNA that increase transcription and may lie distantly upstream from the transcribed gene. Eukaryotic genes carry introns, DNA insertions that generally are not found in prokaryotic genes. Introns separate exons, the coding regions of eukaryotic genes. Transcribed introns are removed from eukaryotic transcripts during RNA processing, a series of enzymatic reactions that take place in the nucleus. As far as is known, prokaryotic mRNA is turned over rapidly, whereas some eukaryotic mRNA molecules, exemplified by the hemoglobin RNA of erythrocytes, are quite stable.

Eukaryotic and prokaryotic ribosomes differ in many respects. Eukaryotic ribosomes are larger and have a sedimentation coefficient of 80S compared with the 70S sedimentation coefficient of prokaryotic ribosomes. The 40S and 60S eukaryotic ribosomal subunits are larger than the corresponding 30S and 50S ribosomal subunits of prokaryotes, and the eukaryotic ribosomes are relatively rich in protein. Significant differences are inherent in the sensitivity of the ribosomal activities to antibiotics, many of which selectively inhibit protein synthesis in prokaryotic but not in eukaryotic cytoplasm (see Chapter 9). It should be remembered, however, that mitochondrial ribosomes in eukaryotes resemble those from prokaryotes.

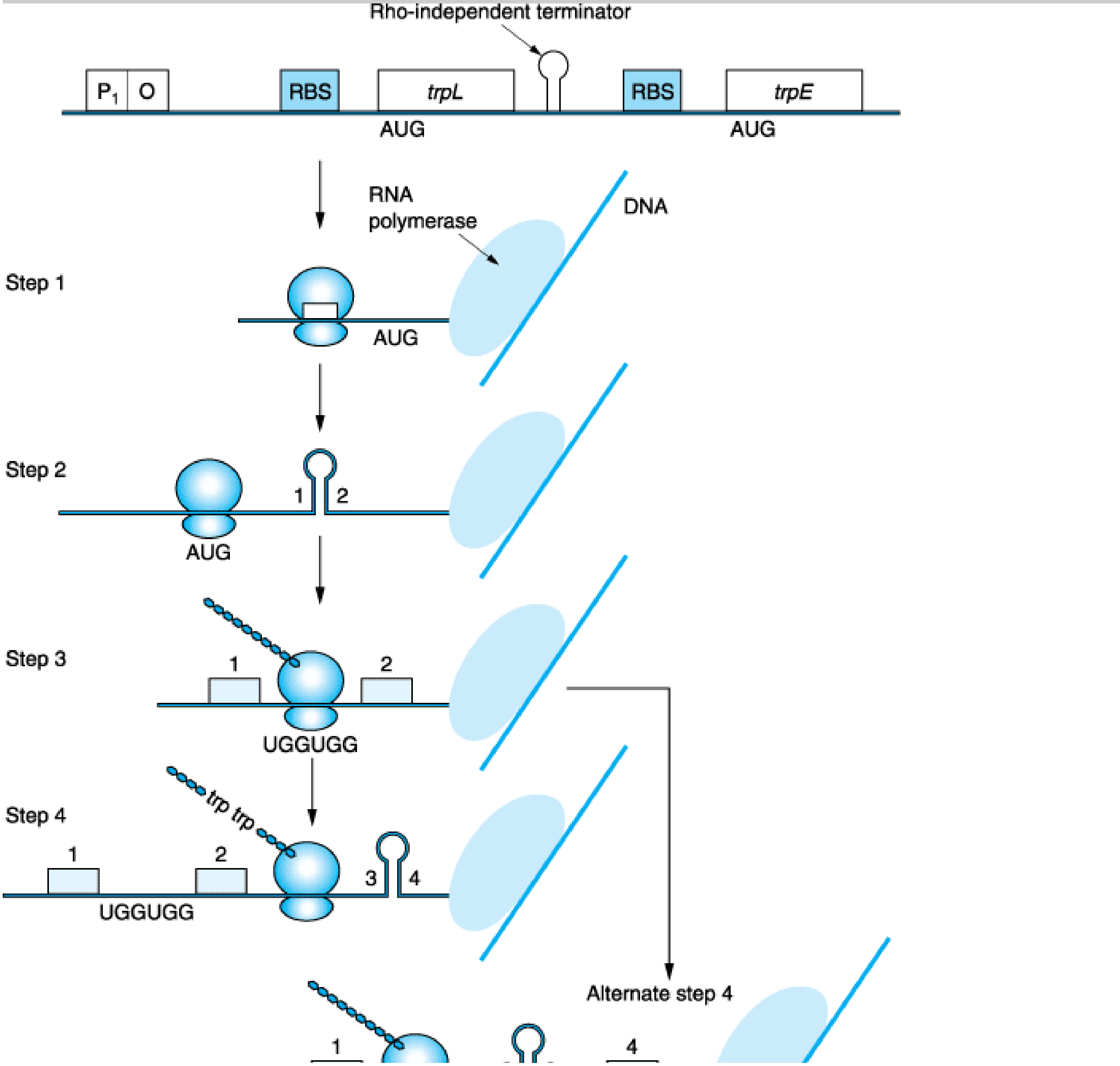
Regulation of Gene Expression

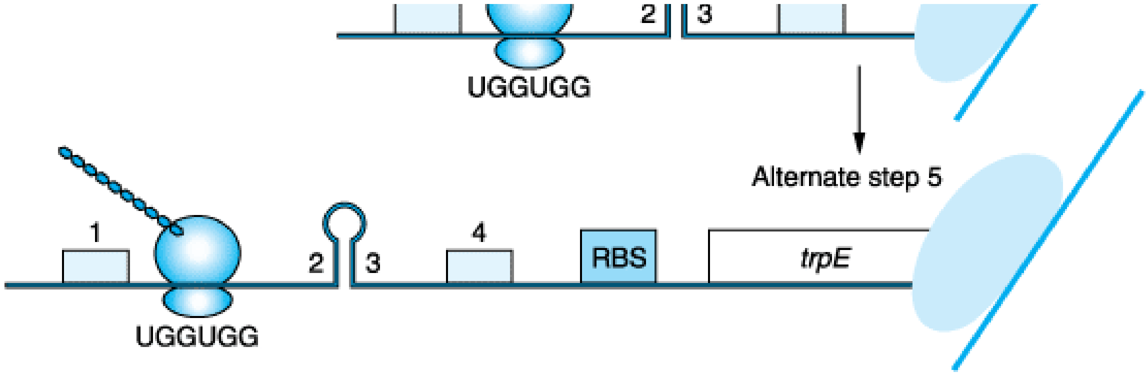
Specific proteins, the products of regulatory genes, govern expression of structural genes that encode enzymes. Transcription of DNA into mRNA begins at the promoter, the DNA sequence that binds RNA polymerase. The level of gene expression is determined in part by the ability of a promoter to bind the polymerase, and the intrinsic effectiveness of promoters differs widely. Further controls over gene expression are exerted by regulatory proteins that can bind to regions of DNA near promoters.

Some prokaryotic structural genes that encode a series of metabolic reactions are clustered in an operon. Such genes are expressed as a single mRNA transcript, and expression of the transcript may be governed by a single regulatory gene. For example, five genes associated with tryptophan biosynthesis are clustered in the *trp* operon of *E coli.* Gene expression is governed by attenuation, as described below, and is also controlled by repression: Binding of tryptophan by a repressor protein gives it a conformation that allows it to attach to the *trp* operator, a short DNA sequence that helps to regulate gene expression. Binding of the repressor protein to the operator prevents transcription of the *trp* genes. Repression can be viewed as a course control mechanism, an all or none approach to gene regulation. This form of control is independent of attenuation, a fine tuning mechanism which also is used to govern *trp* gene expression.

Attenuation is a regulatory mechanism of some biosynthetic pathways (eg, tryptophan biosynthetic pathway) that controls the efficiency of transcription after transcription has been initiated, but before mRNA synthesis of the operon's genes takes place, especially when the end product of the pathway is in short supply. For example, under normal growth conditions, most *trp* mRNA transcripts terminate before they reach the structural genes of the *trp* operon. However, during conditions of severe tryptophan starvation, the premature termination of transcription is abolished, allowing expression of the operon at 10-fold higher levels than under normal conditions. The explanation for this phenomenon resides in the 162 bp regulatory sequence in front of the *trp* structural genes (Figure 710) referred to as the leader sequence or *trpL* . The *trp* leader sequence can be transcribed into mRNA and subsequently translated into a 14 amino acid polypeptide with two adjacent tryptophan residues, a very rare occurrence. At the end of *trpL* , and upstream of the regulatory signals that control translation of the *trp* structural genes, is a Rho-independent terminator. The DNA sequence of this region suggests that the encoded mRNA has a high probability of forming stem loop secondary structures. These have been named the pause loop (1:2), the terminator loop (3:4), and the anti-terminator loop (2:3) (Figure 710). Attenuation of the *trp* operon uses the secondary structure of the mRNA to sense the amount of tryptophan in the cell (as trp-tRNA) according to the model shown in Figure 710.

Figure 710.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The predictions of the attenuation model. (Step 1) Coupled transcription/translation takes place as for any bacterial gene. (Step 2) RNA polymerase pauses and 1:2 stem loop forms. (Step 3) The ribosome disrupts the 1:2 stem loop and encounters the two *trp* codons. (Step 4) If enough tryptophan is present, charged trp-tRNAs will be present and the ribosomes will translate *trpL* . This causes the RNA polymerase to stop at the Rho-independent terminator composed of a 3:4 stem loop. (Alternate Step 4) If tryptophan is limiting (no trp-tRNA), the ribosome stalls at the two *trp* codons, while RNA polymerase continues. The 2:3 stem loop forms. (Alternate Step 5) The 3:4 terminator cannot form and the RNA polymerase continues transcribing into the *trp* structural genes. This exposes the ribosome binding site (RBS) upstream of *trpE* , allowing translation.

(Trun N, Trempy J: *Fundamental Bacterial Genetics* . Blackwell Science Ltd, 2004.)

Prevention of transcription by a repressor protein is called negative control. The opposite form of transcriptional regulationinitiation of transcription in response to binding of an activator protein is termed positive control. Both forms of control are exerted over expression of the *lac* operon, genes associated with fermentation of lactose in *E coli.* The operon contains three structural genes. Transport of lactose into the cell is mediated by the product of the *lacY* gene. Beta-galactosidase, the enzyme that hydrolyzes lactose to galactose and glucose, is encoded by the *lacZ* gene. The product of the third gene *(lacA)* is a transacetylase; the physiologic function of this enzyme has not been clearly elucidated.

As a by-product of its normal function, β-galactosidase produces allolactose, a structural isomer of lactose. Lactose itself does not influence regulation of transcription. This function is served by allolactose, which is the inducer of the *lac* operon because it is the metabolite that most directly elicits gene expression. In the absence of allolactose, the *lac* repressor, a product of the independently controlled *lacI* gene, exerts negative control over transcription of the *lac* operon by binding to the *lac* operator. In the presence of the inducer, the repressor is released from the operator, and transcription takes place.

Expression of the *lac* operon and many other operons for enzymes associated with fermentation is enhanced by the binding of cyclic AMP-binding protein (CAP) to a specific DNA sequence near the promoter for the regulated operon. The protein exerts positive control by enhancing RNA polymerase activity. The metabolite that triggers the positive control by binding to CAP is 3',5'-cyclic AMP (cAMP). This compound, formed in energy-deprived cells, acts through CAP to enhance expression of catabolic enzymes that give rise to metabolic energy.

Cyclic AMP is not alone in its ability to exert control over unlinked genes in *E coli.* A number of different genes respond to the nucleotide ppGpp (in which "p" denotes phosphodiester and "G" denotes guanine) as a signal of amino acid starvation, and unlinked genes are expressed as part of the SOS response to DNA damage. Yet another set of unlinked genes is called into play in response to heat shock. This response is found in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

Elucidation of prokaryotic systems of transcriptional control has proved to have both conceptual and technical value. The *lac* operon has provided a useful model for comparative studies of gene expression. For example, the phenomenon of repression, first clearly described for the *lac* operon, accounts for the lysogenic response to infection by a temperate phage such as λ. Thorough study of the *E coli lac* system has provided many genetic derivatives that are useful in genetic engineering. Insertion of foreign DNA into plasmids to form recombinant vectors is frequently monitored phenotypically by use of a color test to monitor insertional inactivation of the *lacY* gene, and the *lac* promoter is often used to achieve controlled expression of inserted genes.

GENETIC ENGINEERING

Engineering is the application of science to social needs. In recent years, engineering based on bacterial genetics has transformed biology. Specified DNA fragments can be isolated and amplified, and their genes can be expressed at high levels. The nucleotide specificity required for cleavage by restriction enzymes allows fragments containing genes or parts of genes to be covalently bound to plasmids ("vectors") that can then be inserted into bacterial hosts. Bacterial colonies or clones carrying specified genes can be identified by hybridization of DNA or RNA with chemical or radiochemical probes. Alternatively, protein products encoded by the genes can be recognized either by enzyme activity or by immunologic techniques. The latter procedures have been greatly enhanced by the remarkable selectivity with which monoclonal antibodies (see Chapter 8) bind to specific antigenic determinants in proteins. Thus, genetic engineering techniques can be used to isolate virtually any gene with a biochemically recognizable property.

Isolated genes can be used for a variety of purposes. Site-directed mutagenesis can identify and alter the DNA sequence of a gene. Nucleotide residues essential for gene function can thus be determined and, if desired, altered. With hybridization techniques, DNA can be used as a probe that recognizes nucleic acids corresponding to the complementary sequence of its own DNA. For example, a latent virus in animal tissue can be detected with a DNA probe even in the absence of viral activity. The protein products of isolated viral genes offer great promise as vaccines because they can be prepared without genes that encode the replication of viral nucleic acid. Moreover, proteins such as insulin that have useful functions can be prepared in large quantities from bacteria that express cloned genes.

PREPARATION OF DNA FRAGMENTS WITH RESTRICTION ENZYMES

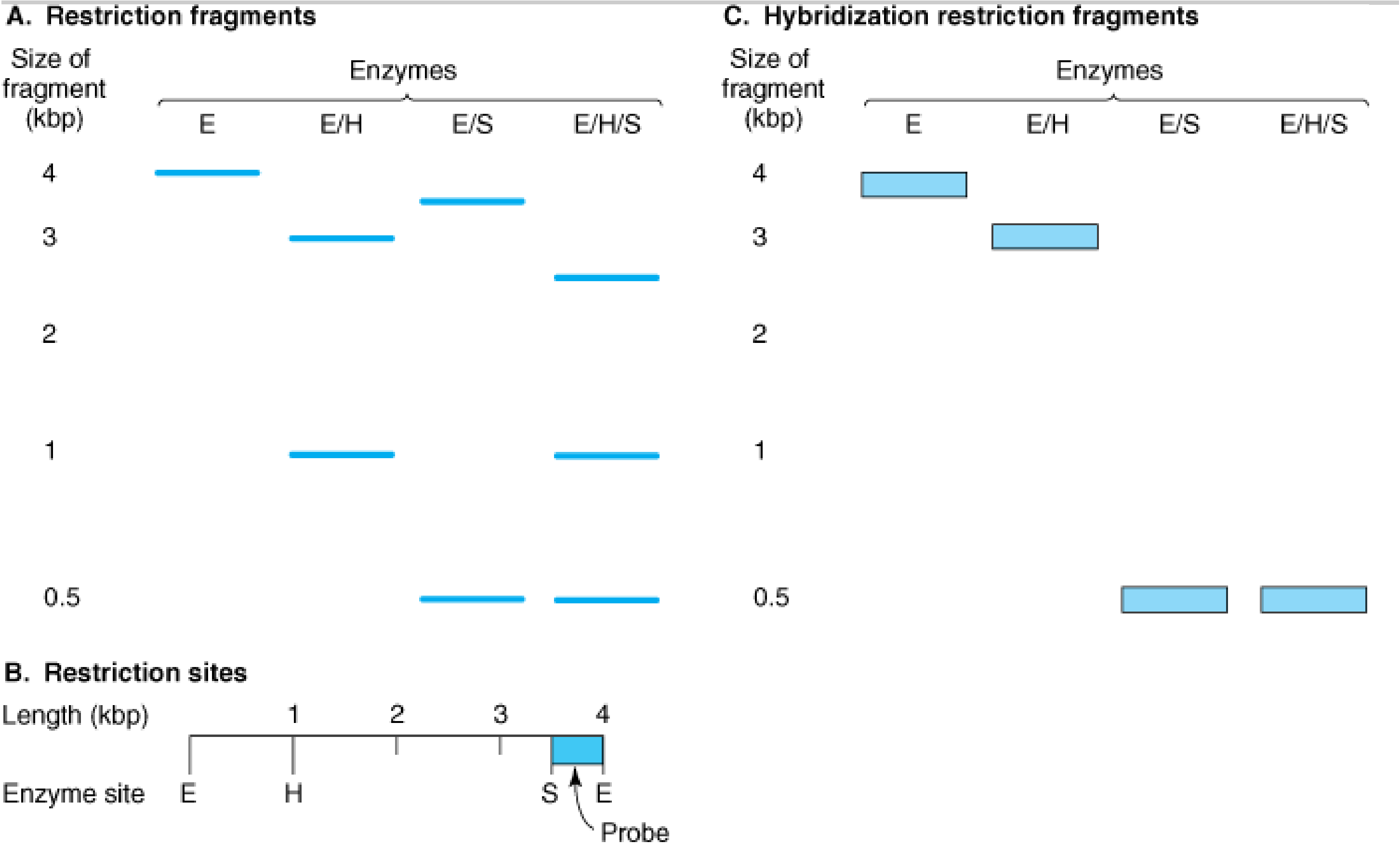
The genetic diversity of bacteria is reflected in their remarkable range of restriction enzymes, which possess remarkable selectivity that allows them to recognize specific regions of DNA for cleavage. DNA sequences recognized by restriction enzymes are predominantly palindromes (inverted sequence repetitions). A typical sequence palindrome, recognized by the frequently used restriction enzyme *Eco* R1, is GAATTC; the inverted repetition, inherent in the complementarity of the G-C and A-T base pairs, results in the 5' sequence TTC being reflected as AAG in the 3' strand.

The length of DNA fragments produced by restriction enzymes varies tremendously because of the individuality of DNA sequences. The average length of the DNA fragment is determined in large part by the number of specific bases recognized by an enzyme. Most restriction enzymes recognize four, six, or eight base sequences; however, other restriction enzymes recognize 10, 11, 12, or 15 base sequences. Recognition of four bases yields fragments with an average length of 250 base pairs and therefore is generally useful for analysis or manipulation of gene fragments. Complete genes are frequently encompassed by restriction enzymes that recognize six bases and produce fragments with an average size of about 4000 base pairs. Restriction enzymes that recognize eight bases produce fragments with a typical size of 64,000 base pairs and are useful for analysis of large genetic regions. Restriction enzymes that recognize more than ten bases are useful for construction of a physical map and for molecular typing by pulse-field gel electrophoresis.

PHYSICAL SEPARATION OF DIFFERENTLY SIZED DNA FRAGMENTS

Much of the simplicity underlying genetic engineering techniques lies in the fact that gel electrophoresis permits DNA fragments to be separated on the basis of size (Figure 711A): The smaller the fragment, the more rapid the rate of migration. Overall rate of migration and optimal range of size for separation are determined by the chemical nature of the gel and by the degree of its cross-linking. Highly cross-linked gels optimize the separation of small DNA fragments. The dye ethidium bromide forms a brightly fluorescent adduct as it binds to DNA, so that small amounts of separated DNA fragments can be photographed on gels (Figure 711). Specific DNA fragments can be recognized by probes containing complementary sequences (Figures 711B and 711C).

Figure 711.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: Separation of DNA fragments on the basis of size by electrophoresis through a gel. Smaller fragments migrate more rapidly than large fragments, and, over a range determined by the properties of the gel, the distance migrated is roughly proportionate to the logarithm of the size of the fragment. DNA fragments can be visualized on the basis of their fluorescence after staining with a dye. B: The size of restriction fragments is determined by the location of restriction sites within the DNA. In this example, a 4.0-kbp (kilobase pair) fragment formed by restriction enzyme *Eco* R1 (E) contains respective sites for restriction enzymes *Hin* dIII (H) and *Sal* I (S) at positions corresponding to 1.0 and 3.5 kbp. The electrophoretic pattern in A reveals that restriction enzyme E does not cut the 4.0-kbp fragment (first lane); cleavage with restriction enzyme H produces fragments of 3.0 and 1.0 kbp (second lane); cleavage with restriction enzyme S yields fragments of 3.5 and 0.5 kbp (third lane); and cleavage with both H and S forms fragments of 2.5, 1.0, and 0.5 kbp (fourth lane). The 0.5-kbp fragment lying between the S and E sites was selected as a probe to determine DNA with hybridizing sequences as shown in C. C: Identification of hybridizing fragments. Restriction fragments were separated as in A. The hybridization procedure reveals those fragments that hybridized with the 0.5-kbp probe. These are the 4.0-kbp fragment formed by restriction enzyme E, the 3.0-kbp fragment lying between the E and H sites, and the 0.5-kbp fragment lying between the S and H sites.

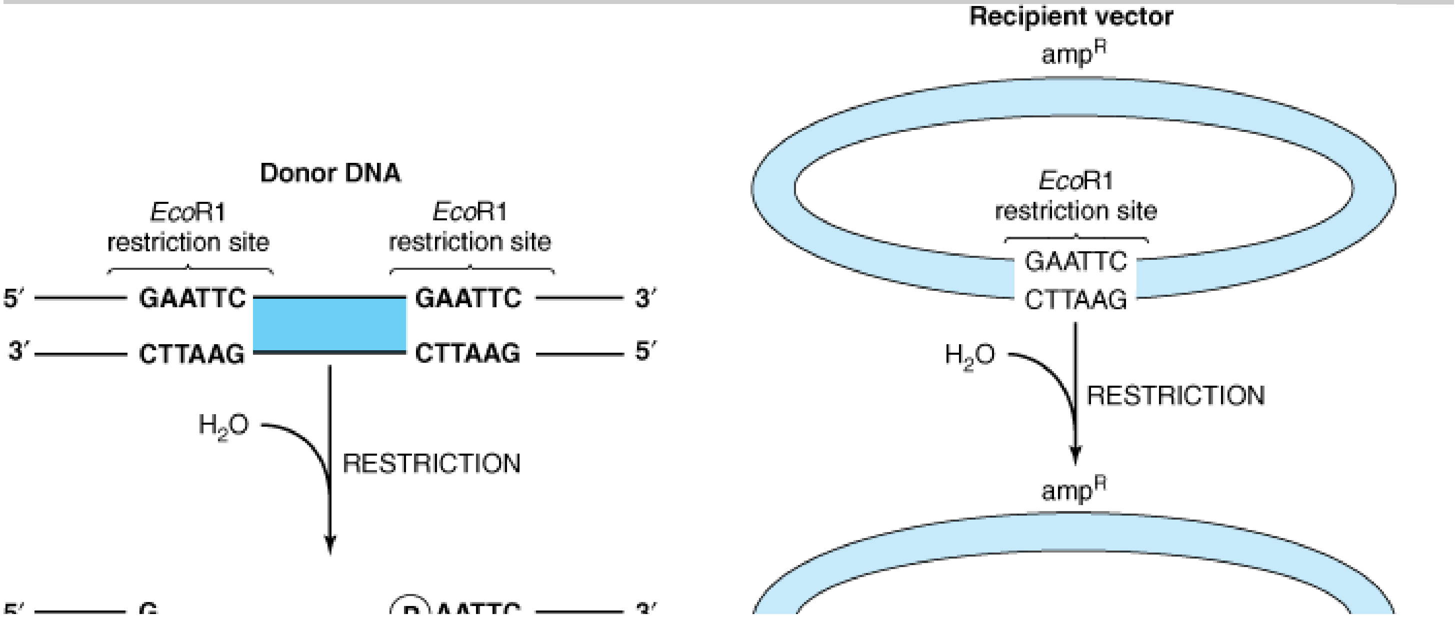
Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis allows the separation of DNA fragments containing up to 100,000 base pairs (100 kilobase pairs [kbp]). Characterization of such large fragments has allowed construction of a physical map for the chromosomes from several bacterial species.

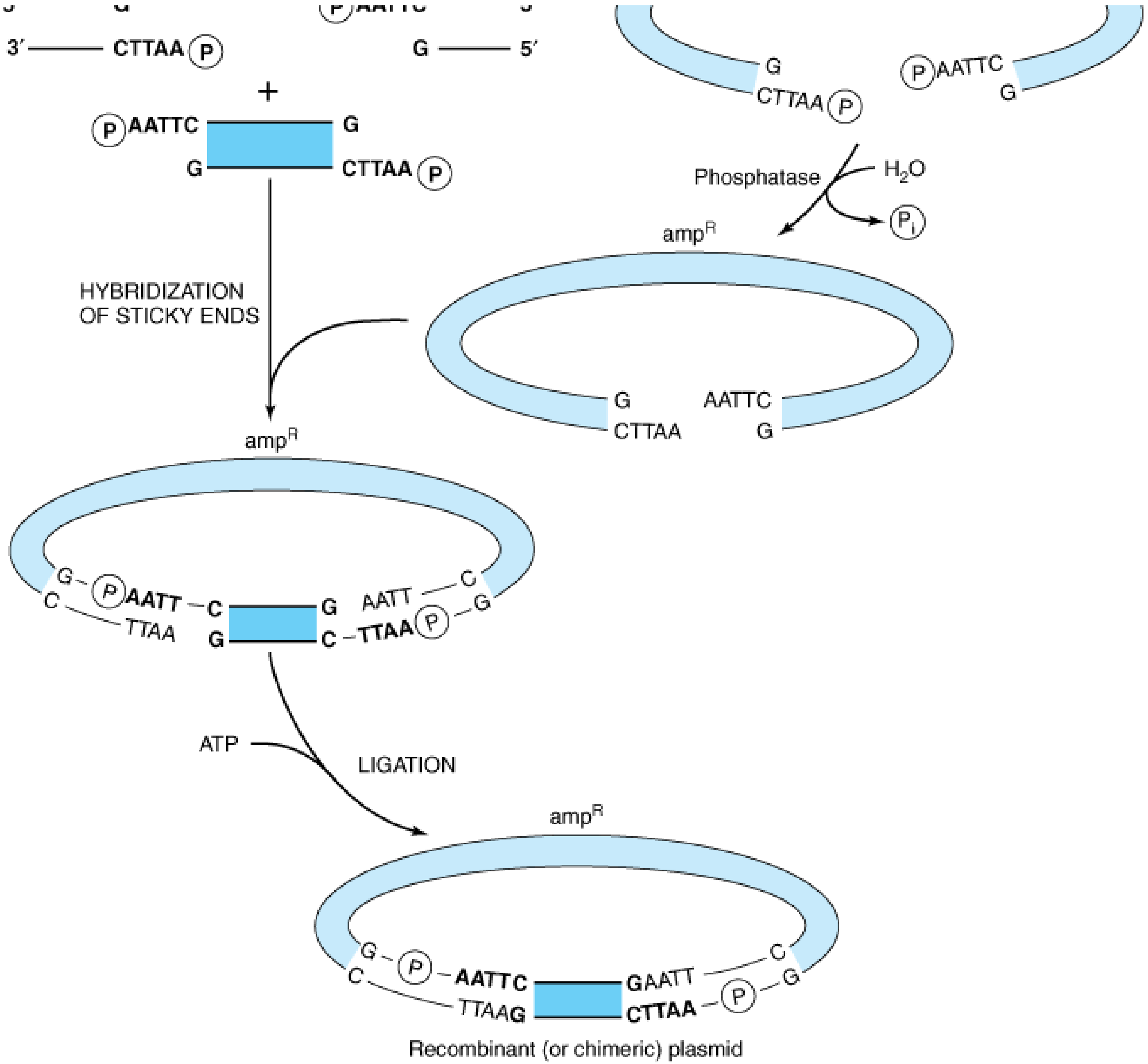
CLONING OF DNA RESTRICTION FRAGMENTS

Overview

Many restriction enzymes cleave asymmetrically and produce DNA fragments with cohesive (sticky) ends that may hybridize with one another. This DNA can be used as a donor with plasmid recipients to form genetically engineered recombinant plasmids. For example, cleavage of DNA with *Eco* R1 produces DNA containing the 5' tail sequence AATT and the complementary 3' tail sequence TTAA (Figure 712). Cleavage of a plasmid (a circular piece of DNA) with the same restriction enzyme produces a linear fragment with cohesive ends that are identical to one another. Enzymatic removal of the free phosphate groups from these ends ensures that they will not be ligated to form the original circular plasmid (Figure 712). Ligation in the presence of other DNA fragments containing free phosphate groups produces recombinant plasmids, or chimeric plasmids, which contain DNA fragments as inserts in covalently closed circular DNA (Figure 712). Plasmids must be in a circular form in order to replicate in a bacterial host.

Figure 712.





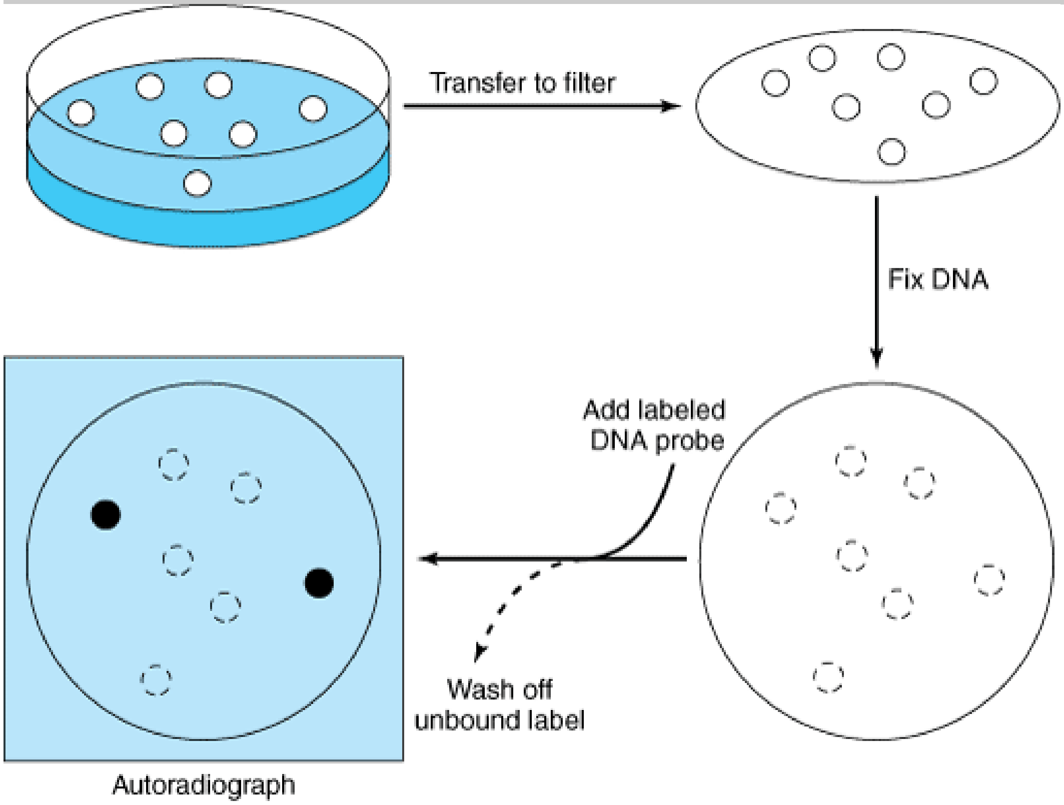
Recombinant (or chimeric) plasmid

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Formation of a recombinant, or chimeric, plasmid from donor DNA and a recipient vector. The vector, a plasmid which carries an *Eco* R1 restriction site, is cleaved by the enzyme and prepared for ligation by removal of the terminal phosphate groups. This step prevents the sticky ends of the plasmid from being ligated in the absence of an insert. The donor DNA is treated with the same restriction enzyme, and covalently bound circles are formed by ligation. A drug resistance marker, shown as amp^R on the plasmid, can be used to select the recombinant plasmids after their transformation into *E coli* . Enzymes of the host bacterium complete covalent bonding of the circular DNA and mediate its replication.

Recombinant plasmids may be introduced into a bacterial host, frequently *E coli,* by transformation. Transformed cells may be selected on the basis of one or more drug resistance factors encoded by plasmid genes (Figure 712). The resulting bacterial population contains a library of recombinant plasmids carrying various cloned inserted restriction fragments derived from the donor DNA. Hybridization techniques may be used to identify bacterial colonies carrying specific DNA fragments or, if the plasmid expresses the inserted gene, colonies can be screened for the gene product (Figure 713).

Figure 713.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Use of probes to identify clones containing a specific fragment of DNA. Colonies may be transferred to a filter and baked so that the cells lyse and the DNA adheres to the filter. The filter can then be treated with a solution containing a suitably labeled DNA probe, which specifically hybridizes to the desired clones. Subsequent autoradiography of the filter identifies these clones (dark circles). Alternatively, the clones may be probed with antibodies to determine if they have synthesized a specific protein product.

Electroporation is a recently developed procedure for introduction of DNA into bacteria. The procedure gives rise to the possibility that diverse bacteria may be used as hosts for engineered genes.

CHARACTERIZATION OF CLONED DNA

Restriction Mapping

Manipulation of cloned DNA requires an understanding of its structure. Preparation of a restriction map is the first step in gaining this understanding. A restriction map is constructed much like a jigsaw puzzle from fragment sizes produced by single digests, which are prepared with individual restriction enzymes, and by double digests, which are formed with pairs of restriction enzymes (Figure 711). Restriction maps are also the initial step toward DNA sequencing, because they identify fragments that will provide subclones (relatively small fragments of DNA) that may be subjected to more rigorous analysis, which may involve DNA sequencing. In addition, restriction maps provide a highly specific information base that allows DNA fragments, identified on the basis of size, to be associated with specific gene functions.

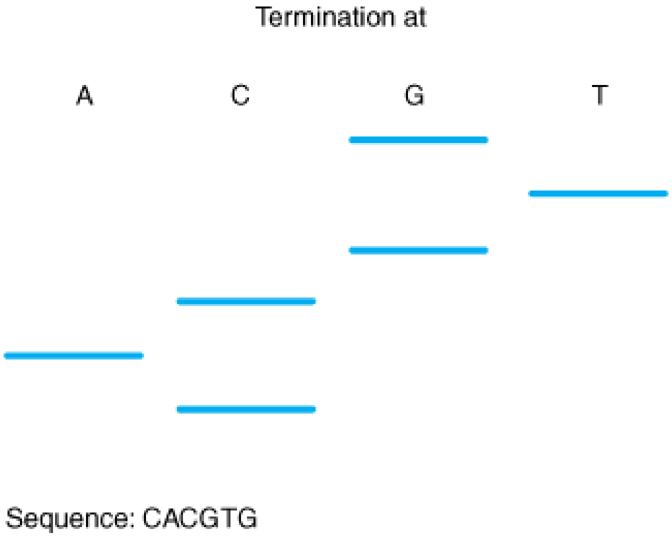
Sequencing

DNA sequencing displays gene structure and enables researchers to deduce the structure of gene products. In turn, this information makes it possible to manipulate genes in order to understand or alter their function. In addition, DNA sequence analysis reveals regulatory regions that control gene expression and genetic "hot spots" particularly susceptible to mutation. Comparison of DNA sequences reveals evolutionary relationships that provide a framework for unambiguous classification of organisms and viruses. Such comparisons may facilitate identification of conserved regions that may prove particularly useful as specific hybridization probes to detect the organisms or viruses in clinical samples.

The two generally employed methods of DNA sequence determination are the Maxam-Gilbert technique, which relies on the relative chemical liability of different nucleotide bonds, and the Sanger (dideoxy termination) method, which interrupts elongation of DNA sequences by incorporating dideoxynucleotides into the sequences.

Both techniques produce a nested set of oligonucleotides starting from a single origin and entail separation on a sequencing gel of DNA strands that differ by the increment of a single nucleotide. A sequencing gel separates strands that differ in length from one to several hundred nucleotides and reveals DNA sequences of varying lengths. A sequence is displayed by running similar reaction mixes in four parallel lanes, each of which exposes a specified nucleotide in the overall sequence (Figure 714). For example, terminating elongation by incorporating 2',3'-deoxyadenine-5'-phosphate reveals the relative length of a strand containing adenine at the terminated position. A series of such strands, each terminated at a different position, are created by including some of the dideoxynucleotide in a DNA polymerase reaction mixture.

Figure 714.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Determination of a DNA sequence by the Sanger (dideoxy termination) method. Enzymatic elongation of DNA is interrupted by inclusion of dideoxy analogs of the trinucleotides corresponding to A, C, G, and T separately in parallel reaction mixes. The resulting sets of interrupted elongated strands are separated on a sequencing gel, and the sequence can be deduced by noting the base corresponding to each increment of chain length. The sequencing gel is read from the bottom up; each band corresponds to an increase of one base.

Four parallel lanes on the same gel reveal the relative length of strands undergoing dideoxy termination at adenine, cytidine, guanidine, and thymidine. Comparison of four lanes containing reaction mixes that differ solely in the method of chain termination makes it possible to determine DNA sequence by the Sanger method (Figure 714).

The relative simplicity of the Sanger method has led to its more general use, but the Maxam-Gilbert technique is widely employed because it can expose regions of DNA that are protected by specific binding proteins against chemical modification.

DNA sequencing is greatly facilitated by genetic manipulation of *E coli* bacteriophage M13, which contains single-stranded DNA. The replicative form of the phage DNA is a covalently closed circle of double-stranded DNA that has been engineered so that it contains a multiple cloning site that permits integration of specific DNA fragments that have been previously identified by restriction mapping. Bacteria infected with the replicative form secrete modified phages containing, within their protein coat, single-stranded DNA that includes the inserted sequence. This DNA serves as the template for elongation reactions. The origin for elongation is determined by a DNA primer, which can be synthesized by highly automated machines for chemical oligonucleotide synthesis. Such machines, which can produce DNA strands containing 75 or more oligonucleotides in a predetermined sequence, are extremely useful in sequencing and in the modification of DNA by site-directed mutagenesis.

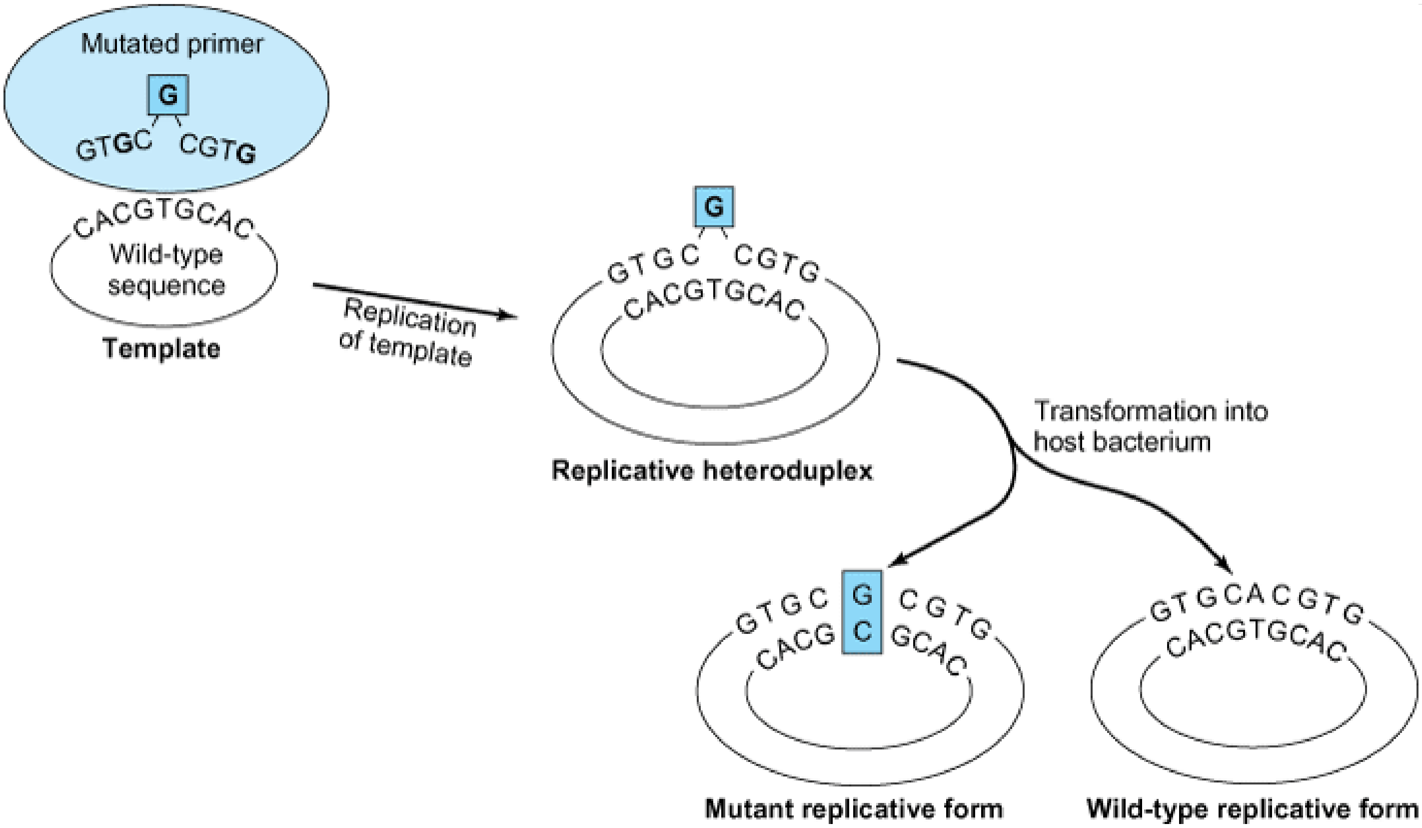
Chemically synthesized oligonucleotides can serve as primers for the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), a procedure that allows amplification and sequencing of DNA lying between the primers. Thus, in many instances, DNA need not be cloned in order to be sequenced or to be made available for engineering.

The study of biology has been revolutionized by the development of technology that allows sequencing and analysis of entire genomes ranging from viruses to unicellular prokaryotic and eukaryotic microorganisms to humans. This has been facilitated by use of the procedure known as shotgunning. In this procedure, the DNA is broken into random smaller fragments to create a random fragment library. These unordered fragments are sequenced by automated DNA sequencers and reassembled in the correct order using powerful computer software. A sufficient number of fragments is sequenced to ensure adequate coverage of the genome so that when they are assembled, most of the genome is represented without leaving too many gaps. (To achieve this, the entire genome is usually covered fivefold to eightfold, leaving about 0.1% of the total DNA unsequenced.) After the random fragments have been assembled by areas of overlapping sequence, any remaining gaps can be identified and closed. Sophisticated data processing permits annotation of the sequence data in which putative coding regions, operons, and regulatory sequences are identified. Already, the genomes of a number of important microorganisms have been sequenced (Table 71). The continued analysis of sequence data from important human pathogens combined with studies on molecular pathogenesis will facilitate our understanding of how these organisms cause disease and, ultimately, will lead to better vaccines and therapeutic strategies.

SITE-DIRECTED MUTAGENESIS

Chemical synthesis of oligonucleotides enables researchers to perform controlled introduction of base substitutions into a DNA sequence. The specified substitution may be used to explore the effect of a predesigned mutation on gene expression, to examine the contribution of a substituted amino acid to protein function, oron the basis of prior information about residues essential for functionto inactivate a gene. Single-stranded oligonucleotides containing the specified mutation are synthesized chemically and hybridized to single-stranded bacteriophage DNA, which carries the wild-type sequence as an insert (Figure 715). The resulting partially double-stranded DNA is enzymatically converted to the fully double-stranded replicative form. This DNA, which contains the wild-type sequence on one strand and the mutant sequence on the other, is used to infect a bacterial host by transformation. Replication results in segregation of wild-type and mutant DNA, and the double-stranded mutant gene can be isolated and subsequently cloned from the replicative form of the phage.

Figure 715.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

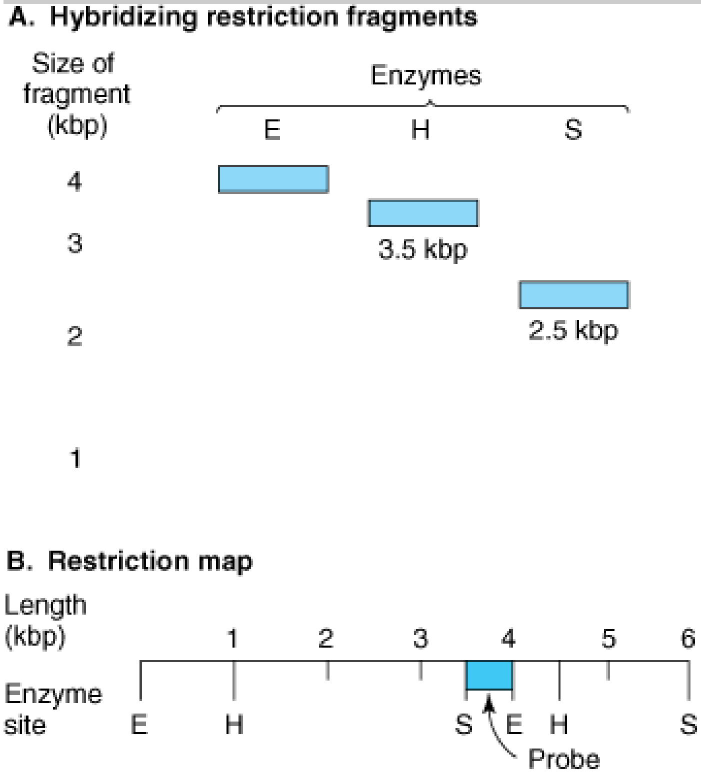
Site-directed mutagenesis. A chemically synthesized primer containing mutation G (in box) is hybridized to a wild-type sequence inserted in DNA from a single-stranded phage. Polymerization reactions are used to form the double-stranded heteroduplex carrying the mutation on one strand. Introduction of the heteroduplex into a host bacterium followed by segregation produces derivation strains carrying replicative forms with either the wild-type insert or an insert that has acquired the chemically designed mutation.

Chemical oligonucleotide synthesis permits formation of synthetic genes containing widely distributed restriction sites that allow modular substitution of DNA sequences that encode for mutant proteins. Multiple mutations can thus be readily introduced. In principle, a desired property (such as antigenicity) can be retained, while an undesirable property (such as toxicity) can be eliminated.

ANALYSIS WITH CLONED DNA: HYBRIDIZATION PROBES

Hybridization probes are used routinely in the cloning of DNA. The amino acid sequence of a protein can be used to deduce the DNA sequence from which a probe may be constructed and employed to detect a bacterial colony containing the cloned gene. Complementary DNA, or cDNA, encoded by mRNA, can be used to detect the gene that encoded that mRNA. Hybridization of DNA to RNA by Northern blots can provide quantitative information about RNA synthesis. Specific DNA sequences in restriction fragments separated on gels can be revealed by Southern blots, a method that uses hybridization of DNA to DNA. These blots can be used to detect overlapping restriction fragments. Cloning of these fragments makes it possible to isolate flanking regions of DNA by a technique known as chromosomal walking (Figure 716). With Western blots, another frequently employed detection technique, antibodies are used to detect cloned genes by binding to their protein products.

Figure 716.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Use of hybridization to identify DNA flanking a probe from a cloned fragment of DNA. The DNA fragment and the 0.5-kbp (kilobase pair) probe produced by restriction enzymes S and E were described in Figure 711. Here we note respective sites for H at 4.5 kbp and S at 6.0 kbp in the restriction map (B). The presence of these sites can be deduced from the appearance of a 3.5-kbp hybridizing H fragment and a 2.5-kbp hybridizing S fragment after electrophoresis of restricted chromosomal DNA (A). Purification of fragments of this size, followed by cloning and screening with the probe, should yield a flanking region ranging from 4 kbp to 6 kbp on the restriction map.

Probes can be used in a broad range of analytic procedures. Some regions of human DNA exhibit substantial variability in the distribution of restriction sites. This variability is termed restriction fragment length polymorphism, or RFLP. Oligonucleotide probes that hybridize with RFLP DNA fragments can be used to trace DNA from a small sample to its human donor. Thus, the technique is valuable to forensic science. Applications of RFLP to medicine include identification of genetic regions that are closely linked to human genes with dysfunctions coupled to genetic disease. This information will be a valuable aid in genetic counseling.

DNA probes offer the promise of techniques for rapidly identifying fastidious organisms in clinical specimens that are difficult to grow in a microbiology laboratory. Furthermore, extensions of the technique afford opportunities to identify pathogenic agents rapidly and directly in infected tissue. Kits for identification of some specific pathogens (eg, *Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) are commercially available.

Application of diagnostic DNA probes requires an appreciation of (1) the probes themselves, (2) systems used to detect the probes, (3) targets (the DNA to which the probes hybridize), and (4) the conditions of hybridization. Probes may be relatively large restriction fragments derived from cloned DNA or oligonucleotides corresponding to a specific region of DNA. Larger probes may provide greater accuracy because they are less sensitive to single base changes in target DNA. On the other hand, hybridization reactions occur more rapidly with small probes, and they can be designed against conserved regions of DNA in which base substitutions are unlikely to have occurred. Amplification of a target by PCR followed by a detection of the amplified product after hybridization to a probe has proved more sensitive than direct detection methods.

Recently, significant improvements have occurred in molecular diagnostic testing methods, especially those that incorporate nucleic acid amplification technologies such as PCR. Several commercial instruments have become available that combine PCR amplification of target DNA with detection of amplicons in the same closed vessel. This technology has been referred to as real-time PCR, implying that PCR amplicons can be detected in real time. In actuality, "real time" refers to the detection of amplicons after each PCR cycle. Probe detection formats involve detecting fluorophores. Results are semi-quantitative and can be obtained in considerably less time than it takes to perform a conventional PCR assay.

MANIPULATION OF CLONED DNA

Genetic engineering techniques permit separation and entirely independent expression of genes associated with pathogens. Vaccines prepared with engineered genes afford previously unattainable measures of safety. For example, a vaccine might be prepared against a viral coat protein that was produced in the absence of any genes associated with replicative viral functions; inoculation with such a vaccine would therefore entail no risk of introducing functional virus. Potential difficulties in the development of such vaccines stem from the ease with which viral mutations may produce genetic variants that are not recognized by the immune defense system of a vaccinated individual. Ultimately, vaccines may contain a range of proteins that anticipate the genetic response of pathogens.

RECOMBINANT STRAINS IN THE ENVIRONMENT

Major scientific advances have sometimes elicited adverse public reactions, so it is prudent to consider the potential consequences of genetic engineering. Of most immediate concern are known pathogens that have undergone relatively slight genetic modification. These have been and should be investigated in laboratories specially designed to contain them. The need for containment diminishes after genes for specific functions, such as protein coats, are separated from genes associated with replication or toxicity of a pathogen. For the most part, standard precautions associated with microbiology laboratories should be observed, if for no other reason than they foster habits that are valuable if a potential pathogen enters the laboratory.

Interesting exceptions to this general rule are engineered organisms that may provide a social benefit if introduced into the environment. Many such organisms derive from nonpathogenic bacteria that occur naturally with a frequency as high as 10^5 /g of soil. The available evidence suggests that predation and competition rapidly eliminate engineered bacterial strains after they are introduced into the environment. The primary challenge would thus seem to be to maintain engineered organisms in the environment rather than to eliminate them.

The best known example of engineered organisms are *Pseudomonas* strains that produce a protein that favors formation of ice crystals. The value of these wild-type organisms is appreciated by ski slope owners, who have deliberately introduced the bacteria into the environment without arousing any public concern. An unfortunate side effect of the introduction of these organisms is that the ice crystals they promote can injure sensitive crops such as lettuce during seasons in which light frost is likely. Mutant bacteria that do not form ice crystals were designed by microbiologists who hoped that the mutant organisms might protect lettuce crops by temporarily occupying the niche normally inhabited by the ice-forming strains; however, attempts to use the mutant organisms in field studies were met with substantial protest, and studies were conducted only after lengthy and expensive legal delays. Perhaps legal precedents emerging from this and related cases will establish guidelines for the progressive and beneficial use of genetic engineering techniques and facilitate determination of situations in which extreme caution is justified.

REFERENCES

Books

Alberts B et al: *Molecular Biology of the Cell,* 4th ed. Garland, 2002.

Ausubel FM et al: *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology.* Wiley, 1987.

Bushman F: *Lateral DNA Transfer. Mechanisms and Consequences.* Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2002.

Charlebois RL (editor): *Organization of the Prokaryotic Genome.* American Society for Microbiology, 1999.

Drlica K, Riley M (editors): *The Bacterial Chromosome.* American Society for Microbiology, 1990.

Fraser CM, Read TD, Nelson KE (editors): *Microbial Genomes* . Humana Press, 2004.

Kornberg A, Baker T: *DNA Replication,* 2nd ed. Freeman, 1992.

Lengler JW, Drews G, Schlegel HG (editors): *Biology of the Prokaryotes.* Blackwell Science, 1999.

Ptashne M: *A Genetic Switch: Phage Lambda and Higher Organisms,* 2nd ed. Blackwell, 1992.

Reischl U, Witter C, Cockerill F (editors): *Rapid Cycle Real-time PCRMethods and Applications* . Springer, 2001.

Sambrook J, Russell NO: *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual,* 3rd ed. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 2001.

Singleton P, Sainsbury D: *A Dictionary of Microbiology and Molecular Biology,* 3rd ed. Wiley, 2002.

Snyder L, Champness W: *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria.* ASM Press, 1997.

Trun N, Trempy J: *Fundamental Bacterial Genetics* . Blackwell Science Ltd, 2004.

Articles & Reviews

Condon C: RNA processing and degradation in *Bacillus subtilis.* Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2003;67:157. [PMID: 12794188]

Grohmann E, Muuth G, Espinosa M: Conjugative plasmid transfer in gram-positive bacteria. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2003;67:277. [PMID: 12794193]

Koonin EV, Makarova KS, Aravind L: Horizontal gene transfer in prokaryotes: Quantification and classification. Annu Rev Microbiol 2001;55:709. [PMID: 11544372]

Liebert CA, Hall RM, Summers AO: Transposon Tn*21,* flagship of the floating genome. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1999;63:507. [PMID: 10477306]

Murray NE: Type I restriction systems: Sophisticated molecular machines (a legacy of Bertani and Weigle). Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2000;64:412. [PMID: 10839821]

Rawlings DE, Tietze E: Comparative biology of IncQ and IncQ-like plasmids. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2001;65:481. [PMID: 11729261]

Rhodius V et al: Impact of genomic technologies on studies of bacterial gene expression. Annu Rev Microbiol 2002;56:599. [PMID: 12142487]

Riley MA, Wertz JE: Bacteriocins: Evolution, ecology, and application. Annu Rev Microbiol 2002;56:117. [PMID: 12142491]

van Belkum A et al: Short-sequence DNA repeats in prokaryotic genomes. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1998;62:275.

GLOSSARY[1]

Adhesion molecules: For example, the integrins and selectins. These are molecules that mediate the binding of cells to other cells or to extracellular matrix molecules such as fibronectin.

Alleles: Variants of a single genetic locus.

Anaphylatoxins: Fragments of complement proteins released during activation. Result in increased vascular permeability and attract leukocytes.

Antibody (Ab): A protein produced as a result of interaction with an antigen. The protein has the ability to combine with the antigen that stimulated its production.

Antigen (Ag): A substance that can react with an antibody. Not all antigens can induce antibody production; those that can are also called immunogens.

B cell (also B lymphocyte): Strictly, a bursa-derived cell in avian species and, by analogy, a cell derived from the equivalent of the bursa in nonavian species. B cells are the precursors of plasma cells that produce antibody.

Cell-mediated (cellular) immunity: Immunity in which the participation of lymphocytes and macrophages is predominant. Cell-mediated immunity is a term generally applied to the type IV hypersensitivity reaction (see below).

Chemokines: Low-molecular-weight proteins that stimulate leukocyte movement.

Chemotaxis: A process whereby phagocytic cells are attracted to the vicinity of invading pathogens.

Complement: A set of plasma proteins that is the primary mediator of antigen-antibody reactions.

Cytolysis: The lysis of bacteria or of cells such as tumor or red blood cells by insertion of the membrane attack complex derived from complement activation.

Cytotoxic T cell: T cells that can kill other cells, eg, cells infected with intracellular pathogens.

Endotoxins: Bacterial toxins released from damaged cells.

Epitope: Site on an antigen recognized by an antibody. Also known as an antigenic determinant.

Hapten: A molecule that is not immunogenic by itself but can react with specific antibody.

Histocompatible: Sharing transplantation antigens.

Humoral immunity: Pertaining to immunity in a body fluid and used to denote immunity mediated by antibody and complement.

Hypersensitivity reactions:

(1) Antibody-mediated hypersensitivity:

Type I. Immediate: IgE antibody is induced by allergen and binds via its Fc receptor to mast cells and eosinophils. After encountering the antigen again, the fixed IgE becomes cross-linked, inducing degranulation and release of mediators, especially histamine.

Type II. Antigens on a cell surface combine with antibody, which leads to complement-mediated lysis (eg, transfusion or Rh reactions) or other cytotoxic membrane damage (eg, autoimmune hemolytic anemia).

Type III. Immune complex: Antigen-antibody immune complexes are deposited in tissues, complement is activated, and polymorphonuclear cells are attracted to the site, causing tissue damage.

(2) Cell-mediated hypersensitivity:

Type IV. Delayed: T lymphocytes, sensitized by an antigen, release cytokines upon second contact with the same antigen. The cytokines induce inflammation and activate macrophages.

Immune response: Development of resistance (immunity) to a foreign substance (eg, infectious agent). It can be antibody-mediated (humoral), cell-mediated (cellular), or both.

Immunity:

(1) Innate immunity: Nonspecific resistance not acquired through contact with an antigen. It includes skin and mucous membrane barriers to infectious agents and a variety of nonspecific immunologic factors, and it may vary with age and hormonal or metabolic activity.

(2) Adaptive immunity: Protection acquired by deliberate introduction of an antigen into a responsive host. Active immunity is specific and is mediated by either antibody or lymphoid cells (or both).

Immunoglobulin: A glycoprotein, composed of H and L chains, that functions as antibody. All antibodies are immunoglobulins, but not all immunoglobulins have antibody function.

Immunoglobulin class: A subdivision of immunoglobulin molecules based on structural (amino acid sequence) differences. In humans there are five immunoglobulin classes: IgG, IgM, IgA, IgE, and IgD.

Immunoglobulin subclass: A subdivision of the classes of immunoglobulins based on structural differences in the H chains. For human IgG there are four subclasses: IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4.

Inflammation: Local accumulation of fluid and cells after injury or infection.

Interferon: One of a heterogeneous group of low-molecular-weight proteins elaborated by infected host cells that protect noninfected cells from viral infection. Interferons, which are cytokines, also have immunomodulating functions.

Leukocyte: General term for a white cell.

Lymphocyte: A mononuclear cell 712 μm in diameter containing a nucleus with densely packed chromatin and a small rim of cytoplasm. Lymphocytes include the T cells and B cells, which have primary roles in immunity.

Macrophage: A phagocytic mononuclear cell derived from bone marrow monocytes and found in tissues and at the site of inflammation. Macrophages serve accessory roles in immunity, particularly as antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

Major histocompatibility complex (MHC): A cluster of genes located in close proximity, eg, on human chromosome 6, that encode the histocompatibility antigens (MHC molecules).

Membrane attack complex: The end product of activation of the complement cascade, which contains C5, C6, C7, and C8 (and C9). The membrane attack complex makes holes in the membranes of gram-negative bacteria, killing them and, in red blood or other cells, resulting in lysis.

Monoclonal antibodies: Each B lymphocyte produces antibody of a single specificity. However, normal B cells do not grow indefinitely. If B cells are fused to a myeloma cell by somatic cell hybridization and fused cells that secrete the desired antibody specificity are selected, an immortalized antibody-producing cell line, known as a hybridoma, is obtained, and these hybrid cells produce monoclonal antibodies.

Monocyte: A circulating phagocytic blood cell that develops into tissue macrophages.

Natural killer (NK) cells: Large granular lymphoid cells with no known antigen-specific receptors. They are able to recognize and kill certain abnormal cells, eg, tumor cells, and also activate the innate response.

Opsonin: A substance capable of enhancing phagocytosis. Antibodies and complement are the two main opsonins.

Opsonization: The coating of an antigen or particle (eg, infectious agent) by substances, such as antibodies, complement components, fibronectin, and so forth, that facilitate uptake of the foreign particle into a phagocytic cell.

Plasma cell: A terminally differentiated B cell that secretes antibody.

Polymorphonuclear cell (PMN): Also known as a neutrophil or granulocyte, a PMN is characterized by a multilobed nucleus. PMNs migrate from the circulation to a site of inflammation by chemotaxis and are phagocytic for bacteria and other particles.

T cell (also T lymphocyte): A thymus-derived cell that participates in a variety of cell-mediated immune reactions.

Thymocytes: Developing T cells found in the thymus.

Vaccination: Induction of immunity by injecting a dead or attenuated form of a pathogen.

[1] Modified and reproduced, with permission, from Stites DP, Stobo JD, Wells JV (editors): *Basic & Clinical Immunology* , 6th ed. Originally published by Appleton & Lange. Copyright 1987 by the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

INTRODUCTION

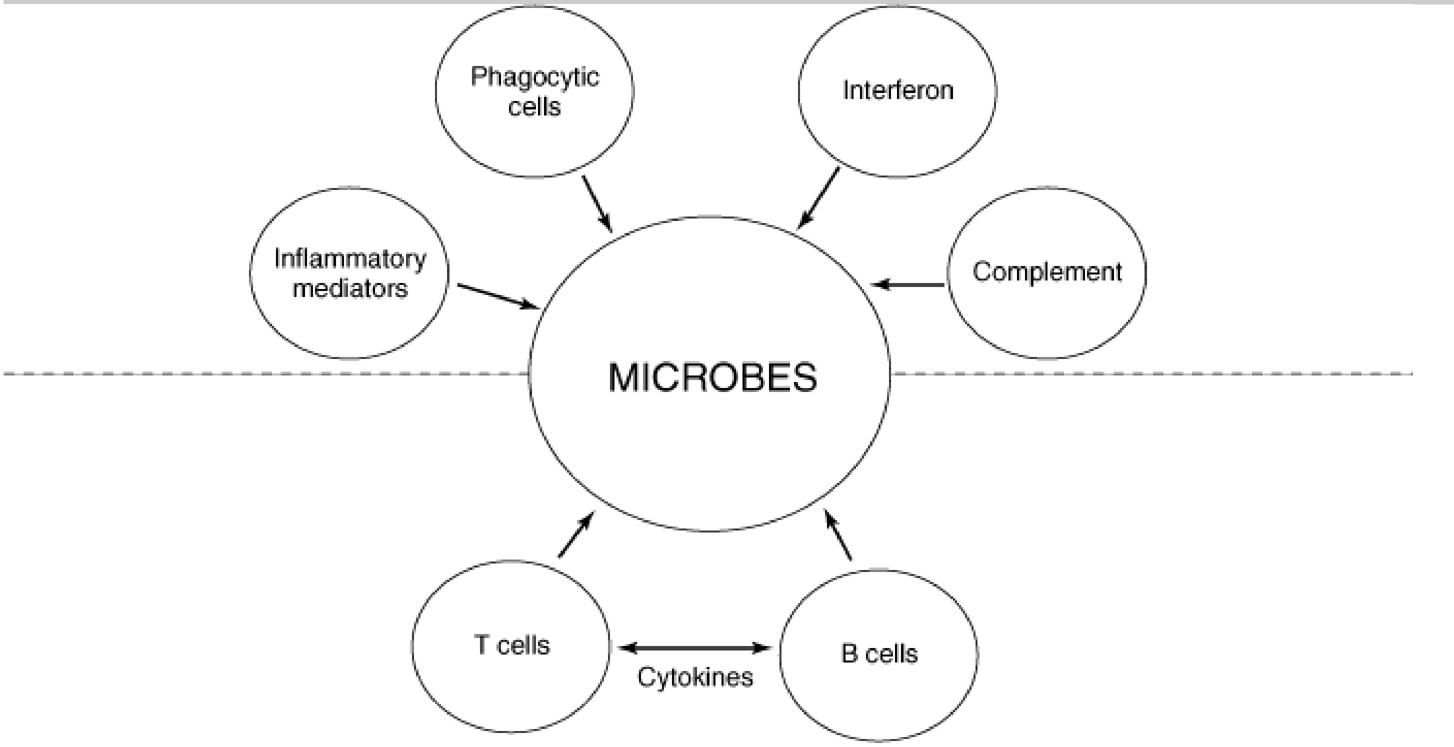
The study of immunology, a broad field encompassing both basic research and clinical applications, deals with host defense reactions to foreign (nonself) entities known as antigens, antigen recognition molecules, and cell-mediated host defense functions, especially as they relate to immunity to disease, hypersensitivity (including allergy), autoimmunity, immunodeficiency, and transplantation. This chapter presents the basic principles of immunology, particularly as they relate to response to infection. The reader is referred to texts on immunology for more detailed discussions.

*Executive Vice President for Academic Affairs, Dean, Graduate School of Biomedical Sciences, Professor of Microbiology & Immunology, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 3601 4th Street, Lubbock, TX 79430.

IMMUNITY & THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Immune responses can be innate (nonadaptive) or adaptive (acquired) (see Figure 81).

Figure 81.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Top: The innate immune system is characterized by physiologic barriers to entry of pathogenic organisms and very fast host defense responses. Bottom: The adaptive immune system consists of cells displaying antigen recognition molecules and has the capacity for long-term memory.

Innate Immunity

Innate immunity is resistance that is pre-existing and is not acquired through contact with a nonself (foreign) entity known as an antigen. It is nonspecific and includes barriers to infectious agentseg, skin and mucous membranes, phagocytic cells, inflammatory mediators, and complement components. It may vary with age and with hormonal or metabolic activity.

Adaptive Immunity

Adaptive immunity, which occurs after exposure to an antigen (eg, an infectious agent) is specific and is mediated by either antibody or lymphoid cells. It can be passive or active.

PASSIVE IMMUNITY

Passive immunity is transmitted by antibodies or lymphocytes preformed in another host. The passive administration of antibody (in antisera) against certain viruses (eg, hepatitis B) can be useful during the incubation period to limit viral multiplication, eg, after a needlestick injury to someone who has not been vaccinated. The main advantage of passive immunization with preformed antibodies is the prompt availability of large amounts of antibody; disadvantages are the short life span of these antibodies and possible hypersensitivity reactions if antibodies (immunoglobulins) from another species are administered.

ACTIVE IMMUNITY

Active immunity is induced after contact with foreign antigens (eg, microorganisms or their products). This contact may consist of clinical or subclinical infection, immunization with live or killed infectious agents or their antigens, exposure to microbial products (eg, toxins, toxoids), or transplantation of foreign cells. In all these instances the host actively produces antibodies, and lymphoid cells acquire the ability to respond to the antigens. Advantages of active immunity include long-term resistance (based on memory of prior contact with antigen and the capacity to respond faster and to a greater extent on subsequent contact with the same antigen); disadvantages include the slow onset of resistance and the need for prolonged or repeated contact with the antigen.

MECHANISMS OF INNATE IMMUNITY

Physiologic Barriers at the Portal of Entry

THE SKIN

Few microorganisms are capable of penetrating intact skin, but many can enter sweat or sebaceous glands and hair follicles and establish themselves there. Sweat and sebaceous secretionsby virtue of their acid pH and certain chemical substances (especially fatty acids)have antimicrobial properties that tend to eliminate pathogenic organisms. Lysozyme, an enzyme that dissolves some bacterial cell walls, is present on the skin and can help provide protection against some microorganisms. Lysozyme is also present in tears and in respiratory and cervical secretions.

Skin resistance may vary with age. For example, children are highly susceptible to ringworm infection. After puberty, resistance to such fungi increases markedly with the increased content of saturated fatty acids in sebaceous secretions.

MUCOUS MEMBRANES

In the respiratory tract, a film of mucus covers the surface and is constantly being driven upward by ciliated cells toward the natural orifices. Bacteria tend to stick to this film. In addition, mucus and tears contain lysozyme and other substances with antimicrobial properties. For some microorganisms, the first step in infection is their attachment to surface epithelial cells by means of adhesive bacterial surface proteins (eg, the pili of gonococci and *Escherichia coli*). If such cells have IgA antibody on their surfacesa host resistance mechanismattachment may be prevented. (The organism can overcome this resistance mechanism by breaking down the antibody with a protease.)

When organisms enter the body via mucous membranes, they tend to be taken up by phagocytes and are transported into regional lymphatic vessels that carry them to lymph nodes. The phagocytes act as barriers to further spread of large numbers of bacteria. The mucociliary apparatus for removal of bacteria in the respiratory tract is aided by pulmonary macrophages. This entire defense system can be suppressed by alcohol, narcotics, cigarette smoke, hypoxia, acidosis, and other harmful influences. Special protective mechanisms in the respiratory tract include the hairs at the nares and the cough reflex, which prevents aspiration.

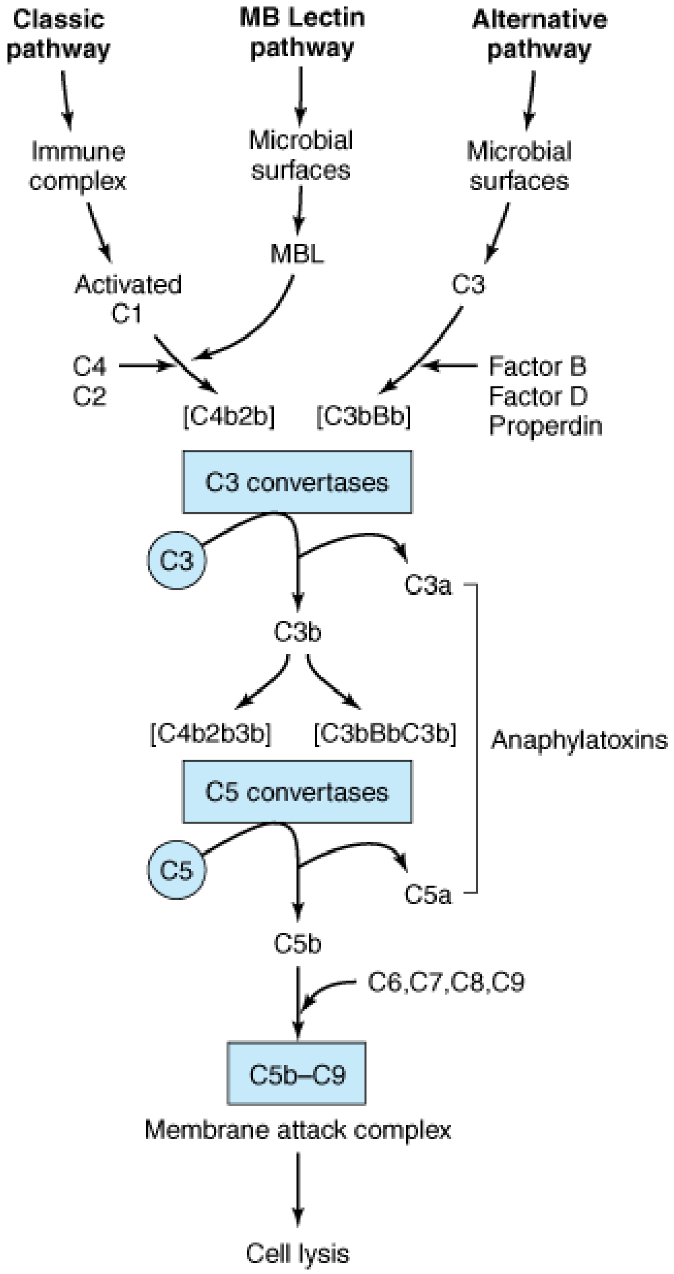
In the gastrointestinal tract, several systems function to inactivate bacteria: Saliva contains numerous hydrolytic enzymes; the acidity of the stomach kills many ingested bacteria (eg, *V cholerae*); and the small intestine contains many proteolytic enzymes and active macrophages.

It must be remembered that most mucous membranes of the body carry a constant normal microbial flora that itself opposes establishment of pathogenic microorganisms ("bacterial interference") and has important physiologic functions. For example, in the adult vagina, an acid pH is maintained by normal lactobacilli, inhibiting establishment of yeasts, anaerobes, and gram-negative bacteria.

Innate Immunologic Mechanisms

Very early in the response to infection (first few hours), the engulfment of microorganisms by macrophages (phagocytosis) and the activation of complement by the alternative pathway (see Figure 89 and discussion later in this chapter) are the important nonspecific host responses. The next line of defense includes some responses that are still nonadaptiveeg, release of cytokines from macrophagesand the release of other mediators that trigger the inflammatory response. The inflammatory response occurs rapidly and generally serves to hold the spread of pathogen until a specific adaptive response is initiated. However, some microorganisms have found ways to evade these nonspecific host responsesfor example, bacteria (pneumococci) with polysaccharide-rich capsules can evade phagocytosis, and some viruses (such as poxviruses) produce cytokine receptor homologs that function as competitive antagonists of the cytokines. These evasion mechanisms slow the immune response long enough for the microorganism to establish a niche.

Figure 89.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Complement reaction sequence.

PHAGOCYTIC CELLS

Mononuclear phagocytic cells are present in blood, lymphoid tissue, liver, spleen, lung, and other tissues that are efficient in uptake and removal of particulate matter from lymph vessels and the bloodstream. They include cells lining blood and lymph sinuses (Kupffer cells in the liver) and macrophages.

An important function of the spleen is filtering microorganisms from the bloodstream. Patients whose spleens have been removed or are nonfunctional (eg, in sickle cell disease) often suffer from bacterial sepsis, particularly with pneumococci and salmonellae. Phagocytosis is greatly enhanced by opsonins. When macrophages recognize microbial constituents, they are stimulated to release cytokines that cause the recruitment of more phagocytic cells to the site of infection.

PHAGOCYTOSIS

During bacterial infection, the number of circulating phagocytic cells often increases. The main functions of phagocytic cells include migration, chemotaxis, ingestion, and microbial killing. Microorganisms (and other particles) that enter the lymphatics, lung, bone marrow, or bloodstream are engulfed by any of a variety of phagocytic cells. Among them are polymorphonuclear leukocytes (granulocytes), phagocytic monocytes (macrophages), and fixed macrophages of the reticuloendothelial system (see above). Many microorganisms elaborate chemotactic factors that attract phagocytic cells. Defects in chemotaxis may account for hypersusceptibility to certain infections; the defects may be acquired or inherited. Phagocytosis can occur in the absence of serum antibodies. Thus, phagocytic cells are inefficient in large, smooth, open spaces like the pleura, pericardium, or joints but may be more effective in ingesting microorganisms trapped in small tissue spaces (eg, alveoli) or on rough surfaces. Such "surface phagocytosis" occurs early in the infectious process before antibodies are available.

Factors Affecting Phagocytosis

Phagocytosis is made more efficient by the presence of antibodies (opsonins) that coat the surface of bacteria and facilitate their ingestion by phagocytes. Opsonization can occur by three mechanisms: (1) Antibody alone can act as opsonin; (2) antibody plus antigen can activate complement via the classic pathway to yield opsonin; and (3) opsonin may be produced by a heat-labile system in which immunoglobulin or other factors activate C3 via the alternative pathway (see Figure 89). Macrophages have receptors on their membranes for the Fc portion of antibody and for the C3 component of complement. These receptors aid the phagocytosis of antibody-coated particles.

Ingestion of foreign particles (eg, microorganisms) has the following effects on phagocytic granulocytes: (1) Oxygen consumption increases, and there is increased generation of superoxide anion (O_2^-) and increased release of H_2O_2; (2) glycolysis increases via the hexose monophosphate shunt; and (3) lysosomes rupture, and their hydrolytic enzymes are discharged into the phagocytic vacuole to form a digestive vacuole, or "phagolysosome." Morphologically, this process appears as "degranulation" of granulocytes. Inhibition of these mechanisms is an important part of the infectious process, or pathogenesis, of legionella pneumonia. In Chdiak-Higashi syndrome, most microorganisms are phagocytosed normally, but intracellular killing is impaired, because a defect in a cytoplasmic protein causes abnormal granule membrane fusion, leading to lysosomal dysfunction and recurrent infection by pyogenic bacteria.

Granulocytes (Polymorphonuclear Leukocytes, or Neutrophils)

Granulocytes contain granules composed of lysozyme, other hydrolytic enzymes, several cationic proteins, the defensins (antimicrobial components), lactoferrin, and toxic nitrogen oxides.

The mechanisms of intracellular killing of microorganisms in phagocytic granulocytes include nonoxidative mechanisms (eg, activation of hydrolytic enzymes in contact with microorganisms, action of antimicrobial peptides) and oxidative mechanisms. Among the latter, the following have been implicated:

a. Increased oxidative activity results in accumulation of H_2O_2. In the presence of oxidizable cofactors (halides such as iodine, bromine, and chlorine), an acid pH, and the enzyme myeloperoxidase, H_2O_2 is converted to HOCl, which is an effective antimicrobial agent.

b. In normal granulocytes, superoxide anion (O_2^-) is generated when particles are phagocytosed. The superoxide radical may be directly lethal for many microorganisms. Children suffering from chronic granulomatous disease have granulocytes that ingest microbes normally, but they have a genetic deficiency of the NADPH oxidase system required to produce the superoxide anion so important in the antimicrobial activity of phagocytes. This defect may be responsible for the impaired killing ability of granulocytes associated with this disease and explains the susceptibility of these patients to infections, especially staphylococcal infections.

When the bone marrow of patients is suppressed by disease, drugs, or radiation, the number of functional granulocytes falls. If the granulocyte level drops below 500 polymorphonuclear neutrophils per microliter, the patient is highly susceptible to opportunistic infection by bacteria.

Macrophages (Circulating Phagocytic Monocytes)

Macrophages are derived from monocyte stem cells in bone marrow, have a longer life span than circulating granulocytic phagocytes, and continue their activity at a lower pH.

Macrophages in blood can be activated by various stimulants, or "activators," including microbes and their products, antigen-antibody complexes, inflammation, sensitized T lymphocytes, cytokines (see below), and injury. Activated macrophages have an increased number of lysosomes and produce and release interleukin-1, which has a wide range of activity in inflammation. Interleukin-1 participates in fever production and in activation of lymphoid cells, resulting in the release of other cytokines.

Intracellular killing in macrophages probably includes mechanisms similar to those described above for granulocytes.

ALTERNATIVE PATHWAY OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION

The complement system, a set of proteins that enhance the function of both the adaptive and innate responses to infection, is discussed later in this chapter. One pathway of complement activation, the alternative pathway, is very important as a first line of defense against infection by microorganisms. As shown in Figure 89, the alternative complement pathway can be activated by microbial surfaces and proceeds in the absence of antibody. There are several antimicrobial properties of complement proteins that contribute to host defense, including opsonization, lysis of bacteria, and amplification of inflammatory responses through the anaphylatoxins C5a, C4a, and C3a.

Some microorganisms have developed mechanisms to interfere with the complement system and in that way evade the immune response. For example, vaccinia virus encodes a soluble protein that functions as a complement control protein and blocks the complement cascade at several sites, including formation of C3b by both the classic and alternative pathways.

INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE

Any injury to tissue, such as that following establishment and multiplication of microorganisms, elicits an inflammatory response. The innate immune response of macrophages includes the release of cytokines, including interleukin-1 (IL-1) and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α). The other mediators released from activated macrophages include prostaglandins and leukotrienes. These inflammatory mediators begin to elicit changes in local blood vessels. This begins with dilation of local arterioles and capillaries, from which plasma escapes. Edema fluid accumulates in the area of injury, and fibrin forms a network and occludes the lymphatic channels, limiting the spread of organisms. A second effect of the mediators is to induce changes in expression of various adhesion molecules on endothelial cells and on leukocytes. Adhesion molecules such as the selectins and integrins cause leukocytes to attach to the endothelial cells of the blood vessels and thereby promote their movement across the vessel wall. Thus, polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the capillaries stick to the walls and then migrate out (extravasation) of the capillaries toward the irritant. This migration (chemotaxis) is stimulated by substances in the inflammatory exudate, including some small polypeptides called chemokines. Chemokines are synthesized by macrophages and by endothelial cells. IL-8 is an example of a chemokine (see later discussion and Table 83). These compounds function mainly to recruit monocytes and neutrophils from the blood into sites of infection. Phagocytes engulf the microorganisms, and intracellular digestion begins. Soon the pH of the inflamed area becomes more acid, and cellular proteases induce lysis of the leukocytes. Large mononuclear macrophages arrive on the site and, in turn, engulf leukocytic debris as well as microorganisms and pave the way for resolution of the local inflammatory process.

Cytokines and derivatives of arachidonic acid, including prostaglandins and leukotrienes, are mediators of the inflammatory response. Drugs that inhibit synthesis of prostaglandins (by blocking the enzyme cyclooxygenase) act as anti-inflammatory agents.

FEVER

Fever is the most common systemic manifestation of the inflammatory response and a cardinal symptom of infectious disease.

Possible Mechanisms of Fever Production

The ultimate regulator of body temperature is the thermoregulatory center in the hypothalamus, which is subject to physical and chemical stimuli. Direct mechanical injury or application of chemical substances to these centers results in fever. However, neither of these obvious forms of stimulation is present in the many types of fevers associated with infection, neoplasms, hypersensitivity, and other causes of inflammation.

Among the substances capable of inducing fever (pyrogens) are endotoxins of gram-negative bacteria and cytokines released from lymphoid cells, such as interleukin-1.

Various activators can act upon mononuclear phagocytes and other cells and induce them to release interleukin-1. Among these activators are microbes and their products; toxins, including endotoxins; antigen-antibody complexes; inflammatory processes; and many others. Interleukin-1 is carried by the bloodstream to the thermoregulatory center in the hypothalamus, where physiologic responses are initiated that result in fever (eg, increased heat production, reduced heat loss). Other effects of interleukin-1 are mentioned below.

Cytokines are small soluble proteins that are produced by one cell and influence other cells. These molecules have a variety of propertiesfor example, interleukin-1 promotes lymphocyte proliferation in addition to inducing fever and interleukin-2, produced by T cells, causes T cell proliferation and has numerous other immunomodulating functions. These molecules are described further, later in this chapter.

Beneficial Effects of Fever

It is possible to demonstrate some beneficial effects of fever on the control of infection in a few instances. For example, antibody production and T cell proliferation are more efficient at higher body temperatures than at normal levels. Poikilothermic lizards can resist bacterial infection at elevated environmental temperatures but will die of the same infection in a cool environment. However, in humans, no consistent benefits for the control of infection can be attributed to fever. Suppression of fever by drugs (eg, aspirin) is not harmful during infections and often makes febrile patients more comfortable.

INTERFERONS

Viral infection induces the expression of antiviral proteins known as interferons. These proteins, called interferon-α (IFN-α) and interferon-β (IFN-β), are distinct from the interferon-γ (IFN-γ) produced by activated T lymphocytes. The alpha and beta interferons help control viral replication by inhibiting protein synthesis in cells.

NATURAL KILLER (NK) CELLS

Natural killer cells represent a distinct functional population of lymphocytes. They play a role in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and have a role in the early phases of infection with herpesviruses and other intracellular pathogens. They resemble large, granular lymphocytes morphologically related to T cells. They do not express antigen-specific receptors. They do have two types of surface receptors, including an "activating receptor" that recognizes carbohydrate ligands and an "inhibitory receptor" that recognizes MHC class I molecules. They can lyse target cells that have undergone malignant transformation and may play a role in immune surveillance against tumor establishment. They can kill certain virus-infected cells with altered levels of MHC class I molecules. The lytic activity of NK cells is enhanced by high levels of alpha and beta interferons.

MECHANISMS OF SPECIFIC HOST DEFENSE

Adaptive Response

The adaptive response can be antibody-mediated (humoral), cell-mediated (cellular), or both. An encounter with a microbial or viral agent usually elicits a complex variety of responses. An overview of these is given here, and details are presented later in this chapter.

Upon entry of a potential pathogen into the host and after interaction with the nonadaptive defense system just described, it or its major antigens are taken up by antigen-presenting cells (APCs), eg, macrophages. These nonself antigens reappear on the macrophage surface complexed with proteins encoded by the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and are presented to clones of T lymphocytes. The MHC-antigen complexes are recognized by specific receptors on the surface of T cells, and these cells then produce a variety of cytokines that induce lymphocyte proliferation. The two arms of the immune responsecell-mediated and antibody-mediateddevelop concurrently.

In the antibody-mediated arm, helper (CD4) T lymphocytes recognize the pathogen's antigens complexed with class II MHC proteins on the surface of an antigen-presenting cell (macrophage or B cell) and produce cytokines that activate B cells expressing antibodies that specifically match the antigen. The B cells undergo clonal proliferation and differentiate to form plasma cells, which then produce specific immunoglobulins (antibodies). Major host defense functions of antibodies include neutralization of toxins and viruses and opsonization (coating) of the pathogen, which aids its uptake by phagocytic cells. Antibody-mediated defense is important against pathogens that produce toxins (eg, *Clostridium tetani*) or have polysaccharide capsules that interfere with phagocytosis (eg, the pneumococci). It applies mainly to extracellular pathogens and their toxins.

In the cell-mediated arm, the antigen-MHC class II complex is recognized by helper (CD4) T lymphocytes, while the antigen-MHC class I complex is recognized by cytotoxic (CD8) T lymphocytes. Each class of T cells produces cytokines, becomes activated, and expands by clonal proliferation.

Helper T cell activity, in addition to stimulating B cells to produce antibodies, promotes the development of delayed hypersensitivity and thereby also serves in the defense against intracellular agents, including intracellular bacteria (eg, mycobacteria), fungi, protozoa, and viruses. Cytotoxic T cell activity is aimed mainly at the destruction of cells in tissue grafts, tumor cells, or cells infected by some viruses. Thus, T cells are mainly utilized to activate B cell responses and to cope with intracellular pathogens.

Figure 81 summarizes the adaptive and innate host defense mechanisms used to combat microorganisms. The net result of effective immunity is the host's resistance to microbial and other pathogens and foreign cells. By contrast, impaired immunity manifests itself as excessive susceptibility to such pathogens or tumors. Specific examples are presented below.

Antigens

The features of antigens that largely determine immunogenicity in the immune response are as follows.

FOREIGNNESS (DIFFERENCE FROM "SELF")

In general, molecules recognized as "self" are not immunogenic; for immunogenicity, molecules must be recognized as "nonself."

MOLECULAR SIZE

The most potent immunogens are usually large proteins. Generally, molecules with a molecular weight less than 10,000 are weakly immunogenic, and very small ones (eg, amino acids) are nonimmunogenic. Certain small molecules (eg, haptens) become immunogenic only when linked to a carrier protein.

CHEMICAL AND STRUCTURAL COMPLEXITY

A certain amount of chemical complexity is requiredfor example, amino acid homopolymers are less immunogenic than heteropolymers containing two or three different amino acids.

ANTIGENIC DETERMINANTS (EPITOPES)

The smallest unit of a complex antigen that is capable of binding to an antibody is known as an antigenic determinant, or epitope. An antigen can have one or more determinants. In general, a determinant is roughly five amino acids or sugars in size.

GENETIC CONSTITUTION OF THE HOST

Two strains of the same species of animal may respond differently to the same antigen because of a different composition of genes involved in the immune response, eg, different MHC alleles.

DOSAGE, ROUTE, AND TIMING OF ANTIGEN ADMINISTRATION

Since the degree of the immune response depends on the amount of antigen given, the immune response can be optimized by carefully defining the dosage (including number of doses), route of administration, and timing of administration (including intervals between doses).

It is possible to enhance the immunogenicity of a substance by mixing it with an adjuvant. Adjuvants are substances that stimulate the immune responsefor example, by facilitating uptake into antigen-presenting cells.

Cellular Basis of the Immune Response

During embryonic development, blood cell precursors (hematopoietic stem cells) are found in fetal liver and other tissues; in postnatal life, the stem cells reside in bone marrow. They can differentiate in several ways. Stem cells may differentiate into cells of the myeloid series or into cells of the lymphoid series. Lymphoid progenitor cells evolve into two main lymphocyte populations, B cells and T cells. NK cells are also derived from the lymphoid progenitor.

B CELLS

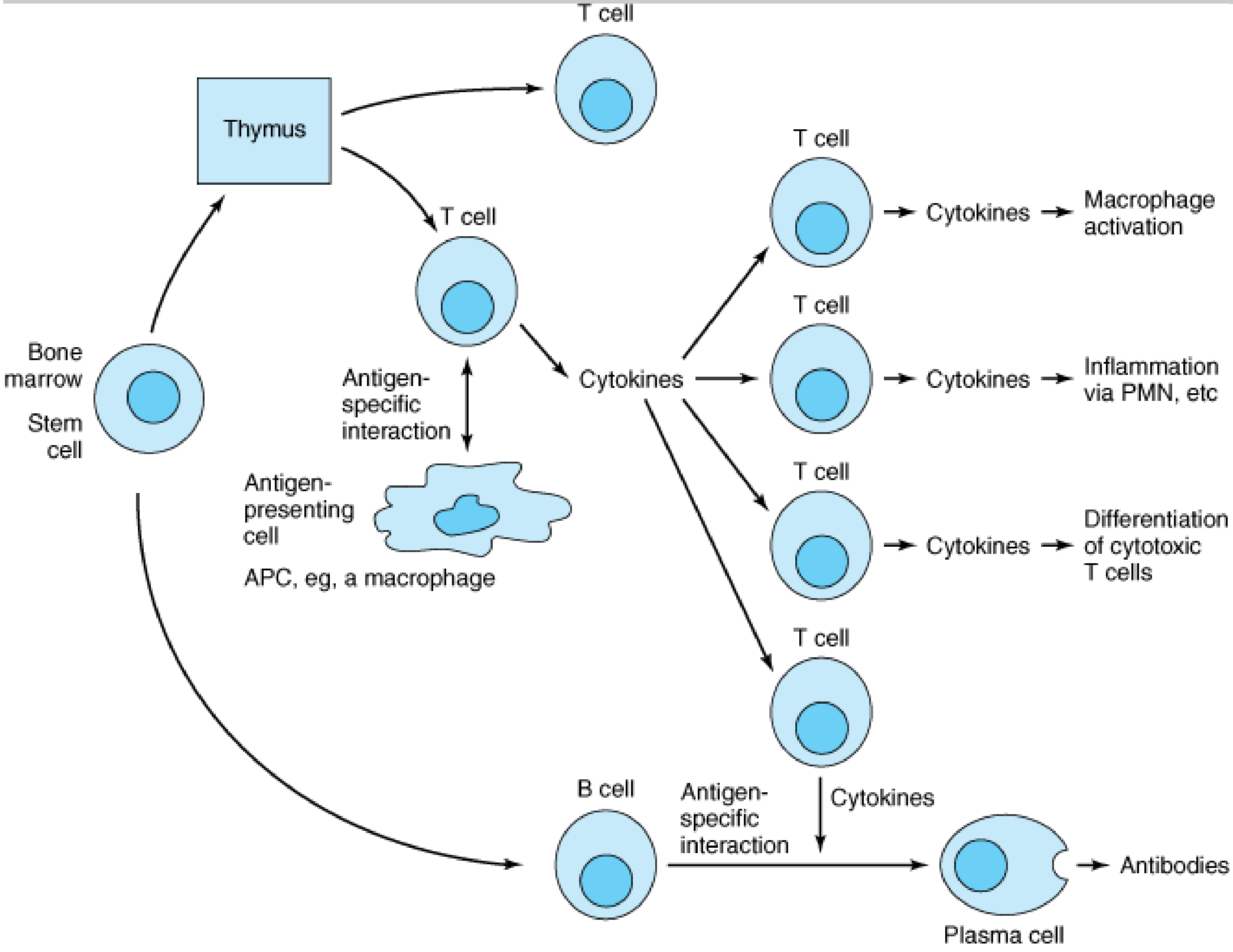
B cells are lymphocytes that develop in the bone marrow in mammals. In birds they develop in the bursa of Fabricius, a gut appendage. They rearrange their immunoglobulin genes and express a unique receptor for antigen on their cell surface. At this point, they migrate to a secondary lymphoid organfor example, spleenand may be activated by an encounter with antigen to become antibody-secreting plasma cells.

T CELLS

T cells are lymphocytes that require maturation in the thymus and form several subclasses with specific functions. They are the source of cell-mediated immunity, discussed below.

Some lymphocytic cells (eg, natural killer cells; see above) lack features of B or T cells but have significant immunologic roles. Figure 82 presents an overview of immunologically active lymphocytes and their interactions.

Figure 82.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram of the cellular interactions in the immune response.

ANTIGEN RECOGNITION MOLECULES

In order for the immune system to respond to nonself, ie, foreign antigen, a recognition system capable of precisely distinguishing self from nonself had to evolve. The next section of this chapter deals with the molecules used to recognize foreign antigens. First, we shall review the structure and function of antibodies, the soluble recognition products of B lymphocytes. Then we shall review some membrane-bound receptors for antigen, the B cell receptor for antigen, the T cell receptor for antigen, and the products of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC).

ANTIBODIES

Antibodies (immunoglobulins) are formed by B lymphocytes. Each individual has a large pool of different B lymphocytes (about 10^{11}) that have a life span of days or weeks and are found in the bone marrow, lymph nodes, and gut-associated lymphoid tissues (eg, tonsils or appendix).

B cells display immunoglobulin molecules (10^5 /cell) on their surface. These immunoglobulins serve as receptors for a specific antigen, so that each B cell can respond to only one antigen or a closely related group of antigens. All immature B cells carry IgM immunoglobulins on their surface, and most also carry IgD. B cells also have surface receptors for the Fc portion of immunoglobulins and for several complement components.

An antigen interacts with the B lymphocyte that shows the best "fit" by virtue of its immunoglobulin surface receptor. The antigen binds to this receptor, and the B cell is stimulated to divide and form a clone (clonal selection). Such selected B cells soon become plasma cells and secrete antibody. Since each person can make about 10^{11} different antibody molecules, there is an antigen-binding site on a B cell to fit almost any antigenic determinant.

The initial step in antibody formation is phagocytosis of the antigen, usually by antigen-presenting cells (chiefly macrophages or B cells) that process and present the antigen to T cells. These activated T cells then interact with B cells. B cells that carry the surface immunoglobulin which best fits the antigen are stimulated to proliferate and differentiate into plasma cells (Figure 82), which form the specific antibody proteins or differentiate into long-lived memory cells. The plasma cells synthesize an immunoglobulin of the same specificity as that carried by the B precursor cells.

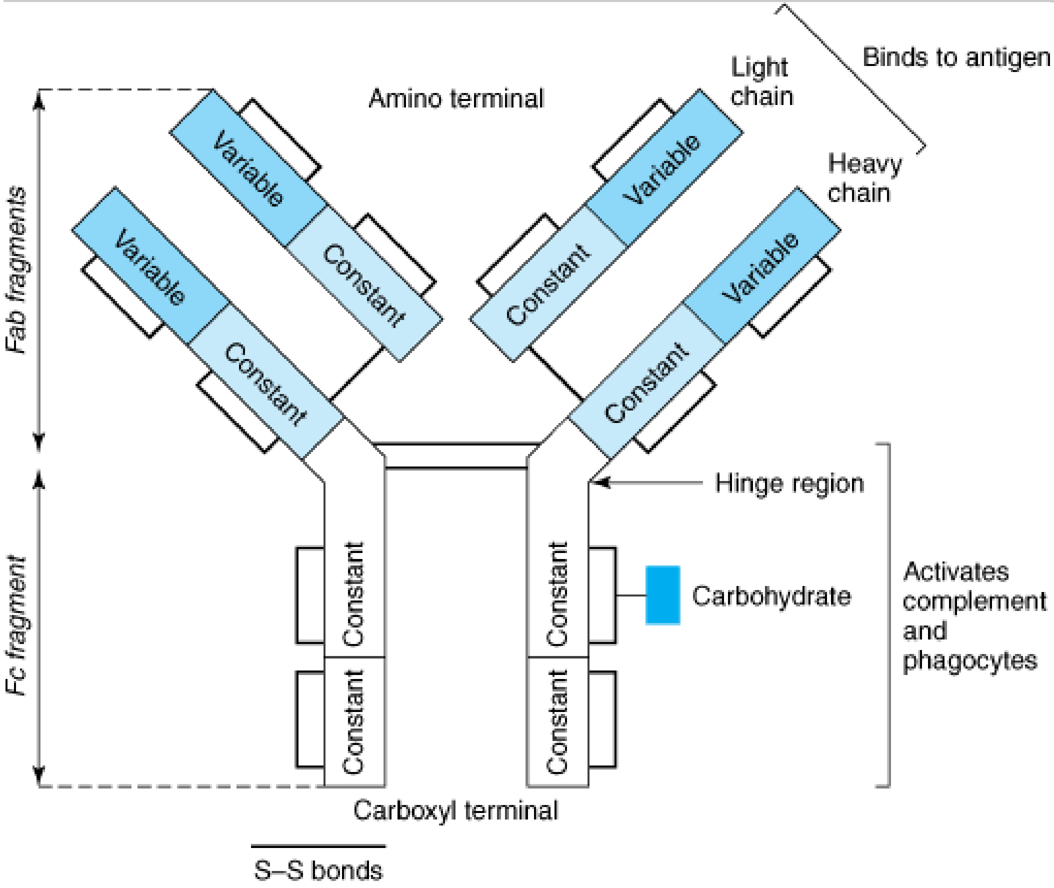
Antibody Structure & Function

Antibodies are immunoglobulins which react specifically with the antigen that stimulated their production. They make up about 20% of plasma proteins.

Antibodies that arise in an animal in response to a single complex antigen are heterogeneous because they are formed by several different clones of cells, each expressing an antibody capable of reacting with a different antigenic determinant on the complex antigen. These antibodies are said to be polyclonal. Antibodies that arise from a single clone of cells, eg, in a plasma cell tumor (myeloma), are homogeneous and are referred to as monoclonal. Monoclonal antibodies can be produced by fusing a myeloma cell with an antibody-producing lymphocyte. Such hybridomas produce virtually unlimited quantities of monoclonal antibodies in vitro. Important information about the structure and function of antibodies has been derived from the study of monoclonal antibodies.

All immunoglobulin molecules are made up of light and heavy polypeptide chains. The terms light and heavy refer to molecular weightie, light chains have a molecular weight of approximately 25,000, whereas heavy chains have a molecular weight of approximately 50,000. Light (L) chains are of one of two types, κ (kappa) or λ (lambda); classification is made based on amino acid differences in their constant regions (see Figure 83). Both types occur in all classes of immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, IgA, IgE, and IgD), but any one immunoglobulin molecule contains only one type of L chain. The amino terminal portion of each L chain contains part of the antigen-binding site. Heavy (H) chains are distinct for each of the five immunoglobulin classes and are designated γ (gamma), μ (mu), α (alpha), δ (delta), and ε (epsilon) (Table 81). The amino terminal portion of each H chain participates in the antigen-binding site; the other (carboxyl) terminal forms the Fc fragment (see Figure 83), which has various biologic activities (eg, complement activation and binding to cell surface receptors).

Figure 83.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic representation of an IgG molecule, indicating the location of the constant and the variable regions on the light and heavy chains. Fab fragment is fragment antigen binding, Fc fragment is fragment crystallizable.

Table 81. Properties of Human Immunoglobulins.

Heavy chain symbol
γ
α
μ
ε
δ

	IgG	IgA	IgM	IgE	IgD
Molecular weight (x 1000)	150	170 or 400[1]	900	190	150
Serum concentration (mg/mL)	718	0.84	0.42.5	< 0.0005	< 0.003
Serum half-life (days)	21	7	7	2	2
Activates complement	Yes (+)	No	Yes (++)	No	No
Percentage of total immunoglobulins in serum	80	13	6	< 1	< 1

---

[1] In secretions, eg, saliva, milk, and tears and in respiratory, intestinal, and genital tract secretion.

An individual antibody molecule always consists of identical H chains and identical L chains. The simplest antibody molecule has a Y shape (Figure 83) and consists of four polypeptide chains: two H chains and two L chains. The four chains are covalently linked by disulfide bonds.

If such an antibody molecule is treated with a proteolytic enzyme (eg, papain), peptide bonds in the *hinge region* are broken. This breakage produces two identical Fab fragments, which carry the antigen-binding sites, and one Fc fragment, which is involved in placental transfer, complement fixation, attachment for various cells, and other biologic activities.

L and H chains are subdivided into *variable regions* and *constant regions*. The regions are composed of three-dimensionally folded, repeating segments called domains. The structure of these domains has been determined at high resolution by x-ray crystallography. An L chain consists of one variable domain (V_L) and one constant domain (C_L). Most H chains consist of one variable domain (V_H) and three or more constant domains (C_H). Each domain is approximately 110 amino acids long. Variable regions are responsible for antigen binding; constant regions are responsible for the biologic functions described below.

Within the variable regions of both L and H chains are subregions consisting of extremely variable (hypervariable) amino acid sequences that form the antigen-binding site. The hypervariable regions form the area of the antibody molecule complementary in structure to the antigenic determinant or epitope and are therefore also known as complementarity-determining regions (CDRs). Only five to ten amino acids in each hypervariable region constitute the antigen-binding site. Antigen binding is noncovalent, involving van der Waals, electrostatic, and other weak forces as well as hydrogen and other bonds.

Small molecules such as haptens bind to antibodies in a cleft formed by the heavy and light chain variable domains. The interaction of an antibody with a large native protein (eg, a viral protein) occurs, by contrast, with a conformational or discontinuous epitope that represents a surface area of the protein antigen. Most or all of the CDRs of the antibody molecule are involved in this binding.

Immunoglobulin Classes

IGG

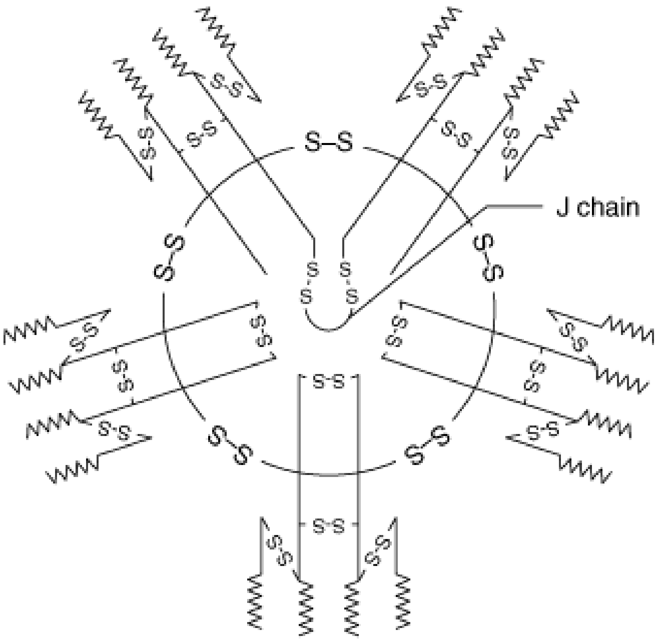
Each IgG molecule consists of two L chains and two H chains linked by disulfide bonds (molecular formula $H_2 L_2$). Because it has two identical antigen-binding sites, it is said to be divalent. There are four subclasses (IgG1 to IgG4), based on antigenic differences in the H chains and on the number and location of disulfide bonds. IgG1 is 65% of the total IgG. IgG2 is directed against polysaccharide antigens and may be an important host defense against encapsulated bacteria.

IgG is the predominant antibody in secondary responses and constitutes an important defense against bacteria and viruses. It is the only antibody to pass the placenta and is therefore the most abundant immunoglobulin in newborns.

IGM

IgM is the main immunoglobulin produced early in the *primary* immune response. IgM is present on the surface of virtually all uncommitted B cells. It is composed of five $H_2 L_2$ units (each similar to one IgG unit) and one molecule of J (joining) chain (Figure 84). The pentamer (MW 900,000) has a total of ten identical antigen-binding sites and thus a valence of 10. It is the most efficient immunoglobulin in agglutination, complement fixation, and other antigen-antibody reactions and is important also in defense against bacteria and viruses. It can be produced by a fetus undergoing an infection. Since its interaction with antigen can involve all ten binding sites, it has the highest avidity of all immunoglobulins.

Figure 84.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram of the pentameric structure of human IgM. The IgM monomers are connected to each other and the J chain by disulphide bonds.

IGA

IgA is the main immunoglobulin in secretions such as milk, saliva, and tears and in secretions of the respiratory, intestinal, and genital tracts. It protects mucous membranes from attack by bacteria and viruses.

Each secretory IgA molecule (MW 400,000) consists of two H_2 L_2 units and one molecule each of J chain and secretory component. The latter is a protein derived from cleavage of the poly-Ig receptor. This receptor binds IgA dimers and facilitates their transport across mucosal epithelial cells. Some IgA exists in serum as a monomer H_2 L_2 (MW 170,000). There are at least two subclasses, IgA1 and IgA2. Some bacteria (eg, neisseriae) can destroy IgA1 by producing a protease and can thus overcome antibody-mediated resistance on mucosal surfaces.

IGE

The Fc region of IgE binds to a receptor on the surface of mast cells and eosinophils. This bound IgE acts as a receptor for the antigen that stimulated its production, and the resulting antigen-antibody complex triggers allergic responses of the immediate (anaphylactic) type through the release of mediators. In persons with such antibody-mediated allergic hypersensitivity, IgE concentration is greatly increased, and IgE may appear in external secretions. Serum IgE is also typically increased during helminth infections.

IGD

IgD acts as an antigen receptor when present on the surface of certain B lymphocytes. In serum it is present only in trace amounts.

Immunoglobulin Genes & Generation of Diversity

Special genetic mechanisms have evolved to produce the very large number of immunoglobulin molecules (about

10^{11}) that develop in the host in response to antigenic stimulation without requiring excessive numbers of genes. Thus, immunoglobulin genes (and, as we shall see later, T cell receptor genes) undergo somatic recombination to produce the enormous diversity of antibody specificities.

Each immunoglobulin chain consists of a variable (V) and a constant (C) region. For each type of immunoglobulin chainie, kappa light chain (κ), lambda light chain (λ), and the five heavy chains (γH, μH, αH, εH, and δH)there is a separate pool of gene segments located on different chromosomes. Each of the three gene loci contains a set of different V gene segments widely separated from C gene segments. During B cell differentiation, the DNA is rearranged to bring the selected gene segments adjacent to each other in the genome. A family of enzymes known as the V(D)J recombinases are responsible for this gene rearrangement process.

The variable region of each L chain is encoded by two gene segments: V and J. The variable region of each H chain is encoded by three gene segments: V, D, and J. The segments are united into one functional V-variable gene by DNA rearrangement. Each assembled V-variable gene is then transcribed with the appropriate C-constant gene to produce a messenger RNA (mRNA) that encodes for the complete peptide chain. L and H chains are synthesized separately on polysomes and finally assembled in the cytoplasm to form H_2 L_2 units by means of disulfide bonds. The carbohydrate moiety is then added during progress through the membrane components of the cell (eg, Golgi apparatus), and the immunoglobulin molecule is released from the cell.

This gene rearrangement mechanism permits the assembly of an enormous variety of immunoglobulin molecules. Antibody diversity depends on (1) multiple V, D, and J gene segments; (2) combinatorial association, ie, the association of any V gene segment with any D or J segment; (3) the random combining of different L and H chains; (4) somatic hypermutation; and (5) junctional diversity, created by imprecise joining during rearrangement with the addition of nucleotides by the enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase to form a complete joint.

Immunoglobulin Class Switching

Initially, all B cells matched to an antigen carry IgM specific for that antigen and produce IgM in response to this exposure to antigen. Later, gene rearrangement permits elaboration of antibodies of the same antigenic specificity but of different immunoglobulin classes. In class switching, the same assembled V_H gene can sequentially associate with different C_H genes, so that the immunoglobulin produced later (IgG, IgA, or IgE) has the same specificity as the original IgM but different biologic characteristics. Class switching is dependent on cytokines released from T cells and also happens after antigenic stimulation.

CELL SURFACE RECEPTORS FOR ANTIGEN

B Cell Receptor for Antigen

B cells express a form of IgM that is located on the cell surface. Cell surface IgM has the same antigen specificity as the secreted IgM antibody molecule. This is achieved by a differential RNA splicing mechanism. The μ-chain RNA transcript can include a sequence that encodes about 25 hydrophobic amino acids, which enables the IgM molecule to localize in the cell membrane as a transmembrane receptor. Later in development of the B cell, regulation of RNA processing allows expression of a membrane-bound form of IgD, again with the same antigen-binding specificity. Throughout this process, the same V region segment is being expressed with different C region segments.

As a membrane-bound receptor, IgM or IgD interacts with other cell surface molecules, known as Igα and Igβ, that can transduce signals subsequent to antigen binding by interacting with tyrosine kinase molecules, and the other components of the signal transduction machinery. These signals result in biochemical events involving intracellular phosphatases, kinases, GTP-binding proteins, lipid mediators, calcium ions, and other intermediates, eventually leading to cell activation.

T Cell Receptor for Antigen

The T cell receptor is a transmembrane heterodimeric protein composed of two disulfide-linked chains. This receptor resembles a membrane-bound Fab fragment of immunoglobulin. There are two different classes of T cell receptor. The two chains are known as α and β in one class and as γ and δ in the other. γδ-Expressing T cells are relatively infrequent in humans and seem to be predisposed toward recognition of frequently encountered bacterial antigensfor example, the highly conserved heat shock proteins of certain mycobacteria. αβ T cells make up the predominant T cell phenotype and are subdivided by their expression of other cell surface markers, the proteins known as CD4 and CD8, into helper and cytotoxic functional classes, respectively.

The T cell receptor proteins have variable and constant regions similar to antibodies. The variable regions are located at the amino terminals of the polypeptide chain farthest away from the cell membrane. Both chains contribute to the variable domain that has been shown to interact with antigen presented by self proteins encoded in the major histocompatibility complex (MHC).

The T cell receptor genes closely resemble immunoglobulin genes, and the generation of diversity in the T cell receptor is accomplished in a fashion largely analogous to that described earlier for immunoglobulins. Thus, there are multiple variable region segments, contributing a repertoire of different antigen specificities; multiple V, D, and J segments that can combine in different ways just as for antibodies; and random combination of a large number of α and β chains. There are two differences from the situation described earlier for antibodies: (1) No evidence for somatic mutation in T cell receptors has been obtained, and (2) the potential for increasing the repertoire of potential antigen specificities by junctional diversity is much greater for T cell receptors than for antibodies. There are more J and D segments for T cell receptor genes than for immunoglobulin genes. In essence, however, the encoding of T cell receptors is very much like that described for immunoglobulins. For example, the variable regions of the α and γ chains of the T cell receptor are like the variable regions of immunoglobulin light chains in having V and J segments, whereas the β and δ chains are like immunoglobulin heavy chains in being encoded by V, D, and J segments.

In all functional antigen-specific T cells, the two T cell receptor chains are noncovalently associated with six other polypeptide chains composed of four different proteins that make up the CD3 complex. The invariant proteins of the CD3 complex are responsible for transducing the signal received by the T cell receptor on recognition of antigen to the inside of the cell. All four different proteins of the CD3 complex are transmembrane proteins that can interact with cytosolic tyrosine kinases on the inside of the membrane. It is this interaction that begins the biochemical events of signal transduction leading to gene transcription, cell activation, and initiation of the functional activities of T cells.

The CD4 and CD8 molecules that differentiate the two major functional classes of T cell function as co-receptor molecules on the T cell surface. During recognition of antigen, the CD4 and CD8 molecules interact with the T cell receptor complex and with MHC molecules. CD4 binds to MHC class II molecules, and CD8 binds to MHC class I molecules. This greatly increases the sensitivity of antigen recognition by T cells.

The Major Histocompatibility Complex

The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) was first detected as the genetic locus encoding the glycoprotein molecules (transplantation antigens) responsible for the rapid rejection of tissue grafts transplanted between genetically nonidentical individuals. It is now known that MHC molecules bind peptide antigens and present them to T cells. Thus, these transplantation antigens are responsible for antigen recognition by the T cell receptor. In this respect, the T cell receptor is different from antibody. Antibody molecules interact with antigen directly; the T cell receptor only recognizes antigen presented by MHC molecules on another cell, the antigen-presenting cell. The T cell receptor is specific for antigen, but the antigen must be presented on a self MHC molecule. The T cell receptor is also specific for the MHC molecule. If the antigen is presented by another allelic form of the MHC molecule in vitro (normally only in an experimental situation), there is no recognition by the T cell receptor. This phenomenon is known as MHC restriction.

In humans, the MHC is a cluster of extensively studied genes located on chromosome 6. Among the many important genes in the human MHC, also known as HLA (human leukocyte antigens), are those that encode the class I, class II, and class III MHC proteins. As outlined in Table 82, class I proteins are encoded by the HLA-A, -B, and -C genes. These proteins are made up of two chains: (1) a transmembrane glycoprotein of MW 45,000, noncovalently associated with (2) a non-MHC-encoded polypeptide of MW 12,000 that is known as β_2 -microglobulin. Class I molecules are to be found on virtually all nucleated cells in the body.

Table 82. Important Features of Some Human MHC Gene Products.

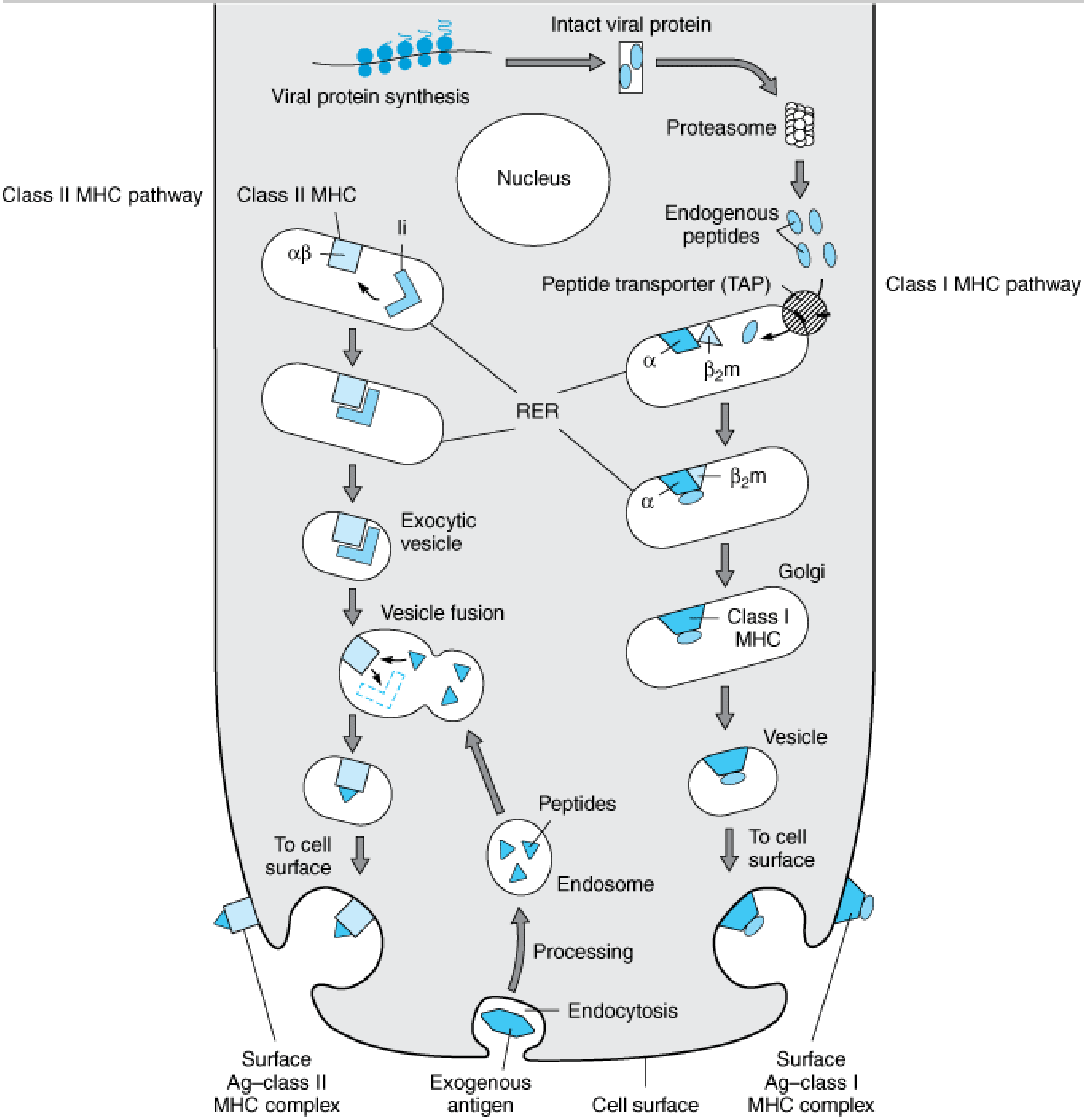
	Class I	Class II
Genetic loci (partial list)	HLA-A, -B, and -C	HLA-DP, -DQ, and -DR
Polypeptide composition	MW 45,000 + β_2 M (MW 12,000)	α chain (MW 33,000), β chain (MW 29,000), Ii chain (MW 30,000)
Cell distribution	All nucleated somatic cells	Antigen-presenting cells (macrophages, B cells, etc), activated human T cells
Present peptide antigens to	CD8 T cells	CD4 T cells
Size of peptide bound	811 residues	1030 or more residues

Class II proteins are encoded by the HLA-D region. As shown in Table 82, there are three main sets: the DP-, DQ-, and DR-encoded molecules. This locus retains control of immune responsiveness, and different allelic forms of these genes confer striking differences in the ability to mount an immune response against a given antigen.

The HLA-D locus-encoded proteins are made up of two noncovalently associated transmembrane glycoproteins of about MW 33,000 and MW 29,000. Unlike class I proteins, they have a restricted tissue distribution and are chiefly found on macrophages, B cells, and other antigen-presenting cells. Their expression on other cellseg, endothelial cellscan be induced by interferon-gamma.

The class II MHC locus also includes genes encoding proteins involved in antigen processing, eg, TAP (see Figure 87). The class III MHC locus encodes complement proteins and several cytokines.

Figure 87.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

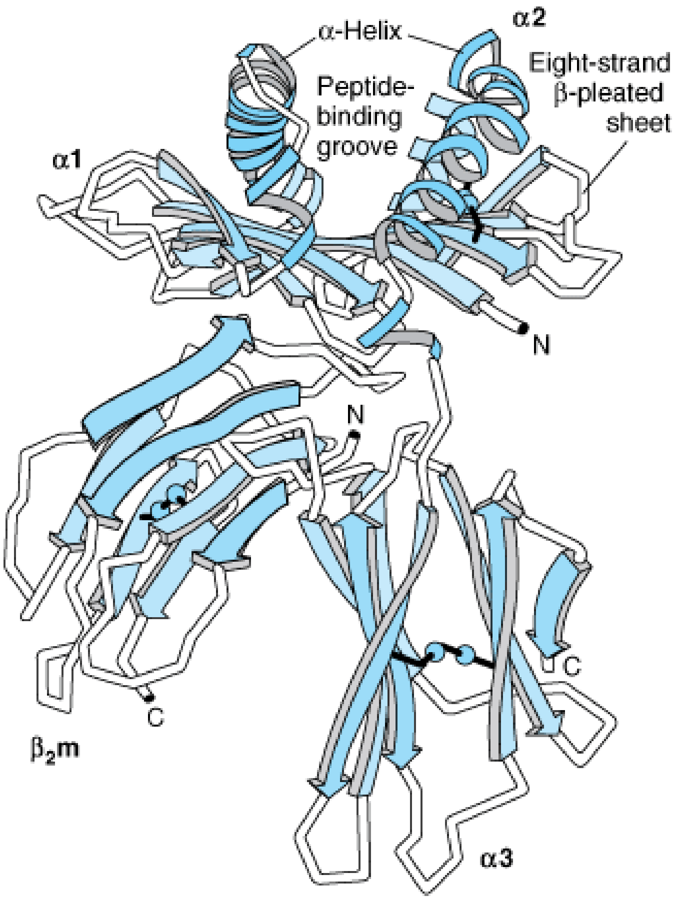
Antigen-processing pathways. (Modified and reproduced, with permission, from Parslow TG et al [editors]: *Medical*

Immunology, 10th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2001.)

The genes of the MHC exhibit a remarkable genetic variability. The MHC is polygenic in that there are several genes for each class of molecule. The MHC is also polymorphic. Thus, a large number of alleles exist in the population for each of the genes. Each individual inherits a restricted set of alleles from its parents. Sets of MHC genes tend to be inherited as a block or haplotype, as there are relatively infrequent cross-over events at this locus.

Much is known about the structural organization and sequence of MHC genes and proteins. Perhaps the most important information, however, has come from the x-ray analysis of crystals of MHC proteins. It was these studies that helped to clearly explain the function of the MHC proteins. The x-ray analysis (Figure 85) shows that the domains of the class I MHC molecule farthest away from the membrane are composed of two parallel α helices above a platform created by a β-pleated sheet. The whole structure undoubtedly looks like a cleft whose sides are formed by the α helices and floored by the β sheets. The x-ray analysis also showed that the cleft was occupied by a peptide. In essence, then, the T cell receptor sees the peptide antigen bound in a cleft provided by the MHC protein. A simplified diagram of this interaction is provided in Figure 86A.

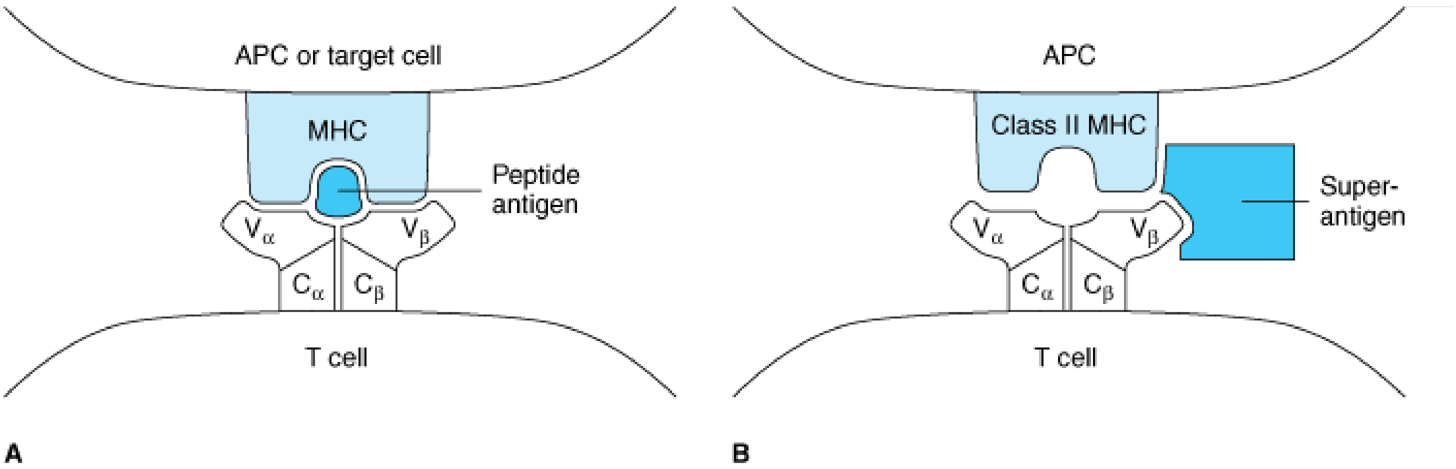
Figure 85.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Diagrammatic structure of a class I HLA molecule. (Reproduced, with permission, from Bjorkman PJ et al: Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2. Nature 1987;329:506.)

Figure 86.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Binding of antigen by MHC and T cell receptor. In *panel A,* a model of the interaction between peptide antigen, MHC, and the T cell receptor is shown. The V and V regions of the TCR are shown interacting with the α helices that form the peptide binding groove of MHC. In *panel B,* a model of the interaction between a superantigen, MHC, and the T cell receptor is shown. The superantigen interacts with the V region of the TCR and with class II MHC outside the peptide binding groove.

(Adapted from Stites DG et al [editors]: Medical Immunology, 9th ed. McGraw-Hill, 1997.)

MHC proteins show a broad specificity for peptide antigens, and many different peptides can be presented by any given MHC allele (one peptide is bound at a time). The α helices that form the binding cleft are the site of the amino acid residues that are polymorphic in MHC proteins (ie, those that vary between alleles). This means that different alleles can bind and present different peptide antigens. For all these reasons, MHC polymorphism has a major effect on antigen recognition.

Analysis of the function of T cells with respect to interaction with MHC molecules reveals that peptide antigens associated with class I MHC molecules are recognized by CD8-positive cytotoxic T lymphocytes, whereas class II-associated peptide antigens are recognized by CD4-positive helper T cells.

The Immunoglobulin Supergene Family

All the molecules discussedantibodies, the T cell receptor, and MHC proteinshave structural features in common. All of these moleculesand a long list of other immunologically relevant molecules, including the T cell subpopulation markers CD4 and CD8have a domain structure built on the three-dimensional feature known as the immunoglobulin fold. Undoubtedly, the members of this family evolved in such a way as to supply a common function to the organism. One part of this function is to act as a recognition unit or receptor at the cell surface.

Antigen Processing & Presentation

Antigen processing and presentation are the means by which antigens become associated with self MHC molecules for presentation to T cells with appropriate receptors. Proteins from exogenous antigens, such as bacteria, are internalized via endocytic vesicles into antigen-presenting cells such as macrophages. Then, as illustrated in Figure 87, they are exposed to cellular proteases in intracellular vesicles. Peptides, approximately 10 to 30 amino acid residues in length, are generated in endosomal vesicles. The endosomal vesicles can then fuse with exocytic vesicles containing class II MHC molecules.

The class II MHC molecules are synthesized, as for other membrane glycoproteins, in the rough endoplasmic reticulum and then proceed out through the Golgi apparatus. A third polypeptide, the invariant chain (Ii), protects the binding site of the class II αβ dimer until the lowered pH of the compartment created after fusion with an endosomal vesicle causes a dissociation of the Ii chain. The MHC class II-peptide antigen complex is then transported to the cell surface for display and recognition by a T cell receptor of a CD4 T cell.

Endogenous antigenseg, cytosolic viral proteins synthesized in an infected cellare processed for presentation by class I MHC molecules. Some of the steps involved are diagrammed in Figure 87. In brief, cytosolic proteins are broken down by a peptidase complex known as the proteasome. The cytosolic peptides gain access to nascent MHC class I molecules in the rough endoplasmic reticulum via peptide transporter systems (transporters associated with antigen processing; TAPs). The TAP genes are also encoded in the MHC. Within the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum, peptide antigens approximately 8 to 11 residues in length complex with nascent MHC class I proteins and cooperate with β_2 -microglobulin to create a stable, fully folded MHC class I-peptide antigen complex that is then transported to the cell surface for display and recognition by CD8 cytotoxic T cells.

The binding groove of the class I molecule is more constrained than that of the class II molecule, and for that reason shorter peptides are found in class I than in class II MHC molecules.

Understanding the details of antigen processing has clarified our thinking about T cell function. Thus, it is now understood why T cells do not respond to carbohydrate antigens (they would not fit in the groove) and why T cells recognize only linear antigenic determinants (they respond only to proteolytically processed antigen). Whether an antigen is destined for class I or class II presentation depends only on the intracellular compartments it traverses.

Several viruses attempt to defeat the immune response by interfering with the antigen-processing pathways. For example, an HIV Tat protein is able to inhibit expression of class I MHC molecules. A herpesvirus protein binds to the transporter proteins (TAPs), preventing transport of viral peptides into the endoplasmic reticulum, where class I molecules are being synthesized. A consequence of these inhibitory mechanisms is that these viruses can evade the immune response because the cells they infect are not recognized by effector lymphocytes.

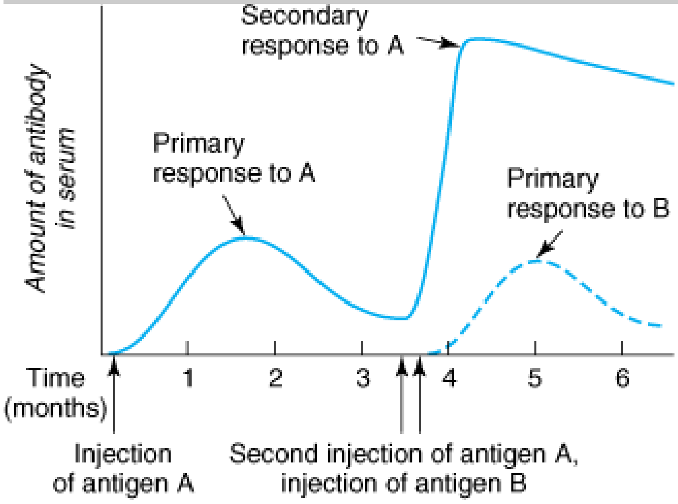
Some superantigens are able to bind to MHC molecules outside the peptide-binding cleft. One consequence is that whereas an individual peptide complexed to an MHC molecule will normally stimulate only a small percentage of the T cells in an individual, superantigens cause up to 10% of T cells to be nonspecifically activated. Examples of superantigens include certain bacterial toxins, including the staphylococcal enterotoxins, toxic shock syndrome toxin, and group A streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin A. These antigens bind to the "outside" of the MHC protein and to the T cell receptor (Figure 86B). They are active at very low concentrations (10^9 mol/L) and cause T cells expressing particular Vβ sequences to be stimulated and to release large amounts of cytokines, including IL-1 and tumor necrosis factor (TNF). It is the release of large amounts of cytokines from stimulation of a high percentage of the pool of T lymphocytes that explains to a large extent the pathogenesis of diseases caused by organisms expressing superantigens.

ANTIBODY-MEDIATED (HUMORAL) IMMUNITY

The Primary Response

When an individual encounters an antigen for the first time, antibody to that antigen is detectable in the serum within days or weeks depending on the nature and dose of the antigen and the route of administration (eg, oral, parenteral). The serum antibody concentration continues to rise for several weeks and then declines; it may drop to very low levels (Figure 88). The first antibodies formed are IgM, followed by IgG, IgA, or both. IgM levels tend to decline sooner than IgG levels.

Figure 88.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Rate of antibody production following initial antigen administration and a second "booster" injection.

The Secondary Response

In the event of a second encounter with the same antigen (or a closely related "cross-reacting" one) months or years after the primary response, the antibody response is more rapid and rises to higher levels than during the primary response. This change in response is attributed to the persistence of antigen-sensitive "memory cells" following the first immune response. In the secondary response, the amount of IgM produced is qualitatively similar to that produced after the first contact with the antigen; however, much more IgG is produced, and the level of IgG tends to persist much longer than in the primary response. Furthermore, such antibody tends to bind antigen more firmly (ie, to have higher affinity) and thus to dissociate less easily.

Protective Functions of Antibodies

Because of the close structural complementarity between antibodies and the antigen that elicited them, the two tend to bind to each other whenever they meet, in vitro or in vivo. This binding is noncovalent and involves electrostatic, van der Waals, and other weak forces as well as hydrogen and other bonds. Antibodies can produce resistance to infection by opsonizing (coating) organisms, which makes them more readily ingested by phagocytes; antibodies can bind to viruses and reduce their ability to bind to cellular receptor molecules and invade host cells; and most importantly, antibodies can neutralize toxins of microorganisms (eg, diphtheria, tetanus, and botulism) and inactivate their harmful effects.

Antibodies can be induced actively in the host by administering appropriate antigens or preparations containing them (toxoids of diphtheria, tetanus), but protection is delayed until the antibodies reach helpful concentrations. In contrast, antibodies can be administered passively (ie, preformed in another host), which makes them immediately available for preventive or therapeutic purposes. The latter approach (passive immunization) has been used in the management of "needlestick" injuries in individuals not vaccinated against hepatitis B.

Antibody-mediated immunity against bacteria is most effective when directed against microbial infections in which virulence is related to polysaccharide capsules (eg, pneumococcus, haemophilus, neisseria). In such infections, antibodies complex with the capsular antigens and make the organisms susceptible to ingestion by phagocytic cells and destruction within the cells.

Many cell-mediated immune responses also require the cooperation of antibodies directed against offending antigens before the latter can be inactivated or eliminated (see below). Conversely, the binding of antibodies to antigens leads to the formation of immune complexes, and the deposition of such complexes may be an important feature in the development of organ dysfunction, eg, poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis.

THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

The complement system includes serum and membrane-bound proteins that function in both adaptive and innate host defense systems. These proteins are highly regulated and interact via a series of proteolytic cascades. The term "complement" refers to the ability of these proteins to complement (augment) the effects of other components of the immune system (eg, antibody). Complement has several main effects: (1) lysis of cells (eg, bacteria and tumor cells), (2) production of mediators that participate in inflammation and attract phagocytes, (3) opsonization of organisms and immune complexes for clearance by phagocytosis, and (4) enhancement of antibody-mediated immune responses. Complement proteins are synthesized mainly by the liver and by phagocytic cells.

Complement Activation

Several complement components are proenzymes, which must be cleaved to form active enzymes. The components of the classic pathway are numbered from C1 to C9, and the reaction sequence is C1-C4-C2-C3-C5-C6-C7-C8-C9. Up to C5, activation involves proteolytic cleavage, liberating smaller fragments from C2 through C5. The smaller fragments are by convention denoted by the letter a (eg, C4a) and the larger fragments by b (eg, C5b). Activation of the complement system can be initiated either by antigen-antibody complexes or by a variety of nonimmunologic molecules.

Sequential activation of complement components (Figure 89) occurs via three main pathways.

THE CLASSIC PATHWAY

Only IgM and IgG activate or fix complement via the classic pathway. Of the IgGs, only IgG subclasses 1, 2, and 3 fix complement; IgG4 does not. C1, which is bound to a site in the Fc region, is composed of three proteins: C1q, C1r, and C1s. C1q is an aggregate of polypeptides that bind to the Fc portion of IgG and IgM. The antibody-antigen immune complex bound to C1 activates C1s, which cleaves C4 and C2 to form C4b2b. The latter is an active C3 convertase, which cleaves C3 molecules into two fragments: C3a and C3b. C3a, an anaphylatoxin, is discussed below. C3b forms a complex with C4b2b, producing a new enzyme, C5 convertase, which cleaves C5 to form C5a and C5b. C5a is an anaphylatoxin and a chemotactic factor (see below). C5b binds to C6 and C7 to form a complex that inserts into the membrane bilayer. C8 then binds to the C5b/C6/C7 complex, followed by the polymerization of up to sixteen C9 molecules to produce the membrane attack complex that generates a channel or pore in the membrane and causes cytolysis by allowing free passage of water across the cell membrane.

THE ALTERNATIVE PATHWAY

Many unrelated substances, from complex chemicals (eg, endotoxin) to infectious agents (eg, parasites), activate a different pathway. C3 is cleaved, and a C3 convertase is generated via the action of factors B, D, and properdin.

The alternative C3 convertase (C3bBb) generates more C3b. The additional C3b binds to the C3 convertase to form C3bBbC3b, which is the alternative pathway C5 convertase that generates C5b, leading to production of the membrane attack complex described above.

MANNAN-BINDING LECTIN PATHWAY

In recent years, the concept of an additional pathway of complement activation has emergedthe MB lectin pathway. Its main constituent is a plasma protein termed MBL, which is short for mannan-binding lectin. MBL binds to sugar residues like mannose found in microbial surface polysaccharides such as LPS. The MBL complex, when bound to microbial surfaces, can activate C4 and C2. The rest of this pathway is the same as the classic pathway of complement activation.

Regulation of the Complement System

Several serum proteins regulate the complement system at different stages: (1) C1 inhibitor binds to and inactivates the serine protease activity of C1r and C1s; (2) factor I cleaves C3b and C4b, thereby reducing the amount of C5 convertase available; (3) factor H enhances the effect of factor I on C3b; and (4) factor P (properdin) protects C3b and stabilizes the C3 convertase of the alternative pathway. Regulation is also provided by proteins that have the ability to accelerate the decay of the complement proteinsfor example, decay-accelerating factor, a membrane-bound protein found on most blood cell surfaces that can act to accelerate dissociation of the C3 convertases of both pathways.

Major Biologic Effects of Complement

OPSONIZATION

Cells, antigen-antibody complexes, and other particles are phagocytosed much more efficiently in the presence of C3b because of the presence of C3b receptors on the surface of many phagocytes.

CHEMOTAXIS

C5a stimulates movement of neutrophils and monocytes toward sites of antigen deposition.

ANAPHYLATOXINS

C3a, C4a, and C5a can produce increased vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction. C3a and C5a also stimulate mast cells to release histamine.

CYTOLYSIS

Insertion of the C5b6789 complex into the cell surface leads to killing or lysis of many types of cells, including erythrocytes, bacteria, and tumor cells.

Clinical Consequences of Complement Deficiencies

Many genetic deficiencies of complement proteins have been described, and these generally lead to enhanced susceptibility to infectious diseasefor example, C2 deficiency frequently leads to serious pyogenic bacterial infections. Deficiency in components of the membrane attack complex greatly enhances susceptibility to neisserial infections. Deficiencies in components of the alternative pathway are also knowneg, properdin deficiency is associated with greater susceptibility to meningococcal disease. There are also deficiencies in complement regulating proteins. For example, lack of the C1 inhibitor protein leads to hereditary angioedema.

CELL-MEDIATED IMMUNITY

Antibody-mediated immunity is most important in toxin-induced disorders, in microbial infections in which polysaccharide capsules determine virulence, and as a part of the host defense response to some viral infections.

However, in most microbial infections, it is cell-mediated immunity that imparts resistance and aids in recovery, though the cooperation of antibodies may be required. Furthermore, cell-mediated immunity is central in host defense against intracellular pathogens such as viruses and in combating tumor cells. The important role of cell-mediated immunity is underlined in clinical situations in which its suppression (eg, AIDS) results in overwhelming infections or tumors.

The cell-mediated immune system includes several cell types and their products. Macrophages present antigen to T lymphocytes via their cell surface-situated MHC proteins. T cell receptors recognize the antigen, and a specific T cell clone becomes activated and begins to proliferate. Because there are a number of T cell subpopulations and because their interactions (either directly or through the production of soluble cytokines) result in an intricate response system, selected aspects of the system are discussed separately below.

Development of T Cells

Within the thymus, T cell progenitor cells undergo differentiation (under the influence of thymic hormones) into T cell subpopulations. Much has been learned about this process in recent years, and the reader is referred to specialty texts for details. T cells differentiate in the thymus into committed cells expressing a specific T cell receptor and become positive for the expression of either the CD4 or CD8 coreceptor molecules. After differentiation in the thymus, T cells undergo positive and negative selection processes that result in the retention of only those cells with the most useful antigen receptors, ie, those that are nonself antigen-specific and self MHC-restricted. Those clones that are potentially antiself are either deleted or functionally inactivated (made *anergic*). A consequence of the selection processes is that about 95% of thymocytes die in the thymus. Only a minority of developing T cells express the appropriate receptors to be retained and to exit into the periphery where they may mature into effective T cells.

T Cell Proliferation & Differentiation

T cell proliferation depends on a variety of events. Naive T cells are activated when they encounter antigen on APCs. Antigen alone, however, is insufficient. Resting T cells must receive two signals for activation to occur. One signal comes from the T cell receptor interacting with an MHC-antigen complex presented on another cell. Cell adhesion molecules are important in the interaction between the two cell types. Recognition of antigen triggers a set of biochemical pathways in the cell that result eventually in DNA synthesis and mitosis. As described earlier, critical to the signaling event are the proteins of the CD3 complex associated with the T cell receptor chains. CD3 transduces the signal to the cytoplasm that results eventually in the transcription of, for example, IL-2 and IL-2 receptor genes. Release of IL-2 results in activation of other T cells bearing IL-2 receptors. Another costimulatory signal required for T cell activation comes from interaction between a molecule known as CD80 (B7), which is found on professional antigen-presenting cells such as B cells and macrophages, and its receptor partner, CD28, on the T cell. Without this second signal, exposure of T cells to antigen may lead to their functional inactivation (anergy) or death. Once naive T cells are activated by antigen-MHC complexes plus a costimulatory signal, they secrete the cytokine IL-2 and express IL-2 receptors. T cell proliferation can now be induced in an autocrine fashion. The proliferating T cells may then differentiate into effector cells.

T cells fall into two broad categories: CD4-expressing cells and CD8-expressing cells.

Proliferating CD4 T cells can become one of two main categories of effector T cell: T_H1 cells or T_H2 cells. The control of this differentiation lies largely in the cytokines elicited by interaction of the pathogen with the nonadaptive immune system. In an environment of IFN-γ released by innate system cells, T_H1 cells dominate and either activate macrophages or cause B cells to switch to IgG synthesis. In either case, this can promote bacterial clearance either by direct destruction in the macrophage or by destruction after phagocytosis of opsonized particles. In an environment where IL-4 is being produced, T_H 2 cells predominate and activate mast cells and eosinophils and cause B cells to synthesize IgE. This aids in the response to infection by worms, etc.

CD8 T cells can become fully activated effector cells either by interacting with MHC-antigen complexes on professional antigen-presenting cells that express high densities of costimulatory molecules (CD80; B7) or via the help of CD4 T cells that are interacting with the same antigen on a cell that expresses only low levels of costimulatory molecules. In the latter case, cytokines released from the helper T cell may help drive the final stages of activation of the CD8 T cell: (1) Cytotoxic (killer) T cells express CD8 and recognize foreign peptides generated from cytotoxic pathogens, such as viruses, associated with class I MHC molecules. (2) T_H 1 T cells express CD4 and recognize foreign peptides generated in the endocytic pathway that are associated with class II MHC molecules. These cells activate macrophages, or induce B cells to make IgG, enabling removal of infecting bacteria. (3) T_H 2 T cells express CD4 and recognize foreign peptides generated as above in association with class II MHC molecules. These cells activate B cells to secrete immunoglobulin E and activate mast cells and eosinophils, enabling removal of parasites such as worms.

T Cell Functions

T cells have both effector and regulatory functions.

EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS

Cell-mediated immunity and delayed hypersensitivity reactions are produced mainly against antigens of intracellular parasites, including viruses, fungi, some protozoa, and bacteria (eg, mycobacteria). A deficiency in cell-mediated immunity manifests itself primarily as marked susceptibility to infection by such microorganisms and to certain tumors.

In the response to allografts or tumors, CD4-positive cells can recognize foreign class II MHC molecules in addition to specific antigens and are activated. CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells then respond to the production of cytokines by CD4 cells, recognize class I MHC molecules on the "foreign" cells, and proceed to destroy those cells. In the case of virus-infected cells, the CD8 lymphocytes must recognize both virus-determined antigens and class I MHC molecules on infected cells.

REGULATORY FUNCTIONS

T cells play a central role in regulating both humoral (antibody-mediated) and cellular (cell-mediated) immunity. Antibody production by B cells usually requires the participation of T helper cells (T cell-dependent response), but antibodies to some antigens (eg, polymerized macromolecules such as bacterial capsular polysaccharide) are the result of a T cell-independent response.

In the T cell-dependent B cell response to antigen, both B and T cells must have the same class II MHC specificity. In such T cell-dependent responses, the antigen interacts with IgM on the B cell surface. It is then internalized and processed. Fragments of the antigen are returned to the B cell surface in association with class II MHC molecules. These interact with the T cell receptor on the T helper cell, which produces cytokines that enhance division of the B cells and also help them to differentiate into antibody-producing plasma cells, expressing immunoglobulin of other classes (eg, IgG, IgA). Just as for T cells, B cells require two signals for activation. One signal is from the B cell receptor for antigen, and the second costimulatory signal results from interaction of CD40 on the B cell with CD154 (CD40 ligand) on the helper T cell.

In other cell-mediated responses, antigen is processed by macrophages, and fragments are presented in conjunction with class II MHC molecules on the macrophage surface. These interact with the T cell receptor on T helper cells, which produce cytokines to stimulate growth of appropriate CD4 (T helper) cells. Important cytokines are briefly described below and in Table 83.

Table 83. Selected Important Cytokines.

IFN-α, -β
Macrophages (IFN-α), fibroblasts (IFN-β)
Antiviral
IFN-γ (interferon)
T cells, NK cells
Activates macrophages, T_H 1 differentiation
TNF-α (tumor necrosis factor alpha)
Macrophages, T cells
Cell activation, fever, cachexia, antitumor
TNF-β (tumor necrosis factor beta), LT (lymphotoxin)
T cells
Activates PMNs
IL-1 (interleukin-1)
Macrophages
Cell activation, fever
IL-2 (interleukin-2)
T cells
T cell growth and activation
IL-3 (interleukin-3)
T cells
Hematopoiesis
IL-4 (interleukin-4)
T cells, mast cells
B cell proliferation and switching to IgE, T_H 2 differentiation
IL-5 (interleukin-5)
T cells
Differentiation of eosinophils, activates B cells
IL-7 (interleukin-7)
Bone marrow stroma cells
T cell progenitor differentiation
IL-8 (interleukin-8)
Macrophages, T cells
Chemotactic for neutrophils
IL-10 (interleukin-10)
Macrophages, T cells
Inhibits activated macrophages and dendritic cells
IL-12 (interleukin-12)
Macrophages
Differentiation of T cells, activation of NK cells
GM-CSF (granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor)
T cells, macrophages, monocytes
Differentiation of myeloid progenitor cells
M-CSF (monocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor)

Macrophages, monocytes, fibroblasts
Differentiation of monocytes and macrophages
G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor)
Fibroblasts, monocytes, macrophages
Stimulates neutrophil production in bone marrow

Name	Major Cellular Source	Selected Biologic Effects

When an imbalance exists in the number of active CD4 and CD8 cells, cellular immune mechanisms are grossly impaired. Thus, in AIDS, the normal ratio of CD4 to CD8 cells (> 1.5) is lost. Some CD4 cells are destroyed by HIV. This results in a CD4:CD8 ratio of less than 1, leading to extreme susceptibility to development of many opportunistic infections and certain tumors.

CYTOKINES

Cytokines are the soluble mediators of host defense responses, both specific and nonspecific. As such they have a critically important role in the effector mechanisms involved in eliminating foreign antigens such as microorganisms. Table 83 lists a small number of important cytokines.

Many different cytokines are produced during immune responses. The same cytokine can be produced by multiple cell types and can have multiple effects on the same cell and can also act on many different cell types. Their effects are mediated by binding to specific receptors on target cells. Thus, cytokines are like other hormones in that their effects are mediated through receptors that signal target cells respond to. As can be appreciated from Table 83, cytokines (like other hormones) frequently act as growth factors.

HYPERSENSITIVITY

The term "hypersensitivity" denotes a condition in which an immune response results in exaggerated or inappropriate reactions that are harmful to the host. In a given individual, such reactions typically occur after the second contact with a specific antigen (allergen). The first contact is a necessary preliminary event that induces sensitization to that allergen.

There are four main types of hypersensitivity reactions. Types I, II, and III are antibody-mediated; type IV is T-cellmediated.

Type I: Immediate Hypersensitivity (Allergy)

Type I hypersensitivity manifests itself in tissue reactions occurring within seconds after the antigen combines with the matching antibody. It may take place as a systemic anaphylaxis (eg, after administration of heterologous proteins) or as a local reaction (eg, an atopic allergy such as hay fever).

The general mechanism of immediate hypersensitivity involves the following steps. An antigen induces the formation of IgE antibody, which binds firmly by its Fc portion to a receptor on mast cells and eosinophils. Some time later, a second contact of the individual with the same antigen results in the antigen's fixation to cell-bound IgE, cross-linking of IgE molecules, and release of pharmacologically active mediators from cells within seconds to minutes. Cyclic nucleotides and calcium are essential in the release of mediators. There may also be a second "late phase" that lasts for several days and involves infiltration of tissues with leukocytes, particularly eosinophils.

TYPE 1 HYPERSENSITIVITY MEDIATORS

Some important mediators and their main effects are listed below.

Histamine

Histamine exists in a preformed state in platelets and in granules of mast cells and eosinophils. Its release causes vasodilation, increased capillary permeability, and smooth muscle contraction (eg, bronchospasm). Antihistamine drugs can block histamine receptor sites and are relatively effective in allergic rhinitis. Histamine is one of the primary mediators of a Type I reaction.

Prostaglandins and Thromboxanes

Related to leukotrienes, prostaglandins and thromboxanes are derived from arachidonic acid via the cyclooxygenase pathway. Prostaglandins produce bronchoconstriction and dilation and increased permeability of capillaries. Thromboxanes aggregate platelets.

These mediators, along with cytokines such as TNF-α and IL-4, are referred to as secondary mediators of a Type I reaction.

TREATMENT AND PREVENTION OF ANAPHYLACTIC REACTIONS

Treatment aims to reverse the action of mediators by maintaining the airway, providing artificial ventilation if necessary, and supporting cardiac function. One or more of the following may be given: epinephrine, antihistamines, and corticosteroids.

Prevention relies on identification of the allergen (often by skin test) and subsequent avoidance.

ATOPY

Atopic hypersensitivity disorders exhibit a strong familial predisposition and are associated with elevated IgE levels. Predisposition to atopy is clearly genetic, but symptoms are induced by exposure to specific allergens. These antigens are typically environmental (eg, respiratory allergy to pollens, ragweed, or house dust) or foods (eg, intestinal allergy to shellfish). Common clinical manifestations include hay fever, asthma, eczema, and urticaria. Many sufferers give immediate type reactions to skin tests (injection, patch, scratch) using the offending antigen.

Type II: Hypersensitivity

Type II hypersensitivity involves the binding of IgG antibodies to cell surface antigens or extracellular matrix molecules. Antibody directed at cell surface antigens can activate complement (or other effectors) to damage the cells. The antibody (IgG or IgM) attaches to the antigen via the Fab region and acts as a bridge to complement via the Fc region. The result may be complement-mediated lysis, as occurs in hemolytic anemias, ABO transfusion reactions, and Rh hemolytic disease.

Drugs such as penicillin can attach to surface proteins on red blood cells and initiate antibody formation. Such autoimmune antibodies may then combine with the cell surface, with resulting hemolysis. Certain pathogens (eg, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*) can induce antibodies that cross-react with red cell antigens, resulting in hemolytic anemia. In rheumatic fever, antibodies against group A streptococci cross-react with cardiac tissue. In Goodpasture's syndrome, antibody forms against basement membranes of kidney and lung, resulting in severe damage to the membranes through activity of complement-attracted leukocytes. In some cases, antibodies to cell surface receptors alter function without cell injuryfor example, in Graves' disease, an autoantibody binds to the thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) receptor and by stimulating the thyroid causes hyperthyroidism.

Type III: Immune Complex Hypersensitivity

When antibody combines with its specific antigen, immune complexes are formed. Normally, they are promptly removed, but occasionally they persist and are deposited in tissues, resulting in several disorders. In persistent microbial or viral infections, immune complexes may be deposited in organs (eg, the kidneys), resulting in dysfunction. In autoimmune disorders, "self" antigens may elicit antibodies that bind to organ antigens or are deposited in organs and tissues as complexes, especially in joints (arthritis), kidneys (nephritis), and blood vessels (vasculitis). Finally, environmental antigens such as fungal spores and certain drugs can cause immune complex formation with disease.

Wherever immune complexes are deposited, they activate the complement system, and macrophages and neutrophils are attracted to the site, where they cause inflammation and tissue injury. There are two major forms of immune complex-mediated hypersensitivity. One is local (Arthus reaction) and typically elicited in the skin when a low dose of antigen is injected and immune complexes form locally. IgG antibodies are involved, and the resulting activation of complement leads to activation of mast cells and neutrophils, mediator release, and enhanced vascular permeability. This typically occurs in about 12 hours. A second form of type III hypersensitivity involves systemic immune complex disease. There are several examples, including diseases such as acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis.

Acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis is a well-known immune complex disease. Its onset occurs several weeks after a group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infection, particularly of the skin, and often occurs with infection due to nephritogenic types of streptococci. The complement level is typically low, suggesting an antigen-antibody reaction with consumption of complement. Lumpy deposits of immunoglobulin and complement component C3 are seen along glomerular basement membranes stained by immunofluorescence, suggesting antigen-antibody complexes. It is likely that streptococcal antigen-antibody complexes are filtered out by glomeruli, that they fix complement and attract neutrophils, and that the resulting inflammatory process damages the kidney.

Type IV: Cell-Mediated (Delayed) Hypersensitivity

Cell-mediated hypersensitivity is a function not of antibody but of specifically sensitized T lymphocytes that activate macrophages to cause an inflammatory response. The response is delayedie, it usually starts 23 days after contact with the antigen and often lasts for days.

CONTACT HYPERSENSITIVITY

Contact hypersensitivity occurs after sensitization with simple chemicals (eg, nickel, formaldehyde), plant materials (poison ivy, poison oak), topically applied drugs (eg, sulfonamides, neomycin), some cosmetics, soaps, and other substances. In all cases, small molecules enter the skin and then, acting as haptens, attach to body proteins to serve as complete antigen. Cell-mediated hypersensitivity is induced, particularly in skin. When the skin again comes in contact with the offending agent, the sensitized person develops erythema, itching, vesication, eczema, or necrosis of skin within 1248 hours. Patch testing on a small area of skin can sometimes identify the offending antigen. Subsequent avoidance of the material will prevent recurrences. The antigen-presenting cell in contact sensitivity is probably the Langerhans cell in the epidermis, which interacts with CD4 T_H 1 cells that drive the response.

TUBERCULIN-TYPE HYPERSENSITIVITY

Delayed hypersensitivity to antigens of microorganisms occurs in many infectious diseases and has been used as an aid in diagnosis. It is typified by the tuberculin reaction. When a small amount of tuberculin is injected into the epidermis of a patient previously exposed to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* there is little immediate reaction; gradually, however, induration and redness develop and reach a peak in 2472 hours. Mononuclear cells accumulate in the subcutaneous tissue, and there are CD4 T_H 1 cells in abundance. A positive skin test indicates that the person has been infected with the agent but does not imply the presence of current disease. However, a recent change of skin test response from negative to positive suggests recent infection and possible current activity.

A positive skin test response assists in diagnosis. For example, in leprosy, a positive skin test indicates tuberculoid disease, with active cell-mediated immunity, whereas a negative test suggests lepromatous leprosy, with weak cell-mediated immunity.

INADEQUATE IMMUNE RESPONSES TO INFECTIOUS AGENTS

There are a considerable number of inherited immune deficiency diseases that can affect the host response to infection. The reader is referred to other texts for details, but in brief, these defects can result in a variety of immune system changes, including reduced levels of antibody, phagocytic cell alterations, and lack of effector cells. Any of these changes can create a situation where the host is highly susceptible to infections. Some of these situations have been mentioned earlier in the chapterfor example, defects such as chronic granulomatous disease that reduce antibacterial activity.

In some cases, the pathogen ultimately causes immune suppressionan example is infection with HIV, which alters T cell immunity and allows further infection with opportunistic pathogens. In other situations, certain bacteria release toxins that function as superantigens, initially stimulating large numbers of T cells to proliferate but, because of the release of cytokines from T cells, ultimately suppressing the immune response and allowing the pathogen to multiply.

The pathogen itself may have mechanisms to actively avoid the immune response. For example, several pathogens alter their antigenic structure by mutation to evade the immune defenses. Influenza virus undergoes antigenic variation by two mutational mechanisms called antigenic shift and antigenic drift that create new antigenic phenotypes which evade the host's current immunity and allow reinfection with the virus. Several other pathogens have similar evasion strategiesfor example, trypanosomes alter their surface glycoproteins and streptococci alter their surface carbohydrate antigens.

Examples of other avoidance strategies were discussed earlier, eg, viral proteins that inhibit the development of an effective immune response. A strategy used by a few pathogens is to become inactive; for example, herpes simplex virus becomes transcriptionally inactive in a state referred to as latency in certain nerve cells after infection and may stay in this state until the immune response declines, whereupon a new cycle of viral replication may be initiated.

IMMUNOLOGIC DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Reactions of antigens and antibodies are highly specific. An antigen will react only with antibody elicited by that antigen or by a closely related antigen. Because of this high specificity, reactions between an antigen and an antibody can be used to identify one by means of the other.

Antigen-antibody reactions are used to identify specific components in mixtures of either one. Microorganisms and other cells possess a variety of antigens and may thus react with many different antibodies. Monoclonal antibodies are excellent tools for the identification of antigens because they have a single known specificity and are homogeneous. Antisera generated as part of an immune response contain complex mixtures of antibodies and are heterogeneous. This makes them less useful for specific tests. Possible cross-reactions between related antigens can limit the test's specificity.

Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)

Enzyme immunoassay, which has many variations, depends on the conjugation of an enzyme to an antibody. The enzyme is detected by assaying for enzyme activity with its substrate.

To measure antibody, known antigens are fixed to a solid phase (eg, plastic microdilution plate), incubated with test antibody dilutions, washed, and reincubated with an anti-immunoglobulin labeled with an enzyme (eg, horseradish peroxidase). Enzyme activity, measured by adding the specific substrate and estimating the color reaction, is a direct function of the amount of antibody bound. This type of assay is used, for example, to detect antibodies to HIV proteins in blood samples.

Immunofluorescence

Fluorescent dyes (eg, fluorescein, rhodamine) can be covalently attached to antibody molecules and made visible by ultraviolet light in the fluorescence microscope. Such labeled antibody can be used to identify antigens (eg, on the surfaces of bacteria such as streptococci or treponemes) or in cells in histologic section or other specimens. A direct immunofluorescence reaction occurs when known labeled antibody interacts directly with unknown antigen. An indirect immunofluorescence reaction occurs when a two-stage process is usedfor example, a known antigen is attached to a slide, unknown serum is added, and the preparation is washed. If the unknown serum antibody matches the antigen, it will remain fixed to it on the slide and can be detected by adding a fluorescent-labeled anti-immunoglobulin or other antibody-specific reagent such as staphylococcus protein A and examining the slide by ultraviolet microscopy.

Another use of fluorescent-tagged antibody molecules is to count and classify cells by flow cytometry using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS).

Flow cytometry analyzes a single-cell suspension flowing through a set of laser beams to measure the relative amount of light scattered by microscopic particles (providing information on relative size and granularity) and the relative fluorescence of those particles. For a mixture of white blood cells, it is relatively easy to separate the cells in this mixture into major classesfor example, small lymphocytes separated from granulocytes that are larger and contain more granules (scatter more light). With the availability of panels of monoclonal antibodies (that can be detected by fluorescent anti-immunoglobulin) to cell surface proteins, it is also possible to count subpopulations of cellsfor example, CD4 expressing helper T cells from CD8 expressing cytotoxic T cells, or antibody expressing B cells from T cells. This technology is widely used both in clinical medicine and in biomedical researcheg, to enumerate CD4 T cells in HIV-positive patients or to distinguish tumor cells from normal white blood cells.

Immunoblotting

Immunoblotting (sometimes called Western blotting) is a method for identifying a particular antigen in a complex mixture of proteins. The complex mixture of proteins is subjected to sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS)-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE). This separates the proteins according to molecular size. The gel is then covered with a membrane (often a sheet of nitrocellulose), and the proteins are "transferred" by electrophoresis to the membrane. The nitrocellulose membrane (blot) acquires a replica of the proteins separated by SDS-PAGE. During the transfer, the SDS is largely removed from the proteins and, at least for some proteins, there is refolding and enough conformation is restored so that antibodies can react with the proteins on the membrane.

The nitrocellulose membrane is then reacted with an enzyme-labeled antibody in a direct test or in an indirect test, with antibody followed by an enzyme-labeled anti-immunoglobulin. The protein antigen then becomes visible as a band on the membrane. None of the other proteins in the mixture are detected. This technique is used, for example, to confirm an HIV-positive ELISA test by demonstrating the presence of antibodies to specific HIV proteins in a patient's serum.

REFERENCES

Abbas AK, Lichtman AH: *Cellular and Molecular Immunology,* 5th ed. Updated. Saunders, 2005.

Benjamini E, Coico R, Sunshine G: *Immunology,* 5th ed. Wiley-Liss, 2003.

Coligan JE et al: *Current Protocols in Immunology.* Wiley. [Regular updates by section.]

Janeway CA Jr et al: *Immunobiology,* 6th ed. Garland, 2004.

Nairn R, Helbert M: *Immunology for Medical Students.* 2nd ed. Mosby/Elsevier, 2007.

Parslow TG et al (editors): *Medical Immunology,* 10th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2001

Paul WE (editor): *Fundamental Immunology,* 5th ed. Lippincott-Raven, 2003.

GLOSSARY

Adherence (adhesion, attachment): The process by which bacteria stick to the surfaces of host cells. Once bacteria have entered the body, adherence is a major initial step in the infection process. The terms adherence, adhesion, and attachment are often used interchangeably.

Carrier: A person or animal with asymptomatic infection that can be transmitted to another susceptible person or animal.

Infection: Multiplication of an infectious agent within the body. Multiplication of the bacteria that are part of the normal flora of the gastrointestinal tract, skin, etc, is generally not considered an infection; on the other hand, multiplication of pathogenic bacteria (eg, *Salmonella* species)—even if the person is asymptomatic—is deemed an infection.

Invasion: The process whereby bacteria, animal parasites, fungi, and viruses enter host cells or tissues and spread in the body.

Nonpathogen: A microorganism that does not cause disease; may be part of the normal flora.

Opportunistic pathogen: An agent capable of causing disease only when the host's resistance is impaired (ie, when the patient is "immunocompromised").

Pathogen: A microorganism capable of causing disease.

Pathogenicity: The ability of an infectious agent to cause disease. (See also virulence.)

Toxigenicity: The ability of a microorganism to produce a toxin that contributes to the development of disease.

Virulence: The quantitative ability of an agent to cause disease. Virulent agents cause disease when introduced into the host in small numbers. Virulence involves adherence, invasion, and toxigenicity (see above).

INTRODUCTION

The pathogenesis of bacterial infection includes initiation of the infectious process and the mechanisms that lead to the development of signs and symptoms of disease. Characteristics of bacteria that are pathogens include transmissibility, adherence to host cells, invasion of host cells and tissues, toxigenicity, and ability to evade the host's immune system. Many infections caused by bacteria that are commonly considered to be pathogens are inapparent or asymptomatic. Disease occurs if the bacteria or immunologic reactions to their presence cause sufficient harm to the person.

Terms frequently used in describing aspects of pathogenesis are defined in the Glossary. Refer to the Glossary in Chapter 8 for definitions of terms used in immunology and in describing aspects of the host's response to infection.

IDENTIFYING BACTERIA THAT CAUSE DISEASE

Humans and animals have abundant normal flora that usually do not produce disease (see Chapter 11) but achieve a balance that ensures the survival, growth, and propagation of both the bacteria and the host. Some bacteria that are important causes of disease are cultured commonly with the normal flora (eg, *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Staphylococcus aureus*). Sometimes bacteria that are clearly pathogens (eg, *Salmonella typhi*) are present, but infection remains latent or subclinical and the host is a "carrier" of the bacteria.

It can be difficult to show that a specific bacterial species is the cause of a particular disease. In 1884, Robert Koch proposed a series of postulates that have been applied broadly to link many specific bacterial species with particular diseases. Koch's postulates are summarized in Table 9–1.

Table 9–1. Guidelines for Establishing the Causes of Infectious Diseases.

Koch's Postulates	Molecular Koch's Postulates	Molecular Guidelines for Establishing Microbial Disease Causation
1. The microorganism should be found in all cases of the disease in question, and its distribution in the body should be in accordance with the lesions observed.	1. The phenotype or property under investigation should be significantly associated with pathogenic strains of a species and not with nonpathogenic strains.	1. The nucleic acid sequence of a putative pathogen should be present in most cases of an infectious disease, and preferentially in anatomic sites where pathology is evident.
2. The microorganism should be grown in pure culture in vitro (or outside the body of the host) for several generations.	2. Specific inactivation of the gene or genes associated with the suspected virulence trait should lead to a measurable decrease in pathogenicity or virulence.	2. The nucleic acid sequence of a putative pathogen should be absent from most healthy controls. If the sequence is detected in healthy controls, it should be present with a lower prevalence as compared with patients with disease, and in lower copy numbers.
3. When such a pure culture is inoculated into susceptible animal species, the typical	3. Reversion or replacement of the mutated gene with the wild-type gene should	3. The copy number of a pathogen-associated nucleic acid sequence should decrease or become undetectable with resolution of the

Koch's Postulates	Molecular Koch's Postulates	Molecular Guidelines for Establishing Microbial Disease Causation
disease must result.	lead to restoration of pathogenicity or virulence.	disease (eg, with effective treatment) and should increase with relapse or recurrence of disease.
4. The microorganism must again be isolated from the lesions of such experimentally produced disease.		4. The presence of a pathogen-associated nucleic acid sequence in healthy subjects should help predict the subsequent development of disease.
		5. The nature of the pathogen inferred from analysis of its nucleic acid sequence should be consistent with the known biologic characteristics of closely related organisms and the nature of the disease. The significance of a detected microbial sequence is increased when microbial genotype predicts microbial morphology, pathology, clinical features of disease, and host response.

Koch's postulates have remained a mainstay of microbiology; however, since the late 19th century, many microorganisms that do not meet the criteria of the postulates have been shown to cause disease. For example, *Treponema pallidum* (syphilis) and *Mycobacterium leprae* (leprosy) cannot be grown in vitro; however, there are animal models of infection with these agents. In another example, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (gonorrhea), there is no animal model of infection even though the bacteria can readily be cultured in vitro; experimental infection in humans has been produced, which substitutes for an animal model.

In other instances, Koch's postulates have been at least partially satisfied by showing bacterial pathogenicity in an in vitro model of infection rather than in an animal model. For example, some forms of *E coli*-induced diarrhea (Chapter 16) have been defined by the interaction of the *E coli* with host cells in culture.

The host's immune responses also should be considered when an organism is being investigated as the possible cause of a disease. Thus, development of a rise in specific antibody during recovery from disease is an important adjunct to Koch's postulates.

Modern-day microbial genetics has opened new frontiers to study pathogenic bacteria and differentiate them from nonpathogens. Molecular cloning has allowed investigators to isolate and modify specific virulence genes and study them with models of infection. The ability to study genes associated with virulence has led to a proposed form of molecular Koch's postulates. These postulates are summarized in Table 9–1.

Some pathogens are difficult or impossible to grow in culture, and for that reason it is not possible with Koch's postulates or the molecular Koch's postulates to establish the cause of their associated diseases. The polymerase chain reaction is used to amplify microorganism-specific nucleic acid sequences from host tissues or fluids. The sequences are used to identify the infecting organisms. The molecular guidelines for establishing microbial disease causation are listed in Table 9–1. This approach has been used to establish the causes of several diseases, including Whipple's disease *(Tropheryma whipplei),* bacillary angiomatosis *(Bartonella henselae),* human monocytic ehrlichiosis *(Ehrlichia chaffeensis),* hantavirus pulmonary syndrome

(Sin Nombre virus), and Kaposi's sarcoma (human herpesvirus 8).

Analysis of infection and disease through the application of principles such as Koch's postulates leads to classification of bacteria as pathogens, opportunistic pathogens, or nonpathogens. Some bacterial species are always considered to be pathogens, and their presence is abnormal; examples include *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (tuberculosis) and *Yersinia pestis* (plague). Such bacteria readily meet the criteria of Koch's postulates. Other species are commonly part of the normal flora of humans (and animals) but also can frequently cause disease. For example, *Escherichia coli* is part of the gastrointestinal flora of normal humans but is also a common cause of urinary tract infections, traveler's diarrhea, and other diseases. Strains of *E coli* that cause disease are differentiated from those that do not by determining (1) whether they are virulent in animals or in vitro models of infection and (2) whether they have a genetic makeup that is significantly associated with production of disease. Other bacteria (eg, *Pseudomonas* species, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia,* and many yeasts and molds) only cause disease in immunosuppressed and debilitated persons and are opportunistic pathogens.

TRANSMISSION OF INFECTION

Bacteria (and other microorganisms) adapt to the environment, including animals and humans, where they normally reside and subsist. In doing so, the bacteria ensure their survival and enhance the possibility of transmission. By producing asymptomatic infection or mild disease, rather than death of the host, microorganisms that normally live in people enhance the possibility of transmission from one person to another.

Some bacteria that commonly cause disease in humans exist primarily in animals and incidentally infect humans. For example, *Salmonella* and *Campylobacter* species typically infect animals and are transmitted in food products to humans. Other bacteria produce infection of humans that is inadvertent, a mistake in the normal life cycle of the organism; the organisms have not adapted to humans, and the disease they produce may be severe. For example, *Yersinia pestis* (plague) has a well-established life cycle in rodents and rodent fleas, and transmission by the fleas to humans is inadvertent; *Bacillus anthracis* (anthrax) lives in the environment, occasionally infects animals, and is transmitted to humans by products such as raw hair from infected animals. The *Clostridium* species are ubiquitous in the environment and are transmitted to humans by ingestion (eg, *C perfringens* gastroenteritis and *C botulinum* [botulism]) or when wounds are contaminated by soil (eg, *C perfringens* [gas gangrene] and *C tetani* [tetanus]).

The clinical manifestations of diseases (eg, diarrhea, cough, genital discharge) produced by microorganisms often promote transmission of the agents. Examples of clinical syndromes and how they enhance transmission of the causative bacteria are as follows: *Vibrio cholerae* can cause voluminous diarrhea which may contaminate salt and fresh water; drinking water or seafood such as oysters and crabs may be contaminated; ingestion of contaminated water or seafood can produce infection and disease. Similarly, contamination of food products with sewage containing *E coli* that cause diarrhea results in transmission of the bacteria. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (tuberculosis) naturally infects only humans; it produces respiratory disease with cough and production of aerosols, resulting in transmission of the bacteria from one person to another.

Many bacteria are transmitted from one person to another on hands. A person with *S aureus* carriage in the anterior nares may rub his nose, pick up the staphylococci on the hands, and spread the bacteria to other parts of the body or to another person, where infection results. Many opportunistic pathogens that cause nosocomial infections are transmitted from one patient to another on the hands of hospital personnel. Hand washing is thus an important component of infection control.

The most frequent portals of entry of pathogenic bacteria into the body are the sites where mucous membranes meet with the skin: respiratory (upper and lower airways), gastrointestinal (primarily mouth), genital, and urinary tracts. Abnormal areas of mucous membranes and skin (eg, cuts, burns, and other injuries) are also frequent sites of entry. Normal skin and mucous membranes provide the primary defense against infection. To cause disease, pathogens must overcome these barriers.

THE INFECTIOUS PROCESS

Once in the body, bacteria must attach or adhere to host cells, usually epithelial cells. After the bacteria have established a primary site of infection, they multiply and spread directly through tissues or via the lymphatic system to the bloodstream. This infection (bacteremia) can be transient or persistent. Bacteremia allows bacteria to spread widely in the body and permits them to reach tissues particularly suitable for their multiplication.

Pneumococcal pneumonia is an example of the infectious process. *S pneumoniae* can be cultured from the nasopharynx of 5–40% of healthy people. Occasionally, pneumococci from the nasopharynx are aspirated into the lungs; aspiration occurs most commonly in debilitated people and in settings such as coma when normal gag and cough reflexes are diminished. Infection develops in the terminal air spaces of the lungs in persons who do not have protective antibodies against that capsular polysaccharide type of pneumococci. Multiplication of the pneumococci and resultant inflammation lead to pneumonia. The pneumococci enter the lymphatics of the lung and move to the bloodstream. Between 10% and 20% of persons with pneumococcal pneumonia have bacteremia at the time the diagnosis of pneumonia is made. Once bacteremia occurs, the pneumococci can spread to secondary sites of infection (eg, cerebrospinal fluid, heart valves, joint spaces). The major complications of pneumococcal pneumonia are meningitis, endocarditis, and septic arthritis.

The infectious process in cholera involves ingestion of *Vibrio cholerae,* chemotactic attraction of the bacteria to the gut epithelium, motility of the bacteria by a single polar flagellum, and penetration of the mucous layer on the intestinal surface. The *V cholerae* adherence to the epithelial cell surface is mediated by pili and possibly other adhesins. Production of cholera toxin results in flow of chloride and water into the lumen of the gut, causing diarrhea and electrolyte imbalance.

GENOMICS AND BACTERIAL PATHOGENICITY

Bacteria are haploid (Chapter 7) and limit genetic interactions that might change their chromosomes and potentially disrupt their adaptation and survival in specific environmental niches.

The Clonal Nature of Bacterial Pathogens

One important result of the conservation of chromosomal genes in bacteria is that the organisms are clonal. For most pathogens there are only one or a few clonal types that are spread in the world during a period of time. For example, epidemic serogroup A meningococcal meningitis occurs in Asia, the Middle East, and Africa, and occasionally spreads into Northern Europe and the Americas. On several occasions, over a period of decades, single clonal types of serogroup A *Neisseria meningitidis* have been observed to appear in one geographic area and subsequently spread to others with resultant epidemic disease. There are many types of *H influenzae*, but only clonal *H influenzae* type b is commonly associated with disease. There are two clonal types of *Bordetella pertussis*, both associated with disease. Similarly, *Salmonella typhi* (typhoid fever) from patients is of two clonal types. There are, however, mechanisms that bacteria use, or have used a long time in the past, to transmit virulence genes from one to another.

Mobile Genetic Elements

A primary mechanism for exchange of genetic information between bacteria is transfer of extrachromosomal mobile genetic elements: plasmids or phages. The genes that code for many bacterial virulence factors commonly are on plasmids or are carried by phages. Transfer of these mobile genetic elements between members of one species or, less commonly, between species can result in transfer of virulence factors. Sometimes the genetic elements are part of highly mobile DNA (transposons; Chapter 7) and there is recombination between the extrachromosomal DNA and the chromosome (illegitimate or nonhomologous recombination; Chapter 7). If this recombination occurs, the genes coding for virulence factors may become chromosomal. A few examples of plasmid- and phage-encoded virulence factors are in Table 9–2.

Table 9–2. Examples of Virulence Factors Encoded by Genes on Mobile Genetic Elements.

Genus/Species	Virulence Factor and Disease
Plasmid encoded	
Escherichia coli	Heat-labile and heat-stable enterotoxins that cause diarrhea
E coli	Hemolysin (cytotoxin) of invasive disease and urinary tract infections
E coli and *Shigella species*	Adherence factors and gene products involved in mucosal invasion
Bacillus anthracis	Capsule essential for virulence (on one plasmid)
	Edema factor, lethal factor, protective antigen all essential for virulence (on another plasmid)
Phage encoded	
Clostridium botulinum	Botulinum toxin that causes paralysis
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	Diphtheria toxin that inhibits human protein synthesis
Vibrio cholerae	Cholera toxin that can cause a severe watery diarrhea

Pathogenicity Islands

Large groups of genes that are associated with pathogenicity and are located on the bacterial chromosome are termed pathogenicity islands (PAIs). They are large organized groups of genes, usually 10 to 200 kilobases in size. The major properties of PAIs are as follows: they have one or more virulence genes; they are present in the genome of pathogenic members of a species, but absent in the nonpathogenic members; they are large; they typically have a different guanine plus cytosine (G + C) content than the rest of the bacterial genome; they are commonly associated with tRNA genes; they are often found with parts of the genome associated with mobile genetic elements; they often have genetic instability; and they often represent mosaic structures with components acquired at different times. Collectively, the properties of PAIs suggest that they originate from gene transfer from foreign species. A few examples of pathogenicity island virulence factors are in Table 9–3.

Table 9–3. A Few Examples of the Very Large Number of Pathogenicity Islands of Human Pathogens.

Genus/Species	PAI Name	Virulence Characteristics
E coli	PAI I_{536}	Alpha hemolysin, fimbriae, adhesions, in urinary tract infections
E coli	PAI I_{J96}	Alpha hemolysin, P-pilus in urinary tract infections
E coli (EHEC)	O1#7	Macrophage toxin of enterohemorrhagic *E coli* (EHEC)
Salmonella typhimurium	SPI-1	Invasion and damage of host cells; diarrhea
Yersinia pestis	HPI/pgm	Genes that enhance iron uptake
Vibrio cholerae El Tor O1	VPI-1	Neuraminidase, utilization of amino sugars
Staphylococcus aureus	SCC mec	Methicillin and other antibiotic resistance
Staphylococcus aureus	SaPI1	Toxic shock syndrome toxin-1, enterotoxin
Enterococcus faecalis	NP^m	Cytolysin, biofilm formation

REGULATION OF BACTERIAL VIRULENCE FACTORS

Pathogenic bacteria (and other pathogens) have adapted both to saprophytic or free-living states, possibly environments outside of the body, and to the human host. In the adaptive process, pathogens husband their metabolic needs and products. They have evolved complex signal transduction systems to regulate the genes important for virulence. Environmental signals often control the expression of the virulence genes. Common signals include temperature, iron availability, osmolality, growth phase, pH, and specific ions (eg, Ca^{2+}) or nutrient factors. A few examples are presented in the following paragraphs.

The gene for diphtheria toxin from *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is carried on temperate bacteriophages. Toxin is produced only by strains lysogenized by the phages. Toxin production is greatly enhanced when *C diphtheriae* is grown in a medium with low iron.

Expression of virulence genes of *Bordetella pertussis* is enhanced when the bacteria are grown at 37 °C and suppressed when they are grown at lower temperatures or in the presence of high concentrations of magnesium sulfate or nicotinic acid.

The virulence factors of *Vibrio cholerae* are regulated on multiple levels and by many environmental factors. Expression of the cholera toxin is higher at pH 6.0 than at pH 8.5 and higher also at 30 °C than at 37 °C. Osmolality and amino acid composition also are important. As many as 20 other genes of *V cholerae* are similarly regulated.

Yersinia pestis produces a series of virulence plasmid-encoded proteins. One of these is an antiphagocytic fraction 1 capsular protein that results in antiphagocytic function. This protein is expressed maximally at 35–37 °C, the host temperature, and minimally at 20–28 °C, the flea temperature at which antiphagocytic activity is not needed. The regulation of other virulence factors in *Yersinia* species also is influenced by environmental factors.

Motility of bacteria enables them to spread and multiply in their environmental niches or in patients. *Yersinia enterocolitica* and *Listeria monocytogenes* are common in the environment where motility is important to them. Presumably, motility is not important in the pathogenesis of the diseases caused by these bacteria. *Y enterocolitica* is motile when grown at 25 °C but not when grown at 37 °C. Similarly, *Listeria* is motile when grown at 25 °C and not motile or minimally motile when grown at 37 °C.

BACTERIAL VIRULENCE FACTORS

Many factors determine bacterial virulence, or ability to cause infection and disease.

Adherence Factors

Once bacteria enter the body of the host, they must adhere to cells of a tissue surface. If they did not adhere, they would be swept away by mucus and other fluids that bathe the tissue surface. Adherence, which is only one step in the infectious process, is followed by development of microcolonies and subsequent steps in the pathogenesis of infection.

The interactions between bacteria and tissue cell surfaces in the adhesion process are complex. Several factors play important roles: surface hydrophobicity and net surface charge, binding molecules on bacteria (ligands), and host cell receptor interactions. Bacteria and host cells commonly have net negative surface charges and, therefore, repulsive electrostatic forces. These forces are overcome by hydrophobic and other more specific interactions between bacteria and host cells. In general, the more hydrophobic the bacterial cell surface, the greater the adherence to the host cell. Different strains of bacteria within a species may vary widely in their hydrophobic surface properties and ability to adhere to host cells.

Bacteria also have specific surface molecules that interact with host cells. Many bacteria have pili, hair-like appendages that extend from the bacterial cell surface and help mediate adherence of the bacteria to host cell surfaces. For example, some *E coli* strains have type 1 pili, which adhere to epithelial cell receptors containing D-mannose; adherence can be blocked in vitro by addition of D-mannose to the medium. *E coli* organisms that cause urinary tract infections commonly do not have D-mannose-mediated adherence but have P-pili, which attach to a portion of the P blood group antigen; the minimal recognition structure is the disaccharide α-D-galactopyranosyl-(1–4)-β-D-galactopyranoside (GAL-GAL binding adhesion). The *E coli* that cause diarrheal diseases (see Chapter 16) have pilus-mediated adherence to intestinal epithelial cells, though the pili and specific molecular mechanisms of adherence appear to be different depending upon the form of the *E coli* that induce the diarrhea.

Other specific ligand-receptor mechanisms have evolved to promote bacterial adherence to host cells, illustrating the diverse mechanisms employed by bacteria. Group A streptococci *(Streptococcus pyogenes)* (see Chapter 15) also have hair-like appendages, termed fimbriae, that extend from the cell surface. Lipoteichoic acid, protein F, and M protein are found on the fimbriae. The lipoteichoic acid and protein F cause adherence of the streptococci to buccal epithelial cells; this adherence is mediated by fibronectin, which acts as the host cell receptor molecule. M protein acts as an antiphagocytic molecule and is a major virulence factor.

Antibodies that act against the specific bacterial ligands that promote adherence (eg, pili and lipoteichoic acid) can block adherence to host cells and protect the host from infection.

Invasion of Host Cells & Tissues

For many disease-causing bacteria, invasion of the host's epithelium is central to the infectious process.

Some bacteria (eg, *Salmonella* species) invade tissues through the junctions between epithelial cells. Other bacteria (eg, *Yersinia* species, *N gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis*) invade specific types of the host's epithelial cells and may subsequently enter the tissue. Once inside the host cell, bacteria may remain enclosed in a vacuole composed of the host cell membrane, or the vacuole membrane may be dissolved and bacteria may be dispersed in the cytoplasm. Some bacteria (eg, *Shigella* species) multiply within host cells, whereas other bacteria do not.

"Invasion" is the term commonly used to describe the entry of bacteria into host cells, implying an active role for the organisms and a passive role for the host cells. In many infections, the bacteria produce virulence factors that influence the host cells, causing them to engulf (ingest) the bacteria. The host cells play a very active role in the process.

Toxin production and other virulence properties are generally independent of the ability of bacteria to invade cells and tissues. For example, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is able to invade the epithelium of the nasopharynx and cause symptomatic sore throat even when the *C diphtheriae* strains are nontoxigenic.

In vitro studies with cells in tissue culture have helped characterize the mechanisms of invasion for some pathogens; however, the in vitro models have not necessarily provided a complete picture of the invasion process. Full understanding of the invasion process, as it occurs in naturally acquired infection, has required study of genetically engineered mutants and their ability to infect susceptible animals and humans. Thus, understanding of eukaryotic cell invasion by bacteria requires satisfying much of Koch's postulates and the molecular Koch's postulates. The following paragraphs contain examples of bacterial invasion of host cells as part of the infectious process.

Shigella species adhere to host cells in vitro. Commonly, HeLa cells are used; these undifferentiated unpolarized cells were derived from a cervical carcinoma. The adherence causes actin polymerization in the nearby portion of the HeLa cell, which induces the formation of pseudopods by the HeLa cells and engulfment of the bacteria. Adherence and invasion are mediated at least in part by products of genes located on a large plasmid common to many shigellae. There are multiple proteins, including the invasion plasmid antigens (IpA-D), that contribute to the process. Once inside the HeLa cells, the shigellae either are released or escape from the phagocytic vesicle, where they multiply in the cytoplasm. Actin polymerization propels the shigellae within an HeLa cell and from one cell into another. In vivo the shigellae adhere to integrins on the surface of M cells in Peyer's patches and not to the polarized absorptive cells of the mucosa. M cells normally sample antigens and present them to macrophages in the submucosa. The shigellae are phagocytosed by the M cells and pass through the M cells into the underlying collection of macrophages. Shigellae inside the M cells and macrophages can cause these cells to die by activating the normal cell death process (apoptosis). The shigellae spread to adjacent mucosal cells in a manner similar to the in vitro model, by actin polymerization that propels the bacteria.

From studies using cells in vitro, it appears that the adherence-invasion process with *Y enterocolitica* is similar to that of shigella. Yersiniae adhere to the host cell membrane and cause it to extrude protoplasmic projections. The bacteria are then engulfed by the host cell with vacuole formation; the vacuole membrane later dissolves. Invasion is enhanced when the bacteria are grown at 22 °C rather than at 37 °C. Once yersiniae have entered the cell, the vacuolar membrane dissolves and the bacteria are released into the cytoplasm. In vivo, the yersiniae are thought to adhere to and invade the M cells of Peyer's patches rather than the polarized absorptive mucosal cells, much like shigellae.

L monocytogenes from the environment is ingested in food. Presumably, the bacteria adhere to and invade the intestinal mucosa, reach the bloodstream, and disseminate. The pathogenesis of this process has been studied in vitro. *L monocytogenes* adheres to and readily invades macrophages and cultured undifferentiated intestinal cells. The listeriae induce engulfment by the host cells. A protein, internalin, has a primary role in this process. The engulfment process, movement within a cell and movement between cells, requires actin polymerization to propel the bacteria, as with shigellae.

Legionella pneumophila infects pulmonary macrophages and causes pneumonia. Adherence of the legionellae to the macrophage induces formation of a long, thin pseudopod which then coils around the bacteria, forming a vesicle (coiling phagocytosis). The vesicle remains intact, phagolysosome fusion is inhibited, and the bacteria multiply within the vesicle.

Neisseria gonorrhoeae uses pili as primary adhesins and opacity associated proteins (Opa) as secondary adhesins to host cells. Certain Opa proteins mediate adherence to polymorphonuclear cells. Some gonococci survive after phagocytosis by these cells. Pili and Opa together enhance the invasion of cells cultured in vitro. In uterine (fallopian) tube organ cultures, the gonococci adhere to the microvilli of nonciliated cells and appear to induce engulfment by these cells. The gonococci multiply intracellularly and migrate to the subepithelial space by an unknown mechanism.

Toxins

Toxins produced by bacteria are generally classified into two groups: exotoxins and endotoxins. The primary features of the two groups are listed in Table 9–4.

Table 9–4. Characteristics of Exotoxins and Endotoxins (Lipopolysaccharides).

Exotoxins	Endotoxins
Excreted by living cell; high concentrations in liquid medium.	Integral part of the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria. Released on bacterial death and in part during growth. May not need to be released to have biologic activity.
Produced by both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria.	Found only in gram-negative bacteria.
Polypeptides with a molecular weight of 10,000–900,000.	Lipopolysaccharide complexes. Lipid A portion probably responsible for toxicity.
Relatively unstable; toxicity often destroyed rapidly by heating at temperatures above 60°C.	Relatively stable; withstand heating at temperatures above 60°C for hours without loss of toxicity.
Highly antigenic; stimulate formation of high-titer antitoxin. Antitoxin neutralizes toxin.	Weakly immunogenic; antibodies are antitoxic and protective. Relationship between antibody titers and protection from disease is less clear than with exotoxins.
Converted to antigenic, nontoxic toxoids by formalin, acid, heat, etc. Toxoids are used to immunize (eg, tetanus toxoid).	Not converted to toxoids.
Highly toxic; fatal to animals in microgram quantities or less.	Moderately toxic; fatal for animals in tens to hundreds of micrograms.

Exotoxins	Endotoxins
Usually bind to specific receptors on cells.	Specific receptors not found on cells.
Usually do not produce fever in the host.	Usually produce fever in the host by release of interleukin-1 and other mediators.
Frequently controlled by extrachromosomal genes (eg, plasmids).	Synthesis directed by chromosomal genes.

EXOTOXINS

Many gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria produce exotoxins of considerable medical importance. Some of these toxins have had major roles in world history. For example, tetanus caused by the toxin of *C tetani* killed as many as 50,000 soldiers of the Axis powers in World War II; the Allied forces, however, immunized military personnel against tetanus, and very few died of that disease. Vaccines have been developed for some of the exotoxin-mediated diseases and continue to be important in the prevention of disease. These vaccines—called toxoids—are made from exotoxins, which are modified so that they are no longer toxic. Many exotoxins consist of A and B subunits. The B subunit generally mediates adherence of the toxin complex to a host cell and aids entrance of the exotoxin into the host cell. The A subunit provides the toxic activity. Examples of some pathogenetic mechanisms associated with exotoxins are given below. Other toxins of specific bacteria are discussed in the chapters covering those bacteria.

C diphtheriae is a gram-positive rod that can grow on the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract or in minor skin wounds (Chapter 13). Strains of *C diphtheriae* that carry a temperate bacteriophage with the structural gene for the toxin are toxigenic and produce diphtheria toxin and cause diphtheria. Many factors regulate toxin production; when the availability of inorganic iron is the factor limiting the growth rate, then maximal toxin production occurs. The toxin molecule is secreted as a single polypeptide molecule (MW 62,000). This native toxin is enzymatically degraded into two fragments, A and B, linked together by a disulfide bond. Fragment B (MW 40,700) binds to specific host cell receptors and facilitates the entry of fragment A (MW 21,150) into the cytoplasm. Fragment A inhibits peptide chain elongation factor EF-2 by catalyzing a reaction that yields free nicotinamide plus an inactive adenosine diphosphate-ribose-EF-2 complex. Arrest of protein synthesis disrupts normal cellular physiologic functions. Diphtheria toxin is very potent.

C tetani is an anaerobic gram-positive rod that causes tetanus (Chapter 12). *C tetani* from the environment contaminates wounds, and the spores germinate in the anaerobic environment of the devitalized tissue. Infection often is minor and not clinically apparent. The vegetative forms of *C tetani* produce the toxin tetanospasmin (MW 150,000) that is cleaved by a bacterial protease into two peptides (MW 50,000 and MW 100,000) linked by a disulfide bond. The toxin initially binds to receptors on the presynaptic membranes of motor neurons. It then migrates by the retrograde axonal transport system to the cell bodies of these neurons to the spinal cord and brain stem. The toxin diffuses to terminals of inhibitory cells including both glycinergic interneurons and γ-aminobutyric acid-secreting neurons from the brain stem. The toxin degrades synaptobrevin, a protein required for docking of neurotransmitter vesicles on the presynaptic membrane. Release of the inhibitory glycine and γ-aminobutyric is blocked, and the motor neurons are not inhibited. Spastic paralysis results. Extremely small amounts of toxin can be lethal for humans. Tetanus is totally preventable in immunologically normal people by immunization with tetanus toxoid.

C botulinum causes botulism. It is found in soil or water and may grow in foods (canned, vacuum-packed, etc) if the environment is appropriately anaerobic. An exceedingly potent toxin (the most potent toxin known) is produced. It is heat-labile and is destroyed by sufficient heating. There are multiple distinct serologic types of toxin. Types A, B, and E are most commonly associated with human disease. The toxin is very similar to tetanus toxin, with a 150,000 MW protein that is cleaved into 100,000 MW and 50,000 MW proteins linked by a disulfide bond. Botulinum toxin is absorbed from the gut and binds to receptors of presynaptic membranes of motor neurons of the peripheral nervous system and cranial nerves. Proteolysis, by the light chain of botulinum toxin, of target proteins in the neurons inhibits the release of acetylcholine at the synapse, resulting in lack of muscle contraction and paralysis.

Spores of *C perfringens* are introduced into wounds by contamination with soil or feces. In the presence of necrotic tissue (an anaerobic environment), spores germinate and vegetative cells can produce several different toxins. Many of these are necrotizing and hemolytic and—together with distention of tissue by gas formed from carbohydrates and interference with blood supply—favor the spread of gas gangrene. The alpha toxin of *C perfringens* is a lecithinase that damages cell membranes by splitting lecithin to phosphorylcholine and diglyceride. Theta toxin also has a necrotizing effect. Collagenases and DNAses are produced by clostridiae as well.

Some *S aureus* strains growing on mucous membranes (eg, the vagina in association with menstruation), or in wounds, elaborate toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1), which causes toxic shock syndrome (Chapter 14). The illness is characterized by shock, high fever, and a diffuse red rash that later desquamates; multiple other organ systems are involved as well. TSST-1 is a super antigen and stimulates lymphocytes to produce large amounts of IL-1 and TNF (Chapter 8). The major clinical manifestations of the disease appear to be secondary to the effects of the cytokines. TSST-1 may act synergistically with low levels of lipopolysaccharide to yield the toxic effect. Many of the systemic effects of TSST-1 are similar to those of toxicity due to lipopolysaccharide (below).

Some strains of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci produce pyrogenic exotoxin A that is similar to or the same as streptococcal erythrogenic toxin, which results in scarlet fever. Rapidly progressive soft tissue infection by streptococci that produce the pyrogenic exotoxin A has many clinical manifestations similar to those of staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome. The pyrogenic exotoxin A also is a super antigen that acts in a manner similar to TSST-1.

EXOTOXINS ASSOCIATED WITH DIARRHEAL DISEASES AND FOOD POISONING

Exotoxins associated with diarrheal diseases are frequently called enterotoxins. (See also Table 48–3.) Characteristics of some important enterotoxins are discussed below.

V cholerae has produced epidemic diarrheal disease (cholera) in many parts of the world (Chapter 18) and is another toxin-produced disease of historical and current importance. After entering the host via contaminated food or drink, *V cholerae* penetrates the intestinal mucosa and attaches to microvilli of the brush border of gut epithelial cells. *V cholerae,* usually of the serotype O1 (and O139), can produce an enterotoxin with a molecular weight of 84,000. The toxin consists of two subunits—A, which is split into two peptides, A_1 and A_2, linked by a disulfide bond, and B. Subunit B has five identical peptides and rapidly binds the toxin to cell membrane ganglioside molecules. Subunit A enters the cell membrane and causes a large increase in adenylyl cyclase activity and in the concentration of cAMP. The net effect is rapid secretion of electrolytes into the small bowel lumen, with impairment of sodium and chloride absorption and loss of bicarbonate. Life-threatening massive diarrhea (eg, 20–30 L/d) can occur, and acidosis develops. The deleterious effects of cholera are due to fluid loss and acid-base imbalance; treatment, therefore, is by electrolyte and fluid replacement.

Some strains of *S aureus* produce enterotoxins while growing in meat, dairy products, or other foods. In typical cases, the food has been recently prepared but not properly refrigerated. There are at least six distinct types of the staphylococcal enterotoxin. After the preformed toxin is ingested, it is absorbed in the gut, where it stimulates neural receptors. The stimulus is transmitted to the vomiting center in the central nervous system. Vomiting, often projectile, results within hours. Diarrhea is less frequent. Staphylococcal food poisoning is the most common form of food poisoning. *S aureus* enterotoxins are super antigens.

Enterotoxins are also produced by some strains of *Y enterocolitica* (Chapter 20), *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* (Chapter 18), *Aeromonas* species (Chapter 18), and other bacteria, but the role of these toxins in pathogenesis is not as well defined. The enterotoxin produced by *C perfringens* is discussed in Chapter 12.

LIPOPOLYSACCHARIDES OF GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA

The lipopolysaccharides (LPS, endotoxin) of gram-negative bacteria are derived from cell walls and are often liberated when the bacteria lyse. The substances are heat-stable, have molecular weights between 3000 and 5000 (lipooligosaccharides, LOS) and several million (lipopolysaccharides), and can be extracted (eg, with phenol-water). They have three main regions (Table 9–5; see Figure 2–19).

Table 9–5. Composition of Lipopolysaccharide "Endotoxins" in the Cell Walls of Gram-Negative Bacteria. (See Figure 2–19.)

Chemistry	Common Name
(a) Repeating oligosaccharide (eg, man-rha-gal) combinations make up type-specific haptenic determinants (outermost in cell wall).	(a) O-specific polysaccharide. Induces specific immunity
(b) (*N*-acetylglucosamine, glucose, galactose, heptose). Same in all gram-negative bacteria.	(b) Common core polysaccharide
(c) Backbone of alternating heptose and phosphate groups linked through KDO (2-keto-3-deoxyoctonic acid) to lipid. Lipid is linked to peptidoglycan (by glycoside bonds).	(c) Lipid A with KDO responsible for primary toxicity

The pathophysiologic effects of LPS are similar regardless of their bacterial origin except for those of *Bacteroides* species, which have a different structure and are less toxic (Chapter 11). LPS in the bloodstream is initially bound to circulating proteins which then interact with receptors on macrophages and monocytes and other cells of the reticuloendothelial system. IL-1, TNF, and other cytokines are released, and the complement and coagulation cascades are activated. The following can be observed clinically or experimentally: fever, leukopenia, and hypoglycemia; hypotension and shock resulting in impaired perfusion of essential organs (eg, brain, heart, kidney); intravascular coagulation; and death from massive organ dysfunction.

Injection of LPS produces fever after 60–90 minutes, the time needed for the body to release IL-1. Injection of IL-1 produces fever within 30 minutes. Repeated injection of IL-1 produces the same fever response each time, but repeated injection of LPS causes a steadily diminishing fever response because of tolerance due in part to reticuloendothelial blockade and in part to IgM antibodies to LPS.

Injection of LPS produces early leukopenia, as does bacteremia with gram-negative organisms. Secondary leukocytosis occurs later. The early leukopenia coincides with the onset of fever due to liberation of IL-1. LPS enhances glycolysis in many cell types and can lead to hypoglycemia.

Hypotension occurs early in gram-negative bacteremia or following injection of LPS. There may be widespread arteriolar and venular constriction followed by peripheral vascular dilatation, increased vascular permeability, decrease in venous return, lowered cardiac output, stagnation in the microcirculation, peripheral vasoconstriction, shock, and impaired organ perfusion and its consequences. Disseminated intravascular coagulation also contributes to these vascular changes.

LPS is among the many different agents that can activate the alternative pathway of the complement cascade, precipitating a variety of complement-mediated reactions (anaphylatoxins, chemotactic responses, membrane damage, etc) and a drop in serum levels of complement components (C3, C5–9).

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is a frequent complication of gram-negative bacteremia and can also occur in other infections. LPS activates factor XII (Hageman factor)—the first step of the intrinsic clotting system—and sets into motion the coagulation cascade, which culminates in the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin. At the same time, plasminogen can be activated by LPS to plasmin (a proteolytic enzyme), which can attack fibrin with the formation of fibrin split products. Reduction in platelet and fibrinogen levels and detection of fibrin split products are evidence of DIC. Heparin can sometimes prevent the lesions associated with DIC.

LPS causes platelets to adhere to vascular endothelium and occlusion of small blood vessels, causing ischemic or hemorrhagic necrosis in various organs.

Endotoxin levels can be assayed by the limulus test: A lysate of amebocytes from the horseshoe crab (limulus) gels or coagulates in the presence of 0.0001 µg/mL of endotoxin.

PEPTIDOGLYCAN OF GRAM-POSITIVE BACTERIA

The peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria is made up of cross-linked macromolecules that surround the bacterial cells (Chapter 2 and Figure 2–15). Vascular changes leading to shock may also occur in infections due to gram-positive bacteria that contain no LPS. Gram-positive bacteria have considerably more cell wall-associated peptidoglycan than do gram-negative bacteria. Peptidoglycan released during infection may yield many of the same biologic activities as LPS, though peptidoglycan is invariably much less potent than LPS.

Enzymes

Many species of bacteria produce enzymes that are not intrinsically toxic but do play important roles in the infectious process. Some of these enzymes are discussed below.

TISSUE-DEGRADING ENZYMES

Many bacteria produce tissue-degrading enzymes. The best-characterized are enzymes from *C perfringens* (Chapter 12), *S aureus* (Chapter 14), group A streptococci (Chapter 15), and, to a lesser extent, anaerobic bacteria (Chapter 22). The roles of tissue-degrading enzymes in the pathogenesis of infections appear obvious but have been difficult to prove, especially those of individual enzymes. For example, antibodies against the tissue-degrading enzymes of streptococci do not modify the features of streptococcal disease.

In addition to lecithinase, *C perfringens* produces the proteolytic enzyme collagenase, which degrades collagen, the major protein of fibrous connective tissue, and promotes spread of infection in tissue.

S aureus produces coagulase, which works in conjunction with blood factors to coagulate plasma. Coagulase contributes to the formation of fibrin walls around staphylococcal lesions, which helps them persist in tissues. Coagulase also causes deposition of fibrin on the surfaces of individual staphylococci, which may help protect them from phagocytosis or from destruction within phagocytic cells.

Hyaluronidases are enzymes that hydrolyze hyaluronic acid, a constituent of the ground substance of connective tissue. They are produced by many bacteria (eg, staphylococci, streptococci, and anaerobes) and aid in their spread through tissues.

Many hemolytic streptococci produce streptokinase (fibrinolysin), a substance that activates a proteolytic enzyme of plasma. This enzyme is then able to dissolve coagulated plasma and probably aids in the rapid spread of streptococci through tissues. Streptokinase has been used in treatment of acute myocardial infarction to dissolve fibrin clots.

Many bacteria produce substances that are cytolysins—ie, they dissolve red blood cells (hemolysins) or kill tissue cells or leukocytes (leukocidins). Streptolysin O, for example, is produced by group A streptococci and is lethal for mice and hemolytic for red blood cells from many animals. Streptolysin O is oxygen-labile and can therefore be oxidized and inactivated, but it is reactivated by reducing agents. It is antigenic. The same streptococci also produce oxygen-stable, serum-inducible streptolysin S, which is not antigenic. Clostridia produce various hemolysins, including the lecithinase described above. Hemolysins are produced by most strains of *S aureus;* staphylococci also produce leukocidins. Most gram-negative rods isolated from sites of disease produce hemolysins. For example, *E coli* strains that cause urinary tract infections typically produce hemolysins, whereas those strains that are part of the normal gastrointestinal flora may or may not produce hemolysins.

IGA1 PROTEASES

Immunoglobulin A is the secretory antibody on mucosal surfaces. It has two primary forms, IgA1 and IgA2, that differ near the center, or hinge, region of the heavy chains of the molecules (Chapter 8). IgA1 has a series of amino acids in the hinge region that are not present in IgA2. Some bacteria that cause disease produce enzymes, IgA1 proteases, that split IgA1 at specific proline-threonine or proline-serine bonds in the hinge region and inactivate its antibody activity. IgA1 protease is an important virulence factor of the pathogens *N gonorrhoeae, N meningitidis, H influenzae,* and *S pneumoniae.* The enzymes are also produced by some strains of *Prevotella melaninogenica,* some streptococci associated with dental disease, and a few strains of other species that occasionally cause disease. Nonpathogenic species of the same genera do not have genes coding for the enzyme and do not produce it. Production of IgA1 protease allows pathogens to inactivate the primary antibody found on mucosal surfaces and thereby eliminate protection of the host by the antibody.

Antiphagocytic Factors

Many bacterial pathogens are rapidly killed once they are ingested by polymorphonuclear cells or macrophages. Some pathogens evade phagocytosis or leukocyte microbicidal mechanisms by adsorbing normal host components to their surfaces. For example, *S aureus* has surface protein A, which binds to the Fc portion of IgG. Other pathogens have surface factors that impede phagocytosis—eg, *S pneumoniae, N meningitidis;* many other bacteria have polysaccharide capsules. *S pyogenes* (group A streptococci) has M protein. *N gonorrhoeae* (gonococci) has pili. Most of these antiphagocytic surface structures show much antigenic heterogeneity. For example, there are more than 90 pneumococcal capsular polysaccharide types and more than 150 M protein types of group A streptococci. Antibodies against one type of the antiphagocytic factor (eg, capsular polysaccharide, M protein) protect the host from disease caused by bacteria of that type but not from those with other antigenic types of the same factor.

A few bacteria (eg, capnocytophaga and bordetella) produce soluble factors or toxins that inhibit chemotaxis by leukocytes and thus evade phagocytosis by a different mechanism.

Intracellular Pathogenicity

Some bacteria (eg, *M tuberculosis,Brucella* species, and *Legionella* species) live and grow in the hostile environment within polymorphonuclear cells, macrophages, or monocytes. The bacteria accomplish this feat by several mechanisms: They may avoid entry into phagolysosomes and live within the cytosol of the phagocyte; they may prevent phagosome-lysosome fusion and live within the phagosome; or they may be resistant to lysosomal enzymes and survive within the phagolysosome.

Many bacteria can live within nonphagocytic cells (see previous section, Invasion of Host Cells and Tissues).

Antigenic Heterogeneity

The surface structures of bacteria (and of many other microorganisms) have considerable antigenic heterogeneity. Often these antigens are used as part of a serologic classification system for the bacteria. The classification of the 2000 or so different salmonellae is based principally on the types of the O (lipopolysaccharide side chain) and H (flagellar) antigens. Similarly, there are more than 150 *E coli* O types and more than 100 *E coli* K (capsule) types. The antigenic type of the bacteria may be a marker for virulence, related to the clonal nature of pathogens, though it may not actually be the virulence factor (or factors). *V cholerae* O antigen type 1 and O antigen type 139 typically produce cholera toxin, whereas very few of the many other O types produce the toxin. Only some of the group A streptococcal M protein types are associated with a high incidence of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis. *N meningitidis* capsular polysaccharide types A and C are associated with epidemic meningitis. In the examples cited above and in other typing systems that use surface antigens in serologic classification, antigenic types for a given isolate of the species remain constant during infection and on subculture of the bacteria.

Some bacteria and other microorganisms have the ability to make frequent shifts in the antigenic form of their surface structures in vitro and presumably in vivo. One well-known example is *Borrelia recurrentis,* which causes relapsing fever. A second widely studied example is *N gonorrhoeae* (see Chapter 21). The gonococcus has three surface-exposed antigens that switch forms at very high rates of about one in every 1000: lipooligosaccharide, 6–8 types; pili, innumerable types; and Opa (protein II), 10–12 types for each strain. The number of antigenic forms is so large that each strain of *N gonorrhoeae* appears to be antigenically distinct from every other strain. Switching of forms for each of the three antigens appears to be under the control of different genetic mechanisms. It is presumed that frequent switching of antigenic forms allows gonococci to evade the host's immune system; gonococci that are not attacked by the immune system survive and cause disease.

The Requirement for Iron

Pathogenic bacteria must be able to compete successfully for nutrients with nonpathogenic bacteria and with host cells, or they must alter the environment to suit their needs. Iron is the most thoroughly studied nutrient essential to the infectious process. Iron has a wide oxidation-reduction potential which makes it important in a variety of metabolic functions.

Like other cells, bacteria require 0.4–4 μmol/L of iron in order to grow. Humans and animals have an abundant amount of iron; however, most of it is located intracellularly (ie, in hemoglobin and myoglobin) and is not accessible to bacteria. Free iron in its ferric form (Fe^{3+}) occurs primarily as highly insoluble hydroxides, carbonates, and phosphates. The concentration of free ionic iron in blood, lymph, extracellular tissue fluid, and external secretions is very low, on the order of 10^{-18} mol/L Fe^{3+}. This low concentration of free ionic iron is due to the host's iron-binding and transport proteins, transferrin in blood and lymph, and lactoferrin in external secretions. Transferrin and lactoferrin have high association constants for Fe^{3+} and are only partially saturated under conditions of normal iron metabolism. Ferritin and hemoglobin also bind iron. Thus, the host's iron metabolism denies pathogenic bacteria an adequate source of iron for growth.

Bacteria have developed several methods to obtain sufficient iron for essential metabolism. Most bacteria have a low-affinity iron assimilation system, which permits them to use the polymeric forms of iron in spite of the low solubility of the ferric compounds. Some bacteria have evolved high-affinity iron assimilation systems. Part of these high-affinity systems involves siderophores, which are small (MW 500–1000) ligands that are specific for ferric iron and thus supply iron to the bacterial cell. Much variation exists among the siderophores that have been characterized, but most fall into two categories: catechols (phenolates), of which enterobactin is the best characterized, and hydroxamates, of which ferrichrome is the best characterized. Enterobactin is produced by *E coli* and some other Enterobacteriaceae. Hydroxamates are commonly found in fungi. Siderophore production is genetically responsive to the concentration of iron in the medium. For example, enterobactin is produced only under low-iron conditions. Siderophores function to capture iron; enterobactin can remove iron from transferrin. Once the siderophore captures the iron, it is internalized into the cell through the action of specific outer membrane protein receptors, which also are synthesized under conditions of low iron.

Some bacteria do not have demonstrable siderophores. *Y pestis* can utilize iron from hemin and may be able to initiate infection using iron from hemin in the gut of the biting flea. *N gonorrhoeae* makes a series of iron-regulated outer membrane proteins, but the mechanism by which these proteins function to capture and internalize iron is not well understood. Other bacteria (eg, *Legionella pneumophila, Listeria* species, *Salmonella* species, and other bacteria) can obtain iron from the host's intracellular iron pools.

The availability of iron affects the virulence of pathogens. For example, the virulence of *N meningitidis* for mice is increased 1000-fold or more when the bacteria are grown under iron-limited conditions. Similar effects of iron on virulence have been shown for other species of bacteria. Some plasmids that have genes for virulence also encode for iron-sequestering systems.

The Role of Bacterial Biofilms

A biofilm is an aggregate of interactive bacteria attached to a solid surface or to each other and encased in an exopolysaccharide matrix. This is distinct from planktonic or free-living bacterial growth, in which interactions of the microorganisms do not occur. Biofilms form a slimy coat on solid surfaces and occur throughout nature. A single species of bacteria may be involved, or more than one species may coaggregate to form a biofilm. Fungi—including yeasts—are occasionally involved.

Biofilms are important in human infections that are persistent and difficult to treat. A few examples include *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Staphylococcus aureus* infections of central venous catheters, eye infections such as occur with contact lenses and intraocular lenses, in dental plaque, and with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* airway infections in cystic fibrosis patients. There are many other examples.

The initial step in biofilm formation is colonization of the surface. Bacteria may use flagella to move on a surface and initiate colonization. Some bacteria may use pili to pull themselves together into clumps while others rely on cell division to initiate colony formation. Bacteria continuously secrete low levels of molecules called quorum-sensing signals (eg, acylhomoserine lactone signals). As the number of bacteria increases, the concentrations of these signals increase. When a threshold is reached, the bacteria respond and change their behavior by changing activation of genes. Many genes may be involved, and this varies from one species of bacteria to another. The extracellular polysaccharide is produced; *P aeruginosa* produces alginate. Genes may be activated that influence metabolic pathways and the production of virulence factors. Bacteria deep within the matrix tend to have decreased metabolism.

The bacteria in the exopolysaccharide matrix may be protected from the host's immune mechanisms. The matrix also presents a diffusion barrier for some antimicrobials, while other antimicrobials may bind to it. Some of the bacteria within the biofilm show marked resistance to antimicrobials in contrast to the same strain of bacteria grown free-living in broth, which helps to explain why it is so difficult to treat infections associated with biofilms.

REFERENCES

Costerton JW et al: Bacterial biofilms: A common cause of persistent infections. Science 1999;284:1318.

Falkow S: Molecular Koch's postulates applied to microbial pathogenicity. Rev Infect Dis 1988;10(Suppl 3):S274.

Fredricks DN, Relman DA: Sequence-based identification of microbial pathogens: A reconsideration of Koch's postulates. Clin Microbiol Rev 1996;9:18.

Götz F: MicroReview: *Staphylococcus* and biofilms. Mol Microbiol 2002;43:1367.

Relman DA, Falkow S: A molecular perspective of microbial pathogenicity. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Salyers AA, Whitt DD: *Bacterial Pathogenesis*, 2nd ed. American Society for Microbiology, 2002.

Schmidt H, Hensel M: Pathogenicity islands in bacterial pathogenesis. Clin Microbiol Rev 2004;17:14.

INTRODUCTION

Drugs have been used for the treatment of infectious diseases since the 17th century (eg, quinine for malaria, emetine for amebiasis); however, chemotherapy as a science began in the first decade of the 20th century with understanding of the principles of selective toxicity, the specific chemical relationships between microbial pathogens and drugs, the development of drug resistance, and the role of combined therapy. Experiments led to the arsphenamines for syphilis, the first planned chemotherapeutic regimen.

The current era of antimicrobial chemotherapy began in 1935 with the discovery of the sulfonamides. In 1940, it was demonstrated that penicillin, discovered in 1929, could be an effective therapeutic substance. During the next 25 years, research on chemotherapeutic agents centered largely around substances of microbial origin called antibiotics. The isolation, concentration, purification, and mass production of penicillin were followed by the development of streptomycin, tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, and many other agents. These substances were originally isolated from filtrates of media in which their respective molds had grown. Synthetic modification of previously described drugs has been prominent in the development of new antimicrobial agents.

Antimicrobial agents commonly employed in treatment of bacterial infections are presented in this chapter. The chemotherapy of viruses, fungi, and parasites is discussed in Chapters 30, 45, and 46, respectively. Additional comments on antimicrobial susceptibility testing for bacteria are to be found in Chapter 47.

MECHANISMS OF ACTION OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

Antimicrobial drugs act in one of several ways: by selective toxicity, by inhibition of cell membrane synthesis and function, by inhibition of protein synthesis, or by inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis.

SELECTIVE TOXICITY

An ideal antimicrobial agent exhibits selective toxicity, which means that the drug is harmful to a pathogen without being harmful to the host. Often, selective toxicity is relative rather than absolute; this implies that a drug in a concentration tolerated by the host may damage an infecting microorganism.

Selective toxicity may be a function of a specific receptor required for drug attachment, or it may depend on the inhibition of biochemical events essential to the pathogen but not to the host. The mechanisms of action of antimicrobial drugs can be discussed under four headings:

(1) Inhibition of cell wall synthesis.

(2) Inhibition of cell membrane function.

(3) Inhibition of protein synthesis (ie, inhibition of translation and transcription of genetic material).

(4) Inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis.

INHIBITION OF CELL WALL SYNTHESIS

Bacteria have a rigid outer layer, the cell wall. The cell wall maintains the shape and size of the microorganism, which has a high internal osmotic pressure. Injury to the cell wall (eg, by lysozyme) or inhibition of its formation may lead to lysis of the cell. In a hypertonic environment (eg, 20% sucrose), damaged cell wall formation leads to formation of spherical bacterial "protoplasts" from gram-positive organisms or "spheroplasts" from gram-negative organisms; these forms are limited by the fragile cytoplasmic membrane. If such protoplasts or spheroplasts are placed in an environment of ordinary tonicity, they take up fluid rapidly, swell, and may explode. Specimens from patients being treated with cell wall-active antibiotics often show swollen or misshapen bacteria.

The cell wall contains a chemically distinct complex polymer "mucopeptide" ("peptidoglycan") consisting of polysaccharides and a highly cross-linked polypeptide. The polysaccharides regularly contain the amino sugars *N*-acetylglucosamine and acetylmuramic acid. The latter is found only in bacteria. To the amino sugars are attached short peptide chains. The final rigidity of the cell wall is imparted by cross-linking of the peptide chains (eg, through pentaglycine bonds) as a result of transpeptidation reactions carried out by several enzymes. The peptidoglycan layer is much thicker in the cell wall of gram-positive than of gram-negative bacteria.

All β-lactam drugs are selective inhibitors of bacterial cell wall synthesis and therefore active against growing bacteria. This inhibition is only one of several different activities of these drugs, but it is the best understood. The initial step in drug action consists of binding of the drug to cell receptors (penicillin-binding proteins; PBPs). There are three to six PBPs (MW 412 x 10^5), some of which are transpeptidation enzymes. Different receptors have different affinities for a drug, and each may mediate a different effect. For example, attachment of penicillin to one PBP may result chiefly in abnormal elongation of the cell, whereas attachment to another PBP may lead to a defect in the periphery of the cell wall, with resulting cell lysis. PBPs are under chromosomal control, and mutations may alter their number or their affinity for β-lactam drugs.

After a β-lactam drug has attached to one or more receptors, the transpeptidation reaction is inhibited and peptidoglycan synthesis is blocked. The next step probably involves removal or inactivation of an inhibitor of autolytic enzymes in the cell wall. This activates the lytic enzyme and results in lysis if the environment is isotonic. In a markedly hypertonic environment, the microbes change to protoplasts or spheroplasts, covered only by the fragile cell membrane. In such cells, synthesis of proteins and nucleic acids may continue for some time.

The inhibition of the transpeptidation enzymes by penicillins and cephalosporins may be due to a structural similarity of these drugs to acyl-D -alanyl-D -alanine. The transpeptidation reaction involves loss of a D -alanine from the pentapeptide.

The remarkable lack of toxicity of β-lactam drugs to mammalian cells must be attributed to the absence, in animal cells, of a bacterial type cell wall, with its peptidoglycan. The difference in susceptibility of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria to various penicillins or cephalosporins probably depends on structural differences in their cell walls (eg, amount of peptidoglycan, presence of receptors and lipids, nature of cross-linking, activity of autolytic enzymes) that determine penetration, binding, and activity of the drugs.

Resistance to penicillins may be determined by the organism's production of penicillin-destroying enzymes (β-lactamases). Beta-lactamases open the β-lactam ring of penicillins and cephalosporins and abolish their antimicrobial activity. Beta-lactamases have been described for many species of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. Some β-lactamases are plasmid-mediated (eg, penicillinase of *Staphylococcus aureus*), while others are chromosomally mediated (eg, many species of gram-negative bacteria). All of the more than 30 plasmid-mediated β-lactamases are produced constitutively and have a high propensity to move from one species of bacteria to another (eg, β-lactamase-producing *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Haemophilus influenzae,* and enterococci). Chromosomally mediated β-lactamases may be constitutively produced (eg, bacteroides, acinetobacter), or they may be inducible (eg, enterobacter, citrobacter, pseudomonas).

There is one group of β-lactamases that is occasionally found in certain species of gram-negative bacilli, usually *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Escherichia coli.* These enzymes are termed extended-spectrum β-lactamases (ESBLs) because they confer upon the bacteria the additional ability to hydrolyze the β-lactam rings of cefotaxime, ceftazidime, or aztreonam.

The classification of β-lactamases is complex, based upon the genetics, biochemical properties, and substrate affinity for a β-lactamase inhibitor (clavulanic acid). Clavulanic acid, sulbactam, and tazobactam are β-lactamase inhibitors that have a high affinity for and irreversibly bind some β-lactamases (eg, penicillinase of *Staphylococcus aureus*) but are not hydrolyzed by the β-lactamase. These inhibitors protect simultaneously present hydrolyzable penicillins (eg, ampicillin, amoxicillin, and ticarcillin) from destruction. Certain penicillins (eg, cloxacillin) also have a high affinity for β-lactamases.

There are two other types of resistance mechanisms. One is due to the absence of some penicillin receptors (penicillin-binding proteins; PBPs) and occurs as a result of chromosomal mutation; the other results from failure of the β-lactam drug to activate the autolytic enzymes in the cell wall. As a result, the organism is inhibited but not killed. Such tolerance has been observed especially with staphylococci and certain streptococci.

Examples of agents acting by inhibition of cell wall synthesis are penicillins, the cephalosporins, vancomycin, and cycloserine. Several other drugs, including bacitracin, teicoplanin, vancomycin, ristocetin, and novobiocin, inhibit early steps in the biosynthesis of the peptidoglycan. Since the early stages of synthesis take place inside the cytoplasmic membrane, these drugs must penetrate the membrane to be effective.

INHIBITION OF CELL MEMBRANE FUNCTION

The cytoplasm of all living cells is bounded by the cytoplasmic membrane, which serves as a selective permeability barrier, carries out active transport functions, and thus controls the internal composition of the cell. If the functional integrity of the cytoplasmic membrane is disrupted, macromolecules and ions escape from the cell, and cell damage or death ensues. The cytoplasmic membrane of bacteria and fungi has a structure different from that of animal cells and can be more readily disrupted by certain agents. Consequently, selective chemotherapy is possible.

Detergents, which contain lipophilic and hydrophilic groups, disrupt cytoplasmic membranes and kill the cell (Chapter 4). One class of antibiotics, the polymyxins, consists of detergent-like cyclic peptides that selectively damage membranes containing phosphatidylethanolamine, a major component of bacterial membranes. A number of antibiotics specifically interfere with biosynthetic functions of the cytoplasmic membranesfor example, nalidixic acid and novobiocin inhibit DNA synthesis, and novobiocin also inhibits teichoic acid synthesis.

A third class of membrane-active agents is the ionophores, compounds that permit rapid diffusion of specific cations through the membrane. Valinomycin, for example, specifically mediates the passage of potassium ions. Some ionophores act by forming hydrophilic pores in the membrane; others act as lipid-soluble ion carriers that behave as though they shuttle back and forth within the membrane. Ionophores can kill cells by discharging the membrane potential, which is essential for oxidative phosphorylation, as well as for other membrane-mediated processes; they are not selective for bacteria but act on the membranes of all cells.

Daptomycin is a new lipopeptide antibiotic that is rapidly bactericidal by binding to the cell membrane in a calcium-dependent manner causing depolarization of bacterial membrane potential. This leads to intracellular potassium release. Currently this agent is approved for use in the treatment of skin and soft tissue infections caused by gram-positive bacteria, particularly those organisms that are highly resistant to β-lactam agents and vancomycin.

Other examples of agents acting by inhibition of cell membrane function are amphotericin B, colistin, and the imidazoles and triazoles.

INHIBITION OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

It is established that erythromycins, lincomycins, tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, and chloramphenicol can inhibit protein synthesis in bacteria. The precise mechanisms of action are not fully established for these drugs.

Bacteria have 70S ribosomes, whereas mammalian cells have 80S ribosomes. The subunits of each type of ribosome, their chemical composition, and their functional specificities are sufficiently different to explain why antimicrobial drugs can inhibit protein synthesis in bacterial ribosomes without having a major effect on mammalian ribosomes.

In normal microbial protein synthesis, the mRNA message is simultaneously "read" by several ribosomes that are strung out along the mRNA strand. These are called polysomes.

Examples of drugs acting by inhibition of protein synthesis are the erythromycins, lincomycins, tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, and chloramphenicol.

Aminoglycosides

The mode of action of streptomycin has been studied far more intensively than that of other aminoglycosides, but all probably act similarly. The first step is the attachment of the aminoglycoside to a specific receptor protein (P 12 in the case of streptomycin) on the 30S subunit of the microbial ribosome. Second, the aminoglycoside blocks the normal activity of the "initiation complex" of peptide formation (mRNA + formyl methionine + tRNA). Third, the mRNA message is misread on the "recognition region" of the ribosome; consequently, the wrong amino acid is inserted into the peptide, resulting in a nonfunctional protein. Fourth, aminoglycoside attachment results in the breakup of polysomes and their separation into monosomes incapable of protein synthesis. These activities occur more or less simultaneously, and the overall effect is usually an irreversible eventkilling of the bacterium.

Chromosomal resistance of microbes to aminoglycosides principally depends on the lack of a specific protein receptor on the 30S subunit of the ribosome. Plasmid-dependent resistance to aminoglycosides depends on the production by the microorganism of adenylylating, phosphorylating, or acetylating enzymes that destroy the drugs. A third type of resistance consists of a "permeability defect," an outer membrane change that reduces active transport of the aminoglycoside into the cell so that the drug cannot reach the ribosome. Often this is plasmid-mediated.

Macrolides, Azalides, Ketolides

These drugs (erythromycins, azithromycin, clarithromycin, and roxithromycin and the ketolide, telithromycin) bind to the 50S subunit of the ribosome, and the binding site is a 23S rRNA. They may interfere with formation of initiation complexes for peptide chain synthesis or may interfere with aminoacyl translocation reactions. Some macrolide-resistant bacteria lack the proper receptor on the ribosome (through methylation of the rRNA). This may be under plasmid or chromosomal control.

Lincomycins

Clindamycin binds to the 50S subunit of the microbial ribosome and resembles macrolides in binding site, antibacterial activity, and mode of action. Chromosomal mutants are resistant because they lack the proper binding site on the 50S subunit.

Tetracyclines

Tetracyclines bind to the 30S subunit of microbial ribosomes. They inhibit protein synthesis by blocking the attachment of charged aminoacyl-tRNA. Thus, they prevent introduction of new amino acids to the nascent peptide chain. The action is usually inhibitory and reversible upon withdrawal of the drug. Resistance to tetracyclines occurs by three mechanismsefflux, ribosomal protection, and chemical modification. The first two are the most important and occur as follows: Efflux pumps, located in the bacterial cell cytoplasmic membrane, are responsible for pumping the drug out of the cell. *Tet* gene products are responsible for protecting the ribosome, likely through mechanisms that induce conformational changes. These conformational changes either prevent binding of the tetracyclines or cause their dissociation from the ribosome. This is often plasmid-controlled. Mammalian cells do not actively concentrate tetracyclines.

Glycylcyclines

The glycylcyclines are synthetic analogues of the tetracyclines. The agent that is available for use in the United States and Europe is tigecycline, a derivative of minocycline. The glycylcyclines inhibit protein synthesis in a manner similar to the tetracyclines; however, they are bactericidal, likely due to their more avid binding to the ribosome. Tigecycline is active against a broad range of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, including strains resistant to the typical tetracyclines. The clinical activity of this agent is still undergoing investigation, but currently its major use appears to be in the treatment of skin and skin structure infections and in intra-abdominal infections, particularly caused by bacterial pathogens resistant to a variety of other antimicrobial agents.

Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol binds to the 50S subunit of the ribosome. It interferes with the binding of new amino acids to the nascent peptide chain, largely because chloramphenicol inhibits peptidyl transferase. Chloramphenicol is mainly bacteriostatic, and growth of microorganisms resumes when the drug is withdrawn. Microorganisms resistant to chloramphenicol produce the enzyme chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, which destroys drug activity. The production of this enzyme is usually under control of a plasmid.

Streptogramins

Quinupristin/dalfopristin is a combination of two pristinamycin derivatives. These two agents act synergistically to achieve bactericidal activity against gram-positive bacteria not seen with either agent alone. The mechanism of action appears to be irreversible binding to different sites on the 50S ribosome.

Oxazolidinones

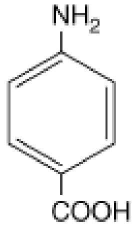
The oxazolidinones are a relatively new class of antimicrobial agents that possess a unique mechanism of inhibition of protein synthesis primarily in gram-positive bacteria. These compounds interfere with translation by inhibiting the formation of *N* -formylmethionyl-tRNA, the initiation complex at the 30S ribosome. Linezolid is the agent that is currently commercially available.

INHIBITION OF NUCLEIC ACID SYNTHESIS

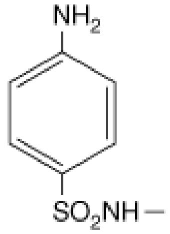
Examples of drugs acting by inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis are the quinolones, pyrimethamine, rifampin, sulfonamides, trimethoprim, and trimetrexate. Rifampin inhibits bacterial growth by binding strongly to the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase of bacteria. Thus, it inhibits bacterial RNA synthesis. Rifampin resistance results from a change in RNA polymerase due to a chromosomal mutation that occurs with high frequency. The mechanism of rifampin action on viruses is different. It blocks a late stage in the assembly of poxviruses.

All quinolones and fluoroquinolones inhibit microbial DNA synthesis by blocking DNA gyrase.

For many microorganisms, *p*- aminobenzoic acid (PABA) is an essential metabolite. The specific mode of action of PABA involves an adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-dependent condensation of a pteridine with PABA to yield dihydropteroic acid, which is subsequently converted to folic acid. PABA is involved in the synthesis of folic acid, an important precursor to the synthesis of nucleic acids. Sulfonamides are structural analogs of PABA and inhibit dihydropteroate synthetase.



***p*-Aminobenzoic acid (PABA)**



Basic ring structure of sulfonamides

Sulfonamides can enter into the reaction in place of PABA and compete for the active center of the enzyme. As a result, nonfunctional analogs of folic acid are formed, preventing further growth of the bacterial cell. The inhibiting action of sulfonamides on bacterial growth can be counteracted by an excess of PABA in the environment (competitive inhibition). Animal cells cannot synthesize folic acid and must depend upon exogenous sources. Some bacteria, like animal cells, are not inhibited by sulfonamides. Many other bacteria, however, synthesize folic acid as mentioned above and consequently are susceptible to action by sulfonamides.

Trimethoprim (3,4,5-trimethoxybenzylpyrimidine) inhibits dihydrofolic acid reductase 50,000 times more efficiently in bacteria than in mammalian cells. This enzyme reduces dihydrofolic to tetrahydrofolic acid, a stage in the sequence leading to the synthesis of purines and ultimately of DNA. Sulfonamides and trimethoprim each can be used alone to inhibit bacterial growth. If used together, they produce sequential blocking, resulting in a marked enhancement (synergism) of activity. Such mixtures of sulfonamide (five parts) plus trimethoprim (one part) have been used in the treatment of pneumocystis pneumonia, malaria, shigella enteritis, systemic salmonella infections, urinary tract infections, and many others.

Pyrimethamine also inhibits dihydrofolate reductase, but it is more active against the enzyme in mammalian cells and therefore is more toxic than trimethoprim. Pyrimethamine plus sulfonamide or clindamycin is the current treatment of choice in toxoplasmosis and some other protozoal infections.

RESISTANCE TO ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

There are many different mechanisms by which microorganisms might exhibit resistance to drugs.

(1) Microorganisms produce enzymes that destroy the active drug. *Examples:* Staphylococci resistant to penicillin G produce a β-lactamase that destroys the drug. Other β-lactamases are produced by gram-negative rods. Gram-negative bacteria resistant to aminoglycosides (by virtue of a plasmid) produce adenylylating, phosphorylating, or

acetylating enzymes that destroy the drug.

(2) Microorganisms change their permeability to the drug. *Examples:* Tetracyclines accumulate in susceptible bacteria but not in resistant bacteria. Resistance to polymyxins is also associated with a change in permeability to the drugs. Streptococci have a natural permeability barrier to aminoglycosides. This can be partly overcome by the simultaneous presence of a cell wall-active drug, eg, a penicillin. Resistance to amikacin and to some other aminoglycosides may depend on a lack of permeability to the drugs, apparently due to an outer membrane change that impairs active transport into the cell.

(3) Microorganisms develop an altered structural target for the drug (see also [5], below). *Examples:* Erythromycin-resistant organisms have an altered receptor on the 50S subunit of the ribosome, resulting from methylation of a 23S ribosomal RNA. Resistance to some penicillins and cephalosporins may be a function of the loss or alteration of PBPs. Penicillin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and enterococci is due to altered PBPs.

(4) Microorganisms develop an altered metabolic pathway that bypasses the reaction inhibited by the drug. *Example:* Some sulfonamide-resistant bacteria do not require extracellular PABA but, like mammalian cells, can utilize preformed folic acid.

(5) Microorganisms develop an altered enzyme that can still perform its metabolic function but is much less affected by the drug. *Example:* In trimethoprim-resistant bacteria, the dihydrofolic acid reductase is inhibited far less efficiently than in trimethoprim-susceptible bacteria.

ORIGIN OF DRUG RESISTANCE

Nongenetic Origin of Drug Resistance

Active replication of bacteria is required for most antibacterial drug actions. Consequently, microorganisms that are metabolically inactive (nonmultiplying) may be phenotypically resistant to drugs. However, their offspring are fully susceptible. *Example:* Mycobacteria often survive in tissues for many years after infection yet are restrained by the host's defenses and do not multiply. Such "persisting" organisms are resistant to treatment and cannot be eradicated by drugs. Yet if they start to multiply (eg, following suppression of cellular immunity in the patient), they are fully susceptible to the same drugs.

Microorganisms may lose the specific target structure for a drug for several generations and thus be resistant. *Example:* Penicillin-susceptible organisms may change to cell wall-deficient L forms during penicillin administration. Lacking cell walls, they are resistant to cell wall-inhibitor drugs (penicillins, cephalosporins) and may remain so for several generations. When these organisms revert to their bacterial parent forms by resuming cell wall production, they are again susceptible to penicillin.

Microorganisms may infect the host at sites where antimicrobials are excluded or are not active. *Examples:* Aminoglycosides such as gentamicin are not effective in treating salmonella enteric fevers because the salmonellae are intracellular and the aminoglycosides do not enter the cells. Similarly, only drugs that enter cells are effective in treating legionnaires' disease because of the intracellular location of *Legionella pneumophila.*

Genetic Origin of Drug Resistance

Most drug-resistant microbes emerge as a result of genetic change and subsequent selection processes by antimicrobial drugs.

Chromosomal Resistance

This develops as a result of spontaneous mutation in a locus that controls susceptibility to a given antimicrobial drug. The presence of the antimicrobial drug serves as a selecting mechanism to suppress susceptible organisms and favor the growth of drug-resistant mutants. Spontaneous mutation occurs with a frequency of 10^{12} to 10^{7} and thus is an infrequent cause of the emergence of clinical drug resistance in a given patient. However, chromosomal mutants resistant to rifampin occur with high frequency (about 10^{7} to 10^{5}). Consequently, treatment of bacterial infections with rifampin as the sole drug often fails. Chromosomal mutants are most commonly resistant by virtue of a change in a structural receptor for a drug. Thus, the P 12 protein on the 30S subunit of the bacterial ribosome serves as a receptor for streptomycin attachment. Mutation in the gene controlling that structural protein results in streptomycin resistance. Mutation can also result in the loss of PBPs, making such mutants resistant to β-lactam drugs.

Extrachromosomal Resistance

Bacteria often contain extrachromosomal genetic elements called plasmids. Their features are described in Chapter 7.

Some plasmids carry genes for resistance to oneand often severalantimicrobial drugs. Plasmid genes for antimicrobial resistance often control the formation of enzymes capable of destroying the antimicrobial drugs. Thus, plasmids determine resistance to penicillins and cephalosporins by carrying genes for the formation of β-lactamases. Plasmids code for enzymes that acetylate, adenylate, or phosphorylate various aminoglycosides; for enzymes that determine the active transport of tetracyclines across the cell membrane; and for others.

Genetic material and plasmids can be transferred by transduction, transformation, and conjugation. These processes are discussed in Chapter 7.

CROSS-RESISTANCE

Microorganisms resistant to a certain drug may also be resistant to other drugs that share a mechanism of action. Such relationships exist mainly between agents that are closely related chemically (eg, different aminoglycosides) or that have a similar mode of binding or action (eg, macrolides-lincomycins). In certain classes of drugs, the active nucleus of the chemical is so similar among many congeners (eg, tetracyclines) that extensive cross-resistance is to be expected.

LIMITATION OF DRUG RESISTANCE

Emergence of drug resistance in infections may be minimized in the following ways: (1) by maintaining sufficiently high levels of the drug in the tissues to inhibit both the original population and first-step mutants; (2) by simultaneously administering two drugs that do not give cross-resistance, each of which delays the emergence of mutants resistant to the other drug (eg, rifampin and isoniazid in the treatment of tuberculosis); and (3) by avoiding exposure of microorganisms to a particularly valuable drug by limiting its use, especially in hospitals.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF DRUG RESISTANCE

A few examples will illustrate the impact of the emergence of drug-resistant organisms and their selection by the widespread use of antimicrobial drugs.

Gonococci

When sulfonamides were first employed in the late 1930s for the treatment of gonorrhea, virtually all isolates of gonococci were susceptible and most infections were cured. A few years later, most strains had become resistant to sulfonamides, and gonorrhea was rarely curable by these drugs. Most gonococci were still highly susceptible to penicillin. Over the next decades, there was a gradual increase in resistance to penicillin, but large doses of that drug were still curative. In the 1970s, β-lactamase-producing gonococci appeared, first in the Philippines and in West Africa, and then spread to form endemic foci worldwide. Such infections could not be treated effectively by penicillin but were treated with spectinomycin. Resistance to spectinomycin has appeared. Third-generation cephalosporins or quinolones are recommended to treat gonorrhea. However, the emergence of quinolone resistance in some geographic locations has subsequently limited their use.

Meningococci

Until 1962, meningococci were uniformly susceptible to sulfonamides, and these drugs were effective for both prophylaxis and therapy. Subsequently, sulfonamide-resistant meningococci spread widely, and the sulfonamides have now lost their usefulness against meningococcal infections. Penicillins remain effective for therapy, and rifampin is employed for prophylaxis. However, rifampin-resistant meningococci persist in about 1% of individuals who have received rifampin for prophylaxis.

Staphylococci

In 1944, most staphylococci were susceptible to penicillin G, though a few resistant strains had been observed. After massive use of penicillin, 6585% of staphylococci isolated from hospitals in 1948 were β-lactamase producers and thus resistant to penicillin G. The advent of β-lactamase-resistant penicillins (eg, nafcillin) provided a temporary respite, but infections due to nafcillin-resistant staphylococci are common. Presently, penicillin-resistant staphylococci include not only those acquired in hospitals but also 8090% of those isolated in the community. These organisms also tend to be resistant to other drugs, eg, tetracyclines. Nafcillin-resistant staphylococci are common in tertiary hospitals. Vancomycin has been the major drug used for treatment of nafcillin-resistant *S aureus* infections, but recovery of isolates with intermediate resistance and the reports of several cases of high-level resistance to vancomycin have spurred the search for newer agents.

Pneumococci

Streptococcus pneumoniae was uniformly susceptible to penicillin G until 1963, when relatively penicillin-resistant strains were found in New Guinea. Penicillin-resistant pneumococci subsequently were found in South Africa, Japan, Spain, and later worldwide. In the United States, 510% of pneumococci are resistant to penicillin G (MICs of > 2 μg/mL) and approximately 20% are moderately resistant (MICs of 0.11 μg/mL). The penicillin resistance is due to altered penicillin-binding proteins. Penicillin resistance in pneumococci tends to be clonal. Pneumococci also are frequently resistant to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and sometimes to erythromycin and tetracycline.

Enterococci

The enterococci have intrinsic resistance to multiple antimicrobials: penicillin G and ampicillin with high MICs; cephalosporins with very high MICs; low-level resistance to aminoglycosides; and resistance to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in vivo. The enterococci also have shown acquired resistance to almost all if not all other antimicrobials as follows: altered PBPs and resistance to β-lactams; high-level resistance to aminoglycosides; and resistance to fluoroquinolones, macrolides, azalides, and tetracyclines. Some enterococci have acquired a plasmid that encodes for β-lactamase and are fully resistant to penicillin and ampicillin. Of greatest importance is the development of resistance to vancomycin, which has become common in Europe and North America though there is geographic variation in the percentages of enterococci that are vancomycin-resistant. *Enterococcus faecium* is the species that is most commonly vancomycin-resistant. In outbreaks of infections due to vancomycin-resistant enterococci, the isolates may be clonal or genetically diverse. Resistance to the streptogramins (quinupristin-dalfopristin) also occurs in enterococci.

Gram-Negative Enteric Bacteria

Most drug resistance in enteric bacteria is attributable to the widespread transmission of resistance plasmids among different genera. About half the strains of *Shigella* species in many parts of the world are now resistant to multiple drugs.

Salmonellae carried by animals have developed resistance also, particularly to drugs (especially tetracyclines) incorporated into animal feeds. The practice of incorporating drugs into animal feeds causes farm animals to grow more rapidly but is associated with an increase in drug-resistant enteric organisms in the fecal flora of farm workers. A concomitant rise in drug-resistant salmonella infections in Britain led to a restriction on antibiotic supplements in animal feeds. Continued use of tetracycline supplements in animal feeds in the United States may contribute to the spread of resistance plasmids and of drug-resistant salmonellae.

Plasmids carrying drug resistance genes occur in many gram-negative bacteria of the normal gut flora. The abundant use of antimicrobial drugsparticularly in hospitalized patientsleads to the suppression of drug-susceptible organisms in the gut flora and favors the persistence and growth of drug-resistant bacteria, including enterobacter, klebsiella, proteus, pseudomonas, and serratiaand fungi. Such organisms present particularly difficult problems in granulocytopenic and immunocompromised patients. The closed environments of hospitals favor transmission of such resistant organisms through personnel and fomites as well as by direct contact.

Mycobacterium Tuberculosis

Primary drug resistance in *M tuberculosis* occurs in about 10% of isolates and most commonly is to isoniazid or streptomycin. Resistance to rifampin or ethambutol is less common. Isoniazid and rifampin are the primary drugs used in most standard treatment regimens; other first-line drugs are pyrazinamide, ethambutol, and streptomycin. Resistance to isoniazid and rifampin is considered multiple drug resistance. In the United States, multiple drug resistance of *M tuberculosis* has significantly decreased. Worldwide, the highest rates of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis have been reported from Eastern European countries, particularly among countries of the former Soviet Union. Poor compliance with drug treatment is a major factor in the development of drug resistance during therapy. Control of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis is a significant worldwide problem.

ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY IN VITRO

Antimicrobial activity is measured in vitro in order to determine (1) the potency of an antibacterial agent in solution, (2) its concentration in body fluids or tissues, and (3) the susceptibility of a given microorganism to known concentrations of the drug.

FACTORS AFFECTING ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY

Among the many factors that affect antimicrobial activity in vitro, the following must be considered, because they significantly influence the results of tests.

pH of Environment

Some drugs are more active at acid pH (eg, nitrofurantoin); others, at alkaline pH (eg, aminoglycosides, sulfonamides).

Components of Medium

Sodium polyanetholsulfonate (in blood culture media) and other anionic detergents inhibit aminoglycosides. PABA in tissue extracts antagonizes sulfonamides. Serum proteins bind penicillins in varying degrees, ranging from 40% for methicillin to 98% for dicloxacillin. Addition of NaCl to the medium enhances the detection of methicillin resistance in *S aureus.*

Stability of Drug

At incubator temperature, several antimicrobial agents lose their activity. Penicillins are inactivated slowly, whereas aminoglycosides and ciprofloxacin are quite stable for long periods.

Size of Inoculum

In general, the larger the bacterial inoculum, the lower the apparent "susceptibility" of the organism. Large bacterial populations are less promptly and completely inhibited than small ones. In addition, a resistant mutant is much more likely to emerge in large populations.

Length of Incubation

In many instances, microorganisms are not killed but only inhibited upon short exposure to antimicrobial agents. The longer incubation continues, the greater the chance for resistant mutants to emerge or for the least susceptible members of the antimicrobial population to begin multiplying as the drug deteriorates.

Metabolic Activity of Microorganisms

In general, actively and rapidly growing organisms are more susceptible to drug action than those in the resting phase. Metabolically inactive organisms that survive long exposure to a drug may have offspring that are fully susceptible to the same drug.

MEASUREMENT OF ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY

Determination of the susceptibility of a bacterial pathogen to antimicrobial drugs can be done by one of two principal methods: dilution or diffusion. It is important to use a standardized method that controls for all the factors that affect antimicrobial activity; in the United States, the tests are performed according to the methods of the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) (formerly the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards [NCCLS]). These tests also are discussed in Chapter 47.

Using an appropriate standard test organism and a known sample of drug for comparison, these methods can be employed to estimate either the potency of antibiotic in the sample or the susceptibility of the microorganism.

Dilution Method

Graded amounts of antimicrobial substances are incorporated into liquid or solid bacteriologic media. Commonly, twofold ($\log_2$) dilutions of the antimicrobial substances are used. The media are subsequently inoculated with test bacteria and incubated. The end point is taken as that amount of antimicrobial substance required to inhibit the growth ofor to killthe test bacteria. Agar dilution susceptibility tests are time consuming, and their use is limited to special circumstances. Broth dilution tests were cumbersome and little used when dilutions had to be made in test tubes; however, the advent of prepared broth dilution series for many different drugs in microdilution plates has greatly enhanced and simplified the method. The advantage of microdilution broth dilution tests is that they permit a quantitative result to be reported, indicating the amount of a given drug necessary to inhibit (or kill) the microorganisms tested.

Diffusion Method

The most widely used method is the disk diffusion test. A filter paper disk containing a measured quantity of a drug is placed on the surface of a solid medium that has been inoculated on the surface with the test organism. After incubation, the diameter of the clear zone of inhibition surrounding the disk is taken as a measure of the inhibitory power of the drug against the particular test organism. This method is subject to many physical and chemical factors in addition to the simple interaction of drug and organisms (eg, the nature of the medium and diffusibility, molecular size, and the stability of the drug). Nevertheless, standardization of conditions permits determination of the susceptibility of the organism.

Interpretation of the results of diffusion tests must be based on comparisons between dilution and diffusion methods. Such comparisons have led to the establishment of reference standards. Linear regression lines can express the relationship between log of minimum inhibitory concentration in dilution tests and diameter of inhibition zones in diffusion tests.

Use of a single disk for each antibiotic with careful standardization of the test conditions permits the report of susceptible or resistant for a microorganism by comparing the size of the inhibition zone against a standard of the same drug.

Inhibition around a disk containing a certain amount of antimicrobial drug does not imply susceptibility to that same concentration of drug per milliliter of medium, blood, or urine.

ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY IN VIVO

Analysis of the activity of antimicrobial agents in vivo is much more complex than the circumstances in vitro. The activity involves not only the drug and parasite but also a third factor, the host. Drug-parasite and host-parasite relationships are discussed in the following paragraphs. Host-drug relationships (absorption, excretion, distribution, metabolism, and toxicity) are dealt with mainly in pharmacology texts.

DRUG-PATHOGEN RELATIONSHIPS

Several important interactions between drug and pathogen have been discussed in the preceding pages. The following are additional important in vivo factors.

Environment

In the host, varying environmental influences affect microorganisms located in different tissues and in different parts of the bodyin contrast to the test tube or Petri dish, where the environment is constant for all members of a microbial population. Therefore, the response of the microbial population is much less uniform within the host than in the test tube.

State of Metabolic Activity

In the body, the state of metabolic activity is diverseundoubtedly, many organisms exist at a low level of biosynthetic activity and are thus relatively insusceptible to drug action. These "dormant" microorganisms often survive exposure to high concentrations of drugs and subsequently may produce a clinical relapse of the infection.

Distribution of Drug

In the body, the antimicrobial agent is unequally distributed in tissues and fluids. Many drugs do not reach the central nervous system effectively. The concentration in urine is often much greater than the concentration in blood or other tissue. The tissue response induced by the microorganism may protect it from the drug. Necrotic tissue or pus may adsorb the drug and thus prevent its contact with bacteria.

Location of Organisms

In the body, microorganisms often are located within tissue cells. Drugs enter tissue cells at different rates. Some (eg, tetracyclines) reach about the same concentration inside monocytes as in the extracellular fluid. With others (eg, gentamicin), the drug probably does not enter host cells at all. This is in contrast to the test tube, where microorganisms come into direct contact with the drug.

Interfering Substances

The biochemical environment of microorganisms in the body is very complex and results in significant interference with drug action. The drug may be bound by blood and tissue proteins or phospholipids; it may also react with nucleic acids in pus and may be physically adsorbed onto exudates, cells, and necrotic debris. In necrotic tissue, the pH may be highly acid and thus unfavorable for drug action (eg, aminoglycosides).

Concentration

In the body, microorganisms are not exposed to a constant concentration of drug; in the test tube they are.

Absorption

The absorption of drugs from the intestinal tract (if taken by mouth) or from tissues (if injected) is irregular. There is also a continuous excretion as well as inactivation of the drug. Consequently, the levels of drug in body compartments fluctuate continually, and the microorganisms are exposed to varying concentrations of the antimicrobial agent.

Distribution

The distribution of drugs varies greatly with different tissues. Some drugs penetrate certain tissues poorly (eg, central nervous system, prostate). Drug concentrations following systemic administration may therefore be inadequate for effective treatment. On surface wounds or mucous membranes such as the conjunctivae, local (topical) application of poorly absorbed drugs permits highly effective local concentrations without toxic side effects. Alternatively, some drugs applied topically on surface wounds are well absorbed. Drug concentrations in urine are often much higher than in blood.

Variability of Concentration

It is critical to maintain an effective concentration of a drug where the infecting microorganisms proliferate. This concentration must be maintained for a sufficient length of time to eradicate the microorganisms. Because the drug is administered intermittently and is absorbed and excreted irregularly, the levels constantly fluctuate at the site of infection. In order to maintain sufficient drug concentrations for a sufficient time, the time-dose relationship must be considered. The larger each individual drug dose, the longer the permissible interval between doses. The smaller the individual dose, the shorter the interval that will ensure adequate drug levels.

Postantibiotic Effect

The postantibiotic effect is the delayed regrowth of bacteria after exposure to antimicrobial agents. It is a property of most antimicrobials, except that most β-lactams do not show the postantibiotic effect with gram-negative bacilli. The carbapenems do have a postantibiotic effect with the gram-negative bacilli.

HOST-PATHOGEN RELATIONSHIPS

Host-pathogen relationships may be altered by antimicrobial drugs in several ways.

Alteration of Tissue Response

The inflammatory response of the tissue to infections may be altered if the drug suppresses the multiplication of microorganisms but does not eliminate them from the body. An acute process may in this way be transformed into a chronic one. Conversely, the suppression of inflammatory reactions in tissues by impairment of cell-mediated immunity in recipients of tissue transplants or antineoplastic therapy or by immunocompromise as a result of disease (eg, AIDS) causes enhanced susceptibility to infection and impaired responsiveness to antimicrobial drugs.

Alteration of Immune Response

If an infection is modified by an antimicrobial drug, the immune response of the host may also be altered. One example illustrates this phenomenon: Pharyngeal infection with β-hemolytic group A streptococci is followed frequently by the development of antistreptococcal antibodies, and if there is a hyperimmune response the infection may be followed by rheumatic fever. If the infective process can be interrupted early and completely with antimicrobial drugs, the development of an immune response and of rheumatic fever can be prevented (presumably by rapid elimination of the antigen). Drugs and dosages that rapidly eradicate the infecting streptococci (eg, penicillin) are more effective in preventing rheumatic fever than those which merely suppress the microorganisms temporarily (eg, tetracycline).

Alteration of Microbial Flora

Antimicrobial drugs affect not only the microorganisms causing disease but also susceptible members of the normal microbial flora. An imbalance is thus created that in itself may lead to disease. A few examples are of interest.

(1) In hospitalized patients who receive antimicrobials, the normal microbial flora is suppressed. This creates a partial void that is filled by the organisms most prevalent in the environment, particularly drug-resistant gram-negative aerobic bacteria (eg, pseudomonads, staphylococci). Such superinfecting organisms subsequently may produce serious drug-resistant infections.

(2) In women taking antibiotics by mouth, the normal vaginal flora may be suppressed, permitting marked overgrowth of candida. This leads to unpleasant local inflammation (vulvovaginitis) and itching that are difficult to control.

(3) In the presence of urinary tract obstruction, the tendency to bladder infection is great. When such urinary tract infection due to a sensitive microorganism (eg, *Escherichia coli*) is treated with an appropriate drug, the organism may be eradicated. However, it often happens that reinfection due to another drug-resistant gram-negative bacillus occurs after the drug-sensitive microorganisms are eliminated. A similar process accounts for respiratory tract superinfections in patients given antimicrobials for chronic bronchitis.

(4) In persons receiving antimicrobial drugs for several days, parts of the normal intestinal flora may be suppressed. Drug-resistant organisms may establish themselves in the bowel in great numbers and may precipitate serious enterocolitis (*Clostridium difficile,* etc).

CLINICAL USE OF ANTIBIOTICS

SELECTION OF ANTIBIOTICS

The rational selection of antimicrobial drugs depends upon the following considerations.

Diagnosis

A specific etiologic diagnosis must be formulated. This can often be done on the basis of a clinical impression. Thus, in typical lobar pneumonia or acute urinary tract infection, the relationship between clinical picture and causative agent is sufficiently constant to permit selection of the antibiotic of choice on the basis of clinical impression alone. Even in these cases, however, as a safeguard against diagnostic error, it is preferable to obtain a representative specimen for bacteriologic study before giving antimicrobial drugs.

In most infections, the relationship between causative agent and clinical picture is not constant. It is therefore important to obtain proper specimens for bacteriologic identification of the causative agent. As soon as such specimens have been secured, chemotherapy can be started on the basis of the "best guess." Once the causative agent has been identified by laboratory procedures, the initial regimen can be modified as necessary.

The "best guess" of a causative organism is based on the following considerations, among others: (1) the site of infection (eg, pneumonia, urinary tract infection); (2) the age of the patient (eg, meningitis: neonatal, young child, adult); (3) the place where the infection was acquired (hospital versus community); (4) mechanical predisposing factors (indwelling vascular catheter, urinary catheter, respirator, exposure to vector); and (5) predisposing host factors (immunodeficiency, corticosteroids, transplant, cancer chemotherapy, etc).

When the causative agent of a clinical infection is known, the drug of choice can often be selected on the basis of current clinical experience. At other times, laboratory tests for antibiotic susceptibility (see below) are necessary to determine the drug of choice.

Susceptibility Tests

Laboratory tests for antibiotic susceptibility are indicated in the following circumstances: (1) when the microorganism recovered is of a type that is often resistant to antimicrobial drugs (eg, gram-negative enteric bacteria); (2) when an infectious process is likely to be fatal unless treated specifically (eg, meningitis, septicemia); and (3) in certain infections where eradication of the infectious organisms requires the use of drugs that are rapidly bactericidal, not merely bacteriostatic (eg, infective endocarditis). The basic principles of antimicrobial susceptibility testing are presented earlier in this chapter. Additional laboratory aspects of antimicrobial susceptibility testing are discussed in Chapter 47.

DANGERS OF INDISCRIMINATE USE

The indications for administration of antibiotics must sometimes be qualified by the following concerns:

(1) Widespread sensitization of the population, with resulting hypersensitivity, anaphylaxis, rashes, fever, blood disorders, cholestatic hepatitis, and perhaps collagen-vascular diseases.

(2) Changes in the normal flora of the body, with disease resulting from "superinfection" due to overgrowth of drug-resistant organisms.

(3) Masking serious infection without eradicating it. For example, the clinical manifestations of an abscess may be suppressed while the infectious process continues.

(4) Direct drug toxicity (eg, granulocytopenia or thrombocytopenia with cephalosporins and penicillins and renal damage or auditory nerve damage due to aminoglycosides).

(5) Development of drug resistance in microbial populations, chiefly through the elimination of drug-sensitive microorganisms from antibiotic-saturated environments (eg, hospitals) and their replacement by drug-resistant microorganisms.

ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS USED IN COMBINATION

Indications

Possible reasons for employing two or more antimicrobials simultaneously instead of a single drug are as follows:

(1) To give prompt treatment in desperately ill patients suspected of having a serious microbial infection. A good guess, usually based on available antibiogram data, about the most probable two or three pathogens is made, and

drugs are aimed at those organisms. Before such treatment is started, it is essential that adequate specimens be obtained for identifying the etiologic agent in the laboratory. Suspected gram-negative or staphylococcal sepsis in immunocompromised patients and bacterial meningitis in children are foremost indications in this category.

(2) To delay the emergence of microbial mutants resistant to one drug in chronic infections by the use of a second or third non-cross-reacting drug. The most prominent example is active tuberculosis.

(3) To treat mixed infections, particularly those following massive trauma or those involving vascular structures. Each drug is aimed at an important pathogenic microorganism.

(4) To achieve bactericidal synergism or to provide bactericidal action (see below). In a few infections, eg, enterococcal sepsis, a combination of drugs is more likely to eradicate the infection than either drug used alone. Such synergism is only partially predictable, and a given drug pair may be synergistic for only a single microbial strain. Occasionally, simultaneous use of two drugs permits significant reduction in dose and thus avoids toxicity but still provides satisfactory antimicrobial action.

Disadvantages

The following disadvantages of using antimicrobial drugs in combinations must always be considered:

(1) The physician may feel that since several drugs are already being given, everything possible has been done for the patient, leading to relaxation of the effort to establish a specific diagnosis. It may also give a false sense of security.

(2) The more drugs that are administered, the greater the chance for drug reactions to occur or for the patient to become sensitized to drugs.

(3) The cost is unnecessarily high.

(4) Antimicrobial combinations usually accomplish no more than an effective single drug.

(5) Very rarely, one drug may antagonize a second drug given simultaneously (see below).

Mechanisms

When two antimicrobial agents act simultaneously on a homogeneous microbial population, the effect may be one of the following: (1) indifference, ie, the combined action is no greater than that of the more effective agent when used alone; (2) addition, ie, the combined action is equivalent to the sum of the actions of each drug when used alone; (3) synergism, ie, the combined action is significantly greater than the sum of both effects; or (4) antagonism, ie, the combined action is less than that of the more effective agent when used alone. All these effects may be observed in vitro (particularly in terms of bactericidal rate) and in vivo.

The effects that can be achieved with combinations of antimicrobial drugs vary with different combinations and are specific for each strain of microorganism. Thus, no combination is uniformly synergistic.

Combined therapy should not be used indiscriminately; every effort should be made to employ the single antibiotic of choice. In resistant infections, detailed laboratory study can at times define synergistic drug combinations that may be essential to eradicate the microorganisms.

Antimicrobial synergism can occur in several types of situations. Synergistic drug combinations must be selected by complex laboratory procedures.

(1) Two drugs may sequentially block a microbial metabolic pathway. Sulfonamides inhibit the use of extracellular

p -aminobenzoic acid by some microbes for the synthesis of folic acid. Trimethoprim or pyrimethamine inhibits the next metabolic step, the reduction of dihydro- to tetrahydrofolic acid. The simultaneous use of a sulfonamide plus trimethoprim is effective in some bacterial (shigellosis, salmonellosis, serratia) and some other infections (pneumocystosis, malaria). Pyrimethamine plus a sulfonamide or clindamycin is used in toxoplasmosis.

(2) A drug such as a cell wall inhibitor (a penicillin or cephalosporin) may enhance the entry of an aminoglycoside into bacteria and thus produce synergistic effects. Penicillins enhance the uptake of gentamicin or streptomycin by enterococci. Thus, ampicillin plus gentamicin may be essential for the eradication of *Enterococcus faecalis,* particularly in endocarditis. Similarly, piperacillin plus tobramycin may be synergistic against some strains of pseudomonas.

(3) One drug may affect the cell membrane and facilitate the entry of the second drug. The combined effect may then be greater than the sum of its parts. For example, amphotericin has been synergistic with flucytosine against certain fungi (eg, cryptococcus, candida).

(4) One drug may prevent the inactivation of a second drug by microbial enzymes. Thus, inhibitors of β-lactamase (eg, clavulanic acid, sulbactam, tazobactam) can protect amoxicillin, ticarcillin, or piperacillin from inactivation by β -lactamases. In such circumstances, a form of synergism takes place.

Antimicrobial antagonism is sharply limited by time-dose relationships and is therefore a rare event in clinical antimicrobial therapy. Antagonism resulting in higher morbidity and mortality rates has been most clearly demonstrated in bacterial meningitis. It occurred when a bacteriostatic drug (which inhibited protein synthesis in bacteria) such as chloramphenicol or tetracycline was given with a bactericidal drug such as a penicillin or an aminoglycoside. Antagonism occurred mainly if the bacteriostatic drug reached the site of infection before the bactericidal drug; if the killing of bacteria was essential for cure; and if only minimal effective doses of either drug in the pair were present. Another example is combining β-lactam drugs in treatment of *P aeruginosa* infections (eg, imipenem and piperacillin, where imipenem is a potent β-lactamase inducer and the β-lactamase breaks down the less stable piperacillin).

ANTIMICROBIAL CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS

Anti-infective chemoprophylaxis implies the administration of antimicrobial drugs to prevent infection. In a broader sense, it also includes the use of antimicrobial drugs soon after the acquisition of pathogenic microorganisms (eg, after compound fracture) but before the development of signs of infection.

Useful chemoprophylaxis is limited to the action of a specific drug on a specific organism. An effort to prevent all types of microorganisms in the environment from establishing themselves only selects the most drug-resistant organisms as the cause of a subsequent infection. In all proposed uses of prophylactic antimicrobials, the risk of the patient's acquiring an infection must be weighed against the toxicity, cost, inconvenience, and enhanced risk of superinfection resulting from the prophylactic drug.

Prophylaxis in Persons of Normal Susceptibility Exposed to a Specific Pathogen

In this category, a specific drug is administered to prevent one specific infection. Outstanding examples are the injection of benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly once every 34 weeks to prevent reinfection with group A hemolytic streptococci in rheumatic patients; prevention of meningitis by eradicating the meningococcal carrier state with rifampin; prevention of syphilis by the injection of benzathine penicillin G; prevention of plague pneumonia by oral administration of tetracycline in persons exposed to infectious droplets; prevention of clinical rickettsial disease (but not of infection) by the daily ingestion of tetracycline during exposure; and prevention of leptospirosis with oral administration of doxycycline in a hyperendemic environment.

Early treatment of an asymptomatic infection is sometimes called prophylaxis. Thus, administration of isoniazid, 610 mg/kg/d (maximum, 300 mg/d) orally for 6 months, to an asymptomatic person who converts from a negative to a positive tuberculin skin test may prevent later clinically active tuberculosis.

Prophylaxis in Persons of Increased Susceptibility

Certain anatomic or functional abnormalities predispose to serious infections. It may be feasible to prevent or abort such infections by giving a specific drug for short periods. Some important examples are listed below.

Heart Disease

Persons with heart valve abnormalities or with prosthetic heart valves are unusually susceptible to implantation of microorganisms circulating in the bloodstream. This infective endocarditis can sometimes be prevented if the proper drug can be used during periods of bacteremia. Large numbers of viridans streptococci are pushed into the circulation during dental procedures and operations on the mouth or throat. At such times, the increased risk warrants the use of a prophylactic antimicrobial drug aimed at viridans streptococci. For example, amoxicillin taken orally before the procedure and 2 hours later can be effective. Persons allergic to penicillin can take erythromycin orally. Other oral and parenteral dosage schedules can be effective.

Enterococci cause 515% of cases of infective endocarditis. They reach the bloodstream from the urinary, gastrointestinal, or female genital tract. During procedures in these areas, persons with prostheses or heart valve abnormalities can be given ampicillin combined with an aminoglycoside (eg, gentamicin), both administered intramuscularly or intravenously 30 minutes before the procedure.

During and after cardiac catheterization, blood cultures may be positive in 1020% of patients. Many of these persons also have fever, but very few acquire endocarditis. Prophylactic antimicrobials do not appear to influence these events.

Respiratory Tract Disease

Persons with functional and anatomic abnormalities of the respiratory tracteg, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or bronchiectasisare subject to attacks of chronic bronchitis. This is a recurrent bacterial infection, often precipitated by acute viral infections and resulting in respiratory decompensation. The most common organisms are pneumococci and *H influenzae.* Antibiotics may be give to patients with COPD in the following clinical settings: as prophylaxis for patients with frequent recurrences of chronic bronchitis, to treat an acute episode of bronchitis, or to treat severe exacerbations of COPD. There is little evidence supporting the use of prophylactic antibiotics, but patients with acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis with changes in the character or quantity of their sputum do benefit from antibiotic therapy. Simple prophylaxis of bacterial infection has been applied to children with cystic fibrosis who are not hospitalized. In spite of this, such children contract complicating infections caused by pseudomonads and staphylococci. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole orally or pentamidine by aerosol is used for prophylaxis for pneumocystis pneumonia in AIDS patients.

Recurrent Urinary Tract Infection

For certain women who are subject to frequently recurring urinary tract infections, the oral intake either daily or three times weekly of nitrofurantoin or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole can markedly reduce the frequency of symptomatic recurrences over long periods.

Certain women tend to develop symptoms of cystitis after sexual intercourse. The ingestion of a single dose of antimicrobial drug (nitrofurantoin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, etc) can prevent postcoital cystitis by early inhibition of growth of bacteria moved from the introitus into the proximal urethra or bladder during intercourse.

Opportunistic Infections in Severe Granulocytopenia

Immunocompromised patients receiving organ transplants or antineoplastic chemotherapy often develop profound leukopenia. When the neutrophil count falls below 1000/μL, they become unusually susceptible to opportunistic infections, most often gram-negative sepsis. Such persons are sometimes given a fluoroquinolone or cephalosporin or a drug combination (eg, vancomycin, gentamicin, cephalosporin) directed at the most prevalent opportunists at the earliest signor even without clinical evidenceof infection. This is continued for several days until the granulocyte count rises again. Several studies suggest that there is benefit from empiric therapy. Two clinical casesliver and bone marrow transplantspresented in Chapter 48 illustrate the infections that occur in these patients and the antimicrobials used for prophylaxis and treatment.

Prophylaxis in Surgery

A major portion of all antimicrobial drugs used in hospitals is employed on surgical services with the stated intent of prophylaxis.

Several general features of surgical prophylaxis merit consideration:

(1) In clean elective surgical procedures (ie, procedures during which no tissue bearing normal flora is traversed other than the prepared skin), the disadvantages of "routine" antibiotic prophylaxis (allergy, toxicity, superinfection) may outweigh the possible benefits except when hardware (eg, artificial hip joint) is being placed. However, even in "clean" herniorrhaphy, a single preoperative dose of a cephalosporin resulted in measurable benefit.

(2) Prophylactic administration of antibiotics should generally be considered only if the expected rate of infectious complications is 35%. An exception to this rule is the elective insertion of prostheses (cardiovascular, orthopedic), where a possible infection would have a catastrophic effect.

(3) The initial dose of systemic prophylactic antibiotic should be given at the time of induction of anesthesia. An exception is elective colonic surgery, in which case oral antibiotics should be given hours before the procedure.

(4) Prolonged administration of antimicrobial drugs tends to alter the normal flora of organ systems, suppressing the susceptible microorganisms and favoring the implantation of drug-resistant ones. Thus, antimicrobial prophylaxis should usually continue for no more than 1 day after the procedure and ideally should be given only intraoperatively.

(5) Systemic levels of antimicrobial drugs usually do not prevent wound infection, pneumonia, or urinary tract infection if physiologic abnormalities or foreign bodies are present.

Topical antimicrobials for prophylaxis (intravenous catheter site, closed urinary drainage, within a surgical wound, acrylic bone cement, etc) have limited usefulness.

Disinfectants

Disinfectants and antiseptics differ from systemically active antimicrobials in that they possess little selective toxicity: They are toxic not only for microbial pathogens but for host cells as well. Therefore, they can be used only to inactivate microorganisms in the inanimate environment or, to a limited extent, on skin surfaces. They cannot be administered systemically.

The antimicrobial action of disinfectants is determined by concentration, time, and temperature, and the evaluation of their effect may be complex. A few examples of disinfectants that are used in medicine or public health are listed in Table 101.

Table 101. Chemical Disinfectants, Antiseptics, and Topical Antimicrobial Agents.

Disinfection of the inanimate environment
Tabletops, instruments
Lysol or other phenolic compound
Formaldehyde
Aqueous glutaraldehyde
Quaternary ammonium compounds
Excreta, bandages, bedpans
Sodium hypochlorite
Lysol or other phenolic compound
Air
Propylene glycol mist or aerosol
Formaldehyde vapor
Heat-sensitive instruments
Ethylene oxide gas (alkylates nucleic acids; residual gas must be removed by aeration)
Disinfection of skin or wounds
Washing with soap and water
Soaps or detergents containing hexachlorophene or trichlocarbanilide or chlorhexidine
Tincture of iodine
Ethyl alcohol; isopropyl alcohol
Povidone-iodine (water-soluble)
Peracids (hydrogen peroxide, peracetic acid)
Nitrofurazone jelly or solution
Topical drugs to skin or mucous membranes
In candidiasis
Nystatin cream
Candicidin ointment
Miconazole creams
In burns
Mafenide acetate cream
Silver sulfadiazine
In dermatophytosis
Undecylenic acid powder or cream
Tolnaftate cream
Azole cream
In pyoderma
Bacitracin-neomycin-polymyxin ointment
Potassium permanganate
In pediculosis
Malathion or permethrin lotion
Topical application of drugs to eyes
For gonorrhea prophylaxis
Erythromycin or tetracycline ointment

For bacterial conjunctivitis
Sulfacetamide ointment
Gentamicin or tobramycin ointment

Ciprofloxacin ointment

Moxifloxacin ophthalmic solution

Gatifloxacin solution

Levofloxacin solution

ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS FOR SYSTEMIC ADMINISTRATION

Refer to Table 102 for a list of infecting organisms and their respective primary and alternative drug choices.

Table 102. Drugs of Choice for Suspected or Proved Microbial Pathogens.[1]

Gram-negative cocci
Moraxella catarrhalis
TMP-SMZ,[2] a fluoroquinolone[3]

Cefuroxime, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, cefepime, cefuroxime axetil, an erythromycin,[4] a tetracycline,[5] azithromycin, amoxicillin-clavulanic acid, clarithromycin

Neisseria gonorrhoeae (gonococcus)
Ceftriaxone, ciprofloxacin, gatifloxacin, or ofloxacin
Spectinomycin, cefpodoxime proxetil, cefotaxime
Neisseria meningitidis (meningococcus)
Penicillin[6]

Cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ampicillin, chloramphenicol
Gram-positive cocci
Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcus)[8]

Penicillin[6]

An erythromycin,[4] a cephalosporin,[7] vancomycin, TMP-SMZ,[2] chloramphenicol, clindamycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, a tetracycline,[5] imipenem, meropenem, quinupristin-dalfopristin, certain fluoroquinolones,[3] linezolid

Streptococcus, hemolytic, groups A, B, C, G
Penicillin[6]

An erythromycin,[4] a cephalosporin,[7] vancomycin, clindamycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, linezolid, daptomycin

Viridans streptococci
Penicillin[6] gentamicin

Cephalosporin,[7] vancomycin

Staphylococcus, methicillin-resistant
Vancomycin gentamicin rifampin
TMP-SMZ,[2] minocycline, a fluoroquinolone,[3] linezolid, quinupristin-dalfopristin, daptomycin

Staphylococcus, non-penicillinase-producing
Penicillin[6]

A cephalosporin,[8] vancomycin, imipenem, meropenem, a fluoroquinolone,[3] clindamycin

Staphylococcus, penicillinase-producing
Penicillinase-resistant penicillin[9]

Vancomycin, a cephalosporin,[7] clindamycin, amoxicillin-clavulanic acid, ticarcillin-clavulanic acid, ampicillin-sulbactam, piperacillin-tazobactam, imipenem, meropenem, a fluoroquinolone,[3] TMP-SMZ,[2] daptomycin, linezolid

Enterococcus faecalis
Ampicillin + gentamicin[10]

Vancomycin + gentamicin
Enterococcus faecium
Vancomycin + gentamicin[10]

Quinupristin-dalfopristin, linezolid; daptomycin
Gram-negative rods
Acinetobacter
Imipenem or meropenem
Minocycline, TMP-SMZ,[2] doxycycline, aminoglycosides,[11] ceftazidime, a fluoroquinolone,[3] piperacillin-tazobactam, sulbactam, polymyxin

Prevotella, oropharyngeal strains
Clindamycin
Penicillin,[6] metronidazole, cefoxitin, cefotetan

Bacteroides, gastrointestinal strains
Metronidazole
Cefoxitin, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, cefotetan, cefmetazole, imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, ticarcillin-clavulanic acid, ampicillin-sulbactam, piperacillin-tazobactam
Brucella
Tetracycline + rifampin[5]

TMP-SMZ[2] gentamicin; chloramphenicol gentamicin; doxycycline + gentamicin; ciprofloxacin + rifampin

Campylobacter jejuni
Erythromycin[4] or azithromycin

Tetracycline,[5] a fluoroquinolone,[3] gentamicin

Enterobacter
Imipenem, meropenem or cefepime
Aminoglycoside, a fluoroquinolone,[3] TMP-SMZ,[2] aztreonam, third-generation cephalosporin

Escherichia coli (sepsis)
Cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime
Imipenem or meropenem, aminoglycosides,[11] a fluoroquinolone[3]

Escherichia coli (uncomplicated urinary infection)
Fluoroquinolones,[3] nitrofurantoin

TMP-SMZ,[2] oral cephalosporin, fosfomycin

Haemophilus (meningitis and other serious infections)
Cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime
Chloramphenicol, meropenem
Haemophilus (respiratory infections, otitis)
TMP-SMZ[2]

Ampicillin, amoxicillin, doxycycline, azithromycin, clarithromycin, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, cefepime, cefuroxime, cefuroxime axetil, ampicillin-clavulanate, a fluoroquinolone, a tetracycline
Helicobacter pylori
Amoxicillin + clarithromycin + omeprazole; or tetracycline[5] + metronidazol + bismuth subsalicylate

Clarithromycin + bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol) + tetracycline; amoxicillin + metronidazole + bismuth subsalicylate; amoxicillin + clarithromycin
Helicobacter pylori
Proton pump inhibitor + clarithromycin + either amoxicillin or metronidazole
Bismuth subsalicylate + metronidazole + tetracycline HCl + proton pump inhibitor or H_2 -blocker

Klebsiella
A cephalosporin
TMP-SMZ,[2] aminoglycoside,[11] imipenem, meropenem or ertapenem, a fluoroquinolone,[3] piperacillin, aztreonam, ticarcillin/clavulanate

Legionella species (pneumonia)
Azithromycin, or fluoroquinolones[3] rifampin

TMP-SMZ,[2] doxycycline rifampin, erythromycin

Proteus mirabilis
Ampicillin
An aminoglycoside,[11] TMP-SMZ,[2] a fluoroquinolone,[5] a cephalosporin,[7] imipenem, meropenem or ertapenem

Proteus vulgaris and other species (*morganella, providencia*)
Cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime
Aminoglycoside,[11] imipenem, TMP-SMZ,[2] a fluoroquinolone,[3] imipenem, meropenem or ertapenem

Pseudomonas aeruginosa
Aminoglycoside[11] + antipseudomonal penicillin[12]

Ceftazidime aminoglycoside; imipenem or meropenem aminoglycoside; aztreonam aminoglycoside; ciprofloxacin piperacillin; ciprofloxacin ceftazidime; ciprofloxacin cefepime
Burkholderia pseudomallei (melioidosis)
Ceftazidime
Chloramphenicol, tetracycline,[5] TMP-SMZ,[2] amoxicillin-clavulanic acid, imipenem or meropenem

Burkholderia mallei (glanders)
Streptomycin + tetracycline[5]

Chloramphenicol + streptomycin
Salmonella (bacteremia)
Ceftriaxone, a fluoroquinolone[3]

TMP-SMZ,[2] ampicillin, chloramphenicol

Serratia
Cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime
TMP-SMZ,[2] aminoglycosides,[11] imipenem or meropenem, a fluoroquinolone[3]

Shigella
A fluoroquinolone[3]

Ampicillin, TMP-SMZ,[2] ceftriaxone

Vibrio (cholera, sepsis)
Tetracycline[5]

TMP-SMZ,[2] a fluoroquinolone[3]

Yersinia pestis (plague, tularemia)
Streptomycin a tetracycline[5]

Chloramphenicol, TMP-SMZ[2]

Gram-positive rods
Actinomyces
Penicillin[6]

Tetracycline,[5] clindamycin

Bacillus (including anthrax)
Penicillin[6] (ciprofloxacin or doxycycline for anthrax)

Erythromycin,[4] tetracycline,[5] a fluoroquinolone[3]

Bacillus anthracis

Ciprofloxacin, a tetracycline
Penicillin, amoxicillin, erythromycin, imipenem, clindamycin, levofloxacin
Bacillus cereus (subtilis)
Vancomycin
Imipenem or meropenem, clindamycin
Clostridium (eg, gas gangrene, tetanus)
Penicillin[6]

Metronidazole, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, imipenem or meropenem
Corynebacterium diphtheriae
Erythromycin[4]

Penicillin[6]

Corynebacterium jeikeium
Vancomycin
Ciprofloxacin, penicillin + gentamicin, erythromycin
Listeria monocytogenes
Ampicillin aminoglycoside[11]

TMP-SMZ[2]

Acid-fast rods
Mycobacterium tuberculosis [13]

INH + rifampin + pyrazinamide ethambutol or streptomycin
Other antituberculous drugs
Mycobacterium leprae
Dapsone + rifampin clofazimine
Minocycline, ofloxacin, clarithromycin
Mycobacterium kansasii
INH + rifampin ethambutol
Ethionamide, cycloserine, clarithromycin or azithromycin
Mycobacterium avium complex
Clarithromycin or azithromycin + one or more of the following: ethambutol, rifampin or rifabutin, ciprofloxacin
Amikacin
Mycobacterium fortuitum-chelonae
Amikacin + clarithromycin
Cefoxitin, sulfonamide, doxycycline, linezolid, rifampin, ethambutol
Nocardia
TMP-SMZ[2]

Minocycline, imipenem or meropenem, sulfisoxazole, linezolid, a tetracycline, amikacin
Spirochetes
Borrelia burgdorferi (Lyme disease)
Doxycycline, amoxicillin, cefuroxime axetil
Ceftriaxone, cetotaxime, penicillin, azithromycin, clarithromycin
Borrelia recurrentis (relapsing fever)
Doxycycline[5]

Penicillin[6]

Leptospira
Penicillin[6]

Doxycycline,[5] ceftriaxone

Treponema pallidum (syphilis)
Penicillin[6]

Doxycycline, ceftriaxone
Treponema pertenue (yaws)
Penicillin[6]

Doxycycline[5]

Mycoplasmas
Erythromycin[4] or doxycycline

Clarithromycin, azithromycin, a fluoroquinolone[3]

Chlamydiae
C psittaci
Doxycycline
Chloramphenicol
C trachomatis (urethritis or pelvic inflammatory disease)
Doxycycline or azithromycin
Ofloxacin
C pneumoniae
Doxycycline, erythromycin,[4] clarithromycin, azithromycin

A fluoroquinolone[3,14]

Rickettsiae
Doxycycline
Chloramphenicol, a fluoroquinolone[3]

Suspected or Proved Etiologic Agent	Drug(s) of First Choice	Alternative Drug(s)

---

[1] Data from Med Lett Drugs Ther 43:69-78, 2001.

[2] TMP-SMZ is a mixture of 1 part trimethoprim and 5 parts sulfamethoxazole.

[3] Fluoroquinolones include ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, and others (see text).

Gatifloxacin, levofloxacin, and moxifloxacin have the best activity against gram-positive organisms, including penicillin-resistant *S pneumoniae* and methicillin-sensitive *S aureus.* Activity against enterococci and *S epidermidis* is variable. Ciprofloxacin has the best activity against *P aeruginosa.*

[4] Erythromycin estolate is best absorbed orally but carries the highest risk of hepatitis; erythromycin stearate and erythromycin ethylsuccinate are also available.

[5] All tetracyclines have similar activity against most microorganisms. Minocycline and doxycycline have increased activity against *S aureus.* Dosage is determined by rates of absorption and excretion of various preparations.

[6] Penicillin G is preferred for parenteral injection; penicillin V for oral administrationto be used only in treating infections due to highly sensitive organisms.

[7] Most intravenous cephalosporins (with the exception of ceftazidime) have good activity against gram-positive cocci.

[8] Intermediate and high-level resistance to penicillin has been described. Infections caused by strains with intermediate resistance may respond to high doses of penicillin, cefotaxime, or ceftriaxone. Infections caused by highly resistant strains should be treated with vancomycin rifampin. Many strains of penicillin-resistant pneumococci are resistant to erythromycin, macrolides, TMP-SMZ, and chloramphenicol.

[9] Parenteral nafcillin or oxacillin; oral dicloxacillin, cloxacillin, or oxacillin.

[10] Addition of gentamicin indicated only for severe enterococcal infections (eg, endocarditis, meningitis).

[11] Aminoglycosidesgentamicin, tobramycin, amikacin, netilmicinshould be chosen on the basis of local patterns of susceptibility.

[12] Antipseudomonal penicillins: ticarcillin, piperacillin.

[13] Resistance may be a problem, and susceptibility testing should be done.

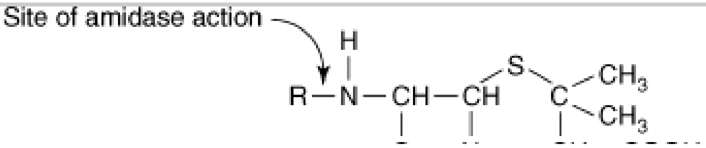
[14] Ciprofloxacin has inferior antichlamydial activity compared with newer fluoroquinolones.

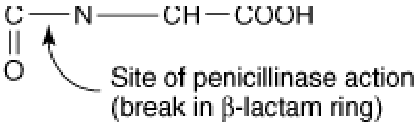
PENICILLINS

The penicillins are derived from molds of the genus *Penicillium* (eg, *Penicillium notatum*) and obtained by extraction of submerged cultures grown in special media. The most widely used natural penicillin is penicillin G. From fermentation brews of penicillium, 6-aminopenicillanic acid has been isolated on a large scale. This makes it possible to synthesize an almost unlimited variety of penicillin compounds by coupling the free amino group of the penicillanic acid to free carboxyl groups of different radicals.

All penicillins share the same basic structure (see 6-aminopenicillanic acid in Figure 101). A thiazolidine ring is attached to a β-lactam ring that carries a free amino group. The acidic radicals attached to the amino group can be split off by bacterial and other amidases. The structural integrity of the 6-aminopenicillanic acid nucleus is essential to the biologic activity of the compounds. If the β-lactam ring is enzymatically cleaved by β-lactamases (penicillinases), the resulting product, penicilloic acid, is devoid of antibacterial activity. However, it carries an antigenic determinant of the penicillins and acts as a sensitizing hapten when attached to carrier proteins.

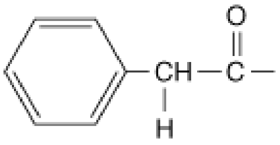
Figure 101.



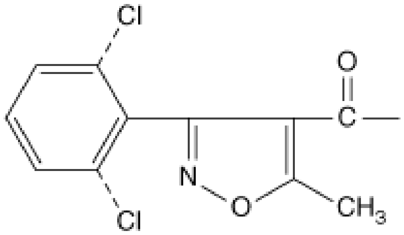


6-Aminopenicillanic acid

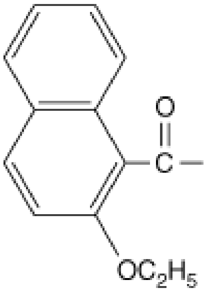
The following structures can each be substituted at the R to produce a new penicillin.



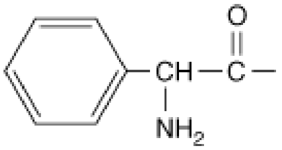
Penicillin G (benzylpenicillin):
High activity against gram-positive bacteria.
Low activity against gram-negative bacteria.
Acid-labile. Destroyed by β-lactamase.
60% protein-bound.



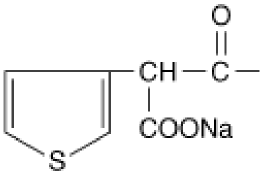
Oxacillin (no Cl atoms); cloxacillin (one Cl in structure); dicloxacillin (2 Cls in structure); flucloxacillin (one Cl and one F in structure) (isoxazolyl penicillins):
Similar to methicillin in β-lactamase resistance, but acid-stable. Can be taken orally. Highly protein-bound (95–98%).



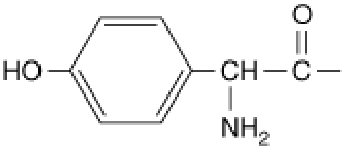
Nafcillin (ethoxynaphthamidopenicillin):
Similar to isoxazolyl penicillins. Less strongly protein-bound (90%). Can be given by mouth or by vein. Resistant to staphylococcal β-lactamase.



Ampicillin (alpha-aminobenzylpenicillin):
Similar to penicillin G (destroyed by β-lactamase) but acid-stable and more active against gram-negative bacteria. Carbenicillin has —COONa instead of $-NH_2$ group.



Ticarcillin:
Similar to carbenicillin but gives higher blood levels. Piperacillin, azlocillin, and mezlocillin resemble ticarcillin in action against gram-negative aerobes.



Amoxicillin:
Similar to ampicillin but better absorbed, gives higher blood levels.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structures of some penicillins.

The different radicals (R) attached to the aminopenicillanic acid determine the essential pharmacologic properties of the resulting drugs. The clinically important penicillins fall into four principal groups: (1) highest activity against gram-positive organisms, spirochetes, and some others but susceptible to hydrolysis by β-lactamases and acid-labile (eg, penicillin G); (2) relative resistance to β-lactamases but lower activity against gram-positive organisms and inactivity against gram-negatives (eg, nafcillin); (3) relatively high activity against both gram-positive and gram-negative organisms but destroyed by β-lactamases (eg, ampicillin, piperacillin); and (4) relative stability to gastric acid and suitable for oral administration (eg, penicillin V, cloxacillin, amoxicillin). Some representatives are shown in Figure 101. Most penicillins are dispensed as sodium or potassium salts of the free acid. Potassium penicillin G contains about 1.7 meq of K^+ per million units (2.8 meq/g). Procaine salts and benzathine salts of penicillin provide repository forms for intramuscular injection. In dry form, penicillins are stable, but solutions rapidly lose their activity and must be prepared fresh for administration.

Antimicrobial Activity

The initial step in penicillin action is binding of the drug to cell receptors. These receptors are PBPs, at least some of which are enzymes involved in transpeptidation reactions. From three to six (or more) PBPs per cell can be present. After penicillin molecules have attached to the receptors, peptidoglycan synthesis is inhibited as final transpeptidation is blocked. A final bactericidal event is the removal or inactivation of an inhibitor of autolytic enzymes in the cell wall. This activates the autolytic enzymes and results in cell lysis. Organisms with defective autolysin function are inhibited but not killed by β-lactam drugs, and they are said to be "tolerant."

Since active cell wall synthesis is required for penicillin action, metabolically inactive microorganisms are not susceptible.

Penicillin G and penicillin V are often measured in units (1 million units = 0.6 g), but the semisynthetic penicillins are measured in grams. Whereas 0.0021 μg/mL of penicillin G is lethal for a majority of susceptible gram-positive organisms, 10100 times more is required to kill gram-negative bacteria (except neisseriae).

Resistance

Resistance to penicillins falls into several categories: (1) Production of β-lactamases by staphylococci, gram-negative bacteria, haemophili, gonococci, and others. More than 50 different β-lactamases are known, most of them produced under the control of bacterial plasmids. Some β-lactamases are inducible by the newer cephalosporins. (2) Lack of penicillin receptors (PBPs) or altered PBPs (eg, pneumococci, enterococci) or inaccessibility of receptors because of permeability barriers of bacterial outer membranes. These are often under chromosomal control. (3) Failure of activation of autolytic enzymes in cell wall, which can result in inhibition without killing bacteria (eg, tolerance of some staphylococci). (4) Failure to synthesize peptidoglycans, eg, in mycoplasmas, L forms, or metabolically inactive bacteria.

Absorption, Distribution, & Excretion

After intramuscular or intravenous administration, absorption of most penicillins is rapid and complete. After oral administration, only 530% of the dose of most penicillins is absorbed, depending on acid stability, binding to foods, presence of buffers, etc. Amoxicillin is well absorbed. After absorption, penicillins are widely distributed in tissues and body fluids.

Special dosage forms have been designed for delayed absorption to yield drug levels for long periods. After a single intramuscular dose of benzathine penicillin, 1.5 g (2.4 million units), serum levels of 0.03 unit/mL are maintained for 10 days and levels of 0.005 unit/mL for 3 weeks. Procaine penicillin given intramuscularly yields therapeutic levels for 24 hours.

In many tissues, penicillin concentrations are similar to those in serum. Lower levels occur in the eyes, the prostate, and the central nervous system. However, in meningitis, penetration is enhanced, and levels of 0.55 μg/mL occur in the cerebrospinal fluid with a daily parenteral dose of 12 g. Thus, meningococcal and pneumococcal meningitis are treated with systemic penicillin, and intrathecal injection has been abandoned.

Most of the penicillins are rapidly excreted by the kidneys. About 10% of renal excretion is by glomerular filtration and 90% by tubular secretion. The latter can be partially blocked by probenecid to achieve higher systemic and cerebrospinal fluid levels. In the newborn and in persons with renal failure, penicillin excretion is reduced and systemic levels remain elevated longer. Some penicillins (eg, nafcillin) are eliminated mainly by nonrenal mechanisms.

Clinical Uses

Penicillins are the most widely used antibiotics, particularly in the following areas.

Penicillin G is the drug of choice in most infections caused by streptococci, pneumococci, meningococci, spirochetes, clostridia, aerobic gram-positive rods, non-penicillinase-producing staphylococci and gonococci, and actinomycetes.

Penicillin G is inhibitory for enterococci *(E faecalis),* but for bactericidal effects (eg, in enterococcal endocarditis) an aminoglycoside must be added. Penicillin G in ordinary doses is excreted into the urine in sufficiently high concentrations to inhibit some gram-negative organisms unless they produce a large amount of β-lactamases.

Benzathine penicillin G is a salt of very low solubility given intramuscularly for low but prolonged drug levels. A single injection of 1.2 million units (0.7 g) is satisfactory treatment for group A streptococcal pharyngitis and primary syphilis. The same injection once every 34 weeks is satisfactory prophylaxis against group A streptococcal reinfection in rheumatic fever patients.

Infection with β-lactamase-producing staphylococci is the only indication for the use of penicillinase-resistant penicillins, eg, nafcillin or oxacillin. Cloxacillin or dicloxacillin by mouth can be given for milder staphylococcal infections. Staphylococci resistant to oxacillin and nafcillin have the *mecA* gene and make a low-affinity penicillin-binding protein.

Oral amoxicillin is better absorbed than ampicillin and yields higher levels. Amoxicillin given together with clavulanic acid is active against β-lactamase-producing *H influenzae.* Ticarcillin resembles ampicillin but is more active against gram-negative rods. It is usually given in gram-negative sepsis in conjunction with an aminoglycoside (eg, gentamicin). Piperacillin is more effective against aerobic gram-negative rods, especially pseudomonads. Piperacillin combined with the β-lactamase inhibitor tazobactam has increased activity against some β-lactamase-producing gram-negative rods. The piperacillin-tazobactam combination, however, is no more active against *P aeruginosa* than piperacillin alone.

Side Effects

Penicillins possess less direct toxicity than most of the other antimicrobial drugs. Most serious side effects are due to hypersensitivity.

All penicillins are cross-sensitizing and cross-reacting. Any material (including milk, cosmetics) containing penicillin may induce sensitization. The responsible antigens are degradation products (eg, penicilloic acid) bound to host protein. Skin tests with penicilloyl-polylysine, with alkaline hydrolysis products, and with undegraded penicillin identify many hypersensitive persons. Among positive reactors to skin tests, the incidence of major immediate allergic reactions is high. Such reactions are associated with cell-bound IgE antibodies. IgG antibodies to penicillin are common and are not associated with allergic reactions other than rare cases of hemolytic anemia. A history of a penicillin reaction in the past is not reliable, but the drug must be administered with caution to such persons, or a substitute drug should be chosen.

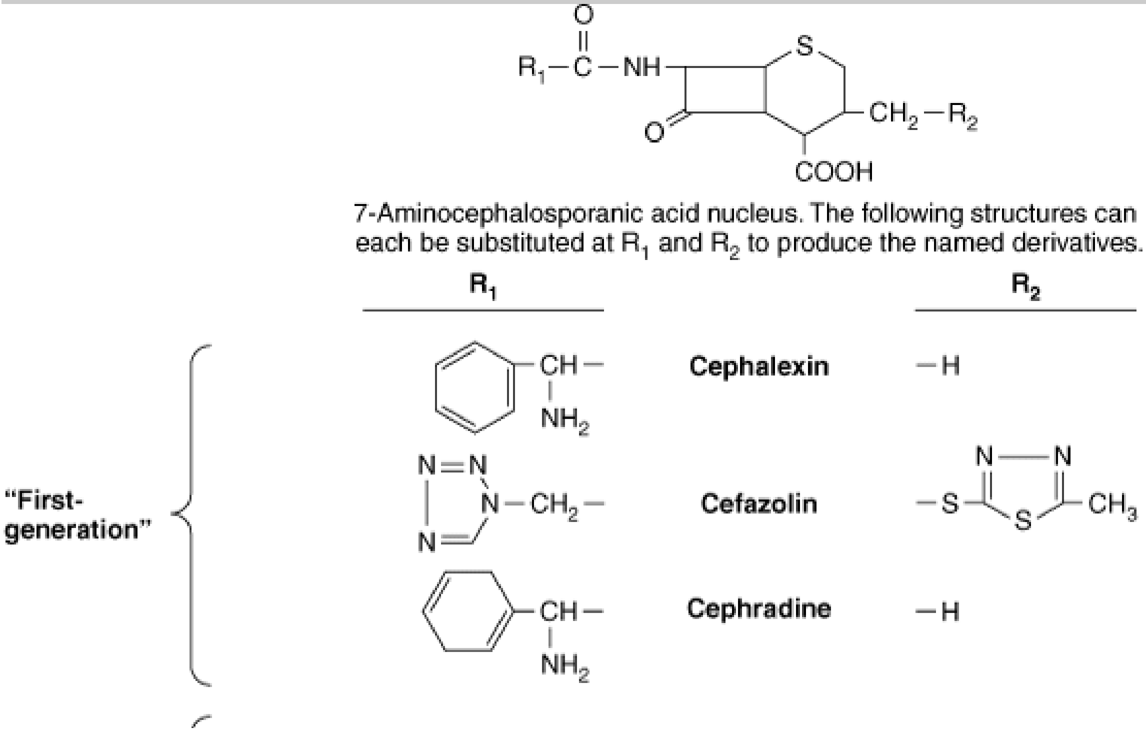
Allergic reactions may occur as typical anaphylactic shock, typical serum sickness type reactions (urticaria, joint swelling, angioneurotic edema, pruritus, respiratory embarrassment within 712 days of penicillin dosage), and a variety of skin rashes, fever, nephritis, eosinophilia, vasculitis, etc. The incidence of hypersensitivity to penicillin is negligible in children but may be 15% among adults in the United States. Acute anaphylactic life-threatening reactions are very rare (0.5%). Corticosteroids can sometimes suppress allergic manifestations to penicillins.

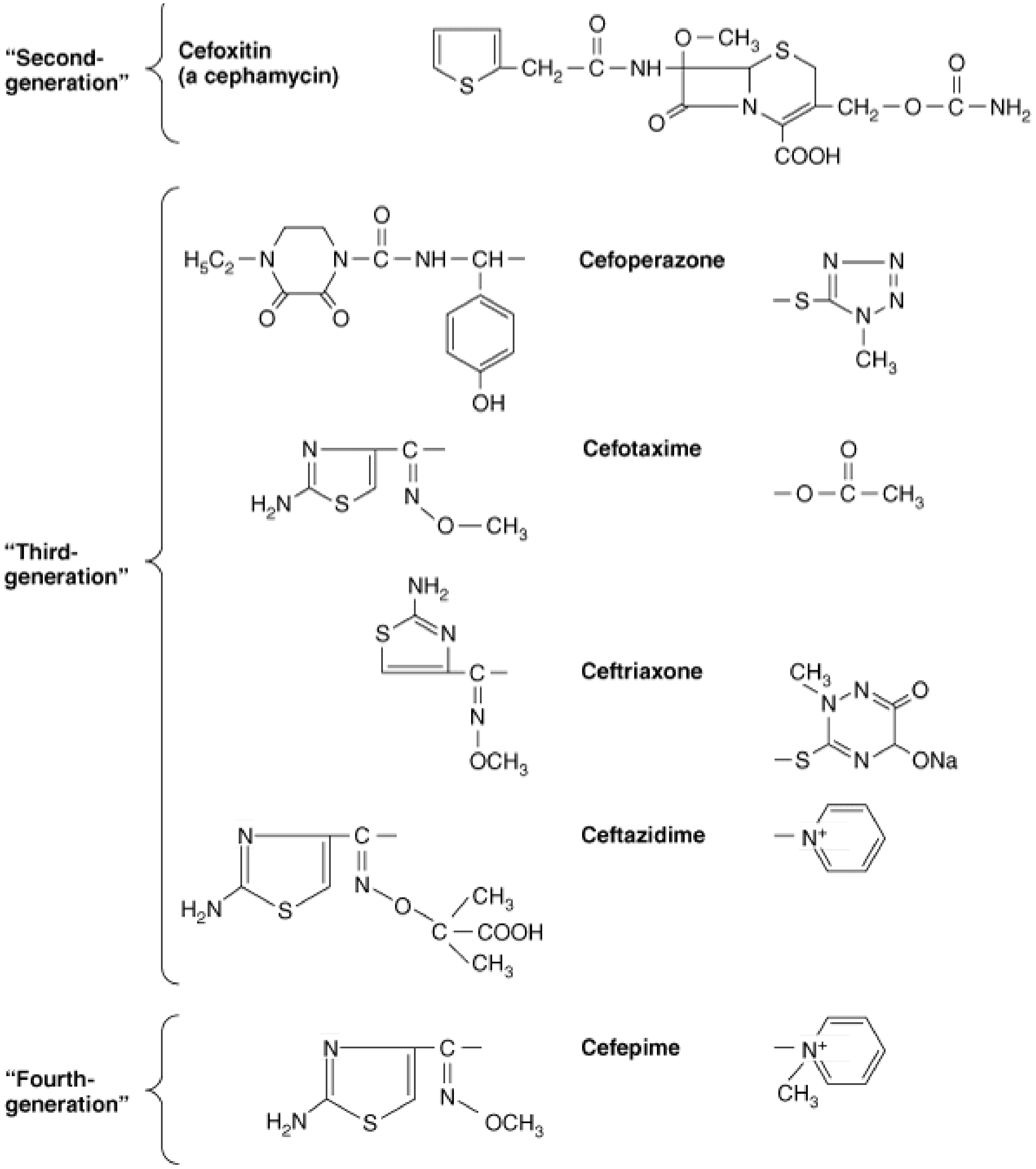
Very high doses may produce central nervous system concentrations that are irritating. In patients with renal failure, smaller doses may produce encephalopathy, delirium, and convulsions. With such doses, direct cation toxicity (K^+) may also occur. Nafcillin occasionally causes granulocytopenia. Oral penicillins can cause diarrhea. High doses of penicillins may cause a bleeding tendency. Some penicillins have become obsolete because of their enhanced toxicities. Methicillin too frequently causes interstitial nephritis. Carbenicillin too frequently decreases normal platelet aggregation, which can lead to clinically significant bleeding.

CEPHALOSPORINS

Some cephalosporium fungi yield antimicrobial substances called cephalosporins. These are β-lactam compounds with a nucleus of 7-aminocephalosporanic acid (Figure 102) instead of the penicillins' 6-aminopenicillanic acid. Natural cephalosporins have low antibacterial activity, but the attachment of various R side-groups has resulted in the proliferation of an enormous array of drugs with varying pharmacologic properties and antimicrobial spectra and activity. Cephamycins are similar to cephalosporins but are derived from actinomycetes.

Figure 102.


7-Aminocephalosporanic acid nucleus. The following structures can each be substituted at R_1 and R_2 to produce the named derivatives.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structures of some cephalosporins.

The mechanism of action of cephalosporins is analogous to that of penicillins: (1) binding to specific PBPs that serve as drug receptors on bacteria; (2) inhibiting cell wall synthesis by blocking the transpeptidation of peptidoglycan; and (3) activating autolytic enzymes in the cell wall that can produce lesions resulting in bacterial death. Resistance to cephalosporins can be attributed to (1) poor permeation of bacteria by the drug; (2) lack of PBP for a specific drug; and (3) degradation of drug by β-lactamases, many of which exist. Certain second- and third-generation cephalosporins can induce special β-lactamases in gram-negative bacteria. In general, however, cephalosporins tend to be resistant to the β-lactamases produced by staphylococci and common gram-negative bacteria that hydrolyze and inactivate many penicillins.

For ease of reference, cephalosporins have been arranged into major groups, or "generations," discussed below (Table 103). Many cephalosporins are excreted mainly by the kidney and may accumulate and induce toxicity in renal insufficiency.

Table 103. Major Groups of Cephalosporins.

First-Generation
Cephalothin
Cephapirin
Cefazolin
Cephalexin[1]

Cephradine[1]

Cefadroxil
Second-Generation
Cefamandole
Cefuroxime
Cefonicid
Ceforanide
Cefaclor[1]

Cefoxitin
Cefotetan
Cefprozil[1]

Cefuroxime axetil[1]

Cefmetazole
Third-Generation
Cefotaxime
Ceftizoxime
Ceftriaxone
Ceftazidime
Cefoperazone
Cefixime[1]

Cefpodoxime proxetil[1]

Ceftibuten[1]

Cefdinir[1]

Fourth-Generation	
Cefepime	

[1] Oral agents.

First-Generation Cephalosporins

First-generation cephalosporins are very active against gram-positive cocciexcept enterococci and nafcillin-resistant staphylococciand moderately active against some gram-negative rodsprimarily *E coli,* proteus, and klebsiella. Anaerobic cocci are often sensitive, but *Bacteroides fragilis* is not.

Cephalexin, cephradine, and cefadroxil are absorbed from the gut to a variable extent and can be used to treat urinary and respiratory tract infections. Other first-generation cephalosporins must be injected to give adequate levels in blood and tissues. Cefazolin is a choice for surgical prophylaxis because it gives the highest (90120 μg/mL) levels with every-8-hour dosing. Cephalothin and cephapirin in the same dose give lower levels. None of the first-generation drugs penetrate the central nervous system, and they are not drugs of first choice for any infection.

Second-Generation Cephalosporins

The second-generation cephalosporins are a heterogeneous group. All are active against organisms covered by first-generation drugs but have extended coverage against gram-negative rodsincluding klebsiella and proteus but not *P aeruginosa.*

Some (not all) oral second-generation cephalosporins can be used to treat sinusitis and otitis caused by *Haemophilus influenzae,* including β-lactamase-producing strains.

Cefoxitin and cefotetan are active against *B fragilis* and thus are used in mixed anaerobic infections, including peritonitis or pelvic inflammatory disease. Resistance to these agents among the *B fragilis* group is increasing.

Third-Generation Cephalosporins

Third-generation cephalosporins have decreased activity against gram-positive cocci, except for *S pneumoniae* ; enterococci are intrinsically resistant to cephalosporins and often produce superinfections during their use. Most third-generation cephalosporins are active against staphylococci, but ceftazidime is only weakly active. A major advantage of third-generation drugs is their enhanced activity against gram-negative rods. Whereas second-generation drugs tend to fail against *P aeruginosa,* ceftazidime or cefoperazone may succeed. Thus, third-generation drugs are very useful in the management of hospital-acquired gram-negative bacteremia. In immunocompromised patients, these drugs are often combined with an aminoglycoside. Ceftazidime may also be lifesaving in severe melioidosis (*Burkholderia pseudomallei* infection).

Another important distinguishing feature of several third-generation drugsexcept cefoperazoneis the ability to reach the central nervous system and to appear in the spinal fluid in sufficient concentrations to treat meningitis caused by gram-negative rods. Cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, or ceftizoxime given intravenously may be used for management of gram-negative bacterial sepsis and meningitis.

Fourth-Generation Cephalosporins

Cefepime is the only fourth-generation cephalosporin now in clinical use in the United States. It has enhanced activity against *Enterobacter* and *Citrobacter* species that are resistant to third-generation cephalosporins. Cefepime has activity comparable to that of ceftazidime against *P aeruginosa.* The activity against streptococci and nafcillin-susceptible staphylococci is greater than that of ceftazidime and comparable to that of the other third-generation compounds. Cefpirome is a fourth-generation cephalosporin available outside of the United States.

Adverse Effects of Cephalosporins

Cephalosporins are sensitizing and can elicit a variety of hypersensitivity reactions, including anaphylaxis, fever, skin rashes, nephritis, granulocytopenia, and hemolytic anemia. The frequency of cross-allergy between cephalosporins and penicillins is approximately 5%. Patients with minor penicillin allergy can often tolerate cephalosporins, but those with a history of anaphylaxis cannot.

Thrombophlebitis can occur after intravenous injection. Hypoprothrombinemia is frequent with cephalosporins that have a methylthiotetrazole group (eg, cefamandole, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefoperazone). Oral administration of vitamin K (10 mg) twice weekly can prevent this complication. These same drugs can also cause severe disulfiram reactions, and use of alcohol must be avoided.

Since many second-, third-, and fourth-generation cephalosporins have little activity against gram-positive organisms, particularly enterococci, superinfection with these organisms and with fungi may occur.

OTHER BETA-LACTAM DRUGS

Monobactams

Monobactams have a monocyclic β-lactam ring and are resistant to β-lactamases. They are active against gram-negative rods but not against gram-positive bacteria or anaerobes. The first such drug to become available was aztreonam, which resembles aminoglycosides in activity and is given intravenously or intramuscularly every 8 or 12 hours. Patients with IgE-mediated penicillin allergy can tolerate it without reaction, andapart from skin rashes and minor aminotransferase disturbancesno major toxicity has been reported. Superinfections with staphylococci and enterococci can occur.

Carbapenems

These drugs are structurally related to β-lactam antibiotics. Imipenem, the first drug of this type, has good activity against many gram-negative rods, gram-positive organisms, and anaerobes. It is resistant to β-lactamases but is inactivated by dihydropeptidases in renal tubules. Consequently, it is administered together with a peptidase inhibitor, cilastatin.

Imipenem penetrates body tissues and fluids well, including cerebrospinal fluid. The drug is given intravenously every 68 hours and in reduced dosage in renal insufficiency. Imipenem may be indicated for infections due to organisms resistant to other drugs. *Pseudomonas* species rapidly develop resistance, and the concomitant use of an aminoglycoside is therefore required; however, this does not delay the development of resistance. Such a combination may be effective treatment for febrile neutropenic patients.

Adverse effects of imipenem include vomiting, diarrhea, skin rashes, and reactions at infusion sites. Excessive levels in patients with renal failure may lead to seizures. Patients allergic to penicillins may be allergic to imipenem as well.

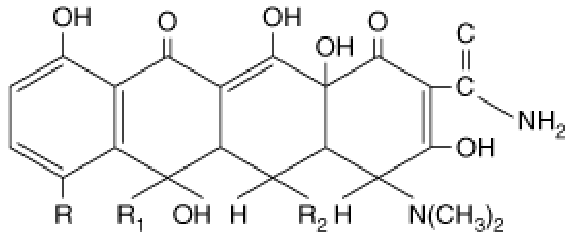
Meropenem is similar to imipenem in pharmacology and antimicrobial spectrum of activity. However, it is not inactivated by dipeptidases and is less likely to cause seizures than imipenem.

TETRACYCLINES

The tetracyclines are a group of drugs that differ in physical and pharmacologic characteristics but have virtually identical antimicrobial properties and give complete cross-resistance. All tetracyclines are readily absorbed from the intestinal tract and distributed widely in tissues but penetrate into the cerebrospinal fluid poorly. Some can also be administered intramuscularly or intravenously. They are excreted in stool and into bile and urine at varying rates. With doses of tetracycline hydrochloride, 2 g/d orally, blood levels reach 8 μg/mL. Minocycline and doxycycline are excreted more slowly and therefore are administered at longer intervals.

The tetracyclines have the basic structure shown below. The following radicals occur in the different forms:

	R	R_1	R_2	Renal clearance (mL/min)
Tetracycline	$-H$	$-CH_3$	$-H$	65
Doxycycline	$-H$	$-CH_3$	$-OH$	16
Minocycline	$-N(CH_3)_2$	$-H$	$-H$	< 10



Antimicrobial Activity

Tetracyclines are concentrated by susceptible bacteria and inhibit protein synthesis by inhibiting the binding of aminoacyl-tRNA to the 30S unit of bacterial ribosomes. Resistant bacteria fail to concentrate the drug. This resistance is under the control of transmissible plasmids.

The tetracyclines are principally bacteriostatic agents. They inhibit the growth of susceptible gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (inhibited by 0.110 μg/mL) and are drugs of choice in infections caused by rickettsiae, chlamydiae, and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae.* Tetracyclines are used in cholera to shorten excretion of vibrios. Tetracycline hydrochloride or doxycycline orally for 7 days is effective against chlamydial genital infection. Tetracyclines are sometimes employed in combination with streptomycin to treat brucella, yersinia, and francisella infections. Minocycline is often active against nocardia and can eradicate the meningococcal carrier state. Low doses of tetracycline for many months are given for acne to suppress both skin bacteria and their lipases, which promote inflammatory changes.

Tetracyclines do not inhibit fungi. They temporarily suppress parts of the normal bowel flora, but superinfections may occur, particularly with tetracycline-resistant pseudomonads, protei, staphylococci, and yeasts.

Side Effects

The tetracyclines produce varying degrees of gastrointestinal upset (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea), skin rashes, mucous membrane lesions, and fever in many patients, particularly when administration is prolonged and dosage high. Replacement of bacterial flora (see above) occurs commonly. Overgrowth of yeasts on anal and vaginal mucous membranes during tetracycline administration leads to inflammation and pruritus. Overgrowth of organisms in the intestine may lead to enterocolitis.

Tetracyclines are deposited in bony structures and teeth, particularly in the fetus and during the first 6 years of life. Discoloration and fluorescence of the teeth occur in newborns if tetracyclines are taken for prolonged periods by pregnant women. Hepatic damage may occur. Minocycline can cause marked vestibular disturbances.

Bacteriologic Examination

Organisms that are susceptible to tetracycline are also considered susceptible to doxycycline and minocycline. However, resistance to tetracycline cannot be used to predict resistance to the other agents.

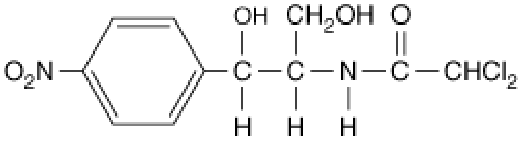
GLYCYLCYCLINES

Glycylcyclines are synthetic analogs of the tetracyclines. Only one agent is currently available for usetigecycline. Tigecycline is the 9-*tert* -butyl-glycylamido derivative of minocycline. Tigecycline shares the same binding site on the ribosome as the tetracyclines. It binds more avidly to the ribosome, and this stronger binding is likely responsible for the enhanced activity against tetracycline-resistant organisms. Tigecycline is active against a broad spectrum of gram-positive and gram-negative pathogens. Compared to the tetracyclines, it is more active against methicillin-resistant *S aureus* and *S epidermidis* , drug-susceptible and drug-resistant *S pneumoniae* , and enterococci. In terms of the gram-negative aerobes, in addition to the spectrum of the other tetracyclines, tigecycline has enhanced activity against several *Enterobacteriaceae* , including *Salmonella* and *Shigella* species, and *Acinetobacter* species. It does not have good activity against *P aeruginosa* , *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* , or *Burkholderia cepacia* . Tigecycline also has good activity against many anaerobic bacteria, including *B fragilis* .

Tigecycline is currently available only as a parenteral agent because of poor bioavailability. The drug has extensive and rapid distribution in tissues. Protein binding ranges from 7379%. Tigecycline is not metabolized to pharmacologically active metabolites. The half-life is long, approximately 40 hours. The major route of elimination is via the biliary tract and through the feces; renal clearance is a secondary route of elimination. Currently, tigecycline is approved in the United States for treatment of complicated skin and soft tissue infections, as well as complicated intraabdominal infections.

CHLORAMPHENICOL

Chloramphenicol is a substance produced originally from cultures of *Streptomyces venezuelae* but now manufactured synthetically.



Chloramphenicol

Crystalline chloramphenicol is a stable compound that is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and widely distributed into tissues and body fluids, including the central nervous system and cerebrospinal fluid; it penetrates cells well. Most of the drug is inactivated in the liver by conjugation with glucuronic acid or by reduction to inactive arylamines. Excretion is mainly in the urine, 90% in inactive form. Although chloramphenicol is usually administered orally, the succinate can be injected intravenously in similar dosage.

Chloramphenicol is a potent inhibitor of protein synthesis in microorganisms. It blocks the attachment of amino acids to the nascent peptide chain on the 50S unit of ribosomes by interfering with the action of peptidyl transferase. Chloramphenicol is principally bacteriostatic, and its spectrum, dosage, and blood levels are similar to those of the tetracyclines. Chloramphenicol has been used to treat many types of infection (eg, due to salmonellae, meningococci, *H influenzae*), but it is no longer the drug of choice for any infection.

Chloramphenicol resistance is due to destruction of the drug by an enzyme (chloramphenicol acetyltransferase) that is under plasmid control.

Chloramphenicol infrequently causes gastrointestinal upsets. However, administration of more than 3 g/d regularly induces disturbances in red cell maturation, elevation of serum iron, and anemia. These changes are reversible upon discontinuance of the drug. Very rarely, individuals exhibit an apparent idiosyncrasy to chloramphenicol and develop severe or fatal aplastic anemia that is distinct from the dose-related reversible effect described above. For these reasons, the use of chloramphenicol is generally restricted to those infections where it is clearly the most effective drug by laboratory test or experience.

In premature and newborn infants, chloramphenicol can induce collapse ("gray syndrome") because the normal mechanism of detoxification (glucuronide conjugation in the liver) is not yet developed.

ERYTHROMYCINS

Erythromycin is obtained from *Streptomyces erythreus* and has the chemical formula $C_{37}H_{67}NO_{13}$. Drugs related to erythromycin are clarithromycin, azithromycin, and others. Erythromycins attach to a receptor (a 23S rRNA) on the 50S subunit of the bacterial ribosome. They inhibit protein synthesis by interfering with translocation reactions and the formation of initiation complexes. Resistance to erythromycins results from an alteration (methylation) of the rRNA receptor. This is under control of a transmissible plasmid. The activity of erythromycins is greatly enhanced at alkaline pH.

Erythromycins in concentrations of 0.12 μg/mL are active against gram-positive bacteria, including pneumococci, streptococci, and corynebacteria. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia trachomatis, Legionella pneumophila,* and *Campylobacter jejuni* are also susceptible. Resistant variants occur in susceptible microbial populations and tend to emerge during treatment, especially in staphylococcal infections.

Erythromycins may be drugs of choice in infections caused by the organisms listed above and are substitutes for penicillins in persons hypersensitive to the latter. Erythromycin stearate, succinate, or estolate orally four times a day yields serum levels of 0.52 μg/mL. Other forms are given intravenously.

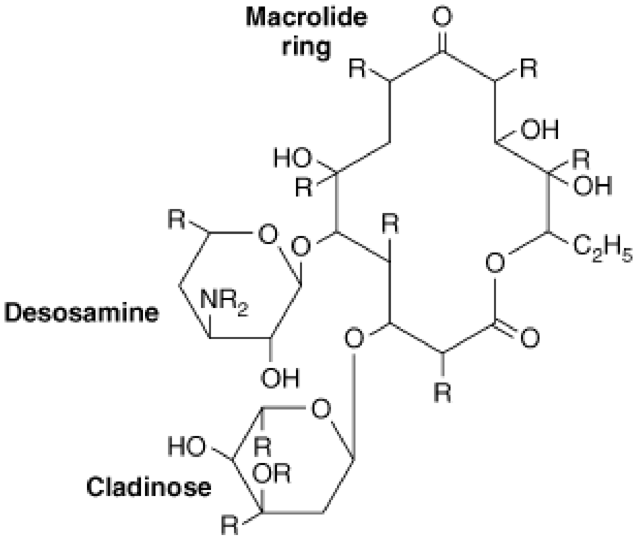
Undesirable side effects are drug fever, mild gastrointestinal upsets, and cholestatic hepatitis as a hypersensitivity reaction, especially to the estolate. Hepatotoxicity may be increased during pregnancy. Erythromycin tends to increase levels of simultaneously administered anticoagulants, cyclosporine, and other drugs by depressing microsomal enzymes.

Dirithromycin is a macrolide with a spectrum of antimicrobial activity similar to that of erythromycin. Dirithromycin has a long serum half-life and is conveniently administered once a day.

Clarithromycin and azithromycin are azalides chemically related to erythromycin. Like erythromycin, both clarithromycin and azithromycin are active against staphylococci and streptococci. Clarithromycin has enhanced activity against *Legionella pneumophila, Helicobacter pylori, Moraxella catarrhalis, Chlamydia trachomatis,* and *Borrelia burgdorferi.* Azithromycin has enhanced activity against *Campylobacter jejuni, Haemophilus influenzae, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Moraxella catarrhalis, Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* and *Borrelia burgdorferi.* Both drugs are active against *Mycobacterium avium* complex, and both drugs inhibit most strains of *Mycobacterium chelonei* and *Mycobacterium fortuitum.* Bacteria resistant to erythromycin are also resistant to clarithromycin and azithromycin.

The chemical modifications prevent the metabolism of clarithromycin and azithromycin to inactive forms, and the drugs are given twice daily (clarithromycin) or once daily (azithromycin). Both drugs are associated with a much lower incidence of gastrointestinal side effects than erythromycin.

The ketolides are semisynthetic derivatives of erythromycin. They are more active than the macrolides, particularly against some macrolide-resistant bacteria, and have improved pharmacokinetics. Telithromycin is the agent currently approved for use in the United States. It is administered orally for the treatment of acute upper and lower respiratory tract infections. Its mechanism of action and side effect profile are similar to the macrolides.



Erythromycin (R = CH_3)

CLINDAMYCIN & LINCOMYCIN

Lincomycin (derived from *Streptomyces lincolnensis*) and clindamycin (a chlorine-substituted derivative) resemble erythromycins in mode of action, antibacterial spectrum, and ribosomal receptor site but are chemically distinct. Clindamycin is very active against bacteroides and other anaerobes.

The drugs are acid-stable and can be given by mouth or intravenously. They are widely distributed in tissues, except the central nervous system. Excretion is mainly through the liver, bile, and urine.

Probably the most important indication for intravenous clindamycin is the treatment of severe anaerobic infections, including those caused by *B fragilis.* Successful treatment of staphylococcal infections of bone with lincomycins has been recorded. Clindamycin has been used extensively more recently in the treatment of skin and skin structure infections caused by community-associated MRSA. Lincomycins should not be used in meningitis. Clindamycin has been prominent in antibiotic-associated colitis caused by *C difficile;* however, most antimicrobials have been associated with *C difficile* colitis.

GLYCOPEPTIDES

Vancomycin

Vancomycin (MW 1450) is produced by *Streptomyces orientalis.* It is poorly absorbed from the intestine.

Vancomycin is markedly bactericidal for staphylococci, some clostridia, and some bacilli. The drug inhibits early stages in cell wall peptidoglycan synthesis. Drug-resistant strains do not emerge rapidly. Vancomycin is given intravenously for serious systemic staphylococcal infections, including endocarditis, especially if resistant to nafcillin. For enterococcal sepsis or endocarditis, vancomycin can be effective if combined with a penicillin. Oral vancomycin is indicated in antibiotic-associated pseudomembranous colitis (see Clindamycin & Lincomyin).

The development of vancomycin resistance in enterococci has had a major impact on the treatment of severe multidrug-resistant enterococcal infections. See the section Clinical Implications of Drug Resistance earlier in this chapter and Chapter 15.

Staphylococcus aureus of intermediate susceptibility to vancomycin in vitro has been isolated from patients in several countries, including the United States. These patients have tended to have complex illnesses that included long-term therapy with vancomycin. In some cases, the infections appeared to have failed vancomycin therapy.

High-level vancomycin resistance in *S aureus* is of major international concern. The mechanism is the same as or similar to the transposon-mediated vancomycin resistance in enterococci (acquisition of vanA genes [see Chapter 15]). Such isolates have been cultured from several patients and may occur in more patients in the future.

Undesirable side effects are thrombophlebitis, skin rashes, nerve deafness, leukopenia, and perhaps kidney damage when used in combination with an aminoglycoside.

Teicoplanin

Teicoplanin has a structure similar to that of vancomycin. It is active against staphylococci (including nafcillin-resistant strains), streptococci, enterococci, and many other gram-positive bacteria. Enterococci with VanA resistance to vancomycin are also resistant to teicoplanin, but enterococci with VanB vancomycin resistance are susceptible to teicoplanin. The drug has a long half-life and is administered once a day. Adverse effects include localized irritation at injection sites, hypersensitivity, and the potential for ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity. Teicoplanin is available in Europe but not in the United States.

DAPTOMYCIN

Daptomycin is a naturally occurring cyclic lipopeptide produced by *Streptomyces roseoporus* . Structurally, it has a 10 member amino acid ring, a 10 carbon decanoic acid attached to a terminal L -tryptophan. It is bactericidal by causing depolarization of the bacterial membrane in a calcium-dependent manner. It is available in a parenteral form administered once daily. It is highly protein bound and excreted in the kidney as parent drug. Dosage adjustment is required in patients with creatinine clearance < 30 mL/min.

A major adverse effect of daptomycin is reversible myopathy. Weekly monitoring of creatine phosphokinase is recommended, and the drug should be discontinued when levels reach five times normal. Currently daptomycin is approved for use in the United States for treatment of skin and soft tissue infections caused by susceptible and resistant gram-positive cocci. Synergy is seen when daptomycin is combined with gentamicin.

STREPTOGRAMINS

Quinupristin-dalfopristin is an injectable streptogramin antibiotic consisting of a 30:70 mixture of two semisynthetic derivatives of pristinamycin (a group B streptogramin) and dalfopristin (a group A streptogramin). The two components act synergistically to inhibit a wide spectrum of gram-positive bacteria including nafcillin-resistant staphylococci, vancomycin-resistant enterococci, and penicillin-resistant pneumococci. Quinupristin-dalfopristin is active against some anaerobes and certain gram-negative bacteria (eg, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Haemophilus influenzae*) but not against Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* or acinetobacters. Vancomycin-resistant enterococci that are resistant also to quinupristin-dalfopristin occur but are uncommon.

OXAZOLIDINONES

Oxazolidinones are in a new class of synthetic antimicrobials discovered in 1987. Linezolid is the only commercially available agent. The antimicrobial spectrum is similar to that of the glycopeptides. The mechanism of action of linezolid is seen early in protein synthesisinterference with translation by inhibiting the formation of *N* -formylmethionyl-tRNA, the initiation complex at the 30S ribosome. Linezolid is 100% bioavailable and is superior to vancomycin in that it has excellent penetration into respiratory secretions. It also diffuses well into bone, fat, and urine. Linezolid is most frequently used to treat pneumonia, bacteremia, and skin and soft-tissue infections caused by glycopeptide-resistant staphylococci and enterococci. Its major side effect is reversible thrombocytopenia.

BACITRACIN

Bacitracin is a polypeptide obtained from a strain (Tracy strain) of *Bacillus subtilis* . It is stable and poorly absorbed from the intestinal tract. Its only use is for topical application to skin, wounds, or mucous membranes.

Bacitracin is mainly bactericidal for gram-positive bacteria, including penicillin-resistant staphylococci. For topical use, concentrations of 5002000 units per milliliter of solution or gram of ointment are used. In combination with polymyxin B or neomycin, bacitracin is useful for the suppression of mixed bacterial flora in surface lesions.

Bacitracin is toxic for the kidney, causing proteinuria, hematuria, and nitrogen retention. For this reason, it has no place in systemic therapy. Bacitracin is said not to induce hypersensitivity readily.

POLYMYXINS

Polymyxins are basic cationic polypeptides that are nephrotoxic and neurotoxic. Polymyxins can be bactericidal for many gram-negative aerobic rodsincluding pseudomonads and serratiaeby binding to cell membranes rich in phosphatidylethanolamine and destroying membrane functions of active transport and permeability barrier. Because of their toxicity and poor distribution to tissues, polymyxins are used primarily topically and rarely for systemic infections.

AMINOGLYCOSIDES

Aminoglycosides are a group of drugs sharing chemical, antimicrobial, pharmacologic, and toxic characteristics. At present, the group includes streptomycin, neomycin, kanamycin, amikacin, gentamicin, tobramycin, sisomicin, netilmicin, and others. All inhibit protein synthesis of bacteria by attaching to and inhibiting the function of the 30S subunit of the bacterial ribosome. Resistance is based on (1) a deficiency of the ribosomal receptor (chromosomal mutant), (2) enzymatic destruction of the drug (plasmid-mediated transmissible resistance of clinical importance), or (3) lack of permeability to the drug molecule and lack of active transport into the cell. The last can be chromosomal (eg, streptococci are relatively impermeable to aminoglycosides), or it can be plasmid-mediated (eg, in gram-negative enteric bacteria). Anaerobic bacteria are often resistant to aminoglycosides because transport through the cell membrane is an energy-requiring process that is oxygen-dependent.

All aminoglycosides are more active at alkaline pH than at acid pH. All are potentially ototoxic and nephrotoxic, though to different degrees. All can accumulate in renal failure; therefore, marked dosage adjustments must be made when nitrogen retention occurs. Aminoglycosides are used most widely against gram-negative enteric bacteria or when there is suspicion of sepsis. In the treatment of bacteremia or endocarditis caused by fecal streptococci or some gram-negative bacteria, the aminoglycoside is given together with a penicillin that facilitates the entry of the aminoglycoside. Aminoglycosides are selected according to recent susceptibility patterns in a given area or hospital until susceptibility tests become available on a specific isolate. The clinical usefulness of aminoglycosides has declined with the advent of cephalosporins and quinolones, but they continue to be used in combinations (eg, with cephalosporins for multidrug-resistant gram-negative bacteremias). All positively charged aminoglycosides are inhibited in blood cultures by sodium polyanetholsulfonate and other polyanionic detergents. Some aminoglycosides (especially streptomycin) are useful as antimycobacterial drugs.

Neomycin & Kanamycin

Kanamycin is a close relative of neomycin, with similar activity and complete cross-resistance. Paromomycin is also closely related and is used in amebiasis. These drugs are stable and poorly absorbed from the intestinal tract and other surfaces. Neither drug is used systemically because of ototoxicity and neurotoxicity. Oral doses of both neomycin and kanamycin are used for reduction of intestinal flora before large bowel surgery, often in combination with erythromycin. Otherwise, these drugs are mainly limited to topical application on infected surfaces (skin and wounds).

Amikacin

Amikacin is a semisynthetic derivative of kanamycin. It is relatively resistant to several of the enzymes that inactivate gentamicin and tobramycin and therefore can be employed against some microorganisms resistant to the latter drugs. However, bacterial resistance due to impermeability to amikacin is slowly increasing. Many gram-negative enteric bacteria are inhibited by amikacin in concentrations obtained after injection. Central nervous system infections require intrathecal or intraventricular injection.

Like all aminoglycosides, amikacin is nephrotoxic and ototoxic (particularly for the auditory portion of the eighth nerve). Its level should be monitored in patients with renal failure.

Gentamicin

In concentrations of 0.55 μg/mL, gentamicin is bactericidal for many gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, including many strains of proteus, serratia, and pseudomonas. Gentamicin is ineffective against streptococci and bacteroides.

Gentamicin has been used in serious infections caused by gram-negative bacteria resistant to other drugs. Penicillins may precipitate gentamicin in vitro (and thus must not be mixed), but in vivo they may facilitate the aminoglycoside entrance into streptococci and gram-negative rods and result in bactericidal synergism, beneficial in sepsis and endocarditis.

Gentamicin is toxic, particularly in the presence of impaired renal function. Gentamicin sulfate, 0.1%, has been used topically in creams or solutions for infected burns or skin lesions. Such creams tend to select gentamicin-resistant bacteria, and patients receiving them should remain in strict isolation.

Tobramycin

This aminoglycoside closely resembles gentamicin, and there is some cross-resistance between them. Separate susceptibility tests are desirable. Tobramycin has slightly enhanced activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* when compared with gentamicin.

The pharmacologic properties of tobramycin are virtually identical to those of gentamicin. Most of the drug is excreted by glomerular filtration. In renal failure, the drug dosage must be reduced, and monitoring of blood levels is desirable.

Like other aminoglycosides, tobramycin is ototoxic but perhaps less nephrotoxic than gentamicin. It should not be used concurrently with other drugs having similar adverse effects or with diuretics, which tend to enhance aminoglycoside tissue concentrations.

Netilmicin

Netilmicin shares many characteristics with gentamicin and tobramycin, but it is not inactivated by some bacteria that are resistant to the other drugs.

The principal indication for netilmicin may be iatrogenic infections in immunocompromised and severely ill patients at very high risk for gram-negative bacterial sepsis in the hospital setting.

Netilmicin may be somewhat less ototoxic and nephrotoxic than the other aminoglycosides.

Streptomycin

Streptomycin was the first aminoglycosideit was discovered in the 1940s as a product of *Streptomyces griseus.* It was studied in great detail and became the prototype of this class of drugs. For this reason, its properties are listed here, though widespread resistance among microorganisms has greatly reduced its clinical usefulness.

After intramuscular injection, streptomycin is rapidly absorbed and widely distributed in tissues except the central nervous system. Only 5% of the extracellular concentration of streptomycin reaches the interior of the cell. Absorbed streptomycin is excreted by glomerular filtration into the urine. After oral administration, it is poorly absorbed from the gut; most of it is excreted in feces.

Streptomycin may be bactericidal for enterococci (eg, in endocarditis) when combined with a penicillin. In tularemia and plague, it may be given with a tetracycline. In tuberculosis, it is used in combination with other antituberculous drugs (isoniazid, rifampin). Streptomycin should not be used alone to treat any infection.

The therapeutic effectiveness of streptomycin is limited by the rapid emergence of resistant mutants. All microbial strains produce streptomycin-resistant chromosomal mutants with relatively high frequency. Chromosomal mutants have an alteration in the P 12 receptor on the 30S ribosomal subunit. Plasmid-mediated resistance results in enzymatic destruction of the drug. Enterococci resistant to high levels of streptomycin (2000 μg/mL) or gentamicin (500 μg/mL) are resistant to the synergistic actions of these drugs with penicillin.

Fever, skin rashes, and other allergic manifestations may result from hypersensitivity to streptomycin. This occurs most frequently upon prolonged contact with the drug, in patients receiving a protracted course of treatment (eg, for tuberculosis), or in personnel preparing and handling the drug. (Those preparing solutions should wear gloves.)

Streptomycin is markedly toxic for the vestibular portion of the eighth cranial nerve, causing tinnitus, vertigo, and ataxia, which are often irreversible. It is moderately nephrotoxic.

Spectinomycin

Spectinomycin is an aminocyclitol antibiotic (related to aminoglycosides) for intramuscular administration. Its sole application is in the single-dose treatment of gonorrhea caused by β-lactamase-producing gonococci or occurring in individuals hypersensitive to penicillin. About 510% of gonococci are probably resistant. There is usually pain at the injection site, and there may be nausea and fever.

QUINOLONES

Quinolones are synthetic analogs of nalidixic acid. The currently available quinolones are listed in Table 104. The mode of action of all quinolones involves inhibition of bacterial DNA synthesis by blocking of the DNA gyrase.

Table 104. The Quinolones.[1]

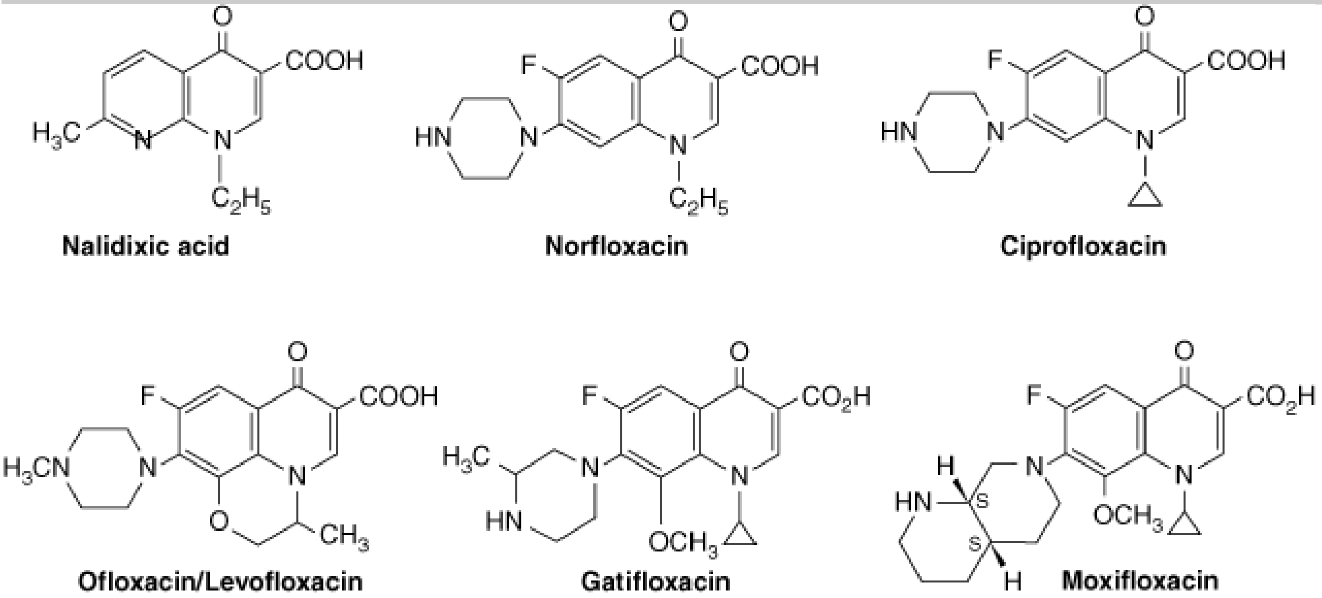
First-Generation

Nalidixic acid
Conoxacin
Oxolinic acid
Second-Generation
Ciprofloxacin
Enoxacin
Lomefloxacin
Ofloxacin
Third- and Fourth-Generation
Clinafloxacin
Gatifloxacin
Gemifloxacin
Levofloxacin
Moxifloxacin
Sparfloxacin
Garenoxacin

[1] Courtesy of B. Joseph Guglielmo, PharmD.

The earlier quinolones (nalidixic acid, oxolinic acid, and cinoxacin) did not achieve systemic antibacterial levels after oral intake and thus were useful only as urinary antiseptics (see below). The fluorinated derivatives (eg, ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin, and others; see Figure 103 for structures of some of them) have greater antibacterial activity and low toxicity and achieve clinically useful levels in blood and tissues.

Figure 103.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structures of some fluoroquinolones.

Antimicrobial Activity

The fluoroquinolones inhibit many types of bacteria, though the spectrum of activity varies from one drug to another (Table 105). The drugs are highly active against Enterobacteriaceae, including those resistant to third-generation cephalosporins, *Haemophilus* species, neisseriae, chlamydiae, and others. *P aeruginosa* and legionellae are inhibited by somewhat larger amounts of these drugs. The quinolones vary in their activity against gram-positive pathogens. Some are active against multidrug-resistant *S pneumoniae* (see Table 105). They may be active against nafcillin-resistant staphylococci and *E faecalis.* Vancomycin-resistant enterococci are usually resistant to the quinolones. Newer fluoroquinolones have increased activity against anaerobic bacteria, allowing them to be used as monotherapy in the treatment of mixed aerobic and anaerobic infections.

Table 105. Relative Spectrum of Antibacterial Activity of the Quinolones.[1]

Gram-positive activity
Clinafloxacin
Ofloxacin
Lomefloxacin
Gatifloxacin
Ciprofloxacin
Norfloxacin
Gemifloxacin
Enoxacin
Levofloxacin
Moxifloxacin
Garenoxacin
Gram-negative activity
Clinafloxacin
Enoxacin
Norfloxacin
Ciprofloxacin
Gatifloxacin

Gemifloxacin

Levofloxacin

Lomefloxacin

Moxifloxacin

Ofloxacin

Sparfloxacin

Garenoxacin
Anaerobe activity
Clinafloxacin
Sparfloxacin
Ciprofloxacin

Gatifloxacin
Levofloxacin
Lomefloxacin
Gemifloxacin
Ofloxacin
Enoxacin
Moxifloxacin
Norfloxacin
Garenoxacin

Strong	Moderate	Weak

[1] Courtesy of B. Joseph Guglielmo, PharmD.

Fluoroquinolones may also have activity against *M tuberculosis, M fortuitum, M kansasii,* and sometimes *M chelonei.*

During fluoroquinolone therapy, the emergence of resistance of pseudomonads, staphylococci, and other pathogens has been observed. Chromosomal resistance develops by mutation and involves one of two mechanismseither an alteration in the A subunit of the target enzyme, DNA gyrase; or a change in outer membrane permeability, resulting in decreased drug accumulation in the bacterium.

Absorption & Excretion

After oral administration, representative fluoroquinolones are well absorbed and widely distributed in body fluids and tissues to varying degrees, but they do not reach the central nervous system to a significant extent. The serum half-life is variable (38 hours) and can be prolonged in renal failure depending upon the specific drug used.

The fluoroquinolones are mainly excreted into the urine via the kidney, but some of the dose may be metabolized in the liver.

Clinical Uses

Fluoroquinolones are generally effective in urinary tract infections, and several of them benefit prostatitis. Some fluoroquinolones (eg, ofloxacin) are valuable in the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases caused by *N gonorrhoeae* and *C trachomatis* but have no effect on *T pallidum.* These drugs can control lower respiratory infections due to *H influenzae* (but may not be drugs of choice) and enteritis caused by salmonellae, shigellae, or campylobacters. Fluoroquinolones may be suitable for the treatment of major gynecologic and soft tissue bacterial infections and for osteomyelitis of gram-negative origin. While they can benefit some exacerbations of cystic fibrosis caused by pseudomonads, about one-third of such mucoid organisms are drug resistant.

Side Effects

The most prominent adverse effects are nausea, insomnia, headache, and dizziness. Occasionally, there are other gastrointestinal disturbances, impaired liver function, skin rashes, and superinfections, particularly with enterococci and staphylococci. In puppies, prolonged administration of fluoroquinolones produces joint damage, and for that reason fluoroquinolones have been seldom prescribed for children but are used as needed in cystic fibrosis patients. Disturbances of blood glucose leading to significant hypoglycemia have been reported with newer agents, but have been seen most often in patients treated with gatifloxacin.

SULFONAMIDES & TRIMETHOPRIM

The sulfonamides are a group of compounds with the basic formula shown earlier in this chapter. By substituting various R-radicals, a series of compounds is obtained with somewhat varying physical, pharmacologic, and antibacterial properties. The basic mechanism of action of all of these compounds is the competitive inhibition of *p*-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) utilization. The simultaneous use of sulfonamides with trimethoprim results in the inhibition of sequential metabolic steps and possible antibacterial synergism.

The sulfonamides are bacteriostatic for some gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria, chlamydiae, nocardiae, and protozoa.

The "soluble" sulfonamides (eg, trisulfapyrimidines, sulfisoxazole) are readily absorbed from the intestinal tract after oral administration and are distributed in all tissues and body fluids. Most sulfonamides are excreted rapidly in the urine. Some (eg, sulfamethoxypyridazine) are excreted very slowly and thus tend to be toxic. At present, sulfonamides are particularly useful in the treatment of nocardiosis and first attacks of urinary tract infections due to coliform bacteria. By contrast, many meningococci, shigellae, group A streptococci, and organisms causing recurrent urinary tract infections are now resistant. A mixture of five parts sulfamethoxazole plus one part trimethoprim is widely used in urinary tract infections, shigellosis, and salmonellosis and infections with other gram-negative bacterial infections and in pneumocystis pneumonia.

Trimethoprim alone can be effective treatment for uncomplicated urinary tract infections.

Resistance

Microorganisms that do not use extracellular PABA but, like mammalian cells, can use preformed folic acid are resistant to sulfonamides. In some sulfonamide-resistant mutants, the tetrahydropteroic acid synthetase has a much higher affinity for PABA than for sulfonamides. The opposite is true for sulfonamide-susceptible organisms.

Side Effects

The soluble sulfonamides may produce side effects that fall into two categories, allergy and toxicity. Many individuals develop hypersensitivity to sulfonamides after initial contact with these drugs and, on reexposure, may develop fever, hives, skin rashes, and chronic vascular diseases such as polyarteritis nodosa. Toxic effects are manifested by fever, skin rashes, gastrointestinal disturbances, depression of the bone marrow leading to anemia or agranulocytosis, hemolytic anemia, and liver and kidney function abnormalities. Toxicity is especially frequent in patients with AIDS.

Bacteriologic Examination

When culturing specimens from patients receiving sulfonamides, the incorporation of PABA (5 mg/dL) into the medium overcomes sulfonamide inhibition.

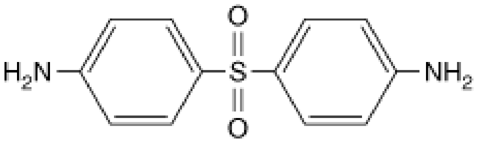
OTHER DRUGS WITH SPECIALIZED USES

Trimetrexate

Trimetrexate is a folinic acid analog whose mechanism of action is inhibition of dihydrofolate reductase. The primary use of trimetrexate is in the treatment of *P jiroveci* infections in AIDS patients who are intolerant of or refractory to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and pentamidine isethionate. Because trimetrexate is lipophilic, it passively diffuses across host cell membranes with associated toxicity, primarily bone marrow suppression. Therefore, it must be coadministered with leucovorin calcium, a reduced folate coenzyme, which is transported into and protects the host cells but not *P jiroveci.*

Dapsone

Dapsone is a sulfone closely related to the sulfonamides. Combined therapy with dapsone and rifampin is often given in the initial therapy of leprosy. Dapsone may also be used to treat pneumocystis pneumonia in AIDS patients. Dapsone is well absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and is widely distributed in tissues. Side effects are common, including hemolytic anemia, gastrointestinal intolerance, fever, itching, and rashes.



Dapsone

Metronidazole

Metronidazole is an antiprotozoal drug used in treating trichomonas, giardia, and amebic infections. It also has striking effects in anaerobic bacterial infections, eg, those due to *Bacteroides* species, and in bacterial vaginosis. It appears to be effective for the preoperative preparation of the colon and in antibiotic-associated diarrhea caused by toxigenic *Clostridium difficile.* Adverse effects include stomatitis, diarrhea, and nausea.

Urinary Antiseptics

These are drugs with antibacterial effects limited to the urine. They fail to produce significant levels in tissues and thus have no effect on systemic infections. However, they effectively lower bacteria counts in the urine and thus greatly diminish the symptoms of lower urinary tract infection. They are used only in the management of urinary tract infections.

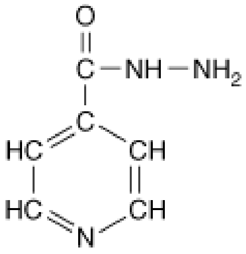
The following are commonly used urinary antiseptics: nitrofurantoin, nalidixic acid, methenamine mandelate, and methenamine hippurate. Nitrofurantoin is active against many bacteria but may cause gastrointestinal distress. Nalidixic acid, a quinolone, is effective only in urine, but resistant bacteria may rapidly emerge in the urine. Both methenamine mandelate and methenamine hippurate acidify the urine and liberate formaldehyde there. Other substances that acidify urine (eg, methionine, cranberry juice) may result in bacteriostasis in urine.

Systemically absorbed oral drugs that are excreted in high concentrations in urine are usually preferred in acute urinary tract infections. These include ampicillin, amoxicillin, sulfonamides, quinolones, and others.

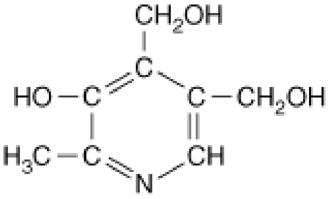
DRUGS USED PRIMARILY TO TREAT MYCOBACTERIAL INFECTIONS

Isoniazid

Isoniazid has little effect on most bacteria but is strikingly active against mycobacteria, especially *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* Most tubercle bacilli are inhibited and killed in vitro by isoniazid, 0.11 μg/mL, but large populations of tubercle bacilli usually contain some isoniazid-resistant organisms. For this reason, the drug is employed in combination with other antimycobacterial agents (especially ethambutol or rifampin) to reduce the emergence of resistant tubercle bacilli. Isoniazid acts on mycobacteria by inhibiting the synthesis of mycolic acids. Isoniazid and pyridoxine are structural analogs. Patients receiving isoniazid excrete pyridoxine in excessive amounts, which results in peripheral neuritis. This can be prevented by the administration of pyridoxine, which does not interfere with the antituberculous action of isoniazid.



Isoniazid



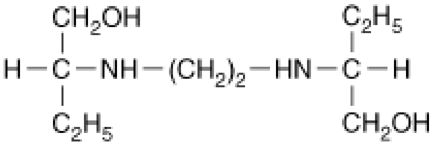
Pyridoxine

Isoniazid is rapidly and completely absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and is in part acetylated and in part excreted in the urine. With usual doses, toxic manifestations, eg, hepatitis, are infrequent. Isoniazid freely diffuses into tissue fluids, including the cerebrospinal fluid.

In converters from negative to positive tuberculin skin tests who have no evidence of disease, isoniazid may be used as prophylaxis.

Ethambutol

Ethambutol is a synthetic water-soluble, heat-stable D-isomer of the structure shown below.



$$\mathrm{H-\underset{C_2H_5}{\overset{CH_2OH}{C}}-NH-(CH_2)_2-HN-\underset{CH_2OH}{\overset{C_2H_5}{C}}-H}$$

Ethambutol

Many strains of *M tuberculosis* and of "atypical" mycobacteria are inhibited in vitro by ethambutol, 15 µg/mL.

Ethambutol is well absorbed from the gut. About 20% of the drug is excreted in feces and 50% in urine in unchanged form. Excretion is delayed in renal failure. In meningitis, ethambutol appears in the cerebrospinal fluid.

Resistance to ethambutol emerges fairly rapidly among mycobacteria when the drug is used alone. Therefore, ethambutol is always given in combination with other antituberculous drugs.

Ethambutol is usually given as a single oral daily dose. Hypersensitivity to ethambutol occurs infrequently. The most common side effects are visual disturbances, but these are rare at standard dosages: Reduction in visual acuity, optic neuritis, and perhaps retinal damage occur in some patients given high doses for several months. Most of these changes apparently regress when ethambutol is discontinued. However, periodic visual acuity testing is mandatory during treatment. With low doses, visual disturbances are very rare.

Rifampin

Rifampin is a semisynthetic derivative of rifamycin, an antibiotic produced by *Streptomyces mediterranei.* It is active in vitro against some gram-positive and gram-negative cocci, some enteric bacteria, mycobacteria, chlamydiae, and poxviruses. Although many meningococci and mycobacteria are inhibited by less than 1 μg/mL, highly resistant mutants occur in all microbial populations in a frequency of 10^6 to 10^5 . The prolonged administration of rifampin as a single drug permits the emergence of these highly resistant mutants. There is no cross-resistance to other antimicrobial drugs.

Rifampin binds strongly to DNA-dependent RNA polymerase and thus inhibits RNA synthesis in bacteria. It blocks a late stage in the assembly of poxviruses. Rifampin penetrates phagocytic cells well and can kill intracellular organisms. Rifampin-resistant mutants exhibit an altered RNA polymerase.

Rifampin is well absorbed after oral administration, widely distributed in tissues, and excreted mainly through the liver and to a lesser extent into the urine.

In tuberculosis, a single oral dose is administered together with ethambutol, isoniazid, or another antituberculous drug in order to delay the emergence of rifampin-resistant mycobacteria. A similar regimen may apply to atypical mycobacteria. In short-term treatment schedules for tuberculosis, rifampin is given orally, first daily (together with isoniazid) and then two or three times weekly for 69 months. However, no less than two doses weekly should be given to avoid a "flu syndrome" and anemia. Rifampin used in conjunction with a sulfone is effective in leprosy.

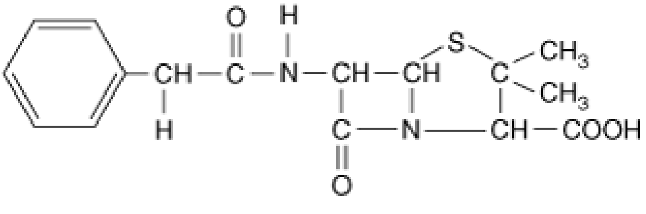
Oral rifampin can eliminate a majority of meningococci from carriers. Unfortunately, some highly resistant meningococcal strains are selected out by this procedure. Close contacts of children with *H influenzae* infections (eg, in the family or in day care centers) can receive rifampin as prophylaxis. In urinary tract infections and in chronic bronchitis, rifampin is not useful because resistance emerges promptly.

Rifampin imparts a harmless orange color to urine, sweat, and contact lenses. Occasional adverse effects include rashes, thrombocytopenia, light chain proteinuria, and impairment of liver function. Rifampin induces microsomal enzymes (eg, cytochrome P450).

Rifabutin is a related antimycobacterial drug, active in the prevention of infection due to *M avium* complex.

Pyrazinamide

Pyrazinamide is related to nicotinamide. It is readily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and widely distributed in tissues. *M tuberculosis* readily develops resistance to pyrazinamide, but there is no cross-resistance with isoniazid or other antituberculous drugs. The major adverse effects of pyrazinamide are hepatotoxicity (15%), nausea, vomiting, hypersensitivity, and hyperuricemia.



REFERENCES

Books

Moellering RC et al: Anti-infective therapy. Volume I Part I Section E, In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principals and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Yu VL, Merrigan TC Jr, Barriere SL (editors): *Antimicrobial Therapy and Vaccines.* Williams & Wilkins, 1999.

Articles & Reviews

Lundstrom TS, Sobel JD: Antibiotics for gram-positive bacterial infections: vancomycin, quinupristin-dalfopristin, linezolid, and daptomycin. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2004;18:651.

Meagher AK, et al: Pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic profile for tigecyclinea new glycylcycline antimicrobial agent. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis 2005;52:165.

O'Donnell JA, Gelone SP: The newer fluoroquinolones. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2004;18:691.

Mc Graw Hill Medical
a silverchair information system
The McGraw-Hill Companies

INTRODUCTION

The term "normal microbial flora" denotes the population of microorganisms that inhabit the skin and mucous membranes of healthy normal persons. It is doubtful whether a normal viral flora exists in humans.

The skin and mucous membranes always harbor a variety of microorganisms that can be arranged into two groups: (1) The resident flora consists of relatively fixed types of microorganisms regularly found in a given area at a given age; if disturbed, it promptly reestablishes itself. (2) The transient flora consists of nonpathogenic or potentially pathogenic microorganisms that inhabit the skin or mucous membranes for hours, days, or weeks; it is derived from the environment, does not produce disease, and does not establish itself permanently on the surface. Members of the transient flora are generally of little significance so long as the normal resident flora remains intact. However, if the resident flora is disturbed, transient microorganisms may colonize, proliferate, and produce disease.

Organisms frequently encountered in specimens obtained from various areas of the human body—and considered normal flora—are listed in Table 11–1. The classification of anaerobic normal bacterial flora is discussed in Chapter 22.

Table 11–1. Normal Bacterial Flora.

Skin
Staphylococcus epidermidis
Staphylococcus aureus (in small numbers)
Micrococcus species
Nonpathogenic *Neisseria* species
Alpha-hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci
Diphtheroids
Propionibacterium species
Peptostreptococcus species
Small numbers of other organisms (*Candida* species, *Acinetobacter* species, etc)
Nasopharynx
Any amount of the following: diphtheroids, nonpathogenic *Neisseria* species, α-hemolytic streptococci; *S epidermidis,* nonhemolytic streptococci, anaerobes (too many species to list; varying amounts of *Prevotella* species, anaerobic cocci, *Fusobacterium* species, etc)

Lesser amounts of the following when accompanied by organisms listed above: yeasts, *Haemophilus* species, pneumococci, *S aureus,* gram-negative rods, *Neisseria meningitidis*
Gastrointestinal tract and rectum
Various Enterobacteriaceae except *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Yersinia*, *Vibrio*, and *Campylobacter* species
Non-dextrose-fermenting gram-negative rods
Enterococci
Alpha-hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci
Diphtheroids
S aureus in small numbers
Yeasts in small numbers
Anaerobes in large numbers (too many species to list)
Genitalia
Any amount of the following: *Corynebacterium* species, *Lactobacillus* species, α-hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci, nonpathogenic *Neisseria* species
The following when mixed and not predominant: enterococci, Enterobacteriaceae and other gram-negative rods, *S epidermidis, Candida albicans,* and other yeasts
Anaerobes (too many to list); the following may be important when in pure growth or clearly predominant: *Prevotella*, *Clostridium*, and *Peptostreptococcus* species

It is likely that microorganisms that can be cultured in the laboratory represent only a fraction of those that are part of the normal resident or transient microbial flora. When the broad range polymerase chain reaction is used to amplify bacterial 16S rDNA many previously unidentified bacteria can be detected, as in secretions from patients with bacterial vaginosis. The number of species that make up the normal microbial flora is probably much greater than is recognized. Thus, the understanding of normal microbial flora is in transition. The relationship of previously unidentified microorganisms, which are potentially part of the normal flora, to disease is likely to change.

ROLE OF THE RESIDENT FLORA

The microorganisms that are constantly present on body surfaces are commensals. Their flourishing in a given area depends upon physiologic factors of temperature, moisture, and the presence of certain nutrients and inhibitory substances. Their presence is not essential to life, because "germ-free" animals can be reared in the complete absence of a normal microbial flora. Yet the resident flora of certain areas plays a definite role in maintaining health and normal function. Members of the resident flora in the intestinal tract synthesize vitamin K and aid in the absorption of nutrients. On mucous membranes and skin, the resident flora may prevent colonization by pathogens and possible disease through "bacterial interference." The mechanism of bacterial interference may involve competition for receptors or binding sites on host cells, competition for nutrients, mutual inhibition by metabolic or toxic products, mutual inhibition by antibiotic materials or bacteriocins, or other mechanisms. Suppression of the normal flora clearly creates a partial local void that tends to be filled by organisms from the environment or from other parts of the body. Such organisms behave as opportunists and may become pathogens.

On the other hand, members of the normal flora may themselves produce disease under certain circumstances. These organisms are adapted to the noninvasive mode of life defined by the limitations of the environment. If forcefully removed from the restrictions of that environment and introduced into the bloodstream or tissues, these organisms may become pathogenic. For example, streptococci of the viridans group are the most common resident organisms of the upper respiratory tract. If large numbers of them are introduced into the bloodstream (eg, following tooth extraction or tonsillectomy), they may settle on deformed or prosthetic heart valves and produce infective endocarditis. Small numbers occur transiently in the bloodstream with minor trauma (eg, dental scaling or vigorous brushing). *Bacteroides* species are the most common resident bacteria of the large intestine and are quite harmless in that location. If introduced into the free peritoneal cavity or into pelvic tissues along with other bacteria as a result of trauma, they cause suppuration and bacteremia. There are many other examples, but the important point is that microbes of the normal resident flora are harmless and may be beneficial in their normal location in the host and in the absence of coincident abnormalities. They may produce disease if introduced into foreign locations in large numbers and if predisposing factors are present.

NORMAL FLORA OF THE SKIN

Because of its constant exposure to and contact with the environment, the skin is particularly apt to contain transient microorganisms. Nevertheless, there is a constant and well-defined resident flora, modified in different anatomic areas by secretions, habitual wearing of clothing, or proximity to mucous membranes (mouth, nose, and perineal areas).

The predominant resident microorganisms of the skin are aerobic and anaerobic diphtheroid bacilli (eg, corynebacterium, propionibacterium); nonhemolytic aerobic and anaerobic staphylococci (*Staphylococcus epidermidis* and other coagulase-negative staphylococci, occasionally *S aureus,* and *Peptostreptococcus* species); gram-positive, aerobic, spore-forming bacilli that are ubiquitous in air, water, and soil; alpha-hemolytic streptococci (viridans streptococci) and enterococci (*Enterococcus* species); and gram-negative coliform bacilli and acinetobacter. Fungi and yeasts are often present in skin folds; acid-fast, nonpathogenic mycobacteria occur in areas rich in sebaceous secretions (genitalia, external ear).

Among the factors that may be important in eliminating nonresident microorganisms from the skin are the low pH, the fatty acids in sebaceous secretions, and the presence of lysozyme. Neither profuse sweating nor washing and bathing can eliminate or significantly modify the normal resident flora. The number of superficial microorganisms may be diminished by vigorous daily scrubbing with soap containing hexachlorophene or other disinfectants, but the flora is rapidly replenished from sebaceous and sweat glands even when contact with other skin areas or with the environment is completely excluded. Placement of an occlusive dressing on skin tends to result in a large increase in the total microbial population and may also produce qualitative alterations in the flora.

Anaerobes and aerobic bacteria often join to form synergistic infections (gangrene, necrotizing fasciitis, cellulitis) of skin and soft tissues. The bacteria are frequently part of the normal microbial flora. It is usually difficult to pinpoint one specific organism as being responsible for the progressive lesion, since mixtures of organisms are usually involved.

NORMAL FLORA OF THE MOUTH & UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT

The flora of the nose consists of prominent corynebacteria, staphylococci *(S epidermidis, S aureus),* and streptococci.

The mucous membranes of the mouth and pharynx are often sterile at birth but may be contaminated by passage through the birth canal. Within 4–12 hours after birth, viridans streptococci become established as the most prominent members of the resident flora and remain so for life. They probably originate in the respiratory tracts of the mother and attendants. Early in life, aerobic and anaerobic staphylococci, gram-negative diplococci (neisseriae, *Moraxella catarrhalis*), diphtheroids, and occasional lactobacilli are added. When teeth begin to erupt, the anaerobic spirochetes, *Prevotella* species (especially *P melaninogenica*), *Fusobacterium* species, *Rothia* species, and *Capnocytophaga* species (see below) establish themselves, along with some anaerobic vibrios and lactobacilli. *Actinomyces* species are normally present in tonsillar tissue and on the gingivae in adults, and various protozoa may also be present. Yeasts (*Candida* species) occur in the mouth.

In the pharynx and trachea, a similar flora establishes itself, whereas few bacteria are found in normal bronchi. Small bronchi and alveoli are normally sterile. The predominant organisms in the upper respiratory tract, particularly the pharynx, are nonhemolytic and alpha-hemolytic streptococci and neisseriae. Staphylococci, diphtheroids, haemophili, pneumococci, mycoplasmas, and prevotellae are also encountered.

Infections of the mouth and respiratory tract are usually caused by mixed oronasal flora, including anaerobes. Periodontal infections, perioral abscesses, sinusitis, and mastoiditis may involve predominantly *Prevotella melaninogenica,* fusobacteria, and peptostreptococci. Aspiration of saliva (containing up to 10^2 of these organisms and aerobes) may result in necrotizing pneumonia, lung abscess, and empyema.

The Role of the Normal Mouth Flora in Dental Caries

Caries is a disintegration of the teeth beginning at the surface and progressing inward. First the surface enamel, which is entirely noncellular, is demineralized. This has been attributed to the effect of acid products of bacterial fermentation. Subsequent decomposition of the dentin and cement involves bacterial digestion of the protein matrix.

An essential first step in caries production appears to be the formation of plaque on the hard, smooth enamel surface. The plaque consists mainly of gelatinous deposits of high-molecular-weight glucans in which acid-producing bacteria adhere to the enamel. The carbohydrate polymers (glucans) are produced mainly by streptococci (*Streptococcus mutans,* peptostreptococci), perhaps in association with actinomycetes. There appears to be a strong correlation between the presence of *S mutans* and caries on specific enamel areas. The essential second step in caries production appears to be the formation of large amounts of acid ($pH < 5.0$) from carbohydrates by streptococci and lactobacilli in the plaque. High concentrations of acid demineralize the adjoining enamel and initiate caries.

In experimental "germ-free" animals, cariogenic streptococci can induce the formation of plaque and caries. Adherence to smooth surfaces requires both the synthesis of water-insoluble glucan polymers by glucosyltransferases and the participation of binding sites on the surface of microbial cells. (Perhaps carbohydrate polymers also aid the attachment of some streptococci to endocardial surfaces.) Other members of the oral microflora, eg, veillonellae, may complex with glucosyltransferase of *Streptococcus salivarius* in saliva and then synthesize water-insoluble carbohydrate polymers to adhere to tooth surfaces. Adherence may be initiated by salivary IgA antibody to *S mutans.* Certain diphtheroids and streptococci that produce levans can induce specific soft tissue damage and bone resorption typical of periodontal disease. Proteolytic organisms, including actinomycetes and bacilli, play a role in the microbial action on dentin that follows damage to the enamel. The development of caries also depends on genetic, hormonal, nutritional, and many other factors. Control of caries involves physical removal of plaque, limitation of sucrose intake, good nutrition with adequate protein intake, and reduction of acid production in the mouth by limitation of available carbohydrates and frequent cleansing. The application of fluoride to teeth or its ingestion in water results in enhancement of acid resistance of the enamel. Control of periodontal disease requires removal of calculus (calcified deposit) and good mouth hygiene.

Periodontal pockets in the gingiva are particularly rich sources of organisms, including anaerobes, that are rarely encountered elsewhere. While they may participate in periodontal disease and tissue destruction, attention is drawn to them when they are implanted elsewhere, eg, producing infective endocarditis or bacteremia in a granulopenic host. Examples are *Capnocytophaga* species and *Rothia dentocariosa. Capnocytophaga* species are fusiform, gram-negative, gliding anaerobes; *Rothia* species are pleomorphic, aerobic, gram-positive rods. Both probably participate in the complex microbial flora of periodontal disease with prominent bone destruction. In granulopenic immunodeficient patients, they can lead to serious opportunistic lesions in other organs.

NORMAL FLORA OF THE INTESTINAL TRACT

At birth the intestine is sterile, but organisms are soon introduced with food. In breast-fed children, the intestine contains large numbers of lactic acid streptococci and lactobacilli. These aerobic and anaerobic, gram-positive, nonmotile organisms (eg, *Bifidobacterium* species) produce acid from carbohydrates and tolerate pH 5.0. In bottle-fed children, a more mixed flora exists in the bowel, and lactobacilli are less prominent. As food habits develop toward the adult pattern, the bowel flora changes. Diet has a marked influence on the relative composition of the intestinal and fecal flora. Bowels of newborns in intensive care nurseries tend to be colonized by Enterobacteriaceae, eg, klebsiella, citrobacter, and enterobacter.

In the normal adult, the esophagus contains microorganisms arriving with saliva and food. The stomach's acidity keeps the number of microorganisms at a minimum (10^3–10^5/g of contents) unless obstruction at the pylorus favors the proliferation of gram-positive cocci and bacilli. The normal acid pH of the stomach markedly protects against infection with some enteric pathogens, eg, cholera. Administration of cimetidine for peptic ulcer leads to a great increase in microbial flora of the stomach, including many organisms usually prevalent in feces. As the pH of intestinal contents becomes alkaline, the resident flora gradually increases. In the adult duodenum, there are 10^3–10^6 bacteria per gram of contents; in the jejunum and ileum, 10^5–10^8

bacteria per gram; and in the cecum and transverse colon, 10^8–10^{10} bacteria per gram. In the upper intestine, lactobacilli and enterococci predominate, but in the lower ileum and cecum, the flora is fecal. In the sigmoid colon and rectum, there are about 10^{11} bacteria per gram of contents, constituting 10–30% of the fecal mass. Anaerobes outnumber facultative organisms by 1000-fold. In diarrhea, the bacterial content may diminish greatly, whereas in intestinal stasis the count rises.

In the normal adult colon, 96–99% of the resident bacterial flora consists of anaerobes: *Bacteroides* species, especially *B fragilis; Fusobacterium* species; anaerobic lactobacilli, eg, bifidobacteria; clostridia (*C perfringens,* 10^3–10^5/g); and anaerobic gram-positive cocci (*Peptostreptococcus* species). Only 1–4% are facultative aerobes (gram-negative coliform bacteria, enterococci, and small numbers of protei, pseudomonads, lactobacilli, candidae, and other organisms). More than 100 distinct types of organisms, which can be cultured routinely in the laboratory, occur regularly in normal fecal flora. There probably are more than 500 species of bacteria in the colon including many that are likely unidentified. Minor trauma (eg, sigmoidoscopy, barium enema) may induce transient bacteremia in about 10% of procedures.

Intestinal bacteria are important in synthesis of vitamin K, conversion of bile pigments and bile acids, absorption of nutrients and breakdown products, and antagonism to microbial pathogens. The intestinal flora produces ammonia and other breakdown products that are absorbed and can contribute to hepatic coma. Among aerobic coliform bacteria, only a few serotypes persist in the colon for prolonged periods, and most serotypes of *Escherichia coli* are present only over a period of a few days.

Antimicrobial drugs taken orally can, in humans, temporarily suppress the drug-susceptible components of the fecal flora. This is commonly done by the preoperative oral administration of insoluble drugs. For example, neomycin plus erythromycin can in 1–2 days suppress part of the bowel flora, especially aerobes. Metronidazole accomplishes that for anaerobes. If lower bowel surgery is performed when the counts are at their lowest, some protection against infection by accidental spill can be achieved. However, soon thereafter the counts of fecal flora rise again to normal or higher than normal levels, principally of organisms selected out because of relative resistance to the drugs employed. The drug-susceptible microorganisms are replaced by drug-resistant ones, particularly staphylococci, enterobacters, enterococci, protei, pseudomonads, *Clostridium difficile,* and yeasts.

The feeding of large quantities of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* may result in the temporary establishment of this organism in the gut and the concomitant partial suppression of other gut microflora.

The anaerobic flora of the colon, including *B fragilis,* clostridia, and peptostreptococci, plays a main role in abscess formation originating in perforation of the bowel. *Prevotella bivia* and *P disiens* are important in abscesses of the pelvis originating in the female genital organs. Like *B fragilis,* these species are penicillin-resistant; therefore, another agent should be used.

NORMAL FLORA OF THE URETHRA

The anterior urethra of both sexes contains small numbers of the same types of organisms found on the skin and perineum. These organisms regularly appear in normal voided urine in numbers of 10^2–10^4/mL.

NORMAL FLORA OF THE VAGINA

Soon after birth, aerobic lactobacilli appear in the vagina and persist as long as the pH remains acid (several weeks). When the pH becomes neutral (remaining so until puberty), a mixed flora of cocci and bacilli is present. At puberty, aerobic and anaerobic lactobacilli reappear in large numbers and contribute to the maintenance of acid pH through the production of acid from carbohydrates, particularly glycogen. This appears to be an important mechanism in preventing the establishment of other, possibly harmful microorganisms in the vagina. If lactobacilli are suppressed by the administration of antimicrobial drugs, yeasts or various bacteria increase in numbers and cause irritation and inflammation. After menopause, lactobacilli again diminish in number and a mixed flora returns. The normal vaginal flora includes group B streptococci in as many as 25% of women of childbearing age. During the birth process, a baby can acquire group B streptococci, which subsequently may cause neonatal sepsis and meningitis. The normal vaginal flora often includes also alpha hemolytic streptococci, anaerobic streptococci (peptostreptococci), *Prevotella* species, clostridia, *Gardnerella vaginalis, Ureaplasma urealyticum,* and sometimes listeria or *Mobiluncus* species. The cervical mucus has antibacterial activity and contains lysozyme. In some women, the vaginal introitus contains a heavy flora resembling that of the perineum and perianal area. This may be a predisposing factor in recurrent urinary tract infections. Vaginal organisms present at time of delivery may infect the newborn (eg, group B streptococci).

NORMAL FLORA OF THE CONJUNCTIVA

The predominant organisms of the conjunctiva are diphtheroids, *S epidermidis,* and nonhemolytic streptococci. Neisseriae and gram-negative bacilli resembling haemophili (*Moraxella* species) are also frequently present. The conjunctival flora is normally held in check by the flow of tears, which contain antibacterial lysozyme.

REFERENCES

Fredericks DN, Fielder TL, Marrazzo JM: Molecular identification of bacteria associated with bacterial vaginosis. N Engl J Med 2005;353:1899.

Granato PA: Pathogenic and indigenous microorganisms of humans. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Hentges DJ: The anaerobic microflora of the human body. Clin Infect Dis 1993;16(Suppl 4):S175.

The pathogenesis of periodontal diseases. J Periodontol 1999;70:457.

Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors): *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

INTRODUCTION

The gram-positive spore-forming bacilli are the *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* species. These bacilli are ubiquitous, and because they form spores they can survive in the environment for many years. *Bacillus* species are aerobes, whereas clostridia are anaerobes.

Of the many species of both *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* genera, most do not cause disease and are not well characterized in medical microbiology. Several species, however, cause important disease in humans. Anthrax, a prototype disease in the history of microbiology, is caused by *Bacillus anthracis.* Anthrax remains an important disease of animals and occasionally of humans, and *B anthracis* is a major agent of bioterrorism and biologic warfare. *Bacillus cereus* causes food poisoning and occasionally eye or other localized infections. Clostridia cause several important toxin-mediated diseases: *Clostridium tetani,* tetanus; *Clostridium botulinum,* botulism; *Clostridium perfringens,* gas gangrene; and *Clostridium difficile,* pseudomembranous colitis. Other clostridia are also found in mixed anaerobic infections in humans (see Chapter 22).

BACILLUS SPECIES

The genus *bacillus* includes large aerobic, gram-positive rods occurring in chains. Most members of this genus are saprophytic organisms prevalent in soil, water, and air and on vegetation, such as *Bacillus cereus* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Some are insect pathogens. *B cereus* can grow in foods and produce an enterotoxin or an emetic toxin and cause food poisoning. Such organisms may occasionally produce disease in immunocompromised humans (eg, meningitis, endocarditis, endophthalmitis, conjunctivitis, or acute gastroenteritis). *B anthracis,* which causes anthrax, is the principal pathogen of the genus.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The typical cells, measuring 1 × 3–4 μm, have square ends and are arranged in long chains; spores are located in the center of the nonmotile bacilli.

CULTURE

Colonies of *B anthracis* are round and have a "cut glass" appearance in transmitted light. Hemolysis is uncommon with *B anthracis* but common with the saprophytic bacilli. Gelatin is liquefied, and growth in gelatin stabs resembles an inverted fir tree.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

The saprophytic bacilli utilize simple sources of nitrogen and carbon for energy and growth. The spores are resistant to environmental changes, withstand dry heat and certain chemical disinfectants for moderate periods, and persist for years in dry earth. Animal products contaminated with anthrax spores (eg, hides, bristles, hair, wool, bone) can be sterilized by autoclaving.

BACILLUS ANTHRACIS

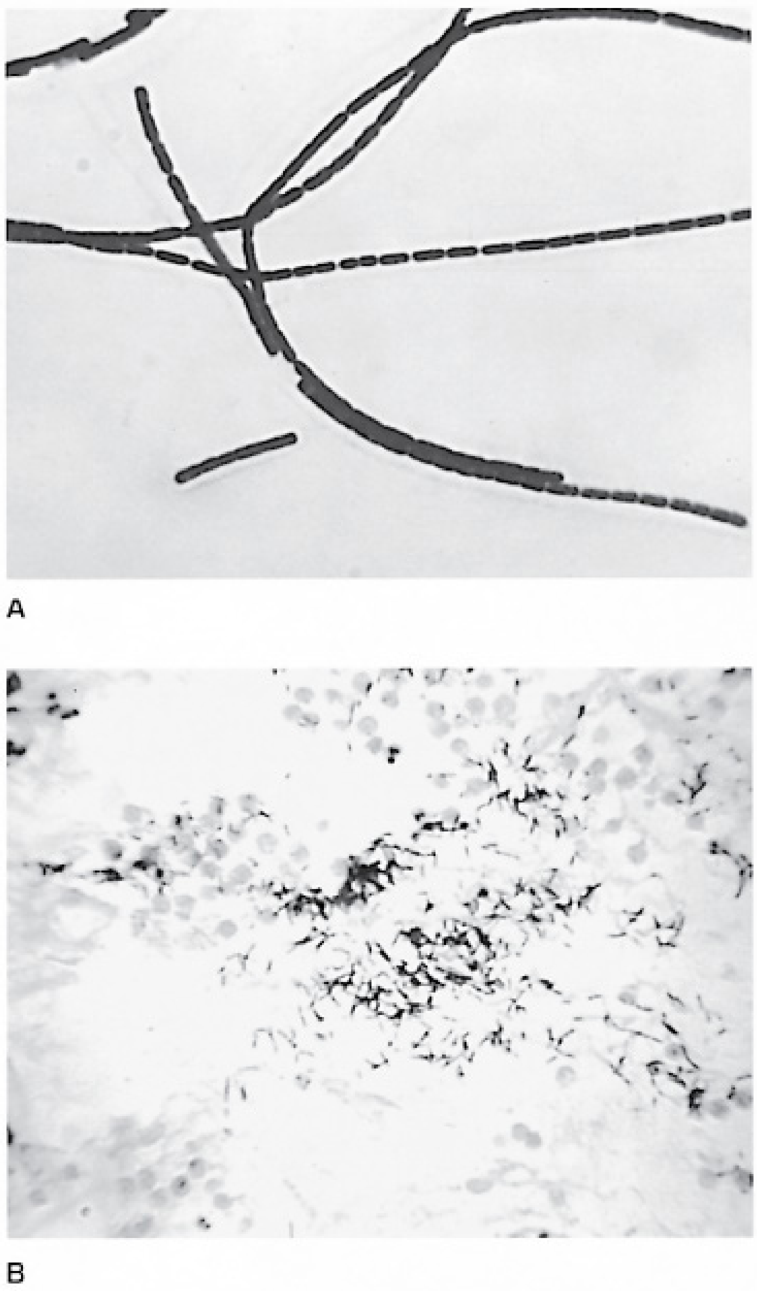
Pathogenesis

Anthrax is primarily a disease of herbivores—goats, sheep, cattle, horses, etc; other animals (eg, rats) are relatively resistant to the infection. Humans become infected incidentally by contact with infected animals or their products. In animals, the portal of entry is the mouth and the gastrointestinal tract. Spores from contaminated soil find easy access when ingested with spiny or irritating vegetation. In humans, the infection is usually acquired by the entry of spores through injured skin (cutaneous anthrax) or rarely the mucous membranes (gastrointestinal anthrax), or by inhalation of spores into the lung (inhalation anthrax).

The spores germinate in the tissue at the site of entry, and growth of the vegetative organisms results in formation of a gelatinous edema and congestion. Bacilli spread via lymphatics to the bloodstream, and they multiply freely in the blood and tissues shortly before and after the animal's death.

B anthracis (see Figure 12–1) that does not produce a capsule is not virulent and does not induce anthrax in test animals. The poly-D-glutamic acid capsule is antiphagocytic. The capsule gene is on a plasmid.

Figure 12–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: *Bacillus anthracis* in culture (original magnification x 1000). B: In tissue (original magnification x 400). (Courtesy of PS Brachman.)

Anthrax toxin is made up of three proteins: protective antigen (PA), edema factor (EF), and lethal factor (LF). PA binds to specific cell receptors, and following proteolytic activation it forms a membrane channel that mediates entry of EF and LF into the cell. EF is an adenylyl cyclase; with PA it forms a toxin known as edema toxin. LF plus PA form lethal toxin, which is a major virulence factor and cause of death in infected animals. When injected into laboratory animals (eg, rats) the lethal toxin can quickly kill the animals. The anthrax toxin genes are on another plasmid.

In inhalation anthrax ("woolsorter's disease"), the spores from the dust of wool, hair, or hides are inhaled, phagocytosed in the lungs, and transported by the lymphatic drainage to the mediastinal lymph nodes, where germination occurs. This is followed by toxin production and the development of hemorrhagic mediastinitis and sepsis, which are usually rapidly fatal. In anthrax sepsis, the number of organisms in the blood exceeds 10^7/mL just prior to death. In the Sverdlovsk inhalation anthrax outbreak of 1979 and the US bioterrorism inhalation cases of 2001 (see Chapter 48) the pathogenesis was the same as in inhalation anthrax from animal products.

Pathology

In susceptible animals, the organisms proliferate at the site of entry. The capsules remain intact, and the organisms are surrounded by a large amount of proteinaceous fluid containing few leukocytes from which they rapidly disseminate and reach the bloodstream.

In resistant animals, the organisms proliferate for a few hours, by which time there is massive accumulation of leukocytes. The capsules gradually disintegrate and disappear. The organisms remain localized.

Clinical Findings

In humans, approximately 95% of cases are cutaneous anthrax and 5% are inhalation. Gastrointestinal anthrax is very rare; it has been reported from Africa, Asia, and the United States following occasions where people have eaten meat from infected animals.

The bioterrorism events in the fall of 2001 (see Chapter 48) resulted in 22 cases of anthrax: 11 inhalation and 11 cutaneous. Five of the patients with inhalation anthrax died. All the other patients survived.

Cutaneous anthrax generally occurs on exposed surfaces of the arms or hands, followed in frequency by the face and neck. A pruritic papule develops 1–7 days after entry of the organisms or spores through a scratch. Initially it resembles an insect bite. The papule rapidly changes into a vesicle or small ring of vesicles that coalesce, and a necrotic ulcer develops. The lesions typically are 1–3 cm in diameter and have a characteristic central black eschar. Marked edema occurs. Lymphangitis and lymphadenopathy and systemic signs and symptoms of fever, malaise, and headache may occur. After 7–10 days the eschar is fully developed. Eventually it dries, loosens, and separates; healing is by granulation and leaves a scar. It may take many weeks for the lesion to heal and the edema to subside. Antibiotic therapy does not appear to change the natural progression of the disease. In as many as 20% of patients, cutaneous anthrax can lead to sepsis, the consequences of systemic infection—including meningitis—and death.

The incubation period in inhalation anthrax may be as long as 6 weeks. The early clinical manifestations are associated with marked hemorrhagic necrosis and edema of the mediastinum. Substernal pain may be prominent, and there is pronounced mediastinal widening visible on x-ray chest films. Hemorrhagic pleural effusions follow involvement of the pleura; cough is secondary to the effects on the trachea. Sepsis occurs, and there may be hematogenous spread to the gastrointestinal tract, causing bowel ulceration, or to the meninges, causing hemorrhagic meningitis. The fatality rate in inhalation anthrax is high in the setting of known exposure; it is higher when the diagnosis is not initially suspected.

Animals acquire anthrax through ingestion of spores and spread of the organisms from the intestinal tract.

This is rare in humans, and gastrointestinal anthrax is extremely uncommon. Abdominal pain, vomiting, and bloody diarrhea are clinical signs.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Specimens to be examined are fluid or pus from a local lesion, blood, and sputum. Stained smears from the local lesion or of blood from dead animals often show chains of large gram-positive rods. Anthrax can be identified in dried smears by immunofluorescence staining techniques.

When grown on blood agar plates, the organisms produce nonhemolytic gray to white colonies with a rough texture and a ground-glass appearance. Comma-shaped outgrowths (Medusa head) may project from the colony. Gram stain shows large gram-positive rods. Carbohydrate fermentation is not useful. In semisolid medium, anthrax bacilli are always nonmotile, whereas related nonpathogenic organisms (eg, *B cereus*) exhibit motility by "swarming." Virulent anthrax cultures kill mice or guinea pigs upon intraperitoneal injection. Demonstration of capsule requires growth on bicarbonate-containing medium in 5–7% carbon dioxide. Lysis by a specific anthrax γ-bacteriophage may be helpful in identifying the organism.

An enzyme-linked immunoassay (ELISA) has been developed to measure antibodies against edema and lethal toxins, but the test has not been extensively studied. Acute and convalescent sera obtained 4 weeks apart should be tested. A positive result is a fourfold change or a single titer of greater than 1:32.

Resistance & Immunity

Immunization to prevent anthrax is based on the classic experiments of Louis Pasteur. In 1881 he proved that cultures grown in broth at 42–52 °C for several months lost much of their virulence and could be injected live into sheep and cattle without causing disease; subsequently, such animals proved to be immune. Active immunity to anthrax can be induced in susceptible animals by vaccination with live attenuated bacilli, with spore suspensions, or with protective antigens from culture filtrates. Animals that graze in known anthrax districts should be immunized for anthrax annually.

Four countries produce vaccines for anthrax. Russia and China use attenuated spore-based vaccine administered by scarification. The US and Great Britain use a bacteria-free filtrate of cultures adsorbed to aluminum hydroxide. The current US Food and Drug Administration approved vaccine contains cell-free filtrates of a toxigenic nonencapsulated nonvirulent strain of *B anthracis*. The amount of protective antigen present per dose is unknown and all three toxins' components (LF, EF, and PA) are present and adsorbed to aluminum hydroxide. The dose schedule is 0, 2, and 4 weeks, then 6, 12, and 18 months, followed by annual boosters. The vaccine is available only to the US Department of Defense and to persons at risk for repeated exposure to *B anthracis*. Because of significant controversy in the US military about the current anthrax vaccine and its use in areas where there is potential for biologic warfare, the military is developing a new recombinant protective antigen vaccine (rPA) adsorbed to aluminum hydroxide.

Treatment

Many antibiotics are effective against anthrax in humans, but treatment must be started early. Ciprofloxacin is recommended for treatment; penicillin G, along with gentamicin or streptomycin, has previously been used to treat anthrax.

In the setting of potential exposure to *B anthracis* as an agent of biologic warfare, prophylaxis with ciprofloxacin or doxycycline should be continued for 4 weeks while three doses of vaccine are being given, or for 8 weeks if no vaccine is administered.

Some other gram-positive bacilli, such as *B cereus,* are resistant to penicillin by virtue of β-lactamase production. Doxycycline, erythromycin, or ciprofloxacin may be effective alternatives to penicillin.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Soil is contaminated with anthrax spores from the carcasses of dead animals. These spores remain viable for decades. Perhaps spores can germinate in soil at pH 6.5 at proper temperature. Grazing animals infected through injured mucous membranes serve to perpetuate the chain of infection. Contact with infected animals or with their hides, hair, and bristles is the source of infection in humans. Control measures include (1) disposal of animal carcasses by burning or by deep burial in lime pits, (2) decontamination (usually by autoclaving) of animal products, (3) protective clothing and gloves for handling potentially infected materials, and (4) active immunization of domestic animals with live attenuated vaccines. Persons with high occupational risk should be immunized.

BACILLUS CEREUS

Food poisoning caused by *Bacillus cereus* has two distinct forms: the emetic type, associated with fried rice, and the diarrheal type, associated with meat dishes and sauces. *B cereus* produces toxins that cause disease that is more an intoxication than a food-borne infection. The emetic form is manifested by nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, and occasionally diarrhea and is self-limiting, with recovery occurring within 24 hours. It begins 1–5 hours after ingestion of rice and occasionally pasta dishes. *B cereus* is a soil organism that commonly contaminates rice. When large amounts of rice are cooked and allowed to cool slowly, the *B cereus* spores germinate and the vegetative cells produce the toxin during log-phase growth or during sporulation. The diarrheal form has an incubation period of 1–24 hours and is manifested by profuse diarrhea with abdominal pain and cramps; fever and vomiting are uncommon. The enterotoxin may be preformed in the food or produced in the intestine. The presence of *B cereus* in a patient's stool is not sufficient to make a diagnosis of *B cereus* disease, since the bacteria may be present in normal stool specimens; a concentration of 10^5 bacteria or more per gram of food is considered diagnostic.

B cereus is an important cause of eye infections, severe keratitis, endophthalmitis, and panophthalmitis. Typically, the organisms are introduced into the eye by foreign bodies associated with trauma. *B cereus* has also been associated with localized infections and with systemic infections, including endocarditis, meningitis, osteomyelitis, and pneumonia; the presence of a medical device or intravenous drug use predisposes to these infections.

Other *Bacillus* species are rarely associated with human disease. It is difficult to differentiate superficial contamination with bacillus from genuine disease caused by the organism. Five *Bacillus* species *(B thuringiensis, B popilliae, B sphaericus, B larvae,* and *B lentimorbus)* are pathogens for insects, and some have been used as commercial insecticides. Genes from *B thuringiensis* coding for insecticidal compounds have been inserted into the genetic material of some commercial plants. This has been associated with concern on the part of environmental activists about genetically engineered plants and food products.

CLOSTRIDIUM SPECIES

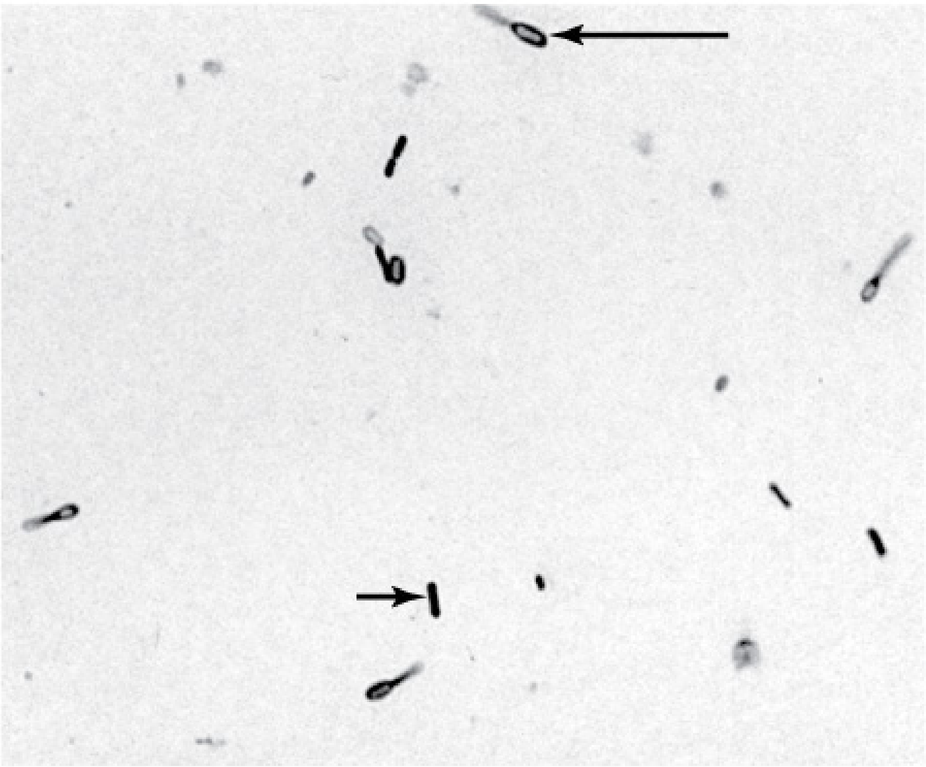
The clostridia are large anaerobic, gram-positive, motile rods. Many decompose proteins or form toxins, and some do both. Their natural habitat is the soil or the intestinal tract of animals and humans, where they live as saprophytes. Among the pathogens are the organisms causing botulism, tetanus, gas gangrene, and pseudomembranous colitis.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Spores of clostridia are usually wider than the diameter of the rods in which they are formed. In the various species, the spore is placed centrally, subterminally, or terminally. Most species of clostridia are motile and possess peritrichous flagella. A gram stain of a *Clostridium* species with terminal spores is shown in Figure 12–2.

Figure 12–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Clostridium Gram stain. Individual gram-positive bacilli are present (short arrow). Some bacilli have terminal spores (long arrow).

CULTURE

Clostridia are anaerobes and grow under anaerobic conditions; a few species are aerotolerant and will also grow in ambient air. Anaerobic culture conditions are discussed in Chapter 22. In general, the clostridia grow well on the blood-enriched media used to grow anaerobes and on other media used to culture anaerobes as well.

COLONY FORMS

Some clostridia produce large raised colonies (eg, *C perfringens*); others produce smaller colonies (eg, *C* *tetani*). Some clostridia form colonies that spread on the agar surface. Many clostridia produce a zone of hemolysis on blood agar. *C perfringens* typically produces multiple zones of hemolysis around colonies.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Clostridia can ferment a variety of sugars; many can digest proteins. Milk is turned acid by some and digested by others and undergoes "stormy fermentation" (ie, clot torn by gas) with a third group (eg, *C perfringens*). Various enzymes are produced by different species (see below).

ANTIGENIC CHARACTERISTICS

Clostridia share some antigens but also possess specific soluble antigens that permit grouping by precipitin tests.

CLOSTRIDIUM BOTULINUM

Clostridium botulinum, which causes botulism, is worldwide in distribution; it is found in soil and occasionally in animal feces.

Types of *C botulinum* are distinguished by the antigenic type of toxin they produce. Spores of the organism are highly resistant to heat, withstanding 100 °C for several hours. Heat resistance is diminished at acid pH or high salt concentration.

Toxin

During the growth of *C botulinum* and during autolysis of the bacteria, toxin is liberated into the environment. Seven antigenic varieties of toxin (A–G) are known. Types A, B, and E (and occasionally F) are the principal causes of human illness. Types A and B have been associated with a variety of foods and type E predominantly with fish products. Type C produces limberneck in birds; type D causes botulism in mammals. The toxin is a 150,000-MW protein that is cleaved into 100,000-MW and 50,000-MW proteins linked by a disulfide bond. Botulinum toxin is absorbed from the gut and binds to receptors of presynaptic membranes of motor neurons of the peripheral nervous system and cranial nerves. Proteolysis—by the light chain of botulinum toxin—of the target SNARE proteins in the neurons inhibits the release of acetylcholine at the synapse, resulting in lack of muscle contraction and paralysis. The SNARE proteins are synaptobrevin, SNAP 25, and syntaxin. The toxins of *C botulinum* types A and E cleave the 25,000-MW SNAP-25. Type B toxin cleaves synaptobrevin. *C botulinum* toxins are among the most toxic substances known: The lethal dose for a human is probably about 1–2 μg. The toxins are destroyed by heating for 20 minutes at 100 °C.

Pathogenesis

Although *C botulinum* types A and B have been implicated in cases of wound infection and botulism, most often the illness is not an infection. Rather, it is an intoxication resulting from the ingestion of food in which *C botulinum* has grown and produced toxin. The most common offenders are spiced, smoked, vacuum-packed, or canned alkaline foods that are eaten without cooking. In such foods, spores of *C botulinum* germinate; under anaerobic conditions, vegetative forms grow and produce toxin.

The toxin acts by blocking release of acetylcholine at synapses and neuromuscular junctions (see above). Flaccid paralysis results. The electromyogram and edrophonium strength tests are typical.

Clinical Findings

Symptoms begin 18–24 hours after ingestion of the toxic food, with visual disturbances (incoordination of eye muscles, double vision), inability to swallow, and speech difficulty; signs of bulbar paralysis are progressive, and death occurs from respiratory paralysis or cardiac arrest. Gastrointestinal symptoms are not regularly prominent. There is no fever. The patient remains fully conscious until shortly before death. The mortality rate is high. Patients who recover do not develop antitoxin in the blood.

In the United States, infant botulism is as common as or more common than the classic form of paralytic botulism associated with the ingestion of toxin-contaminated food. The infants in the first months of life develop poor feeding, weakness, and signs of paralysis ("floppy baby"). Infant botulism may be one of the causes of sudden infant death syndrome. *C botulinum* and botulinum toxin are found in feces but not in serum. It is assumed that *C botulinum* spores are in the babies' food, yielding toxin production in the gut. Honey has been implicated as a possible vehicle for the spores.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Toxin can often be demonstrated in serum from the patient, and toxin may be found in leftover food. Mice injected intraperitoneally die rapidly. The antigenic type of toxin is identified by neutralization with specific antitoxin in mice. *C botulinum* may be grown from food remains and tested for toxin production, but this is rarely done and is of questionable significance. In infant botulism, *C botulinum* and toxin can be demonstrated in bowel contents but not in serum. Toxin may be demonstrated by passive hemagglutination or radioimmunoassay.

Treatment

Potent antitoxins to three types of botulinum toxins have been prepared in horses. Since the type responsible for an individual case is usually not known, trivalent (A, B, E) antitoxin must be promptly administered intravenously with customary precautions. Adequate ventilation must be maintained by mechanical respirator, if necessary. These measures have reduced the mortality rate from 65% to below 25%.

Although most infants with botulism recover with supportive care alone, antitoxin therapy is recommended.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Since spores of *C botulinum* are widely distributed in soil, they often contaminate vegetables, fruits, and other materials. A large restaurant-based outbreak was associated with sautéed onions. When such foods are canned or otherwise preserved, they either must be sufficiently heated to ensure destruction of spores or must be boiled for 20 minutes before consumption. Strict regulation of commercial canning has largely overcome the danger of widespread outbreaks, but commercially prepared foods have caused deaths. A chief risk factor for botulism lies in home-canned foods, particularly string beans, corn, peppers, olives, peas, and smoked fish or vacuum-packed fresh fish in plastic bags. Toxic foods may be spoiled and rancid, and cans may "swell," or the appearance may be innocuous. The risk from home-canned foods can be reduced if the food is boiled for more than 20 minutes before consumption. Toxoids are used for active immunization of cattle in South Africa.

Botulinum toxin is considered to be a major agent for bioterrorism and biologic warfare (see Chapter 48).

CLOSTRIDIUM TETANI

Clostridium tetani, which causes tetanus, is worldwide in distribution in the soil and in the feces of horses and other animals. Several types of *C tetani* can be distinguished by specific flagellar antigens. All share a common O (somatic) antigen, which may be masked, and all produce the same antigenic type of neurotoxin, tetanospasmin.

Toxin

The vegetative cells of *C tetani* produce the toxin tetanospasmin (MW 150,000) that is cleaved by a bacterial protease into two peptides (MW 50,000 and 100,000) linked by a disulfide bond. The toxin initially binds to receptors on the presynaptic membranes of motor neurons. It then migrates by the retrograde axonal transport system to the cell bodies of these neurons to the spinal cord and brain stem. The toxin diffuses to terminals of inhibitory cells, including both glycinergic interneurons and aminobutyric acid-secreting neurons from the brain stem. The toxin degrades synaptobrevin, a protein required for docking of neurotransmitter vesicles on the presynaptic membrane. Release of the inhibitory glycine and γ-aminobutyric acid is blocked, and the motor neurons are not inhibited. Hyperreflexia, muscle spasms, and spastic paralysis result. Extremely small amounts of toxin can be lethal for humans.

Pathogenesis

C tetani is not an invasive organism. The infection remains strictly localized in the area of devitalized tissue (wound, burn, injury, umbilical stump, surgical suture) into which the spores have been introduced. The volume of infected tissue is small, and the disease is almost entirely a toxemia. Germination of the spore and development of vegetative organisms that produce toxin are aided by (1) necrotic tissue, (2) calcium salts, and (3) associated pyogenic infections, all of which aid establishment of low oxidation-reduction potential.

The toxin released from vegetative cells reaches the central nervous system and rapidly becomes fixed to receptors in the spinal cord and brain stem and exerts the actions described above.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period may range from 4–5 days to as many weeks. The disease is characterized by tonic contraction of voluntary muscles. Muscular spasms often involve first the area of injury and infection and then the muscles of the jaw (trismus, lockjaw), which contract so that the mouth cannot be opened. Gradually, other voluntary muscles become involved, resulting in tonic spasms. Any external stimulus may precipitate a tetanic generalized muscle spasm. The patient is fully conscious, and pain may be intense. Death usually results from interference with the mechanics of respiration. The mortality rate in generalized tetanus is very high.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis rests on the clinical picture and a history of injury, although only 50% of patients with tetanus have an injury for which they seek medical attention. The primary differential diagnosis of tetanus is strychnine poisoning. Anaerobic culture of tissues from contaminated wounds may yield *C tetani,* but neither preventive nor therapeutic use of antitoxin should ever be withheld pending such demonstration. Proof of isolation of *C tetani* must rest on production of toxin and its neutralization by specific antitoxin.

Prevention & Treatment

The results of treatment of tetanus are not satisfactory. Therefore, prevention is all-important. Prevention of tetanus depends upon (1) active immunization with toxoids; (2) proper care of wounds contaminated with soil, etc; (3) prophylactic use of antitoxin; and (4) administration of penicillin.

The intramuscular administration of 250–500 units of human antitoxin (tetanus immune globulin) gives adequate systemic protection (0.01 unit or more per milliliter of serum) for 2–4 weeks. It neutralizes the toxin that has not been fixed to nervous tissue. Active immunization with tetanus toxoid should accompany antitoxin prophylaxis.

Patients who develop symptoms of tetanus should receive muscle relaxants, sedation, and assisted ventilation. Sometimes they are given very large doses of antitoxin (3000–10,000 units of tetanus immune globulin) intravenously in an effort to neutralize toxin that has not yet been bound to nervous tissue. However, the efficacy of antitoxin for treatment is doubtful except in neonatal tetanus, where it may be lifesaving.

Surgical debridement is vitally important because it removes the necrotic tissue that is essential for proliferation of the organisms. Hyperbaric oxygen has no proved effect.

Penicillin strongly inhibits the growth of *C tetani* and stops further toxin production. Antibiotics may also control associated pyogenic infection.

When a previously immunized individual sustains a potentially dangerous wound, an additional dose of toxoid should be injected to restimulate antitoxin production. This "recall" injection of toxoid may be accompanied by a dose of antitoxin if the patient has not had current immunization or boosters or if the history of immunization is unknown.

Control

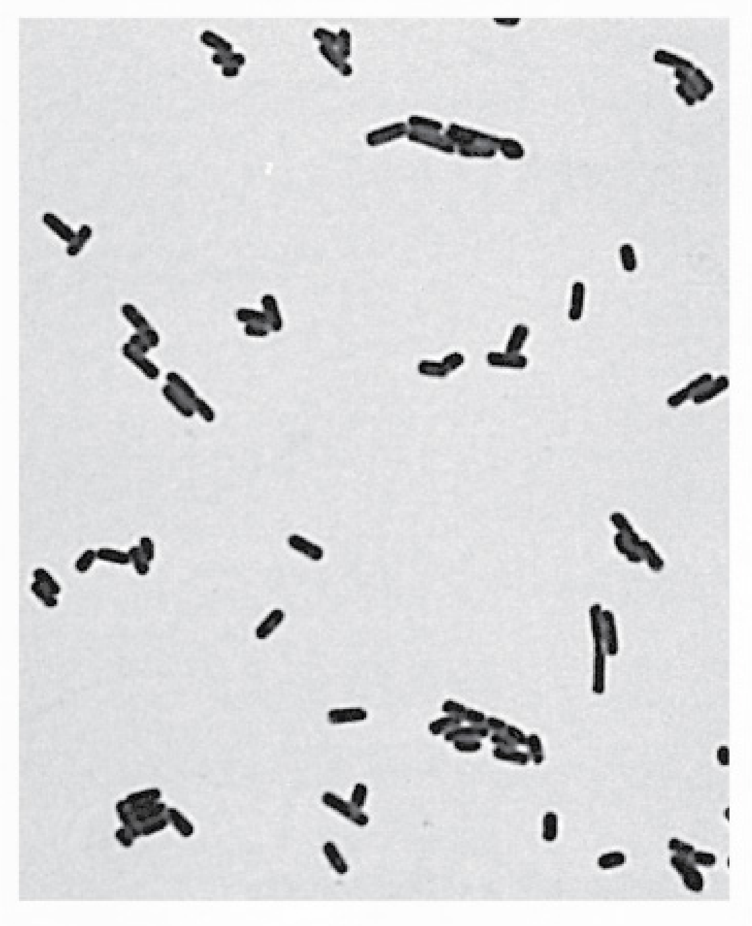
Tetanus is a totally preventable disease. Universal active immunization with tetanus toxoid should be mandatory. Tetanus toxoid is produced by detoxifying the toxin with formalin and then concentrating it. Aluminum-salt-adsorbed toxoids are employed. Three injections comprise the initial course of immunization, followed by another dose about 1 year later. Initial immunization should be carried out in all children during the first year of life. A "booster" injection of toxoid is given upon entry into school. Thereafter, "boosters" can be spaced 10 years apart to maintain serum levels of more than 0.01 unit antitoxin per milliliter. In young children, tetanus toxoid is often combined with diphtheria toxoid and pertussis vaccine.

Control measures are not possible because of the wide dissemination of the organism in the soil and the long survival of its spores.

CLOSTRIDIA THAT PRODUCE INVASIVE INFECTIONS

Many different toxin-producing clostridia (*Clostridium perfringens* and related clostridia) (Figure 12–3) can produce invasive infection (including myonecrosis and gas gangrene) if introduced into damaged tissue. About 30 species of clostridia may produce such an effect, but the most common in invasive disease is *Clostridium perfringens* (90%). An enterotoxin of *C perfringens* is a common cause of food poisoning.

Figure 12–3.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Gas gangrene bacilli. *C perfringens* typically does not form spores when grown on laboratory media.

Toxins

The invasive clostridia produce a large variety of toxins and enzymes that result in a spreading infection. Many of these toxins have lethal, necrotizing, and hemolytic properties. In some cases, these are different properties of a single substance; in other instances, they are due to different chemical entities. The alpha toxin of *C perfringens* type A is a lecithinase, and its lethal action is proportionate to the rate at which it splits lecithin (an important constituent of cell membranes) to phosphorylcholine and diglyceride. The theta toxin has similar hemolytic and necrotizing effects but is not a lecithinase. DNase and hyaluronidase, a collagenase that digests collagen of subcutaneous tissue and muscle, are also produced.

Some strains of *C perfringens* produce a powerful enterotoxin, especially when grown in meat dishes. When more than 10^8 vegetative cells are ingested and sporulate in the gut, enterotoxin is formed. The enterotoxin is a protein (MW 35,000) that may be a nonessential component of the spore coat; it is distinct from other clostridial toxins. It induces intense diarrhea in 6–18 hours. The action of *C perfringens* enterotoxin involves marked hypersecretion in the jejunum and ileum, with loss of fluids and electrolytes in diarrhea. Much less frequent symptoms include nausea, vomiting, and fever. This illness is similar to that produced by *B cereus* and tends to be self-limited.

Pathogenesis

In invasive clostridial infections, spores reach tissue either by contamination of traumatized areas (soil, feces) or from the intestinal tract. The spores germinate at low oxidation-reduction potential; vegetative cells multiply, ferment carbohydrates present in tissue, and produce gas. The distention of tissue and interference with blood supply, together with the secretion of necrotizing toxin and hyaluronidase, favor the spread of infection. Tissue necrosis extends, providing an opportunity for increased bacterial growth, hemolytic anemia, and, ultimately, severe toxemia and death.

In gas gangrene (clostridial myonecrosis), a mixed infection is the rule. In addition to the toxigenic clostridia, proteolytic clostridia and various cocci and gram-negative organisms are also usually present. *C perfringens* occurs in the genital tract of 5% of women. Before legalization of abortion in the United States, clostridial uterine infections followed instrumental abortions. *Clostridium sordellii* has many of the properties of *C perfringens*. *C sordellii* has been reported to cause a toxic shock syndrome after medical abortion with mifepristone and intravaginal misoprostol. Endometrial infection with *C sordellii* is implicated. Clostridial bacteremia is a frequent occurrence in patients with neoplasms. In New Guinea, *C perfringens* type C produces a necrotizing enteritis (pigbel) that can be highly fatal in children. Immunization with type C toxoid appears to have preventive value.

Clinical Findings

From a contaminated wound (eg, a compound fracture, postpartum uterus), the infection spreads in 1–3 days to produce crepitation in the subcutaneous tissue and muscle, foul-smelling discharge, rapidly progressing necrosis, fever, hemolysis, toxemia, shock, and death. Treatment is with early surgery (amputation) and antibiotic administration. Until the advent of specific therapy, early amputation was the only treatment. At times, the infection results only in anaerobic fasciitis or cellulitis.

C perfringens food poisoning usually follows the ingestion of large numbers of clostridia that have grown in warmed meat dishes. The toxin forms when the organisms sporulate in the gut, with the onset of diarrhea—usually without vomiting or fever—in 6–18 hours. The illness lasts only 1–2 days.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Specimens consist of material from wounds, pus, and tissue. The presence of large gram-positive rods in Gram-stained smears suggests gas gangrene clostridia; spores are not regularly present.

Material is inoculated into chopped meat-glucose medium and thioglycolate medium and onto blood agar plates incubated anaerobically. The growth from one of the media is transferred into milk. A clot torn by gas in 24 hours is suggestive of *C perfringens.* Once pure cultures have been obtained by selecting colonies from anaerobically incubated blood plates, they are identified by biochemical reactions (various sugars in thioglycolate, action on milk), hemolysis, and colony form. Lecithinase activity is evaluated by the precipitate formed around colonies on egg yolk media. Final identification rests on toxin production and neutralization by specific antitoxin. *C perfringens* rarely produces spores when cultured on agar in the laboratory.

Treatment

The most important aspect of treatment is prompt and extensive surgical debridement of the involved area and excision of all devitalized tissue, in which the organisms are prone to grow. Administration of antimicrobial drugs, particularly penicillin, is begun at the same time. Hyperbaric oxygen may be of help in the medical management of clostridial tissue infections. It is said to "detoxify" patients rapidly.

Antitoxins are available against the toxins of *C perfringens, Clostridium novyi, Clostridium histolyticum,* and *Clostridium septicum,* usually in the form of concentrated immune globulins. Polyvalent antitoxin (containing antibodies to several toxins) has been used. Although such antitoxin is sometimes administered to individuals with contaminated wounds containing much devitalized tissue, there is no evidence for its efficacy. Food poisoning due to *C perfringens* enterotoxin usually requires only symptomatic care.

Prevention & Control

Early and adequate cleansing of contaminated wounds and surgical debridement, together with the administration of antimicrobial drugs directed against clostridia (eg, penicillin), are the best available preventive measures. Antitoxins should not be relied on. Although toxoids for active immunization have been prepared, they have not come into practical use.

CLOSTRIDIUM DIFFICILE & DIARRHEAL DISEASE

Pseudomembranous Colitis

Pseudomembranous colitis is diagnosed by detection of one or both *C difficile* toxins in stool and by endoscopic observation of pseudomembranes or microabscesses in patients who have diarrhea and have been given antibiotics. Plaques and microabscesses may be localized to one area of the bowel. The diarrhea may be watery or bloody, and the patient frequently has associated abdominal cramps, leukocytosis, and fever. Although many antibiotics have been associated with pseudomembranous colitis, the most common are ampicillin and clindamycin. The disease is treated by discontinuing administration of the offending antibiotic and orally giving either metronidazole or vancomycin.

Administration of antibiotics results in proliferation of drug-resistant *C difficile* that produces two toxins. Toxin A, a potent enterotoxin that also has some cytotoxic activity, binds to the brush border membranes of the gut at receptor sites. Toxin B is a potent cytotoxin. Both toxins are found in the stools of patients with pseudomembranous colitis. Not all strains of *C difficile* produce the toxins, and the *tox* genes apparently are not carried on plasmids or phage.

Antibiotic-Associated Diarrhea

The administration of antibiotics frequently leads to a mild to moderate form of diarrhea, termed antibiotic-associated diarrhea. This disease is generally less severe than the classic form of pseudomembranous colitis. As many as 25% of cases of antibiotic-associated diarrhea may be associated with *C difficile.*

REFERENCES

Allen SDS, Emery CL, Lyerly DM: *Clostridium.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Bleck TP: *Clostridium botulinum* (Botulism): In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Bleck TP: *Clostridium tetani* (Tetanus): In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Dixon TC et al: Anthrax. N Engl J Med 1999;341:815. [PMID: 10477781]

Fekete F: *Bacillus* species and related genera other than *Bacillus anthracis*. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Lorber B: Gas gangrene and other *Clostridium*-associated diseases. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Lucey D: *Bacillus anthracis* (Anthrax). In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Naill A, Turnbull PC: *Bacillus* and other aerobic endospore-forming bacteria. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Shapiro RL et al: Botulism in the United States: A clinical and epidemiologic review. Ann Intern Med 1998;129:221. [PMID: 9696731]

Thielman NM: Antibiotic-associated colitis. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Lange Microbiology > Chapter 13. Non-Spore-Forming Gram-Positive Bacilli: *Corynebacterium, Propionibacterium, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Actinomycetes,* & Related Pathogens >

INTRODUCTION

The non-spore-forming gram-positive bacilli are a diverse group of bacteria. Many members of the genus *Corynebacterium* and their anaerobic equivalents, *Propionibacterium* species, are members of the normal flora of skin and mucous membranes of humans. Other corynebacteria are found in animals and plants. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is the most important member of the group, as it can produce a powerful exotoxin that causes diphtheria in humans. *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* are primarily found in animals and occasionally cause severe disease in humans.

Corynebacterium species and related bacteria tend to be clubbed or irregularly shaped; although not all isolates have the irregular shapes, the term "coryneform bacteria" is a convenient one for denoting the group. These bacteria have a high guanosine plus cytosine content and include the genera *Corynebacterium*, *Arcanobacterium*, *Brevibacterium*, *Mycobacterium*, and others (Table 13–1). Actinomyces and propionibacterium are classified as anaerobes, but some isolates grow well aerobically (aerotolerant) and must be differentiated from the aerobic coryneform bacteria. Other non-spore-forming gram-positive bacilli have more regular shapes and a lower guanosine plus cytosine content. The genera include *Listeria* and *Erysipelothrix*; these bacteria are more closely related to the anaerobic *Lactobacillus* species, which sometimes grow well in air, to the spore-forming *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* species—and to the gram-positive cocci of the *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus* species—than they are to the coryneform bacteria. The medically important genera of gram-positive bacilli are listed in Table 13–1 and include some spore-forming and anaerobic genera. Anaerobic bacteria are discussed briefly in this chapter and in Chapter 22.

Table 13–1. Some of the More Common Gram-Positive Bacilli of Medical Importance.

Aerobic Gram-Positive Bacilli with High G + C Content and Irregular Shape[1]	Aerobic Gram-Positive Bacilli with Lower G + C Content and More Regular Shape
Genera	Genera
Common	Common
Corynebacterium	Listeria
Uncommon	Erysipelothrix
Arcanobacterium	Gardnerella
Rhodococcus	Aerotolerant anaerobes/strict anaerobes

Aerobic Gram-Positive Bacilli with High G + C Content and Irregular Shape[1]	Aerobic Gram-Positive Bacilli with Lower G + C Content and More Regular Shape
Rothia	Lactobacillus
Many other genera of skin and environmental flora	Clostridium (spore-forming) (Chapter 12)
Aerotolerant anaerobes	Aerobes
Actinomyces	Bacillus (spore-forming) (Chapter 12)
Propionibacterium	
Major pathogen: *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*	Major pathogens
Common or clinically important isolates of the genus *Corynebacterium*	*Listeria monocytogenes*
	Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae
C amycolatum	
C minutissimum	
C jeikeium	
C pseudodiphtheriticum	
C striatum	
C urealyticum	
C xerosis	

G + C = guanine plus cytosine base.

[1] The medically important coryneform bacteria.

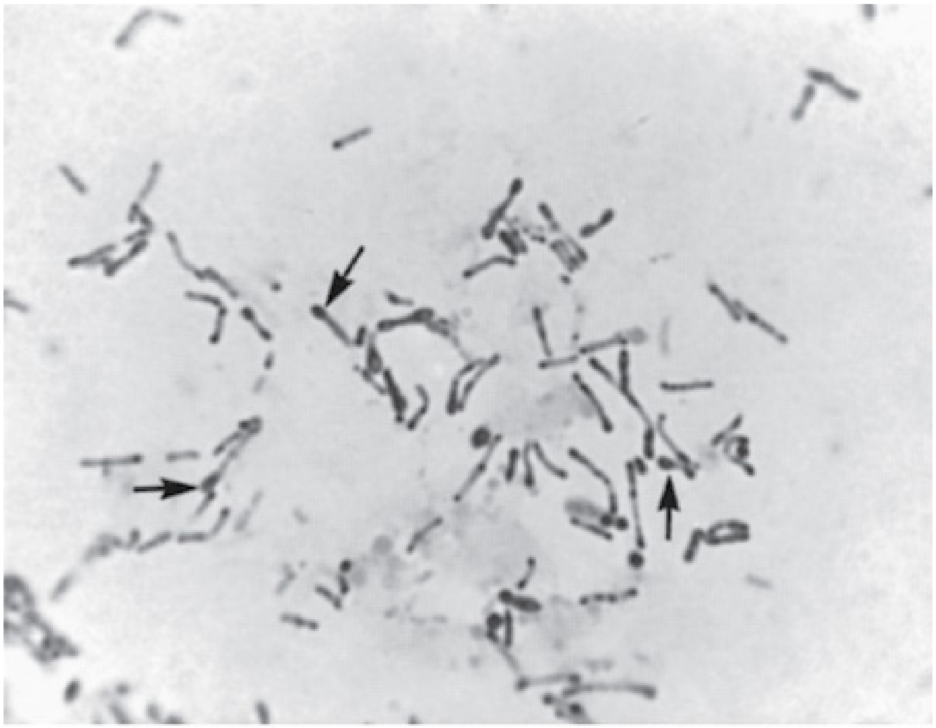
There is no unifying method for identification of the gram-positive bacilli. Few laboratories are equipped to measure guanosine plus cytosine content. Growth only under anaerobic conditions implies that the isolate is an anaerobe, but many isolates of *Lactobacillus*, *Actinomyces*, and *Propionibacterium* species and others are aerotolerant. Most isolates of the rapidly growing *Mycobacterium* species and of the *Nocardia* and *Rhodococcus* species are acid-fast and, therefore, readily distinguished from the coryneform bacteria. Many but not all genera of bacillus and clostridium produce spores, and the presence of spores readily distinguishes the isolate from the coryneform bacteria; however, *Clostridium perfringens* and other filamentous clostridia generally do not produce spores on laboratory media. Determination that an isolate is a lactobacillus (or propionibacterium) may require gas-liquid chromatography to measure lactic acid (or propionic acid) metabolic products, but this is generally not practical. Other tests that are used to help identify an isolate of non-spore-forming gram-positive bacilli as a member of a genus or species include catalase production, indole production, nitrate reduction, and fermentation of carbohydrates, among others.

CORYNEBACTERIUM DIPHTHERIAE

Morphology & Identification

Corynebacteria are 0.5–1 µm in diameter and several micrometers long. Characteristically, they possess irregular swellings at one end that give them the "club-shaped" appearance (Figure 13–1). Irregularly distributed within the rod (often near the poles) are granules staining deeply with aniline dyes (metachromatic granules) that give the rod a beaded appearance. Individual corynebacteria in stained smears tend to lie parallel or at acute angles to one another. True branching is rarely observed in cultures.

Figure 13–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Corynebacterium diphtheriae from Pai medium and stained with methylene blue. Arrows indicate clubbed ends on some of the bacteria.

On blood agar, the *C diphtheriae* colonies are small, granular, and gray, with irregular edges, and may have small zones of hemolysis. On agar containing potassium tellurite, the colonies are brown to black with a brown-black halo because the tellurite is reduced intracellularly (staphylococci and streptococci can also produce black colonies). Four biotypes of *C diphtheriae* have been widely recognized: gravis, mitis, intermedius, and belfanti. These variants have been classified on the basis of growth characteristics such as colony morphology, biochemical reactions, and, severity of disease produced by infection. Very few reference laboratories provide the biotype characterization; the incidence of diphtheria has greatly decreased and the association of severity of disease with biovar is not important to clinical or public health management of cases or outbreaks. If necessary in the setting of an outbreak, immunochemical and molecular methods can be used to type the *C diphtheriae* isolates.

C diphtheriae and other corynebacteria grow aerobically on most ordinary laboratory media. Propionibacterium is an anaerobe. On Loeffler's serum medium, corynebacteria grow much more readily than other respiratory organisms, and the morphology of organisms is typical in smears.

Corynebacteria tend to pleomorphism in microscopic and colonial morphology. When some nontoxigenic diphtheria organisms are infected with bacteriophage from certain toxigenic diphtheria bacilli, the offspring of the exposed bacteria are lysogenic and toxigenic, and this trait is subsequently hereditary. When toxigenic diphtheria bacilli are serially subcultured in specific antiserum against the temperate phage that they carry, they tend to become nontoxigenic. Thus, acquisition of phage leads to toxigenicity (lysogenic conversion). The actual production of toxin occurs perhaps only when the prophage of the lysogenic *C diphtheriae* becomes induced and lyses the cell. Whereas toxigenicity is under control of the phage gene, invasiveness is under control of bacterial genes.

Pathogenesis

The principal human pathogen of the group is *C diphtheriae.* In nature, *C diphtheriae* occurs in the respiratory tract, in wounds, or on the skin of infected persons or normal carriers. It is spread by droplets or by contact to susceptible individuals; the bacilli then grow on mucous membranes or in skin abrasions, and those that are toxigenic start producing toxin.

All toxigenic *C diphtheriae* are capable of elaborating the same disease-producing exotoxin. In vitro production of this toxin depends largely on the concentration of iron. Toxin production is optimal at 0.14 μg of iron per milliliter of medium but is virtually suppressed at 0.5 μg/mL. Other factors influencing the yield of toxin in vitro are osmotic pressure, amino acid concentration, pH, and availability of suitable carbon and nitrogen sources. The factors that control toxin production in vivo are not well understood.

Diphtheria toxin is a heat-labile polypeptide (MW 62,000) that can be lethal in a dose of 0.1 μg/kg. If disulfide bonds are broken, the molecule can be split into two fragments. Fragment B (MW = 38,000) has no independent activity but is required for the transport of fragment A into the cell. Fragment A inhibits polypeptide chain elongation—provided nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) is present—by inactivating the elongation factor EF-2. This factor is required for translocation of polypeptidyl-transfer RNA from the acceptor to the donor site on the eukaryotic ribosome. Toxin fragment A inactivates EF-2 by catalyzing a reaction that yields free nicotinamide plus an inactive adenosine diphosphate-ribose-EF-2 complex. It is assumed that the abrupt arrest of protein synthesis is responsible for the necrotizing and neurotoxic effects of diphtheria toxin. An exotoxin with a similar mode of action can be produced by strains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.*

Pathology

Diphtheria toxin is absorbed into the mucous membranes and causes destruction of epithelium and a superficial inflammatory response. The necrotic epithelium becomes embedded in exuding fibrin and red and white cells, so that a grayish "pseudomembrane" is formed—commonly over the tonsils, pharynx, or larynx. Any attempt to remove the pseudomembrane exposes and tears the capillaries and thus results in bleeding. The regional lymph nodes in the neck enlarge, and there may be marked edema of the entire neck. The diphtheria bacilli within the membrane continue to produce toxin actively. This is absorbed and results in distant toxic damage, particularly parenchymatous degeneration, fatty infiltration, and necrosis in heart muscle, liver, kidneys, and adrenals, sometimes accompanied by gross hemorrhage. The toxin also produces nerve damage, resulting often in paralysis of the soft palate, eye muscles, or extremities.

Wound or skin diphtheria occurs chiefly in the tropics. A membrane may form on an infected wound that fails to heal. However, absorption of toxin is usually slight and the systemic effects negligible. The small amount of toxin that is absorbed during skin infection promotes development of antitoxin antibodies. The "virulence" of diphtheria bacilli is due to their capacity for establishing infection, growing rapidly, and then quickly elaborating toxin that is effectively absorbed. *C diphtheriae* does not need to be toxigenic to establish localized infection—in the nasopharynx or skin, for example—but nontoxigenic strains do not yield the localized or systemic toxic effects. *C diphtheriae* does not actively invade deep tissues and practically never enters the bloodstream.

Clinical Findings

When diphtheritic inflammation begins in the respiratory tract, sore throat and fever usually develop. Prostration and dyspnea soon follow because of the obstruction caused by the membrane. This obstruction may even cause suffocation if not promptly relieved by intubation or tracheostomy. Irregularities of cardiac rhythm indicate damage to the heart. Later, there may be difficulties with vision, speech, swallowing, or movement of the arms or legs. All of these manifestations tend to subside spontaneously.

In general, var gravis tends to produce more severe disease than var mitis, but similar illness can be produced by all types.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

These serve to confirm the clinical impression and are of epidemiologic significance. *Note:* Specific treatment must never be delayed for laboratory reports if the clinical picture is strongly suggestive of diphtheria.

Dacron swabs from the nose, throat, or other suspected lesions must be obtained before antimicrobial drugs are administered. Swabs should be collected from beneath any visible membrane. The swab should then be placed in semisolid transport media such as Amies. Smears stained with alkaline methylene blue or Gram stain show beaded rods in typical arrangement.

Inoculate a blood agar plate (to rule out hemolytic streptococci), a Loeffler slant, and a tellurite plate (eg, cystine-tellurite agar or modified Tinsdale medium) and incubate all at 37 °C. In 12–18 hours, the Loeffler slant may yield organisms of typical "diphtheria-like" morphology. In 36–48 hours, the colonies on tellurite medium are sufficiently definite for recognition of *C diphtheriae.*

A presumptive *C diphtheriae* isolate should be subjected to testing for toxigenicity. Such tests are performed only in reference public health laboratories. There are several methods, as follows:

(1) A filter paper disk containing antitoxin is placed on an agar plate. The cultures to be tested for toxigenicity are spot innoculated 7 to 9 mm away from the disk. After 48 hours of incubation, the antitoxin diffusing from the paper disk has precipitated the toxin diffusing from toxigenic cultures and has resulted in precipitate bands between the disk and the bacterial growth. This is the modified Elek method described by the WHO Diphtheria Reference Unit.

(2) Polymerase chain reaction-based methods have been described for detection of the diphtheria toxin gene *(tox).* PCR assays for *tox* can also be used directly on patient specimens before culture results are available. A positive culture confirms a positive PCR assay. A negative culture following antibiotic therapy along with a positive PCR assay suggests that the patient probably has diphtheria.

(3) Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays can be used to detect diphtheria toxin from clinical *C diphtheriae* isolates.

(4) An immunochromographic strip assay allows detection of diphtheria toxin in a matter of hours. This assay is highly sensitive.

Historically, toxigenicity of a *C diphtheriae* isolate has been demonstrated by injecting two guinea pigs with the emulsified isolate. If the guinea pig protected with diphtheria antitoxin survives while the unprotected one dies, the isolate is considered to be toxigenic. This test has largely been replaced by more modern technology.

Resistance & Immunity

Since diphtheria is principally the result of the action of the toxin formed by the organism rather than invasion by the organism, resistance to the disease depends largely on the availability of specific neutralizing antitoxin in the bloodstream and tissues. It is generally true that diphtheria occurs only in persons who possess no antitoxin (or less than 0.01 Lf unit/mL). Assessment of immunity to diphtheria toxin for individual patients can best be made by review of documented diphtheria toxoid immunizations and primary or booster immunization if needed.

Treatment

The treatment of diphtheria rests largely on rapid suppression of toxin-producing bacteria by antimicrobial drugs and the early administration of specific antitoxin against the toxin formed by the organisms at their site of entry and multiplication. Diphtheria antitoxin is produced in various animals (horses, sheep, goats, and rabbits) by the repeated injection of purified and concentrated toxoid. Treatment with antitoxin is mandatory when there is strong clinical suspicion of diphtheria. From 20,000 to 100,000 units are injected intramuscularly or intravenously after suitable precautions have been taken (skin or conjunctival test) to rule out hypersensitivity to the animal serum. The antitoxin should be given on the day the clinical diagnosis of diphtheria is made and need not be repeated. Intramuscular injection may be used in mild cases.

Antimicrobial drugs (penicillin, erythromycin) inhibit the growth of diphtheria bacilli. Although these drugs have virtually no effect on the disease process, they arrest toxin production. They also help to eliminate coexistent streptococci and *C diphtheriae* from the respiratory tracts of patients or carriers.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Before artificial immunization, diphtheria was mainly a disease of small children. The infection occurred either clinically or subclinically at an early age and resulted in the widespread production of antitoxin in the population. An asymptomatic infection during adolescence and adult life served as a stimulus for maintenance of high antitoxin levels. Thus, most members of the population, except children, were immune.

By age 6–8 years, approximately 75% of children in developing countries where skin infections with *C diphtheriae* are common have protective serum antitoxin levels. Absorption of small amounts of diphtheria toxin from the skin infection presumably provides the antigenic stimulus for the immune response; the amount of absorbed toxin does not produce disease.

Active immunization in childhood with diphtheria toxoid yields antitoxin levels that are generally adequate until adulthood. Young adults should be given boosters of toxoid, because toxigenic diphtheria bacilli are not sufficiently prevalent in the population of many developed countries to provide the stimulus of subclinical infection with stimulation of resistance. Levels of antitoxin decline with time, and many older persons have insufficient amounts of circulating antitoxin to protect them against diphtheria.

The principal aims of prevention are to limit the distribution of toxigenic diphtheria bacilli in the population and to maintain as high a level of active immunization as possible.

To limit contact with diphtheria bacilli to a minimum, patients with diphtheria should be isolated. Without treatment, a large percentage of infected persons continue to shed diphtheria bacilli for weeks or months after recovery (convalescent carriers). This danger may be greatly reduced by active early treatment with antibiotics.

A filtrate of broth culture of a toxigenic strain is treated with 0.3% formalin and incubated at 37 °C until toxicity has disappeared. This fluid toxoid is purified and standardized in flocculating units (Lf doses). Fluid toxoids prepared as above are adsorbed onto aluminum hydroxide or aluminum phosphate. This material remains longer in a depot after injection and is a better antigen. Such toxoids are commonly combined with tetanus toxoid (Td) and sometimes with pertussis vaccine (DPT or DaPT) as a single injection to be used in initial immunization of children. For booster injection of adults, only Td toxoids are used; these combine a full dose of tetanus toxoid with a tenfold smaller dose of diphtheria toxoid in order to diminish the likelihood of adverse reactions.

All children must receive an initial course of immunizations and boosters. Regular boosters with Td are particularly important for adults who travel to developing countries, where the incidence of clinical diphtheria may be 1000-fold higher than in developed countries, where immunization is universal.

OTHER CORYNEFORM BACTERIA

Many other *Corynebacterium* and *Propionibacterium* species have been associated with disease in humans. The coryneform bacteria are classified as nonlipophilic or lipophilic depending upon enhancement of growth by addition of lipid to the growth medium. The lipophilic corynebacteria grow slowly on sheep blood agar, producing colonies < 0.5 mm in diameter after 24 hours of incubation. Additional key reactions for the classification of the coryneform bacteria include but are not limited to the following tests: fermentative or oxidative metabolism, catalase production, motility, nitrate reduction, urease production, and esculin hydrolysis. *Corynebacterium* species are typically nonmotile and catalase-positive. The coryneform bacteria are normal inhabitants of the mucous membranes of the skin, respiratory tract, urinary tract, and conjunctiva.

Nonlipophilic Corynebacteria

Corynebacterium ulcerans and *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis* are closely related to *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and may carry the diphtheria *tox* gene. The toxigenic *C ulcerans* can cause disease similar to clinical diphtheria, while *C pseudotuberculosis* rarely causes disease in humans. Other species in the nonlipophilic fermentative group include *Corynebacterium xerosis, Corynebacterium striatum, Corynebacterium minutissimum,* and *Corynebacterium amycolatum.* These are among the most commonly isolated coryneform bacteria. Many isolates previously identified as *C xerosis* may have been misidentified and were really *C amycolatum.* There are few well-documented cases of disease caused by *C minutissimum,* though the organism is frequently isolated from clinical specimens. Historically, *C xerosis* and *C striatum* have caused a variety of infections in humans.

The group of nonlipophilic nonfermentative corynebacteria includes multiple species. *Corynebacterium auris* has been associated with ear infections in children, and *Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum* has been associated with respiratory tract infections. *Corynebacterium glucuronolyticum* is often urease-positive and is a urinary tract pathogen.

Lipophilic Corynebacteria

Corynebacterium jeikeium is one of the coryneform bacterium most commonly isolated from acutely ill patients. It can cause disease in immunocompromised patients and is important because it produces infections, including bacteremia, that have a high mortality rate and because it is resistant to many commonly used antimicrobial drugs. *Corynebacterium urealyticum* is a slowly growing species that is multiply resistant to antibiotics. As its name implies, it is urease-positive. It has been associated with acute or chronic encrusted urinary tract infections manifested by alkaline urine pH and crystal formation.

Anaerobic Corynebacteria

Anaerobic corynebacteria (eg, *Propionibacterium* species) reside in normal skin. *Propionibacterium acnes,* however, is aerotolerant and grows aerobically. It participates in the pathogenesis of acne by producing lipases that split free fatty acids off from skin lipids. These fatty acids can produce tissue inflammation and contribute to acne. Because *P acnes* is part of the normal skin flora, it occasionally appears in blood cultures and must be differentiated as a culture contaminant or a true cause of disease. *P acnes* occasionally causes infection of prosthetic heart valves and cerebrospinal fluid shunts.

Actinomyces pyogenes, Actinomyces neuii, and other *Actinomyces* species are occasionally associated with clinically significant infections. *Actinomyces viscosis* grows readily under aerobic conditions.

Other Coryneform Genera

There are many other genera and species of coryneform bacteria. *Arcanobacterium haemolyticum* produces beta-hemolysis on blood agar. It is occasionally associated with pharyngitis and can grow in media selective for streptococci. *A haemolyticum* is catalase-negative, like group A streptococci, and must be differentiated by Gram stain morphology (rods versus cocci) and biochemical characteristics. Most of the coryneform bacteria in the other genera are infrequent causes of disease and are not commonly identified in the clinical laboratory.

Rhodococcus equi (formerly *Corynebacterium equi*) may appear to be a bacillus after a few hours of incubation in broth, but with further incubation it becomes coccoid in shape. The organisms are generally weakly acid-fast when stained by the modified Kinyoun method. *R equi* occasionally causes infections such as necrotizing pneumonia in immunosuppressed patients with abnormal cell-mediated immunity (eg, AIDS patients). *R equi* is present in soil and in dung of herbivores. The organism is an occasional cause of disease in cattle, sheep, and swine and can cause severe lung infections in foals. Other species of the diverse genus *Rhodococcus* are present in the environment but rarely cause disease in humans.

Rothia dentocariosa is a gram-positive rod that forms branching filaments. It has been associated with abscesses and endocarditis, presumably following entry into the blood from the mouth. The gram positive coccus, *Stomatococcus mucilaginosis,* has been moved to the genus *Rothia*. It is a common inhabitant of the oral cavity and has been associated with bacteremia in compromised hosts and endocarditis in intravenous drug users.

LISTERIA MONOCYTOGENES

There are several species in the genus *Listeria*. Of these, *L monocytogenes* is important as a cause of a wide spectrum of disease in animals and humans.

Morphology & Identification

L monocytogenes is a short, gram-positive, non-spore-forming rod. It has a tumbling end-over-end motility at 22–28 °C but not at 37 °C; the motility test rapidly differentiates listeria from diphtheroids that are members of the normal flora of the skin.

Culture & Growth Characteristics

Listeria grows on media such as Mueller-Hinton agar. Identification is enhanced if the primary cultures are done on agar containing sheep blood, because the characteristic small zone of hemolysis can be observed around and under colonies. Isolation can be enhanced if the tissue is kept at 4 °C for some days before inoculation into bacteriologic media. The organism is a facultative anaerobe and is catalase-positive and motile. Listeria produces acid but not gas in a variety of carbohydrates.

The motility at room temperature and hemolysin production are primary findings that help differentiate listeria from coryneform bacteria.

Antigenic Classification

Serologic classification is done only in reference laboratories and is primarily used for epidemiologic studies. Serotypes Ia, Ib, and IVb make up more than 90% of the isolates from humans. Serotype IVb was found to have caused an epidemic of listeriosis associated with cheese made from inadequately pasteurized milk.

Pathogenesis & Immunity

L monocytogenes enters the body through the gastrointestinal tract after ingestion of contaminated foods such as cheese or vegetables. It has a cell wall surface protein called internalin that interacts with E-cadherin, a receptor on epithelial cells, promoting phagocytosis into the epithelial cells. After phagocytosis, the bacterium is enclosed in a phagolysosome, where the low pH activates the bacterium to produce listeriolysin O. This enzyme lyses the membrane of the phagolysosome and allows the listeriae to escape into the cytoplasm of the epithelial cell. The organisms proliferate and ActA, another listerial surface protein, induces host cell actin polymerization, which propels them to the cell membrane. Pushing against the host cell membrane, they cause formation of elongated protrusions called filopods. These filopods are ingested by adjacent epithelial cells, macrophages, and hepatocytes, the listeriae are released, and the cycle begins again. *L monocytogenes* can move from cell to cell without being exposed to antibodies, complement, or polymorphonuclear cells. *Shigella flexneri* and rickettsiae also usurp the host cells' actin and contractile system to spread their infections.

Iron is an important virulence factor. Listeriae produce siderophores and are able to obtain iron from transferrin.

Immunity to *L monocytogenes* is primarily cell-mediated, as demonstrated by the intracellular location of infection and by the marked association of infection and conditions of impaired cell-mediated immunity such as pregnancy, AIDS, lymphoma, and organ transplantation. Immunity can be transferred by sensitized lymphocytes but not by antibodies.

Clinical Findings

There are two forms of perinatal human listeriosis. Early onset-syndrome (granulomatosis infantiseptica) is the result of infection in utero and is a disseminated form of the disease characterized by neonatal sepsis, pustular lesions and granulomas containing *Listeria monocytogenes* in multiple organs. Death may occur before or after delivery. The late-onset syndrome causes the development of meningitis between birth and the third week of life; it is often caused by serotype IVb and has a significant mortality rate.

Adults can develop listeria meningoencephalitis, bacteremia, and (rarely) focal infections. Meningoencephalitis and bacteremia occur most commonly in immunosuppressed patients, in whom listeria is one of the more common causes of meningitis. Clinical presentation of listeria meningitis in these patients varies from insidious to fulminant and is nonspecific.

The diagnosis of listeriosis rests on isolation of the organism in cultures of blood and spinal fluid.

Spontaneous infection occurs in many domestic and wild animals. In ruminants (eg, sheep) listeria may cause meningoencephalitis with or without bacteremia. In smaller animals (eg, rabbits, chickens), there is septicemia with focal abscesses in the liver and heart muscle and marked monocytosis.

Many antimicrobial drugs inhibit listeria in vitro. Clinical cures have been obtained with ampicillin, with erythromycin, or with intravenous trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Cephalosporins and fluoroquinolones are not active against *L monocytogenes*. Ampicillin plus gentamicin is often recommended for therapy, but gentamicin does not enter host cells and may not help treat the listeria infection.

ERYSIPELOTHRIX RHUSIOPATHIAE

Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae (also called *Erysipelothrix insidiosa*) is a gram-positive bacillus that produces small, transparent glistening colonies. It may be alpha-hemolytic on blood agar. On Gram stains it sometimes looks gram-negative because it decolorizes easily. The bacteria may appear singly, in short chains, randomly, or in long nonbranching filaments. The colony morphology and Gram stain appearance vary depending upon the growth medium, incubation temperature, and pH. Erysipelothrix is catalase-, oxidase-, and indole-negative. When erysipelothrix is grown on triple sugar iron agar, hydrogen sulfide is produced, turning the TSI butt black.

E rhusiopathiae must be differentiated from *L monocytogenes, Arcanobacterium pyogenes,* and *Arcanobacterium haemolyticum,* but these three species are beta-hemolytic and do not produce hydrogen sulfide when grown on TSI medium. It is more difficult to differentiate *E rhusiopathiae* from aerotolerant lactobacilli; both may be alpha-hemolytic. They are catalase-negative and vancomycin-resistant (80% of lactobacilli). In addition, some strains of lactobacilli produce H_2S much like *E rhusiopathiae.*

E rhusiopathiae is distributed in land and sea animals worldwide, including a variety of vertebrates and invertebrates. It causes disease in domestic swine, turkeys, ducks, and sheep. The most important impact is in swine, where it causes erysipelas. In humans, erysipelas is caused by group A beta-hemolytic streptococci and is much different from erysipelas of swine. People obtain *E rhusiopathiae* infection by direct inoculation from animals or animal products. Persons at greatest risk are fishermen, fish handlers, abattoir workers, butchers, and others who have contact with animal products.

The most common *E rhusiopathiae* infection in humans is called erysipeloid. It usually occurs on the fingers by direct inoculation at the site of a cut or abrasion (and has been called "seal finger" and "whale finger"). After 2–7 days' incubation, pain, which can be severe, and swelling occur. The lesion is raised, and violaceous in color. Pus is usually not present at the infection site, which helps differentiate it from staphylococcal and streptococcal skin infections. Erysipeloid can resolve after 3–4 weeks, or more rapidly with antibiotic treatment. Additional clinical forms of infection (both rare) are a diffuse cutaneous form and bacteremia with endocarditis. Erysipelothrix is highly susceptible to penicillin G, the drug of choice for severe infections. The organism is intrinsically resistant to vancomycin.

ACTINOMYCETES

The aerobic Actinomycetes are a large, diverse group of gram-positive bacilli with a tendency to form chains or filaments. They are related to the corynebacteria and include multiple genera of clinical significance such as Mycobacteria (discussed in Chapter 24) and saprophytic organisms such as streptomyces. As the bacilli grow, the cells remain together after division to form elongated chains of bacteria (1 μm in width) with occasional branches. The extent of this process varies in different taxa. It is rudimentary in some actinomycetes—the chains are short, break apart after formation, and resemble diphtheroids; others develop extensive substrate or aerial filaments (or both); and either may produce spores or fragment into coccobacillary forms. Members of the aerobic Actinomycetes can be categorized on the basis of the acid fast stain. Mycobacteria are truly positive acid fast organisms; weakly positive genera include *Nocardia,Rhodococcus,* and a few others of clinical significance. *Streptomyces* and *Actinomadura,* two agents that cause actinomycotic mycetomas, are acid fast stain negative.

NOCARDIOSIS

The genus *Nocardia* continues to undergo extensive taxonomic reclassification. New species continue to be recognized and at least 16 species have been implicated as causes of human infections.

Nocardiosis is caused by infection with *Nocardia asteroides* complex or, less frequently, *Nocardia brasiliensis* or *Nocardia otitidiscaviarum,* and only rarely by other species of nocardia. The *Nocardia asteroides* complex includes *Nocardia abscessus, Nocardia farcinica, Nocardia nova,* and others. The importance of the complex is that its members tend to have variable antimicrobial susceptibility, which can influence treatment. The pathogenic nocardiae, like many nonpathogenic species of nocardia, are found worldwide in soil and water. Nocardiosis is initiated by inhalation of these bacteria. The usual presentation is as a subacute to chronic pulmonary infection that may disseminate to other organs, usually the brain or skin. Nocardiae are not transmitted from person to person.

Morphology & Identification

Nocardia species are aerobic and grow on a variety of media. Over the course of several days to a week or more, they develop heaped, irregular, waxy colonies. Strains vary in their pigmentation from white to orange to red. These bacteria are gram-positive, catalase-positive, and partially acid-fast bacilli. They produce urease and can digest paraffin. Nocardiae form extensive branching substrates and aerial filaments that fragment after formation, breaking into coccobacillary cells. The cell walls contain mycolic acids that are shorter-chained than those of Mycobacteria. They are considered to be weakly acid-fast, but if they are stained with the routine acid-fast reagent (carbol-fuchsin) but decolorized with 1–4% sulfuric acid instead of the stronger acid-alcohol decolorant, most isolates will stain acid-fast. The species of nocardia are identified by most clinical laboratories by routine phenotypic tests. However, laboratories with molecular capability are using sequencing methodologies and RFLP of amplified gene fragments such as *hsp*.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

In most cases, nocardiosis is an opportunistic infection associated with several risk factors, most of which impair the cell-mediated immune responses: corticosteroid treatment, immunosuppression, organ transplantation, AIDS, tuberculosis, and alcoholism. Nocardiosis begins as chronic lobar pneumonia, and a variety of symptoms may occur, including fever, weight loss, and chest pain. The clinical manifestations are not distinctive and mimic tuberculosis and other infections. Pulmonary consolidations may develop, but granuloma formation and caseation are rare. The usual pathologic process is abscess formation. Spread from the lung often involves the central nervous system, where abscesses develop in the brain, leading to a variety of clinical presentations. Some patients have subclinical lung involvement and present with brain lesions. Dissemination may also occur to the skin, kidney, or elsewhere.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Specimens consist of sputum, pus, spinal fluid, and biopsy material. Gram-stained smears reveal gram-positive bacilli, coccobacillary cells, and branching filaments. With the modified acid-fast stain, most isolates will be acid-fast. *Nocardia* species grow on most laboratory media. Serologic tests are unreliable at present.

Treatment

The treatment of choice is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. If patients fail to respond, a number of other antibiotics have been used with success, such as amikacin, imipenem, minocycline, linezolide, and cefotaxime. Surgical drainage or resection may be required.

ACTINOMYCETOMA

Mycetoma (Madura foot) is a localized, slowly progressive, chronic infection that begins in subcutaneous tissue and spreads to adjacent tissues. It is destructive and often painless. In many cases the cause is a soil fungus that has been implanted into the subcutaneous tissue by minor trauma. This form of mycetoma is discussed in Chapter 45. An actinomycetoma is a mycetoma caused by filamentous branching bacteria. The actinomycetoma granule is composed of tissue elements and gram-positive bacilli and bacillary chains or filaments (1 µm in diameter). The most common causes of actinomycetoma are *Nocardia asteroides, Nocardia brasiliensis, Streptomyces somaliensis,* and *Actinomadura madurae. N brasiliensis* may be acid-fast. These and other pathogenic actinomycetes are differentiated by biochemical tests and chromatographic analysis of cell wall components. Actinomycetomas respond well to various combinations of streptomycin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and dapsone if therapy is begun early before extensive damage has occurred.

Oftentimes students are confused by the terms, Actinomycetes and Actinomycosis. The former have been described above; the latter is an infection caused by members of the anaerobic gram positive genus, *Actinomyces. Actinomyces* species are described in more detail in Chapter 22. The disease Actinomycosis is discussed below.

ACTINOMYCOSIS

Actinomycosis is a chronic suppurative and granulomatous infection that produces pyogenic lesions with interconnecting sinus tracts that contain granules composed of microcolonies of the bacteria embedded in tissue elements. The etiologic agents are several closely related members of the normal flora of the mouth and gastrointestinal tract. Most cases are due to *Actinomyces israelii, Actinomyces naeslundii,* and related anaerobic or facultative bacteria. Based on the site of involvement, the three common forms are cervicofacial, thoracic, and abdominal actinomycosis. Regardless of site, infection is initiated by trauma that introduces these endogenous bacteria into the mucosa.

Often, in addition to the primary agent of actinomycosis, there are concomitant bacteria present. Some of these are relatively fastidious gram-negative bacilli such as *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans, Haemophilus aphrophilus, Eikenella corrodens,* and *Capnocytophaga* species. Occasionally, staphylococci, streptococci, or enteric gram-negative bacilli are found.

Morphology & Identification

Most strains of *A israelii* and the other agents of actinomycosis are facultative anaerobes that grow best in an atmosphere with increased carbon dioxide. On enriched medium, such as brain-heart infusion agar, young colonies (24–48 hours) produce gram-positive substrate filaments that fragment into short chains, diphtheroids, and coccobacilli. After a week, these "spider" colonies develop into white, heaped-up "molar tooth" colonies. In thioglycolate broth, *A israelii* grows below the surface in compact colonies. Species are identified based on cell wall chemotype and biochemical reactions.

The sulfur granules found in tissue are yellowish in appearance, up to 1 mm in size, and are composed of macrophages, other tissue cells, fibrin, and the bacteria. Eosinophilic club-shaped enlargements of the bacterial cells often project from the periphery of the granule.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Regardless of the body site, the natural history is similar. The bacteria bridge the mucosal or epithelial surface of the mouth, respiratory tract, or lower gastrointestinal tract-associated with dental caries, gingivitis, surgical complication, or trauma. Aspiration may lead to pulmonary infection. The organisms grow in an anaerobic niche, induce a mixed inflammatory response, and spread with the formation of sinuses, which contain the granules and may drain to the surface. The infection causes swelling and may spread to neighboring organs, including the bones. There is often superinfection with other endogenous bacteria.

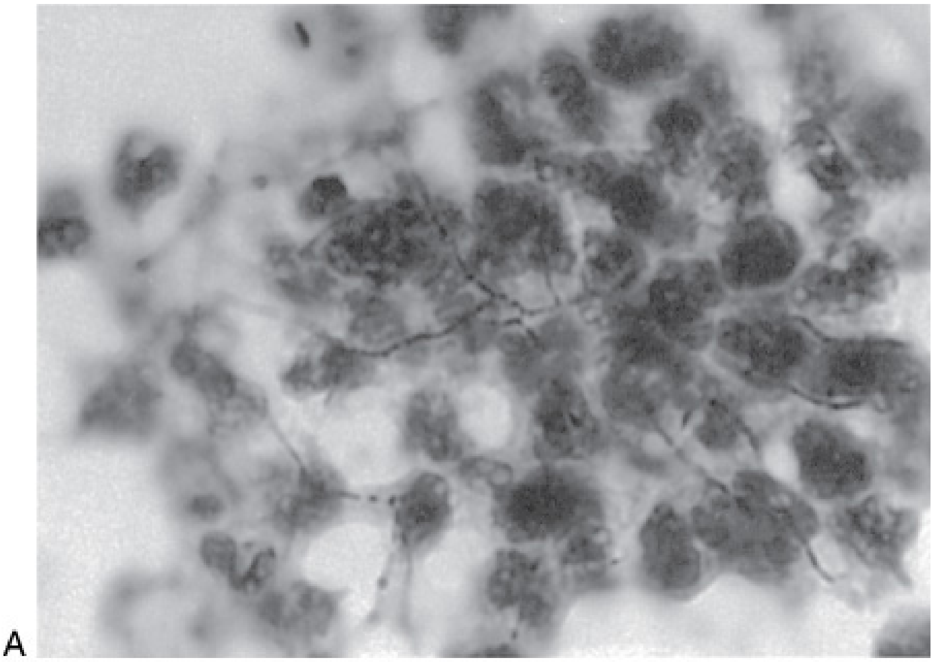
Clinical Findings

Cervicofacial disease presents as a swollen, erythematous process in the jaw area. With progression, the mass becomes fluctuant, producing draining fistulas. The disease will extend to contiguous tissue, bone, and lymph nodes of the head and neck. The symptoms of thoracic actinomycosis resemble those of a subacute pulmonary infection: mild fever, cough, and purulent sputum. Eventually, lung tissue is destroyed, sinus tracts may erupt to the chest wall, and invasion of the ribs may occur. Abdominal actinomycosis often follows a ruptured appendix or an ulcer. In the peritoneal cavity, the pathology is the same, but any of several organs may be involved, including the kidneys, vertebrae, and liver. Genital actinomycosis is a rare occurrence in women that results from colonization of an intrauterine device with subsequent invasion.

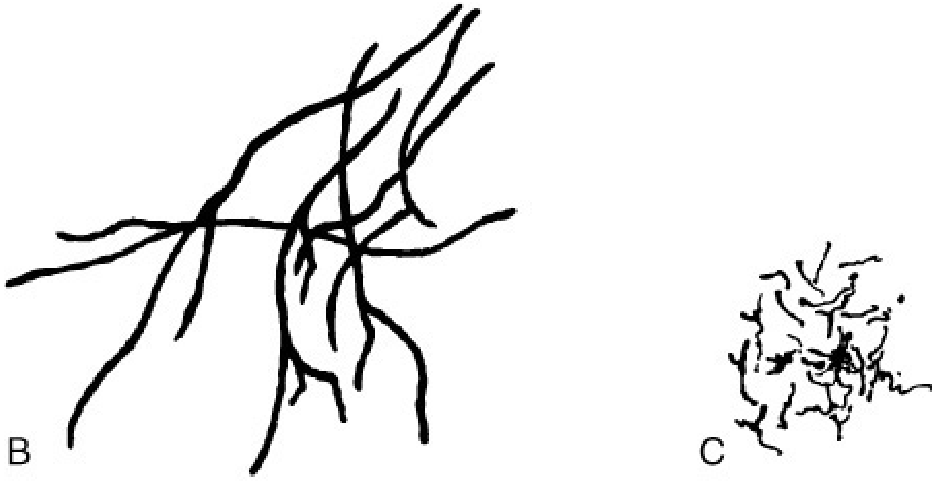
Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Pus from draining sinuses, sputum, or specimens of tissue are examined for the presence of sulfur granules. The granules are hard, lobulated, and composed of tissue and bacterial filaments, which are club-shaped at the periphery (Figure 13–2). Specimens are cultured in thioglycolate broth and on brain-heart infusion blood agar plates, which are incubated anaerobically or under elevated carbon dioxide conditions. Growth is examined for typical morphology and biochemical reactions. The main agents of actinomycosis are catalase-negative, whereas most other actinomycetes are catalase-positive. Surface lesions may also contain other bacterial species.

Figure 13–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Actinomyces israelii. A: Sulfur granule in pus. B: Gram-positive filaments in broth culture. C: Diphtheroid-like and branching bacilli in agar culture.

Treatment

Prolonged administration (6–12 months) of a penicillin is effective in many cases. Clindamycin or erythromycin is effective in penicillin-allergic patients. However, drugs may penetrate the abscesses poorly, and some of the tissue destruction may be irreversible. Surgical excision and drainage may also be required.

Epidemiology

Because *A israelii* and the related agents of actinomycosis are endogenous members of the bacterial flora, they cannot be eliminated. Some individuals with recurrent infections are given prophylactic penicillin, especially prior to dental procedures.

REFERENCES

Aerobic and facultative gram-positive bacilli. In *Koneman's Color Atlas and Textbook of Diagnostic Microbiology*, 6th ed. Winn WC Jr et al (editors). Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2006, pp. 765–857.

Funke G et al: Clinical microbiology of coryneform bacteria. Clin Microbiol Rev 1997;10:125. [PMID: 8993861]

Funke G, Bernard KA: Coryneform gram-positive rods. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Lorber B: Listeriosis. Clin Infect Dis 1997;24:1. [PMID: 8994747]

Reboli AC, Farrar WE: *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae:* an occupational pathogen. Clin Microbiol Rev 1989;2:354. [PMID: 2680056]

Russo TA: Agents of actinomycosis. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Saubolle M and Sussland D: Nocardiosis: Review of clinical and laboratory experience. J Clin Microbiol 2003;41:4497.

Sorrell TC, Iredell JR, Mitchell DH: *Nocardia* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Southwick FS, Purich DL: Intracellular pathogenesis of listeriosis. N Engl J Med 1996;334:770. [PMID: 8592552]

Note: Large images and tables on this page may necessitate printing in landscape mode.

Introduction

The staphylococci are gram-positive spherical cells, usually arranged in grape-like irregular clusters. They grow readily on many types of media and are active metabolically, fermenting carbohydrates and producing pigments that vary from white to deep yellow. Some are members of the normal flora of the skin and mucous membranes of humans; others cause suppuration, abscess formation, a variety of pyogenic infections, and even fatal septicemia. The pathogenic staphylococci often hemolyze blood, coagulate plasma, and produce a variety of extracellular enzymes and toxins. The most common type of food poisoning is caused by a heat-stable staphylococcal enterotoxin. Staphylococci rapidly develop resistance to many antimicrobial agents and present difficult therapeutic problems.

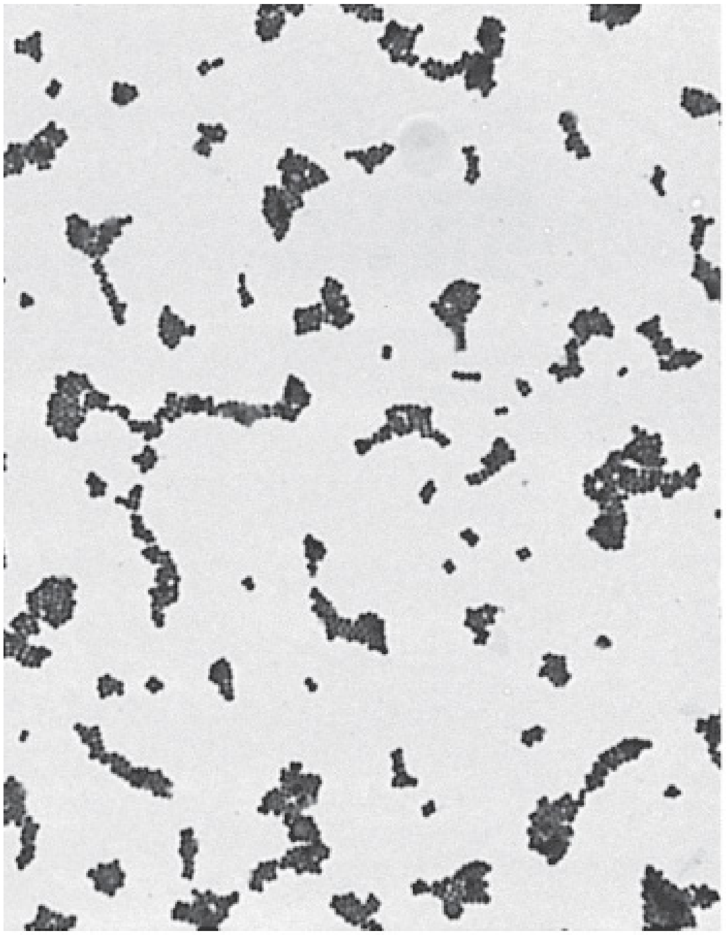
The genus *Staphylococcus* has at least 35 species. The three main species of clinical importance are *Staphylococcus aureus, Staphylococcus epidermidis,* and *Staphylococcus saprophyticus. Staphylococcus aureus* is coagulase-positive, which differentiates it from the other species. *S aureus* is a major pathogen for humans. Almost every person will have some type of *S aureus* infection during a lifetime, ranging in severity from food poisoning or minor skin infections to severe life-threatening infections. The coagulase-negative staphylococci are normal human flora and sometimes cause infection, often associated with implanted appliances and devices, especially in very young, old, and immunocompromised patients. Approximately 75% of these infections caused by coagulase-negative staphylococci are due to *S epidermidis;* infections due to *Staphylococcus lugdunensis, Staphylococcus warneri, Staphylococcus hominis,* and other species are less common. *S saprophyticus* is a relatively common cause of urinary tract infections in young women. Other species are important in veterinary medicine.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Staphylococci are spherical cells about 1 µm in diameter arranged in irregular clusters (Figure 14–1). Single cocci, pairs, tetrads, and chains are also seen in liquid cultures. Young cocci stain strongly gram-positive; on aging, many cells become gram-negative. Staphylococci are nonmotile and do not form spores. Under the influence of drugs like penicillin, staphylococci are lysed.

Figure 14–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Gram stain of *Staphylococcus aureus* showing gram-positive cocci in pairs, tetrads, and clusters.

Micrococcus species often resemble staphylococci. They are found free-living in the environment and form regular packets of four or eight cocci. Their colonies can be yellow, red, or orange.

CULTURE

Staphylococci grow readily on most bacteriologic media under aerobic or microaerophilic conditions. They grow most rapidly at 37 °C but form pigment best at room temperature (20–25 °C). Colonies on solid media are round, smooth, raised, and glistening. *S aureus* usually forms gray to deep golden yellow colonies. *S epidermidis* colonies usually are gray to white on primary isolation; many colonies develop pigment only upon prolonged incubation. No pigment is produced anaerobically or in broth. Various degrees of hemolysis are produced by *S aureus* and occasionally by other species. *Peptostreptococcus* species, which are anaerobic cocci, often resemble staphylococci in morphology.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

The staphylococci produce catalase, which differentiates them from the streptococci. Staphylococci slowly ferment many carbohydrates, producing lactic acid but not gas. Proteolytic activity varies greatly from one strain to another. Pathogenic staphylococci produce many extracellular substances, which are discussed below.

Staphylococci are relatively resistant to drying, heat (they withstand 50 °C for 30 minutes), and 9% sodium chloride but are readily inhibited by certain chemicals, eg, 3% hexachlorophene.

Staphylococci are variably sensitive to many antimicrobial drugs. Resistance falls into several classes:

1. β-Lactamase production is common, is under plasmid control, and makes the organisms resistant to many penicillins (penicillin G, ampicillin, ticarcillin, piperacillin, and similar drugs). The plasmids are transmitted by transduction and perhaps also by conjugation.

2. Resistance to nafcillin (and to methicillin and oxacillin) is independent of β-lactamase production. The *mecA* gene for nafcillin resistance resides on the chromosome, and the gene encodes a low-affinity penicillin binding protein (PBP2 or PBP2a).

3. In the United States, *S aureus* and *S lugdunensis* are considered to be susceptible to vancomycin if the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) is ≤ 2 μg/mL; of intermediate susceptibility if the MIC is 4–8 μg/mL; and resistant if the MIC is ≥ 16 μg/mL. Strains of *S aureus* with intermediate susceptibility to vancomycin have been isolated in Japan, the United States, and several other countries. These are often known as vancomycin-intermediate *S aureus,* or "VISA." They generally have been isolated from patients with complex infections who have received prolonged vancomycin therapy. Often there has been vancomycin treatment failure. The mechanism of resistance is associated with increased cell wall synthesis and alterations in the cell wall and is not due to the *van* genes found in enterococci. *S aureus* strains of intermediate susceptibility to vancomycin usually are nafcillin-resistant but generally are susceptible to oxazolidinones and to quinupristin/dalfopristin.

4. Since 2002, several isolates of vancomycin-resistant *S aureus* (VRSA) strains were isolated from patients in the United States. The isolates contained the vancomycin resistance gene *vanA* from enterococci (see Chapter 15) and the nafcillin resistance gene *mecA* (see above). Both of the initial VRSA strains were susceptible to other antibiotics. Vancomycin resistance in *S aureus* is of major concern worldwide.

5. Plasmid-mediated resistance to tetracyclines, erythromycins, aminoglycosides, and other drugs is frequent in staphylococci.

6. "Tolerance" implies that staphylococci are inhibited by a drug but not killed by it—ie, there is great difference between minimal inhibitory and minimal lethal concentrations of an antimicrobial drug. Patients with endocarditis caused by a tolerant *S aureus* may have a prolonged clinical course compared with patients who have endocarditis caused by a fully susceptible *S aureus.* Tolerance can at times be attributed to lack of activation of autolytic enzymes in the cell wall.

VARIATION

A culture of staphylococci contains some bacteria that differ from the bulk of the population in expression of colony characteristics (colony size, pigment, hemolysis), in enzyme elaboration, in drug resistance, and in pathogenicity. In vitro, the expression of such characteristics is influenced by growth conditions: When nafcillin-resistant *S aureus* is incubated at 37 °C on blood agar, one in 10^7 organisms expresses nafcillin resistance; when it is incubated at 30 °C on agar containing 2–5% sodium chloride, one in 10^3 organisms expresses nafcillin resistance.

Antigenic Structure

Staphylococci contain antigenic polysaccharides and proteins as well as other substances important in cell wall structure. Peptidoglycan, a polysaccharide polymer containing linked subunits, provides the rigid exoskeleton of the cell wall. Peptidoglycan is destroyed by strong acid or exposure to lysozyme. It is important in the pathogenesis of infection: It elicits production of interleukin-1 (endogenous pyrogen) and opsonic antibodies by monocytes, and it can be a chemoattractant for polymorphonuclear leukocytes, have endotoxin-like activity, and activate complement.

Teichoic acids, which are polymers of glycerol or ribitol phosphate, are linked to the peptidoglycan and can be antigenic. Antiteichoic acid antibodies detectable by gel diffusion may be found in patients with active endocarditis due to *S aureus.*

Protein A is a cell wall component of many *S aureus* strains that binds to the Fc portion of IgG molecules except IgG_3. The Fab portion of IgG bound to protein A is free to combine with a specific antigen. Protein A has become an important reagent in immunology and diagnostic laboratory technology; for example, protein A with attached IgG molecules directed against a specific bacterial antigen will agglutinate bacteria that have that antigen ("coagglutination").

Some *S aureus* strains have capsules, which inhibit phagocytosis by polymorphonuclear leukocytes unless specific antibodies are present. Most strains of *S aureus* have coagulase, or clumping factor, on the cell wall surface; coagulase binds nonenzymatically to fibrinogen, yielding aggregation of the bacteria.

Serologic tests have limited usefulness in identifying staphylococci.

Enzymes & Toxins

Staphylococci can produce disease both through their ability to multiply and spread widely in tissues and through their production of many extracellular substances. Some of these substances are enzymes; others are considered to be toxins, though they may function as enzymes. Many of the toxins are under the genetic control of plasmids; some may be under both chromosomal and extrachromosomal control; and for others the mechanism of genetic control is not well defined.

CATALASE

Staphylococci produce catalase, which converts hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen. The catalase test differentiates the staphylococci, which are positive, from the streptococci, which are negative.

COAGULASE AND CLUMPING FACTOR

S aureus produces coagulase, an enzyme-like protein that clots oxalated or citrated plasma. Coagulase binds to prothrombin; together they become enzymatically active and initiate fibrin polymerization. Coagulase may deposit fibrin on the surface of staphylococci, perhaps altering their ingestion by phagocytic cells or their destruction within such cells. Coagulase production is considered synonymous with invasive pathogenic potential.

Clumping factor is a surface *S aureus* compound that is responsible for adherence of the organisms to fibrinogen and fibrin. When mixed with plasma, *S aureus* forms clumps. Clumping factor is distinct from coagulase.

OTHER ENZYMES

Other enzymes produced by staphylococci include a hyaluronidase, or spreading factor; a staphylokinase resulting in fibrinolysis but acting much more slowly than streptokinase; proteinases; lipases; and β-lactamase.

EXOTOXINS

The α-toxin is a heterogeneous protein that acts on a broad spectrum of eukaryotic cell membranes. The α-toxin is a potent hemolysin. The β-toxin degrades sphingomyelin and therefore is toxic for many kinds of cells, including human red blood cells. The δ-toxin is heterogeneous and dissociates into subunits in nonionic detergents. It disrupts biologic membranes and may have a role in *S aureus* diarrheal diseases. The γ hemolysin refers to three proteins that interact with the two proteins comprising the Panton-Valentine leukocidin (see below) to form six potential two-component toxins. All six of these protein toxins are capable of efficiently lysing white blood cells by causing pore formation in the cellular membranes that increase cation permeability.

LEUKOCIDIN

This toxin of *S aureus* has two components. It can kill white blood cells of humans and rabbits. The two components act synergistically on the white blood cell membrane as described above for γ toxin. This toxin is an important virulence factor in community associated methicillin resistant *S aureus* infections.

EXFOLIATIVE TOXINS

These epidermolytic toxins of *S aureus* are two distinct proteins of the same molecular weight. Epidermolytic toxin A is a chromosomal gene product and is heat-stable (resists boiling for 20 minutes). Epidermolytic toxin B is plasmid-mediated and heat-labile. The epidermolytic toxins yield the generalized desquamation of the staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome by dissolving the mucopolysaccharide matrix of the epidermis. The toxins are superantigens.

TOXIC SHOCK SYNDROME TOXIN

Most *S aureus* strains isolated from patients with toxic shock syndrome produce a toxin called toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1), which is the same as enterotoxin F. TSST-1 is the prototypical superantigen (see Chapter 8). TSST-1 binds to MHC class II molecules, yielding T cell stimulation, which promotes the protean manifestations of the toxic shock syndrome. The toxin is associated with fever, shock, and multisystem involvement, including a desquamative skin rash. The gene for TSST-1 is found in about 20% of *S aureus* isolates.

ENTEROTOXINS

There are multiple (A–E, G–I, K–M) enterotoxins. Approximately 50% of *S aureus* strains can produce one or more of them. Like TSST-1, the enterotoxins are superantigens. The enterotoxins are heat-stable and resistant to the action of gut enzymes. An important cause of food poisoning, enterotoxins are produced when *S aureus* grows in carbohydrate and protein foods. Ingestion of 25 μg of enterotoxin B results in vomiting and diarrhea. The emetic effect of enterotoxin is probably the result of central nervous system stimulation (vomiting center) after the toxin acts on neural receptors in the gut.

The exfoliative toxins, TSST-1, and the enterotoxin genes are on a chromosomal element called a pathogenicity island. It interacts with accessory genetic elements—bacteriophages—to produce the toxins.

Pathogenesis

Staphylococci, particularly *S epidermidis,* are members of the normal flora of the human skin and respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts. Nasal carriage of *S aureus* occurs in 20–50% of humans. Staphylococci are also found regularly on clothing, bed linens, and other fomites in human environments.

The pathogenic capacity of a given strain of *S aureus* is the combined effect of extracellular factors and toxins together with the invasive properties of the strain. At one end of the disease spectrum is staphylococcal food poisoning, attributable solely to the ingestion of preformed enterotoxin; at the other end are staphylococcal bacteremia and disseminated abscesses in all organs.

Pathogenic, invasive *S aureus* produces coagulase and tends to produce a yellow pigment and to be hemolytic. Nonpathogenic, noninvasive staphylococci such as *S epidermidis* are coagulase-negative and tend to be nonhemolytic. Such organisms rarely produce suppuration but may infect orthopedic or cardiovascular prostheses or cause disease in immunosuppressed persons. *S saprophyticus* is typically nonpigmented, novobiocin-resistant, and nonhemolytic; it causes urinary tract infections in young women.

Regulation of Virulence Determinants

The expression of staphylococcal virulence determinants is regulated by several systems that are sensitive to environmental signals. These systems consist of two proteins (two component systems), a sensor kinase, and a response regulator. Binding of sensors to specific extracellular ligands, or to a receptor, results in a phosphorylation cascade that leads to binding of the regulator to specific DNA sequences, which ultimately leads to activation of transcription-regulating functions. There are several well-described two-component regulatory systems in *S aureus*. These include *agr*, the best described, *sae RS*, *srrAB*, *arlSR*, and *lytRS*.

The accessory gene regulator (*agr*) is essential in quorum-sensing control of gene expression. It controls the preferential expression of surface adhesins (protein A, coagulase, and fibronectin binding protein) and production of exoproteins (toxins such as TSST-1) depending upon the growth phase (and hence bacterial density).

At low cell density, the promoter P2 is off and transcriptions of transmembrane protein, AgrB, peptide precursor, AgrD, transmembrane sensor, AgrC and transcription regulator, Agr A, are at low levels. As cell density increases during stationary growth phase, the AgrC sensor activates the regulator AgrA. AgrA is a DNA binding protein that activates promoter P2 and promoter P3. Promoter P3 initiates transcription of δ-hemolysin and an effector called RNAIII, which downregulates the expression of surface adhesins and activates secretion of exoproteins at both the transcriptional and translational levels. *Agr* is also positively controlled by a DNA-binding protein called SarA (encoded by *sar*) and possibly by other regulatory systems.

At least four additional two-component regulatory systems have been shown to affect virulence gene expression. These are called *sae*, *S aureus* exoproteins; *srrAB*, staphylococcal respiratory response; *arlS*, autolysis-related locus sensor; and *lytRS*. *Sae* regulates gene expression at the transcriptional level and is essential for production of alpha toxin, beta hemolysins and coagulase. Its activity is independent from that of *agr. SsrAB* is important for regulation of virulence factor expression that is influenced by environmental oxygen. The *arlSR* locus is important to the control of autolysis and also decreases the activation of the *agr* locus. The *lytRS* locus is also involved in autolysis.

Pathology

The prototype of a staphylococcal lesion is the furuncle or other localized abscess. Groups of *S aureus* established in a hair follicle lead to tissue necrosis (dermonecrotic factor). Coagulase is produced and coagulates fibrin around the lesion and within the lymphatics, resulting in formation of a wall that limits the process and is reinforced by the accumulation of inflammatory cells and, later, fibrous tissue. Within the center of the lesion, liquefaction of the necrotic tissue occurs (enhanced by delayed hypersensitivity), and the abscess "points" in the direction of least resistance. Drainage of the liquid center necrotic tissue is followed by slow filling of the cavity with granulation tissue and eventual healing.

Focal suppuration (abscess) is typical of staphylococcal infection. From any one focus, organisms may spread via the lymphatics and bloodstream to other parts of the body. Suppuration within veins, associated with thrombosis, is a common feature of such dissemination. In osteomyelitis, the primary focus of *S aureus* growth is typically in a terminal blood vessel of the metaphysis of a long bone, leading to necrosis of bone and chronic suppuration. *S aureus* may cause pneumonia, meningitis, empyema, endocarditis, or sepsis with suppuration in any organ. Staphylococci of low invasiveness are involved in many skin infections (eg, acne, pyoderma, or impetigo). Anaerobic cocci (peptostreptococcus) participate in mixed anaerobic infections.

Staphylococci also cause disease through the elaboration of toxins, without apparent invasive infection. Bullous exfoliation, the scalded skin syndrome, is caused by the production of exfoliative toxins. Toxic shock syndrome is associated with TSST-1.

Clinical Findings

A localized staphylococcal infection appears as a "pimple," hair follicle infection, or abscess. There is usually an intense, localized, painful inflammatory reaction that undergoes central suppuration and heals quickly when the pus is drained. The wall of fibrin and cells around the core of the abscess tends to prevent spread of the organisms and should not be broken down by manipulation or trauma.

S aureus infection can also result from direct contamination of a wound, eg, postoperative staphylococcal wound infection or infection following trauma (chronic osteomyelitis subsequent to an open fracture, meningitis following skull fracture).

If *S aureus* disseminates and bacteremia ensues, endocarditis, acute hematogenous osteomyelitis, meningitis, or pulmonary infection can result. The clinical presentations resemble those seen with other bloodstream infections. Secondary localization within an organ or system is accompanied by the symptoms and signs of organ dysfunction and intense focal suppuration.

Food poisoning due to staphylococcal enterotoxin is characterized by a short incubation period (1–8 hours); violent nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea; and rapid convalescence. There is no fever.

Toxic shock syndrome is manifested by an abrupt onset of high fever, vomiting, diarrhea, myalgias, a scarlatiniform rash, and hypotension with cardiac and renal failure in the most severe cases. It often occurs within 5 days after the onset of menses in young women who use tampons, but it also occurs in children or in men with staphylococcal wound infections. The syndrome can recur. Toxic shock syndrome-associated *S aureus* can be found in the vagina, on tampons, in wounds or other localized infections, or in the throat but virtually never in the bloodstream.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Surface swab pus, blood, tracheal aspirate, or spinal fluid for culture, depending upon the localization of the process.

SMEARS

Typical staphylococci appear as gram positive cocci in clusters in Gram-stained smears of pus or sputum. It is not possible to distinguish saprophytic *(S epidermidis)* from pathogenic *(S aureus)* organisms on smears.

CULTURE

Specimens planted on blood agar plates give rise to typical colonies in 18 hours at 37 °C, but hemolysis and pigment production may not occur until several days later and are optimal at room temperature. *S aureus* but not other staphylococci ferment mannitol. Specimens contaminated with a mixed flora can be cultured on media containing 7.5% NaCl; the salt inhibits most other normal flora but not *S aureus*. Mannitol salt agar or commercially available chromogenic media are used to screen for nasal carriers of *S aureus* and patients with cystic fibrosis.

CATALASE TEST

This test is used to detect the presence of cytochrome oxidase enzymes. A drop of 3% hydrogen peroxide solution is placed on a slide, and a small amount of the bacterial growth is placed in the solution. The formation of bubbles (the release of oxygen) indicates a positive test.

COAGULASE TEST

Citrated rabbit (or human) plasma diluted 1:5 is mixed with an equal volume of broth culture or growth from colonies on agar and incubated at 37 °C. A tube of plasma mixed with sterile broth is included as a control. If clots form in 1–4 hours, the test is positive.

Coagulase-positive staphylococci are considered pathogenic for humans; however, coagulase-positive staphylococci of dogs *(Staphylococcus intermedius)* and dolphins *(Staphylococcus delphini)* rarely cause disease in humans. Infections of prosthetic devices can be caused by organisms of the coagulase-negative *S epidermidis* group.

SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Broth microdilution or disk diffusion susceptibility testing should be done routinely on staphylococcal isolates from clinically significant infections. Resistance to penicillin G can be predicted by a positive test for β-lactamase; approximately 90% of *S aureus* produce β-lactamase. Resistance to nafcillin (and oxacillin and methicillin) occurs in about 35% of *S aureus* and approximately 75% of *S epidermidis* isolates. Nafcillin resistance correlates with the presence of *mec*A, the gene that codes for a penicillin-binding protein (PBP 2a) not affected by these drugs. The gene can be detected using the polymerase chain reaction. Most clinical laboratories use a phenotypic method such as an oxacillin screening agar plate. Staphylococci that grow on Mueller-Hinton agar containing 4% NaCl and 6 μg/mL of oxacillin typically are *mec*A-positive and nafcillin-resistant. Alternatively, an assay for the *mecA* gene product, PBP 2a, is commercially available and is much more rapid than PCR for *mecA* or than testing for resistance using growth on oxacillin-containing salt agar.

SEROLOGIC AND TYPING TESTS

Serologic tests for diagnosis of *S aureus* infections have little practical value.

Antibiotic susceptibility patterns are helpful in tracing *S aureus* infections and in determining if multiple *S epidermidis* isolates from blood cultures represent bacteremia due to the same strain, seeded by a nidus of infection.

Molecular typing techniques have been used to document the spread of epidemic disease-producing clones of *S aureus.* Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and multi-locus sequence typing are highly discriminatory.

Treatment

Most persons harbor staphylococci on the skin and in the nose or throat. Even if the skin can be cleared of staphylococci (eg, in eczema), reinfection by droplets will occur almost immediately. Because pathogenic organisms are commonly spread from one lesion (eg, a furuncle) to other areas of the skin by fingers and clothing, scrupulous local antisepsis is important to control recurrent furunculosis.

Serious multiple skin infections (acne, furunculosis) occur most often in adolescents. Similar skin infections occur in patients receiving prolonged courses of corticosteroids. In acne, lipases of staphylococci and corynebacteria liberate fatty acids from lipids and thus cause tissue irritation. Tetracyclines are used for long-term treatment.

Abscesses and other closed suppurating lesions are treated by drainage, which is essential, and antimicrobial therapy. Many antimicrobial drugs have some effect against staphylococci in vitro. However, it is difficult to eradicate pathogenic staphylococci from infected persons, because the organisms rapidly develop resistance to many antimicrobial drugs and the drugs cannot act in the central necrotic part of a suppurative lesion. It is also difficult to eradicate the *S aureus* carrier state.

Acute hematogenous osteomyelitis responds well to antimicrobial drugs. In chronic and recurrent osteomyelitis, surgical drainage and removal of dead bone is accompanied by long-term administration of appropriate drugs, but eradication of the infecting staphylococci is difficult. Hyperbaric oxygen and the application of vascularized myocutaneous flaps have aided healing in chronic osteomyelitis.

Bacteremia, endocarditis, pneumonia, and other severe infections due to *S aureus* require prolonged intravenous therapy with a β-lactamase-resistant penicillin. Vancomycin is often reserved for use with nafcillin-resistant staphylococci. If the infection is found to be due to non-β-lactamase-producing *S aureus,* penicillin G is the drug of choice, but only a small percentage of *S aureus* strains are susceptible to penicillin G.

S epidermidis infections are difficult to cure because they occur in prosthetic devices where the bacteria can sequester themselves in a biofilm. *S epidermidis* is more often resistant to antimicrobial drugs than is *S aureus;* approximately 75% of *S epidermidis* strains are nafcillin-resistant.

Because of the frequency of drug-resistant strains, meaningful staphylococcal isolates should be tested for antimicrobial susceptibility to help in the choice of systemic drugs. Resistance to drugs of the erythromycin group tends to emerge so rapidly that these drugs should not be used singly for treatment of chronic infection. Drug resistance (to penicillins, tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, erythromycins, etc) determined by plasmids can be transmitted among staphylococci by transduction and perhaps by conjugation.

Penicillin G-resistant *S aureus* strains from clinical infections always produce penicillinase. They constitute about 90% of *S aureus* isolates in communities in the United States. They are often susceptible to β-lactamase-resistant penicillins, cephalosporins, or vancomycin. Nafcillin resistance is independent of β-lactamase production, and its clinical incidence varies greatly in different countries and at different times. The selection pressure of β-lactamase-resistant antimicrobial drugs may not be the sole determinant for resistance to these drugs: For example, in Denmark, nafcillin-resistant *S aureus* comprised 40% of isolates in 1970 and only 10% in 1980, without notable changes in the use of nafcillin or similar drugs. In the United

States, nafcillin-resistant *S aureus* accounted for only 0.1% of isolates in 1970 but in the 1990s constituted 20–30% of isolates from infections in some hospitals. In 2003, 60% of nosocomial *S aureus* among intensive care patients were resistant to nafcillin. Fortunately, *S aureus* strains of intermediate susceptibility to vancomycin have been relatively uncommon, and the isolation of vancomycin-resistant strains has been rare.

Newer antimicrobial agents such as linezolide, daptomycin, and quinupristin/dalfopristin are generally reserved for patients with serious staphylococcal or enterococcal infections that are resistant to the more traditional agents, who are failing clinically or who are highly allergic.

Epidemiology & Control

Staphylococci are ubiquitous human parasites. The chief sources of infection are shedding human lesions, fomites contaminated from such lesions, and the human respiratory tract and skin. Contact spread of infection has assumed added importance in hospitals, where a large proportion of the staff and patients carry antibiotic-resistant staphylococci in the nose or on the skin. Although cleanliness, hygiene, and aseptic management of lesions can control the spread of staphylococci from lesions, few methods are available to prevent the wide dissemination of staphylococci from carriers. Aerosols (eg, glycols) and ultraviolet irradiation of air have little effect.

In hospitals, the areas at highest risk for severe staphylococcal infections are the newborn nursery, intensive care units, operating rooms, and cancer chemotherapy wards. Massive introduction of "epidemic" pathogenic *S aureus* into these areas may lead to serious clinical disease. Personnel with active *S aureus* lesions and carriers may have to be excluded from these areas. In such individuals, the application of topical antiseptics to nasal or perineal carriage sites may diminish shedding of dangerous organisms. Rifampin coupled with a second oral antistaphylococcal drug sometimes provides long-term suppression and possibly cure of nasal carriage; this form of therapy is usually reserved for major problems of staphylococcal carriage, because staphylococci can rapidly develop resistance to rifampin.

To diminish transmission within the hospital setting, high risk patients, such as those in intensive care units and patients transferred from chronic care facilities where prevalence is high, are frequently surveyed for anterior nares colonization. Patients who test positive by culture or PCR are placed upon contact precautions so as to minimize spread on the hands of health care workers. Health care workers should strictly adhere to infection control policies by wearing gloves and washing hands before and after patient contact.

Until relatively recently, methicillin resistant *S aureus* was confined primarily to the hospital setting. Worldwide dissemination of a few distinct clones of community associated MRSA (CA-MRSA) has resulted in an increase in skin and soft tissue infections and necrotizing pneumonia, primarily in younger patients without known risk factors for MRSA acquisition. These strains appear to be more virulent. CA-MRSA isolates are characterized by the presence of the Panton-Valentine leukocidin and the presence of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* type IV, which may explain the increased susceptibility to other antimicrobial agents compared to health care associated MRSA strains.

References

Bronner S et al: Regulation of virulence determinants in *Staphylococcus aureus*: Complexity and applications. FEMS Microbiol Rev 2004;28:183.

Gram-positive cocci, Part I: Staphylococci and related gram-positive cocci. In *Koneman's Color Atlas and Textbook of Diagnostic Microbiology*, 6th ed. Winn WC Jr et al (editors). Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2006, pp. 623–71. Lowy FD: *Staphylococcus aureus* infections. N Engl J Med 1998;339:520. [PMID: 9709046]

Moreillon P et al: *Staphylococcus aureus* (including staphylococcal toxic shock). In *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, 2006, p. 2324.

Novick RP, Schlievert P, Ruzin A: Pathogenicity and resistance islands of staphylococci. Microbes Infect 2001;3:585. [PMID: 11418332]

Waldvogel FA: *Staphylococcus aureus* (including staphylococcal toxic shock). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

THE STREPTOCOCCI: INTRODUCTION

The streptococci are gram-positive spherical bacteria that characteristically form pairs or chains during growth. They are widely distributed in nature. Some are members of the normal human flora; others are associated with important human diseases attributable in part to infection by streptococci, in part to sensitization to them. Streptococci elaborate a variety of extracellular substances and enzymes.

The streptococci are a large and heterogeneous group of bacteria and no one system suffices to classify them. Yet, understanding the classification is key to understanding their medical importance.

CLASSIFICATION OF STREPTOCOCCI

The classification of streptococci into major categories has been based on a series of observations over many years: (1) colony morphology and hemolytic reactions on blood agar; (2) serologic specificity of the cell wall group-specific substance and other cell wall or capsular antigens; (3) biochemical reactions and resistance to physical and chemical factors; and (4) ecologic features. Molecular genetics have also been used to study the streptococci. Combinations of the above methods have permitted the classification of streptococci for purposes of clinical and epidemiologic convenience, but as the knowledge evolved, new methods have been introduced with the result that several classification systems have been described. In some cases, different species names have been used to describe the same organisms; in other instances, some members of the same species have been included in another species or classified separately. The genus enterococcus, for example, now includes some species previously classified as group D streptococci. The classification of streptococci described in the following paragraphs and summarized in Table 151 is one logical approach.

Table 151. Characteristics of Medically Important Streptococci.

Streptococcus pyogenes
A
Beta
Throat, skin
Large colonies (> 0.5 mm), PYR[3] test positive, inhibited by bacitracin

Pharyngitis, impetigo, rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis
Streptococcus agalactiae
B
Beta
Female genital tract
Hippurate hydrolysis, CAMP-positive[4]

Neonatal sepsis and meningitis

Streptococcus dysgalactiae subspecies *equisimilis;* others

C, G

Beta (human) infections), alpha, none

Throat

Large (> 0.5 mm) colonies

Pharyngitis, pyogenic infections similar to group A streptococci

Enterococcus faecalis (and other enterococci)

D

None, alpha

Colon

Growth in presence of bile, hydrolyze esculin, growth in 6.5% NaCl, PYR-positive

Abdominal abscess, urinary tract infection, endocarditis

Streptococcus bovis (non-enterococcus)

D

None

Colon

Growth in presence of bile, hydrolyze esculin, no growth in 6.5% NaCl, degrades starch

Endocarditis, common blood isolate in colon cancer

Streptococcus anginosus group (*S anginosus, S intermedius, S constellatus, S milleri* group)

F (A, C, G) and untypable

Alpha, beta, none

Throat, colon, female genital tract

Small (< 0.5 mm) colony variants of beta-hemolytic species. Group A are bacitracin-resistant and PYR-negative. Carbohydrate fermentation patterns

Pyogenic infections, including brain abscesses

Viridans streptococci (many species)

Usually not typed or untypable

Alpha, none

Mouth, throat, colon, female genital tract

Optochin-resistant. Colonies not soluble in bile. Carbohydrate fermentation patterns

Dental caries *(S mutans),* endocarditis, abscesses (with many other bacterial species)

Streptococcus pneumoniae

None

Alpha

Throat

Susceptible to optochin. Colonies soluble in bile, quellung reaction-positive

Pneumonia, meningitis, endocarditis

Peptostreptococcus (many species)

None

None, alpha

Mouth, colon, female genital tract

Obligate anaerobes

Abscesses (with multiple other bacterial species)

Name	Group-Specific Substance[1]	Hemolysis[2]	Habitat	Important Laboratory Criteria	Common and Important Diseases

[1] Lancefield classification.

[2] Hemolysis observed on 5% sheep blood agar after overnight incubation.

[3] Hydrolysis of L-pyrrolidonyl-2-naphthylamide ("PYR").

[4] Christie, Atkins, Munch-Peterson test.

HEMOLYSIS

Many streptococci are able to hemolyze red blood cells in vitro in varying degrees. Complete disruption of erythrocytes with clearing of the blood around the bacterial growth is called β hemolysis. Incomplete lysis of erythrocytes with reduction of hemoglobin and the formation of green pigment is called α hemolysis. Other streptococci are non-hemolytic (sometimes called gamma hemolysis).

The hemolysis patterns of the streptococci of medical importance to humans are shown in Table 151. The classification of hemolytic patterns is used primarily with the streptococci and not with other bacteria that cause disease and typically produce a variety of hemolysins.

GROUP-SPECIFIC SUBSTANCE (LANCEFIELD CLASSIFICATION)

This carbohydrate is contained in the cell wall of many streptococci and forms the basis of serologic grouping into Lancefield groups AH and KU. The serologic specificity of the group-specific carbohydrate is determined by an amino sugar. For group A streptococci, this is rhamnose-*N*-acetylglucosamine; for group B, it is rhamnose-glucosamine polysaccharide; for group C, it is rhamnose-*N*-acetylgalactosamine; for group D, it is glycerol teichoic acid containing D-alanine and glucose; and for group F, it is glucopyranosyl-*N*-acetylgalactosamine.

Extracts of group-specific antigen for grouping streptococci are prepared by a variety of methods: extraction of centrifuged culture treated with hot hydrochloric acid, nitrous acid, or formamide; by enzymatic lysis of streptococcal cells (eg, with pepsin or trypsin); or by autoclaving of cell suspensions. These extracts contain the carbohydrate groupspecific substance that yield precipitin reactions specific antisera. This permits arrangement of many streptococci into groups AH and KU. Typing is generally done only for groups A, B, C, F, and G (Table 151), which cause disease in humans and for which there are reagents that allow typing using simple agglutination or color reactions.

CAPSULAR POLYSACCHARIDES

The antigenic specificity of the capsular polysaccharides is used to classify *S pneumoniae* into over 90 types and to type the group B streptococci (*S agalactiae*).

BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

Biochemical tests include sugar fermentation reactions, tests for the presence of enzymes, and tests for susceptibility or resistance to certain chemical agents. Biochemical tests are most often used to classify streptococci after the colony growth and hemolytic characteristics have been observed. Biochemical tests are used for species that typically do not react with the commonly used antibody preparations for the group-specific substances, groups A, B, C, F, and G. For example, the viridans streptococci are α-hemolytic or nonhemolytic and do not react with the antibodies commonly used for the Lancefield classification. Speciation of the viridans streptococci requires a battery of biochemical tests.

Many species of streptococci, including *S pyogenes* (group A), *S agalactiae* (group B), and the enterococci (group D), are characterized by combinations of features: colony growth characteristics, hemolysis patterns on blood agar (α hemolysis, β hemolysis, or no hemolysis), antigenic composition of group-specific cell wall substances, and biochemical reactions. *S pneumoniae* (pneumococcus) types are further classified by the antigenic composition of the capsular polysaccharides. The viridans streptococci can be α-hemolytic or nonhemolytic and are generally speciated by biochemical reactions. See Table 151.

STREPTOCOCCI OF PARTICULAR MEDICAL INTEREST

The following streptococci and enterococci are of particular medical relevance.

STREPTOCOCCUS PYOGENES

Most streptococci that contain the group A antigen are *S pyogenes.* It is a prototypical human pathogen. It is used here to illustrate general characteristics of streptococci and specific characteristics of the species. *S pyogenes* is the main human pathogen associated with local or systemic invasion and poststreptococcal immunologic disorders. *S pyogenes* typically produces large (1 cm in diameter) zones of β hemolysis around colonies greater than 0.5 mm in diameter. They are PYR-positive (hydrolysis of L -pyrrolidonyl-2-naphthylamide) and usually are susceptible to bacitracin.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Individual cocci are spherical or ovoid and are arranged in chains (Figure 151). The cocci divide in a plane perpendicular to the long axis of the chain. The members of the chain often have a striking diplococcal appearance, and rod-like forms are occasionally seen. The lengths of the chains vary widely and are conditioned by environmental factors. Streptococci are gram-positive; however, as a culture ages and the bacteria die, they lose their gram-positivity and can appear to be gram-negative; for some streptococci, this can occur after overnight incubation.

Figure 151.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Streptococci grown in broth showing gram-positive cocci in chains.

Most group A strains (Table 151) produce capsules composed of hyaluronic acid. The capsules are most noticeable in very young cultures. They impede phagocytosis. Capsules of other streptococci (eg, *S agalactiae* and *S pneumoniae*) are different. The *S pyogenes* cell wall contains proteins (M, T, R antigens), carbohydrates (group-specific), and peptidoglycans. Hair-like pili project through the capsule of group A streptococci. The pili consist partly of M protein and are covered with lipoteichoic acid. The latter is important in the attachment of streptococci to epithelial cells.

CULTURE

Most streptococci grow in solid media as discoid colonies, usually 12 mm in diameter. *S pyogenes* is β-hemolytic; other species have variable hemolytic characteristics.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Energy is obtained principally from the utilization of glucose with lactic acid as the end product. Growth of streptococci tends to be poor on solid media or in broth unless enriched with blood or tissue fluids. Nutritive requirements vary widely among different species. The human pathogens are most exacting, requiring a variety of growth factors. Growth and hemolysis are aided by incubation in 10% CO_2 . Most pathogenic hemolytic streptococci grow best at 37 C. Most streptococci are facultative anaerobes and grow under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. Peptostreptococci are obligate anaerobes.

VARIATION

Variants of the same streptococcus strain may show different colony forms. This is particularly marked among *S pyogenes* strains, giving rise to either matte or glossy colonies. Matte colonies consist of organisms that produce much M protein and generally are virulent. The *S pyogenes* in glossy colonies tend to produce little M protein and are often not virulent.

Antigenic Structure

M PROTEIN

This substance is a major virulence factor of group A *S pyogenes.* M protein appears as hair-like projections of the streptococcal cell wall. When M protein is present, the streptococci are virulent, and in the absence of M type-specific antibodies, they are able to resist phagocytosis by polymorphonuclear leukocytes. *S pyogenes* that lack M protein are not virulent. Immunity to infection with group A streptococci is related to the presence of type-specific antibodies to M protein. Because there are many, perhaps 150, types of M protein, a person can have repeated infections with group A *S pyogenes* of different M types. Both group C and group G streptococci have genes homologous to the genes for M protein of group A, and M protein has been found on group G streptococci.

The M protein molecule has a rod-like coiled structure that separates functional domains. The structure allows for a large number of sequence changes while maintaining function, and the M protein immunodeterminants, therefore, can readily change. There are two major structural classes of M protein, classes I and II.

It appears that M protein and perhaps other streptococcal cell wall antigens have an important role in the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever. Purified streptococcal cell wall membranes induce antibodies that react with human cardiac sarcolemma; the characteristics of the cross-reactive antigens are not clear. A component of the cell wall of selected M types induces antibodies that react with cardiac muscle tissue. Conserved antigenic domains on the class IM protein cross-react with human cardiac muscle, and the class IM protein may be a virulence determinant for rheumatic fever.

T SUBSTANCE

This antigen has no relationship to virulence of streptococci. Unlike M protein, T substance is acid-labile and heat-labile. It is obtained from streptococci by proteolytic digestion, which rapidly destroys M proteins. T substance permits differentiation of certain types of streptococci by agglutination with specific antisera, while other types share the same T substance. Yet another surface antigen has been called R protein.

NUCLEOPROTEINS

Extraction of streptococci with weak alkali yields mixtures of proteins and other substances of little serologic specificity, called P substances, which probably make up most of the streptococcal cell body.

Toxins & Enzymes

More than 20 extracellular products that are antigenic are elaborated by *S pyogenes,* including the following.

STREPTOKINASE (FIBRINOLYSIN)

Streptokinase is produced by many strains of group A β-hemolytic streptococci. It transforms the plasminogen of human plasma into plasmin, an active proteolytic enzyme that digests fibrin and other proteins. This process of digestion may be interfered with by nonspecific serum inhibitors and by a specific antibody, antistreptokinase. Streptokinase has been given intravenously for treatment of pulmonary emboli, coronary artery, and venous thromboses.

STREPTODORNASE

Streptodornase (streptococcal deoxyribonuclease) depolymerizes DNA. The enzymatic activity can be measured by the decrease in viscosity of known DNA solutions. Purulent exudates owe their viscosity largely to deoxyribonucleoprotein. Mixtures of streptodornase and streptokinase are used in "enzymatic debridement." They help to liquefy exudates and facilitate removal of pus and necrotic tissue; antimicrobial drugs thus gain better access, and infected surfaces recover more quickly. An antibody to DNAse develops after streptococcal infections (normal limit = 100 units), especially after skin infections.

HYALURONIDASE

Hyaluronidase splits hyaluronic acid, an important component of the ground substance of connective tissue. Thus, hyaluronidase aids in spreading infecting microorganisms (spreading factor). Hyaluronidases are antigenic and specific for each bacterial or tissue source. Following infection with hyaluronidase-producing organisms, specific antibodies are found in the serum.

PYROGENIC EXOTOXINS (ERYTHROGENIC TOXIN)

Pyrogenic exotoxins are elaborated by *S pyogenes* . There are three antigenically distinct streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins: A, B, and C. Exotoxin A has been most widely studied. It is produced by group A streptococci that carry a lysogenic phage. The streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins have been associated with streptococcal toxic shock syndrome and scarlet fever. Most strains of group A streptococci isolated from patients with streptococcal toxic shock syndrome either produce streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin A or have the gene that codes for it; in contrast, only about 15% of group A streptococci isolated from other patients have the gene. Streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin C may also contribute to the syndrome, while the role for streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxin B is unclear. The group A streptococci associated with toxic shock syndrome are primarily of M protein types 1 and 3.

The pyrogenic exotoxins act as superantigens, which stimulate T cells by binding to the class II major histocompatibility complex in the V region of the T cell receptor. The activated T cells release cytokines that mediate shock and tissue injury. The mechanisms of action appear to be similar to those due to staphylococcal toxic syndrome toxin-1 and the staphylococcal enterotoxins.

DIPHOSPHOPYRIDINE NUCLEOTIDASE

This enzyme is elaborated into the environment by some streptococci. This substance may be related to the organism's ability to kill leukocytes. Proteinases and amylase are produced by some strains.

HEMOLYSINS

The β-hemolytic group A *S pyogenes* elaborates two hemolysins (streptolysins). Streptolysin O is a protein (MW 60,000) that is hemolytically active in the reduced state (available SH groups) but rapidly inactivated in the presence of oxygen. Streptolysin O is responsible for some of the hemolysis seen when growth is in cuts deep into the medium in blood agar plates. It combines quantitatively with antistreptolysin O, an antibody that appears in humans following infection with any streptococci that produce streptolysin O. This antibody blocks hemolysis by streptolysin O. This phenomenon forms the basis of a quantitative test for the antibody. An antistreptolysin O (ASO) serum titer in excess of 160200 units is considered abnormally high and suggests either recent infection with *S pyogenes* or persistently high antibody levels due to an exaggerated immune response to an earlier exposure in a hypersensitive person. Streptolysin S is the agent responsible for the hemolytic zones around streptococcal colonies growing on the surface of blood agar plates. It is elaborated in the presence of serumhence the name streptolysin S. It is not antigenic, but it may be inhibited by a nonspecific inhibitor that is frequently present in the sera of humans and animals and is independent of past experience with streptococci.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

A variety of distinct disease processes are associated with *S pyogenes* infections. The infections can be divided into several categories.

DISEASES ATTRIBUTABLE TO INVASION BY *S PYOGENES* , β-HEMOLYTIC GROUP A STREPTOCOCCI

The portal of entry determines the principal clinical picture. In each case, however, there is a diffuse and rapidly spreading infection that involves the tissues and extends along lymphatic pathways with only minimal local suppuration. From the lymphatics, the infection can extend to the bloodstream.

Erysipelas

If the portal of entry is the skin, erysipelas results, with massive brawny edema and a rapidly advancing margin of infection.

Cellulitis

Streptococcal cellulitis is an acute, rapidly spreading infection of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. It follows infection associated with mild trauma, burns, wounds, or surgical incisions. Pain, tenderness, swelling, and erythema occur. Cellulitis is differentiated from erysipelas by two clinical findings: In cellulitis, the lesion is not raised, and the line between the involved and uninvolved tissue is indistinct.

Necrotizing Fasciitis (Streptococcal Gangrene)

This is infection of the subcutaneous tissues and fascia. There is extensive and very rapidly spreading necrosis of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Bacteria other than *S pyogenes* can also cause necrotizing fasciitis. The group A streptococci that cause necrotizing fasciitis have sometimes been termed "flesh-eating bacteria."

Puerperal Fever

If the streptococci enter the uterus after delivery, puerperal fever develops, which is essentially a septicemia originating in the infected wound (endometritis).

Bacteremia/Sepsis

Infection of traumatic or surgical wounds with streptococci results in bacteremia, which rapidly can be fatal. *S pyogenes* bacteremia can also follow skin infections, such as cellulitis and rarely pharyngitis.

DISEASES ATTRIBUTABLE TO LOCAL INFECTION WITH *S PYOGENES* AND THEIR BY-PRODUCTS

Streptococcal Sore Throat

The most common infection due to β-hemolytic *S pyogenes* is streptococcal sore throat or pharyngitis. *S pyogenes* adhere to the pharyngeal epithelium by means of lipoteichoic acid-covered surface pili. The glycoprotein fibronectin (MW 440,000) on epithelial cells probably serves as lipoteichoic acid ligand. In infants and small children, the sore throat occurs as a subacute nasopharyngitis with a thin serous discharge and little fever but with a tendency of the infection to extend to the middle ear and the mastoid. The cervical lymph nodes are usually enlarged. The illness may persist for weeks. In older children and adults, the disease is more acute and is characterized by intense nasopharyngitis, tonsillitis, and intense redness and edema of the mucous membranes, with purulent exudate, enlarged, tender cervical lymph nodes, and (usually) a high fever. Twenty percent of infections are asymptomatic. A similar clinical picture can occur with infectious mononucleosis, diphtheria, gonococcal infection, and adenovirus infection.

S pyogenes infection of the upper respiratory tract does not usually involve the lungs. Pneumonia, when it does occur, is rapidly progressive and severe and is most commonly a sequela to viral infections, eg, influenza or measles, which seem to enhance susceptibility greatly.

Streptococcal Pyoderma

Local infection of superficial layers of skin, especially in children, is called impetigo. It consists of superficial vesicles that break down and eroded areas whose denuded surface is covered with pus and later is encrusted. It spreads by continuity and is highly communicable, especially in hot, humid climates. More widespread infection occurs in eczematous or wounded skin or in burns and may progress to cellulitis. Group A streptococcal skin infections are often attributable to M types 49, 57, and 5961 and may precede glomerulonephritis but do not often lead to rheumatic fever.

A clinically identical infection can be caused by *S aureus* and sometimes both *S pyogenes* and *S aureus* are present.

INVASIVE GROUP A STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS, STREPTOCOCCAL TOXIC SHOCK SYNDROME, AND SCARLET FEVER

Fulminant, invasive *S pyogenes* infections with streptococcal toxic shock syndrome are characterized by shock, bacteremia, respiratory failure, and multiorgan failure. Death occurs in about 30% of patients. The infections tend to follow minor trauma in otherwise healthy persons with several presentations of soft tissue infection. These include necrotizing fasciitis, myositis, and infections at other soft tissue sites; bacteremia occurs frequently. In some patients, particularly those infected with group A streptococci of M types 1 or 3, the disease presents with focal soft tissue infection accompanied by fever and rapidly progressive shock with multiorgan failure. Erythema and desquamation may occur. The *S pyogenes* of the M types 1 and 3 (and types 12 and 28) that make pyrogenic exotoxin A or B are associated with the severe infections.

Pyrogenic exotoxins AC also cause scarlet fever in association with *S pyogenes* pharyngitis or with skin or soft tissue infection. The pharyngitis may be severe. The rash appears on the trunk after 24 hours of illness and spreads to involve the extremities. Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome and scarlet fever are clinically overlapping diseases.

POSTSTREPTOCOCCAL DISEASES (RHEUMATIC FEVER, GLOMERULONEPHRITIS)

Following an acute *S pyogenes* infection, there is a latent period of 14 weeks, after which nephritis or rheumatic fever occasionally develops. The latent period suggests that these poststreptococcal diseases are not attributable to the direct effect of disseminated bacteria but represent instead a hypersensitivity response. Nephritis is more commonly preceded by infection of the skin; rheumatic fever is more commonly preceded by infection of the respiratory tract.

Acute Glomerulonephritis

This sometimes develops 3 weeks after *S pyogenes* skin infection (pyoderma, impetigo). Some strains are particularly nephritogenic, principally with M types 12, 4, 2, and 49. Other nephritogenic M types are 5961. After random streptococcal skin infections, the incidence of nephritis is less than 0.5%.

Glomerulonephritis may be initiated by antigen-antibody complexes on the glomerular basement membrane. The most important antigen is probably in the streptococcal protoplast membrane. In acute nephritis, there is blood and protein in the urine, edema, high blood pressure, and urea nitrogen retention; serum complement levels are also low. A few patients die; some develop chronic glomerulonephritis with ultimate kidney failure; and the majority recover completely.

Rheumatic Fever

This is the most serious sequela of *S pyogenes* because it results in damage to heart muscle and valves. Certain strains of group A streptococci contain cell membrane antigens that cross-react with human heart tissue antigens.

Sera from patients with rheumatic fever contain antibodies to these antigens.

The onset of rheumatic fever is often preceded by *S pyogenes* infection 14 weeks earlier, although the infection may be mild and may not be detected. In general, however, patients with more severe streptococcal sore throats have a greater chance of developing rheumatic fever. In the 1950s, untreated streptococcal infections were followed by rheumatic fever in up to 3% of military personnel and 0.3% of civilian children. Rheumatic fever is now relatively rare in the United States (< 0.05% of streptococcal infections), but it occurs up to 100 times more frequently in tropical countries and is the most important cause of heart disease in young people in developing countries.

Typical symptoms and signs of rheumatic fever include fever, malaise, a migratory nonsuppurative polyarthritis, and evidence of inflammation of all parts of the heart (endocardium, myocardium, pericardium). The carditis characteristically leads to thickened and deformed valves and to small perivascular granulomas in the myocardium (Aschoff bodies) that are finally replaced by scar tissue. Erythrocyte sedimentation rates, serum transaminase levels, electrocardiograms, and other tests are used to estimate rheumatic activity.

Rheumatic fever has a marked tendency to be reactivated by recurrent streptococcal infections, whereas nephritis does not. The first attack of rheumatic fever usually produces only slight cardiac damage, which, however, increases with each subsequent attack. It is therefore important to protect such patients from recurrent *S pyogenes* infections by prophylactic penicillin administration.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens to be obtained depend upon the nature of the streptococcal infection. A throat swab, pus, or blood is obtained for culture. Serum is obtained for antibody determinations.

SMEARS

Smears from pus often show single cocci or pairs rather than definite chains. Cocci are sometimes gram-negative because the organisms are no longer viable and have lost their ability to retain the blue dye (crystal violet) and be gram-positive. If smears of pus show streptococci but cultures fail to grow, anaerobic organisms must be suspected. Smears of throat swabs are rarely contributory, because viridans streptococci are always present and have the same appearance as group A streptococci on stained smears.

CULTURE

Specimens suspected of containing streptococci are cultured on blood agar plates. If anaerobes are suspected, suitable anaerobic media must also be inoculated. Incubation in 10% CO_2 often speeds hemolysis. Slicing the inoculum into the blood agar has a similar effect, because oxygen does not readily diffuse through the medium to the deeply embedded organisms, and it is oxygen that inactivates streptolysin O.

Blood cultures will grow hemolytic group A streptococci (eg, in sepsis) within hours or a few days. Certain [illegible]-hemolytic streptococci and enterococci may grow slowly, so blood cultures in cases of suspected endocarditis occasionally do not turn positive for a few days.

The degree and kind of hemolysis (and colonial appearance) may help place an organism in a definite group. *S pyogenes* can be identified by rapid tests specific for the presence of the group A-specific antigen and by the PYR test. Streptococci belonging to group A may be presumptively identified by inhibition of growth by bacitracin, but this should be used only when more definitive tests are not available.

ANTIGEN DETECTION TESTS

Several commercial kits are available for rapid detection of group A streptococcal antigen from throat swabs. These kits use enzymatic or chemical methods to extract the antigen from the swab, then use EIA or agglutination tests to demonstrate the presence of the antigen. The tests can be completed minutes to hours after the specimen is obtained. They are 6090% sensitive, depending upon the prevalence of the disease in the population, and 9899% specific when compared to culture methods.

SEROLOGIC TESTS

A rise in the titer of antibodies to many group A streptococcal antigens can be estimated. Such antibodies include antistreptolysin O (ASO), particularly in respiratory disease; anti-DNase and antihyaluronidase, particularly in skin infections; antistreptokinase; anti-M type-specific antibodies; and others. Of these, the anti-ASO titer is most widely used.

Immunity

Resistance against streptococcal diseases is M type-specific. Thus, a host who has recovered from infection by one group A streptococcal M type is relatively insusceptible to reinfection by the same type but fully susceptible to infection by another M type. Anti-M type-specific antibodies can be demonstrated in a test that exploits the fact that streptococci are rapidly killed after phagocytosis. M protein interferes with phagocytosis, but in the presence of type-specific antibody to M protein, streptococci are killed by human leukocytes.

Antibody to streptolysin O develops following infection; it blocks hemolysis by streptolysin O but does not indicate immunity. High titers (> 250 units) indicate recent or repeated infections and are found more often in rheumatic individuals than in those with uncomplicated streptococcal infections.

Treatment

All *S pyogenes* are susceptible to penicillin G, and most are susceptible to erythromycin. Some are resistant to tetracyclines. Antimicrobial drugs have no effect on established glomerulonephritis and rheumatic fever. In acute streptococcal infections, however, every effort must be made to rapidly eradicate streptococci from the patient, eliminate the antigenic stimulus (before day 8), and thus prevent poststreptococcal disease. Doses of penicillin or erythromycin that result in effective tissue levels for 10 days usually accomplish this. Antimicrobial drugs are also very useful in preventing reinfection with β-hemolytic group A streptococci in rheumatic fever patients.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Although humans can be asymptomatic nasopharyngeal or perineal carriers of *S pyogenes* , the organism should be considered abnormal if it is detected by culture or other means. The ultimate source of group A streptococci is a person harboring these organisms. The individual may have a clinical or subclinical infection or may be a carrier distributing streptococci directly to other persons via droplets from the respiratory tract or skin. The nasal discharges of a person harboring *S pyogenes* are the most dangerous source for spread of these organisms.

Many other streptococci (viridans streptococci, enterococci, etc) are members of the normal flora of the human body. They produce disease only when established in parts of the body where they do not normally occur (eg, heart valves). To prevent such accidents, particularly in the course of surgical procedures on the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and urinary tracts that result in temporary bacteremia, antimicrobial agents are often administered prophylactically to persons with known heart valve deformity and to those with prosthetic valves or joints.

Control procedures are directed mainly at the human source:

(1) Detection and early antimicrobial therapy of respiratory and skin infections with group A streptococci. Prompt

eradication of streptococci from early infections can effectively prevent the development of poststreptococcal disease. This requires maintenance of adequate penicillin levels in tissues for 10 days (eg, benzathine penicillin G given once intramuscularly). Erythromycin is an alternative drug, although some *S pyogenes* are resistant.

(2) Antistreptococcal chemoprophylaxis in persons who have suffered an attack of rheumatic fever. This involves giving one injection of benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly, every 34 weeks, or daily oral penicillin or oral sulfonamide. The first attack of rheumatic fever infrequently causes major heart damage; however, such persons are particularly susceptible to reinfections with streptococci that precipitate relapses of rheumatic activity and give rise to cardiac damage. Chemoprophylaxis in such individuals, especially children, must be continued for years. Chemoprophylaxis is not used in glomerulonephritis because of the small number of nephritogenic types of streptococci. An exception may be family groups with a high rate of poststreptococcal nephritis.

(3) Eradication of *S pyogenes* from carriers. This is especially important when carriers are in areas such as obstetric delivery rooms, operating rooms, classrooms, or nurseries. Unfortunately, it is often difficult to eradicate β-hemolytic streptococci from permanent carriers, and individuals may occasionally have to be shifted away from "sensitive" areas for some time.

STREPTOCOCCUS AGALACTIAE

These are the group B streptococci. They typically are β-hemolytic and produce zones of hemolysis that are only slightly larger than the colonies (12 mm in diameter). The group B streptococci hydrolyze sodium hippurate and give a positive response in the so-called CAMP test (Christie, Atkins, Munch-Peterson).

Group B streptococci are part of the normal vaginal flora in 525% of women. Group B streptococcal infection during the first month of life may present as fulminant sepsis, meningitis, or respiratory distress syndrome. Intravenous ampicillin given to mothers, who carry group B streptococci and are in labor, prevents colonization of their infants and group B streptococcal disease.

GROUPS C AND G

These streptococci occur sometimes in the nasopharynx and may cause pharyngitis, sinusitis, bacteremia, or endocarditis. They often look like group A *S pyogenes* on blood agar medium and are β-hemolytic. They are identified by reactions with specific antisera for groups C or G. These group G streptococci have hemolysins and may have M proteins analogous to those of group A *S pyogenes* .

STREPTOCOCCUS BOVIS

These are among the nonenterococcal group D streptococci. They are part of the enteric flora, occasionally cause endocarditis, and sometimes cause bacteremia in patients with colon carcinoma. They are nonhemolytic and PYR-negative. They grow in the presence of bile and hydrolyze esculin (bile esculin-positive) but do not grow in 6.5% NaCl. *S bovis* are often classified as viridans streptococci.

STREPTOCOCCUS ANGINOSUS GROUP

Other species names in the *S anginosus* group are *S constellatus* and *S intermedius.* They are sometimes referred to as the *S milleri* group. These streptococci are part of the normal flora. They may be β-, α-, or nonhemolytic. *S anginosus* group includes β-hemolytic streptococci that form minute colonies (< 0.5 mm in diameter) and react with groups A, C, or G antisera and all β-hemolytic group F streptococci. Those that are group A are PYR-negative. *S anginosus* are Voges-Proskauer test-positive. They may be classified as viridans streptococci.

GROUP N STREPTOCOCCI

They are rarely found in human disease states but produce normal coagulation ("souring") of milk.

GROUPS E, F, G, H, AND KU STREPTOCOCCI

These streptococci occur primarily in animals. One of the multiple species of group G streptococci, *S canis* , can cause skin infections of dogs but uncommonly infects humans; other species of group G streptococci infect humans.

VIRIDANS STREPTOCOCCI

The viridans streptococci include *S mitis, S mutans, S salivarius, S sanguis,* and others. Typically they are α-hemolytic, but they may be nonhemolytic. Their growth is not inhibited by Optochin, and colonies are not soluble in bile (deoxycholate). The viridans streptococci are the most prevalent members of the normal flora of the upper respiratory tract and are important for the healthy state of the mucous membranes there. They may reach the bloodstream as a result of trauma and are a principal cause of endocarditis on abnormal heart valves. Some viridans streptococci (eg, *S mutans*) synthesize large polysaccharides such as dextrans or levans from sucrose and contribute importantly to the genesis of dental caries.

In the course of bacteremia, viridans streptococci, pneumococci, or enterococci may settle on normal or previously deformed heart valves, producing acute endocarditis. Rapid destruction of the valves frequently leads to fatal cardiac failure in days or weeks unless a prosthesis can be inserted during antimicrobial therapy.

Subacute endocarditis often involves abnormal valves (congenital deformities and rheumatic or atherosclerotic lesions). Although any organism reaching the bloodstream may establish itself on thrombotic lesions that develop on endothelium injured as a result of circulatory stresses, subacute endocarditis is most frequently due to members of the normal flora of the respiratory or intestinal tract that have accidentally reached the blood. After dental extraction, at least 30% of patients have viridans streptococcal bacteremia. These streptococci, ordinarily the most prevalent members of the upper respiratory flora, are also the most frequent cause of subacute bacterial endocarditis. The group D streptococci (enterococci and *S bovis*) also are common causes of subacute endocarditis. About 510% of cases are due to enterococci originating in the gut or urinary tract. The lesion is slowly progressive, and a certain amount of healing accompanies the active inflammation; vegetations consist of fibrin, platelets, blood cells, and bacteria adherent to the valve leaflets. The clinical course is gradual, but the disease is invariably fatal in untreated cases. The typical clinical picture includes fever, anemia, weakness, a heart murmur, embolic phenomena, an enlarged spleen, and renal lesions.

α-Hemolytic streptococci and enterococci vary in their susceptibility to antimicrobial agents. Particularly in bacterial endocarditis, antibiotic susceptibility tests are useful to determine which drugs may be used for optimal therapy. Aminoglycosides often enhance the rate of bactericidal action of penicillin on streptococci, particularly enterococci.

NUTRITIONALLY VARIANT STREPTOCOCCI

The nutritionally variant streptococci, previously *S defectives* and *S adjacens* and additional species, are now classified in the genus *Abiotrophia* and the genus *Granulicatella.* They have also been known as "nutritionally deficient streptococci" and "pyridoxal-dependent streptococci." They require pyridoxal or cysteine for growth on blood agar or grow as satellite colonies around colonies of staphylococci and other bacteria. Routinely supplementing blood agar medium with pyridoxol allows recovery of these organisms. They are usually α-hemolytic but may be nonhemolytic. They are part of the normal flora and occasionally cause bacteremia or endocarditis and can be found in brain abscesses and other infections. Clinically, they are very much like the viridans streptococci.

PEPTOSTREPTOCOCCUS (MANY SPECIES)

These streptococci grow only under anaerobic or microaerophilic conditions and variably produce hemolysins. They are part of the normal flora of the mouth, upper respiratory tract, bowel, and female genital tract. They often participate with many other bacterial species in mixed anaerobic infections. Such infections may occur in wounds, in the breast, in postpartum endometritis, following rupture of an abdominal viscus, the brain, or in chronic suppuration of the lung. The pus usually has a foul odor.

STREPTOCOCCUS PNEUMONIAE

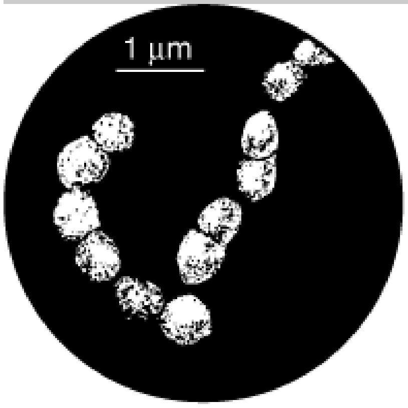
The pneumococci (*S pneumoniae*) are gram-positive diplococci, often lancet-shaped or arranged in chains, possessing a capsule of polysaccharide that permits typing with specific antisera. Pneumococci are readily lysed by surface-active agents, which probably remove or inactivate the inhibitors of cell wall autolysins. Pneumococci are normal inhabitants of the upper respiratory tract of 540% of humans and can cause pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis, bronchitis, bacteremia, meningitis, and other infectious processes.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The typical gram-positive, lancet-shaped diplococci (Figure 152) are often seen in specimens of young cultures. In sputum or pus, single cocci or chains are also seen. With age, the organisms rapidly become gram-negative and tend to lyse spontaneously. Autolysis of pneumococci is greatly enhanced by surface-active agents. Lysis of pneumococci occurs in a few minutes when ox bile (10%) or sodium deoxycholate (2%) is added to a broth culture or suspension of organisms at neutral pH. Viridans streptococci do not lyse and are thus easily differentiated from pneumococci. On solid media, the growth of pneumococci is inhibited around a disk of Optochin; viridans streptococci are not inhibited by Optochin.

Figure 152.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Drawing from electron micrograph of pneumococci.

Other identifying points include almost uniform virulence for mice when injected intraperitoneally and the "capsule swelling test," or quellung reaction (see below).

CULTURE

Pneumococci form small round colonies, at first dome-shaped and later developing a central plateau with an elevated rim. Pneumococci are α-hemolytic on blood agar. Growth is enhanced by 510% CO_2 .

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Most energy is obtained from fermentation of glucose; this is accompanied by the rapid production of lactic acid, which limits growth. Neutralization of broth cultures with alkali at intervals results in massive growth.

VARIATION

Pneumococcal isolates that produce large amounts of capsules produce large mucoid colonies. Capsule production is not essential for growth on agar medium, and capsular production is, therefore, lost after a small number of subcultures. The pneumococci will, however, again produce capsules and have enhanced virulence if injected into mice.

Antigenic Structure

COMPONENT STRUCTURES

The pneumococcal cell wall has peptidoglycan and teichoic acid, like other streptococci. The capsular polysaccharide is covalently bound to the peptidoglycan and to the cell wall polysaccharide. The capsular polysaccharide is immunologically distinct for each of the more than 90 types.

QUELLUNG REACTION

When pneumococci of a certain type are mixed with specific antipolysaccharide serum of the same typeor with polyvalent antiserumon a microscope slide, the capsule swells markedly, and the organisms agglutinate by cross-linking of the antibodies. This reaction is useful for rapid identification and for typing of the organisms, either in sputum or in cultures. The polyvalent antiserum, which contains antibody to all of the types ("omniserum"), is a good reagent for rapid microscopic determination of whether or not pneumococci are present in fresh sputum.

Pathogenesis

TYPES OF PNEUMOCOCCI

In adults, types 18 are responsible for about 75% of cases of pneumococcal pneumonia and for more than half of all fatalities in pneumococcal bacteremia; in children, types 6, 14, 19, and 23 are frequent causes.

PRODUCTION OF DISEASE

Pneumococci produce disease through their ability to multiply in the tissues. They produce no toxins of significance. The virulence of the organism is a function of its capsule, which prevents or delays ingestion by phagocytes. A serum that contains antibodies against the type-specific polysaccharide protects against infection. If such a serum is absorbed with the type-specific polysaccharide, it loses its protective power. Animals or humans immunized with a given type of pneumococcal polysaccharide are subsequently immune to that type of pneumococcus and possess precipitating and opsonizing antibodies for that type of polysaccharide.

LOSS OF NATURAL RESISTANCE

Since 4070% of humans are at some time carriers of virulent pneumococci, the normal respiratory mucosa must possess great natural resistance to the pneumococcus. Among the factors that probably lower this resistance and thus predispose to pneumococcal infection are the following:

(1) Viral and other respiratory tract infections that damage surface cells; abnormal accumulations of mucus (eg, allergy), which protect pneumococci from phagocytosis; bronchial obstruction (eg, atelectasis); and respiratory tract injury due to irritants disturbing its mucociliary function.

(2) Alcohol or drug intoxication, which depresses phagocytic activity, depresses the cough reflex, and facilitates

aspiration of foreign material.

(3) Abnormal circulatory dynamics (eg, pulmonary congestion, heart failure).

(4) Other mechanisms, eg, malnutrition, general debility, sickle cell anemia, hyposplenism, nephrosis, or complement deficiency.

Pathology

Pneumococcal infection causes an outpouring of fibrinous edema fluid into the alveoli, followed by red cells and leukocytes, which results in consolidation of portions of the lung. Many pneumococci are found throughout this exudate, and they may reach the bloodstream via the lymphatic drainage of the lungs. The alveolar walls remain normally intact during the infection. Later, mononuclear cells actively phagocytose the debris, and this liquid phase is gradually reabsorbed. The pneumococci are taken up by phagocytes and digested intracellularly.

Clinical Findings

The onset of pneumococcal pneumonia is usually sudden, with fever, chills, and sharp pleural pain. The sputum is similar to the alveolar exudate, being characteristically bloody or rusty colored. Early in the disease, when the fever is high, bacteremia is present in 1020% of cases. With antimicrobial therapy, the illness is usually terminated promptly; if drugs are given early, the development of consolidation is interrupted.

Pneumococcal pneumonia must be differentiated from pulmonary infarction, atelectasis, neoplasm, congestive heart failure, and pneumonia caused by many other bacteria. Empyema (pus in the pleural space) is a significant complication and requires aspiration and drainage.

From the respiratory tract, pneumococci may reach other sites. The sinuses and middle ear are most frequently involved. Infection sometimes extends from the mastoid to the meninges. Bacteremia from pneumonia has a triad of severe complications: meningitis, endocarditis, and septic arthritis. With the early use of chemotherapy, acute pneumococcal endocarditis and arthritis have become rare.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Blood is drawn for culture; CSF and sputum are collected for demonstration of pneumococci by smear and culture. Serum antibody tests are impractical. Sputum may be examined in several ways.

STAINED SMEARS

A Gram-stained film of rusty-red sputum shows typical organisms, many polymorphonuclear neutrophils, and many red cells.

CAPSULE SWELLING TESTS

Fresh emulsified sputum mixed with antiserum causes capsule swelling (the quellung reaction) for identification of pneumococci.

CULTURE

The culture is created by sputum cultured on blood agar and incubated in CO_2 or a candle jar. A blood culture is also taken.

Immunity

Immunity to infection with pneumococci is type-specific and depends both on antibodies to capsular polysaccharide and on intact phagocytic function. Vaccines can induce production of antibodies to capsular polysaccharides (see below).

Treatment

Since pneumococci are sensitive to many antimicrobial drugs, early treatment usually results in rapid recovery, and antibody response seems to play a much diminished role. Penicillin G is the drug of choice, but in the United States 510% of pneumococci are penicillin-resistant (MIC ≥ 2 μg/mL) and about 20% are moderately resistant (MIC 0.11 μg/mL). High-dose penicillin G with MICs of 0.12 μg/mL appears to be effective in treating pneumonia caused by pneumococci but would not be effective in treatment of meningitis due to the same strains. Some penicillin-resistant strains are resistant to cefotaxime. Resistance to tetracycline and erythromycin occurs also. Pneumococci remain susceptible to vancomycin.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Pneumococcal pneumonia accounts for about 60% of all bacterial pneumonias. In the development of illness, predisposing factors (see above) are more important than exposure to the infectious agent, and the healthy carrier is more important in disseminating pneumococci than the sick patient.

It is possible to immunize individuals with type-specific polysaccharides. Such vaccines can probably provide 90% protection against bacteremic pneumonia. A polysaccharide vaccine containing 23 types is licensed in the United States. This vaccine is appropriate for elderly, debilitated, or immunosuppressed individuals. A pneumococcal conjugate vaccine contains capsular polysaccharides conjugated to diphtheria CRM_{197} protein. This seven-valent vaccine is recommended for all children aged 223 months, to help prevent ear infections, and for selected children aged 2459 months.

ENTEROCOCCI

The enterococci have the group D group-specific substance and were previously classified as group D streptococci. Because the group D cell wall specific antigen is a teichoic acid, it is not an antigenically good marker; enterococci are usually identified by characteristics other than immunologic reaction with group-specific antisera. They are part of the normal enteric flora. They are usually nonhemolytic, but occasionally α-hemolytic. Enterococci are PYR-positive. They grow in the presence of bile and hydrolyze esculin (bile esculin-positive). They grow in 6.5% NaCl. They grow well at between 10 C and 45 C whereas streptococci generally grow at a much narrower temperature range. They are more resistant to penicillin G than the streptococci, and rare isolates have plasmids that encode for β-lactamase. Many isolates are vancomycin-resistant.

There are at least 12 species of enterococci. *Enterococcus faecalis* is the most common and causes 8590% of enterococcal infections, while *Enterococcus faecium* causes 510%. The enterococci are among the most frequent causes of nosocomial infections, particularly in intensive care units, and are selected by therapy with cephalosporins and other antibiotics to which they are resistant. Enterococci are transmitted from one patient to another primarily on the hands of hospital personnel, some of whom may carry the enterococci in their gastrointestinal tracts. Enterococci occasionally are transmitted on medical devices. In patients, the most common sites of infection are the urinary tract, wounds, biliary tract, and blood. Enterococci may cause meningitis and bacteremia in neonates. In adults, enterococci can cause endocarditis. However, in intra-abdominal, wound, urine, and other infections, enterococci usually are cultured along with other species of bacteria, and it is difficult to define the pathogenic role of the enterococci.

Antibiotic Resistance

A major problem with the enterococci is that they can be very resistant to antibiotics. *E faecium* is usually much more antibiotic-resistant than *E faecalis.*

INTRINSIC RESISTANCE

Enterococci are intrinsically resistant to cephalosporins, penicillinase-resistant penicillins, and monobactams. They have intrinsic low-level resistance to many aminoglycosides, are of intermediate susceptibility or resistant to fluoroquinolones, and are less susceptible than streptococci (10- to 1000-fold) to penicillin and ampicillin. Enterococci are inhibited by β-lactams (eg, ampicillin) but generally are not killed by them.

RESISTANCE TO AMINOGLYCOSIDES

Therapy with combinations of a cell wall-active antibiotic (a penicillin or vancomycin) plus an aminoglycoside (streptomycin or gentamicin) is essential for severe enterococcal infections, such as endocarditis. Although enterococci have intrinsic low-level resistance to aminoglycosides (MICs of < 500 μg/mL), they have synergistic susceptibility when treated with a cell wall-active antibiotic plus an aminoglycoside. However, some enterococci have high-level resistance to aminoglycosides (MICs > 500 μg/mL) and are not susceptible to the synergism. This high-level aminoglycoside resistance is due to enterococcal aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes (Table 152). The genes that code for most of these enzymes are usually on conjugative plasmids or transposons. The enzymes have differential activity against the aminoglycosides. Resistance to gentamicin predicts resistance to the other aminoglycosides except streptomycin. (Susceptibility to gentamicin does not predict susceptibility to other aminoglycosides.) Resistance to streptomycin does not predict resistance to other aminoglycosides. The result is that only streptomycin or gentamicin (or both or neither) is likely to show synergistic activity with a cell wall-active antibiotic against enterococci. Enterococci from severe infections should have susceptibility tests for high-level resistance (MICs > 500 μg/mL) to gentamicin and streptomycin to predict therapeutic efficacy.

Table 152. Enterococcal Aminoglycoside-Modifying Enzymes that Eliminate Aminoglycoside-Penicillin Synergy.

6-Adenyltransferase
+
-
-
-
3'-Phosphotransferase
-
-
-
+
6'-Acetyltransferase
-
-
+
4'-Adenyltransferase
-
-
+
2'-Phosphotransferase/6'-acetyltransferase
-
+
+

+

	Aminoglycoside			
Enzyme	Streptomycin	Gentamicin	Tobramycin	Amikacin

VANCOMYCIN RESISTANCE

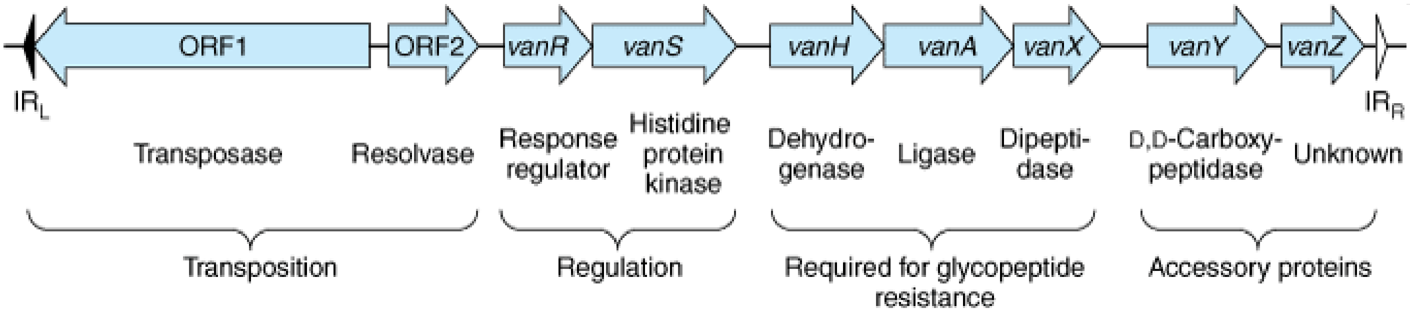
The glycopeptide vancomycin is the primary alternative drug to a penicillin (plus an aminoglycoside) for treating enterococcal infections. In the United States, enterococci that are resistant to vancomycin have increased in frequency. These enterococci are not synergistically susceptible to vancomycin plus an aminoglycoside. Vancomycin resistance has been most common in *E faecium,* but vancomycin-resistant strains of *E faecalis* also occur.

There are multiple vancomycin resistance phenotypes. The VanA phenotype is manifested by inducible high-level resistance to vancomycin and teicoplanin. VanB phenotypes are inducibly resistant to vancomycin but susceptible to teicoplanin. VanC strains have intermediate to moderate resistance to vancomycin. VanC is constitutive in the less commonly isolated species, *Enterococcus gallinarum* (VanC-1) and *Enterococcus casseliflavus/Enterococcus flavescens* (CanC-2/VanC-3). The VanD phenotype is manifested by moderate resistance to vancomycin and low-level resistance or susceptibility to teicoplanin. The VanE phenotype is moderately resistant to vancomycin and susceptible to teicoplanin.

Teicoplanin is a glycopeptide with many similarities to vancomycin. It is available for patients in Europe but not in the United States. It has importance in investigation of the vancomycin resistance of enterococci.

Vancomycin and teicoplanin interfere with cell wall synthesis in gram-positive bacteria by interacting with the D -alanyl-D -alanine (D -Ala-D -Ala) group of the pentapeptide chains of peptidoglycan precursors. The best-studied vancomycin resistance determinant is the VanA operon. It is a system of genes packaged in a self-transferable plasmid containing a transposon closely related to Tn*1546* (Figure 153). There are two open reading frames that code for transposase and resolvase; the remaining seven genes code for vancomycin resistance and accessory proteins. The *vanR* and *vanS* genes are a two-component regulatory system sensitive to the presence of vancomycin or teicoplanin in the environment. *vanH, vanA,* and *vanX* are required for vancomycin resistance. *vanH* and *vanA* encode for proteins that yield manufacture of the depsipeptide (D -Ala-D -lactate) rather than the normal peptide (D -Ala-D -Ala). The depsipeptide, when linked to UDP-muramyl-tripeptide, forms a pentapeptide precursor that vancomycin and teicoplanin will not bind to. *vanX* encodes a dipeptidase that depletes the environment of the normal D -Ala-D -Ala dipeptide. *vanY* and *vanZ* are not essential for vancomycin resistance. *vanY* encodes a carboxypeptidase that cleaves the terminal D -Ala from the pentapeptide, depleting the environment of any functional pentapeptide that may have been manufactured by the normal cell wall building process. *vanZ* function is unclear.

Figure 153.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic map of transposon Tn*1546* from *Enterococcus faecium* that codes for vancomycin resistance. IR_L and IR_R indicate the left and right inverted repeats of the transposon, respectively.

(Adapted and reproduced, with permission, from Arthur M, Courvalin P: Genetics and mechanisms of glycopeptide resistance in enterococci. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1993;37:1563.)

Like *vanA* , *vanB* and *vanD* code for D -Ala-D -Lac, while *vanC* and *vanE* code for D -Ala-D -Ser.

β-LACTAMASE PRODUCTION AND RESISTANCE TO β-LACTAMS

β-Lactamase-producing *E faecalis* has been isolated from patients' specimens in the United States and other countries. There is great geographic variation. The isolates from the Northeastern and Southern United States appeared to be from dissemination of a single strain, suggesting there will be spread to additional geographical areas. The gene encoding for the enterococcal β-lactamase is the same gene as found in *Staphylococcus aureus.* The gene is constitutively expressed in enterococci and inducible in staphylococci. Because enterococci may produce small amounts of the enzyme, they may appear to be susceptible to penicillin and ampicillin by routine susceptibility tests. The β-lactamase can be detected using a high inoculum and the chromogenic cephalosporin test or by other methods. High-level gentamicin resistance often accompanies the β-lactamase production. The genes coding for both of these properties reside on conjugative plasmids and can be transferred from one strain of enterococcus to another. Infections due to β-lactamase-producing enterococci can be treated with combination penicillin and β-lactamase inhibitors or vancomycin (and streptomycin), when in vitro susceptibility has been demonstrated.

TRIMETHOPRIM-SULFAMETHOXAZOLE (TMP-SMZ) RESISTANCE

Enterococci often show susceptibility to TMP-SMZ by in vitro testing, but the drugs are not effective in treating infections. This discrepancy is because enterococci are able to utilize exogenous folates available in vivo and thus escape inhibition by the drugs.

OTHER CATALASE-NEGATIVE GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI

There are nonstreptococcal gram-positive cocci or coccobacilli that occasionally cause disease (Table 153). These organisms have many growth and morphologic characteristics like viridans streptococci. They may be α-hemolytic or nonhemolytic. Most of them are catalase-negative; others may be weakly catalase-positive. Pediococcus and leuconostoc are the genera whose members are vancomycin-resistant. Lactobacilli are anaerobes that can be aerotolerant and α-hemolytic, sometimes forming coccobacillary forms similar to the viridans streptococci. Most lactobacilli (8090%) are vancomycin-resistant. Other organisms that occasionally cause disease and should be differentiated from streptococci and enterococci include lactococcus, aerococcus, and gemella, genera that generally are vancomycin-susceptible. *Stomatococcus mucilaginosus* was previously considered a staphylococcus, but it is catalase-negative; colonies show a distinct adherence to agar.

Table 153. Nonstreptococcal Catalase-Negative Gram-Positive Cocci and Coccobacilli.

Genus[1]	Catalase	Gram Stain	Vancomycin Susceptibility	Comment
Aerococcus	Negative to weakly positive	Cocci in tetrads and clusters	Susceptible	Environmental organisms occasionally isolated from blood, urine, or sterile sites
Gemella	Negative	Cocci in pairs, tetrads, clusters, and short chains	Susceptible	Decolorize easily and may look gram-negative; grow slowly (48 hours); part of normal human flora; occasionally isolated from blood and sterile sites
Leuconostoc	Negative	Cocci in pairs and chains; coccobacilli, rods	Resistant	Environmental organisms; look like enterococci on blood agar; isolated from a wide variety of infections
Pediococcus	Negative	Cocci in pairs, tetrads, and clusters	Resistant	Present in food products and human stools; occasionally isolated from blood and abscesses
Lactobacillus	Negative	Coccobacilli, rods in pairs and chains	Resistant (90%)	Aerotolerant anaerobes generally classified as bacilli; normal vaginal flora; occasionally found in deep-seated infections

[1] Other genera where isolates from humans are rare or uncommon: alloiococcus, globicatella, helcococcus, lactococcus, tetragenococcus, vagococcus.

REFERENCES

Bisno AL: Nonsuppurative poststreptococcal sequelae: rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis; In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Bisno AL, Stephens DL: *Streptococcus pyogenes.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Bisno AL, Ruoff, KL: Classification of streptococci. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Edwards MS, Baker CJ: *Streptococcus agalactiae* (group B streptococcus). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of*

Infectious Diseases, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Facklam R, Elliott JA: Identification, classification, and clinical relevance of catalase-negative, gram-positive cocci, excluding the streptococci and enterococci. Clin Microbiol Rev 1995;8:479.

Johnson CC, Tunkel AR: Viridans streptococci, groups C and G streptococci, *Gemella morbillorum* . In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Mirzanejad Y, Stratton CW: *Streptococcus anginosis* group. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Moellering RC: *Enterococcus* species, *Streptococcus bovis* , and *Leuconostoc* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Murray BE: Vancomycin-resistant enterococcal infections. N Engl J Med 2000;342:710.

Musher DM: *Streptococcus pneumoniae.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Ruoff KL: *Aerococcus, Abiotrophia,* and other infrequently isolated aerobic catalase-negative grampositive cocci. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Ruoff KL, Whiley RA, Beighton D: *Streptococcus.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Teixeira LM, Facklam RR: *Enterococcus.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

INTRODUCTION

The Enterobacteriaceae are a large, heterogeneous group of gram-negative rods whose natural habitat is the intesti
incidentally cause disease, while others, the salmonellae and shigellae, are regularly pathogenic for humans. The En
and enteric bacteria are the terms used in this chapter, but these bacteria may also be called coliforms.

CLASSIFICATION

The Enterobacteriaceae are the most common group of gram-negative rods cultured in the clinical laboratory and al
such as nucleic acid hybridization and sequencing. More than 25 genera and 110 species or groups have been defin
literature will generally be used. A comprehensive approach to identification of the Enterobacteriaceae is presented

The family Enterobacteriaceae have the following characteristics: They are gram-negative rods, either motile with p
rather than oxidize glucose, often with gas production; are catalase-positive, oxidase-negative, and reduce nitrate t
commercially prepared kits are used to a large extent for this purpose.

Table 161. Examples of Biochemical Reactions of Selected Enteric Gram-Negative Rods.[1]

Citrobacter freundii
5
100
0
95
80
70
0
0
65
20
95
0
100
95
50
30
99
55
0
98
100

30
99
99
50
Enterobacter aerogenes
0
5
98
95
0
2
0
98
0
98
97
0
100
100
95
100
100
5
98
100
100
96
99
100
99
Escherichia coli
98
99
0
1
1
1
0
90
17
65
95
0
100
95
95
50
98
60

5
94
99
50
80
95
75
Klebsiella pneumoniae
0
10
98
98
0
95
0
98
0
0
0
0
100
97
98
99
99
30
90
99
99
99
99
99
99
Klebsiella oxytoca
99
20
95
95
0
90
1
99
0
0
0
0
100
97
100

100
99
55
99
99
98
100
100
100
99
Morganella morganii
98
97
0
0
5
98
95
0
0
98
95
0
100
90
1
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
0
Proteus mirabilis
2
97
50
65
98
98
98
0
0
99
95
90

100
96
2
15
0
0
0
0
0
1
1
98
0
Salmonella Choleraesuis
0
100
0
25
50
0
0
95
55
100
95
0
100
95
0
0
98
5
0
90
0
1
100
98
45
Salmonella Typhi
0
100
0
0
97
0
0
98
3

0
97
0
100
0
1
0
100
0
0
99
2
0
0
82
100
Salmonella , most serotypes
1
100
0
95
95
1
0
98
70
97
95
0
100
96
1
1
100
96
0
95
99
2
95
97
95
Serratia marcescens
1
20
98
98
0
15

0
99
0
99
97
90
100
55
2
99
99
0
40
99
0
2
0
7
0
Shigella sonnei
0
100
0
0
0
0
0
0
2
98
0
0
100
0
2
1
99
0
0
2
95
3
75
2
25
S dysenteriae, S flexneri, S boydii
50
100
0

0
0
0
0
0
5
1
0
0
100
2
0
0
93
2
0
30
60
50
5
2
50

	Indole Production	Methyl Red	Voges-Proskauer	Simmons' Citrate	Hydrogen Sulfide	Urea Hydrolysis	Phenylalanine Deaminase	Lysine Decarboxylase	Arginin Dihydro

---

[1] Adapted from Farmer JJ III et al: Biochemical identification of new species and biogroups of Enterobacteriaceae is

The major groups of Enterobacteriaceae are described and discussed briefly in the following paragraphs. Specific ch

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The Enterobacteriaceae are short gram-negative rods. Typical morphology is seen in growth on solid media in vitro,

CULTURE

E coli and most of the other enteric bacteria form circular, convex, smooth colonies with distinct edges. Enterobacte strains of *E coli* produce hemolysis on blood agar.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Carbohydrate fermentation patterns and the activity of amino acid decarboxylases and other enzymes are used in b dextrose), are used less often. Culture on "differential" media that contain special dyes and carbohydrates (eg, eosi

Table 162. Rapid, Presumptive Identification of Gram-Negative Enteric Bacteria.

Lactose Fermented Rapidly
- *Escherichia coli:* metallic sheen on differential media; motile; flat, nonviscous colonies
- *Enterobacter aerogenes:* raised colonies, no metallic sheen; often motile; more viscous growth
- *Klebsiella pneumoniae:* very viscous, mucoid growth; nonmotile

Lactose Fermented Slowly

Edwardsiella, Serratia, Citrobacter, Arizona, Providencia, Erwinia

Lactose Not Fermented

Shigella species: nonmotile; no gas from dextrose
Salmonella species: motile; acid and usually gas from dextrose
Proteus species: "swarming" on agar; urea rapidly hydrolyzed (smell of ammonia)
Pseudomonas species (see Chapter 17): soluble pigments, blue-green and fluorescing; sweetish smell

Many complex media have been devised to help in identification of the enteric bacteria. One such medium is triple s
production), tissue extracts (protein growth substrate), and a pH indicator (phenol red). It is poured into a test tube
subsequently oxidized to CO_2 and H_2 O and released from the slant and as oxidative decarboxylation of proteins cor
Although proteus, providencia, and morganella produce an alkaline slant and acid butt, they can be identified by the

Escherichia

E coli typically produces positive tests for indole, lysine decarboxylase, and mannitol fermentation and produces gas
coli isolates are positive for β-glucuronidase using the substrate 4-methylumbelliferyl-β-glucuronide (MUG). Isolates

Klebsiella-Enterobacter-Serratia Group

Klebsiella species exhibit mucoid growth, large polysaccharide capsules, and lack of motility, and they usually give p
lipase, and gelatinase. Klebsiella, enterobacter, and serratia usually give positive Voges-Proskauer reactions.

Proteus-Morganella-Providencia Group

The members of this group deaminate phenylalanine, are motile, grow on potassium cyanide medium (KCN), and fe
medium. *Proteus* species and *Morganella morganii* are urease-positive, while *Providencia* species usually are urease-

Citrobacter

These bacteria typically are citrate-positive and differ from the salmonellae in that they do not decarboxylate lysine.

Shigella

Shigellae are nonmotile and usually do not ferment lactose but do ferment other carbohydrates, producing acid but

Salmonella

Salmonellae are motile rods that characteristically ferment glucose and mannose without producing gas but do not f

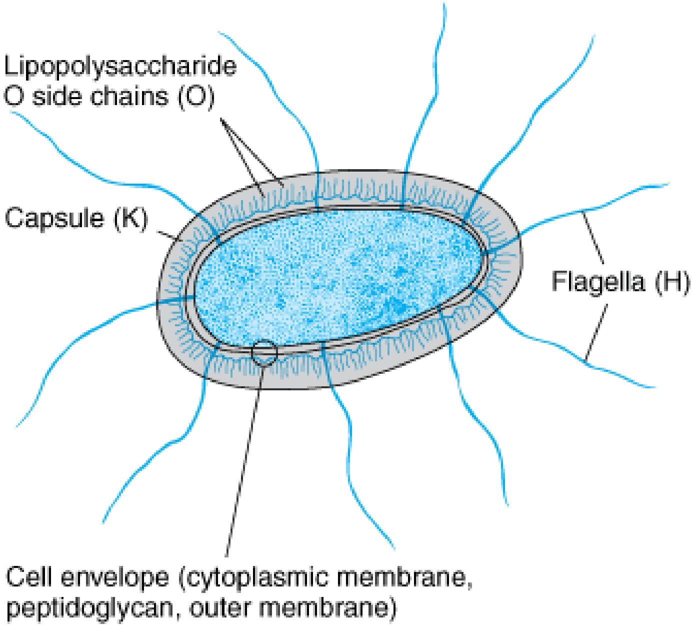
Other Enterobacteriaceae

Yersinia species are discussed in Chapter 20. Other genera occasionally found in human infections include *Edwardsie*

Antigenic Structure

Enterobacteriaceae have a complex antigenic structure. They are classified by more than 150 different heat-stable s

Figure 161.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Antigenic structure of Enterobacteriaceae.

O antigens are the most external part of the cell wall lipopolysaccharide and consist of repeating units of polysacch

While each genus of Enterobacteriaceae is associated with specific O groups, a single organism may carry several O types of *E coli* are found in diarrhea and in urinary tract infections.

K antigens are external to O antigens on some but not all Enterobacteriaceae. Some are polysaccharides, including *coli* cause attachment of the bacteria to epithelial cells prior to gastrointestinal or urinary tract invasion).

Klebsiellae form large capsules consisting of polysaccharides (K antigens) covering the somatic (O or H) antigens an

H antigens are located on flagella and are denatured or removed by heat or alcohol. They are preserved by treatin antigens may be present in either or both of two forms, called phase 1 (conventionally designated by lower-case let agglutination by anti-O antibody.

Table 164. Representative Antigenic Formulas of Salmonellae.

D	*S* Typhi	9, 12 (Vi):d:
A	*S* Paratyphi A	1, 2, 12: a
C_1	*S* Choleraesuis	6, 7: c:1,5

B
S Typhimurium
1, 4, 5, 12: i:1, 2
D
S Enteritidis
1, 9, 12: g, m:

O Group

[1] O antigens: boldface numerals.

(Vi): Vi antigen if present.

Phase 1 H antigen: lower-case letter.

Phase 2 H antigen: numeral.

There are many examples of overlapping antigenic structures between Enterobacteriaceae and other bacteria. Most *influenzae* or *Neisseria meningitidis.* Thus, *E coli* O75:K100:H5 can induce antibodies that react with *H influenzae* ty

The antigenic classification of Enterobacteriaceae often indicates the presence of each specific antigen. Thus, the an

Colicins (Bacteriocins)

Many gram-negative organisms produce bacteriocins. These virus-like bactericidal substances are produced by certa producing strains are resistant to their own bacteriocin; thus, bacteriocins can be used for "typing" of organisms.

Toxins & Enzymes

Most gram-negative bacteria possess complex lipopolysaccharides in their cell walls. These substances, endotoxins,

DISEASES CAUSED BY ENTEROBACTERIACEAE OTHER THAN SALMONELLA & S

Causative Organisms

E coli is a member of the normal intestinal flora (see Chapter 11). Other enteric bacteria (*Proteus, Enterobacter, Kle* normal flora of the upper respiratory and genital tracts. The enteric bacteria generally do not cause disease, and in community-acquired infections. The bacteria become pathogenic only when they reach tissues outside of their norm bone, meninges) can be the site of disease. Some of the enteric bacteria (eg, *Serratia marcescens, Enterobacter ae* clinically important infections can result, and the bacteria may reach the blood stream and cause sepsis.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

The clinical manifestations of infections with *E coli* and the other enteric bacteria depend on the site of the infection

E COLI

Urinary Tract Infection

E coli is the most common cause of urinary tract infection and accounts for approximately 90% of first urinary tract Urinary tract infection can result in bacteremia with clinical signs of sepsis.

Nephropathogenic *E coli* typically produce a hemolysin. Most of the infections are caused by *E coli* of a small numbe

E coli -Associated Diarrheal Diseases

E coli that cause diarrhea are extremely common worldwide. These *E coli* are classified by the characteristics of thei mediated. Some clinical aspects of diarrheal diseases are discussed in Chapter 48.

Enteropathogenic *E coli* (EPEC) is an important cause of diarrhea in infants, especially in developing countries. E
(effacement), formation of filamentous actin pedestals or cup-like structures, and, occasionally, entry of the EPEC i
with multiple specific serotypes of *E coli;* strains are identified by O antigen and occasionally by H antigen typing. A

Enterotoxigenic *E coli* (ETEC) is a common cause of "traveler's diarrhea" and a very important cause of diarrhea
control of a plasmid. Its subunit B attaches to the GM$_1$ ganglioside at the brush border of epithelial cells of the smal
prolonged hypersecretion of water and chlorides and inhibits the reabsorption of sodium. The gut lumen is distende
surface) of persons previously infected with enterotoxigenic *E coli.* Persons residing in areas where such organisms
laboratory animals; (2) typical cytologic changes in cultured Chinese hamster ovary cells or other cell lines; (3) stim

Some strains of ETEC produce the **heat-stable enterotoxin** ST$_a$ (MW 15004000), which is under the genetic contro

The plasmids carrying the genes for enterotoxins (LT, ST) also may carry genes for the **colonization factors** that f
possible that virtually any *E coli* may acquire a plasmid encoding for enterotoxins. There is no definite association of

Care in the selection and consumption of foods potentially contaminated with ETEC is highly recommended to help p
shortens the duration of disease.

Enterohemorrhagic *E coli* (EHEC) produces **verotoxin**, named for its cytotoxic effect on Vero cells, a line of Afric
microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, and thrombocytopenia. Verotoxin has many properties that are similar to the S
identified in clinical specimens. EHEC O157:H7 does not use sorbitol, unlike most other *E coli,* and is negative on so
cases of hemorrhagic colitis and its associated complications can be prevented by thoroughly cooking ground beef.

Enteroinvasive *E coli* (EIEC) produces a disease very similar to shigellosis. The disease occurs most commonly in

Enteroaggregative *E coli* (EAEC) causes acute and chronic diarrhea (> 14 days in duration) in persons in develop

Sepsis

When normal host defenses are inadequate, *E coli* may reach the bloodstream and cause sepsis. Newborns may be

Meningitis

E coli and group B streptococci are the leading causes of meningitis in infants. Approximately 75% of *E coli* from me

KLEBSIELLA-ENTEROBACTER-SERRATIA; PROTEUS-MORGANELLA-PROVIDENCIA; AND CITROBACTER

The pathogenesis of disease caused by these groups of enteric gram-negative rods is similar to that of the nonspeci

Klebsiella

K pneumoniae is present in the respiratory tract and feces of about 5% of normal individuals. It causes a small prop
enterics also may produce pneumonia. *K pneumoniae* and *Klebsiella oxytoca* cause hospital-acquired infections. Tw
rhinoscleromatis from rhinoscleroma, a destructive granuloma of the nose and pharynx.

Enterobacter aerogenes

This organism has small capsules, may be found free-living as well as in the intestinal tract, and causes urinary trac

Serratia

S marcescens is a common opportunistic pathogen in hospitalized patients. Serratia (usually nonpigmented) causes
resistant to aminoglycosides and penicillins; infections can be treated with third-generation cephalosporins.

Proteus

Proteus species produce infections in humans only when the bacteria leave the intestinal tract. They are found in uri
Morganella morganii are important nosocomial pathogens.

Proteus species produce urease, resulting in rapid hydrolysis of urea with liberation of ammonia. Thus, in urinary tra

Strains of proteus vary greatly in antibiotic sensitivity. *P mirabilis* is often inhibited by penicillins; the most active ar

Providencia

Providencia species (*Providencia rettgeri, Providencia alcalifaciens,* and *Providencia stuartii*) are members of the no

Citrobacter

Citrobacter can cause urinary tract infections and sepsis.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens included urine, blood, pus, spinal fluid, sputum, or other material, as indicated by the localization of the

SMEARS

The Enterobacteriaceae resemble each other morphologically. The presence of large capsules is suggestive of klebsi

CULTURE

Specimens are plated on both blood agar and differential media. With differential media, rapid preliminary identifica

Immunity

Specific antibodies develop in systemic infections, but it is uncertain whether significant immunity to the organisms

Treatment

No single specific therapy is available. The sulfonamides, ampicillin, cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, and aminogly plasmids.

Certain conditions predisposing to infection by these organisms require surgical correction, eg, relief of urinary tract

Treatment of gram-negative bacteremia and impending septic shock requires rapid institution of antimicrobial thera

Various means have been proposed for the prevention of traveler's diarrhea, including daily ingestion of bismuth sul effects, it is widely recommended that caution be observed in regard to food and drink in areas where environmenta

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

The enteric bacteria establish themselves in the normal intestinal tract within a few days after birth and from then c

Control measures are not feasible as far as the normal endogenous flora is concerned. Enteropathogenic *E coli* serot introduced into debilitated patients. Within hospitals or other institutions, these bacteria commonly are transmitted closed drainage).

THE SHIGELLAE

The natural habitat of shigellae is limited to the intestinal tracts of humans and other primates, where they produce

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Shigellae are slender gram-negative rods; coccobacillary forms occur in young cultures.

CULTURE

Shigellae are facultative anaerobes but grow best aerobically. Convex, circular, transparent colonies with intact edg

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

All shigellae ferment glucose. With the exception of *Shigella sonnei,* they do not ferment lactose. The inability to fer

Table 163. Pathogenic Species of Shigella.

Present Designation	Group and Type		
S dysenteriae	A	-	-
S flexneri	B	+	-
S boydii	C	+	-
S sonnei	D	+	+

Antigenic Structure

Shigellae have a complex antigenic pattern. There is great overlapping in the serologic behavior of different species

The somatic O antigens of shigellae are lipopolysaccharides. Their serologic specificity depends on the polysaccharid

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Shigella infections are almost always limited to the gastrointestinal tract; bloodstream invasion is quite rare. Shigell phagocytosis, escape from the phagocytic vacuole, multiplication and spread within the epithelial cell cytoplasm, an consists of fibrin, leukocytes, cell debris, a necrotic mucous membrane, and bacteria. As the process subsides, gran

Toxins

ENDOTOXIN

Upon autolysis, all shigellae release their toxic lipopolysaccharide. This endotoxin probably contributes to the irritati

SHIGELLA DYSENTERIAE EXOTOXIN

S dysenteriae type 1 (Shiga bacillus) produces a heat-labile exotoxin that affects both the gut and the central nervo humans, the exotoxin also inhibits sugar and amino acid absorption in the small intestine. Acting as a "neurotoxin," develop antitoxin that neutralizes *S dysenteriae* exotoxin in vitro. The toxic activity is distinct from the invasive pro

Clinical Findings

After a short incubation period (12 days), there is a sudden onset of abdominal pain, fever, and watery diarrhea. Th bowel movement is accompanied by straining and tenesmus (rectal spasms), with resulting lower abdominal pain. I particularly severe.

On recovery, most persons shed dysentery bacilli for only a short period, but a few remain chronic intestinal carrier

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens include fresh stool, mucus flecks, and rectal swabs for culture. Large numbers of fecal leukocytes and so

CULTURE

The materials are streaked on differential media (eg, MacConkey's or EMB agar) and on selective media (Hektoen e
but not gas in the butt and an alkaline slant in triple sugar iron agar medium, and that are nonmotile should be sub

SEROLOGY

Normal persons often have agglutinins against several *Shigella* species. However, serial determinations of antibody

Immunity

Infection is followed by a type-specific antibody response. Injection of killed shigellae stimulates production of antib
somatic shigella antigens are IgM.

Treatment

Ciprofloxacin, ampicillin, doxycycline, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole are most commonly inhibitory for shigella
infections are widespread. Many cases are self-limited. Opioids should be avoided in shigella dysentery.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Shigellae are transmitted by "food, fingers, feces, and flies" from person to person. Most cases of shigella infection
main recognized host of pathogenic shigellae, control efforts must be directed at eliminating the organisms from thi
treatment of infected individuals.

THE SALMONELLA-ARIZONA GROUP

Salmonellae are often pathogenic for humans or animals when acquired by the oral route. They are transmitted fro

Morphology & Identification

Salmonellae vary in length. Most isolates are motile with peritrichous flagella. Salmonellae grow readily on simple
(eg, brilliant green, sodium tetrathionate, sodium deoxycholate) that inhibit other enteric bacteria; such compound

Classification

The classification of salmonellae is complex because the organisms are a continuum rather than a defined species. T
typhimurium) were written as if they were genus and species; this form of the nomenclature remains in widesprea
groups IIIa and IIIb. The species name *Salmonella enterica* has been widely accepted, and the organisms in DNA hy
serotype Typhimurium, which can be shortened to *Salmonella* Typhimurium with the genus name in italics and the

There are more than 2500 serotypes of salmonellae, including more than 1400 in DNA hybridization group I that ca
follows: *Salmonella* Paratyphi A (serogroup A), *Salmonella* Paratyphi B (serogroup B), *Salmonella* Choleraesuis (ser
isolates are then sent to reference laboratories for definitive serologic identification. This allows public health official

Variation

Organisms may lose H antigens and become nonmotile. Loss of O antigen is associated with a change from smooth

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

Salmonella Typhi, *Salmonella* Choleraesuis, and perhaps *Salmonella* Paratyphi A and *Salmonella* Paratyphi B are pri
rodents, cattle, pets (from turtles to parrots), and many others.

The organisms almost always enter via the oral route, usually with contaminated food or drink. The mean infective intestinal microbial flora, and local intestinal immunity (see below).

Salmonellae produce three main types of disease in humans, but mixed forms are frequent (Table 165).

Table 165. Clinical Diseases Induced by Salmonellae.

Incubation period
720 days
Variable
848 hours
Onset
Insidious
Abrupt
Abrupt
Fever
Gradual, then high plateau, with "typhoidal" state
Rapid rise, then spiking "septic" temperature
Usually low
Duration of disease
Several weeks
Variable
25 days
Gastrointestinal symptoms
Often early constipation; later, bloody diarrhea
Often none
Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea at onset
Blood cultures
Positive in first to second weeks of disease
Positive during high fever
Negative
Stool cultures
Positive from 2nd week on; negative earlier in disease
Infrequently positive
Positive soon after onset

	Enteric Fevers

THE "ENTERIC FEVERS" (TYPHOID FEVER)

This syndrome is produced by only a few of the salmonellae, of which *Salmonella* Typhi (typhoid fever) is the most i
tissue and are excreted in stools.

After an incubation period of 1014 days, fever, malaise, headache, constipation, bradycardia, and myalgia occur. Th
complications of enteric fever were intestinal hemorrhage and perforation, and the mortality rate was 1015%. Treat

The principal lesions are hyperplasia and necrosis of lymphoid tissue (eg, Peyer's patches), hepatitis, focal necrosis

BACTEREMIA WITH FOCAL LESIONS

This is associated commonly with *S choleraesuis* but may be caused by any salmonella serotype. Following oral infe

ENTEROCOLITIS

This is the most common manifestation of salmonella infection. In the United States, *Salmonella* Typhimurium and S with few leukocytes in the stools. Low-grade fever is common, but the episode usually resolves in 23 days.

Inflammatory lesions of the small and large intestine are present. Bacteremia is rare (24%) except in immunodefici

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Blood for culture must be taken repeatedly. In enteric fevers and septicemias, blood cultures are often positive in th

Stool specimens also must be taken repeatedly. In enteric fevers, the stools yield positive results from the second o

A positive culture of duodenal drainage establishes the presence of salmonellae in the biliary tract in carriers.

BACTERIOLOGIC METHODS FOR ISOLATION OF SALMONELLAE

Differential Medium Cultures

EMB, MacConkey's, or deoxycholate medium permits rapid detection of lactose nonfermenters (not only salmonellae salmonellae produce H_2S.

Selective Medium Cultures

The specimen is plated on salmonella-shigella (SS) agar, Hektoen enteric agar, XLD, or deoxycholate-citrate agar, w

Enrichment Cultures

The specimen (usually stool) also is put into selenite F or tetrathionate broth, both of which inhibit replication of nor

Final Identification

Suspect colonies from solid media are identified by biochemical reaction patterns (Table 161) and slide agglutinatio

SEROLOGIC METHODS

Serologic techniques are used to identify unknown cultures with known sera (see below) and may also be used to de

Agglutination Test

In this test, known sera and unknown culture are mixed on a slide. Clumping, when it occurs, can be observed withi

Tube Dilution Agglutination Test (Widal Test)

Serum agglutinins rise sharply during the second and third weeks of *Salmonella* Typhi infection. The Widal test to de antigens from representative salmonellae. False-positive and false-negative results occur. The interpretive criteria w salmonella infection must be interpreted cautiously because the possible presence of cross-reactive antibodies limits

Immunity

Infections with *Salmonella* Typhi or *Salmonella* Paratyphi usually confer a certain degree of immunity. Reinfection m prevent attachment of salmonellae to intestinal epithelium.

Persons with S/S hemoglobin (sickle cell disease) are exceedingly susceptible to salmonella infections, particularly o

Treatment

While enteric fevers and bacteremias with focal lesions require antimicrobial treatment, the vast majority of cases o fluids and electrolytes is essential.

Antimicrobial therapy of invasive salmonella infections is with ampicillin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, or a third-

In most carriers, the organisms persist in the gallbladder (particularly if gallstones are present) and in the biliary tra

Epidemiology

The feces of persons who have unsuspected subclinical disease or are carriers are a more important source of conta

the bacteria in their tissues (meat), excreta, or eggs. The high incidence of salmonellae in commercially prepared ch
feeds containing antimicrobial drugs that favor the proliferation of drug-resistant salmonellae and their potential tra

CARRIERS

After manifest or subclinical infection, some individuals continue to harbor salmonellae in their tissues for variable le

SOURCES OF INFECTION

The sources of infection are food and drink that have been contaminated with salmonellae. The following sources ar

Water

Contamination with feces often results in explosive epidemics.

Milk and Other Dairy Products (Ice Cream, Cheese, Custard)

Contamination with feces and inadequate pasteurization or improper handling. Some outbreaks are traceable to the

Shellfish

From contaminated water.

Dried or Frozen Eggs

From infected fowl or contaminated during processing.

Meats and Meat Products

From infected animals (poultry) or contamination with feces by rodents or humans.

"Recreational" Drugs

Marijuana and other drugs.

Animal Dyes

Dyes (eg, carmine) used in drugs, foods, and cosmetics.

Household Pets

Turtles, dogs, cats, etc.

Prevention & Control

Sanitary measures must be taken to prevent contamination of food and water by rodents or other animals that excr

Two injections of acetone-killed bacterial suspensions of *Salmonella* Typhi, followed by a booster injection some mo
against other salmonellae give less protection and are not recommended.

REFERENCES

Abbott S: *Klebsiella, Enterobacter, Citrobacter, Serratia, Plesiomonas,* and other Enterobacteriaceae. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,*

Bopp CA et al: *Escherichia, Shigella,* and *Salmonella* . In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 20

Dupont HL: *Shigella* species (bacillary dysentery). In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th

Donnenberg MS: Enterobacteriaceae. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell G

Farmer JJ III: Enterobacteriaceae: Introduction and Identification. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). A

Pegues DA, Ohl ME, Miller SI: *Salmonella* species, including *Salmonella typhi* . In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice*

Lange Microbiology > Chapter 17. Pseudomonads, Acinetobacters, & Uncommon Gram-Negative Bacteria >

INTRODUCTION

The pseudomonads and acinetobacters are widely distributed in soil and water. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* sometimes colonizes humans and is the major human pathogen of the group. *P aeruginosa* is invasive and toxigenic, produces infections in patients with abnormal host defenses, and is an important nosocomial pathogen.

Gram-negative bacteria that rarely cause disease in humans are included in this chapter. Some of these bacteria (eg, chromobacteria and chryseobacteria) are found in soil or water and are opportunistic pathogens for humans. Other gram-negative bacteria (eg, capnocytophaga, *Eikenella corrodens,* kingella, and moraxella) are normal flora of humans and occur in a wide variety of infections; often they are unexpected causes of disease.

THE PSEUDOMONAD GROUP

The pseudomonads are gram-negative, motile, aerobic rods some of which produce water-soluble pigments. Pseudomonads occur widely in soil, water, plants, and animals. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is frequently present in small numbers in the normal intestinal flora and on the skin of humans and is the major pathogen of the group. Other pseudomonads infrequently cause disease. The classification of pseudomonads is based on rRNA/DNA homology and common culture characteristics. The medically important pseudomonads are listed in Table 17–1.

Table 17–1. Classification of Some of the Medically Important Pseudomonads.[1]

rRNA Homology Group and Subgroup	Genus and Species
I Fluorescent group	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
	Pseudomonas fluorescens
	Pseudomonas putida
Nonfluorescent group	*Pseudomonas stutzeri*
	Pseudomonas mendocina
II	*Burkholderia pseudomallei*
	Burkholderia mallei
	Burkholderia cepacia
	Ralstonia pickettii

rRNA Homology Group and Subgroup	Genus and Species
III	*Comamonas* species
	Acidovorax species
I	*Brevundimonas* species
V	*Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*

[1]Many other species are occasionally encountered in clinical or environmental specimens.

Pseudomonas aeruginosa

P aeruginosa is widely distributed in nature and is commonly present in moist environments in hospitals. It can colonize normal humans, in whom it is a saprophyte. It causes disease in humans with abnormal host defenses.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

P aeruginosa is motile and rod-shaped, measuring about 0.6 × 2 µm. It is gram-negative and occurs as single bacteria, in pairs, and occasionally in short chains.

CULTURE

P aeruginosa is an obligate aerobe that grows readily on many types of culture media, sometimes producing a sweet or grape-like or corn taco-like odor. Some strains hemolyze blood. *P aeruginosa* forms smooth round colonies with a fluorescent greenish color. It often produces the nonfluorescent bluish pigment pyocyanin, which diffuses into the agar. Other *Pseudomonas* species do not produce pyocyanin. Many strains of *P aeruginosa* also produce the fluorescent pigment pyoverdin, which gives a greenish color to the agar. Some strains produce the dark red pigment pyorubin or the black pigment pyomelanin.

P aeruginosa in a culture can produce multiple colony types. *P aeruginosa* from different colony types may also have different biochemical and enzymatic activities and different antimicrobial susceptibility patterns. Sometimes it is not clear if the colony types represent different strains of *P aeruginosa* or are variants of the same strain. Cultures from patients with cystic fibrosis often yield *P aeruginosa* organisms that form mucoid colonies as a result of overproduction of alginate, an exopolysaccharide. In cystic fibrosis patients, the exopolysaccharide appears to provide the matrix for the organisms to live in a biofilm (see Chapter 9).

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

P aeruginosa grows well at 37–42 °C; its growth at 42 °C helps differentiate it from other *Pseudomonas* species in the fluorescent group. It is oxidase-positive. It does not ferment carbohydrates, but many strains oxidize glucose. Identification is usually based on colonial morphology, oxidase positivity, the presence of characteristic pigments, and growth at 42 °C. Differentiation of *P aeruginosa* from other pseudomonads on the basis of biochemical activity requires testing with a large battery of substrates.

Antigenic Structure & Toxins

Pili (fimbriae) extend from the cell surface and promote attachment to host epithelial cells. The exopolysaccharide is responsible for the mucoid colonies seen in cultures from patients with cystic fibrosis. The lipopolysaccharide, which exists in multiple immunotypes, is responsible for many of the endotoxic properties of the organism. *P aeruginosa* can be typed by lipopolysaccharide immunotype and by pyocin (bacteriocin) susceptibility. Most *P aeruginosa* isolates from clinical infections produce extracellular enzymes, including elastases, proteases, and two hemolysins: a heat-labile phospholipase C and a heat-stable glycolipid.

Many strains of *P aeruginosa* produce exotoxin A, which causes tissue necrosis and is lethal for animals when injected in purified form. The toxin blocks protein synthesis by a mechanism of action identical to that of diphtheria toxin, though the structures of the two toxins are not identical. Antitoxins to exotoxin A are found in some human sera, including those of patients who have recovered from serious *P aeruginosa* infections.

Pathogenesis

P aeruginosa is pathogenic only when introduced into areas devoid of normal defenses, eg, when mucous membranes and skin are disrupted by direct tissue damage; when intravenous or urinary catheters are used; or when neutropenia is present, as in cancer chemotherapy. The bacterium attaches to and colonizes the mucous membranes or skin, invades locally, and produces systemic disease. These processes are promoted by the pili, enzymes, and toxins described above. Lipopolysaccharide plays a direct role in causing fever, shock, oliguria, leukocytosis and leukopenia, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and adult respiratory distress syndrome.

P aeruginosa and other pseudomonads are resistant to many antimicrobial agents and therefore become dominant and important when more susceptible bacteria of the normal flora are suppressed.

Clinical Findings

P aeruginosa produces infection of wounds and burns, giving rise to blue-green pus; meningitis, when introduced by lumbar puncture; and urinary tract infection, when introduced by catheters and instruments or in irrigating solutions. Involvement of the respiratory tract, especially from contaminated respirators, results in necrotizing pneumonia. The bacterium is often found in mild otitis externa in swimmers. It may cause invasive (malignant) otitis externa in diabetic patients. Infection of the eye, which may lead to rapid destruction of the eye, occurs most commonly after injury or surgical procedures. In infants or debilitated persons, *P aeruginosa* may invade the bloodstream and result in fatal sepsis; this occurs commonly in patients with leukemia or lymphoma who have received antineoplastic drugs or radiation therapy and in patients with severe burns. In most *P aeruginosa* infections, the symptoms and signs are nonspecific and are related to the organ involved. Occasionally, verdoglobin (a breakdown product of hemoglobin) or fluorescent pigment can be detected in wounds, burns, or urine by ultraviolet fluorescence. Hemorrhagic necrosis of skin occurs often in sepsis due to *P aeruginosa;* the lesions, called ecthyma gangrenosum, are surrounded by erythema and often do not contain pus. *P aeruginosa* can be seen on Gram-stained specimens from ecthyma lesions, and cultures are positive. Ecthyma gangrenosum is uncommon in bacteremia due to organisms other than *P aeruginosa.*

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens from skin lesions, pus, urine, blood, spinal fluid, sputum, and other material should be obtained as indicated by the type of infection.

SMEARS

Gram-negative rods are often seen in smears. There are no specific morphologic characteristics that differentiate pseudomonads in specimens from enteric or other gram-negative rods.

CULTURE

Specimens are plated on blood agar and the differential media commonly used to grow the enteric gram-negative rods. Pseudomonads grow readily on most of these media, but they may grow more slowly than the enterics. *P aeruginosa* does not ferment lactose and is easily differentiated from the lactose-fermenting bacteria. Culture is the specific test for diagnosis of *P aeruginosa* infection.

Treatment

Clinically significant infections with *P aeruginosa* should not be treated with single-drug therapy, because the success rate is low with such therapy and because the bacteria can rapidly develop resistance when single drugs are employed. A penicillin active against *P aeruginosa*—ticarcillin or piperacillin—is used in combination with an aminoglycoside, usually tobramycin. Other drugs active against *P aeruginosa* include aztreonam, imipenem, and the newer quinolones, including ciprofloxacin. Of the newer cephalosporins, ceftazidime and cefoperazone are active against *P aeruginosa;* ceftazidime is used in primary therapy of *P aeruginosa* infections. The susceptibility patterns of *P aeruginosa* vary geographically, and susceptibility tests should be done as an adjunct to selection of antimicrobial therapy.

Epidemiology & Control

P aeruginosa is primarily a nosocomial pathogen, and the methods for control of infection are similar to those for other nosocomial pathogens. Since pseudomonas thrives in moist environments, special attention should be paid to sinks, water baths, showers, hot tubs, and other wet areas. For epidemiologic purposes, strains can be typed by pyocins and by lipopolysaccharide immunotypes. Vaccine from appropriate types administered to high-risk patients provides some protection against pseudomonas sepsis. Such treatment has been used experimentally in patients with leukemia, burns, cystic fibrosis, and immunosuppression.

Burkholderia pseudomallei

B pseudomallei is a small, motile, aerobic gram-negative bacillus. It grows on standard bacteriologic media, forming colonies that vary from mucoid and smooth to rough and wrinkled and in color from cream to orange. It grows at 42 °C and oxidizes glucose, lactose, and a variety of other carbohydrates. *B pseudomallei* causes melioidosis of humans, primarily in Southeast Asia and northern Australia. The organism is a natural saprophyte that has been cultured from soil, fresh water, rice paddies, and vegetable produce. Human infection probably originates from these sources by contamination of skin abrasions and possibly by ingestion or inhalation. Epizootic *B pseudomallei* infection occurs in sheep, goats, swine, horses, and other animals, though animals do not appear to be a primary reservoir for the organism.

Melioidosis may manifest itself as acute, subacute, or chronic infection. The incubation period can be as short as 2–3 days, but latent periods of months to years also occur. A localized suppurative infection can occur at the inoculation site where there is a break in the skin. This localized infection may lead to the acute septicemic form of infection with involvement of many organs. The signs and symptoms depend upon the major sites of involvement. The most common form of melioidosis is pulmonary infection, which may be a primary pneumonitis (*B pseudomallei* transmitted through the upper airway or nasopharynx) or subsequent to a localized suppurative infection and bacteremia. The patient may have fever and leukocytosis, with consolidation of the upper lobes. Subsequently, the patient may become afebrile, while upper lobe cavities develop, yielding an appearance similar to that of tuberculosis on chest films. Some patients develop chronic suppurative infection with abscesses in skin, brain, lung, myocardium, liver, bone, and other sites. Patients with chronic suppurative infections may be afebrile and have indolent disease. Latent infection is sometimes reactivated as a result of immunosuppression.

The diagnosis of melioidosis should be considered for a patient from an endemic area who has fulminant upper lobe pulmonary or unexplained systemic disease. A Gram stain of an appropriate specimen will show small gram-negative bacilli; bipolar staining (safety pin appearance) is seen with Wright's stain or methylene blue stain. A positive culture is diagnostic. A positive serologic test is diagnostically helpful and constitutes evidence of past infection.

Melioidosis has a high mortality rate if untreated. Surgical drainage of localized infection may be necessary. Antibiotic susceptibility testing is an important guide for treatment. *B pseudomallei* usually is susceptible to a variety of antibiotics, including tetracycline, sulfonamides, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, chloramphenicol, amoxicillin or ticarcillin with clavulanic acid, piperacillin, imipenem, and third-generation cephalosporins. Patients with severe infections should be treated parenterally (eg, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or a third-generation cephalosporin such as ceftazidime); combination therapy may be beneficial. Oral therapy for less severely ill patients can be with a tetracycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, or chloramphenicol, often in combination. The duration of antimicrobial therapy should be at least 8 weeks; therapy for 6 months to 1 year should be considered for patients with extrapulmonary suppurative lesions. Relapses in melioidosis are common, and the optimal choice and duration of antibiotic therapy to prevent relapse have not been determined. There is no vaccine or specific preventive measure.

Burkholderia mallei

B mallei is a small, nonmotile, nonpigmented, aerobic gram-negative rod that grows readily on most bacteriologic media. It causes glanders, a disease of horses, mules, and donkeys transmissible to humans. In horses, the disease has prominent pulmonary involvement, subcutaneous ulcerative lesions, and lymphatic thickening with nodules; systemic disease also occurs. Human infection, which can be fatal, usually begins as an ulcer of the skin or mucous membranes followed by lymphangitis and sepsis. Inhalation of the organisms may lead to primary pneumonia.

The diagnosis is based on rising agglutinin titers and culture of the organism from local lesions of humans or horses. Human cases can be treated effectively with a tetracycline plus an aminoglycoside.

The disease has been controlled by slaughter of infected horses and mules and at present is extremely rare. In some countries, laboratory infections are the only source of the disease.

Burkholderia cepacia

Burkholderia cepacia is an environmental organism that is able to grow in water, soil, plants, animals, and decaying vegetable materials. In hospitals, *B cepacia* has been isolated from a wide variety of water and environmental sources from which it can be transmitted to patients. Patients with cystic fibrosis are vulnerable to *B cepacia* infection. They may have asymptomatic carriage, progressive deterioration over a period of months, and rapidly progressive deterioration with necrotizing pneumonia and bacteremia. Although a relative small percentage of cystic fibrosis patients become infected, the association with progressive disease makes *B cepacia* a major concern for these patients. It is likely that *B cepacia* can be transmitted from one cystic fibrosis patient to another by close contact.

B cepacia grows on most media used in culturing patients' specimens for gram-negative bacteria. Selective media containing colistin also can be used. *B cepacia* grows more slowly than enteric gram-negative rods, and it may take 3 days before colonies are visible. Differentiating *B cepacia* from other pseudomonads including *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* requires a battery of biochemical tests and can be difficult. Submission of isolates to reference laboratories is recommended because of the prognostic implications of colonization in cystic fibrosis patients. Susceptibility tests should be done on *B cepacia* isolates, though slow growth may make routine testing difficult. *B cepacia* from cystic fibrosis patients often is multidrug-resistant.

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia is a free-living gram-negative rod that is widely distributed in the environment. On blood agar, colonies have a lavender-green or gray color. The organism is oxidase-negative and lysine decarboxylase-positive.

S maltophilia is an increasingly important cause of hospital-acquired infections in patients who are receiving antimicrobial therapy and in immunocompromised patients. It has been isolated from many anatomic sites, including respiratory tract secretions, urine, skin wounds, and blood. The isolates are often part of mixed flora present in the specimens. When blood cultures are positive, it is commonly in association with use of indwelling plastic intravenous catheters.

S maltophilia is usually susceptible to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and ticarcillin-clavulanic acid and resistant to other commonly used antimicrobials, including cephalosporins, aminoglycosides, imipenem, and the quinolones. The widespread use of the drugs to which *S maltophilia* is resistant plays an important role in the increased frequency with which it causes disease.

Other pseudomonads

Some of the many genera and species of the pseudomonad group are listed in Table 17–1; occasionally these pseudomonads are opportunistic pathogens. The diagnosis of infections caused by these pseudomonads is made by culturing the bacteria and identifying them by differential reactions on a complex set of biochemical substrates. Many of the non-*P aeruginosa* species are nonfermentative and difficult to identify by routine methods; submission to a reference laboratory may be necessary to obtain definitive identification. Many of the pseudomonads have antimicrobial susceptibility patterns different from that of *P aeruginosa.*

ACINETOBACTER

Acinetobacter species are aerobic gram-negative bacteria that are widely distributed in soil and water and can occasionally be cultured from skin, mucous membranes, secretions, and the hospital environment.

Acinetobacter baumannii is the species most commonly isolated. *Acinetobacter lwoffii, Acinetobacter johnsonii, Acinetobacter haemolyticus,* and other species are isolated occasionally. Some isolates have not received species names. Acinetobacters were previously called by a number of different names, including *Mima polymorpha* and *Herellea vaginicola,* reflecting many of the organisms' characteristics.

Acinetobacters are usually coccobacillary or coccal in appearance; they resemble neisseriae on smears, because diplococcal forms predominate in body fluids and on solid media. Rod-shaped forms also occur, and occasionally the bacteria appear to be gram-positive. Acinetobacter grows well on most types of media used to culture specimens from patients. Acinetobacter recovered from meningitis and sepsis has been mistaken for *Neisseria meningitidis;* similarly, acinetobacter recovered from the female genital tract has been mistaken for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.* However, the neisseriae produce oxidase and acinetobacter does not.

Acinetobacters often are commensals but occasionally cause nosocomial infection. *A baumannii* has been isolated from blood, sputum, skin, pleural fluid, and urine, usually in device-associated infections. *A johnsonii* is a nosocomial pathogen of low virulence and has been found in blood cultures of patients with plastic intravenous catheters. Acinetobacter encountered in nosocomial pneumonia often originates in the water of room humidifiers or vaporizers. In patients with acinetobacter bacteremia, intravenous catheters are almost always the source of infection. In patients with burns or with immune deficiencies, acinetobacter acts as an opportunistic pathogen and can produce sepsis. Acinetobacter strains are often resistant to antimicrobial agents, and therapy of infection can be difficult. Susceptibility testing should be done to help select the best antimicrobial drugs for therapy. Acinetobacter strains respond most commonly to gentamicin, amikacin, or tobramycin and to newer penicillins or cephalosporins.

UNCOMMON GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA

Actinobacillus

Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans is a small gram-negative coccobacillary organism that grows slowly. As its name implies, it is often found in actinomycosis. It also causes severe periodontal disease in adolescents, endocarditis, abscesses, osteomyelitis, and other infections. It is treatable with tetracycline or chloramphenicol and sometimes with penicillin G, ampicillin, or erythromycin.

Achromobacter and Alcaligenes

The classification of species within the genera *Achromobacter* and *Alcaligenes* is changing and confusing. These groups include species of oxidase-positive, gram-negative rods. They have peritrichous flagella and are motile, which differentiates them from the pseudomonads. They alkalinize citrate medium and oxidation-fermentation medium containing glucose and are urease-negative. They may be part of the normal human bacterial flora and have been isolated from respirators, nebulizers, and renal dialysis systems. They are occasionally isolated from urine, blood, spinal fluid, wounds, and abscesses. *Achromobacter xylosoxidans* subspecies *xylosoxidans* has been isolated from many body sites but is uncommon as a sole cause of infection.

Ochrobactrum

The genus *Ochrobactrum* contains species previously classified in the genus *Achromobacter* and also has other *Ochrobactrum* species. They are similar to *Achromobacter* and *Alcaligenes*. *Ochrobactrum anthropi* is most often isolated from intravascular catheter-related bacteremia. It also may contaminate biologic products.

Capnocytophaga

The *Capnocytophaga* species are slow-growing capnophilic, gram-negative, fusiform or filamentous bacilli. They are fermentative and facultative anaerobes that require CO_2 for aerobic growth. They may show gliding motility, which can be seen as outgrowths of colonies. They produce a substance that modifies polymorphonuclear cell chemotactic activity. *Capnocytophaga ochracea, Capnocytophaga sputigena,* and *Capnocytophaga gingivalis* are members of the normal oral flora of humans. They have been associated with severe periodontal disease in juveniles. They occasionally cause bacteremia and severe systemic disease in immunocompromised patients, especially granulocytopenic patients with oral ulcerations. *Capnocytophaga canimorsus* (previously DF-2-dysgonic fermenter 2) in the oral flora of dogs. When transmitted to humans, it occasionally causes fulminant infection in asplenic patients, alcoholics, and, rarely, healthy people. *Capnocytophaga cynodegmi* (DF-2-like) is associated with wound infections from dog or cat bites or scratches.

Cardiobacterium

Cardiobacterium hominis, another bacterium with a descriptive name, is a facultatively anaerobic, pleomorphic gram-negative rod that is part of the normal flora of the upper respiratory tract and bowel and occasionally causes endocarditis. Using modern blood culture medium, it is no longer necessary to hold blood cultures for more than the standard 5- to 7-day incubation period to grow cardiobacterium.

Chromobacteria

Chromobacterium violaceum is a gram-negative bacillus resembling pseudomonads. The organism usually produces a violet pigment. It occurs in subtropical climates in soil and water and may infect animals and humans through breaks in the skin or via the gut. This may result in abscesses, diarrhea, and sepsis, with many deaths. Chromobacteria are often susceptible to chloramphenicol, tetracyclines, and aminoglycosides.

Eikenella corrodens

E corrodens is a small, fastidious, capnophilic gram-negative rod that is part of the gingival and bowel flora of 40–70% of humans. About 50% of isolates form pits in agar during the several days of incubation required for growth. Eikenella is oxidase-positive and does not ferment carbohydrates. It is found in mixed flora infections associated with contamination by oral mucosal organisms; it is often present with streptococci. It occurs frequently in infections from human bites. Eikenella is uniformly resistant to clindamycin, which can be used to make a selective agar medium. Eikenella is usually susceptible to ampicillin and the newer penicillins and cephalosporins.

Chryseobacterium

Organisms of the chryseobacterium group are long, thin, nonmotile gram-negative rods that are oxidase-positive, proteolytic, and weakly fermentative. They often form distinctive yellow colonies. Chryseobacteria are commonly found in sink drains, faucets, and on medical equipment that has been exposed to contaminated water and not sterilized. Chryseobacteria occasionally colonize the respiratory tract. *Chryseobacterium meningosepticum* rarely causes meningitis. *Chryseobacterium* species are often resistant to many antimicrobial drugs.

Kingella

The kingella group includes three species, of which *Kingella kingae* is an oxidase-positive, nonmotile organism that is hemolytic when grown on blood agar. It is a gram-negative rod, but coccobacillary and diplococcal forms are common. It is part of the normal oral flora and occasionally causes infections of bone, joints, and tendons. The organism probably enters the circulation with minor oral trauma such as tooth brushing. It is susceptible to penicillin, ampicillin, erythromycin, and other antimicrobial drugs.

Moraxella

The moraxella group includes six species. They are nonmotile, nonfermentative, and oxidase-positive. On staining, they appear as small gram-negative bacilli, coccobacilli, or cocci. They are members of the normal flora of the upper respiratory tract and occasionally cause bacteremia, endocarditis, conjunctivitis, meningitis, or other infections. Most of them are susceptible to penicillin and other antimicrobial drugs. *Moraxella catarrhalis* often produces β-lactamase (see Chapter 21).

REFERENCES

Gilligan PH et al: *Burkholderia, Stenotrophomonas, Ralstonia, Brevundimonas, Comamonas, Delftia, Pandoreae* and *Acidovorax*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Kiska DL, Gilligan PH: *Pseudomonas*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Maschmeyer G, Göbel UB: *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* and *Burkholderia cepacia*. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Pier GB, Ramphal R: *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Schreckenberger PC et al: *Acinetobacter, Achromobacter, Chryseobacterium, Moraxella,* and other nonfermentative gram-negative rods. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Steinberg JP, Del Rio C: Other gram-negative and gram-variable bacilli. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

INTRODUCTION

Vibrio, Aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Campylobacter, and *Helicobacter* species are gram-negative rods that are all widely distributed in nature. The vibrios are found in marine and surface waters. Aeromonas is found predominantly in fresh water and occasionally in cold-blooded animals. Plesiomonas exists in both cold-blooded and warm-blooded animals. The campylobacters are found in many species of animals, including many domesticated animals. *Vibrio cholerae* produces an enterotoxin that causes cholera, a profuse watery diarrhea that can rapidly lead to dehydration and death. *Campylobacter jejuni* is a common cause of enteritis in humans. Less commonly, aeromonas and, rarely, plesiomonas have been associated with diarrheal disease in humans. *Helicobacter pylori* has been associated with gastritis and duodenal ulcer disease.

THE VIBRIOS

Vibrios are among the most common bacteria in surface waters worldwide. They are curved aerobic rods and are motile, possessing a polar flagellum. *V cholerae* serogroups O1 and O139 cause cholera in humans, while other vibrios may cause sepsis or enteritis. The medically important vibrios are listed in Table 18–1.

Table 18–1. The Medically Important Vibrios.

Organism	Human Disease
V cholerae serogroups O1 and O139	Epidemic and pandemic cholera
V cholerae serogroups non-O1/non-O139	Cholera-like diarrhea; mild diarrhea; rarely, extraintestinal infection
V parahaemolyticus	Gastroenteritis, perhaps extraintestinal infection
Others	
V mimicus, V vulnificus, V hollisae, V fluvialis, V damsela, V anginolyticus, V metschnikovii	Ear, wound, soft tissue, and other extraintestinal infections, all uncommon

Vibrio cholerae

The epidemiology of cholera closely parallels the recognition of *V cholerae* transmission in water and the development of sanitary water systems.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Upon first isolation, *V cholerae* is a comma-shaped, curved rod 2–4 μm long (Figure 18–1). It is actively motile by means of a polar flagellum. On prolonged cultivation, vibrios may become straight rods that resemble the gram-negative enteric bacteria.

Figure 18–1.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Vibrio cholerae grown in broth showing slightly curved gram-negative rods.

CULTURE

V cholerae produces convex, smooth, round colonies that are opaque and granular in transmitted light. *V cholerae* and most other vibrios grow well at 37 °C on many kinds of media, including defined media containing mineral salts and asparagine as sources of carbon and nitrogen. *V cholerae* grows well on thiosulfate-citrate-bile-sucrose (TCBS) agar, on which it produces yellow colonies that are readily visible against the dark-green background of the agar. Vibrios are oxidase-positive, which differentiates them from enteric gram-negative bacteria. Characteristically, vibrios grow at a very high pH (8.5–9.5) and are rapidly killed by acid. Cultures containing fermentable carbohydrates therefore quickly become sterile.

In areas where cholera is endemic, direct cultures of stool on selective media such as TCBS, and enrichment cultures in alkaline peptone water are appropriate. However, routine stool cultures on special media such as

TCBS generally are not necessary or cost-effective in areas where cholera is rare.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

V cholerae regularly ferments sucrose and mannose but not arabinose. A positive oxidase test is a key step in the preliminary identification of *V cholerae* and other vibrios. *Vibrio* species are susceptible to the compound O/129 (2,4-diamino-6,7-diisopropylpteridine phosphate), which differentiates them from *Aeromonas* species, which are resistant to O/129. Most *Vibrio* species are halotolerant, and NaCl often stimulates their growth. Some vibrios are halophilic, requiring the presence of NaCl to grow. Another difference between vibrios and aeromonas is that vibrios grow on media containing 6% NaCl, whereas aeromonas does not.

Antigenic Structure & Biologic Classification

Many vibrios share a single heat-labile flagellar H antigen. Antibodies to the H antigen are probably not involved in the protection of susceptible hosts.

V cholerae has O lipopolysaccharides that confer serologic specificity. There are at least 139 O antigen groups. *V cholerae* strains of O group 1 and O group 139 cause classic cholera; occasionally, non-O1/non-O139 *V cholerae* causes cholera-like disease. Antibodies to the O antigens tend to protect laboratory animals against infections with *V cholerae.*

The *V cholerae* serogroup O1 antigen has determinants that make possible further typing; the serotypes are Ogawa, Inaba, and Hikojima. Two biotypes of epidemic *V cholerae* have been defined, classic and El Tor. The El Tor biotype produces a hemolysin, gives positive results on the Voges-Proskauer test, and is resistant to polymyxin B. Molecular techniques can also be used to type *V cholerae.* Typing is used for epidemiologic studies, and tests generally are done only in reference laboratories.

V cholerae O139 is very similar to *V cholerae* O1 El Tor biotype. *V cholerae* O139 does not produce the O1 lipopolysaccharide and does not have all the genes necessary to make this antigen. *V cholerae* O139 makes a polysaccharide capsule like other non-O1 *V cholerae* strains, while *V cholerae* O1 does not make a capsule.

Vibrio cholerae Enterotoxin

V cholerae produce a heat-labile enterotoxin with a molecular weight of about 84,000, consisting of subunits A (MW 28,000) and B (see Chapter 10). Ganglioside GM_1 serves as the mucosal receptor for subunit B, which promotes entry of subunit A into the cell. Activation of subunit A_1 yields increased levels of intracellular cAMP and results in prolonged hypersecretion of water and electrolytes. There is increased sodium-dependent chloride secretion, and absorption of sodium and chloride is inhibited. Diarrhea occurs—as much as 20–30 L/d—with resulting dehydration, shock, acidosis, and death. The genes for *V cholerae* enterotoxin are on the bacterial chromosome. Cholera enterotoxin is antigenically related to LT of *Escherichia coli* and can stimulate the production of neutralizing antibodies. However, the precise role of antitoxic and antibacterial antibodies in protection against cholera is not clear.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Under natural conditions, *V cholerae* is pathogenic only for humans. A person with normal gastric acidity may have to ingest as many as 10^{10} or more *V cholerae* to become infected when the vehicle is water, because the organisms are susceptible to acid. When the vehicle is food, as few as 10^2–10^4 organisms are necessary because of the buffering capacity of food. Any medication or condition that decreases stomach acidity makes a person more susceptible to infection with *V cholerae.*

Cholera is not an invasive infection. The organisms do not reach the bloodstream but remain within the intestinal tract. Virulent *V cholerae* organisms attach to the microvilli of the brush border of epithelial cells. There they multiply and liberate cholera toxin and perhaps mucinases and endotoxin.

Clinical Findings

About 60% of infections with classic *V cholerae* are asymptomatic, as are about 75% of infections with the El Tor biotype. The incubation period is 1–4 days for persons who develop symptoms, depending largely upon the size of the inoculum ingested. There is a sudden onset of nausea and vomiting and profuse diarrhea with abdominal cramps. Stools, which resemble "rice water," contain mucus, epithelial cells, and large numbers of vibrios. There is rapid loss of fluid and electrolytes, which leads to profound dehydration, circulatory collapse, and anuria. The mortality rate without treatment is between 25% and 50%. The diagnosis of a full-blown case of cholera presents no problem in the presence of an epidemic. However, sporadic or mild cases are not readily differentiated from other diarrheal diseases. The El Tor biotype tends to cause milder disease than the classic biotype.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens for culture consist of mucus flecks from stools.

SMEARS

The microscopic appearance of smears made from stool samples is not distinctive. Dark-field or phase contrast microscopy may show the rapidly motile vibrios.

CULTURE

Growth is rapid in peptone agar, on blood agar with a pH near 9.0, or on TCBS agar, and typical colonies can be picked in 18 hours. For enrichment, a few drops of stool can be incubated for 6–8 hours in taurocholate-peptone broth (pH 8.0–9.0); organisms from this culture can be stained or subcultured.

SPECIFIC TESTS

V cholerae organisms are further identified by slide agglutination tests using anti-O group 1 or group 139 antisera and by biochemical reaction patterns.

Immunity

Gastric acid provides some protection against cholera vibrios.

An attack of cholera is followed by immunity to reinfection, but the duration and degree of immunity are not known. In experimental animals, specific IgA antibodies occur in the lumen of the intestine. Similar antibodies in serum develop after infection but last only a few months. Vibriocidal antibodies in serum (titer ≥ 1:20) have been associated with protection against colonization and disease. The presence of antitoxin antibodies has not been associated with protection.

Treatment

The most important part of therapy consists of water and electrolyte replacement to correct the severe dehydration and salt depletion. Many antimicrobial agents are effective against *V cholerae*. Oral tetracycline tends to reduce stool output in cholera and shortens the period of excretion of vibrios. In some endemic areas, tetracycline resistance of *V cholerae* has emerged; the genes are carried by transmissible plasmids.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Six pandemics (worldwide epidemics) of cholera occurred between 1817 and 1923, caused most likely by *V cholerae* O1 of the classic biotype and largely originating in Asia, usually the Indian subcontinent. The seventh pandemic began in 1961 in the Celebes Islands, Indonesia, with spread to Asia, the Middle East, and Africa. This pandemic has been caused by *V cholerae* biotype El Tor. Starting in 1991, the seventh pandemic spread to Peru and then to other countries of South America and Central America. Cases also occurred in Africa. Millions of people have had cholera in this pandemic. Some consider the cholera caused by the serotype O139 strain to be the eighth pandemic that began in the Indian subcontinent in 1992–1993, with spread to Asia. The disease has been rare in North America since the mid 1800s, but an endemic focus exists on the Gulf Coast of Louisiana and Texas.

Cholera is endemic in India and Southeast Asia. From these centers, it is carried along shipping lanes, trade routes, and pilgrim migration routes. The disease is spread by contact involving individuals with mild or early illness and by water, food, and flies. In many instances, only 1–5% of exposed susceptible persons develop disease. The carrier state seldom exceeds 3–4 weeks, and the importance of carriers in transmission is unclear. Vibrios survive in water for up to 3 weeks.

Vibrio cholerae lives in aquatic environments. And such environments are the vibrios natural reservoir. *Vibrio cholerae* lives attached to algae, copepods, and crustacean shells. It can survive for years and grow, but when conditions are not suitable for growth it can become dormant.

Control rests on education and on improvement of sanitation, particularly of food and water. Patients should be isolated, their excreta disinfected, and contacts followed up. Chemoprophylaxis with antimicrobial drugs may have a place. Repeated injection of a vaccine containing either lipopolysaccharides extracted from vibrios or dense vibrio suspensions can confer limited protection to heavily exposed persons (eg, family contacts) but is not effective as an epidemic control measure.

Vibrio parahaemolyticus & Other Vibrios

Vibrio parahaemolyticus is a halophilic bacterium that causes acute gastroenteritis following ingestion of contaminated seafood such as raw fish or shellfish. After an incubation period of 12–24 hours, nausea and vomiting, abdominal cramps, fever, and watery to bloody diarrhea occur. Fecal leukocytes are often observed. The enteritis tends to subside spontaneously in 1–4 days with no treatment other than restoration of water and electrolyte balance. No enterotoxin has yet been isolated from this organism. The disease occurs worldwide, with highest incidence in areas where people eat raw seafood. *V parahaemolyticus* does not grow well on some of the differential media used to grow salmonellae and shigellae, but it does grow well on blood agar. It also grows well on TCBS, where it yields green colonies. *V parahaemolyticus* is usually identified by its oxidase-positive growth on blood agar.

Vibrio vulnificus can cause severe wound infections, bacteremia, and probably gastroenteritis. It is a free-living estuarine bacterium found in the USA on the Atlantic, Gulf, and Pacific Coasts. Infections have been reported from Korea, and the organism may be distributed worldwide. *V vulnificus* is particularly apt to be found in oysters, especially in warm months. Bacteremia with no focus of infection occurs in persons who have eaten infected oysters and who have alcoholism or liver disease. Wounds may become infected in normal or immunocompromised persons who are in contact with water where the bacterium is present. Infection often proceeds rapidly, with development of severe disease. About 50% of the patients with bacteremia die. Wound infections may be mild but often proceed rapidly (over a few hours), with development of bullous skin lesions, cellulitis, and myositis with necrosis. Several of the first deaths in

Louisiana and Texas following hurricane Katrina were caused by *Vibrio vulnificus*. Because of the rapid progression of the infection, it is often necessary to treat with appropriate antibiotics before culture confirmation of the etiology can be obtained. Diagnosis is by culturing the organism on standard laboratory media; TCBS is the preferred medium for stool cultures, where most strains produce blue-green (sucrose-negative) colonies.

Tetracycline appears to be the drug of choice for *V vulnificus* infection; ciprofloxacin may be effective also based on in vitro activity.

Several other vibrios also cause disease in humans: *Vibrio mimicus* causes diarrhea after ingestion of uncooked seafood, particularly raw oysters. *Vibrio hollisae* and *Vibrio fluvialis* also cause diarrhea. *Vibrio alginolyticus* causes eye, ear, or wound infection after exposure to seawater. *Vibrio damsela* also causes wound infections. Other vibrios are very uncommon causes of disease in humans.

AEROMONAS

The taxonomy of the genus *Aeromonas* is in transition. The genus has been placed in the new family Aeromonadaceae from the family Vibrionaceae. Based on DNA hybridization groups, many genospecies have been recognized; some are renamed species, some are newly named, and some are not yet named. The following three groups are of primary clinical importance in human infections: *Aeromonas hydrophila* complex, *Aeromonas caviae* complex, and *Aeromonas veronii biovarsobria.*

Aeromonads are 1–4 μm long and are motile. Their colony morphology is similar to that of enteric gram-negative rods (Chapter 16), and they produce large zones of hemolysis on blood agar. *Aeromonas* species cultured from stool specimens grow readily on the differential media used to culture enteric gram-negative rods and can easily be confused with enteric bacteria. *Aeromonas* species are distinguished from the enteric gram-negative rods by finding a positive oxidase reaction in growth obtained from a blood agar plate. *Aeromonas* species are differentiated from vibrios by showing resistance to compound O/129 (see above) and lack of growth on media containing 6% NaCl.

Typically, aeromonads produce hemolysins. Some strains produce an enterotoxin. Cytotoxins and the ability to invade cells in tissue culture have been noted. However, none of these characteristics have been clearly shown to be associated with diarrheal disease in humans. Koch's postulates have not been satisfied, largely because there is no suitable animal model that reproduces human aeromonas-associated diarrhea.

Aeromonas strains are susceptible to tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, and cephalosporins.

PLESIOMONAS

Plesiomonas shigelloides is a gram-negative rod with polar flagella. Plesiomonas is most common in tropical and subtropical areas. It is a water and soil organism and has been isolated from freshwater fish and many animals. Most isolates from humans have been from stool cultures of patients with diarrhea. Plesiomonas grows on the differential media used to isolate salmonella and shigella from stool specimens (see Chapter 16). Some plesiomonas strains share antigens with *Shigella sonnei,* and cross-reactions with shigella antisera occur. Plesiomonas can be distinguished from shigellae in diarrheal stools by the oxidase test: Plesiomonas is oxidase-positive and shigellae are not. Plesiomonas is positive for DNase; this and other biochemical tests distinguish it from aeromonas.

CAMPYLOBACTER

Campylobacters cause both diarrheal and systemic diseases and are among the most widespread causes of infection in the world. Campylobacter infection of domesticated animals also is widespread. The classification of bacteria within the family Campylobacteriaceae has changed frequently. Some species previously classified as campylobacters have been reclassified in the genus *Helicobacter*. The genus *Arcobacter* has been created. The organisms that cause intestinal or systemic illness are discussed in this section. *Helicobacter pylori,* which causes gastric infection, is discussed separately below. *Campylobacter jejuni* is the prototype organism in the group and is a very common cause of diarrhea in humans.

Campylobacter jejuni & Campylobacter coli

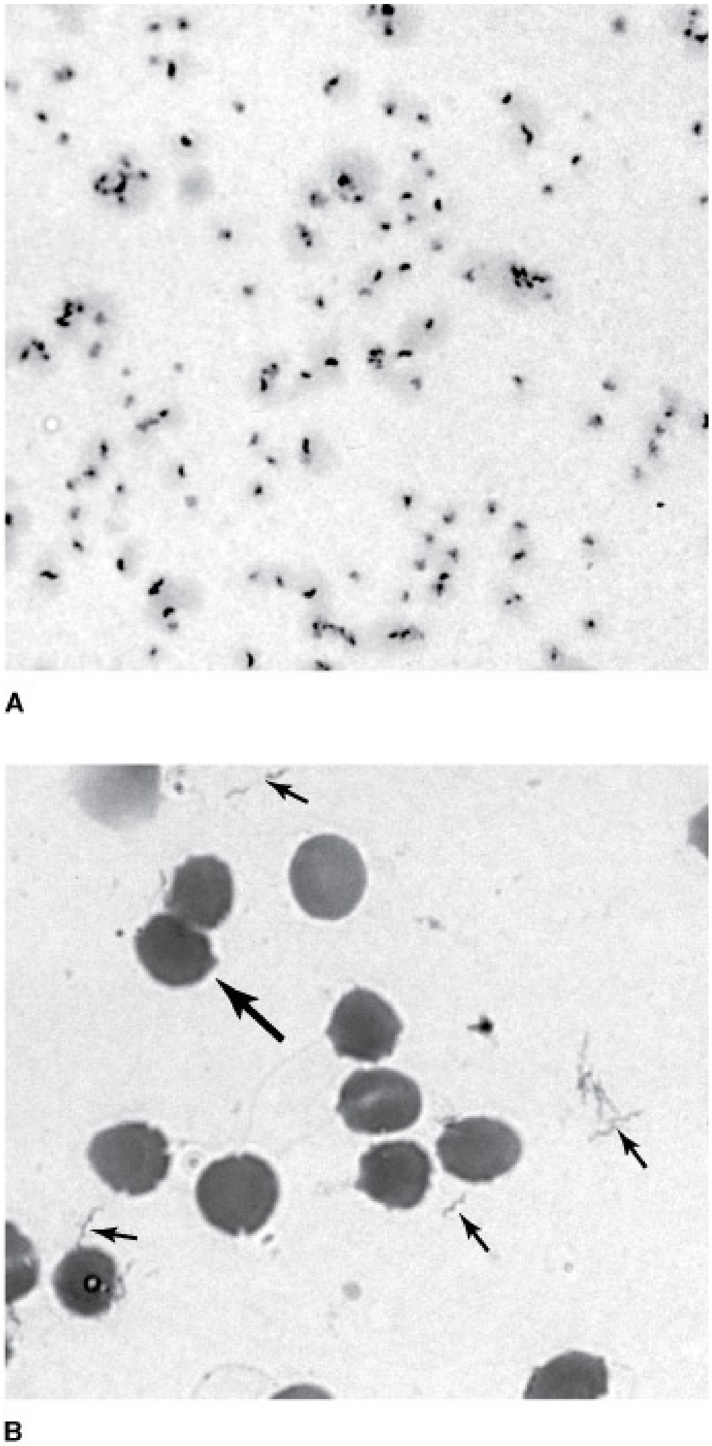
Campylobacter jejuni and *Campylobacter coli* have emerged as common human pathogens, causing mainly enteritis and occasionally systemic infection. *C jejuni* and *C coli* cause infections that are clinically indistinguishable, and laboratories generally do not differentiate between the two species. Between 5% and 10% of infections reported to be caused by *C jejuni* are probably caused by *C coli.* These bacteria are at least as common as salmonellae and shigellae as a cause of diarrhea; an estimated 2 million cases occur in the United States each year.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

C jejuni and the other campylobacters are gram-negative rods with comma, S, or "gull-wing" shapes (Figure 18–2). They are motile, with a single polar flagellum, and do not form spores.

Figure 18–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: *Campylobacter jejuni* grown on solid medium showing "comma" or "gull wing"-shaped gram-negative bacilli. B: Campylobacters (*small arrows*) in a patient's blood culture; numerous red blood cells (*large arrow*) are also seen.

CULTURE

The culture characteristics are most important in the isolation and identification of *C jejuni* and the other campylobacters. Selective media are needed, and incubation must be in an atmosphere with reduced O_2 (5% O_2) with added CO_2 (10% CO_2). A relatively simple way to produce the incubation atmosphere is to place the plates in an anaerobe incubation jar without the catalyst and to produce the gas with a commercially available gas-generating pack or by gas exchange. Incubation of primary plates for isolation of *C jejuni* should be at 42 °C. Although *C jejuni* grows well at 36–37 °C, incubation at 42 °C prevents growth of most of the other bacteria present in feces, thus simplifying the identification of *C jejuni.* Several selective media are in widespread use. Skirrow's medium contains vancomycin, polymyxin B, and trimethoprim to inhibit growth of other bacteria. Other selective media also contain antimicrobials, including cephalothin or cefoperazone, and inhibitory compounds; because they contain a cephalosporin, they will not grow *C fetus* and several other *Campylobacter* species. The selective media are suitable for isolation of *C jejuni* at 42 °C; when media without antibiotics are incubated at 36–37 °C, other campylobacters may be isolated. The colonies tend to be colorless or gray. They may be watery and spreading or round and convex, and both colony types may appear on one agar plate.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Because of the selective media and incubation conditions for growth, an abbreviated set of tests is usually all that is necessary for identification. *C jejuni* and the other campylobacters pathogenic for humans are oxidase- and catalase-positive. Campylobacters do not oxidize or ferment carbohydrates. Gram-stained smears show typical morphology. Nitrate reduction, hydrogen sulfide production, hippurate tests, and antimicrobial susceptibilities can be used for further identification of species.

Antigenic Structure & Toxins

The campylobacters have lipopolysaccharides with endotoxic activity. Cytopathic extracellular toxins and enterotoxins have been found, but the significance of the toxins in human disease is not well defined.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The infection is acquired by the oral route from food, drink, or contact with infected animals or animal products. *C jejuni* is susceptible to gastric acid, and ingestion of about 10^4 organisms is usually necessary to produce infection. This inoculum is similar to that required for salmonella and shigella infection but less than that for vibrio infection. The organisms multiply in the small intestine, invade the epithelium, and produce inflammation that results in the appearance of red and white blood cells in the stools. Occasionally, the bloodstream is invaded and a clinical picture of enteric fever develops. Localized tissue invasion coupled with the toxic activity appears to be responsible for the enteritis.

Clinical Findings

Clinical manifestations are acute onset of crampy abdominal pain, profuse diarrhea that may be grossly bloody, headache, malaise, and fever. Usually the illness is self-limited to a period of 5–8 days, but occasionally it continues longer. *C jejuni* isolates are usually susceptible to erythromycin, and therapy shortens the duration of fecal shedding of bacteria. Most cases resolve without antimicrobial therapy.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Diarrheal stool is the usual specimen. Campylobacters from other types of specimens are usually incidental findings or are found in the setting of known outbreaks of disease.

SMEARS

Gram-stained smears of stool may show the typical "gull wing"-shaped rods. Dark-field or phase contrast microscopy may show the typical darting motility of the organisms.

CULTURE

Culture on the selective media described above is the definitive test to diagnose *C jejuni* enteritis. If another species of campylobacter is suspected, medium without a cephalosporin should be used and incubated at 36–37 °C.

Epidemiology & Control

Campylobacter enteritis resembles other acute bacterial diarrheas, particularly shigella dysentery. The source of infection may be food (eg, milk, undercooked fowl) or contact with infected animals or humans and their excreta. Outbreaks arising from a common source, eg, unpasteurized milk, may require public health control measures.

Campylobacter fetus

Campylobacter fetus subspecies *fetus* is an opportunistic pathogen that causes systemic infections in immunocompromised patients. It may occasionally cause diarrhea. The gastrointestinal tract may be the portal of entry when *C fetus* causes bacteremia and systemic infection. *C fetus* has several surface array proteins (S protein, MW 100,000–149,000) which form a capsule-like structure on the surface of the organism (as compared with the polysaccharide capsules of pathogens such as *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*). In a mouse model of *C fetus* infection, the presence of the S protein as a surface capsule correlated with the ability of the bacteria to cause bacteremia after oral challenge and cause death in a high percentage of the animals.

Other Campylobacters

Campylobacter species other than *C jejuni* are encountered infrequently. This is partially due to the standard methods used for isolation of campylobacters from stool specimens: incubation at 42 °C and use of medium containing a cephalosporin. *Campylobacter lari* is often found in seagulls and occasionally causes diarrhea in humans. *Campylobacter upsaliensis* from dogs occasionally causes diarrhea in humans. *Helicobacter fennelliae* and *Helicobacter cinaedi* can cause either diarrheal or extraintestinal disease. The *Arcobacter* species are uncommon enteric pathogens.

HELICOBACTER PYLORI

Helicobacter pylori is a spiral-shaped gram-negative rod. *H pylori* is associated with antral gastritis, duodenal (peptic) ulcer disease, gastric ulcers, and gastric carcinoma. Other *Helicobacter* species that infect the gastric mucosa exist but are rare.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

H pylori has many characteristics in common with campylobacters. It has multiple flagella at one pole and is actively motile.

CULTURE

Culture sensitivity can be limited by prior therapy, contamination with other mucosal bacteria, and other factors. *H pylori* grows in 3–6 days when incubated at 37 °C in a microaerophilic environment, as for *C* *jejuni*. The media for primary isolation include Skirrow's medium with vancomycin, polymyxin B, and trimethoprim, chocolate medium, and other selective media with antibiotics (eg, vancomycin, nalidixic acid, amphotericin). The colonies are translucent and 1–2 mm in diameter.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

H pylori is oxidase-positive and catalase-positive, has a characteristic morphology, is motile, and is a strong producer of urease.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

H pylori grows optimally at a pH of 6.0–7.0 and would be killed or not grow at the pH within the gastric lumen. Gastric mucus is relatively impermeable to acid and has a strong buffering capacity. On the lumen side of the mucus, the pH is low (1.0–2.0) while on the epithelial side the pH is about 7.4. *H pylori* is found deep in the mucous layer near the epithelial surface where physiologic pH is present. *H pylori* also produces a protease that modifies the gastric mucus and further reduces the ability of acid to diffuse through the mucus. *H pylori* produces potent urease activity, which yields production of ammonia and further buffering of acid. *H pylori* is quite motile, even in mucus, and is able to find its way to the epithelial surface. *H pylori* overlies gastric-type but not intestinal-type epithelial cells.

In human volunteers, ingestion of *H pylori* resulted in development of gastritis and hypochlorhydria. There is a strong association between the presence of *H pylori* infection and duodenal ulceration. Antimicrobial therapy results in clearing of *H pylori* and improvement of gastritis and duodenal ulcer disease.

The mechanisms by which *H pylori* causes mucosal inflammation and damage are not well defined but probably involve both bacterial and host factors. The bacteria invade the epithelial cell surface to a limited degree. Toxins and lipopolysaccharide may damage the mucosal cells, and the ammonia produced by the urease activity may directly damage the cells also.

Histologically, gastritis is characterized by chronic and active inflammation. Polymorphonuclear and mononuclear cell infiltrates are seen within the epithelium and lamina propria. Vacuoles within cells are often pronounced. Destruction of the epithelium is common, and glandular atrophy may occur. *H pylori* thus may be a major risk factor for gastric cancer.

Clinical Findings

Acute infection can yield an upper gastrointestinal illness with nausea and pain; vomiting and fever may be present also. The acute symptoms may last for less than 1 week or as long as 2 weeks. Once colonized, the *H pylori* infection persists for years and perhaps decades or even a lifetime. About 90% of patients with duodenal ulcers and 50–80% of those with gastric ulcers have *H pylori* infection. *H pylori* also may have a role in gastric carcinoma and lymphoma.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Gastric biopsy specimens can be used for histologic examination or minced in saline and used for culture. Blood is collected for determination of serum antibodies.

SMEARS

The diagnosis of gastritis and *H pylori* infection can be made histologically. A gastroscopy procedure with biopsy is required. Routine stains demonstrate gastritis, and Giemsa or special silver stains can show the curved or spiraled organisms.

CULTURE

As above.

ANTIBODIES

Several assays have been developed to detect serum antibodies specific for *H pylori.* The serum antibodies persist even if the *H pylori* infection is eradicated, and the role of antibody tests in diagnosing active infection or following therapy is therefore limited.

SPECIAL TESTS

Rapid tests to detect urease activity are widely used for presumptive identification of *H pylori* in specimens. Gastric biopsy material can be placed onto a urea-containing medium with a color indicator. If *H pylori* is present, the urease rapidly splits the urea (1–2 days) and the resulting shift in pH yields a color change in the medium. In vivo tests for urease activity can be done also. ^{13}C- or ^{14}C-labeled urea is ingested by the patient. If *H pylori* is present, the urease activity generates labeled CO_2 that can be detected in the patient's exhaled breath.

Detection of *H pylori* antigen in stool specimens is appropriate as a test of cure for patients with known *H pylori* infection who have been treated.

Immunity

Patients infected with *H pylori* develop an IgM antibody response to the infection. Subsequently, IgG and IgA are produced, and these persist, both systemically and at the mucosa, in high titer in chronically infected persons. Early antimicrobial treatment of *H pylori* infection blunts the antibody response; such patients are thought to be subject to repeat infection.

Treatment

Triple therapy with metronidazole and either bismuth subsalicylate or bismuth subcitrate plus either amoxicillin or tetracycline for 14 days eradicates *H pylori* infection in 70–95% of patients. An acid-suppressing agent given for 4–6 weeks enhances ulcer healing. Proton pump inhibitors directly inhibit *H pylori* and appear to be potent urease inhibitors. Either 1 week of a proton pump inhibitor plus amoxicillin and clarithromycin or of amoxicillin plus metronidazole also is highly effective.

Epidemiology & Control

H pylori is present on the gastric mucosa of less than 20% of persons under age 30 but increases in prevalence to 40–60% of persons age 60, including persons who are asymptomatic. In developing countries, the prevalence of infection may be 80% or higher in adults. Person-to-person transmission of *H pylori* is likely because intrafamilial clustering of infection occurs. Acute epidemics of gastritis suggest a common source for *H pylori.*

REFERENCES

Abbott SL: *Aeromonas*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Blaser MJ, Allos BM: *Campylobacter jejuni* and related species. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Blaser MJ: *Helicobacter pylori* and other gastric *Helicobacter* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Farmer JJ III, Janda JM, Birkhead K: *Vibrio*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Nachamkin I: *Campylobacter* and *Arcobacter*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Neill MA, Carpenter CCJ: Other pathogenic vibrios. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Seas C, Gotuzzo E: *Vibrio cholerae*. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Steinberg JP, Del Rio C: Other gram-negative and gram-variable bacilli. In: *Mandell, Douglas and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Versalovic J, Fox JG: *Helicobacter*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

THE *HAEMOPHILUS* SPECIES

This is a group of small, gram-negative, pleomorphic bacteria that require enriched media, usually containing blood or its derivatives, for isolation. *Haemophilus influenzae* type b is an important human pathogen; *Haemophilus ducreyi,* a sexually transmitted pathogen, causes chancroid; other *Haemophilus* species are among the normal flora of mucous membranes and only occasionally cause disease.

Haemophilus influenzae

Haemophilus influenzae is found on the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract in humans. It is an important cause of meningitis in children and occasionally causes respiratory tract infections in children and adults.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

In specimens from acute infections, the organisms are short (1.5 μm) coccoid bacilli, sometimes occurring in pairs or short chains. In cultures, the morphology depends both on age and on the medium. At 6–8 hours in rich medium, the small coccobacillary forms predominate. Later there are longer rods, lysed bacteria, and very pleomorphic forms.

Organisms in young cultures (6–18 hours) on enriched medium have a definite capsule. The capsule is the antigen used for "typing" *H influenzae* (see below).

CULTURE

On chocolate agar, flat, grayish-brown colonies with diameters of 1–2 mm are present after 24 hours of incubation. IsoVitaleX in media enhances growth. *H influenzae* does not grow on sheep blood agar except around colonies of staphylococci ("satellite phenomenon"). *H haemolyticus* and *H parahaemolyticus* are hemolytic variants of *H influenzae* and *H parainfluenzae,* respectively.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Identification of organisms of the haemophilus group depends in part upon demonstrating the need for certain growth factors called X and V. Factor X acts physiologically as hemin; factor V can be replaced by nicotinamide adenine nucleotide (NAD) or other coenzymes. Colonies of staphylococci on sheep blood agar cause the release of NAD, yielding the satellite growth phenomenon. The requirements for X and V factors of various *Haemophilus* species are listed in Table 19–1. Carbohydrates are fermented poorly and irregularly.

Table 19–1. Characteristics and Growth Requirements of the *Haemophilus* Species Important to Humans. (X = Heme; V = Nicotinamide-Adenine Dinucleotide.)

	Requires		
Species	X	V	Hemolysis
H influenzae (H aegyptius)	+	+	-
H parainfluenzae	-	+	-
H ducreyi	+	-	-
H haemolyticus	+	+	+
H parahaemolyticus	-	+	+
H aphrophilus	-	-	-
H paraphrophilus	-	+	-
H paraphrophaemolyticus	-	+	+
H segnis	-	+	-

VARIATION

In addition to morphologic variation, *H influenzae* has a marked tendency to lose its capsule and the associated type specificity. Nonencapsulated variant colonies lack iridescence.

TRANSFORMATION

Under proper experimental circumstances, the DNA extracted from a given type of *H influenzae* is capable of transferring that type specificity to other cells (transformation). Resistance to ampicillin and chloramphenicol is controlled by genes on transmissible plasmids.

Antigenic Structure

Encapsulated *H influenzae* contains capsular polysaccharides (MW > 150,000) of one of six types (a–f). The capsular antigen of type b is a polyribose-ribitol phosphate (PRP). Encapsulated *H influenzae* can be typed by slide agglutination, coagglutination with staphylococci, or agglutination of latex particles coated with type-specific antibodies. A capsule swelling test with specific antiserum is analogous to the quellung test for pneumococci. Typing can also be done by immunofluorescence. Most *H influenzae* organisms in the normal flora of the upper respiratory tract are not encapsulated.

The somatic antigens of *H influenzae* consist of outer membrane proteins. Lipooligosaccharides (endotoxins) share many structures with those of neisseriae.

Pathogenesis

H influenzae produces no exotoxin. The nonencapsulated organism is a regular member of the normal respiratory flora of humans. The capsule is antiphagocytic in the absence of specific anticapsular antibodies. The polyribose phosphate capsule of type b *H influenzae* is the major virulence factor.

The carrier rate in the upper respiratory tract for *H influenzae* type b is 2–4%. The carrier rate for non-typeable *H influenzae* is 50–80% or higher. Type b *H influenzae* causes meningitis, pneumonia and empyema, epiglottitis, cellulitis, septic arthritis, and occasionally other forms of invasive infection.

Nontypeable *H influenzae* tends to cause chronic bronchitis, otitis media, sinusitis, and conjunctivitis following breakdown of normal host defense mechanisms. The carrier rate for the encapsulated types a and c–f is low (1–2%), and these capsular types rarely cause disease. Although type b can cause chronic bronchitis, otitis media, sinusitis, and conjunctivitis, it does so much less commonly than nontypeable *H influenzae.* Similarly, nontypeable *H influenzae* only occasionally causes invasive disease (about 5% of cases).

The blood of many persons over age 3–5 years is bactericidal for *H influenzae,* and clinical infections are less frequent in such individuals. However, bactericidal antibodies have been absent from 25% of adults in the United States, and clinical infections have occurred in adults.

Clinical Findings

H influenzae type b enters by way of the respiratory tract. There may be local extension with involvement of the sinuses or the middle ear. *H influenzae* type b and pneumococci are two of the most common etiologic agents of bacterial otitis media and acute sinusitis. The organisms may reach the bloodstream and be carried to the meninges or, less frequently, may establish themselves in the joints to produce septic arthritis. Prior to the use of the conjugate vaccine, *H influenzae* was the most common cause of bacterial meningitis in children age 5 months to 5 years in the United States. Clinically, it resembles other forms of childhood meningitis, and diagnosis rests on bacteriologic demonstration of the organism.

Occasionally, a fulminating obstructive laryngotracheitis with swollen, cherry-red epiglottis develops in infants and requires prompt tracheostomy or intubation as a lifesaving procedure. Pneumonitis and epiglottitis due to *H influenzae* may follow upper respiratory tract infections in small children and old or debilitated people. Adults may have bronchitis or pneumonia due to *H influenzae.*

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens consist of nasopharyngeal swabs, pus, blood, and spinal fluid for smears and cultures.

DIRECT IDENTIFICATION

Commercial kits are available for immunologic detection of *H influenzae* antigens in spinal fluid. A positive test indicates that the fluid contains high concentrations of specific polysaccharide from *H influenzae* type b. These antigen detection tests generally are not more sensitive than a Gram stain and therefore are not widely used.

CULTURE

Specimens are grown on IsoVitaleX-enriched chocolate agar until typical colonies appear. *H influenzae* is differentiated from related gram-negative bacilli by its requirements for X and V factors and by its lack of hemolysis on blood agar (Table 19–1).

Tests for X (heme) and V (nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide) factor requirements can be done in several ways. The *Haemophilus* species that require V factor grow around paper strips or disks containing V factor placed on the surface of agar that has been autoclaved before the blood was added (V factor is heat-labile). Alternatively, a strip containing X factor can be placed in parallel with one containing V factor on agar deficient in these nutrients. Growth of *Haemophilus* in the area between the strips indicates requirement for both factors. A better test for X factor requirement is based on the inability of *H influenzae* (and a few other *Haemophilus* species) to synthesize heme from δ-aminolevulinic acid. The inoculum is incubated with the δ-

aminolevulinic acid. Haemophilus organisms that do not require X factor synthesize porphobilinogen, porphyrins, protoporphyrin IX, and heme. The presence of red fluorescence under ultraviolet light (approximately 360 nm) indicates the presence of porphyrins and a positive test. *Haemophilus* species that synthesize porphyrins (and thus heme) are not *H influenzae.* (See Table 19–1.)

Immunity

Infants under age 3 months may have serum antibodies transmitted from the mother. During this time *H influenzae* infection is rare, but subsequently the antibodies are lost. Children often acquire *H influenzae* infections, which are usually asymptomatic but may be in the form of respiratory disease or meningitis. *H influenzae* has been the most common cause of bacterial meningitis in children from 5 months to 5 years of age. By age 3–5 years, many unimmunized children have naturally acquired anti-PRP antibodies that promote complement-dependent bactericidal killing and phagocytosis. Immunization of children with *H influenzae* type b conjugate vaccine induces the same antibodies.

There is a correlation between the presence of bactericidal antibodies and resistance to major *H influenzae* type b infections. However, it is not known whether these antibodies alone account for immunity. Pneumonia or arthritis due to *H influenzae* can develop in adults with such antibodies.

Treatment

The mortality rate of untreated *H influenzae* meningitis may be up to 90%. Many strains of *H influenzae* type b are susceptible to ampicillin, but up to 25% produce β-lactamase under control of a transmissible plasmid and are resistant. Essentially all strains are susceptible to the third-generation cephalosporins. Cefotaxime given intravenously gives excellent results. Prompt diagnosis and antimicrobial therapy are essential to minimize late neurologic and intellectual impairment. Prominent among late complications of *H influenzae* type b meningitis is the development of a localized subdural accumulation of fluid that requires surgical drainage.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Encapsulated *H influenzae* type b is transmitted from person to person by the respiratory route. *H influenzae* type b disease can be prevented by administration of Haemophilus b conjugate vaccine to children. Currently four conjugate vaccines are available for use: PRP-HbOC, in which the conjugate is CRM197, a nontoxic diphtheria toxin; PRP-OMP, the outer membrane protein complex of *Neisseria meningitidis*; PRP-T, which uses tetanus toxoid; and PRP-D, which uses diphtheria toxoid. All four are licensed for children over 12 months of age; only PRP-D is not recommended or licensed for children under 12 months of age. HbOC and PRP-T are also available in combination with the childhood diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis (DTP and DTaP) vaccines. Widespread use of *H influenzae* type b vaccine has reduced the incidence of *H influenzae* type b meningitis in children by over 95%. The vaccine reduces the carrier rates for *H influenzae* type b.

Contact with patients suffering from *H influenzae* clinical infection poses little risk for adults but presents a definite risk for nonimmune siblings and other nonimmune children under age 4 years who are close contacts. Prophylaxis with rifampin is recommended for such children.

Haemophilus aegyptius

This organism was formerly called the Koch-Weeks bacillus; it is sometimes called *H influenzae* biotype III, but the current designation is *H influenzae* biogroup *aegyptius*. It resembles *H influenzae* closely and has been associated with a highly communicable form of conjunctivitis. *H aegyptius* is the cause of Brazilian purpuric fever, a disease of children characterized by fever, purpura, shock, and death.

Haemophilus aphrophilus

This organism is sometimes encountered in infective endocarditis and pneumonia. It is present in the normal oral and respiratory tract flora. It is related to *Actinobacillus (Haemophilus) actinomycetemcomitans.*

Haemophilus ducreyi

Haemophilus ducreyi causes chancroid (soft chancre), a sexually transmitted disease. Chancroid consists of a ragged ulcer on the genitalia, with marked swelling and tenderness. The regional lymph nodes are enlarged and painful. The disease must be differentiated from syphilis, herpes simplex infection, and lymphogranuloma venereum.

The small gram-negative rods occur in strands in the lesions, usually in association with other pyogenic microorganisms. *H ducreyi* requires X factor but not V factor. It is grown best from scrapings of the ulcer base on chocolate agar containing 1% IsoVitaleX and vancomycin, 3 μg/mL, and incubated in 10% CO_2 at 33 °C. There is no permanent immunity following chancroid infection. Treatment with intramuscular ceftriaxone, oral trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, or oral erythromycin often results in healing in 2 weeks.

Other *Haemophilus* Species

Haemophilus haemoglobinophilus requires X factor but not V factor and has been found in dogs but not in human disease. *Haemophilus haemolyticus* is the most markedly hemolytic organism of the group in vitro; it occurs both in the normal nasopharynx and in association with rare upper respiratory tract infections of moderate severity in childhood. *Haemophilus parainfluenzae* resembles *H influenzae* and is a normal inhabitant of the human respiratory tract; it has been encountered occasionally in infective endocarditis and in urethritis. *H suis* resembles *H influenzae* bacteriologically and acts synergistically with swine influenza virus to produce the disease in hogs.

THE BORDETELLAE

There are several species of bordetella. *Bordetella pertussis,* a highly communicable and important pathogen of humans, causes whooping cough (pertussis). *Bordetella parapertussis* can cause a similar disease. *Bordetella bronchiseptica (Bordetella bronchicanis)* causes diseases in animals such as kennel cough in dogs and snuffles in rabbits, and only occasionally causes respiratory disease and bacteremia in humans, primarily in immunocompromised hosts. *Bordetella avium* causes turkey coryza and is not known to infect humans. Newer species and their disease associations include *B hinzii* (bacteremia and respiratory illness); *B holmseii* (bacteremia among immunosuppressed patients) and *B trematum* (wounds and otitis media). *B pertussis, B parapertussis,* and *B bronchiseptica* are closely related, with 72–94% DNA homology and very limited differences in multilocus enzyme analysis; the three species might be considered three subspecies within a species. *B avium* is a distinct species.

Bordetella pertussis

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The organisms are minute gram-negative coccobacilli resembling *H influenzae.* With toluidine blue stain, bipolar metachromatic granules can be demonstrated. A capsule is present.

CULTURE

Primary isolation of *B pertussis* requires enriched media. Bordet-Gengou medium (potato-blood-glycerol agar) that contains penicillin G, 0.5 μg/mL, can be used; however, a charcoal-containing medium similar to that used for *Legionella pneumophila* is preferable. The plates are incubated at 35–37 °C for 3–7 days in a moist environment (eg, a sealed plastic bag). The small, faintly staining gram-negative rods are identified by immunofluorescence staining. *B pertussis* is nonmotile.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

The organism is a strict aerobe and forms acid but not gas from glucose and lactose. It does not require X and V factors on subculture. Hemolysis of blood-containing medium is associated with virulent *B pertussis.*

VARIATION

When isolated from patients and cultured on enriched media, *B pertussis* is in the hemolytic and pertussis toxin-producing virulent phase. There are two mechanisms for *B pertussis* to shift to nonhemolytic, non-toxin-producing avirulent forms. Reversible phenotypic modulation occurs when *B pertussis* is grown under certain environmental conditions (eg, 28 °C versus 37 °C, the presence of $MgSO_4$, etc). Reversible phase variation follows a low-frequency mutation in the genetic locus that controls the expression of the virulence factors (see below). It is possible that these mechanisms play a role in the infectious process, but such a role has not been demonstrated clinically.

Antigenic Structure, Pathogenesis, & Pathology

B pertussis produces a number of factors that are involved in the pathogenesis of disease. One locus on the *B pertussis* chromosome acts as a central regulator of virulence genes. This locus has two bordetella virulence genes, *bvgA* and *bvgS.* The products of the A and S loci are similar to those of known two-component regulatory systems. *bvgS* responds to environmental signals while *bvgA* is a transcriptional activator of the virulence genes. The filamentous hemagglutinin mediates adhesion to ciliated epithelial cells. Pertussis toxin promotes lymphocytosis, sensitization to histamine, and enhanced insulin secretion and has ADP-ribosylating activity, with an A/B structure and mechanism of action similar to that of cholera toxin. The filamentous hemagglutinin and pertussis toxin are secreted proteins and are found outside of the *B pertussis* cells. Adenylate cyclase toxin, dermonecrotic toxin, and hemolysin also are regulated by the bvg system. The tracheal cytotoxin inhibits DNA synthesis in ciliated cells and is not regulated by *bvg.* Pili probably play a role in adherence of the bacteria to the ciliated epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract. The lipopolysaccharide in the cell wall may also be important in causing damage to the epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract.

B pertussis survives for only brief periods outside the human host. There are no vectors. Transmission is largely by the respiratory route from early cases and possibly via carriers. The organism adheres to and multiplies rapidly on the epithelial surface of the trachea and bronchi and interferes with ciliary action. The blood is not invaded. The bacteria liberate the toxins and substances that irritate surface cells, causing coughing and marked lymphocytosis. Later, there may be necrosis of parts of the epithelium and polymorphonuclear infiltration, with peribronchial inflammation and interstitial pneumonia. Secondary invaders like staphylococci or *H influenzae* may give rise to bacterial pneumonia. Obstruction of the smaller bronchioles by mucous plugs results in atelectasis and diminished oxygenation of the blood. This probably contributes to the frequency of convulsions in infants with whooping cough.

Clinical Findings

After an incubation period of about 2 weeks, the "catarrhal stage" develops, with mild coughing and sneezing. During this stage, large numbers of organisms are sprayed in droplets, and the patient is highly infectious but not very ill. During the "paroxysmal" stage, the cough develops its explosive character and the characteristic "whoop" upon inhalation. This leads to rapid exhaustion and may be associated with vomiting, cyanosis, and convulsions. The "whoop" and major complications occur predominantly in infants; paroxysmal coughing predominates in older children and adults. The white blood count is high (16,000–30,000/μL), with an absolute lymphocytosis. Convalescence is slow. *B pertussis* is a common cause of prolonged (4–6 weeks) cough in adults. Rarely, whooping cough is followed by the serious and potentially fatal complication of encephalitis. Several types of adenovirus and *Chlamydia pneumoniae* can produce a clinical picture resembling that caused by *B pertussis.*

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

A saline nasal wash is the preferred specimen. Nasopharyngeal swabs or cough droplets expelled onto a "cough plate" held in front of the patient's mouth during a paroxysm are sometimes used but are not as good as the saline nasal wash.

DIRECT FLUORESCENT ANTIBODY (FA) TEST

The FA reagent can be used to examine nasopharyngeal swab specimens. However, false-positive and false-negative results may occur; the sensitivity is about 50%. The FA test is most useful in identifying *B pertussis* after culture on solid media.

CULTURE

The saline nasal wash fluid is cultured on solid medium agar (see above). The antibiotics in the media tend to inhibit other respiratory flora but permit growth of *B pertussis*. Organisms are identified by immunofluorescence staining or by slide agglutination with specific antiserum.

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION

PCR is the most sensitive method to diagnosis pertussis. Primers for both *B pertussis* and *B parapertussis* should be included. When available, the PCR test should replace both culture and direct fluorescent antibody tests.

SEROLOGY

Serologic tests on patients are of little diagnostic help because a rise in agglutinating or precipitating antibodies does not occur until the third week of illness. A single serum with high titer antibodies may be helpful in diagnosing the cause of a long-term cough, one of several weeks' duration.

Immunity

Recovery from whooping cough or immunization is followed by immunity. Second infections may occur but are mild; reinfections occurring years later in adults may be severe. It is probable that the first defense against *B pertussis* infection is the antibody that prevents attachment of the bacteria to the cilia of the respiratory epithelium.

Treatment

B pertussis is susceptible to several antimicrobial drugs in vitro. Administration of erythromycin during the catarrhal stage of disease promotes elimination of the organisms and may have prophylactic value. Treatment after onset of the paroxysmal phase rarely alters the clinical course. Oxygen inhalation and sedation may prevent anoxic damage to the brain.

Prevention

Every infant should receive three injections of pertussis vaccine during the first year of life followed by a booster series for a total of five doses. There are multiple acellular pertussis vaccines licensed in the United States and elsewhere. Use of these vaccines is recommended. The acellular vaccines have one to five antigens. Vaccines with three to five antigens yield a better immune response than those with one or two antigens. Because different vaccines have different antigens, the same product should be used throughout an immunization series. Pertussis vaccine is usually administered in combination with toxoids of diphtheria and tetanus (DTP).

Prophylactic administration of erythromycin for 5 days may also benefit unimmunized infants or heavily exposed adults.

Epidemiology & Control

Whooping cough is endemic in most densely populated areas worldwide and also occurs intermittently in epidemics. The source of infection is usually a patient in the early catarrhal stage of the disease. Communicability is high, ranging from 30% to 90%. Most cases occur in children under age 5 years; most deaths occur in the first year of life.

Control of whooping cough rests mainly on adequate active immunization of all infants.

Bordetella parapertussis

This organism may produce a disease similar to whooping cough, but it is generally less severe. The infection is often subclinical. *Bordetella parapertussis* grows more rapidly than typical *B pertussis* and produces larger colonies. It also grows on blood agar. *B parapertussis* has a silent copy of the pertussis toxin gene.

Bordetella bronchiseptica

Bordetella bronchiseptica is a small gram-negative bacillus that inhabits the respiratory tracts of canines, in which it may cause "kennel cough" and pneumonitis. It causes snuffles in rabbits and atrophic rhinitis in swine. It is infrequently responsible for chronic respiratory tract infections in humans, primarily in individuals with underlying diseases. It grows on blood agar medium. *B bronchiseptica* has a silent copy of the pertussis toxin gene.

THE BRUCELLAE

The brucellae are obligate parasites of animals and humans and are characteristically located intracellularly. They are relatively inactive metabolically. *Brucella melitensis* typically infects goats; *Brucella suis,* swine; *Brucella abortus,* cattle; and *Brucella canis,* dogs. Other species are found only in animals. Although named as species, DNA relatedness studies have shown there is only one species in the genus, *Brucella melitensis,* with multiple biovars. The disease in humans, brucellosis (undulant fever, Malta fever), is characterized by an acute bacteremic phase followed by a chronic stage that may extend over many years and may involve many tissues.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The appearance in young cultures varies from cocci to rods 1.2 μm in length, with short coccobacillary forms predominating. They are gram-negative but often stain irregularly, and they are aerobic, nonmotile, and non-spore-forming.

CULTURE

Small, convex, smooth colonies appear on enriched media in 2–5 days.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Brucellae are adapted to an intracellular habitat, and their nutritional requirements are complex. Some strains have been cultivated on defined media containing amino acids, vitamins, salts, and glucose. Fresh specimens from animal or human sources are usually inoculated on trypticase-soy agar or blood culture media. *B abortus* requires 5–10% CO_2 for growth, whereas the other three species grow in air.

Brucellae utilize carbohydrates but produce neither acid nor gas in amounts sufficient for classification. Catalase and oxidase are produced by the four species that infect humans. Hydrogen sulfide is produced by many strains, and nitrates are reduced to nitrites.

Brucellae are moderately sensitive to heat and acidity. They are killed in milk by pasteurization.

VARIATION

The typical virulent organism forms a smooth, transparent colony; upon culture, it tends to change to the rough form, which is avirulent.

The serum of susceptible animals contains a globulin and a lipoprotein that suppress growth of nonsmooth, avirulent types and favor the growth of virulent types. Resistant animal species lack these factors, so that rapid mutation to avirulence can occur. D-Alanine has a similar effect in vitro.

Antigenic Structure

Differentiation among *Brucella* species or biovars is made possible by their characteristic sensitivity to dyes and their production of H_2S. Few laboratories have maintained the procedures for these tests, and the brucellae are seldom placed into the traditional species. Because brucellae are hazardous in the laboratory, tests to classify them should be performed only in reference public health laboratories using biologic safety cabinets.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Although each species of brucella has a preferred host, all can infect a wide range of animals, including humans.

The common routes of infection in humans are the intestinal tract (ingestion of infected milk), mucous membranes (droplets), and skin (contact with infected tissues of animals). Cheese made from unpasteurized goats' milk is a particularly common vehicle. The organisms progress from the portal of entry, via lymphatic channels and regional lymph nodes, to the thoracic duct and the bloodstream, which distributes them to the parenchymatous organs. Granulomatous nodules that may develop into abscesses form in lymphatic tissue, liver, spleen, bone marrow, and other parts of the reticuloendothelial system. In such lesions, the brucellae are principally intracellular. Osteomyelitis, meningitis, or cholecystitis also occasionally occurs. The main histologic reaction in brucellosis consists of proliferation of mononuclear cells, exudation of fibrin, coagulation necrosis, and fibrosis. The granulomas consist of epithelioid and giant cells, with central necrosis and peripheral fibrosis.

The brucellae that infect humans have apparent differences in pathogenicity. *B abortus* usually causes mild disease without suppurative complications; noncaseating granulomas of the reticuloendothelial system are found. *B canis* also causes mild disease. *B suis* infection tends to be chronic with suppurative lesions;

caseating granulomas may be present. *B melitensis* infection is more acute and severe.

Persons with active brucellosis react more markedly (fever, myalgia) than normal persons to injected brucella endotoxin. Sensitivity to endotoxin thus may play a role in pathogenesis.

Placentas and fetal membranes of cattle, swine, sheep, and goats contain erythritol, a growth factor for brucellae. The proliferation of organisms in pregnant animals leads to placentitis and abortion in these species. There is no erythritol in human placentas, and abortion is not part of brucella infection of humans.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period is 1–6 weeks. The onset is insidious, with malaise, fever, weakness, aches, and sweats. The fever usually rises in the afternoon; its fall during the night is accompanied by drenching sweat. There may be gastrointestinal and nervous symptoms. Lymph nodes enlarge, and the spleen becomes palpable. Hepatitis may be accompanied by jaundice. Deep pain and disturbances of motion, particularly in vertebral bodies, suggest osteomyelitis. These symptoms of generalized brucella infection generally subside in weeks or months, although localized lesions and symptoms may continue.

Following the initial infection, a chronic stage may develop, characterized by weakness, aches and pains, low-grade fever, nervousness, and other nonspecific manifestations compatible with psychoneurotic symptoms. Brucellae cannot be isolated from the patient at this stage, but the agglutinin titer may be high. The diagnosis of "chronic brucellosis" is difficult to establish with certainty unless local lesions are present.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Blood should be taken for culture, biopsy material for culture (lymph nodes, bone, etc), and serum for serologic tests.

CULTURE

Brucella agar was specifically designed to culture *Brucella* species bacteria. The medium is highly enriched and—in reduced form—is used primarily in cultures for anaerobic bacteria. In oxygenated form, the medium grows *Brucella* species bacteria very well. However, infection with *Brucella* species is often not suspected when cultures of a patient's specimens are set up, and brucella agar incubated aerobically is seldom used. The *Brucella* species bacteria will grow on commonly used media, including trypticase soy medium with or without 5% sheep blood, brain heart infusion medium, and chocolate agar. Blood culture media (see below) readily grow *Brucella* species bacteria. Liquid medium used to culture *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* also supports the growth of at least some strains. All cultures should be incubated in 8–10% CO_2 at 35–37 °C and should be observed for 3 weeks before being discarded as negative; liquid media cultures should be blindly subcultured during this time.

Bone marrow and blood are the specimens from which brucellae are most often isolated. The method of choice for bone marrow is to use pediatric Isolator tubes, which do not require centrifugation, with inoculation of the entire contents of the tube onto solid media. Media used in semiautomated and automated blood culture systems readily grow brucellae, usually within 1 week; however, holding the cultures for 3 weeks is recommended. Negative cultures for brucella do not exclude the disease because brucellae can be cultivated from patients only during the acute phase of the illness or during recurrence of activity.

After a few days of incubation on agar media, the brucellae form colonies in the primary streak that are < 1 mm in diameter. They are nonhemolytic. The observation of tiny gram-negative coccobacilli that are catalase-positive and oxidase-positive suggests *Brucella* species. All further work on such a culture should be done in a biologic safety cabinet. A Christensen urea slant should be inoculated and observed frequently. A positive urease test is characteristic of *Brucella* species. *B suis* and some strains of *B melitensis* can yield a positive test less than 5 minutes after inoculating the slant; other strains will take a few hours to 24 hours. Bacteria that meet these criteria should be quickly submitted to a reference public health laboratory for presumptive identification. *Brucella* species are category B select agents. Molecular methods have been developed to rapidly differentiate among the various biovars.

SEROLOGY

IgM antibody levels rise during the first week of acute illness, peak at 3 months, and may persist during chronic disease. Even with appropriate antibiotic therapy, high IgM levels may persist for up to 2 years in a small percentage of patients. IgG antibody levels rise about 3 weeks after onset of acute disease, peak at 6–8 weeks, and remain high during chronic disease. IgA levels parallel the IgG levels. The usual serologic tests may fail to detect infection with *B canis.*

Agglutination Test

To be reliable, serum agglutination tests must be performed with standardized heat-killed, phenolized, smooth brucella antigens. IgG agglutinin titers above 1:80 indicate active infection. Individuals injected with cholera vaccine may develop agglutination titers to brucellae. If the serum agglutination test is negative in patients with strong clinical evidence of brucella infection, tests must be made for the presence of "blocking" antibodies. These can be detected by adding antihuman globulin to the antigen-serum mixture. Brucellosis agglutinins are cross-reactive with tularemia agglutinins, and tests for both diseases should be done on positive sera; usually, the titer for one disease will be much higher than that for the other.

Blocking Antibodies

These are IgA antibodies that interfere with agglutination by IgG and IgM and cause a serologic test to be negative in low serum dilutions (prozone) although positive in higher dilutions. These antibodies appear during the subacute stage of infection, tend to persist for many years independently of activity of infection, and are detected by the Coombs antiglobulin method.

ELISA Assays

IgG, IgA, and IgM antibodies may be detected using ELISA assays, which use cytoplasmic proteins as antigens. These assays tend to be more sensitive and specific than the agglutination test.

Immunity

An antibody response occurs with infection, and it is probable that some resistance to subsequent attacks is produced. Immunogenic fractions from brucella cell walls have a high phospholipid content; lysine predominates among eight amino acids; and there is no heptose (thus distinguishing the fractions from endotoxin).

Treatment

Brucellae may be susceptible to tetracyclines or ampicillin. Symptomatic relief may occur within a few days after treatment with these drugs is begun. However, because of their intracellular location, the organisms are not readily eradicated completely from the host. For best results, treatment must be prolonged. Combined treatment with a tetracycline (such as doxycycline) and either streptomycin for 2–3 weeks or rifampin for 6 weeks is recommended.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Brucellae are animal pathogens transmitted to humans by accidental contact with infected animal feces, urine, milk, and tissues. The common sources of infection for humans are unpasteurized milk, milk products, and cheese, and occupational contact (eg, farmers, veterinarians, slaughterhouse workers) with infected animals. Cheese made from unpasteurized goat's milk is a particularly common vehicle for transmission of brucellosis. Occasionally the airborne route may be important. Because of occupational contact, brucella infection is much more frequent in men. The majority of infections remain asymptomatic (latent).

Infection rates vary greatly with different animals and in different countries. Outside the United States, infection is more prevalent. Eradication of brucellosis in cattle can be attempted by test and slaughter, active immunization of heifers with avirulent live strain 19, or combined testing, segregation, and immunization. Cattle are examined by means of agglutination tests.

Active immunization of humans against brucella infection is experimental. Control rests on limitation of spread and possible eradication of animal infection, pasteurization of milk and milk products, and reduction of occupational hazards wherever possible.

FRANCISELLA TULARENSIS & TULAREMIA

F tularensis is widely found in animal reservoirs and is transmissible to humans by biting arthropods, direct contact with infected animal tissue, inhalation of aerosols, or ingestion of contaminated food or water. The resulting disease—tularemia—is relatively uncommon in the United States. The clinical presentation depends on the route of infection; six major syndromes are described (see Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings).

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

F tularensis is a small, gram-negative, coccobacillus. It is rarely seen in smears of tissue.

SPECIMENS

Blood is taken for serologic tests. The organism may be recovered in culture from lymph node aspirates, bone marrow, peripheral blood, deep tissue, and ulcer biopsies.

CULTURE

Growth requires enriched media containing cysteine. In the past, glucose-cysteine blood agar was preferred, but *F tularensis* will grow on commercially available hemin containing media such as chocolate agar, modified Thayer-Martin agar, and buffered charcoal yeast extract (BCYE) agar used to grow *Legionella* species. Media should be incubated in CO_2 at 35–37 °C for 2–5 days. Caution: In order to avoid laboratory-acquired infections, biosafety level three (BSL III) practices are required when working with live cultures suspected of containing *F tularensis*. Clinical specimens require BSL II facilities and practice.

SEROLOGY

All isolates are serologically identical, possessing a polysaccharide antigen and one or more protein antigens that cross-react with brucellae. However, there are two major biogroups of strains, called Jellison type A and type B. Type A occurs only in North America, is lethal for rabbits, produces severe illness in humans, ferments glycerol, and contains citrulline ureidase. Type B lacks these biochemical features, is not lethal for rabbits, produces milder disease in humans, and is isolated often from rodents or from water in Europe, Asia, and North America. Other biogroups are of low pathogenicity.

The usual antibody response consists of agglutinins developing 7–10 days after onset of illness.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

F tularensis is highly infectious: Penetration of the skin or mucous membranes or inhalation of 50 organisms can result in infection. Most commonly, organisms enter through skin abrasions. In 2–6 days, an inflammatory, ulcerating papule develops. Regional lymph nodes enlarge and may become necrotic, sometimes draining for weeks (ulceroglandular tularemia). Inhalation of an infective aerosol results in peribronchial inflammation and localized pneumonitis (pneumonic tularemia). Oculoglandular tularemia can develop when an infected finger or droplet touches the conjunctiva. Yellowish granulomatous lesions on the lids may be accompanied by preauricular adenopathy. The other forms of the disease are glandular tularemia (lymphadenopathy but no ulcers), oropharyngeal tularemia, and typhoidal tularemia (septicemia). In all cases there is fever, malaise, headache, and pain in the involved region and regional lymph nodes.

Because of the highly infectious nature of *F tularensis,* this organism is a potential agent of bioterrorism and is currently classified on the select agent list as a category A agent. Laboratories that recover a suspected *F tularensis* should notify public health officials and should send the isolate to a reference laboratory capable of performing definitive identification.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Although *F tularensis* may be recovered from the clinical specimens listed above, the diagnosis rests on serologic studies. Paired serum samples collected 2 weeks apart can show a rise in agglutination titer. A single serum titer of 1:160 is highly suggestive if the history and physical findings are compatible with the diagnosis. Because antibodies reactive in the agglutination test for tularemia also react in the test for brucellosis, both tests should be done for positive sera; the titer for the disease affecting the patient is usually fourfold greater than that for the other disease.

Treatment

Streptomycin or gentamicin therapy for 10 days almost always produces rapid improvement. Tetracycline may be equally effective, but relapses occur more frequently. *F tularensis* is resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics.

Prevention & Control

Humans acquire tularemia from handling infected rabbits or muskrats or from bites by an infected tick or deerfly. Less often, the source is contaminated water or food or contact with a dog or cat that has caught an infected wild animal. Avoidance is the key to prevention. The infection in wild animals cannot be controlled.

Persons at exceedingly high risk—particularly research laboratory personnel—may be immunized by the administration of a live attenuated strain of *F tularensis,* available only through a cooperative research agreement from the US Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases, Fort Detrick, Frederick, MD 21701. The vaccine is administered by multiple punctures through the skin and provides only partial immunity. A similar live vaccine has been administered in Russia on a large scale.

REFERENCES

Books

Hand WL: *Haemophilus* species (including chancroid). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Hewlett EL: *Bordetella* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Killian M: *Haemophilus.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Miscellaneous fastidious gram-negative bacilli. In: *Koneman's Color Atlas and Textbook of Diagnostic Microbiology,* 6th ed. Winn W Jr et al (editors). Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2006.

Moxon ER, Murphy TF: *Haemophilus influenzae.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Penn RL: *Francisella tularensis* (tularemia). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Young EJ: *Brucella* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Articles & Reviews

Pappas G et al: Brucellosis. N Engl J Med 2005;352:2325.

INTRODUCTION

The organisms discussed in this chapter are short, pleomorphic gram-negative rods that can exhibit bipolar staining. They are catalase-positive, oxidase-negative, and microaerophilic or facultatively anaerobic. Most have animals as their natural hosts, but they can produce serious disease in humans.

The genus *Yersinia* includes *Yersinia pestis,* the cause of plague; *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* and *Yersinia enterocolitica,* important causes of human diarrheal diseases; and others. Several species of *Pasteurella* are primarily animal pathogens but can also produce human disease.

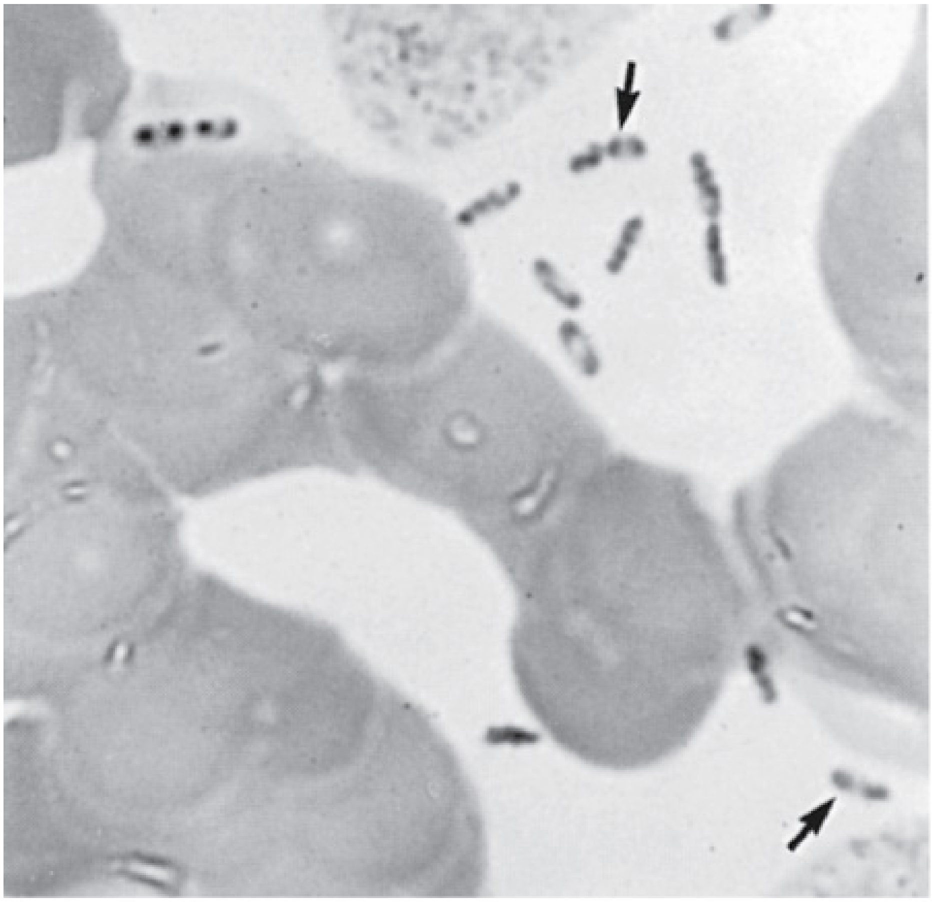
YERSINIA PESTIS & PLAGUE

Plague is an infection of wild rodents, transmitted from one rodent to another and occasionally from rodents to humans by the bites of fleas. Serious infection often results, which in previous centuries produced pandemics of "black death" with millions of fatalities.

Morphology & Identification

Y pestis is a gram-negative rod that exhibits striking bipolar staining with special stains (Figure 20–1). It is nonmotile. It grows as a facultative anaerobe on many bacteriologic media. Growth is more rapid in media containing blood or tissue fluids and fastest at 30 °C. In cultures on blood agar at 37 °C, colonies may be very small at 24 hours. A virulent inoculum, derived from infected tissue, produces gray and viscous colonies, but after passage in the laboratory the colonies become irregular and rough. The organism has little biochemical activity, and this is somewhat variable.

Figure 20–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Yersinia pestis (arrows) in blood, Wright-Giemsa stain. Some of the *Y pestis* organisms have bipolar staining, which gives them a hairpin-like appearance.

(Courtesy of K Gage, Plague Section, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Ft. Collins, Colorado.)

Antigenic Structure

All yersiniae possess lipopolysaccharides that have endotoxic activity when released. The three pathogenic species produce antigens and toxins that act as virulence factors. They have type III secretion systems that consist of a membrane-spanning complex that allows the bacteria to inject proteins directly into cytoplasm of the host cells. The virulent yersiniae produce V and W antigens, which are encoded by genes on a plasmid of approximately 70 kb. This is essential for virulence; the V and W antigens yield the requirement for calcium for growth at 37 °C. In *Y pestis* there is a capsular protein (fraction I) that is produced mainly at 37 °C and confers antiphagocytic properties; the gene for this protein is on a plasmid of approximately 110 kb. *Y pestis* has a 9.6-kb plasmid that yields a plasminogen-activating protease and temperature-dependent coagulase activity (20-28 °C, the temperature of the flea) and fibrinolytic activity (35-37 °C, the temperature of the host).

The three pathogenic yersiniae have a pathogenecity island (PAI) that encodes for an iron-scavenging siderophore (see Chapter 9).

Among several exotoxins produced, one is lethal for mice in amounts of 1 μg. This homogeneous protein (MW 74,000) produces beta-adrenergic blockade and is cardiotoxic in animals. Its role in human infection is unknown.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

When a flea feeds on a rodent infected with *Y pestis*, the ingested organisms multiply in the gut of the flea and, helped by the coagulase, block its proventriculus so that no food can pass through. Subsequently, the "blocked" and hungry flea bites ferociously and the aspirated blood, contaminated with *Y pestis* from the flea, is regurgitated into the bite wound. The inoculated organisms may be phagocytosed by polymorphonuclear cells and monocytes. The *Y pestis* organisms are killed by the polymorphonuclear cells but multiply in the monocytes; because the bacteria are multiplying at 37 °C, they produce the antiphagocytic protein and subsequently are able to resist phagocytosis. The pathogens rapidly reach the lymphatics and an intense hemorrhagic inflammation develops in the enlarged lymph nodes, which may undergo necrosis and become fluctuant. While the invasion may stop there, *Y pestis* organisms often reach the bloodstream and become widely disseminated. Hemorrhagic and necrotic lesions may develop in all organs; meningitis, pneumonia, and serosanguineous pleuropericarditis are prominent features.

Primary pneumonic plague results from inhalation of infective droplets (usually from a coughing patient), with hemorrhagic consolidation, sepsis, and death.

Clinical Findings

After an incubation period of 2–7 days, there is high fever and painful lymphadenopathy, commonly with greatly enlarged, tender nodes ("buboes") in the groin or axillae. Vomiting and diarrhea may develop with early sepsis. Later, disseminated intravascular coagulation leads to hypotension, altered mental status, and renal and cardiac failure. Terminally, signs of pneumonia and meningitis can appear, and *Y pestis* multiplies intravascularly and can be seen in blood smears.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Plague should be suspected in febrile patients who have been exposed to rodents in known endemic areas. Rapid recognition and laboratory confirmation of the disease are essential in order to institute lifesaving therapy.

SPECIMENS

Blood is taken for culture and aspirates of enlarged lymph nodes for smear and culture. Acute and convalescent sera may be examined for antibody levels. In pneumonia, sputum is cultured; in possible meningitis, cerebrospinal fluid is taken for smear and culture.

SMEARS

Material from needle aspiration is examined after staining with Giemsa's stain and with specific immunofluorescent stains. With Wayson's stain, *Y pestis* may show a striking bipolar appearance. Spinal fluid and sputum smears should also be stained.

CULTURE

All materials are cultured on blood agar and MacConkey's agar plates and in infusion broth. Growth on solid media may be slow, but blood cultures are often positive in 24 hours. Cultures can be tentatively identified by biochemical reactions. Definite identification of cultures is best done by immunofluorescence (confirmation available through state health department laboratories and by consultation with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Plague Branch, Fort Collins, CO).

All cultures are highly infectious and must be handled with extreme caution.

SEROLOGY

In patients who have not been previously vaccinated, a convalescent serum antibody titer of 1:16 or greater is presumptive evidence of *Y pestis* infection. A titer rise in two sequential specimens confirms the serologic diagnosis.

Treatment

Unless promptly treated, plague may have a mortality rate of nearly 50%; pneumonic plague, nearly 100%. The drug of choice is streptomycin. Tetracycline is an alternative drug and is sometimes given in combination with streptomycin. Drug resistance has been noted in *Y pestis.*

Epidemiology & Control

Plague is an infection of wild rodents (field mice, gerbils, moles, skunks, and other animals) that occurs in many parts of the world. The chief enzootic areas are India, Southeast Asia (especially Vietnam), Africa, and North and South America. The western states of the United States and Mexico always contain reservoirs of infection. Epizootics with high mortality rates occur intermittently; at such times, the infection can spread to domestic rodents (eg, rats) and other animals (eg, cats), and humans can be infected by flea bites or by contact. The commonest vector of plague is the rat flea *(Xenopsylla cheopis),* but other fleas may also transmit the infection.

The control of plague requires surveys of infected animals, vectors, and human contacts—in the United States this is done by county and state agencies with support from the Plague Branch of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention—and by destruction of plague-infected animals. If a human case is diagnosed, health authorities must be notified promptly. All patients with suspected plague should be isolated, particularly if pulmonary involvement has not been ruled out. All specimens must be treated with extreme caution. Contacts of patients with suspected plague pneumonia should receive tetracycline, as chemoprophylaxis.

A formalin-killed vaccine is available for travelers to hyperendemic areas and for persons at special high risk.

YERSINIA ENTEROCOLITICA & YERSINIA PSEUDOTUBERCULOSIS

These are non-lactose-fermenting gram-negative rods that are urease-positive and oxidase-negative. They grow best at 25 °C and are motile at 25 °C but nonmotile at 37 °C. They are found in the intestinal tract of a variety of animals, in which they may cause disease, and are transmissible to humans, in whom they can produce a variety of clinical syndromes.

Y enterocolitica exists in more than 50 serotypes; most isolates from human disease belong to serotypes O3, O8, and O9. There are striking geographic differences in the distribution of *Y enterocolitica* serotypes. *Y pseudotuberculosis* exists in at least six serotypes, but serotype O1 accounts for most human infections. *Y enterocolitica* can produce a heat-stable enterotoxin, but the role of this toxin in diarrhea associated with infection is not well defined.

Y enterocolitica has been isolated from rodents and domestic animals (eg, sheep, cattle, swine, dogs, and cats) and waters contaminated by them. Transmission to humans probably occurs by contamination of food, drink, or fomites. *Y pseudotuberculosis* occurs in domestic and farm animals and birds, which excrete the organisms in feces. Human infection probably results from ingestion of materials contaminated with animal feces. Person-to-person transmission with either of these organisms is probably rare.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

An inoculum of 10^8–10^9 yersiniae must enter the alimentary tract to produce infection. During the incubation period of 5–10 days, yersiniae multiply in the gut mucosa, particularly the ileum. This leads to inflammation and ulceration, and leukocytes appear in feces. The process may extend to mesenteric lymph nodes and, rarely, to bacteremia.

Early symptoms include fever, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. Diarrhea ranges from watery to bloody and may be due to an enterotoxin or to invasion of the mucosa. At times, the abdominal pain is severe and located in the right lower quadrant, suggesting appendicitis. One to 2 weeks after onset some patients develop arthralgia, arthritis, and erythema nodosum, suggesting an immunologic reaction to the infection. Very rarely, yersinia infection produces pneumonia, meningitis, or sepsis; in most cases, it is self-limited.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens may be stool, blood, or material obtained at surgical exploration. Stained smears are not contributory.

CULTURE

The number of yersiniae in stool may be small and can be increased by "cold enrichment": a small amount of feces or a rectal swab is placed in buffered saline, pH 7.6, and kept at 4 °C for 2–4 weeks; many fecal organisms do not survive, but *Y enterocolitica* will multiply. Subcultures made at intervals on MacConkey agar may yield yersiniae.

SEROLOGY

In paired serum specimens taken 2 or more weeks apart, a rise in agglutinating antibodies can be shown; however, cross reactions between yersiniae and other organisms (vibrios, salmonellae, brucellae) may confuse the results.

Treatment

Most yersinia infections with diarrhea are self-limited, and the possible benefits of antimicrobial therapy are unknown. *Y enterocolitica* is generally susceptible to aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, tetracycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, piperacillin, third-generation cephalosporins, and fluoroquinolones; it is typically resistant to ampicillin and to first-generation cephalosporins. Proved yersinia sepsis or meningitis has a high mortality rate, but deaths occur mainly in immunocompromised patients. Yersinia sepsis can be successfully treated with third-generation cephalosporins (possibly in combination with an aminoglycoside) or a fluoroquinolone (possibly in combination with another antimicrobial). In cases where clinical manifestations strongly point to either appendicitis or mesenteric adenitis, surgical exploration has been the rule unless several simultaneous cases indicate that yersinia infection is likely.

Prevention & Control

Contact with farm and domestic animals, their feces, or materials contaminated by them probably accounts for most human infections. Meat and dairy products have occasionally been indicated as sources of infection, and group outbreaks have been traced to contaminated food or drink. Conventional sanitary precautions are probably helpful. There are no specific preventive measures.

PASTEURELLA

Pasteurella species are primarily animal pathogens, but they can produce a range of human diseases. The generic term pasteurellae formerly included all yersiniae and francisellae as well as the pasteurellae discussed below.

Pasteurellae are nonmotile gram-negative coccobacilli with a bipolar appearance on stained smears. They are aerobes or facultative anaerobes that grow readily on ordinary bacteriologic media at 37 °C. They are all oxidase-positive and catalase-positive but diverge in other biochemical reactions.

Pasteurella multocida occurs worldwide in the respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts of many domestic and wild animals. It is perhaps the most common organism in human wounds inflicted by bites from cats and dogs. It is one of the common causes of hemorrhagic septicemia in a variety of animals, including rabbits, rats, horses, sheep, fowl, cats, and swine. It can also produce human infections in many systems and may at times be part of normal human flora.

Pasteurella haemolytica occurs in the upper respiratory tract of cattle, sheep, swine, horses, and fowl. It is a prominent cause of epizootic pneumonia in cattle and sheep and of fowl cholera in chickens and turkeys, causing major economic losses. Human infection appears to be rare.

Pasteurella pneumotropica is a normal inhabitant of the respiratory tract and gut of mice and rats and can cause pneumonia or sepsis when the host–parasite balance is disturbed. A few human infections have followed animal bites.

Pasteurella ureae has rarely been found in animals but occurs as part of a mixed flora in human chronic respiratory disease or other suppurative infections.

Clinical Findings

The most common presentation is a history of animal bite followed within hours by an acute onset of redness, swelling, and pain. Regional lymphadenopathy is variable, and fever is often low grade. Pasteurella infections sometimes present as bacteremia or chronic respiratory infection without an evident connection with animals.

Pasteurella multocida is susceptible to most antibiotics. Penicillin G is considered the drug of choice for *P multocida* infections resulting from animal bites. Tetracyclines and fluoroquinolones are alternative drugs.

REFERENCES

Bockemühl J, Wong JD: *Yersinia*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Butler T, Dennis DT: *Yersinia* species, including plague. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

von Graevenitz A, Zbinden R, Mutters R: *Actinobacillus, Capnocytophaga, Eikenella, Kingella, Pasteurella,* and other fastidious or rarely encountered gram-negative rods. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Zurlo JJ: *Pasteurella* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

INTRODUCTION

The family *Neisseriaceae* includes the genera *Neisseria, Kingella, Eikenella, Simonsiella, Alysiella,* and several unnar gram-negative cocci that usually occur in pairs. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (gonococci) and *Neisseria meningitidis* (meni found associated with or inside polymorphonuclear cells. Some neisseriae are normal inhabitants of the human resp extracellularly. Members of the group are listed in Table 211.

Table 211. Biochemical Reactions of the Neisseriae and *Moraxella Catarrhalis* .

N gonorrhoeae
+
+
-
-
-
-
N meningitidis
+
+
+
-
-
-
N lactamica
+
+
+
+
-
-
N sicca
-
+
+
-
+
-
N subflava
-

+
+
-
-
N mucosa
-
+
+
-
+
-
N flavescens
-
-
-
-
-
-
N cinerea
-
-
-
-
-
N polysaccharea
+
+
-
-
-
N elongata
-
/w
-
-
-
-
M catarrhalis
-
-
-
-
-
+

		Acid Formed from		
	Growth on MTM, ML, or NYC Medium[1]	Glucose	Maltose	Lact

---

[1] MTM = modified Thayer-Martin medium; ML = Martin-Lewis medium; NYC = New York City medium.

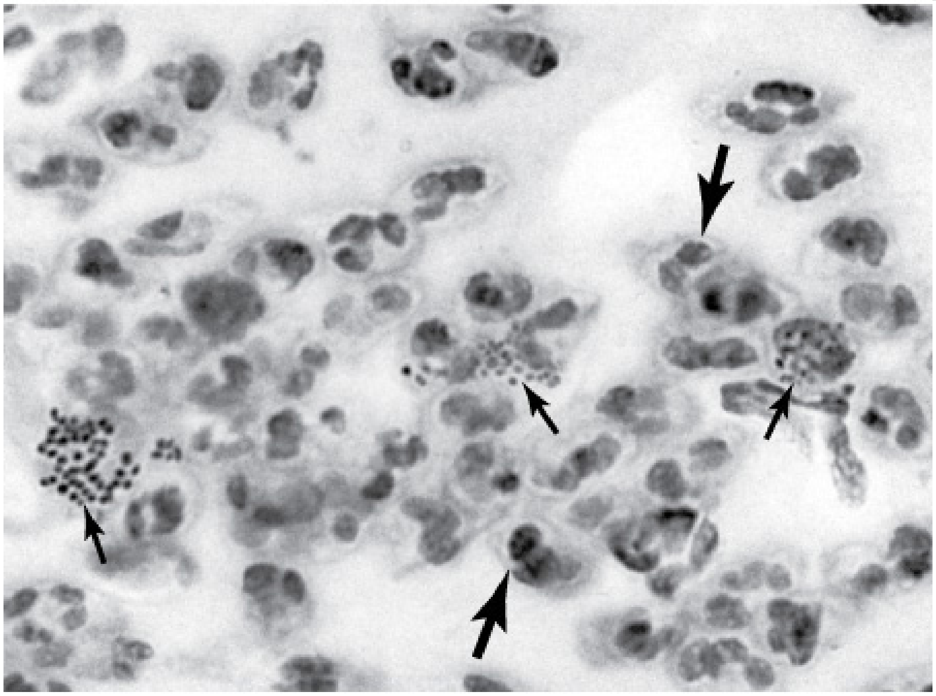
Gonococci and meningococci are closely related, with 70% DNA homology, and are differentiated by a few laborator
polysaccharide capsules, whereas gonococci do not, and meningococci rarely have plasmids whereas most gonococ
differentiated by the usual clinical presentations of the diseases they cause: Meningococci typically are found in the
gonococci cause genital infections. The clinical spectra of the diseases caused by gonococci and meningococci overla

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The typical neisseria is a gram-negative, nonmotile diplococcus, approximately 0.8 µm in diameter (Figures 211 and
organisms occur in pairs, the flat or concave sides are adjacent.

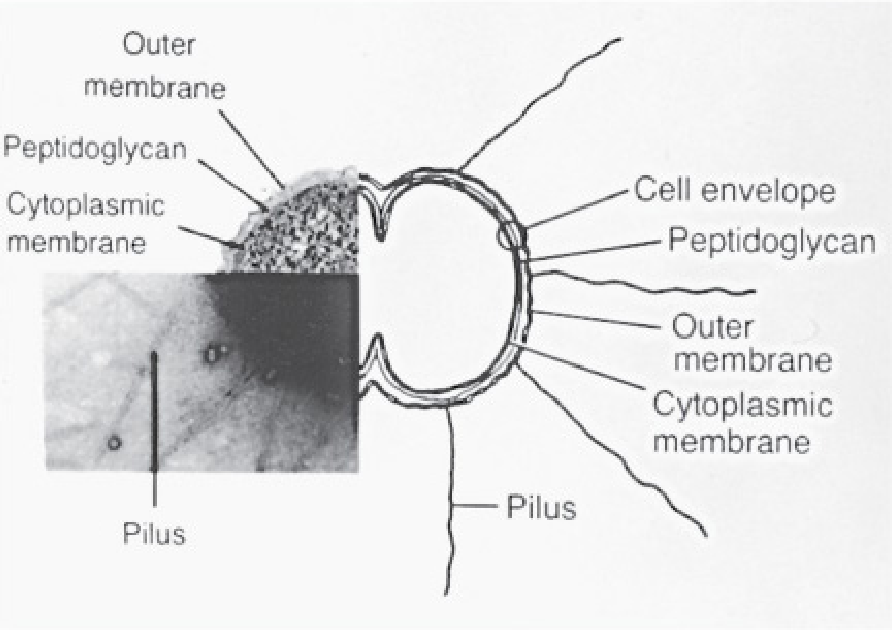
Figure 211.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Gram stain of a urethral exudate of a patient with gonorrhea. Nuclei and cell membrane outlines of many polymorphonuclear c
gram-negative diplococci *(Neisseria gonorrhoeae)* in clumps are marked by the small arrows.

Figure 212.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Collage and drawing of *N gonorrhoeae* showing pili and the three layers of the cell envelope.

CULTURE

In 48 hours on enriched media (eg, Mueller-Hinton, modified Thayer-Martin), gonococci and meningococci form con
diameter. Colonies are transparent or opaque, nonpigmented, and nonhemolytic. *Neisseria flavescens, Neisseria su*
pigmentation. *Neisseria sicca* produces opaque, brittle, wrinkled colonies. *M catarrhalis* produces nonpigmented or

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

The neisseriae grow best under aerobic conditions, but some will grow in an anaerobic environment. They have com
carbohydrates, producing acid but not gas, and their carbohydrate fermentation patterns are a means of distinguish
and give positive oxidase reactions; the oxidase test is a key test for identifying them. When bacteria are spotted o
tetramethylparaphenylenediamine hydrochloride (oxidase), the neisseriae rapidly turn dark purple.

Meningococci and gonococci grow best on media containing complex organic substances such as heated blood, hem
containing 5% CO_2 (eg, candle jar). Growth is inhibited by some toxic constituents of the medium, eg, fatty acids o
sunlight, moist heat, and many disinfectants. They produce autolytic enzymes that result in rapid swelling and lysis

NEISSERIA GONORRHOEAE

Gonococci ferment only glucose and differ antigenically from the other neisseriae. Gonococci usually produce smalle
Gonococci that require arginine, hypoxanthine, and uracil (Arg^-, Hyx^-, Ura^- auxotype) tend to grow most slowly o
specimens or maintained by selective subculture have typical small colonies containing piliated bacteria. On nonsele
gonococci are also formed. Opaque and transparent variants of both the small and large colony types also occur; th
a surface-exposed protein, Opa.

Antigenic Structure

N gonorrhoeae is antigenically heterogeneous and capable of changing its surface structures in vitroand presumably include the following.

PILI (FIBRIAE)

Pili are the hair-like appendages that extend up to several micrometers from the gonococcal surface. They enhance phagocytosis. They are made up of stacked pilin proteins (MW 17,00021,000). The amino terminal of the pilin mole amino acids, is conserved. The amino acid sequence near the mid portion of the molecule also is conserved; this po cells and is less prominent in the immune response. The amino acid sequence near the carboxyl terminal is highly v in the immune response. The pilins of almost all strains of *N gonorrhoeae* are antigenically different, and a single st pilin.

POR

Por protein extends through the gonococcal cell membrane. It occurs in trimers to form pores in the surface throug may impact intracellular killing of gonococci within neutrophils by preventing phagosome-lysosome fusion. The mole Each strain of gonococcus expresses only one of two types of Por, but the Por of different strains is antigenically diff reactions with monoclonal antibodies has distinguished 18 serovars of PorA and 28 serovars of PorB. (Serotyping is

OPA PROTEINS

These proteins function in adhesion of gonococci within colonies and in attachment of gonococci to host cells, espec (CD66). One portion of the Opa molecule is in the gonococcal outer membrane, and the rest is exposed on the surfa to 28,000. A strain of gonococcus can express no, one, two, or occasionally three types of Opa, though each strain

RMP (PROTEIN III)

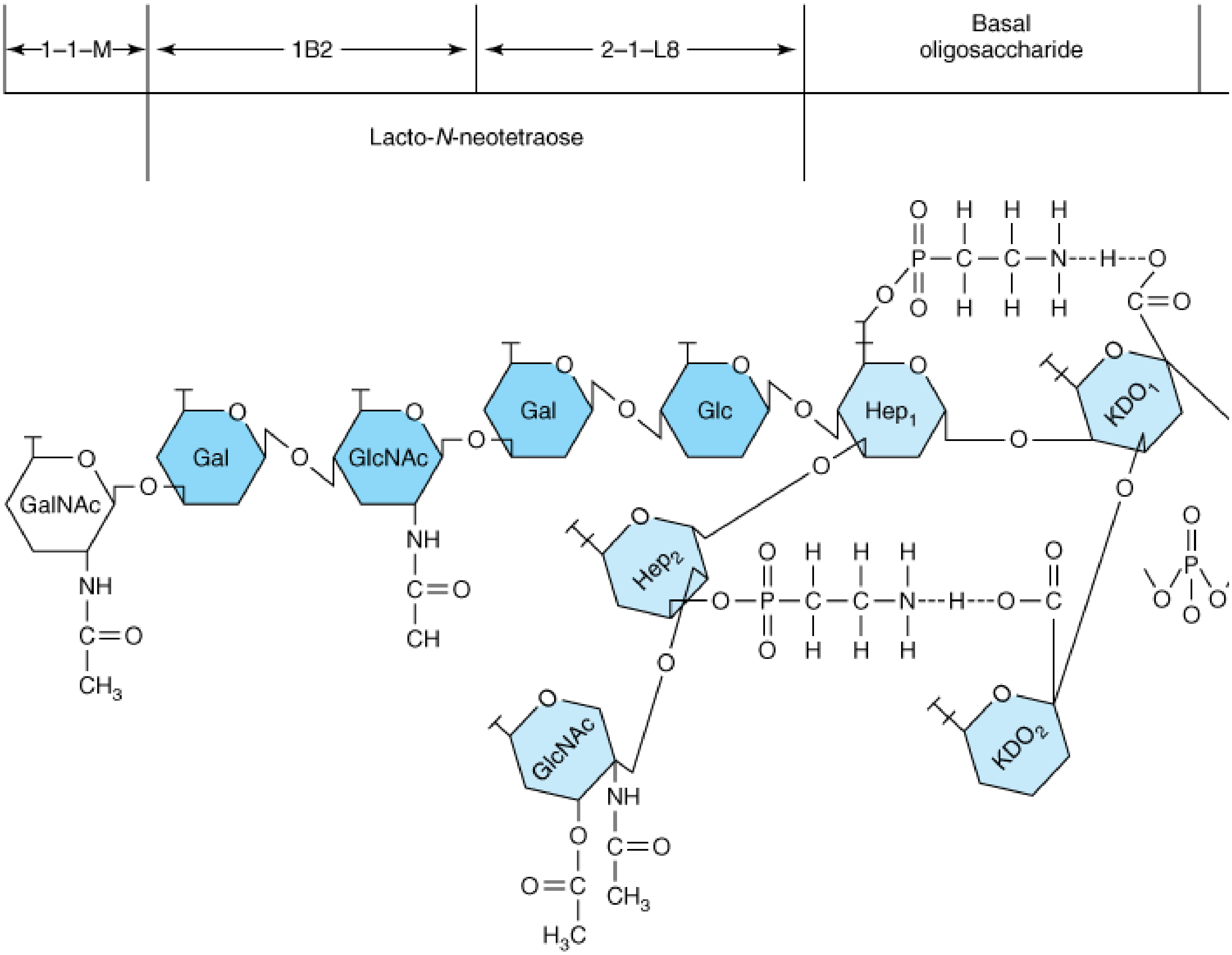
This protein (MW about 33,000) is antigenically conserved in all gonococci. It is a reduction-modifiable protein (Rm a reduced state. It associates with Por in the formation of pores in the cell surface.

LIPOOLIGOSACCHARIDE (LOS)

In contrast to the enteric gram-negative rods (see Chapters 2 and 16), gonococcal LPS does not have long O-antige molecular weight is 30007000. Gonococci can express more than one antigenically different LOS chain simultaneous the endotoxic effects of LOS.

In a form of molecular mimicry, gonococci make LOS molecules that structurally resemble human cell membrane gl The gonococcal LOS and the human glycosphingolipid of the same structural class react with the same monoclonal presence on the gonococcal surface of the same surface structures as human cells helps gonococci evade immune r

Figure 213.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structure of gonococcal lipooligosaccharide which has lacto-*N* -neotetraose and a terminal galactosamine in a structure similar
basal oligosaccharide is in light red and the lacto-*N* -neotetraose is in dark red.

(Courtesy of J McLeod Griffiss.)

The terminal galactose of human glycosphingolipids is often conjugated with sialic acid. Sialic acid is a nine-carbon,
acetylneuraminic acid (NANA). Gonococci do not make sialic acid but do make a sialyltransferase that functions to ta
5'-monophospho-*N* -acetylneuraminic acid (CMP-NANA) and place the NANA on the terminal galactose of a gonococc
pathogenesis of gonococcal infection. It makes the gonococci resistant to killing by the human antibody-complemen

receptors on phagocytic cells.

Neisseria meningitidis and *Haemophilus influenzae* make many but not all of the same LOS structures as *N gonorrh*
for some of the nonpathogenic *Neisseria* species are similar. Four of the various serogroups of *N meningitidis* make
that they also have biosynthetic pathways different from those of gonococci. These four serogroups sialylate their L

OTHER PROTEINS

Several antigenically constant proteins of gonococci have poorly defined roles in pathogenesis. Lip (H8) is a surfac
The Fbp (iron-binding protein), similar in molecular weight to Por, is expressed when the available iron supply is
an IgA1 protease that splits and inactivates IgA1, a major mucosal immunoglobulin of humans. Meningococci, *Hae*
elaborate similar IgA1 proteases.

Genetics & Antigenic Heterogeneity

Gonococci have evolved mechanisms for frequently switching from one antigenic form (pilin, Opa, or lipopolysaccha
This switching takes place in one in every $10^{2.5}$ 10^{3} gonococci, an extremely rapid rate of change for bacteria. Since
exposed antigens on gonococci, they are important in the immune response to infection. The molecules' rapid switc
gonococci elude the host immune system.

The switching mechanism for pilin, which has been the most thoroughly studied, is different from the mechanism fo

Gonococci have multiple genes that code for pilin, but only one gene is inserted into the expression site. Gonococci
with all or part of another pilin gene. This mechanism allows gonococci to express many antigenically different pilin

The switching mechanism of Opa involves, at least in part, the addition or removal from the DNA of one or more of
that codes for the structural Opa gene. The switching mechanism of lipopolysaccharide is unknown.

The antigens and heterogeneity of types are shown in Table 212.

Table 212. Antigenic Heterogeneity of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* .

Antigen	Number of Types
Pilin	Hundreds
Por (protein) (US System)	PorA with 18 subtypes PorB with 28 subtypes
Opa (protein II)	Many (perhaps hundreds)
Rmp (protein III)	One
Lipooligosaccharide	Eight or more
Fbp (iron-binding protein)	One
Lip (H8)	One
IgA1 protease	Two

Gonococci contain several plasmids; 95% of strains have a small, "cryptic" plasmid (MW 2.4×10^6) of unknown fun
) contain genes that code for β-lactamase production, which causes resistance to penicillin. These plasmids are tran
similar to a plasmid found in penicillinase-producing *Haemophilus* and may have been acquired from *Haemophilus* o
gonococci contain a plasmid (MW 24.5×10^6) with the genes that code for conjugation; the incidence is highest in g
gonococci are most common. High-level tetracycline resistance has developed in gonococci by the insertion of a stre
into the conjugative plasmid.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

Gonococci exhibit several morphologic types of colonies (see above), but only piliated bacteria appear to be virulent
of infection. Gonococci that form opaque colonies are isolated from men with symptomatic urethritis and from uterir
transparent colonies are frequently isolated from men with asymptomatic urethral infection, from menstruating wom
salpingitis and disseminated infection. Antigenic variation of surface proteins during infection allows the organism tc

Gonococci attack mucous membranes of the genitourinary tract, eye, rectum, and throat, producing acute suppurat
by chronic inflammation and fibrosis. In males, there is usually urethritis, with yellow, creamy pus and painful urina
suppuration subsides in untreated infection, fibrosis occurs, sometimes leading to urethral strictures. Urethral infect
primary infection is in the endocervix and extends to the urethra and vagina, giving rise to mucopurulent discharge.
salpingitis, fibrosis, and obliteration of the tubes. Infertility occurs in 20% of women with gonococcal salpingitis. Chr
asymptomatic.

Gonococcal bacteremia leads to skin lesions (especially hemorrhagic papules and pustules) on the hands, forearms,
arthritis, usually of the knees, ankles, and wrists. Gonococci can be cultured from blood or joint fluid of only 30% of
endocarditis is an uncommon but severe infection. Gonococci sometimes cause meningitis and eye infections in adu
meningococci. Complement deficiency is frequently found in patients with gonoccal bacteremia. Patients with bacter
hemolytic complement activity.

Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum, an infection of the eye of the newborn, is acquired during passage through an
progresses and, if untreated, results in blindness. To prevent gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum, instillation of tetr
conjunctival sac of the newborn is compulsory in the United States.

Gonococci that produce localized infection are often serum-sensitive (killed by antibody and complement).

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Pus and secretions are taken from the urethra, cervix, rectum, conjunctiva, throat, or synovial fluid for culture and s
but a special culture system is helpful, since gonococci (and meningococci) may be susceptible to the polyanethol su

SMEARS

Gram-stained smears of urethral or endocervical exudate reveal many diplococci within pus cells. These give a presu
exudate from men have a sensitivity of about 90% and a specificity of 99%. Stained smears of endocervical exudate
about 95% when examined by an experienced microscopist. Cultures of urethral exudate from men are not necessa
done for women. Stained smears of conjunctival exudates can also be diagnostic, but those of specimens from the t

CULTURE

Immediately after collection, pus or mucus is streaked on enriched selective medium (eg, modified Thayer-Martin m
5% CO_2 (candle extinction jar) at 37 C. To avoid overgrowth by contaminants, the selective medium contains antim
µg/mL; amphotericin B, 1 µg/mL; and trimethoprim, 3 µg/mL). If immediate incubation is not possible, the specimen
culture system. Forty-eight hours after culture, the organisms can be quickly identified by their appearance on a Gra

coagglutination, immunofluorescence staining, or other laboratory tests. The species of subcultured bacteria may be
The gonococcal isolates from anatomic sites other than the genital tract or from children should be identified as to s
of the legal and social implications of the isolates.

NUCLEIC ACID AMPLIFICATION TESTS

Several Food and Drug Administration-cleared nucleic acid amplification assays are available for direct detection of
these assays have excellent sensitivity and specificity in symptomatic, high-prevalence populations. Advantages incl
ability to use urine as a specimen source. Disadvantages include poor specificity of some assays due to cross reacti
assays are not recommended for use for the diagnosis of extragenital gonococcal infections or for infection in childr

SEROLOGY

Serum and genital fluid contain IgG and IgA antibodies against gonococcal pili, outer membrane proteins, and LPS.
in vitro.

In infected individuals, antibodies to gonococcal pili and outer membrane proteins can be detected by immunoblotti
immunosorbent assay) tests. However, these tests are not useful as diagnostic aids for several reasons: gonococcal
antibodies in acute infection; and a high background level of antibodies in the sexually active population.

Immunity

Repeated gonococcal infections are common. Protective immunity to reinfection does not appear to develop as part
variety of gonococci. While antibodies can be demonstrated, including the IgA and IgG on mucosal surfaces, they ei
ability.

Treatment

Since the development and widespread use of penicillin, gonococcal resistance to penicillin has gradually risen, owi
many strains now require high concentrations of penicillin G for inhibition (MIC ≥ 2 μg/mL). Penicillinase-producing
prevalence (see above). Chromosomally mediated resistance to tetracycline (MIC ≥ 2 μg/mL) is common. High-level
occurs. Spectinomycin resistance as well as resistance to fluoroquinolones has been noted. Because of the problems
US Public Health Service recommends that uncomplicated genital or rectal infections be treated with ceftriaxone giv
with doxycycline, orally twice a day for 7 days, is recommended for the possible concomitant chlamydial infection;
is substituted for doxycycline in pregnant women. Modifications of these therapies are recommended for other type

Since other sexually transmitted diseases may have been acquired at the same time as gonorrhea, steps must also
discussions of chlamydiae, syphilis, etc).

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Gonorrhea is worldwide in distribution. In the United States its incidence rose steadily from 1955 until the late 1970
cases per 100,000 population. By 1997, in association with the AIDS epidemic and widespread use of safe sex pract
100,000 population. Gonorrhea is exclusively transmitted by sexual contact, often by women and men with asympt
such that the chance of acquiring infection from a single exposure to an infected sexual partner is 2030% for men a
reduced by avoiding multiple sexual partners, rapidly eradicating gonococci from infected individuals by means of e
contacts through education and screening of populations at high risk. Mechanical prophylaxis (condoms) provides p
because of the rise in antibiotic resistance of the gonococcus.

PPNG first appeared in 1976. These totally penicillin-resistant gonococcal strains have appeared in many parts of th
populations, eg, 50% in prostitutes in the Philippines. Other areas with a high incidence of PPNG include Singapore,
United States. Focal outbreaks of disease due to PPNG have occurred in many areas of the United States and elsew

Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum is prevented by local application of 0.5% erythromycin ophthalmic ointment or newborns. Although instillation of silver nitrate solution is also effective and is the classic method for preventing oph and causes conjunctival irritation; its use has largely been replaced by use of erythromycin or tetracycline ointment

NEISSERIA MENINGITIDIS

Antigenic Structure

At least 13 serogroups of meningococci have been identified by immunologic specificity of capsular polysaccharides. disease in humans are A, B, C, Y, and W-135. The group A polysaccharide is a polymer of *N* -acetylmannosamine ph acetyl-*O* -acetylneuraminic acid. Meningococcal antigens are found in blood and cerebrospinal fluid of patients with a Western Hemisphere in the last decade have been caused mainly by groups B, C, W-135, and Y; outbreaks in south A and C; those in Africa were due mainly to group A. Group C and, especially, group A are associated with epidemic

The outer membrane proteins of meningococci have been divided into classes on the basis of molecular weight. All s these are analogous to the Por proteins of gonococci and are responsible for the serotype specificity of meningococc As many as 20 serotypes have been defined; serotypes 2 and 15 have been associated with epidemic disease. The gonococci. Meningococci are piliated, but unlike gonococci, they do not form distinctive colony types indicating piliat many of the toxic effects found in meningococcal disease.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

Humans are the only natural hosts for whom meningococci are pathogenic. The nasopharynx is the portal of entry. aid of pili; they may form part of the transient flora without producing symptoms. From the nasopharynx, organisms the symptoms may be like those of an upper respiratory tract infection. Fulminant meningococcemia is more severe disseminated intravascular coagulation and circulatory collapse (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome).

Meningitis is the most common complication of meningococcemia. It usually begins suddenly, with intense headache within a few hours.

During meningococcemia, there is thrombosis of many small blood vessels in many organs, with perivascular infiltra interstitial myocarditis, arthritis, and skin lesions. In meningitis, the meninges are acutely inflamed, with thrombosis leukocytes, so that the surface of the brain is covered with a thick purulent exudate.

It is not known what transforms an asymptomatic infection of the nasopharynx into meningococcemia and meningit serum antibodies against the infecting serotype. *Neisseria bacteremia* is favored by the absence of bactericidal antib action by a blocking IgA antibody, or a complement component deficiency (C5, C6, C7, or C8). Meningococci are rea opsonin.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens of blood are taken for culture, and specimens of spinal fluid are taken for smear, culture, and chemical d suitable for carrier surveys. Puncture material from petechiae may be taken for smear and culture.

SMEARS

Gram-stained smears of the sediment of centrifuged spinal fluid or of petechial aspirate often show typical neisseria extracellularly.

CULTURE

Culture media without sodium polyanethol sulfonate are helpful in culturing blood specimens. Cerebrospinal fluid sp at 37 C in an atmosphere of 5% CO_2 (candle jar). Freshly drawn spinal fluid can be directly incubated at 37 C if aga modified Thayer-Martin medium with antibiotics (vancomycin, colistin, amphotericin) favors the growth of neisseriae nasopharyngeal cultures. Presumptive colonies of neisseriae on solid media, particularly in mixed culture, can be ide fluid and blood generally yield pure cultures that can be further identified by carbohydrate fermentation reactions (T polyvalent serum.

SEROLOGY

Antibodies to meningococcal polysaccharides can be measured by latex agglutination or hemagglutination tests or b in reference laboratories.

Immunity

Immunity to meningococcal infection is associated with the presence of specific, complement-dependent, bactericida after subclinical infections with different strains or injection of antigens and are group-specific, type-specific, or both 135 are the capsular polysaccharides. For group B, a specific antigen suitable for use as a vaccine has not been defi antigens have been used in many parts of the world. Currently there are two vaccine types against serogroups A, C, polysaccharide tetravalent vaccine in which each dose consists of four purified bacterial capsular polysaccharides is does not confer long-lasting immunity, and does not cause a sustainable reduction in nasopharyngeal carriage. A ne (Encarta, Sanofi Pasteur, Inc.) is licensed for use in persons 1155 years of age. It contains capsular polysaccharide vaccine is that a T-celldependent response to vaccine is induced. This enhances primary response among infants an

Treatment

Penicillin G is the drug of choice for treating meningococcal disease. Either chloramphenicol or a third-generation ce in persons allergic to penicillins.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Meningococcal meningitis occurs in epidemic waves (eg, in military encampments, in religious pilgrims, and in sub-S cases in 1974) and a smaller number of sporadic interepidemic cases. Five to 30% of the normal population may ha nasopharynx during interepidemic periods. During epidemics, the carrier rate goes up to 7080%. A rise in the numb respiratory carriers. Treatment with oral penicillin does not eradicate the carrier state. Rifampin, 600 mg orally twic hours), can often eradicate the carrier state and serve as chemoprophylaxis for household and other close contacts. meningococci, chemoprophylaxis with sulfonamides is no longer reliable.

Clinical cases of meningitis present only a negligible source of infection, and isolation therefore has only limited use contacts in a population with a high carrier rate. This is accomplished by avoidance of crowding. Specific polysaccha antibody response and protect susceptible persons against infection. Such vaccines are currently used in selected po

OTHER NEISSERIAE

Neisseria lactamica very rarely causes disease but is important because it grows in the selective media (eg, modifie gonococci and meningococci from clinical specimens. *N lactamica* can be cultured from the nasopharynx of 340% of the other neisseriae, it ferments lactose.

Neisseria sicca, Neisseria subflava, Neisseria cinerea, Neisseria mucosa, and *Neisseria flavescens* are also members particularly the nasopharynx, and very rarely produce disease. *N cinerea* sometimes resembles *N gonorrhoeae* beca aminopeptidase reaction.

Moraxella catarrhalis was previously named *Branhamella catarrhalis* and before that *Neisseria catarrhalis.* It is a school children. *M catarrhalis* causes bronchitis, pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis media, and conjunctivitis. It is also of co patients. Most strains of *M catarrhalis* from clinically significant infections produce β-lactamase. *M catarrhalis* can be carbohydrate fermentation and by its production of DNase. It produces butyrate esterase, which forms the basis for

REFERENCES

Apicella MA: *Neisseria meningitidis.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL
2005.

Handsfield HH, Sparling PF: *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th
Livingstone, 2005.

Neisseria species and *Moraxella catarrhalis* . In: *Koneman's Color Atlas and Textbook of Diagnostic Microbiology,* 6th ed. Winn W Jr et al

---

GLOSSARY

Aerobic bacteria: Those that require oxygen as a terminal electron acceptor and will not grow under anaerobic conditions (ie, in the absence of O_2). Some *Micrococcus* species and *Nocardia asteroides* are obligate aerobes (ie, they must have oxygen to survive).

Anaerobic bacteria: Those that do not use oxygen for growth and metabolism but obtain their energy from fermentation reactions. A functional definition of anaerobes is that they require reduced oxygen tension for growth and fail to grow on the surface of solid medium in 10% CO_2 in ambient air. *Bacteroides* and Clostridium species are examples of anaerobes.

Capnophilic bacteria: Those that require carbon dioxide for growth.

Facultative anaerobes: Bacteria that can grow either oxidatively, using oxygen as a terminal electron acceptor, or anaerobically, using fermentation reactions to obtain energy. Such bacteria are common pathogens. *Streptococcus* species and the Enterobacteriaceae (eg, *Escherichia coli*) are among the many facultative anaerobes that cause disease. Often, bacteria that are facultative anaerobes are called "aerobes."

INTRODUCTION

Medically important infections due to anaerobic bacteria are common. The infections are often polymicrobial—that is, the anaerobic bacteria are found in mixed infections with other anaerobes, facultative anaerobes, and aerobes (see the glossary of definitions). Anaerobic bacteria are found throughout the human body—on the skin, on mucosal surfaces, and in high concentrations in the mouth and gastrointestinal tract—as part of the normal flora (see Chapter 11). Infection results when anaerobes and other bacteria of the normal flora contaminate normally sterile body sites.

Several important diseases are caused by anaerobic *Clostridium* species from the environment or from normal flora: botulism, tetanus, gas gangrene, food poisoning, and pseudomembranous colitis. These diseases are discussed in Chapters 9 and 12 and briefly later in this chapter.

PHYSIOLOGY & GROWTH CONDITIONS FOR ANAEROBES

Anaerobic bacteria will not grow in the presence of oxygen and are killed by oxygen or toxic oxygen radicals (see below). pH and oxidation-reduction potential (E_h) are also important in establishing conditions that favor growth of anaerobes. Anaerobes grow at a low or negative E_h.

Aerobes and facultative anaerobes often have the metabolic systems listed below, whereas anaerobic bacteria frequently do not.

(1) Cytochrome systems for the metabolism of O_2.

(2) Superoxide dismutase, which catalyzes the following reaction:

$$O_2^- + O_2^- + 2H^+ \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$$

(3) Catalase, which catalyzes the following reaction:

$$2H_2O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2\text{(gas bubbles)}$$

Anaerobic bacteria do not have cytochrome systems for oxygen metabolism. Less fastidious anaerobes may have low levels of superoxide dismutase (SOD) and may or may not have catalase. Most bacteria of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group have small amounts of both catalase and SOD. There appear to be multiple mechanisms for oxygen toxicity. Presumably, when anaerobes have SOD or catalase (or both), they are able to negate the toxic effect of oxygen radicals and hydrogen peroxide and thus tolerate oxygen. Obligate anaerobes usually lack superoxide dismutase and catalase and are susceptible to the lethal effects of oxygen; such strict obligate anaerobes are infrequently isolated from human infections, and most anaerobic infections of humans are caused by "moderately obligate anaerobes."

The ability of anaerobes to tolerate oxygen or grow in its presence varies from species to species. Similarly, there is strain-to-strain variation within a given species (eg, one strain of *Prevotella melaninogenica* can grow at an O_2 concentration of 0.1% but not of 1%; another can grow at a concentration of 2% but not of 4%). Also, in the absence of oxygen some anaerobic bacteria will grow at a more positive E_h.

Facultative anaerobes grow as well or better under anaerobic conditions than they do under aerobic conditions. Bacteria that are facultative anaerobes are often termed "aerobes." When a facultative anaerobe such as *Escherichia coli* is present at the site of an infection (eg, abdominal abscess), it can rapidly consume all available oxygen and change to anaerobic metabolism, producing an anaerobic environment and low E_h and thus allow the anaerobic bacteria that are present to grow and produce disease.

ANAEROBIC BACTERIA FOUND IN HUMAN INFECTIONS

There are more than 30 genera and hundreds of species of anaerobes, and species names for some anaerobic bacteria have not yet been established. The classification of anaerobes is continually evolving. The nomenclature used in this chapter refers to genera of anaerobes frequently found in human infections and to certain species recognized as important pathogens of humans. Anaerobes commonly found in human infections are listed in Table 22–1.

Table 22–1. Anaerobic Bacteria of Clinical Importance.

Genera	Anatomic Site
Bacilli (rods)	
Gram-negative	
Bacteroides fragilis group	Colon
Prevotella melaninogenica	Mouth
Fusobacterium	Mouth, colon
Gram-positive	
Actinomyces	Mouth
Lactobacillus	Vagina
Propionibacterium	Skin
Eubacterium, bifidobacterium, and arachnia	Mouth, colon
Clostridium	Colon[1]
Cocci (spheres)	
Gram-positive	
Peptostreptococcus	Colon
Gram-negative	
Veillonella	Mouth, colon

[1] Also found in soil.

Gram-Negative Anaerobes

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACILLI

Bacteroides

The *Bacteroides* species are very important anaerobes that cause human infection. They are a large group of gram-negative bacilli and may appear as slender rods or coccobacilli. Many species previously included in the genus *Bacteroides* have been reclassified into the genus *Prevotella* or the genus *Porphyromonas*.

Bacteroides species are normal inhabitants of the bowel and other sites. Normal stools contain 10^{11} *B fragilis* organisms per gram (compared with 10^8/g for facultative anaerobes). Most commonly isolated are members of the *B fragilis* group (*B fragilis, B ovatus, B distasonis, B vulgatus, B thetaiotaomicron,* and others), particularly from infections associated with contamination by the contents of the colon, where they may cause suppuration, eg, peritonitis after bowel injury. Classification is based on colonial and biochemical features and on characteristic short-chain fatty acid patterns in gas-liquid chromatography.

In infections (eg, intra-abdominal abscess), *Bacteroides* species are often associated with other anaerobic organisms—particularly anaerobic cocci (peptostreptococcus), anaerobic gram-positive rods (clostridium), and eubacterium—as well as gram-positive and gram-negative facultative anaerobes that are part of the normal flora.

Prevotella

The *Prevotella* species are gram-negative bacilli and may appear as slender rods or coccobacilli. Most commonly isolated are *P melaninogenica, P bivia,* and *P disiens*. *P melaninogenica* and similar species are found in infections associated with the upper respiratory tract. *P bivia* and *P disiens* occur in the female genital tract. *Prevotella* species are found in brain and lung abscesses, in empyema, and in pelvic inflammatory disease and tubo-ovarian abscesses.

In these infections the prevotellae are often associated with other anaerobic organisms that are part of the normal flora—particularly peptostreptococci, anaerobic gram-positive rods, and *Fusobacterium* species—as well as gram-positive and gram-negative facultative anaerobes that are part of the normal flora.

Porphyromonas

The *Porphyromonas* species also are gram-negative bacilli that are part of the normal oral flora and occur at other anatomic sites as well. *Porphyromonas* species can be cultured from gingival and periapical tooth infections and, more commonly, breast, axillary, perianal, and male genital infections.

Fusobacteria

The fusobacteria are pleomorphic gram-negative rods. Most species produce butyric acid and convert threonine to propionic acid. The fusobacterium group includes several species frequently isolated from mixed bacterial infections caused by normal mucosal flora. Occasionally, a *Fusobacterium* species will be the only bacteria in an infection (eg, osteomyelitis).

GRAM-NEGATIVE COCCI

Veillonella species are a group of small, anaerobic, gram-negative cocci that are part of the normal flora of the mouth, the nasopharynx, and probably the intestine. Previously known by various names, they are now collectively known as the veillonellae. Though occasionally isolated in polymicrobial anaerobic infections, they are rarely the sole cause of an infection.

Gram-Positive Anaerobes

GRAM-POSITIVE BACILLI

Actinomyces

The actinomyces group includes several species that cause actinomycosis, of which *Actinomyces israelii* is the one most commonly encountered. On Gram stain, they vary considerably in length: they may be short and club-shaped or long, thin, beaded filaments. They may be branched or unbranched. Because they often grow slowly, prolonged incubation of the culture may be necessary before laboratory confirmation of the clinical diagnosis of actinomycosis can be made. Some strains produce colonies on agar that resemble molar teeth. Some Actinomyces species are oxygen-tolerant (aerotolerant) and grow in the presence of air; these strains may be confused with *Corynebacterium* species (diphtheroids; see Chapter 13). *Actinomyces* species are susceptible to penicillin G, erythromycin, and other antibiotics.

Lactobacillus

Lactobacillus species are major members of the normal flora of the vagina. The lactic acid product of their metabolism helps maintain the low pH of the normal adult female genital tract. They rarely cause disease.

Propionibacterium

Propionibacterium species are members of the normal flora of the skin and cause disease when they infect plastic shunts and appliances. Their metabolic products include propionic acid, from which the genus name derives. On Gram stain, they are highly pleomorphic, showing curved, clubbed, or pointed ends, long forms with beaded uneven staining, and occasionally coccoid or spherical forms. Propionibacteria participate in the genesis of acne. Because it is part of the normal skin flora, *Propionibacterium acnes* sometimes contaminates blood or cerebrospinal fluid cultures that are obtained by penetrating the skin. It is therefore important (but occasionally difficult) to differentiate a contaminated culture from one that is positive and indicates infection.

Eubacterium, Bifidobacterium, and Arachnia

These three genera are made up of anaerobic, pleomorphic, gram-positive rods. There are several species. They are found in mixed infections associated with oropharyngeal or bowel flora.

Clostridium

Clostridia are gram-positive, spore-forming bacilli (see Chapter 12). There are more than 50 species. The major diseases associated with these bacteria are caused by exotoxins (see Chapter 9).

Spores of *Clostridium tetani*, which causes tetanus, are present throughout the environment. They germinate in devitalized tissue at an E_h of +10 mV (that of normal tissue is +120 mV). Once they are growing, the organisms elaborate the toxin tetanospasmin. Localized infection is often clinically insignificant. The toxin spreads along nerves to the central nervous system, where it binds to gangliosides, suppresses the release of inhibitory neurotransmitters, and yeilds muscle spasm. Death results from inability to breathe. Obviously, severe trauma may predispose to development of tetanus; however, more than 50% of tetanus cases follow minor injuries. Tetanus is totally preventable: active immunity is induced with tetanus toxoid (formalinized tetanus toxin). Tetanus toxoid is part of routine childhood DPT (diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis) immunizations; adults should be given boosters every 10 years.

Clostridium botulinum causes botulism (see Chapters 9 and 12). *C botulinum* is distributed throughout the environment. The spores find their way into preserved or canned foods with low oxygen levels, low E_h, and nutrients that support growth. The organisms germinate and elaborate the toxins as growth and lysis occur. Botulinus neurotoxins are the most potent toxins known but can be neutralized by specific antibodies. The toxins are heat-labile, so properly heated food does not transmit botulism. Preformed botulinus toxin is ingested and absorbed. The toxin acts on the peripheral nervous system by inhibiting the release of acetylcholine at cholinergic synapses, causing paralysis. Once the toxin is bound, the process is irreversible. The symptoms are associated with the anticholinergic action and include dysphagia, dry mouth, diplopia, and weakness or inability to breathe. Botulism should be treated with antitoxin. Infant botulism follows the ingestion of spores, germination of the spores, and toxin production; honey is a common vehicle for spread of the spores in infants.

Clostridium perfringens causes gas gangrene. There are at least 12 different soluble antigens, many of which are toxins. All types of *C perfringens* produce the alpha toxin, a necrotizing, hemolytic exotoxin that is a lecithinase. The other toxins have varying activities, including tissue necrosis and hemolysis. *C perfringens* is present throughout the environment. Gas gangrene occurs when a soft tissue wound is contaminated by *C perfringens,* as occurs in trauma, septic abortion, and war wounds. Bacteremia associated with *C perfringens* can be rapidly fatal. Milder forms of disease may also occur. Once infection is initiated, the organisms elaborate necrotizing toxins; CO_2 and H_2 accumulate in tissue and are clinically detectable as gas (eg, gas gangrene). Other infectious processes yield gas in tissues and must be differentiated from clostridial gas gangrene. These infections include anaerobic streptococcal myonecrosis, synergistic nonclostridial anaerobic myonecrosis, infected vascular gangrene, and *Aeromonas hydrophila* myonecrosis. Edema occurs and the circulation is impaired, promoting spread of the anaerobic infection. Therapy involves surgical removal of the infection and administration of penicillin G.

C perfringens is a common cause of food poisoning (but less so than *Staphylococcus aureus*). The disease is caused by an enterotoxin produced and released during sporulation. The incubation period for the abdominal pain, nausea, and acute diarrhea is 8–24 hours.

Clostridium difficile causes pseudomembranous colitis. It is part of the normal gastrointestinal flora in 2–10% of humans. The organisms are relatively resistant to most commonly used antibiotics. Associated with or following antibiotic use, the normal gastrointestinal flora is suppressed and *C difficile* proliferates, producing cytopathic toxin and enterotoxin. Symptoms of the disease vary from diarrhea alone to marked diarrhea and necrosis of mucosa with accumulation of inflammatory cells and fibrin, which forms the pseudomembrane. The diagnosis is made by demonstrating neutralizable cytotoxin in the stool through its cytopathic effect in cell culture or by detecting enterotoxin by immunoassay.

Other *Clostridium* species are occasionally found in polymicrobial infections, particularly those associated with contamination of normal tissue by contents of the colon.

GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI

Peptostreptococcus species are gram-positive cocci of variable size and shape that are found on the skin and as part of the normal flora of mucous membranes. There are many species, including those previously called peptococci. They are frequently found in mixed infections due to normal flora. Occasionally, cultures from breast, brain, or pulmonary infections will be positive for only one species of these gram-positive cocci.

PATHOGENESIS OF ANAEROBIC INFECTIONS

Infections caused by anaerobes commonly are due to combinations of bacteria that function in synergistic pathogenicity. Although studies of the pathogenesis of anaerobic infections have often focused on a single species, it is important to recognize that the anaerobic infections most often are due to several species of anaerobes acting together to cause infection.

B fragilis is a very important pathogen among the anaerobes that are part of the normal flora. The pathogenesis of anaerobic infection has been most extensively studied with *B fragilis* using a rat model of intra-abdominal infection, which in many ways mimics human disease. A characteristic sequence occurs after colon contents (including *B fragilis* and a facultative anaerobe such as *E coli*) are placed via needle, gelatin capsule, or other means into the abdomen of rats. A high percentage of the study animals die of sepsis caused by the facultative anaerobe. However, if the animals are first treated with gentamicin, a drug effective against the facultative anaerobe but not bacteroides, few of the animals die, and after a few days, the surviving animals develop intra-abdominal abscesses from the bacteroides infection. Treatment of the animals with both gentamicin and clindamycin, a drug effective against bacteroides, prevents both the initial sepsis and the later development of abdominal abscesses.

The capsular polysaccharides of bacteroides are important virulence factors. When injected into the rat abdomen, purified capsular polysaccharides from *B fragilis* cause abscess formation, whereas those from other bacteria (eg, *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *E coli*) do not. The mechanism by which the *B fragilis* capsule induces abscess formation is not well understood.

Bacteroides species have lipopolysaccharides (endotoxins; see Chapter 9) but lack the lipopolysaccharide structures with endotoxic activity (including β-hydroxymyristic acid). The lipopolysaccharides of *B fragilis* are much less toxic than those of other gram-negative bacteria. Thus, infection caused by bacteroides does not directly produce the clinical signs of sepsis (eg, fever and shock) so important in infections due to other gram-negative bacteria. When these clinical signs appear in bacteroides infection, they are a result of the inflammatory immune response to the infection.

B fragilis produces a superoxide dismutase and can survive in the presence of oxygen for days. When a facultative anaerobe such as *E coli* is present at the site of infection, it can consume all available oxygen and thereby produce an environment in which bacteroides and other anaerobes can grow (see above).

Many anaerobic bacteria produce heparinase, collagenase, and other enzymes that damage or destroy tissue. It is likely that enzymes play a part in the pathogenesis of mixed anaerobic infections, although laboratory experiments have not been able to define specific roles.

IMMUNITY IN ANAEROBIC INFECTIONS

Relatively little is known about immunity in anaerobic infections. The most complete information has been obtained from studies of animal models of *B fragilis* infections.

Many anaerobes (including *Bacteroides*, *Propionibacterium*, and *Fusobacterium* species) produce serum-independent chemotactic factors that attract polymorphonuclear cells. The capsule of *B fragilis* is both antiphagocytic and inhibitory to complement-mediated bactericidal action. *Bacteroides* species are optimally phagocytosed by polymorphonuclear cells when the organisms are opsonized by both antibody and complement. Both animals and humans produce antibodies against bacteroides antigens, including the capsular material. Passive transfer of antibodies from an immune animal to a nonimmune animal is protective against bacteroides bacteremia but does not prevent abdominal abscess formation; in the rat model of infection, it is a T cell-dependent immune response that prevents abscess formation. Passive transfer of immune spleen cells or a low-molecular-weight cell-free factor prevents abdominal abscess formation in the rat model.

THE POLYMICROBIAL NATURE OF ANAEROBIC INFECTIONS

Most anaerobic infections are associated with contamination of tissue by normal flora of the mucosa of the mouth, pharynx, gastrointestinal tract, or genital tract. Typically, multiple species (five or six species or more when standard culture conditions are used) are found, including both anaerobes and facultative anaerobes. Oropharyngeal, pleuropulmonary, abdominal, and female pelvic infections associated with contamination by normal mucosal flora have a relatively equal distribution of anaerobes and facultative anaerobes as causative agents: about 25% have anaerobes alone; about 25% have facultative anaerobes alone; and about 50% have both anaerobes and facultative anaerobes. Aerobic bacteria may also be present, but obligate aerobes are much less common than anaerobes and facultative anaerobes. Anaerobic bacteria and associated representative infections are listed in Table 22–2.

Table 22–2. Anaerobic Bacteria and Associated Representative Infections.
Brain abscesses
Peptostreptococci and others
Oropharyngeal infections
Oropharyngeal anaerobes; actinomyces, *Prevotella melaninogenica,Fusobacterium* species
Pleuropulmonary infections
Peptostreptococci; Fusobacterium species; *P melaninogenica, B fragilis* in 20–25%; others
Intra-abdominal infections
Liver abscess: Mixed anaerobes in 40–90%; facultative organisms
Abdominal abscesses: *B fragilis;* other gastrointestinal flora
Female genital tract infections
Vulvar abscesses: Peptostreptococci and others
Tubo-ovarian and pelvic abscesses: *P bivia* and *P disiens;* peptostreptococci; others
Skin, soft tissue, and bone infections
Mixed anaerobic flora
Bacteremia
B fragilis; peptostreptococci; clostridia; propionibacteria; others
Endocarditis
B fragilis

DIAGNOSIS OF ANAEROBIC INFECTIONS

Clinical signs suggesting possible infection with anaerobes include the following:

(1) Foul-smelling discharge (due to short-chain fatty-acid products of anaerobic metabolism).

(2) Infection in proximity to a mucosal surface (anaerobes are part of the normal flora).

(3) Gas in tissues (production of CO_2 and H_2).

(4) Negative aerobic cultures.

Diagnosis of anaerobic infection is made by anaerobic culture of properly obtained and transported specimens (see Chapter 47). Anaerobes grow most readily on complex media such as trypticase soy agar base, Schaedler blood agar, brucella agar, brain-heart infusion agar, and others—each highly supplemented (eg, with hemin, vitamin K_1, blood). A selective complex medium containing kanamycin is used in parallel. Kanamycin (like all aminoglycosides) does not inhibit the growth of obligate anaerobes; thus, it permits them to proliferate without being overshadowed by rapidly growing facultative anaerobes. Cultures are incubated at 35–37 °C in an anaerobic atmosphere containing CO_2.

Colony morphology, pigmentation, and fluorescence are helpful in identifying anaerobes. Biochemical activities and production of short-chain fatty acids as measured by gas-liquid chromatography are used for laboratory confirmation.

TREATMENT OF ANAEROBIC INFECTIONS

Treatment of mixed anaerobic infections is by surgical drainage (under most circumstances) plus antimicrobial therapy.

The *B fragilis* group of organisms found in abdominal and other infections universally produces β-lactamase, as do many of the *P bivia* and *P disiens* strains found in genital tract infections in women. Therapy with antimicrobials (other than penicillin G) is necessary to treat infections with these organisms. At least two-thirds of the *P melaninogenica* strains from pulmonary and oropharyngeal infections also produce β-lactamase.

The most active drugs for treatment of anaerobic infections are clindamycin and metronidazole. Clindamycin is preferred for infections above the diaphragm. Relatively few anaerobes are resistant to clindamycin and few, if any, are resistant to metronidazole. Alternative drugs include cefoxitin, cefotetan, some of the other newer cephalosporins, and piperacillin, but these drugs are not as active as clindamycin and metronidazole. Penicillin G remains the drug of choice for treatment of anaerobic infections that do not involve β-lactamase-producing bacteroides and *Prevotella* species.

REFERENCES

Allen SD, Emery CL, Lyerly DM: *Clostridium*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Bleck TP: *Clostridium tetani* (tetanus). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Bleck TP: *Clostridium botulinum* (botulism). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Jousimies-Somer HR et al: *Bacteroides, Porphyromonas, Prevotella, Fusobacterium*, and other anaerobic gram-negative bacteria. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Lorber B: Gas gangrene and other clostridium-associated diseases. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Lorber B: *Bacteroides, Prevotella, Porphyromonas,* and *Fusobacterium* species (and other medically important gram-negative bacilli). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Mascini EM, Verhoef J: Anaerobic cocci. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Mascini EM, Verhoef J: Anaerobic gram-positive nonsporulating bacilli. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Moncla BJ, Hillier SL: *Peptostreptococcus, Propionibacterium, Lactobacillus, Actinomyces,* and other non-spore-forming anaerobic gram-positive bacteria. In: Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Tzianabos AO, Kasper DL: Anaerobic bacteria: general concepts. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

LEGIONELLA PNEUMOPHILA & OTHER LEGIONELLAE

A widely publicized outbreak of pneumonia in persons attending an American Legion convention in Philadelphia prompted investigations that defined *Legionella pneumophila* and the legionellae. Other outbreaks of respiratory illness caused by related organisms since 1947 have been diagnosed retrospectively. Several dozen species of legionella exist, some with multiple serotypes. *L pneumophila* is the major cause of disease in humans; *Legionella micdadei* and a few other species sometimes cause pneumonia. The other legionellae are rarely isolated from patients or have been isolated only from the environment.

Morphology & Identification

L pneumophila is the prototype bacterium of the group. Legionellae of primary medical importance are listed in Table 23–1.

Table 23–1. The *Legionella* Species of Primary Medical Importance.

Species	Pneumonia	Pontiac Fever
L pneumophila	+	Serogroups 1 and 6
L micdadei	+	
L gormanii	+	
L dumoffii	+	
L bozemanii	+	
L longbeachae	+	
L wadsworthii	+	
L jordanis	+	
L feeleii	+	+
L oakridgensis	+	

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Legionellae are fastidious, aerobic gram-negative bacteria that are 0.5–1 µm wide and 2–50 µm long. They often stain poorly by Gram's method and are not seen in stains of clinical specimens. Gram-stained smears should be made for suspect legionella growth on agar media. Basic fuchsin (0.1%) should be used as the counterstain, because safranin stains the bacteria very poorly.

CULTURE

Legionellae can be grown on complex media such as buffered charcoal-yeast extract (BCYE) agar with α-ketoglutarate, at pH 6.9, temperature 35 °C, and 90% humidity. Antibiotics can be added to make the medium selective for legionella. A biphasic BCYE medium can be used for blood cultures.

Legionellae grow slowly; visible colonies are usually present after 3 days of incubation. Colonies that appear after overnight incubation are not legionella. Colonies are round or flat with entire edges. They vary in color from colorless to iridescent pink or blue and are translucent or speckled. Variation in colony morphology is common, and the colonies may rapidly lose their color and speckles. Many other genera of bacteria grow on BCYE medium and must be differentiated from legionella by Gram staining and other tests.

Legionellae in blood cultures usually require 2 weeks or more to grow. Colonies can be seen on the agar surface of the biphasic medium.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

The legionellae are catalase-positive. *L pneumophila* is oxidase-positive; the other legionellae are variable in oxidase activity. *L pneumophila* hydrolyzes hippurate; the other legionellae do not. Most legionellae produce gelatinase and β-lactamase; *L micdadei* produces neither gelatinase nor β-lactamase.

Antigens & Cell Products

Antigenic specificity of *L pneumophila* is thought to be due to complex antigenic structures. There are more than ten serogroups of *L pneumophila;* serogroup 1 was the cause of the 1976 outbreak of Legionnaires' disease and remains the most common serogroup isolated from humans. *Legionella* species cannot be identified by serogrouping alone, because there is cross-reactive antigenicity among different species. Occasionally, bacteroides, bordetella, and some pseudomonads also cross-react with *L pneumophila* antisera.

The legionellae produce distinctive 14- to 17-carbon branched-chain fatty acids. Gas-liquid chromatography can be used to help characterize and determine the species of legionellae.

The legionellae make proteases, phosphatase, lipase, DNase, and RNase. A major secretory protein, a metalloprotease, has hemolytic and cytotoxic activity; however, this protein has not been shown to be a required virulence factor.

Pathology & Pathogenesis

Legionellae are ubiquitous in warm moist environments. They are found in lakes, streams, and other bodies of water. They can multiply in free-living amebas and can coexist with them in biofilms (see Epidemiology & Control section, below). Infection of debilitated or immunocompromised humans commonly follows inhalation of the bacteria from aerosols generated from contaminated air-conditioning systems, shower heads, and similar sources. *L pneumophila* usually produces a lobar, segmental, or patchy pulmonary infiltration. Histologically, the appearance is similar to that produced by many other bacterial pathogens. Acute purulent pneumonia involving the alveoli is present with a dense intra-alveolar exudate of macrophages, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, red blood cells, and proteinaceous material. Most of the legionellae in the lesions are within phagocytic cells. There is little interstitial infiltration and little or no inflammation of the bronchioles and upper airways.

Knowledge of the pathogenesis of *L pneumophila* infection comes from study of isolated cells from humans and from study of susceptible animals such as guinea pigs.

L pneumophila readily enters and grows within human alveolar macrophages and monocytes and is not effectively killed by polymorphonuclear leukocytes. In vitro, when serum is present but there is no immune antibody, complement component C3 is deposited on the bacterial surface and the bacteria attach to complement receptors CR1 and CR3 on the phagocytic cell surface. Entry into the cell is by a phagocytic process involving coiling of a single pseudopod around the bacterium. When immune antibody is present, entry of the bacteria occurs by the more typical Fc-mediated phagocytosis. Once inside the cell, the individual bacteria are within phagosomal vacuoles, but the defense mechanisms of the macrophage cells stop at that point. Instead, the phagosomal vacuoles fail to fuse with lysosomal granules. The phagocyte oxidative metabolic burst is reduced. Phagosomes containing *L pneumophila* do not acidify as much as phagosomes containing other ingested particles. Ribosomes, mitochondria, and small vesicles accumulate around vacuoles containing the *L pneumophila.* The bacteria multiply within the vacuoles until they are numerous, the cells are destroyed, the bacteria are released, and infection of other macrophages then occurs. The presence of iron (transferrin-iron) is essential for the process of intracellular growth of the bacteria, but other factors important to the processes of growth, cell destruction, and tissue damage are not well understood.

Clinical Findings

Asymptomatic infection is common in all age groups, as shown by elevated titers of specific antibodies. The incidence of clinically significant disease is highest in men over age 55 years. Factors associated with high risk include smoking, chronic bronchitis and emphysema, steroid and other immunosuppressive treatment (as in renal transplantation), cancer chemotherapy, and diabetes mellitus. When pneumonia occurs in patients with these risk factors, legionella should be investigated as the cause.

Infection may result in nondescript febrile illness of short duration or in a severe, rapidly progressive illness with high fever, chills, malaise, nonproductive cough, hypoxia, diarrhea, and delirium. Chest x-rays reveal patchy, often multilobar consolidation. There may be leukocytosis, hyponatremia, hematuria (and even renal failure), or abnormal liver function. During some outbreaks, the mortality rate has reached 10%. The diagnosis is based on the clinical picture and exclusion of other causes of pneumonia by laboratory tests. Demonstration of legionella in clinical specimens can rapidly yield a specific diagnosis. The diagnosis can also be made by culture for legionella or by serologic tests, but results of these tests are often delayed beyond the time when specific therapy must be started.

L pneumophila also produces a disease called "Pontiac fever," after the clinical syndrome that occurred in an outbreak in Michigan. The syndrome is characterized by fever and chills, myalgia, malaise, and headache that develop over 6–12 hours. Dizziness, photophobia, neck stiffness, and confusion also occur. Respiratory symptoms are much less prominent in Pontiac fever than in Legionnaire's disease and include mild cough and sore throat.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

In human infections, the organisms can be recovered from bronchial washings, pleural fluid, lung biopsy specimens, or blood. Isolation of legionella from sputum is more difficult because of the predominance of bacteria of the normal flora. Legionella is rarely recovered from other anatomic sites.

SMEARS

Legionellae are not demonstrable in Gram-stained smears of clinical specimens. Direct fluorescent antibody tests of specimens can be diagnostic, but the test has low sensitivity compared with culture. Silver stains are sometimes used on tissue specimens.

CULTURE

Specimens are cultured on BCYE agar (see above). Cultured organisms can be rapidly identified by immunofluorescence staining. BCYE agar containing antibiotics can be used to culture contaminated specimens.

SPECIFIC TESTS

Sometimes legionella antigens can be demonstrated in the patient's urine by immunologic methods. The urine antigen test is specific for *L pneumophila* serotype 1.

SEROLOGIC TESTS

Levels of antibodies to legionellae rise slowly during the illness. Serologic tests have a sensitivity of 60–80% and a specificity of 95–99%. Serologic tests are most useful in obtaining a retrospective diagnosis in outbreaks of legionella infections.

Immunity

Infected patients make antibodies against legionella, but the peak antibody response may not occur until 4–8 weeks after infection. The roles of antibodies and cell-mediated responses in protective immunity in humans have not been defined. Animals challenged with sublethal doses of virulent *L pneumophila,* avirulent *L pneumophila,* or a major secretory protein vaccine are immune to subsequent lethal doses of *L pneumophila.* Both humoral and cell-mediated immune responses occur. The cell-mediated response is important in protective immunity because of the intracellular infection and growth of legionella.

Treatment

Legionellae are susceptible to erythromycin and some other drugs. The treatment of choice is erythromycin, which has been effective even in immunocompromised patients. Rifampin, 10–20 mg/kg/d, has been used in patients whose response to treatment was delayed. Assisted ventilation may be necessary, and management of shock is essential.

Epidemiology & Control

The natural habitats for legionellae are lakes, streams, rivers, and especially thermally heated bodies of water and soil. Legionellae grow best in warm water in the presence of amebas and water bacteria. They proliferate in amebas much as they do in pulmonary macrophages in the lung. When harsh environmental conditions occur and the amebas encyst, the amebas and legionellae both survive until better growth conditions occur, allowing excystment. The legionellae, amebas, and other microorganisms exist in biofilms; the legionellae go into a sessile state. The legionellae survive water treatment processes, and small numbers enter the water distribution systems where they proliferate.

Cooling towers and evaporative condensers can be heavily contaminated with *L pneumophila.* Presumably, aerosols exiting such towers or condensers spread the organisms to susceptible persons. Similarly, there are links between contamination of residential water systems and community-acquired Legionnaires' disease and between contamination of hospital water systems and nosocomial *L pneumophila* infection. Hyperchlorination and superheating of water can help control the multiplication of legionellae in water and in air-conditioning systems.

BARTONELLA

The three medically important species in the genus *Bartonella* are *Bartonella bacilliformis,* the cause of Oroya fever and verruga peruana; *Bartonella quintana,* the cause of trench fever of World War I and some cases of bacillary angiomatosis; and *Bartonella henselae,* which causes cat-scratch disease and has also been associated with bacillary angiomatosis. These diseases have many common characteristics. There is an additional small set of *Bartonella* species and subspecies that have rarely been associated with human disease, and there is a larger set associated with animals that is not likely to be transmitted to humans.

The *Bartonella* species are gram-negative rods that are pleomorphic, slow-growing, and difficult to isolate in the laboratory. They can be seen in infected tissues stained with the Warthin-Starry silver impregnation stain.

Bartonella Bacilliformis

There are two stages of *Bartonella bacilliformis* infection: the initial stage is Oroya fever, a serious infectious anemia; and the eruptive stage, verruga peruana, which commonly begins 2–8 weeks later, though verrugae may also occur in the absence of Oroya fever.

Oroya fever is characterized by the rapid development of severe anemia due to red blood cell destruction, enlargement of the spleen and liver, and hemorrhage into the lymph nodes. Masses of bartonellae fill the cytoplasm of cells lining the blood vessels, and endothelial swelling may lead to vascular occlusion and thrombosis. The mortality rate of untreated Oroya fever is about 40%. The diagnosis is made by examining stained blood smears and blood cultures in semisolid medium.

Verruga peruana consists of vascular skin lesions that occur in successive crops; it lasts for about 1 year and produces little systemic reaction and no fatalities. Bartonellae can be seen in the granulomas; blood cultures are often positive, but there is no anemia.

B bacilliformis produces a protein that promotes deformity (indentation) of red blood cell membranes, and flagella provide the organisms with the mechanical force to invade red blood cells. *B bacilliformis* also invades endothelial cells and other types of human cells in vitro.

Bartonellosis is limited to the mountainous areas of the American Andes in tropical Peru, Colombia, and Ecuador and is transmitted by sandflies of the genus *Lutzomyia*.

B bacilliformis grows in semisolid nutrient agar containing 10% rabbit serum and 0.5% hemoglobin. After 10 days or more of incubation at 28 °C, turbidity develops in the medium, and rod-shaped and granular organisms can be seen in Giemsa-stained smears.

Penicillin, streptomycin, and chloramphenicol are effective in Oroya fever and greatly reduce the mortality rate, particularly when blood transfusions are also given. Control of the disease depends upon elimination of the sandfly vectors: insecticides, insect repellents, and elimination of sandfly breeding areas are of value. Prevention with antibiotics may be useful.

Bartonella Henselae & Bartonella Quintana

CAT-SCRATCH DISEASE

Cat-scratch disease is usually a benign, self-limited illness manifested by fever and lymphadenopathy that develop about 2 weeks after contact with a cat (usually a scratch, lick, bite, or perhaps a flea bite). A primary skin lesion (papule or pustule) develops at the site 3–10 days after the contact. The patient usually appears well but may have low-grade fever and occasionally headache, sore throat, or conjunctivitis. The regional lymph nodes are markedly enlarged and sometimes tender, and they may not subside for several weeks or even months. They may suppurate and discharge pus. More than 20,000 cases a year are thought to occur in the United States.

The diagnosis of cat-scratch fever is based on (1) a suggestive history and physical findings; (2) aspiration of pus from lymph nodes that contain no bacteria culturable by routine methods; and (3) characteristic histopathologic findings with granulomatous lesions, which may include bacteria seen on silver-impregnated stains. A positive skin test has also been included as a criterion, but is of historical interest only. A titer of 1:64 or greater in a single serum in the indirect fluorescent antibody test strongly supports the diagnosis, but development of a diagnostic titer may be delayed; enzyme immunoassays can be useful also.

Cat scratch disease is caused by *B henselae,* a small, pleomorphic, gram-negative rod present mainly in the walls of capillaries near follicular hyperplasia or within microabscesses. The organisms are seen best in tissue sections stained with Warthin-Starry silver impregnation stain; they may also be detected by immunofluorescent stains. Culture of *B henselae* is generally not recommended for this relatively benign disease.

The reservoir for *B henselae* is the domestic cat, and one-third of cats or more (and possibly their fleas) may be infected. Contact with infected cats through skin lesions is thought to communicate the infection.

Cat-scratch disease occurs commonly in immunocompetent people and is usually self-limited. Treatment is mainly supportive, with reassurance, hot moist soaks, and analgesics. Aspiration of pus or surgical removal of an excessively large lymph node may ameliorate symptoms. Tetracycline or erythromycin therapy may be helpful.

BACILLARY ANGIOMATOSIS

Bacillary angiomatosis is a disease predominantly of immunosuppressed individuals, particularly AIDS patients. Rare cases occur in immunocompetent persons. Bacillary angiomatosis is characterized histopathologically as circumscribed lesions with lobular capillary proliferation and round, open vessels with cuboidal endothelial cells protruding into the vascular lumen. A prominent finding is epithelioid histiocytes surrounded by a loose fibromyxoid matrix. The pleomorphic bacilli can be seen in the subendothelial tissue when stained with the Warthin-Starry silver impregnation stain. The lesions may be infiltrated by polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

In its common form, bacillary angiomatosis presents as an enlarging red (cranberry-like) papule, often with surrounding scale and erythema. The lesions enlarge and may become several centimeters in diameter and ulcerate. There may be single or many lesions. The clinical appearance is often similar to that of Kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS patients, but the two diseases are different histologically. Bacillary angiomatosis occurs in virtually every organ. Involvement of the liver (and spleen) is characterized by a proliferation of cystic blood-filled spaces surrounded by a fibromyxoid matrix containing the bacteria; this form of the disease is called peliosis hepatis and is usually accompanied by fever, weight loss, and abdominal pain. A bacteremic form of infection with the nonspecific signs of malaise, fever, and weight loss also occurs.

The diagnosis is confirmed by the characteristic histopathologic findings and demonstration of the pleomorphic bacilli on silver-stained sections. *B henselae* and *B quintana* can be isolated by direct culture of biopsies of involved tissue carefully obtained so that no contaminating skin bacteria are present. The biopsy specimens are homogenized in supplemented tissue culture medium and inoculated onto fresh chocolate agar and heart infusion agar with 5% rabbit blood. Cultures of blood obtained by the lysis-centrifugation method can be inoculated onto the same media. The cultures should be incubated in 5% CO_2 at 36 °C for a minimum of 3 weeks. Specimens can also be cultured on eukaryotic tissue culture monolayers. Biochemically, *B henselae* and *B quintana* are relatively inert, including negative catalase and oxidase reactions and negative carbohydrate utilization tests. Enzyme activity can be seen with amino acid substrates by methods to test for preformed enzymes. Definitive identification is obtained by sequencing all or part of the 16S ribosomal RNA gene amplified by the polymerase chain reaction.

Bacillary angiomatosis is treated with oral erythromycin or doxycycline (plus gentamicin for very ill patients) for a minimum of 2 months. Relapses are common but can be treated by the same drugs used initially.

The reservoir for *B henselae* usually is the domestic cat, and patients with this organism as the etiology of bacillary angiomatosis often have contact with cats or histories of cat flea bites. The only known reservoirs for *B quintana* are humans and the body louse.

BACTERIA THAT CAUSE VAGINOSIS

Bacterial vaginosis is a common vaginal condition of women of reproductive age. It is associated with premature rupture of membranes and preterm labor and birth. Bacterial vaginosis has a complex microbiology; two organisms, *Gardnerella vaginalis* and *Mobiluncus* species have been most specifically associated with the disease process.

Gardnerella Vaginalis

G vaginalis is a serologically distinct organism isolated from the normal female genitourinary tract and also associated with vaginosis, so named because inflammatory cells are not present. In wet smears, this "nonspecific" vaginitis, or bacterial vaginosis, yields "clue cells," which are vaginal epithelial cells covered with many gram-variable bacilli, and there is an absence of other common causes of vaginitis such as trichomonas or yeasts. Vaginal discharge often has a distinct "fishy" odor and contains many anaerobes in addition to *G vaginalis.* The pH of the vaginal secretions is over 4.5 (normal pH is < 4.5). The vaginosis attributed to this organism is suppressed by metronidazole, suggesting an association with anaerobes. Oral metronidazole is generally curative.

Mobiluncus

This genus comprises motile, curved, gram-variable or gram-negative, anaerobic rods isolated from "bacterial vaginosis," which may be a clinical variant of the vaginosis associated with *G vaginalis.* It is possible that mobiluncus may be part of the normal vaginal anaerobic flora, and it is likely that it is part of the anaerobic flora in bacterial vaginosis. The organisms are most commonly detected in Gram-stained smears of vaginal secretions, but they grow with difficulty in anaerobic cultures.

STREPTOBACILLUS MONILIFORMIS

S moniliformis is an aerobic, gram-negative, highly pleomorphic organism that forms irregular chains of bacilli interspersed with fusiform enlargements and large round bodies. It grows best at 37 °C in media containing serum protein, egg yolk, or starch but ceases to grow at 22 °C. L forms can easily be demonstrated in most cultures of the organism. Subculture of pure colonies of L forms in liquid media often yields the streptobacilli again. All strains of streptobacilli appear to be antigenically identical.

S moniliformis is a normal inhabitant of the throats of rats, and humans can be infected by rat bites. The human disease (rat-bite fever) is characterized by septic fever, blotchy and petechial rashes, and very painful polyarthritis. Diagnosis rests on cultures of blood, joint fluid, or pus; on mouse inoculation; and on serum agglutination tests.

This organism can also produce infection after being ingested in milk. The disease is called Haverhill fever and has occurred in epidemics.

Penicillin and perhaps other antibiotics are therapeutically effective.

Rat-bite fever of somewhat different clinical appearance (sodoku) is caused by *Spirillum minor* (see Chapter 25).

CALYMMATOBACTERIUM (DONOVANIA) GRANULOMATIS

C granulomatis, related to the klebsiellae, causes granuloma inguinale, an uncommon sexually transmitted disease characterized by genital ulcers. The organism grows with difficulty on media containing egg yolk. Ampicillin or tetracycline is effective treatment.

WHIPPLE'S DISEASE

Whipple's disease is characterized by fever, abdominal pain, diarrhea, weight loss, and migratory polyarthralgia. The primary involvement is of the small intestine and mesenteric lymph nodes, but any organ can be affected. Histologically, there is a prominent macrophage infiltration and fat deposition. Characteristic vacuoles within the macrophage that stain with periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) stain are pathognomonic of the disease. The intracellular and extracellular PAS-positive material are bacilli, but cultures to isolate the organism have been historically unsuccessful. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of bacterial 16S ribosomal RNA allowed identification of a unique sequence from the bacteria in the lesions. Phylogenetic analysis has shown the organism is a gram-positive actinomycete not closely related to any known genus. The organism has been named *Tropheryma whipplei.* The diagnosis of Whipple's disease is by PCR amplification of an appropriate specimen (bowel biopsy, brain biopsy, etc) for *T whipplei.*

REFERENCES

Edelstein PH, Cianciotto NP: *Legionella*. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Hart G: Donovanosis. Clin Infect Dis 1997;25:24.

Muder RR: Other *Legionella* species. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Slater LN, Welch DF: *Bartonella* species, including cat-scratch disease. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Stout JE, Rihs JD, Yu VL: *Legionella*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Welch DF, Slater LN: *Bartonella* and *Afipia*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Print Close Window

INTRODUCTION

The mycobacteria are rod-shaped, aerobic bacteria that do not form spores. Although they do not stain readily, once stained they resist decolorization by acid or alcohol and are therefore called "acid-fast" bacilli. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* causes tuberculosis and is a very important pathogen of humans. *Mycobacterium leprae* causes leprosy. *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* (*M avium* complex, or MAC) and other atypical mycobacteria frequently infect patients with AIDS, are opportunistic pathogens in other immunocompromised persons, and occasionally cause disease in patients with normal immune systems. There are more than 50 *Mycobacterium* species, including many that are saprophytes. The mycobacteria that infect humans are listed in Table 24–1.

Table 24–1. Mycobacteria that Infect Humans.

Species	Reservoir	Common Clinical Manifestations; Comment
SPECIES ALWAYS CONSIDERED PATHOGENS		
M tuberculosis	Humans	Pulmonary and disseminated tuberculosis; millions of cases annually in the world
M leprae	Humans	Leprosy
M bovis	Humans, cattle	Tuberculosis-like disease; rare in North America; *M bovis* is closely related to *M tuberculosis*
SPECIES POTENTIALLY PATHOGENIC IN HUMANS		
Moderately common causes of disease		
M avium complex	Soil, water, birds, fowl, swine, cattle, environment	Disseminated, pulmonary; very common in AIDS patients; occurs in other immunosuppressed patients; uncommon in patients with normal immune systems
M kansasii	Water, cattle	Pulmonary, other sites
Uncommon to very rare causes of disease		
M africanum	Humans, monkeys	Pulmonary cultures; resembles *M tuberculosis;* rare
M genavense	Humans?, pet birds?	Blood in AIDS patients; grows in liquid medium (BACTEC) and on solid medium supplemented with mycobactin j; grows in 2–8 weeks
M haemophilum	Unknown	Subcutaneous nodules and ulcers primarily in AIDS patients; requires hemoglobin or hemin; grows at 28–32 °C; rare

Species	Reservoir	Common Clinical Manifestations; Comment
M malmoense	Unknown, environment	Pulmonary, tuberculosis-like (adults), lymph nodes (children); most reported cases are from Sweden, but organism may be much more widespread; *M malmoense* is closely related to *M avium-intracellulare;* takes 8–12 weeks to grow
M marinum	Fish, water	Subcutaneous nodules and abscesses, skin ulcers
M scrofulaceum	Soil, water, moist foods	Cervical lymphadenitis; usually cured by incision, drainage, and removal of involved lymph nodes
M simiae	Monkeys, water	Pulmonary, disseminated in AIDS patients; rare
M szulgai	Unknown	Pulmonary, tuberculosis-like; rare
M ulcerans	Humans, environment	Subcutaneous nodules and ulcers; may be severe; *M ulcerans* is closely related to *M marinum;* takes 6–12 weeks to grow; optimal growth at 33 °C suggests environmental source; rare
M xenopi	Water, birds	Pulmonary, tuberculosis-like with preexisting lung disease; rare
Rapid growers		
M fortuitum and *M chelonae*	Soil, water, animals, marine life	Cutaneous lesions most common, subcutaneous abscesses, disseminated infections; grow in ≤ 7 days; *M fortuitum* is more susceptible to antibiotics
SAPROPHYTIC SPECIES THAT VERY RARELY CAUSE DISEASE IN HUMANS		
M gordonae	Water	These saprophytic *Mycobacterium* species are very uncommon causes of disease in humans. Positive cultures for these mycobacteria usually represent environmental contamination of specimens and not disease. Many of the saprophytic mycobacteria grow best at temperatures ≤ 33 °C. There are many other saprophytic Mycobacterium species not listed here that seldom if ever appear in cultures of patients' specimens.
M flavescens	Soil, water	
M fallax	Soil, water	
M gastri	Gastric washings	

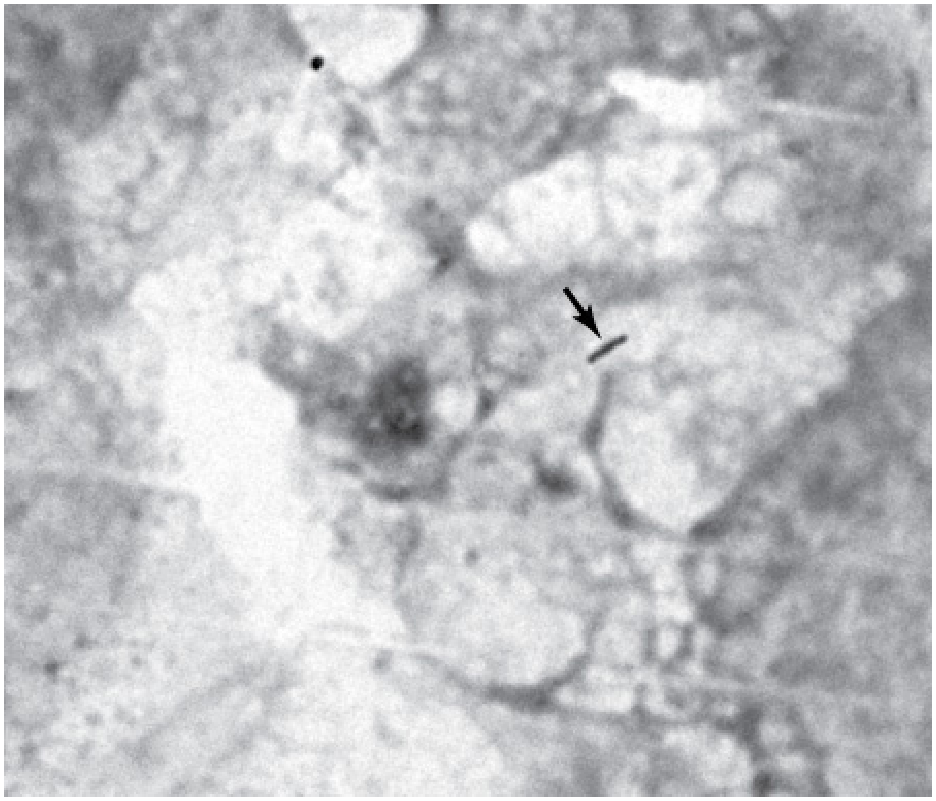
MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

In tissue, tubercle bacilli are thin straight rods measuring about 0.4 × 3 μm (Figure 24–1). On artificial media, coccoid and filamentous forms are seen with variable morphology from one species to another. Mycobacteria cannot be classified as either gram-positive or gram-negative. Once stained by basic dyes they cannot be decolorized by alcohol, regardless of treatment with iodine. True tubercle bacilli are characterized by "acid-fastness"—ie, 95% ethyl alcohol containing 3% hydrochloric acid (acid-alcohol) quickly decolorizes all bacteria except the mycobacteria. Acid-fastness depends on the integrity of the waxy envelope. The Ziehl-Neelsen technique of staining is employed for identification of acid-fast bacteria. The method is detailed in Chapter 47. In smears of sputum or sections of tissue, mycobacteria can be demonstrated by yellow-orange fluorescence after staining with fluorochrome stains (eg, auramine, rhodamine).

Figure 24–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (arrow) in a processed sputum specimen stained by Ziehl-Neelsen stain. The single *M tuberculosis* appeared red against a faint blue background.

CULTURE

The media for primary culture of mycobacteria should include a nonselective medium and a selective medium. Selective media contain antibiotics to prevent the overgrowth of contaminating bacteria and fungi. There are three general formulations that can be used for both the nonselective and selective media.

Semisynthetic Agar Media

These media (eg, Middlebrook 7H10 and 7H11) contain defined salts, vitamins, cofactors, oleic acid, albumin, catalase, and glycerol; the 7H11 medium contains casein hydrolysate also. The albumin neutralizes the toxic and inhibitory effects of fatty acids in the specimen or medium. Large inocula yield growth on these media in several weeks. Because large inocula may be necessary these media may be less sensitive than other media for primary isolation of mycobacteria.

The semisynthetic agar media are used for observing colony morphology, for susceptibility testing, and, with added antibiotics and malachite green, as selective media.

Inspissated Egg Media

These media (eg, Löwenstein-Jensen) contain defined salts, glycerol, and complex organic substances (eg, fresh eggs or egg yolks, potato flour, and other ingredients in various combinations). Malachite green is included to inhibit other bacteria. Small inocula in specimens from patients will grow on these media in 3–6 weeks.

These media with added antibiotics are used as selective media.

Broth Media

Broth media (eg, Middlebrook 7H9 and 7H12) support the proliferation of small inocula. Ordinarily, mycobacteria grow in clumps or masses because of the hydrophobic character of the cell surface. If Tweens (water-soluble esters of fatty acids) are added, they wet the surface and thus permit dispersed growth in liquid media. Growth is often more rapid than on complex media.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Mycobacteria are obligate aerobes and derive energy from the oxidation of many simple carbon compounds. Increased CO_2 tension enhances growth. Biochemical activities are not characteristic, and the growth rate is much slower than that of most bacteria. The doubling time of tubercle bacilli is about 18 hours. Saprophytic forms tend to grow more rapidly, to proliferate well at 22–33 °C, to produce more pigment, and to be less acid-fast than pathogenic forms.

REACTION TO PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL AGENTS

Mycobacteria tend to be more resistant to chemical agents than other bacteria because of the hydrophobic nature of the cell surface and their clumped growth. Dyes (eg, malachite green) or antibacterial agents (eg, penicillin) that are bacteriostatic to other bacteria can be incorporated into media without inhibiting the growth of tubercle bacilli. Acids and alkalies permit the survival of some exposed tubercle bacilli and are used to help eliminate contaminating organisms and for "concentration" of clinical specimens. Tubercle bacilli are resistant to drying and survive for long periods in dried sputum.

VARIATION

Variation can occur in colony appearance, pigmentation, virulence, optimal growth temperature, and many other cellular or growth characteristics.

PATHOGENICITY OF MYCOBACTERIA

There are marked differences in the ability of different mycobacteria to cause lesions in various host species. Humans and guinea pigs are highly susceptible to *M tuberculosis* infection, whereas fowl and cattle are resistant. *M tuberculosis* and *Mycobacterium bovis* are equally pathogenic for humans. The route of infection (respiratory versus intestinal) determines the pattern of lesions. In developed countries, *M bovis* has become very rare. Some "atypical" mycobacteria (eg, *Mycobacterium kansasii*) produce human disease indistinguishable from tuberculosis; others (eg, *Mycobacterium fortuitum*) cause only surface lesions or act as opportunists.

Constituents of Tubercle Bacilli

The constituents listed below are found mainly in cell walls. Mycobacterial cell walls can induce delayed hypersensitivity and some resistance to infection and can replace whole mycobacterial cells in Freund's adjuvant. Mycobacterial cell contents only elicit delayed hypersensitivity reactions in previously sensitized animals.

LIPIDS

Mycobacteria are rich in lipids. These include mycolic acids (long-chain fatty acids C78–C90), waxes, and phosphatides. In the cell, the lipids are largely bound to proteins and polysaccharides. Muramyl dipeptide (from peptidoglycan) complexed with mycolic acids can cause granuloma formation; phospholipids induce caseous necrosis. Lipids are to some extent responsible for acid-fastness. Their removal with hot acid destroys acid-fastness, which depends on both the integrity of the cell wall and the presence of certain lipids. Acid-fastness is also lost after sonication of mycobacterial cells. Analysis of lipids by gas chromatography reveals patterns that aid in classification of different species.

Virulent strains of tubercle bacilli form microscopic "serpentine cords" in which acid-fast bacilli are arranged in parallel chains. Cord formation is correlated with virulence. A "cord factor" (trehalose-6,6'-dimycolate) has been extracted from virulent bacilli with petroleum ether. It inhibits migration of leukocytes, causes chronic granulomas, and can serve as an immunologic "adjuvant."

PROTEINS

Each type of mycobacterium contains several proteins that elicit the tuberculin reaction. Proteins bound to a wax fraction can, upon injection, induce tuberculin sensitivity. They can also elicit the formation of a variety of antibodies.

POLYSACCHARIDES

Mycobacteria contain a variety of polysaccharides. Their role in the pathogenesis of disease is uncertain. They can induce the immediate type of hypersensitivity and can serve as antigens in reactions with sera of infected persons.

Pathogenesis

Mycobacteria in droplets 1–5 μm in diameter are inhaled and reach alveoli. The disease results from establishment and proliferation of virulent organisms and interactions with the host. Injected avirulent bacilli (eg, BCG) survive only for months or years in the normal host. Resistance and hypersensitivity of the host greatly influence the development of the disease.

Pathology

The production and development of lesions and their healing or progression are determined chiefly by (1) the number of mycobacteria in the inoculum and their subsequent multiplication, and (2) the resistance and hypersensitivity of the host.

TWO PRINCIPAL LESIONS

Exudative Type

This consists of an acute inflammatory reaction, with edema fluid, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and, later, monocytes around the tubercle bacilli. This type is seen particularly in lung tissue, where it resembles bacterial pneumonia. It may heal by resolution, so that the entire exudate becomes absorbed; it may lead to massive necrosis of tissue; or it may develop into the second (productive) type of lesion. During the exudative phase, the tuberculin test becomes positive.

Productive Type

When fully developed, this lesion, a chronic granuloma, consists of three zones: (1) a central area of large, multinucleated giant cells containing tubercle bacilli; (2) a mid zone of pale epithelioid cells, often arranged radially; and (3) a peripheral zone of fibroblasts, lymphocytes, and monocytes. Later, peripheral fibrous tissue develops, and the central area undergoes caseation necrosis. Such a lesion is called a tubercle. A caseous tubercle may break into a bronchus, empty its contents there, and form a cavity. It may subsequently heal by fibrosis or calcification.

SPREAD OF ORGANISMS IN THE HOST

Tubercle bacilli spread in the host by direct extension, through the lymphatic channels and bloodstream, and via the bronchi and gastrointestinal tract.

In the first infection, tubercle bacilli always spread from the initial site via the lymphatics to the regional lymph nodes. The bacilli may spread farther and reach the bloodstream, which in turn distributes bacilli to all organs (miliary distribution). The bloodstream can be invaded also by erosion of a vein by a caseating tubercle or lymph node. If a caseating lesion discharges its contents into a bronchus, they are aspirated and distributed to other parts of the lungs or are swallowed and passed into the stomach and intestines.

INTRACELLULAR SITE OF GROWTH

Once mycobacteria establish themselves in tissue, they reside principally intracellularly in monocytes, reticuloendothelial cells, and giant cells. The intracellular location is one of the features that makes chemotherapy difficult and favors microbial persistence. Within the cells of immune animals, multiplication of tubercle bacilli is greatly inhibited.

Primary Infection & Reactivation Types of Tuberculosis

When a host has first contact with tubercle bacilli, the following features are usually observed: (1) An acute exudative lesion develops and rapidly spreads to the lymphatics and regional lymph nodes. The exudative lesion in tissue often heals rapidly. (2) The lymph node undergoes massive caseation, which usually calcifies. (3) The tuberculin test becomes positive.

This primary infection type occurred in the past, usually in childhood but now frequently in adults who have remained free from infection and therefore tuberculin-negative in early life. In primary infections, the involvement may be in any part of the lung but is most often at the base.

The reactivation type is usually caused by tubercle bacilli that have survived in the primary lesion. Reactivation tuberculosis is characterized by chronic tissue lesions, the formation of tubercles, caseation, and fibrosis. Regional lymph nodes are only slightly involved, and they do not caseate. The reactivation type almost always begins at the apex of the lung, where the oxygen tension (PO_2) is highest.

These differences between primary infection and reinfection or reactivation are attributed to (1) resistance and (2) hypersensitivity induced by the first infection. It is not clear to what extent each of these components participates in the modified response in reactivation tuberculosis.

Immunity & Hypersensitivity

During the first infection with tubercle bacilli, a certain resistance is acquired and there is an increased capacity to localize tubercle bacilli, retard their multiplication, limit their spread, and reduce lymphatic dissemination. This can be attributed to the development of cellular immunity, with evident ability of mononuclear phagocytes to limit the multiplication of ingested organisms and even to destroy them.

In the course of primary infection, the host also acquires hypersensitivity to the tubercle bacilli. This is made evident by the development of a positive tuberculin reaction (see below). Tuberculin sensitivity can be induced by whole tubercle bacilli or by tuberculoprotein in combination with the chloroform-soluble wax D of the tubercle bacillus, but not by tuberculoprotein alone. Hypersensitivity and resistance appear to be distinct aspects of related cell-mediated reactions.

Tuberculin Test

MATERIAL

Old tuberculin is a concentrated filtrate of broth in which tubercle bacilli have grown for 6 weeks. In addition to the reactive tuberculoproteins, this material contains a variety of other constituents of tubercle bacilli and of growth medium. A purified protein derivative (PPD) is obtained by chemical fractionation of old tuberculin. PPD is standardized in terms of its biologic reactivity as "tuberculin units" (TU). By international agreement, the TU is defined as the activity contained in a specified weight of Seibert's PPD Lot No. 49608 in a specified buffer. This is PPD-S, the standard for tuberculin against which the potency of all products must be established by biologic assay—ie, by reaction size in humans. First-strength tuberculin has 1 TU; intermediate-strength has 5 TU; and second-strength has 250 TU. Bioequivalency of PPD products is not based on weight of the material but on comparative activity.

DOSE OF TUBERCULIN

A large amount of tuberculin injected into a hypersensitive host may give rise to severe local reactions and a flare-up of inflammation and necrosis at the main sites of infection (focal reactions). For this reason, tuberculin tests in surveys employ 5 TU; in persons suspected of extreme hypersensitivity, skin testing is begun with 1 TU. More concentrated material (250 TU) is administered only if the reaction to 5 TU is negative. The volume is usually 0.1 mL injected intracutaneously. The PPD preparation must be stabilized with polysorbate 80 to prevent adsorption to glass.

REACTIONS TO TUBERCULIN

In an individual who has not had contact with mycobacteria, there is no reaction to PPD-S. An individual who has had a primary infection with tubercle bacilli develops induration, edema, erythema in 24–48 hours, and, with very intense reactions, even central necrosis. The skin test should be read in 48 or 72 hours. It is considered positive if the injection of 5 TU is followed by induration 10 mm or more in diameter. Positive tests tend to persist for several days. Weak reactions may disappear more rapidly.

The tuberculin test becomes positive within 4–6 weeks after infection (or injection of avirulent bacilli). It may be negative in the presence of tuberculous infection when "anergy" develops due to overwhelming tuberculosis, measles, Hodgkin's disease, sarcoidosis, AIDS, or immunosuppression. A positive tuberculin test may occasionally revert to negative upon isoniazid treatment of a recent converter. After BCG vaccination, people convert to a positive test, but this may last for only 3–7 years. Only the elimination of viable tubercle bacilli results in reversion of the tuberculin test to negative. However, persons who were PPD-positive years ago and are healthy may fail to give a positive skin test. When such persons are retested 2 weeks later, their PPD skin test—"boosted" by the recent antigen injection—will give a positive size of induration again.

INTERPRETATION OF TUBERCULIN TEST

A positive tuberculin test indicates that an individual has been infected in the past. It does not imply that active disease or immunity to disease is present. Tuberculin-positive persons are at risk of developing disease from reactivation of the primary infection, whereas tuberculin-negative persons who have never been infected are not subject to that risk, though they may become infected from an external source.

Clinical Findings

Since the tubercle bacillus can involve every organ system, its clinical manifestations are protean. Fatigue, weakness, weight loss, and fever may be signs of tuberculous disease. Pulmonary involvement giving rise to chronic cough and spitting of blood usually is associated with far-advanced lesions. Meningitis or urinary tract involvement can occur in the absence of other signs of tuberculosis. Bloodstream dissemination leads to miliary tuberculosis with lesions in many organs and a high mortality rate.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

A positive tuberculin test does not prove the presence of active disease due to tubercle bacilli. Isolation of tubercle bacilli provides such proof.

SPECIMENS

Specimens consist of fresh sputum, gastric washings, urine, pleural fluid, cerebrospinal fluid, joint fluid, biopsy material, blood, or other suspected material.

DECONTAMINATION AND CONCENTRATION OF SPECIMENS

Specimens from sputum and other nonsterile sites should be liquefied with *N*-acetyl-L-cysteine, decontaminated with NaOH (kills many other bacteria and fungi), neutralized with buffer, and concentrated by centrifugation. Specimens processed in this way can be used for acid-fast stains and for culture. Specimens from sterile sites, such as cerebrospinal fluid, do not need the decontamination procedure but can be directly centrifuged, examined, and cultured.

SMEARS

Sputum, exudates, or other material is examined for acid-fast bacilli by Ziehl-Neelsen staining. Stains of gastric washings and urine generally are not recommended, because saprophytic mycobacteria may be present and yield a positive stain. Fluorescence microscopy with auramine-rhodamine stain is more sensitive than acid-fast stain. If acid-fast organisms are found in an appropriate specimen, this is presumptive evidence of mycobacterial infection.

CULTURE, IDENTIFICATION, AND SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Processed specimens from nonsterile sites and centrifuged specimens from sterile sites can be cultured directly onto selective and nonselective media (see above). The selective broth culture often is the most sensitive method and provides results most rapidly. A selective agar media (eg, Löwenstein-Jensen or Middlebrook 7H10/7H11 biplate with antibiotics) should be inoculated in parallel with broth media cultures. Incubation is at 35–37 °C in 5–10% CO_2 for up to 8 weeks. If cultures are negative in the setting of a positive acid-fast stain or slowly growing atypical mycobacteria (see below) are suspected, then a set of inoculated media should be incubated at a lower temperature (eg, 24–33 °C) and both sets incubated for 12 weeks.

Blood for culture of mycobacteria (usually *M avium* complex) should be anticoagulated and processed by one of three methods: (1) commercially available lysis centrifugation system; (2) inoculation into commercially available broth media specifically designed for blood cultures; or (3) centrifugation of the blood and inoculation of the white blood cell buffy coat layer, with or without deoxycholate lysis of the cells, into broth culture. Solid media can be used in parallel.

It is medically important to characterize and separate *M tuberculosis* from all the other species of mycobacteria. Isolated mycobacteria should be identified as to species. Conventional methods for identification of mycobacteria include observation of rate of growth, colony morphology, pigmentation, and biochemical profiles. The conventional methods often require 6–8 weeks for identification. Growth rate separates the rapid growers (growth in $\leq$ 7 days) from other mycobacteria (Table 24–1). Photochromogens produce pigment in light but not in darkness; scotochromogens develop pigment when growing in the dark; nonchromogens (nonphotochromogens) are nonpigmented or have light tan or buff-colored colonies. Individual species or complexes are defined by additional biochemical characteristics (eg, positive niacin test as with *M tuberculosis*, reduction of nitrate, production of urease or catalase, arylsulfatase test, and many others). The traditional classification based on the conventional methods of identification is set forth in Table 24–2. Molecular probe methods are available for four species (see below) and are much faster than the conventional methods. In the United States, the four species make up 95% or more of clinical isolates of mycobacteria, and the conventional methods are used to identify only a small percentage of the clinical isolates. The conventional methods for classifying mycobacteria are rapidly becoming of historical interest because molecular probe methods are much faster and easier.

Table 24–2. Runyon Classification of Mycobacteria.

Classification	Organism
TB complex	*M tuberculosis*
	M africanum
	M bovis
Photochromogens	*M asiaticum*
	M kansasii
	M marinum
	M simiae
Scotochromogens	*M flavescens*
	M gordonae
	M scrofulaceum
	M szulgai
Nonchromogens	*M avium* complex
	M celatum
	M haemophilum
	M gastri
	M genavense
	M malmoense
	M nonchromogenicum
	M shimoidei
	M terrae
	M trivale
	M ulcerans
	M xenopi

Classification	Organism
Rapid growers	*M abscessus*
	M fortuitum group
	M chelonae group
	M phlei
	M smegmatis
	M vaccae

Molecular probes provide a rapid, sensitive, and specific method to identify mycobacteria. The probes can be used on mycobacterial growth from solid media or from broth cultures. DNA probes specific for rRNA sequences of the test organism are used in a hybridization procedure. There are approximately 10,000 copies of the rRNA per mycobacteria cell, providing a natural amplification system, enhancing detection. Double-stranded hybrids are separated from unhybridized single-stranded probes. The DNA probes are linked with chemicals that are activated in the hybrids and detected by chemiluminescence. Probes for the *M tuberculosis* complex (*M tuberculosis, M bovis,* and *M africanum*), *M avium* complex (*M avium, M intracellulare,* and closely related mycobacteria), *M kansasii*, and *M gordonae* are in use. The use of these probes has shortened the time to identification of clinically important mycobacteria from several weeks to as little as 1 day.

High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) has been applied to speciation of mycobacteria. The method is based on development of profiles of mycolic acids, which vary from one species to another. HPLC to speciate mycobacteria is available in reference laboratories.

Susceptibility testing of mycobacteria is an important adjunct in selecting drugs for effective therapy. A standardized radiometric broth culture technique can be used to test for susceptibility to first-line drugs. The complex and more arduous conventional agar-based technique usually is performed in reference laboratories; first- and second-line drugs can be tested by this method.

DNA DETECTION

The polymerase chain reaction holds great promise for the rapid and direct detection of *M tuberculosis* in clinical specimens. The overall sensitivity is 55–90% with a specificity of about 99%. The test has the highest sensitivity when applied to specimens that have smears positive for acid-fast bacilli; the PCR test is approved for this use on sputum specimens that are acid-fast stain-positive.

The characterization of specific strains of *M tuberculosis* can be important for clinical and epidemiologic purposes. It allows such things as tracing transmission from one person to another, analysis of outbreaks of tuberculosis, and demonstration of reactivation versus reinfection in individual patients. DNA fingerprinting is done using a standardized protocol based on restriction fragment length polymorphism. Many copies of the insertion sequence *6110* (IS*6110*) are present in the chromosome of most strains of *M tuberculosis*, and these are located at variable positions. DNA fragments are generated by restriction endonuclease digestion and separated by electrophoresis. A probe against IS*6110* is used to determine the genotypes. This testing is done at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, at some state health department laboratories, and in research laboratories.

Treatment

The primary treatment for mycobacterial infection is specific chemotherapy. The drugs for treatment of mycobacterial infection are discussed in Chapter 10. Two cases of tuberculosis are presented in Chapter 48.

Between one in 10^6 and one in 10^8 tubercle bacilli are spontaneous mutants resistant to first-line antituberculosis drugs. When the drugs are used singly, the resistant tubercle bacilli emerge rapidly and multiply. Therefore, treatment regimens use drugs in combination to yield cure rates of > 95%.

The two major drugs used to treat tuberculosis are isoniazid and rifampin. The other first-line drugs are pyrazinamide, ethambutol, and streptomycin. Second-line drugs are more toxic or less effective (or both), and they should be used in therapy only under extenuating circumstances (eg, treatment failure, multiple drug resistance). Second-line drugs include kanamycin, capreomycin, ethionamide, cycloserine, ofloxacin, and ciprofloxacin.

A four-drug regimen of isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol is recommended for persons in the United States who have a slight to moderate risk for being infected with drug-resistant tubercle bacilli. The risk factors include recent emigration from Latin America or Asia; persons with HIV infections or who are at risk for HIV infection and live in an area with a low prevalence of multidrug-resistant tubercle bacilli; and persons who were previously treated with a regimen that did not include rifampin.

Standard 9-month regimens are based on isoniazid and rifampin given daily; pyrazinamide, ethambutol, or streptomycin is given concomitantly until susceptibility test results are known. The isoniazid and rifampin can be administered daily for 1–2 months and twice weekly for the remainder of the 9 months, but this regimen should not be used when there is any likelihood of drug resistance. There also are several 6-month regimens for the initial treatment of tuberculosis that generally employ three or four drug regimens for 2 months followed by isoniazid and rifampin twice weekly for the total of 6 months. In noncompliant patients, directly observed therapy is important as well.

Drug resistance in *M tuberculosis* is a worldwide problem. Mechanisms explaining the resistance phenomenon for many but not all of the resistant strains have been defined. Isoniazid resistance has been associated with deletions or mutations in the catalase-peroxidase gene (*katG*); these isolates become catalase-negative or have decreased catalase activity. Isoniazid resistance has also been associated with alterations in the *inhA* gene, which encodes an enzyme that functions in mycolic acid synthesis. Streptomycin resistance has been associated with mutations in genes encoding the ribosomal S12 protein and 16S rRNA, *rpsL* and *rrs,* respectively. Rifampin resistance has been associated with alterations in the b subunit of RNA polymerase, the *rpoB* gene. Mutations in the DNA gyrase gene *gyrA* have been associated with resistance to fluoroquinolones. The possibility that drug resistance is present in a patient's *M tuberculosis* isolate must be taken into account when selecting therapy.

Multidrug-resistant *M tuberculosis* (resistant to both isoniazid and rifampin) is a major and increasing problem in tuberculosis treatment and control. Such strains are prevalent in certain geographic areas (eg, New York City) and certain populations (hospitals and prisons). There have been many outbreaks of tuberculosis with multidrug-resistant strains. They are particularly important in persons with HIV infections. Persons infected with multidrug-resistant organisms or who are at high risk for such infections, including exposure to another person with such an infection, should be treated according to susceptibility test results for the infecting strain. If susceptibility results are not available, the drugs should be selected according to the known pattern of susceptibility in the community and modified when the susceptibility test results are available. Therapy should include a minimum of three and preferably more than three drugs to which the organisms have demonstrated susceptibility.

Epidemiology

The most frequent source of infection is the human who excretes, particularly from the respiratory tract, large numbers of tubercle bacilli. Close contact (eg, in the family) and massive exposure (eg, in medical personnel) make transmission by droplet nuclei most likely.

Susceptibility to tuberculosis is a function of the risk of acquiring the infection and the risk of clinical disease after infection has occurred. For the tuberculin-negative person, the risk of acquiring tubercle bacilli depends on exposure to sources of infectious bacilli—principally sputum-positive patients. This risk is proportionate to the rate of active infection in the population, crowding, socioeconomic disadvantage, and inadequacy of medical care.

The development of clinical disease after infection may have a genetic component (proved in animals and suggested in humans by a higher incidence of disease in those with HLA-Bw15 histocompatibility antigen). It is influenced by age (high risk in infancy and in the elderly), by undernutrition, and by immunologic status, coexisting diseases (eg, silicosis, diabetes), and other individual host resistance factors.

Infection occurs at an earlier age in urban than in rural populations. Disease occurs only in a small proportion of infected individuals. In the United States at present, active disease has several epidemiologic patterns where individuals are at increased risk: minorities, predominantly African-Americans and Hispanics; HIV-infected patients; homeless persons; and the very young and very old. The incidence of tuberculosis is especially high in minority persons with HIV infections. Primary infection can occur in any person exposed to an infectious source. Patients who have had tuberculosis can be infected exogenously a second time. Endogenous reactivation tuberculosis occurs most commonly among persons with AIDS and elderly malnourished or alcoholic destitute men.

Prevention & Control

(1) Prompt and effective treatment of patients with active tuberculosis and careful follow-up of their contacts with tuberculin tests, x-rays, and appropriate treatment are the mainstays of public health tuberculosis control.

(2) Drug treatment of asymptomatic tuberculin-positive persons in the age groups most prone to develop complications (eg, children) and in tuberculin-positive persons who must receive immunosuppressive drugs greatly reduces reactivation of infection.

(3) Individual host resistance: Nonspecific factors may reduce host resistance, thus favoring the conversion of asymptomatic infection into disease. Such factors include starvation, gastrectomy, and suppression of cellular immunity by drugs (eg, corticosteroids) or infection. HIV infection is a major risk factor for tuberculosis.

(4) Immunization: Various living avirulent tubercle bacilli, particularly BCG (bacillus Calmette-Guérin, an attenuated bovine organism), have been used to induce a certain amount of resistance in those heavily exposed to infection. Vaccination with these organisms is a substitute for primary infection with virulent tubercle bacilli without the danger inherent in the latter. The available vaccines are inadequate from many technical and biologic standpoints. Nevertheless, BCG is given to children in many countries. In the United States, the use of BCG is suggested only for tuberculin-negative persons who are heavily exposed (members of tuberculous families, medical personnel). Statistical evidence indicates that an increased resistance for a

limited period follows BCG vaccination.

(5) The eradication of tuberculosis in cattle and the pasteurization of milk have greatly reduced *M bovis* infections.

OTHER MYCOBACTERIA

In addition to tubercle bacilli (*M tuberculosis, M bovis*), other mycobacteria of varying degrees of pathogenicity have been grown from human sources in past decades. These "atypical" mycobacteria were initially grouped according to speed of growth at various temperatures and production of pigments (see above). Several are now identified using DNA probes. Most of them occur in the environment, are not readily transmitted from person to person, and are opportunistic pathogens (Table 24–1).

Species or complexes that are significant causes of disease are outlined below.

Mycobacterium avium Complex

The *Mycobacterium avium* complex is often called the MAC or MAI *(M avium-intracellulare)* complex. These organisms grow optimally at 41 °C and produce smooth, soft, nonpigmented colonies. They are ubiquitous in the environment and have been cultured from water, soil, food, and animals, including birds.

MAC organisms infrequently cause disease in immunocompetent humans. However, in the United States, disseminated MAC infection is one of the most common opportunistic infections of bacterial origin in AIDS patients. The risk of developing disseminated MAC infection in HIV-infected persons is greatly increased when the CD4-positive lymphocyte count declines to < 100/μL. (See Case 17 in Chapter 48.) Gender, race, ethnic group, and individual risk factors for HIV infection do not influence the development of disseminated MAC infection, but prior *Pneumocystis jiroveci* infection, severe anemia, and interruption of antiretroviral therapy may increase the risk.

During the first 15 years of the AIDS epidemic, approximately 25% and perhaps as high as 50% of HIV-infected patients developed MAC bacteremia and disseminated infection during the course of AIDS. Subsequently, the use of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) and the use of azithromycin or clarithromycin prophylaxis has greatly decreased the incidence of disseminated MAC infection in AIDS patients.

Environmental exposure can led to MAC colonization of either the respiratory or gastrointestinal tract. Transient bacteremia occurs followed by invasion of tissues. Persistent bacteremia and extensive infiltration of tissues resulting in organ dysfunction result. Any organ can be involved. In the lung, nodules, diffuse infiltrates, cavities, and endobronchial lesions are common. Other manifestations include pericarditis, soft tissue abscesses, skin lesions, lymph node involvement, bone infection, and central nervous system lesions. The patients often present with nonspecific symptoms of fever, night sweats, abdominal pain, diarrhea, and weight loss. The diagnosis is made by culturing MAC organisms from blood or tissue.

MAC organisms routinely are resistant to first-line antituberculosis drugs. Treatment with either clarithromycin or azithromycin plus ethambutol is a preferred initial therapy. Other drugs that may be useful are rifabutin (Ansamycin), clofazimine, fluoroquinolones, and amikacin. Multiple drugs often are used in combination. Therapy should be continued for life. Therapy results in decreasing counts of MAC organisms in blood and amelioration of clinical symptoms. Rifabutin prophylaxis decreases the incidence of bacteremia by about 50% and decreases the clinical symptoms when disseminated disease occurs.

Mycobacterium kansasii

M kansasii is a photochromogen that requires complex media for growth at 37 °C. It can produce pulmonary and systemic disease indistinguishable from tuberculosis, especially in patients with impaired immune responses. Sensitive to rifampin, it is often treated with the combination of rifampin, ethambutol, and isoniazid with good clinical response. The source of infection is uncertain, and communicability is low or absent.

Mycobacterium scrofulaceum

This is a scotochromogen occasionally found in water and as a saprophyte in adults with chronic lung disease. It causes chronic cervical lymphadenitis in children and, rarely, other granulomatous disease. Surgical excision of involved cervical lymph nodes may be curative, and resistance to antituberculosis drugs is common. (*Mycobacterium szulgai* and *Mycobacterium xenopi* are similar.)

Mycobacterium marinum & *Mycobacterium ulcerans*

These organisms occur in water, grow best at low temperature (31 °C), may infect fish, and can produce superficial skin lesions (ulcers, "swimming pool granulomas") in humans. Surgical excision, tetracyclines, rifampin, and ethambutol are sometimes effective.

Mycobacterium fortuitum-chelonae Complex

These are saprophytes found in soil and water that grow rapidly (3–6 days) in culture and form no pigment. They can produce superficial and systemic disease in humans on rare occasions. The organisms are often resistant to antimycobacterial drugs but may respond to amikacin, doxycycline, cefoxitin, erythromycin, or rifampin.

Other *Mycobacterium* Species

The high risk for mycobacterial infection in AIDS patients has resulted in increased awareness of mycobacterial infections in general. Species previously considered to be curiosities and extremely uncommon have been more widely recognized (Table 24–1). *Mycobacterium malmoense* has been reported mostly from Northern Europe. It causes a pulmonary tuberculosis-like disease in adults and lymphadenitis in children. *Mycobacterium haemophilum* and *Mycobacterium genavense* cause disease in AIDS patients. The importance of these two species is not fully understood.

Saprophytic Mycobacteria Not Associated with Human Illness

Mycobacterium phlei is frequently found on plants, in soil, or in water. *Mycobacterium gordonae* is similar. *Mycobacterium smegmatis* occurs regularly in human sebaceous secretions and it might be confused with pathogenic acid-fast organisms. *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* produces a chronic enteritis in cattle.

MYCOBACTERIUM LEPRAE

Although this organism was described by Hansen in 1873 (9 years before Koch's discovery of the tubercle bacillus), it has not been cultivated on nonliving bacteriologic media. It causes leprosy. There are more than 10 million cases of leprosy, mainly in Asia.

Typical acid-fast bacilli—singly, in parallel bundles, or in globular masses—are regularly found in scrapings from skin or mucous membranes (particularly the nasal septum) in lepromatous leprosy. The bacilli are often found within the endothelial cells of blood vessels or in mononuclear cells. When bacilli from human leprosy (ground tissue nasal scrapings) are inoculated into footpads of mice, local granulomatous lesions develop with limited multiplication of bacilli. Inoculated armadillos develop extensive lepromatous leprosy, and armadillos naturally infected with leprosy have been found in Texas and Mexico. *M leprae* from armadillo or human tissue contains a unique *o*-diphenoloxidase, perhaps an enzyme characteristic of leprosy bacilli.

Clinical Findings

The onset of leprosy is insidious. The lesions involve the cooler tissue of the body: skin, superficial nerves, nose, pharynx, larynx, eyes, and testicles. The skin lesions may occur as pale, anesthetic macular lesions 1–10 cm in diameter; diffuse or discrete erythematous, infiltrated nodules 1–5 cm in diameter; or a diffuse skin infiltration. Neurologic disturbances are manifested by nerve infiltration and thickening, with resultant anesthesia, neuritis, paresthesia, trophic ulcers, and bone resorption and shortening of digits. The disfigurement due to the skin infiltration and nerve involvement in untreated cases may be extreme.

The disease is divided into two major types, lepromatous and tuberculoid, with several intermediate stages. In the lepromatous type, the course is progressive and malign, with nodular skin lesions; slow symmetric nerve involvement; abundant acid-fast bacilli in the skin lesions; continuous bacteremia; and a negative lepromin (extract of lepromatous tissue) skin test. In lepromatous leprosy, cell-mediated immunity is markedly deficient and the skin is infiltrated with suppressor T cells. In the tuberculoid type, the course is benign and nonprogressive, with macular skin lesions, severe asymmetric nerve involvement of sudden onset with few bacilli present in the lesions, and a positive lepromin skin test. In tuberculoid leprosy, cell-mediated immunity is intact and the skin is infiltrated with helper T cells.

Systemic manifestations of anemia and lymphadenopathy may also occur. Eye involvement is common. Amyloidosis may develop.

Diagnosis

Scrapings with a scalpel blade from skin or nasal mucosa or from a biopsy of earlobe skin are smeared on a slide and stained by the Ziehl-Neelsen technique. Biopsy of skin or of a thickened nerve gives a typical histologic picture. No serologic tests are of value. Nontreponemal serologic tests for syphilis frequently yield false-positive results in leprosy.

Treatment

Sulfones such as dapsone (see Chapter 10) are first-line therapy for both tuberculoid and lepromatous leprosy. Rifampin or clofazimine generally is included in the initial treatment regimens. Other drugs active against *M leprae* include minocycline, clarithromycin, and some fluoroquinolones. Regimens recommended by the World Health Organization are practical. Several years of therapy may be necessary to adequately treat leprosy.

Epidemiology

Transmission of leprosy is most likely to occur when small children are exposed for prolonged periods to heavy shedders of bacilli. Nasal secretions are the most likely infectious material for family contacts. The incubation period is probably 2–10 years. Without prophylaxis, about 10% of exposed children may acquire the disease. Treatment tends to reduce and abolish the infectivity of patients. The naturally infected armadillos found in Texas and Mexico probably play no role in transmission of leprosy to humans.

Prevention & Control

In the United States, the current recommendations for prevention of leprosy include a thorough examination of household contacts and close relatives. This should include a complete skin examination and an examination of the peripheral nervous system. The US Public Health Service National Hansen's Disease Program does not recommend routine dapsone prophylaxis. A therapeutic trial may be indicated for patients whose signs and symptoms are suggestive of leprosy but who do not have a definitive diagnosis.

REFERENCES

Brown-Elliott BA, Wallace RJ Jr: Infections due to nontuberculous mycobacteria. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Fitzgerald D, Haas DW: *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Gordin FM, Horsburgh CR Jr: *Mycobacterium avium* complex. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Levis WR, Ernst JD: *Mycobacterium leprae* (leprosy, Hansen's disease). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Pfyffer GE, Brown-Elliot BA, Wallace RJ Jr: *Mycobacterium*: General characteristics, isolation, and staining procedures. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Vincent V et al: *Mycobacterium:* Phenotypic and genotypic identification. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Lange Microbiology > Chapter 25. Spirochetes & Other Spiral Microorganisms >

INTRODUCTION

The spirochetes are a large, heterogeneous group of spiral, motile bacteria. One family (Spirochaetaceae) of the order Spirochaetales consists of three genera of free-living, large spiral organisms. The other family (Treponemataceae) includes three genera whose members are human pathogens: (1) treponema, (2) borrelia, and (3) leptospira.

The spirochetes have many structural characteristics in common, as typified by *Treponema pallidum* (Figure 25–1). They are long, slender, helically coiled, spiral or corkscrew-shaped, gram-negative bacilli. *T pallidum* has an outer sheath or glycosaminoglycan coating. Inside the sheath is the outer membrane, which contains peptidoglycan and maintains the structural integrity of the organisms. Endoflagella (axial filaments) are the flagella-like organelles in the periplasmic space encased by the outer membrane. The endoflagella begin at each end of the organism and wind around it, extending to and overlapping at the midpoint. Inside the endoflagella is the inner membrane (cytoplasmic membrane) that provides osmotic stability and covers the protoplasmic cylinder. A series of cytoplasmic tubules (body fibrils) are inside the cell near the inner membrane. Treponemes reproduce by transverse fission.

Figure 25–1.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of whole-mounted *Treponema pallidum* subspecies *pallidum.* The endoflagella (EF) are clearly visible. Bar = 0.2 μm. Inset: Electron micrograph of thin-sectioned *T pallidum.* Note the position of the endoflagella (EF) in the periplasmic space between the inner membrane (IM) and the outer membrane (OM). Bar = 50 nm.

(Courtesy of Eldon M. Walker, University of Texas, Houston, Health Sciences Center.)

INTRODUCTION

The genus *Treponema* includes *Treponema pallidum* subspecies *pallidum,* which causes syphilis; *Treponema pallidum* subspecies *pertenue,* which causes yaws; *Treponema pallidum* subspecies *endemicum,* which causes endemic syphilis (also called bejel); and *Treponema carateum,* which causes pinta.

TREPONEMA PALLIDUM & SYPHILIS

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Slender spirals measuring about 0.2 μm in width and 5–15 μm in length. The spiral coils are regularly spaced at a distance of 1 μm from one another. The organisms are actively motile, rotating steadily around their endoflagella even after attaching to cells by their tapered ends. The long axis of the spiral is ordinarily straight but may sometimes bend, so that the organism forms a complete circle for moments at a time, returning then to its normal straight position.

The spirals are so thin that they are not readily seen unless immunofluorescent stain or darkfield illumination is employed. They do not stain well with aniline dyes, but they can be seen in tissues when stained by a silver impregnation method.

CULTURE

Pathogenic *T pallidum* has never been cultured continuously on artificial media, in fertile eggs, or in tissue culture. Nonpathogenic treponemes (eg, Reiter strain) can be cultured anaerobically in vitro. They are saprophytes antigenically related to *T pallidum.*

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

T pallidum is a microaerophilic organism; it survives best in 1–4% oxygen. The saprophytic Reiter strain grows on a defined medium of 11 amino acids, vitamins, salts, minerals, and serum albumin.

In proper suspending fluids and in the presence of reducing substances, *T pallidum* may remain motile for 3–6 days at 25 °C. In whole blood or plasma stored at 4 °C, organisms remain viable for at least 24 hours, which is of potential importance in blood transfusions.

REACTIONS TO PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL AGENTS

Drying kills the spirochete rapidly, as does elevation of the temperature to 42 °C. Treponemes are rapidly immobilized and killed by trivalent arsenical, mercury, and bismuth (contained in drugs of historical interest in the treatment of syphilis. Penicillin is treponemicidal in minute concentrations, but the rate of killing is slow, presumably because of the metabolic inactivity and slow multiplication rate of *T pallidum* (estimated division time is 30 hours). Resistance to penicillin has not been demonstrated in syphilis.

GENOME

The *T pallidum* genome is a circular chromosome of approximately 1,138,000 base pairs, which is small for bacteria. Most pathogenic bacteria have transposable elements, but *T pallidum* does not, which suggests that the genome is highly conserved and may explain its continued susceptibility to penicillin. There are few genes involved in energy production and synthesis of nutrients, indicating that *T pallidum* obtains these from the host.

Antigenic Structure

The fact that *T pallidum* cannot be cultured in vitro has markedly limited the characterization of its antigens. The outer membrane surrounds the periplasmic space and the peptidoglycan-cytoplasmic membrane complex. Membrane proteins are present that contain covalently bound lipids at their amino terminals. The lipids appear to anchor the proteins to the cytoplasmic or outer membranes and keep the proteins inaccessible to antibodies. The endoflagella are in the periplasmic space. *T pallidum* subspecies *pallidum* has hyaluronidase that breaks down the hyaluronic acid in the ground substance of tissue and presumably enhances the invasiveness of the organism. The protein profiles of *T pallidum* (all the subspecies) are indistinguishable; more than 100 protein antigens have been noted. The endoflagella are composed of three core proteins that are homologous to other bacterial flagellin proteins, plus an unrelated sheath protein. Cardiolipin is an important component of the treponemal antigens.

Humans with syphilis develop antibodies capable of staining *T pallidum* by indirect immunofluorescence, immobilizing and killing live motile *T pallidum* and fixing complement in the presence of a suspension of *T pallidum* or related spirochetes. The spirochetes also cause the development of a distinct antibody-like substance, reagin, which gives positive CF and flocculation tests with aqueous suspensions of cardiolipin extracted from normal mammalian tissues. Both reagin and antitreponemal antibody can be used for the serologic diagnosis of syphilis.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

ACQUIRED SYPHILIS

Natural infection with *T pallidum* is limited to the human host. Human infection is usually transmitted by sexual contact, and the infectious lesion is on the skin or mucous membranes of genitalia. In 10–20% of cases, however, the primary lesion is intrarectal, perianal, or oral. It may be anywhere on the body. *T pallidum* can probably penetrate intact mucous membranes, or it may enter through a break in the epidermis.

Spirochetes multiply locally at the site of entry, and some spread to nearby lymph nodes and then reach the bloodstream. In 2–10 weeks after infection, a papule develops at the site of infection and breaks down to form an ulcer with a clean, hard base ("hard chancre"). The inflammation is characterized by a predominance of lymphocytes and plasma cells. This "primary lesion" always heals spontaneously, but 2–10 weeks later the "secondary" lesions appear. These consist of a red maculopapular rash anywhere on the body, including the hands and feet, and moist, pale papules (condylomas) in the anogenital region, axillas, and mouth. There may also be syphilitic meningitis, chorioretinitis, hepatitis, nephritis (immune complex type), or periostitis. The secondary lesions also subside spontaneously. Both primary and secondary lesions are rich in spirochetes and highly infectious. Contagious lesions may recur within 3–5 years after infection, but thereafter the individual is not infectious. Syphilitic infection may remain subclinical, and the patient may pass through the primary or secondary stage (or both) without symptoms or signs yet develop tertiary lesions.

In about 30% of cases, early syphilitic infection progresses spontaneously to complete cure without treatment. In another 30%, the untreated infection remains latent (principally evident by positive serologic tests). In the remainder, the disease progresses to the "tertiary stage," characterized by the development of granulomatous lesions (gummas) in skin, bones, and liver; degenerative changes in the central nervous system (meningovascular syphilis, paresis, tabes); or cardiovascular lesions (aortitis, aortic aneurysm, aortic valve insufficiency). In all tertiary lesions, treponemes are very rare, and the exaggerated tissue response must be attributed to hypersensitivity to the organisms. However, treponemes can occasionally be found in the eye or central nervous system in late syphilis.

CONGENITAL SYPHILIS

A pregnant syphilitic woman can transmit *T pallidum* to the fetus through the placenta beginning in the 10th to 15th weeks of gestation. Some of the infected fetuses die, and miscarriages result; others are stillborn at term. Others are born live but develop the signs of congenital syphilis in childhood: interstitial keratitis, Hutchinson's teeth, saddlenose, periostitis, and a variety of central nervous system anomalies. Adequate treatment of the mother during pregnancy prevents congenital syphilis. The reagin titer in the blood of the child rises with active infection but falls with time if antibody was passively transmitted from the mother. In congenital infection, the child makes IgM antitreponemal antibody.

EXPERIMENTAL DISEASE

Rabbits can be experimentally infected in the skin, testis, and eye with human *T pallidum.* The animal develops a chancre rich in spirochetes, and organisms persist in lymph nodes, spleen, and bone marrow for the entire life of the animal, although there is no progressive disease.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Speciments include tissue fluid expressed from early surface lesions for demonstration of spirochetes; blood serum for serologic tests.

DARKFIELD EXAMINATION

A drop of tissue fluid or exudate is placed on a slide and a coverslip pressed over it to make a thin layer. The preparation is then examined under oil immersion with darkfield illumination for typical motile spirochetes.

Treponemes disappear from lesions within a few hours after the beginning of antibiotic treatment.

IMMUNOFLUORESCENCE

Tissue fluid or exudate is spread on a glass slide, air dried, and sent to the laboratory. It is fixed, stained with a fluorescein-labeled antitreponeme serum, and examined by means of immunofluorescence microscopy for typical fluorescent spirochetes.

SEROLOGIC TESTS FOR SYPHILIS (STS)

These tests use either nontreponemal or treponemal antigens.

Nontreponemal Antigen Tests

The antigens employed are lipids extracted from normal mammalian tissue. The purified cardiolipin from beef heart is a diphosphatidylglycerol. Lecithin and cholesterol are added to enhance reaction with syphilitic "reagin" antibodies. Reagin is a mixture of IgM and IgG antibodies directed against the cardiolipin-cholesterol-lecithin complex. The VDRL (Venereal Disease Research Laboratory) and RPR (rapid plasma reagin) tests are nontreponemal antigen tests used most commonly. The toluidine red unheated serum test (TRUST) also is available. All of the tests are based on the fact that the particles of the lipid antigen remain dispersed with normal serum but flocculate when combining with reagin. The VDRL test requires microscopic examination to detect flocculation, whereas the RPR and TRUST have added colored particles and can be read without microscopic magnification. Results develop within a few minutes, particularly if the suspension is agitated. The tests lend themselves to automation and to use for surveys because of their low cost.

Positive VDRL or RPR tests develop after 2–3 weeks of untreated syphilitic infection and are positive in high titer in secondary syphilis. Positive VDRL or RPR tests revert to negative in 6–18 months after effective treatment of syphilis. The VDRL test can also be performed on spinal fluid and becomes positive after 4–8 weeks of infection. Reagin antibodies do not reach the cerebrospinal fluid from the bloodstream but are probably formed in the central nervous system in response to syphilitic infection.

The flocculation tests can give quantitative results. An estimate of the amount of reagin present in serum can be made by performing the tests with twofold dilutions of serum and expressing the titer as the highest dilution that gives a positive result. Quantitative results are valuable in establishing a diagnosis—especially in neonates—and in evaluating the effect of treatment.

Nontreponemal tests are subject to "biologic" false-positive results attributable to the occurrence of "reagins" in a variety of human disorders. Prominent among them are other infections (malaria, leprosy, measles, infectious mononucleosis, etc), vaccinations, collagen-vascular diseases (systemic lupus erythematosus, polyarteritis nodosa, rheumatic disorders), and other conditions.

Treponemal Antibody Tests

FLUORESCENT TREPONEMAL ANTIBODY (FTA-ABS) TEST

This is a test employing indirect immunofluorescence (killed *T pallidum* + patient's serum + labeled antihuman gamma globulin). It shows excellent specificity and sensitivity for syphilis antibodies if the patient's serum has been absorbed with sonicated Reiter spirochetes prior to the FTA test. The FTA-ABS test is the first to become positive in early syphilis, is routinely positive in secondary syphilis, and usually remains positive many years after effective treatment. The test thus cannot be used to judge the efficacy of treatment. The presence of IgM FTA in the blood of newborns is good evidence of in utero infection (congenital syphilis).

TREPONEMA PALLIDUM-PARTICLE AGGLUTINATION (TP-PA) TEST

These are the *T pallidum* hemagglutination (TPHA) and microhemagglutination for *T pallidum* (MHA-TP) tests. Particles are sensitized with *T pallidum* subspecies *pallidum* antigens. The test is performed with diluted serum. Antibodies against *T pallidum* react with the sensitized particles. A mat of agglutinated particles indicates a positive result. These tests are similar to the FTA-ABS test in specificity and sensitivity.

Immunity

A person with active or latent syphilis or yaws appears to be resistant to superinfection with *T pallidum.* However, if early syphilis or yaws is treated adequately and the infection is eradicated, the individual again becomes fully susceptible. The various immune responses usually fail to eradicate the infection or arrest its progression.

Treatment

Penicillin in concentrations of 0.003 unit/mL has definite treponemicidal activity, and penicillin is the treatment of choice. Syphilis of less than 1 year's duration is treated by a single injection of benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly. In older or latent syphilis, benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly is given three times at weekly intervals. In neurosyphilis, the same therapy is acceptable, but larger amounts of intravenous penicillin are sometimes recommended. Other antibiotics, eg, tetracyclines or erythromycin, can occasionally be substituted. Treatment of gonorrhea is thought to cure incubating syphilis. Prolonged follow-up is essential. In neurosyphilis, treponemes occasionally survive such treatment. Severe neurologic relapses of treated syphilis have occurred in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) who are infected with both HIV and *T pallidum*. A typical Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur within hours after treatment is begun. It is due to the release of toxic products from dying or killed spirochetes.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

With the exceptions of congenital syphilis and the rare occupational exposure of medical personnel, syphilis is acquired through sexual exposure. Reinfection in treated persons is common. An infected person may remain contagious for 3–5 years during "early" syphilis. "Late" syphilis, of more than 5 years' duration, is usually not contagious. Consequently, control measures depend on (1) prompt and adequate treatment of all discovered cases; (2) follow-up on sources of infection and contacts so they can be treated; and (3) safe sex with condoms. Several sexually transmitted diseases can be transmitted simultaneously. Therefore, it is important to consider the possibility of syphilis when any one sexually transmitted disease has been found.

DISEASES RELATED TO SYPHILIS

These diseases are all caused by treponemes closely related to *T pallidum.* All give positive treponemal and nontreponemal serologic tests for syphilis, and some cross-immunity can be demonstrated in experimental animals and perhaps in humans. None are sexually transmitted diseases; all are commonly transmitted by direct contact. None of the causative organisms have been cultured on artificial media.

Bejel

Bejel (due to *T pallidum* subspecies *endemicum*) occurs chiefly in Africa but also in the Middle East, in Southeast Asia, and elsewhere, particularly among children, and produces highly infectious skin lesions; late visceral complications are rare. Penicillin is the drug of choice.

Yaws

Yaws is endemic, particularly among children, in many humid, hot tropical countries. It is caused by *T pallidum* subspecies *pertenue.* The primary lesion, an ulcerating papule, occurs usually on the arms or legs. Transmission is by person-to-person contact in children under age 15. Transplacental, congenital infection does not occur. Scar formation of skin lesions and bone destruction are common, but visceral or nervous system complications are very rare. It has been debated whether yaws represents a variant of syphilis adapted to transmission by nonsexual means in hot climates. There appears to be cross-immunity between yaws and syphilis. Diagnostic procedures and therapy are similar to those for syphilis. The response to penicillin treatment is dramatic.

Pinta

Pinta is caused by *Treponema carateum* and occurs endemically in all age groups in Mexico, Central and South America, the Philippines, and some areas of the Pacific. The disease appears to be restricted to dark-skinned races. The primary lesion, a nonulcerating papule, occurs on exposed areas. Some months later, flat, hyperpigmented lesions appear on the skin; depigmentation and hyperkeratosis take place years afterward. Late cardiovascular and nervous system involvement occurs very rarely. Pinta is transmitted by nonsexual means, either by direct contact or through the agency of flies or gnats. Diagnosis and treatment are the same as for syphilis.

Rabbit Syphilis

Rabbit syphilis (*Treponema cuniculi* infection) is a natural sexually transmitted infection of rabbits that produces minor lesions of the genitalia. The causative organism is morphologically indistinguishable from *T pallidum* and may lead to confusion in experimental work.

BORRELIA SPECIES & RELAPSING FEVER

Relapsing fever in epidemic form is caused by *Borrelia recurrentis,* transmitted by the human body louse; it does not occur in the United States. Endemic relapsing fever is caused by borreliae transmitted by ticks of the genus *Ornithodoros.* The species name of the *Borrelia* genus is often the same as that of the tick. *Borrelia hermsii,* for example, the cause of relapsing fever in the western United States, is transmitted by *Ornithodoros hermsii.*

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

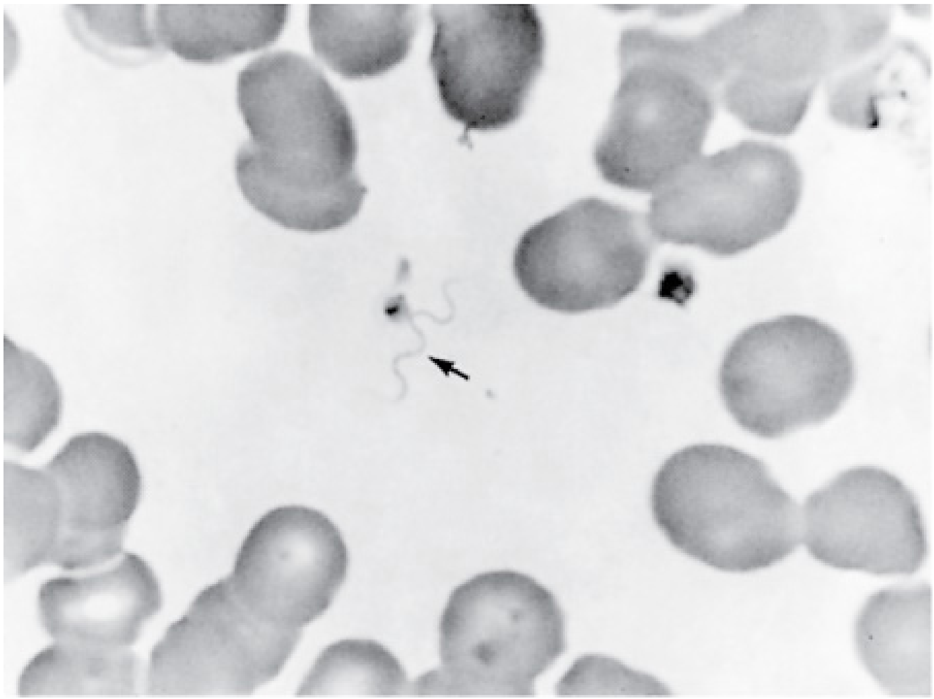
The borreliae form irregular spirals 10–30 μm long and 0.3 μm wide. The distance between turns varies from

2 μm to 4 μm. The organisms are highly flexible and move both by rotation and by twisting. Borreliae stain readily with bacteriologic dyes as well as with blood stains such as Giemsa's stain or Wright's stain.

CULTURE

The organism can be cultured in fluid media containing blood, serum, or tissue (Figure 25–2); but it rapidly loses its pathogenicity for animals when transferred repeatedly in vitro. Multiplication is rapid in chick embryos when blood from patients is inoculated onto the chorioallantoic membrane.

Figure 25–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Borrelia (arrow) in a peripheral blood smear of a patient with relapsing fever.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Little is known of the metabolic requirements or activity of borreliae. At 4 °C, the organisms survive for several months in infected blood or in culture. In some ticks (but not in lice), spirochetes are passed from generation to generation.

VARIATION

The only significant variation of *Borrelia* is with respect to its antigenic structure.

Antigenic Structure

Antibodies develop in high titer after infection with borreliae. The antigenic structure of the organisms changes in the course of a single infection. The antibodies produced initially act as a selective factor that permits the survival only of antigenically distinct variants. The relapsing course of the disease appears to be due to the multiplication of such antigenic variants, against which the host must then develop new antibodies. Ultimate recovery (after three to ten relapses) is associated with the presence of antibodies against several antigenic variants.

Pathology

Fatal cases show spirochetes in great numbers in the spleen and liver, necrotic foci in other parenchymatous organs, and hemorrhagic lesions in the kidneys and the gastrointestinal tract. Spirochetes have occasionally been demonstrated in the spinal fluid and brain of persons who have had meningitis. In experimental animals (guinea pigs, rats), the brain may serve as a reservoir of borreliae after they have disappeared from the blood.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

The incubation period is 3–10 days. The onset is sudden, with chills and an abrupt rise of temperature. During this time, spirochetes abound in the blood. The fever persists for 3–5 days and then declines, leaving the patient weak but not ill. The afebrile period lasts 4–10 days and is followed by a second attack of chills, fever, intense headache, and malaise. There are from three to ten such recurrences, generally of diminishing severity. During the febrile stages (especially when the temperature is rising), organisms are present in the blood; during the afebrile periods, they are absent.

Antibodies against the spirochetes appear during the febrile stage, and the attack is probably terminated by their agglutinating and lytic effects. These antibodies may select out antigenically distinct variants that multiply and cause a relapse. Several distinct antigenic varieties of borreliae may be isolated from a single patient's sequential relapses, even following experimental inoculation with a single organism.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Blood specimens are obtained during the rise in fever, for smears and animal inoculation.

SMEARS

Thin or thick blood smears stained with Wright's or Giemsa's stain reveal large, loosely coiled spirochetes among the red cells.

ANIMAL INOCULATION

White mice or young rats are inoculated intraperitoneally with blood. Stained films of tail blood are examined for spirochetes 2–4 days later.

SEROLOGY

Spirochetes grown in culture can serve as antigens for CF tests, but the preparation of satisfactory antigens is difficult. Patients suffering from epidemic (louse-borne) relapsing fever may develop a positive VDRL.

Immunity

Immunity following infection is usually of short duration.

Treatment

The great variability of the spontaneous remissions of relapsing fever makes evaluation of chemotherapeutic effectiveness difficult. Tetracyclines, erythromycin, and penicillin are all believed to be effective. Treatment for a single day may be sufficient to terminate an individual attack.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Relapsing fever is endemic in many parts of the world. Its main reservoir is the rodent population, which serves as a source of infection for ticks of the genus *Ornithodorus*. The distribution of endemic foci and the seasonal incidence of the disease are largely determined by the ecology of the ticks in different areas. In the United States, infected ticks are found throughout the West, especially in mountainous areas, but clinical cases are rare. In the tick, *Borrelia* may be transmitted transovarially from generation to generation.

Spirochetes are present in all tissues of the tick and may be transmitted by the bite or by crushing the tick. The tick-borne disease is not epidemic. However, when an infected individual harbors lice, the lice become infected by sucking blood; 4–5 days later, they may serve as a source of infection for other individuals. The infection of the lice is not transmitted to the next generation, and the disease is the result of rubbing crushed lice into bite wounds. Severe epidemics may occur in louse-infected populations, and transmission is favored by crowding, malnutrition, and cold climate.

In endemic areas, human infection may occasionally result from contact with the blood and tissues of infected rodents. The mortality rate of the endemic disease is low, but in epidemics it may reach 30%.

Prevention is based on avoidance of exposure to ticks and lice and on delousing (cleanliness, insecticides).

BORRELIA BURGDORFERI & LYME DISEASE

Lyme disease is named after the town of Lyme, Connecticut, where clusters of cases in children were identified. Lyme disease is caused by the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi* and is transmitted to humans by the bite of a small ixodes tick. The disease has early manifestations with a characteristic skin lesion, erythema migrans, along with flu-like symptoms, and late manifestations often with arthralgia and arthritis.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

B burgdorferi is a spiral organism 20–30 µm long and 0.2–0.3 µm wide. The distance between turns varies from 2 µm to 4 µm. The organisms have variable numbers (7–11) of endoflagella and are highly motile. *B burgdorferi* stains readily with acid and aniline dyes and by silver impregnation techniques.

CULTURE AND GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

B burgdorferi grows most readily in a complex liquid medium, Barbour-Stoenner-Kelly medium (BSK II). Rifampin, fosfomycin (phosphonomycin), and amphotericin B can be added to BSK II to reduce the rate of culture contamination by other bacteria and fungi. *B burgdorferi* has been most easily isolated from erythema migrans skin lesions; isolation of the organism from other sites has been difficult. The organism can also be cultured from ticks. Because culture of the organism is a complex and specialized procedure with a low diagnostic yield, it is seldom used.

Antigenic Structure & Variation

B burgdorferi has a morphologic appearance similar to that of other spirochetes. The entire genome of *B burgdorferi* has been sequenced, allowing prediction of many antigenic structures. There is an unusual linear chromosome of about 950 kb and multiple circular and linear plasmids. There are a large number of sequences for lipoproteins, including outer surface proteins OspA–F. Differential expression of these proteins is thought to help *B burgdorferi* live in the very different tick and mammalian hosts. OspA and OspB along with lipoprotein 6.6 are expressed primarily in the tick. Other outer surface proteins are up-regulated during tick feeding, when the organisms migrate from the tick's midgut to the salivary gland. This may explain why the tick must feed for 24–48 hours before transmission of *B burgdorferi* occurs.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

The transmission of *B burgdorferi* to humans is by injection of the organism in tick saliva or by regurgitation of the tick's midgut contents. The organism adheres to proteoglycans on host cells; this is mediated by a borrelial glycosaminoglycan receptor. After injection by the tick, the organism migrates out from the site, producing the characteristic skin lesion. Dissemination occurs by lymphatics or blood to other skin and musculoskeletal sites and to many other organs.

Lyme disease, like other spirochetal diseases, occurs in stages with early and late manifestations. A unique skin lesion that begins 3 days to 4 weeks after a tick bite often marks the initial stage. The lesion, erythema migrans, begins as a flat reddened area near the tick bite and slowly expands, with central clearing. With the skin lesion there is often a flu-like illness with fever, chills, myalgia, and headache. The second stage occurs weeks to months later and includes arthralgia and arthritis; neurologic manifestations with meningitis, facial nerve palsy, and painful radiculopathy; and cardiac disease with conduction defects and myopericarditis. The third stage begins months to years later with chronic skin, nervous system, or joint involvement. Spirochetes have been isolated from all of these sites, and it is likely that some of the late manifestations are caused by deposition of antigen-antibody complexes.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

In some symptomatic patients, the diagnosis of early Lyme disease can be established clinically by observing the unique skin lesion. When this skin lesion is not present and at later stages of the disease, which must be differentiated from many other diseases, it is necessary to perform diagnostic laboratory tests. There is, however, no one test that is both sensitive and specific.

SPECIMENS

Blood is obtained for serologic tests. Cerebrospinal fluid or joint fluid can be obtained, but culture usually is not recommended. These specimens and others can be used to detect *B burgdorferi* DNA by the polymerase chain reaction.

SMEARS

B burgdorferi has been found in sections of biopsy specimens, but examination of stained smears is an insensitive method for diagnosis of Lyme disease. *B burgdorferi* in tissue sections can sometimes be identified using antibodies and immunohistochemical methods.

CULTURE

Culture is generally not performed because it takes 6–8 weeks to complete and lacks sensitivity.

MOLECULAR PROBES

The polymerase chain reaction assay has been applied to detection of *B burgdorferi* DNA in many body fluids. It is rapid, sensitive, and specific, but it does not differentiate between DNA from live *B burgdorferi* in active disease and between DNA from dead *B burgdorferi* in treated or inactive disease. It has about 85% sensitivity when applied to synovial fluid samples, but the sensitivity is much lower when it is applied to cerebrospinal fluid samples from patients with neuroborreliosis.

SEROLOGY

Serologic study has been the mainstay for the diagnosis of Lyme disease, but 3–5% of normal people and persons with other diseases (eg, rheumatoid arthritis, many infectious diseases) may be seropositive by some assays. Because the prevalence of Lyme disease is low, there is a much greater likelihood that a positive test is from a person who does not have Lyme disease than from a person who does have the disease (a positive predictive value on the order of 1–2%). Thus, serology for Lyme disease should only be done when there are highly suggestive clinical findings, and a diagnosis of Lyme disease should not be based on a positive test in the absence of such clinical findings.

The most widely used tests are the indirect fluorescent antibody (IFA) and enzyme immunoassays (EIA or ELISA). Many variations of these assays using different antigen preparations, techniques, and end points have been marketed. The immunoblot (Western blot) assay is sometimes performed to confirm results obtained by other tests. *B burgdorferi* antigens are electrophoretically separated, transferred to a nitrocellulose membrane, and reacted with a patient's serum. Interpretation of the immunoblot is based on the number and molecular size of antibody reactions with the *B burgdorferi* proteins.

Immunity

The immunologic response to *B burgdorferi* develops slowly. Acute phase sera are positive in 30–40% of patients, and sera obtained 2–4 weeks later are positive in 60–70%. At 4–6 weeks after infection, about 90% of patients have IgG reactive with *B burgdorferi.* The antibody response continues to expand for months to years and appears to be directed sequentially against a series of *B burgdorferi* proteins, culminating in the development of IgG antibodies to OspA and OspB. Early antimicrobial treatment decreases the antibody response. Antibody titers fall slowly after treatment, but most patients with later manifestation of Lyme disease remain seropositive for years.

Treatment

Early infection, either local or disseminated, should be treated with doxycycline or amoxicillin—or an alternative—for 20–30 days. Treatment relieves early symptoms and promotes resolution of skin lesions. Doxycycline may be more effective than amoxicillin in preventing late manifestations. Established arthritis may respond to large doses of penicillin. In refractory cases, ceftriaxone has been effective. Nearly 50% of patients treated with doxycycline or amoxicillin early in the course of Lyme disease develop minor late complications (headache, joint pains, etc). Long-standing Lyme arthritis can be treated with doxycycline or amoxicillin plus probenecid for 30 days or longer.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

B burgdorferi is transmitted by a small tick of the genus *Ixodes.* The vector is *Ixodes scapularis* (also called *Ixodes dammini*) in the Northeast and Midwest and *Ixodes pacificus* on the West Coast of the United States. In Europe, the vector is *Ixodes ricinus,* and other tick vectors appear to be important in other areas of the world. Mice and deer constitute the main animal reservoirs of *B burgdorferi*, but other rodents and birds may also be infected. In the eastern part of the United States, 10–50% of ticks are infected, while in the western states the infection rate in ticks is much lower, about 2%.

Most exposures are in May through July, when the nymphal stage of the ticks is most active; however, the larval stage (August and September) and adult stage (spring and fall) also feed on humans and can transmit *B burgdorferi*.

Prevention is based on avoidance of exposure to ticks. Long sleeves and long pants tucked into socks are recommended. Careful examination of the skin for ticks after being outdoors can locate ticks for removal before they transmit *B burgdorferi*.

Environmental control of ticks using application of insecticides has provided modest success in reducing the number of nymphal ticks for a season.

LEPTOSPIRA & LEPTOSPIROSIS

Leptospirosis is a zoonosis of worldwide distribution. It is caused by spirochetes of the genus *Leptospira*. The traditional classification system is based on biochemical and serologic specificity to differentiate between the pathogenic species, *Leptospira interrogans,* and the free-living nonpathogenic species, *Leptospira biflexa.* The species are further broken down to more than 200 serovars of *L interrogans* and more than 60 serovars of *L biflexa.* The serovars are further organized into serogroups of *L interrogans* and serogroups of *L biflexa.* The serogroups are based on shared antigenicity and are primarily for laboratory use.

A second classification system is based on DNA-DNA hybridization studies, which have demonstrated a high degree of heterogeneity within the two species of the traditional classification. There are three genera in the DNA relatedness classification: leptospira and two nonpathogenic genera. The genus Leptospira contains several species of pathogens and nonpathogens that do not correspond to the species in the traditional classification.

The traditional serologic classification has limitations at the molecular level but is useful epidemiologically. However, the serologic identification cannot be used to predict the molecular identification. The discussion below uses the traditional classification.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Leptospirae are tightly coiled, thin, flexible spirochetes 5–15 μm long, with very fine spirals 0.1–0.2 μm wide; one end is often bent, forming a hook. They are actively motile, which is best seen using a darkfield microscope. Electron micrographs show a thin axial filament and a delicate membrane. The spirochete is so delicate that in the darkfield view it may appear only as a chain of minute cocci. It does not stain readily but can be impregnated with silver.

CULTURE

Leptospirae grow best under aerobic conditions at 28–30 °C in serum-containing semisolid media (Fletcher's, Stuart's, others). After 1–2 weeks the leptospirae produce a diffuse zone of growth near the top of the tube and later a ring of growth at a level in the tube corresponding to the level of the optimal oxygen tension for the organisms. The culture media can be made selective for leptospirae by addition of neomycin or 5-fluorouracil.

GROWTH REQUIREMENTS

Leptospirae derive energy from oxidation of long-chain fatty acids and cannot use amino acids or carbohydrates as major energy sources. Ammonium salts are a main source of nitrogen. Leptospirae can survive for weeks in water, particularly at alkaline pH.

Antigenic Structure

The main strains ("serovars") of *L interrogans* isolated from humans or animals in different parts of the world (Table 25–1) are all serologically related and exhibit cross-reactivity in serologic tests. This indicates considerable overlapping in antigenic structure, and quantitative tests and antibody absorption studies are necessary for a specific serologic diagnosis. The outer envelope contains large amounts of lipopolysaccharide (LPS) of antigenic structure that is variable from one strain to another. This variation forms the basis for the serologic classification of the *Leptospira* species. It also determines the specificity of the human immune response to leptospirae.

Table 25–1. Principal Leptospiral Diseases.

Leptospira interrogans Serovar[1]	Source of Infection	Disease in Humans	Clinical Findings	Distribution
autumnalis	?	Pretibial fever or Ft. Bragg fever	Fever, rash over tibia	USA, Japan
ballum	Mice	—	Fever, rash, jaundice	USA, Europe, Israel
bovis	Cattle, voles	—	Fever, prostration	USA, Israel, Australia
canicola	Dog urine	Infectious jaundice	Influenza-like illness, aseptic meningitis	Worldwide
grippotyphosa	Rodents, water	Marsh fever	Fever, prostration, aseptic meningitis	Europe, USA, Africa
hebdomadis	Rats, mice	Seven-day fever	Fever, jaundice	Japan, Europe
icterohaemorrhagiae	Rat urine, water	Weil's disease	Jaundice, hemorrhages, aseptic meningitis	Worldwide
mitis	Swine	Swineherd's disease	Aseptic meningitis	Australia
pomona	Swine, cattle	Swineherd's disease	Fever, prostration, aseptic meningitis	Europe, USA, Australia

[1] Formerly called species.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

Human infection usually results from leptospires, often in bodies of water, entering the body through breaks in the skin (cuts and abrasions) and mucus membranes (mouth, nose, conjunctivae). Ingestion is considered to be less important. After an incubation period of 1–2 weeks, there is a variable febrile onset during which spirochetes are present in the bloodstream. They then establish themselves in the parenchymatous organs (particularly liver and kidneys), producing hemorrhage and necrosis of tissue and resulting in dysfunction of those organs (jaundice, hemorrhage, nitrogen retention). The illness is often biphasic. After initial improvement, the second phase develops when the IgM antibody titer rises. It manifests itself often as "aseptic meningitis" with intense headache, stiff neck, and pleocytosis of the cerebrospinal fluid. Nephritis and hepatitis may also recur, and there may be skin, muscle, and eye lesions. The degree and distribution of organ involvement vary in the different diseases produced by different leptospirae in various parts of the world (Table 25–1). Many infections are mild or subclinical. Hepatitis is frequent in patients with leptospirosis. It is often associated with elevation of serum creatine phosphokinase, whereas that enzyme is present in normal concentrations in viral hepatitis.

Kidney involvement in many animal species is chronic and results in the shedding of large numbers of leptospirae in the urine; this is probably the main source of environmental contamination resulting in infection of humans. Human urine also may contain spirochetes in the second and third weeks of disease.

Agglutinating, complement-fixing, and lytic antibodies develop during the infection. Serum from convalescent patients protects experimental animals against an otherwise fatal infection. The immunity resulting from infection in humans and animals appears to be serovar-specific.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens consist of aseptically collected blood in a heparin tube, cerebrospinal fluid, or tissues for microscopic examination and culture. Urine should be collected using great care to avoid contamination. Serum is collected for agglutination tests.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Darkfield examination or thick smears stained by the Giemsa technique occasionally show leptospirae in fresh blood from early infections. Darkfield examination of centrifuged urine may also be positive. Fluorescein-conjugated antibodies or other immunohistochemical techniques can be used also.

CULTURE

Whole fresh blood or urine can be cultured in Fletcher's semisolid or other medium. Selective and nonselective media should be used. Because of inhibitory substances in blood, only 1 or 2 drops should be placed in each of five tubes containing 5 mL of medium. Up to 0.5 mL of cerebrospinal fluid can be used. One drop of undiluted urine can be used followed by 1 drop each of tenfold serially diluted urine—for a total of four tubes. Tissue approximately 5 mm in diameter should be crushed and used as the inoculum. Growth is slow, and cultures should be kept for at least 8 weeks.

ANIMAL INOCULATION

A sensitive technique for the isolation of leptospirae consists of the intraperitoneal inoculation of young hamsters or guinea pigs with fresh plasma or urine. Within a few days, spirochetes become demonstrable in the peritoneal cavity; on the death of the animal (8–14 days), hemorrhagic lesions with spirochetes are found in many organs.

SEROLOGY

Agglutinating antibodies attaining very high titers (1:10,000 or higher) develop slowly in leptospiral infection, reaching a peak 5–8 weeks after infection. The reference laboratory standard for detection of leptospiral antibody uses microscopic agglutination of live organisms. It is highly sensitive but can be hazardous. Agglutination of the live suspensions is most specific for the serovar of the infecting leptospires. Indirect hemagglutination of red blood cells with adsorbed leptospirae is sometimes used. A variety of enzyme immunoassays have also been described. Because of geographic variation in the distribution of serovars, the tests may have different sensitivities and specificities in different geographic areas.

Immunity

Serovar-specific immunity follows infection, but reinfection with different serovars may occur.

Treatment

Treatment of mild leptospirosis should be with oral doxycycline, ampicillin, or amoxicillin. Treatment of moderate or severe disease should be with intravenous penicillin or ampicillin.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

The leptospiroses are essentially animal infections; human infection is only accidental, following contact with water or other materials contaminated with the excreta of animal hosts. Rats, mice, wild rodents, dogs, swine, and cattle are the principal sources of human infection. They excrete leptospirae in urine both during the active illness and during the asymptomatic carrier state. Leptospirae remain viable in stagnant water for several weeks; drinking, swimming, bathing, or food contamination may lead to human infection. Persons most likely to come in contact with water contaminated by rats (eg, miners, sewer workers, farmers, and fishermen) run the greatest risk of infection. Children acquire the infection from dogs more frequently than do adults. Control consists of preventing exposure to potentially contaminated water and reducing contamination by rodent control. Doxycycline, 200 mg orally once weekly during heavy exposure, is effective prophylaxis. Dogs can receive distemper-hepatitis-leptospirosis vaccinations.

SPIRILLUM MINOR (SPIRILLUM MORSUS MURIS)

Spirillum minor causes one form of rat-bite fever (sodoku). This very small (3–5 μm) and rigid spiral organism is carried by rats all over the world. The organism is inoculated into humans through the bite of a rat and results in a local lesion, regional gland swelling, skin rashes, and fever of the relapsing type. The frequency of this illness depends upon the degree of contact between humans and rats. Spirillum can be isolated by inoculation of guinea pigs or mice with material from enlarged lymph nodes or blood but has not been grown in bacteriologic media. In the United States and Europe, this disease has been recognized only infrequently. Several other motile gram-negative spiral aerobic organisms can produce spirillum fever.

SPIROCHETES OF THE NORMAL MOUTH & MUCOUS MEMBRANES

A number of spirochetes occur in every normal mouth. Some of them have been named (eg, *Borrelia buccalis*), but neither their morphology nor their physiologic activity permits definitive classification. On normal genitalia, a spirochete called *Borrelia refringens* is occasionally found that may be confused with *T pallidum*. These organisms are harmless saprophytes under ordinary conditions. Most of them are strict anaerobes that can be grown in petrolatum-sealed meat infusion broth tubes with tissue added.

FUSOSPIROCHETAL DISEASE

Under certain circumstances, particularly injury to mucous membranes, nutritional deficiency, or concomitant infection (eg, with herpes simplex virus) of the epithelium, the normal spirochetes of the mouth, together with anaerobic fusiform bacilli (fusobacteria), find suitable conditions for vast increase in numbers. This occurs in certain odontogenic infections and, uncommonly, in severe infections such as gangrenous stomatitis (noma).

REFERENCES

Hook EW III: Endemic treponematoese. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Johnson WD Jr, Golightly LM: *Borrelia* species (relapsing fever). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 5th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

Levett PN: *Leptospira* and *Leptonema.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Levett PN: Leptospirosis. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Norris SJ et al: *Treponema* and other human host-associated spirochetes. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Steere AC: *Borrelia burgdorferi* (Lyme disease, Lyme borreliosis). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Tramont EC: *Treponema pallidum* (syphilis). In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Wilske B, Schriefer ME: *Borrelia.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

MYCOPLASMAS

There are over 150 species in the class of cell wall-free bacteria. At least 15 of these species are thought to be of human origin, while others have been isolated from animals and plants. In humans, four species are of primary importance: *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* causes pneumonia and has been associated with joint and other infections. *Mycoplasma hominis* sometimes causes postpartum fever and has been found with other bacteria in uterine tube infections. *Ureaplasma urealyticum* is a cause of nongonococcal urethritis in men and is associated with lung disease in premature infants of low birth weight. *Mycoplasma genitalium* is closely related to *M pneumoniae* and has been associated with urethral and other infections. Other members of the genus *Mycoplasma* are pathogens of the respiratory and urogenital tracts and joints of animals.

The identity of the evolutionary ancestors of mycoplasmas is unclear. The smallest genome of mycoplasmas, *M genitalium*, is little more than twice the genome size of certain large viruses. Mycoplasmas are the smallest organisms that can be free-living in nature and self-replicating on laboratory media. They have the following characteristics: (1) The smallest mycoplasmas are 125–250 nm in size. (2) They are highly pleomorphic because they lack a rigid cell wall and instead are bounded by a triple-layered "unit membrane" that contains a sterol (mycoplasmas require the addition of serum or cholesterol to the medium to produce sterols for growth). (3) Mycoplasmas are completely resistant to penicillin because they lack the cell wall structures at which penicillin acts, but they are inhibited by tetracycline or erythromycin. (4) Mycoplasmas can reproduce in cell-free media; on agar, the center of the whole colony is characteristically embedded beneath the surface. (5) Growth of mycoplasmas is inhibited by specific antibody. (6) Mycoplasmas have an affinity for mammalian cell membranes.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Mycoplasmas cannot be studied by the usual bacteriologic methods because of the small size of their colonies and the plasticity and delicacy of their individual cells (owing to the lack of a rigid cell wall). Growth in fluid media gives rise to many different forms. Growth on solid media consists principally of plastic protoplasmic masses of indefinite shape that are easily distorted. These structures vary greatly in size, ranging from 50 to 300 nm in diameter. The morphology appears different according to the method of examination (eg, darkfield, immunofluorescence, Giemsa-stained films from solid or liquid media, agar fixation).

CULTURE

Many strains of mycoplasmas grow in heart infusion peptone broth with 2% agar (pH 7.8) to which about 30% human ascitic fluid or animal serum (horse, rabbit) has been added. Following incubation at 37 °C for 48–96 hours, there may be no turbidity; however, Giemsa stains of the centrifuged sediment show the characteristic pleomorphic structures, and subculture on solid media yields minute colonies.

After 2–6 days on diphasic (broth over agar) and agar medium incubated in a Petri dish that has been sealed to prevent evaporation, isolated colonies measuring 20–500 μm can be detected with a hand lens. These colonies are round, with a granular surface and a dark center typically buried in the agar. They can be subcultured by cutting out a small square of agar containing one or more colonies and streaking this material on a fresh plate or dropping it into liquid medium. The organisms can be stained for microscopic study by placing a similar square on a slide and covering the colony with a cover-glass onto which an alcoholic solution of methylene blue and azure has been poured and then evaporated (agar fixation). Such slides can also be stained with specific fluorescent antibody.

GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

Mycoplasmas are unique in microbiology because of (1) their extremely small size and (2) their growth on complex but cell-free media.

Mycoplasmas pass through filters with 450-nm pore size and thus are comparable to chlamydiae or large viruses. However, parasitic mycoplasmas grow on cell-free media that contain lipoprotein and sterol. The sterol requirement for growth and membrane synthesis is unique.

Many mycoplasmas use glucose as a source of energy; ureaplasmas require urea.

Some human mycoplasmas produce peroxides and hemolyze red blood cells. In cell cultures and in vivo, mycoplasmas develop predominantly at cell surfaces. Many established animal and human cell culture lines carry mycoplasmas as contaminants.

VARIATION

The extreme pleomorphism of mycoplasmas is one of their principal characteristics.

Antigenic Structure

Many antigenically distinct species of mycoplasmas have been isolated from animals (eg, mice, chickens, turkeys). In humans, at least 14 species can be identified, including *M hominis, Mycoplasma salivarium, Mycoplasma orale, Mycoplasma fermentans, M pneumoniae, M genitalium, U urealyticum,* and others.

The species are classified by biochemical and serologic features. The CF antigens of mycoplasmas are glycolipids. Antigens for ELISA tests are proteins. Some species have more than one serotype.

Pathogenesis

Many pathogenic mycoplasmas have flask-like or filamentous shapes and have specialized polar tip structures that mediate adherence to host cells. These structures are a complex group of interactive proteins, adhesins, and adherence-accessory proteins. The proteins are proline-rich, which influences the protein folding and binding and is important in the adherence to cells. The mycoplasmas attach to the surfaces of ciliated and nonciliated cells, probably through the mucosal cell sialoglycoconjugates and sulfated glycolipids. Some mycoplasmas lack the distinct tip structures but use adhesin proteins or have alternative mechanisms to adhere to host cells. The subsequent events in infection are less well understood but may include several factors as follows: direct cytotoxicity through generation of hydrogen peroxide and superoxide radicals; cytolysis mediated by antigen-antibody reactions or by chemotaxis and action of mononuclear cells; and competition for and depletion of nutrients.

Mycoplasmal Infection

The mycoplasmas appear to be host-specific, being communicable and potentially pathogenic only within a single host species. In animals, mycoplasmas appear to be intracellular parasites with a predilection for mesothelial cells (pleura, peritoneum, synovia of joints). Several extracellular products can be elaborated (eg, hemolysins).

INFECTION OF HUMANS

Mycoplasmas have been cultivated from human mucous membranes and tissues, particularly from the genital, urinary, and respiratory tracts. Mycoplasmas are part of the normal flora of the mouth and can be grown from normal saliva, oral mucous membranes, sputum, or tonsillar tissue. *M salivarium, M orale,* and other mycoplasmas can be recovered from the oral cavities of many healthy adults, but an association with clinical disease is uncertain. *M hominis* is found in the oropharynx of less than 5% of adults. *M pneumoniae* in the oropharynx is generally associated with disease (see below).

Some mycoplasmas are inhabitants of the genitourinary tract, particularly in females. In both men and women, genital carriage of mycoplasmas is directly related to the number of lifetime sex partners. *M hominis* can be cultured from 1–5% of asymptomatic men and 30–70% of asymptomatic women; the rates increase to 20% and over 90% positive for men and women, respectively, in sexually transmitted disease clinics. *U urealyticum* is found in the genital tracts of 5–20% of sexually active men and 40–80% of sexually active women. Approximately 20% of women attending sexually transmitted disease clinics have *M genitalium* in their lower genital tracts. Other mycoplasmas also occur in the lower genital tract.

INFECTION OF ANIMALS

Bovine pleuropneumonia is a contagious, occasionally lethal disease of cattle associated with pneumonia and pleural effusion. The disease probably has an airborne spread. Mycoplasmas are found in inflammatory exudates.

Agalactia of sheep and goats in the Mediterranean area is a generalized infection with local lesions in the skin, eyes, joints, udder, and scrotum; it leads to atrophy of lactating glands in females. Mycoplasmas are present in blood early and in milk and exudates later.

In poultry, several economically important respiratory diseases are caused by mycoplasmas. The organisms can be transmitted from hen to egg to chick. Swine, dogs, rats, mice, and other species harbor mycoplasmas that can produce infection involving particularly the pleura, peritoneum, joints, respiratory tract, and eye. In mice, a mycoplasma of spiral shape (spiroplasma) can induce cataracts.

INFECTION OF PLANTS

Aster yellows, corn stunt, and other plant diseases appear to be caused by mycoplasmas. They are transmitted by insects and can be suppressed by tetracyclines.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens consist of throat swabs, sputum, inflammatory exudates, and respiratory, urethral, or genital secretions.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Direct examination of a specimen for mycoplasmas is useless. Cultures are examined as described above.

CULTURES

The material is inoculated onto special solid media and incubated for 3–10 days at 37 °C with 5% CO_2 (under microaerophilic conditions), or into special broth and incubated aerobically. One or two transfers of media may be necessary before growth appears that is suitable for microscopic examination by staining or immunofluorescence. Colonies may have a "fried egg" appearance on agar.

SEROLOGY

Antibodies develop in humans infected with mycoplasmas and can be demonstrated by several methods. CF tests can be performed with glycolipid antigens extracted with chloroform-methanol from cultured mycoplasmas. HI tests can be applied to tanned red cells with adsorbed mycoplasma antigens. Indirect immunofluorescence may be used. The test that measures growth inhibition by antibody is quite specific. With all these serologic techniques, there is adequate specificity for different human mycoplasma species, but a rising antibody titer is required for diagnostic significance because of the high incidence of positive serologic tests in normal individuals. *M pneumoniae* and *M genitalium* are serologically cross-reactive.

Treatment

Many strains of mycoplasmas are inhibited by a variety of antimicrobial drugs, but most strains are resistant to penicillins, cephalosporins, and vancomycin. Tetracyclines and erythromycins are effective both in vitro and in vivo and are, at present, the drugs of choice in mycoplasmal pneumonia. Some ureaplasmas are resistant to tetracycline.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Isolation of infected livestock will control the highly contagious pleuropneumonia and agalactia. No vaccines are available. Mycoplasmal pneumonia behaves like a communicable viral respiratory disease (see below).

MYCOPLASMA PNEUMONIAE & ATYPICAL PNEUMONIAS

Mycoplasma pneumoniae is a prominent cause of pneumonia, especially in persons 5–20 years of age.

Pathogenesis

M pneumoniae is transmitted from person to person by means of infected respiratory secretions. Infection is initiated by attachment of the organism's tip to a receptor on the surface of respiratory epithelial cells (Figure 26–1). Attachment is mediated by a specific adhesin protein on the differentiated terminal structure of the organism. During infection, the organisms remain extracellular.

Figure 26–1.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* attached to ciliated respiratory epithelial cells in a sputum sample from a patient with culture-proved *M pneumoniae* pneumonia. The organisms (M) are seen on the luminal border attached between cilia (C).

(Courtesy of AM Collier, Department of Pediatrics, University of North Carolina.)

Clinical Findings

Mycoplasmal pneumonia is generally a mild disease. The clinical spectrum of *M pneumoniae* infection ranges from asymptomatic infection to serious pneumonitis, with occasional neurologic and hematologic (ie, hemolytic anemia) involvement and a variety of possible skin lesions. Bullous myringitis occurs in spontaneous cases and in experimentally inoculated volunteers.

The incubation period varies from 1 to 3 weeks. The onset is usually insidious, with lassitude, fever, headache, sore throat, and cough. Initially, the cough is nonproductive, but it is occasionally paroxysmal. Later there may be blood-streaked sputum and chest pain. Early in the course, the patient appears only moderately ill, and physical signs of pulmonary consolidation are often negligible compared to the striking consolidation seen on x-rays. Later, when the infiltration is at a peak, the illness may be severe. Resolution of pulmonary infiltration and clinical improvement occur slowly over 1–4 weeks. Although the course of the illness is exceedingly variable, death is very rare and is usually attributable to cardiac failure. Complications are uncommon, but hemolytic anemia may occur. The most common pathologic findings are interstitial and peribronchial pneumonitis and necrotizing bronchiolitis. Other diseases possibly related to *M pneumoniae* include erythema multiforme; central nervous system involvement, including meningitis, meningoencephalitis, and mono- and polyneuritis; myocarditis; pericarditis; arthritis; and pancreatitis.

Common causes of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia, in addition to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae,* include *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Legionella pneumophila, Chlamydia pneumoniae,* and *Haemophilus influenzae.* The clinical presentations of these infections can be very similar, and recognition of the subtleties of signs and symptoms is important. The causative organisms must be determined by sputum examination and culture, blood culture, and other tests.

Laboratory Tests

The diagnosis of *M pneumoniae* pneumonia is largely made by the clinical recognition of the syndrome. Laboratory tests are of secondary value. The white cell count may be slightly elevated. A sputum Gram stain is of value in not suggesting some other bacterial pathogen (eg, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*). The causative mycoplasmas can be recovered by culture from the pharynx and from sputum, but culture is a highly specialized test and is almost never done to diagnose *M pneumoniae* infection. Cold hemagglutinins for group O human erythrocytes appear in about 50% of untreated patients, in rising titer, with the maximum reached in the third or fourth week after onset. A titer of 1:64 or more supports the diagnosis of *M pneumoniae* infection. There is a rise in specific antibodies to *M pneumoniae* that is demonstrable by complement fixation (CF) tests; acute and convalescent phase sera are necessary to demonstrate a fourfold rise in the CF antibodies. EIA to detect IgM and IgG antibodies can be highly sensitive and specific, but may not be readily available. PCR assay of specimens from throat swabs or other clinical material can be diagnostic, but is generally performed only in reference laboratories.

Treatment

Tetracyclines or erythromycins can produce clinical improvement but do not eradicate the mycoplasmas.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

M pneumoniae infections are endemic all over the world. In populations of children and young adults, where close contact prevails, and in families, the infection rate may be high (50–90%), but the incidence of pneumonitis is variable (3–30%). For every case of frank pneumonitis, there exist several cases of milder respiratory illness. *M pneumoniae* is apparently transmitted mainly by direct contact involving respiratory secretions. Second attacks are infrequent. The presence of antibodies to *M pneumoniae* has been associated with resistance to infection but may not be responsible for it. Cell-mediated immune reactions occur. The pneumonic process may be attributed in part to an immunologic response rather than only to infection by mycoplasmas.

MYCOPLASMA HOMINIS

Mycoplasma hominis has been associated with a variety of diseases but is a demonstrated cause in only a few of them. The evidence for a causal relationship in disease is from culture and serologic studies. *M hominis* can be cultured from the upper urinary tract in about 10% of patients with pyelonephritis. *M hominis* is strongly associated with infection of the uterine tubes (salpingitis) and tubo-ovarian abscesses; the organism can be isolated from the uterine tubes of about 10% of patients with salpingitis but not from women with no signs of disease. Women with salpingitis more commonly have antibodies against *M hominis* than women with no disease. *M hominis* has been isolated from the blood of about 10% of women who have postabortal or postpartum fever and occasionally from joint fluid cultures of patients with arthritis.

UREAPLASMA UREALYTICUM

Ureaplasma urealyticum, like *M hominis,* has been associated with a variety of diseases but is a demonstrated cause in only a few of them. *U urealyticum,* which requires 10% urea for growth, probably causes nongonococcal urethritis in some men, but a majority of cases of nongonococcal urethritis are caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis* (Chapter 28). *U urealyticum* is common in the female genital tract, where the association with disease is weak. *U urealyticum* has been associated with lung disease in premature low-birth-weight infants who acquired the organism during birth, but a causal effect has not been clearly demonstrated. The evidence that *U urealyticum* is associated with involuntary infertility is at best marginal.

MYCOPLASMA GENITALIUM

Mycoplasma genitalium was originally isolated from urethral cultures of two men with nongonococcal urethritis, but culture of *M genitalium* is difficult, and subsequent observations have been based on data obtained by using the PCR, molecular probes, and serologic tests. The data suggest that *M genitalium* in men is associated with some cases of acute as well as chronic nongonococcal urethritis. In women, *M genitalium* has been associated with a variety of infections such as cervicitis, endometritis, salpingitis, and infertility.

CELL WALL-DEFECTIVE BACTERIA

L phase variants (L forms) are wall-defective microbial forms that can replicate serially as nonrigid cells and produce colonies on solid media. Some L phase variants are stable; others are unstable and revert to bacterial parental forms. Wall-defective forms are not genetically related to mycoplasmas. They can result from spontaneous mutation or from the effects of chemicals. Treatment of eubacteria with cell wall-inhibiting drugs or lysozyme can produce cell wall-defective microbial forms. Protoplasts are such forms usually derived from gram-positive organisms; they are osmotically fragile, with external surfaces free of cell wall constituents. Spheroplasts are cell wall-defective forms usually derived from gram-negative bacteria; they retain some outer membrane material.

Cell wall-defective forms continue to synthesize some antigens that are normally located in the cell wall of the parent bacteria (eg, streptococcal L forms produce M protein and capsular polysaccharide). Reversion of L forms to the parental bacterial form is enhanced by growth in the presence of 15–30% gelatin or 2.5% agar. Reversion is inhibited by inhibitors of protein synthesis.

It is uncertain whether cell wall-defective microbial forms cause tissue reactions resulting in disease. They may be important for the persistence of microorganisms in tissue and recurrence of infection after antimicrobial treatment, as in rare cases of endocarditis.

REFERENCES

Baseman JB, Tully JG: Mycoplasmas: Sophisticated, reemerging, and burdened by their notoriety. Emerg Infect Dis 1997;3:21. [www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/vol3no1/baseman.htm]

Baum SG: Introduction to *Mycoplasma diseases.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Baum SG: Introduction to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae and atypical pneumoniae.* In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005

Kenny GE: Genital mycoplasmas: *Mycoplasma genitalium,Mycoplasma hominis,* and *Ureaplasma urealyticum*. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Razin S, Yogev D, Naot Y: Molecular biology and pathogenicity of mycoplasmas. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 1998;62:1094.

Waites KB, Rikihisa Y, Taylor-Robinson D: *Mycoplasma* and *Ureaplasma.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Lange Microbiology >Chapter 27. Rickettsia & Ehrlichia>

RICKETTSIA

The human pathogens in the family Rickettsiaceae are small bacteria of the genera *Rickettsia, Orientia, Coxiella,* and *Ehrlichia* . They are obligate intracellular parasites and, except for Q fever, are transmitted to humans by arthropods. Many rickettsiae are transmitted transovarially in the arthropod, which serves as both vector and reservoir. Rickettsial infectionsexcept Q fever and the ehrlichiosestypically are manifested by fever, rashes, and vasculitis. They are grouped on the basis of their clinical features, epidemiologic aspects, and immunologic characteristics (Table 271).

Table 271. Rickettsial and Ehrlichial Diseases.

Typhus group
Rickettsia prowazekii
Epidemic typhus (louse-borne typhus), Brill-Zinsser disease
Worldwide: South America, Africa, Asia, ?North America
Louse
Humans
Fever, chills, myalgia, headache, rash (no eschar); severe illness if untreated
Serology

Rickettsia typhi
Murine typhus, endemic typhus, flea-borne typhus
Worldwide (small foci)
Flea
Rodents
Fever, headache, myalgia, rash (no eschar); milder illness than epidemic typhus
Serology

Orienta tsutsugamushi
Scrub typhus
Asia, South Pacific, northern Australia
Mite
Rodents
Fever, headache, rash (50% have eschar), lymphadenopathy, atypical lymphocytes
Serology
Spotted fever group[2]

Rickettsia rickettsii

Rocky Mountain spotted fever
Western Hemisphere (United States, South America)
Tick[3]

Rodents, dogs
Fever, headache, rash (no eschar); many systemic manifestations
Direct FA of rickettsiae in tissue; serology

Rickettsia akari
Rickettsial pox
United States, Korea, Russia, South Africa
Mite[3]

Mice
Mild illness, fever, headache, vesicular rash (eschar)
Serology

Rickettsia australis
Queensland tick typhus
Australia
Tick[3]

Rodents, marsupials
Fever, rash of trunk and limbs (eschar)
Serology

Rickettsia conorii
Fivre boutonneuse, Mediterranean spotted fever, Israeli spotted fever, South African tick fever, African (Kenya) tick typhus, Indian tick typhus
Mediterranean countries, Africa, Middle East, India
Tick[3]

Rodents, dogs
Fever, headache, rash, "tache noire" (eschar)
Direct FA of rickettsiae in tissue not sensitive; serology

Rickettsia sibirica
Siberian tick typhus (North Asian tick typhus)
Siberia, Mongolia
Tick[3]

Rodents
Fever, rash (eschar)
Serology
Q fever
Coxiella burnetii
Q fever
Worldwide
Airborne fomites, tick

Sheep, cattle, goats, others
Headache, fever, fatigue, pneumonia (no rash); can have major complications
Positive CF to phase I, II antigens
Ehrlichiae
Ehrlichia chaffeensis
Human monocyte ehrlichiosis
South central, southeastern, and western United States
Tick
Deer
Fever, headache, atypical white blood cells
Inclusions in circulating monocytes; indirect FA for antibodies

Neorickettsia sennetsu
Human monocyte ehrlichiosis
Japan, Malaysia
Trematode-infected fish?
Mammals
Fever, headache, atypical white blood cells

Anaplasma phagocytophilium
Human granulocyte anaplasmosis
Upper midwestern, northwestern, and West Coast United States and Europe
Tick
Mice, other mammals
Fever, headache, myalgia
Inclusions in granulocytes; indirect FA for antibodies

Ehrlichia ewingii
Human granulocyte ehrlichiosis
Midwestern United States
Tick
Dogs
Fever, headache, myalgia
Inclusions in granulocytes; indirect FA for antibodies

Group	Organism	Disease	Geographic Distribution	Vector	Mammalian Resevoir	Clinical Features	Diagnostic Tests[1]

[1] FA = fluorescent antibody test; CF = complement fixation test.

[2] Other rickettsia species in the spotted fever group that infect humans include *R africae* , *R japonica* , *R honei* , and *R slovaca* .

[3] Also serves as arthropod reservoir, by maintaining the rickettsiae through transovarian transmission.

Properties of Rickettsiae

Rickettsiae are pleomorphic coccobacilli, appearing either as short rods (0.3 x 12 μm) or as cocci (0.3 μm in diameter). They do not stain well with Gram stain but are readily visible under the light microscope when stained with Giemsa, Gimenez, acridine orange, or other stains.

Rickettsiae grow readily in yolk sacs of embryonated eggs. Pure preparations of rickettsiae for use in laboratory testing can be obtained by differential centrifugation of yolk sac suspensions. Many strains of rickettsiae also grow in cell culture. In cell culture, the generation time is 810 hours at 34 C. For reasons of biosafety, isolation of rickettsiae should be done only in reference laboratories.

Rickettsiae have gram-negative cell wall structures that include peptidoglycan-containing muramic acid and diaminopimelic acid. The typhus and spotted fever groups contain lipopolysaccharide. The cell wall proteins include the surface proteins OmpA and OmpB, which are important in the humoral immune response and provide the basis for serotyping.

Rickettsiae grow in different parts of the cell. Those of the typhus group are usually found in the cytoplasm; those of the spotted fever group, in the nucleus. Coxiellae grow only in cytoplasmic vacuoles.

Rickettsial growth is enhanced in the presence of sulfonamides, and rickettsial diseases are made more severe by these drugs. Tetracyclines and chloramphenicol inhibit the growth of rickettsiae and can be therapeutically effective.

Most rickettsiae survive only for short times outside of the vector or host. Rickettsiae are quickly destroyed by heat, drying, and bactericidal chemicals. Dried feces of infected lice may contain infectious *Rickettsia prowazekii* for months at room temperature. Coxiella burnetii, which causes Q fever, is the rickettsial agent most resistant to drying. This organism may survive pasteurization at 60 C for 30 minutes and can survive for months in dried feces or milk. This may be due to the formation of endospore-like structures by *Coxiella burnetii.*

Rickettsial Antigens & Serology

The direct immunofluorescent antibody test can be used to detect rickettsiae in ticks and sections of tissues. The test has been most useful to detect *R rickettsii* in skin biopsy specimens to aid in the diagnosis of Rocky Mountain spotted fever; however, the test is performed in only a few reference laboratories.

Serologic evidence of infection occurs no earlier than the second week of illness for any of the rickettsial diseases. Thus, serologic tests are useful only to confirm the diagnosis, which is based on clinical findings (eg, fever, headache, rash) and epidemiologic information (eg, tick bite). Therapy for potentially severe diseases, such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever and typhus, should be instituted before seroconversion occurs.

A variety of serologic tests have been used to diagnose rickettsial diseases. Most of these tests are performed only in reference laboratories. Antigens for the complement fixation test to diagnose Q fever and for the indirect immunofluorescence, latex agglutination, and enzyme immunoassay for Rocky Mountain spotted fever are commercially available. Reagents for other tests are prepared only in public health or other reference laboratories. The indirect fluorescent antibody technique may be the most widely used method, because of the availability of reagents and the ease with which it can be performed. The test is relatively sensitive, requires little antigen, and can be used to detect IgM and IgG. Rickettsiae partially purified from infected yolk sac material are tested with dilutions of a patient's serum. Reactive antibody is detected with a fluorescein-labeled antihuman globulin. The results indicate the presence of partly species-specific antibodies, but cross-reactions are observed.

Pathology

Rickettsiae, except for *C burnetii,* multiply in endothelial cells of small blood vessels and produce vasculitis. The cells become swollen and necrotic; there is thrombosis of the vessel, leading to rupture and necrosis. Vascular lesions are prominent in the skin, but vasculitis occurs in many organs and appears to be the basis of hemostatic disturbances. Disseminated intravascular coagulation and vascular occlusion may develop. In the brain, aggregations of lymphocytes, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and macrophages are associated with the blood vessels of the gray matter; these are called typhus nodules. The heart shows similar lesions of the small blood vessels. Other organs may also be involved.

Immunity

In cell cultures of macrophages, rickettsiae are phagocytosed and replicate intracellularly even in the presence of antibody. The addition of lymphocytes from immune animals stops this multiplication in vitro. Infection in humans is followed by partial immunity to reinfection from external sources, but relapses occur (see Brill-Zinsser disease, below).

Clinical Findings

Except for Q fever, in which there is no skin lesion, rickettsial infections are characterized by fever, headache, malaise, prostration, skin rash, and enlargement of the spleen and liver.

TYPHUS GROUP

Epidemic Typhus (*Rickettsia prowazekii*)

In epidemic typhus, systemic infection and prostration are severe, and fever lasts for about 2 weeks. The disease is more severe and more often fatal in patients over 40 years of age. During epidemics, the case fatality rate has been 630%.

Endemic Typhus (*Rickettsia typhi*)

The clinical picture of endemic typhus has many features in common with that of epidemic typhus, but the disease is milder and is rarely fatal except in elderly patients.

Scrub Typhus (*Orientia tsutsugamushi*)

This disease resembles epidemic typhus clinically. One feature is the eschar, the punched-out ulcer covered with a blackened scab that indicates the location of the mite bite. Generalized lymphadenopathy and lymphocytosis are common. Cardiac and cerebral involvement may be severe.

SPOTTED FEVER GROUP

The spotted fever group resembles typhus clinically; however, unlike the rash in other rickettsial diseases, the rash of the spotted fever group usually appears first on the extremities, moves centripetally, and involves the palms and soles. Some, like Brazilian spotted fever, may produce severe infections; others, like Mediterranean fever, are mild. The case fatality rate varies greatly. In untreated Rocky Mountain spotted fever, it is usually much greater in elderly persons (up to 50%) than in young adults or children.

Rickettsialpox is a mild disease with a rash resembling that of varicella. About a week before onset of fever, a firm red papule appears at the site of the mite bite and develops into a deep-seated vesicle that in turn forms a black eschar (see below).

Q FEVER

This disease resembles influenza, nonbacterial pneumonia, hepatitis, or encephalopathy rather than typhus. There is a rise in the titer of specific antibodies to *Coxiella burnetii,* phase 2. Transmission results from inhalation of dust contaminated with rickettsiae from placenta, dried feces, urine, or milk or from aerosols in slaughterhouses.

Infective endocarditis occasionally develops in chronic Q fever. Blood cultures for bacteria are negative, and there is a high titer of antibodies to *C burnetii,* phase 1. Virtually all patients have preexisting valve abnormalities.

Continuous treatment with tetracycline for many months, occasionally with valve replacement, can provide prolonged survival.

Laboratory Findings

Isolation of rickettsiae is technically difficult and is of only limited usefulness in diagnosis. It is also hazardous. Whole blood (or emulsified blood clot) is inoculated into guinea pigs, mice, or eggs. Rickettsiae are recovered most frequently from blood drawn soon after onset of illness.

If the guinea pigs fail to show disease (fever, scrotal swellings, hemorrhagic necrosis, and death), serum is collected for antibody tests to determine if the animal has had an inapparent infection.

Some rickettsiae can infect mice, and rickettsiae are seen in smears of peritoneal exudate. In Rocky Mountain spotted fever, skin biopsies taken from patients between the fourth and eighth days of illness may reveal rickettsiae by immunofluorescence stain.

The most widely used serologic tests are indirect immunofluorescence and complement fixation (see above). An antibody rise should be demonstrated during the course of the illness. In Rocky Mountain spotted fever, the antibody response may not occur until after the second week of illness.

The polymerase chain reaction has been used to help diagnose Rocky Mountain spotted fever, other diseases of the spotted fever group, murine typhus, scrub typhus, and Q fever. The sensitivity of the method for Rocky Mountain spotted fever is about 70%, comparable to that of skin biopsy with immunocytology.

Treatment

Tetracyclines are effective provided treatment is started early. Tetracycline is given daily orally and continued for 34 days after defervescence. In severely ill patients, the initial doses can be given intravenously.

Sulfonamides enhance the disease and are contraindicated.

The antibiotics do not free the body of rickettsiae, but they do suppress their growth. Recovery depends in part upon the immune mechanisms of the patient.

Epidemiology

A variety of arthropods, especially ticks and mites, harbor rickettsia-like organisms in the cells that line the alimentary tract. Many such organisms are not evidently pathogenic for humans.

The life cycles of different rickettsiae vary. *Rickettsia prowazekii* has a life cycle in humans and the human louse (*Pediculus humanus corporis* and *Pediculus humanus capitis*). The louse obtains the organism by biting infected human beings and transmits the agent by fecal excretion on the surface of the skin of another person. Whenever a louse bites, it defecates at the same time. Scratching the area of the bite allows the rickettsiae excreted in the feces to penetrate the skin. As a result of the infection, the louse dies, but the organisms remain viable for some time in its dried feces. Rickettsiae are not transmitted from one generation of lice to another. Delousing large proportions of the population with insecticides has controlled typhus epidemics.

Brill-Zinsser disease is a recrudescence of an old typhus infection. The rickettsiae can persist for many years in the lymph nodes of an individual without any symptoms being manifest. The rickettsiae isolated from such cases behave like classic *R prowazekii;* this suggests that humans themselves are the reservoir of the rickettsiae of epidemic typhus. Typhus epidemics have been associated with war and the lowering of standards of personal hygiene, which in turn have increased the opportunities for human lice to flourish. If this occurs at the time of recrudescence of an old typhus infection, an epidemic may be set off. Brill-Zinsser disease occurs in local populations of typhus areas as well as in persons who migrate from such areas to places where the disease does not exist. Serologic characteristics readily distinguish Brill's disease from primary epidemic typhus. Antibodies arise earlier and are IgG rather than the IgM detected after primary infection. They reach a maximum by the tenth day of disease. This early IgG antibody response and the mild course of the disease suggest that partial immunity is still present from the primary infection.

In the United States, *R prowazekii* has an extrahuman reservoir in the southern flying squirrel, *Glaucomys volans.* In areas where southern flying squirrels are indigenous (southern Maine to Florida to the center of the United States), human infections have occurred after bites by ectoparasites of this rodent.

Rickettsia typhi has its reservoir in the rat, in which the infection is inapparent and long-lasting. Rat fleas carry the rickettsiae from rat to rat and sometimes from rats to humans, who develop endemic typhus. Cat fleas can serve as vectors. In endemic typhus, the flea cannot transmit the rickettsiae transovarially.

Orientia tsutsugamushi has its true reservoir in the mites that infest rodents. Rickettsiae can persist in rats for over a year after infection. Mites transmit the infection transovarially. Occasionally, infected mites or rat fleas bite humans, and scrub typhus results. The rickettsiae persist in the mite-rat-mite cycle in the scrub or secondary jungle vegetation that has replaced virgin jungle in areas of partial cultivation. Such areas may become infested with rats and trombiculid mites.

R rickettsii may be found in healthy wood ticks *(Dermacentor andersoni)* and is passed transovarially. Infected ticks in the western United States occasionally bite vertebrates such as rodents, deer, and humans. In order to be infectious, the tick carrying the rickettsiae must be engorged with blood, for this increases the number of rickettsiae in the tick. Thus, there is a delay of 4590 minutes between the time of the attachment of the tick and its becoming infective. In the eastern United States, the dog tick *Dermacentor variabilis* transmits Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Dogs are hosts to these ticks and may serve as a reservoir for tick infection. Small rodents are another reservoir. Most cases of Rocky Mountain spotted fever in the United States now occur in the eastern and southeastern regions.

R akari has its vector in bloodsucking mites of the species *Allodermanyssus sanguineus.* These mites may be found on the mice *(Mus musculus)* trapped in apartment houses in the United States where rickettsialpox has occurred. Transovarial transmission of the rickettsiae occurs in the mite. Thus, the mite may act as a true reservoir as well as a vector. *R akari* has also been isolated in Korea.

C burnetii is found in ticks, which transmit the agent to sheep, goats, and cattle. Workers in slaughterhouses and in plants that process wool and cattle hides have contracted the disease as a result of handling infected animal tissues. *C burnetii* is transmitted by the respiratory pathway rather than through the skin. There may be a chronic infection of the udder of the cow. In such cases, the rickettsiae are excreted in the milk and rarely may be transmitted to humans by ingestion of unpasteurized milk.

Infected sheep may excrete *C burnetii* in the feces and urine and heavily contaminate their skin and woolen coat. The placentas of infected cows, sheep, goats, and cats contain the rickettsiae, and parturition creates infectious aerosols. The soil may be heavily contaminated from one of the above sources, and the inhalation of infected dust leads to infection of humans and livestock. It has been proposed that endospores formed by *C burnetii* contribute to its persistence and dissemination. *Coxiella* infection is now widespread among sheep and cattle in the USA. *Coxiella* can cause endocarditis (with a rise in the titer of antibodies to *C burnetii,* phase 1) in addition to pneumonitis and hepatitis.

Geographic Occurrence

EPIDEMIC TYPHUS

This potentially worldwide infection has disappeared from the United States, Britain, and Scandinavia. It is still present in the Balkans, Asia, Africa, Mexico, and the Andes mountains of South America. In view of its long duration in humans as a latent infection (Brill-Zinsser disease), it can emerge and flourish quickly under proper environmental conditions, as it did in Europe during World War II, because of the deterioration of community hygiene.

ENDEMIC MURINE TYPHUS

Disease exists worldwide, especially in areas of high rat infestation. It may exist in the same areas asand may be confused withepidemic typhus or scrub typhus.

SCRUB TYPHUS

Infection is seen in the Far East, especially Myanmar (Burma), India, Sri Lanka, New Guinea, Japan, and Taiwan. The larval stage (chigger) of various trombiculid mites serves both as a reservoir, through transovarian transmission, and as a vector for infecting humans and rodents.

SPOTTED FEVER GROUP

These infections occur around the globe, exhibiting as a rule some epidemiologic and immunologic differences in different areas. Transmission by a tick of the Ixodidae family is common to the group. The diseases that are grouped together include Rocky Mountain spotted fever and Colombian, Brazilian, and Mexican spotted fevers; Mediterranean (boutonneuse), South African tick, and Kenya fevers; North Queensland tick typhus; and North Asian tick-borne rickettsioses.

RICKETTSIALPOX

The human disease has been found among inhabitants of apartment houses in the northern United States. However, the infection also occurs in Russia, Africa, and Korea.

Q FEVER

This disease is recognized around the world and occurs mainly in persons associated with goats, sheep, dairy cattle, or parturient cats. It has attracted attention because of outbreaks in veterinary and medical centers where large numbers of people were exposed to animals shedding *Coxiella* .

Seasonal Occurrence

Epidemic typhus is more common in cool climates, reaching its peak in winter and waning in the spring. This is probably a reflection of crowding, lack of fuel, and low standards of personal hygiene, which favor louse infestation.

Rickettsial infections that must be transmitted to the human host by vector reach their peak incidence at the time the vector is most prevalentthe summer and fall months.

Control

Control must rely on breaking the infection chain, treating patients with antibiotics, and immunizing when possible. Patients with rickettsial disease who are free from ectoparasites are not contagious and do not transmit the infection.

PREVENTION OF TRANSMISSION BY BREAKING THE CHAIN OF INFECTION

Epidemic Typhus

Delousing with insecticide.

Murine Typhus

Rat-proofing buildings and using rat poisons.

Scrub Typhus

Clearing from campsites the secondary jungle vegetation in which rats and mites live.

Spotted Fever

Similar measures for the spotted fevers may be used; clearing of infested land; personal prophylaxis in the form of protective clothing such as high boots, socks worn over trousers; tick repellents; and frequent removal of attached ticks.

Rickettsialpox

Elimination of rodents and their parasites from human domiciles.

PREVENTION OF TRANSMISSION OF Q FEVER BY ADEQUATE PASTEURIZATION OF MILK

The presently recommended conditions of "high-temperature, short-time" pasteurization at 71.5 C for 15 seconds are adequate to destroy viable *Coxiella* .

PREVENTION BY VACCINATION

There is no vaccine for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, for the other diseases of the spotted fever group, or for the diseases in the typhus group. For *Coxiella burnetti* there is an investigational vaccine made from infected egg yolk sacs. This vaccine has been used for laboratory workers who handle live *C burnetti* .

EHRLICHIOSIS

The ehrlichiae that cause disease in humans have been classified in a limited number of species, based in large part on sequence analysis of rRNA genes. The pathogens are as follows: *Ehrlichia chaffeensis,* which causes human monocyte ehrlichiosis; *Ehrlichia ewingii,* which causes human granulocyte ehrlichiosis; *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* , which causes human granulocyte anaplasmosis; and *Neorickettsia sennetsu* , which causes human monocyte ehrlichiosis. The same genera contain additional species that infect animals but apparently not humans. The human pathogens in the group have animal reservoirs and can cause disease in animals as well.

The ehrlichia group organisms are obligate intracellular bacteria that are taxonomically grouped with the rickettsiae. They have tick vectors, although *N sennetsu* may be transmitted by ingestion of trematode-infected fish. See Table 271.

Properties of Ehrlichiae

Ehrlichiae are small (0.5 µm) gram-negative bacteria. They infect circulating leukocytes where they multiply within phagocytic vacuoles, forming clusters with inclusion-like appearance. These clusters of ehrlichiae are called morulae, which is derived from the Latin word for mulberry. The ehrlichiae and chlamydiae (Chapter 28) resemble each other in that both are found in intracellular vacuoles. The ehrlichiae, however, are like the rickettsiae in that they are able to synthesize ATP; the chlamydiae are not able to synthesize ATP.

Clinical Findings

The clinical manifestations of ehrlichiosis in humans are nonspecific: fever, chills, headache, myalgia, nausea or vomiting, anorexia, and weight loss. These manifestations are very similar to those of Rocky Mountain spotted fever without the rash. *E chaffeensis* frequently and *A phagocytophilum* less often cause severe or fatal illness. Seroprevalence studies suggest that subclinical ehrlichiosis occurs frequently.

Laboratory Findings

The diagnosis is confirmed by observing typical morulae in white blood cells. The indirect fluorescent antibody test can also be used to confirm the diagnosis. Antibodies are measured against *E chaffeensis* and *A phagocytophilum. E chaffeensis* is also used as the substrate for *E ewingii,* because the two species share antigens. Seroconversion from < 1:64 to ≥ 1:128 or a fourfold or greater rise in titer makes a confirmed serologic diagnosis of human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis in a patient with a clinically compatible illness.

Multiple methods have been described for PCR detection of ehrlichiae in EDTA-anticoagulated blood. Culture using a variety of tissue culture cell lines also can be used. PCR and culture are performed in reference laboratories and in a small number of commercial laboratories.

Treatment

Tetracycline, commonly in the form of doxycycline, is cidal for ehrlichiae and is the treatment of choice. Rifamycins also are ehrlichiacidal.

Epidemiology & Prevention

The incidence of human ehrlichioses is not well defined. In Oklahoma, which has the highest incidence of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis is at least as common. Human granulocytotropic ehrlichiosis is thought to occur at a rate of about 15 cases per 100,000 population in upper midwestern Oklahoma and at higher rates in selected counties.

More than 90% of cases occur between mid April and October, and more than 80% of cases are in men. Most patients give histories of tick exposure in the month before onset of illness. Cases of human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis have occurred in over 30 states, primarily in the south-central and southeastern United States. This area corresponds to the area of distribution of the Lone Star tick, *Amblyomma americanum.* Cases of human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis in the western United States and in Europe and Africa suggest other tick vectors such as *Dermacentor variabilis.* Cases of human granulocytotropic ehrlichiosis occur in the upper Midwest and East Coast states and in West Coast states. These areas correspond to the distribution of the tick vectors *Ixodes scapularis* and *Ixodes pacificus,* respectively.

REFERENCES

Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, Dumler JS: *Ehrlichia, Anaplasma, Neorickettsia,* and *Aegyptianella.* In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

Buller RS et al: *Ehrlichia ewingii,* a newly recognized agent of human ehrlichiosis. N Engl J Med 1999;341:148. [PMID: 10403852]

Fournier P-E, Marrie TJ, Raoult D: Diagnosis of Q fever. J Clin Microbiol 1998;36:1823. [PMID: 9650920]

Thorner AR, Walker DH, Petri WA Jr: Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Clin Infect Dis 1998;27:1353. [PMID: 9868640]

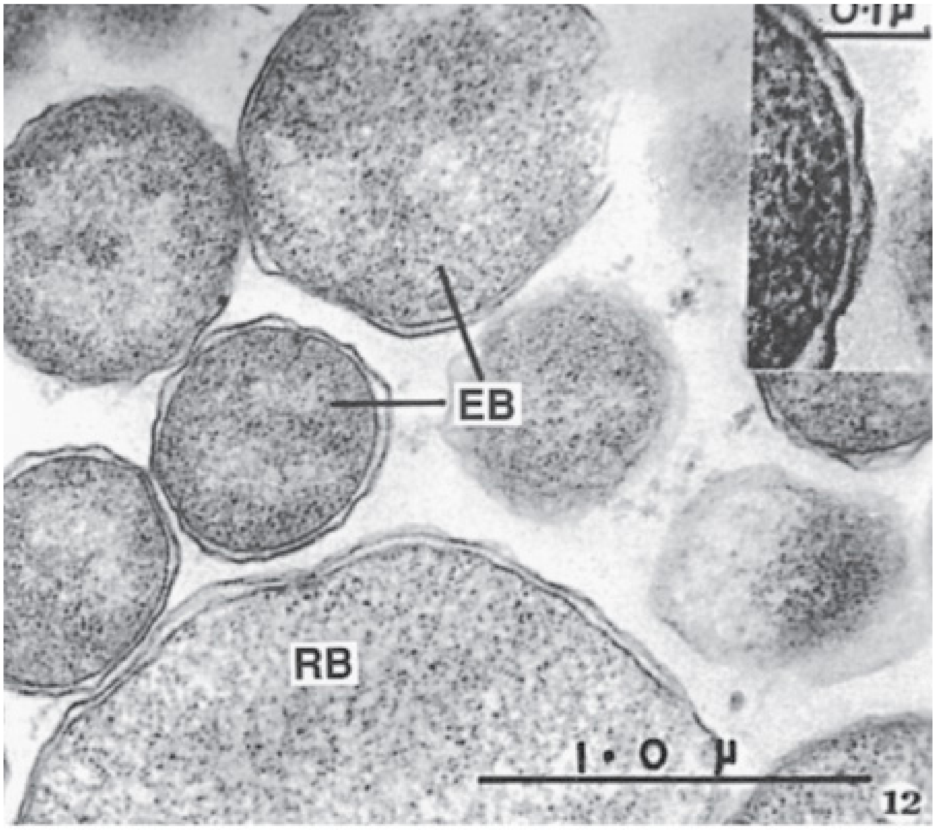
Rickettsioses and ehrlichioses. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Walker DH et al: Diagnosing human ehrlichioses: Current status and recommendations. ASM News 2000;66:287.

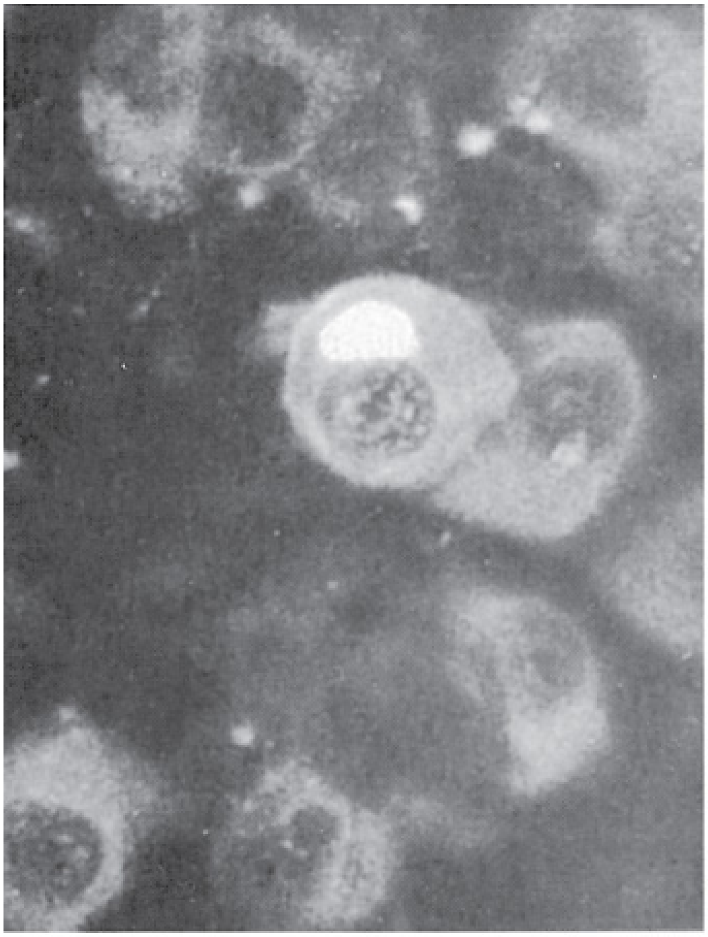
INTRODUCTION

Chlamydiae that infect humans (Figure 28–1) are divided into three species—*Chlamydia trachomatis, Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae,* and *Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) psittaci*—on the basis of antigenic composition, intracellular inclusions, sulfonamide susceptibility, and disease production. A fourth species, *Chlamydia pecorum,* infects a variety of animals but is not known to infect humans. All chlamydiae exhibit similar morphologic features, share a common group antigen, and multiply in the cytoplasm of their host cells by a distinctive developmental cycle. The chlamydiae can be viewed as gram-negative bacteria that lack mechanisms for the production of metabolic energy and cannot synthesize ATP. This defect restricts them to an intracellular existence, where the host cell furnishes energy-rich intermediates. Thus, chlamydiae are obligate intracellular parasites.

Figure 28–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Chlamydiae. Top: Chlamydiae in various stages of intracellular development. (EB, elementary body particles with cell walls; RB, reticulate body.) Bottom: Fluorescent inclusion body of *C trachomatis* in epithelial cell (conjunctival scraping) stained with specific fluorescein-labeled antiserum.

Developmental Cycle

All chlamydiae have a common reproductive cycle. The environmentally stable infectious particle is a small cell (elementary body; EB) about 0.3 μm in diameter with an electron-dense nucleoid. The EB membrane proteins have highly cross-linked membrane proteins. The EBs have a high affinity for host epithelial cells and rapidly enter them. There may be multiple adhesins, receptors, and mechanisms of entry. Heparan sulfate-like proteoglycans on the surface of *C trachomatis* are likely possibilities for mediating at least the initial interaction between EBs and host cells. Other potential adhesins include the major outer membrane protein (MOMP), glycosylated MOMP, and other surface proteins. The mechanisms thought to mediate entry into the host cell also are varied. EBs are usually seen attached near the base of microvilli, where they are subsequently engulfed by the host cell. More than one mechanism appears to be functional: receptor-mediated endocytosis into clathrin-coated pits and pinocytosis via noncoated pits. Lysosomal fusion is inhibited by an unknown mechanism, creating a protected membrane-bound environment around the chlamydiae. Shortly after entry into the host cell, the disulfide bonds of the EB membrane proteins are no longer cross-linked and the elementary body is reorganized into a large one called a reticulate body (RB) measuring about 0.5–1 μm and devoid of an electron-dense nucleoid. Within the membrane-bound vacuole, the RB grows in size and divides repeatedly by binary fission. Eventually, the entire vacuole becomes filled with elementary bodies derived from reticulate bodies to form a cytoplasmic inclusion. The newly formed elementary bodies may be liberated from the host cell to infect new cells. The developmental cycle takes 24–48 hours.

Structure & Chemical Composition

In chlamydiae, the outer cell wall resembles the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria. It has a relatively high lipid content. It is rigid but does not contain a typical bacterial peptidoglycan; however, the chlamydial genome contains the genes needed for peptidoglycan synthesis. Penicillin-binding proteins occur in chlamydiae, and chlamydial cell wall formation is inhibited by penicillins and other drugs that inhibit transpeptidation of bacterial peptidoglycan. Lysozyme has no effect on chlamydial cell walls. *N*-acetylmuramic acid appears to be absent from chlamydial cell walls. Both DNA and RNA are present in elementary and reticulate bodies. The reticulate bodies contain about four times as much RNA as DNA, whereas the elementary bodies contain about equal amounts of RNA and DNA. In elementary bodies, most DNA is concentrated in the electron-dense central nucleoid. Most RNA exists in ribosomes. The circular genome of chlamydiae (MW 7×10^8) is similar to that of bacterial chromosomes.

Multiple chlamydial genomes have been sequenced providing insight into the basic biology of the organisms. For example, chlamydiae have a type III secretion system, which may allow them to inject effector proteins into host cells as part of the infectious process.

Staining Properties

Chlamydiae have distinctive staining properties (similar to those of rickettsiae). Elementary bodies stain purple with Giemsa stain—in contrast to the blue of host cell cytoplasm. The larger, noninfective reticulate bodies stain blue with Giemsa stain. The Gram reaction of chlamydiae is negative or variable and is not useful in identification of the agents. Chlamydial particles and inclusions stain brightly by immunofluorescence, with group-specific, species-specific, or serovar-specific antibodies.

Fully formed, mature intracellular inclusions of *C trachomatis* are compact masses near the nucleus which are dark purple when stained with Giemsa stain because of the densely packed mature particles. If stained with dilute Lugol's iodine solution, some of the inclusions of *C trachomatis* (but not *C pneumoniae* or *C psittaci*) appear brown because of the glycogen matrix that surrounds the particles. Inclusions of *C psittaci* are diffuse intracytoplasmic aggregates.

Antigens

Chlamydiae possess shared group (genus)-specific antigens. These are heat-stable lipopolysaccharides with 2-keto-3-deoxyoctanoic acid as an immunodominant component. Antibody to these genus-specific antigens can be detected by CF and immunofluorescence. Species-specific or serovar-specific antigens are mainly outer membrane proteins. Specific antigens can best be detected by immunofluorescence, particularly using monoclonal antibodies. Specific antigens are shared by only a limited number of chlamydiae, but a given organism may contain several specific antigens. There are at least 15 serovars of *C trachomatis;* these include A, B, Ba, C–K, and L1–L3. Several serovars of *C psittaci* can be demonstrated by complement fixation (CF) and microimmunofluorescence tests. Only one serovar of *C pneumoniae* has been described.

Growth & Metabolism

Chlamydiae require an intracellular habitat, because they are unable to synthesize ATP and depend on the host cell for energy requirements. Chlamydiae grow in cultures of a variety of eukaryotic cells lines. McCoy cells treated with cycloheximide commonly are used to isolate chlamydiae; *C pneumoniae* grows better in HL or HEp-2 cells. All types of chlamydiae proliferate in embryonated eggs, particularly in the yolk sac.

Some chlamydiae have an endogenous metabolism like other bacteria. They can liberate CO_2 from glucose, pyruvate, and glutamate; they also contain dehydrogenases. Nevertheless, they require energy-rich intermediates from the host cell to carry out their biosynthetic activities.

The replication of chlamydiae can be inhibited by many antibacterial drugs. Cell wall inhibitors such as penicillins and cephalosporins result in the production of morphologically defective forms but are not effective in clinical diseases. Inhibitors of protein synthesis (tetracyclines, erythromycins) are effective in most clinical infections. *C trachomatis* strains synthesize folates and are susceptible to inhibition by sulfonamides. Aminoglycosides are noninhibitory.

Characteristics of Host-Parasite Relationship

The outstanding biologic feature of infection by chlamydiae is the balance that is often reached between host and parasite, resulting in prolonged persistence of infection. Subclinical infection is the rule—and overt disease the exception—in the natural hosts of these agents. Spread from one species to another (eg, birds to humans, as in psittacosis) more frequently leads to disease. Antibodies to several antigens of chlamydiae are regularly produced by the infected host. These antibodies have little protective effect against reinfection. The infectious agent commonly persists in the presence of high antibody titers. Treatment with effective antimicrobial drugs (eg, tetracyclines) for prolonged periods may eliminate the chlamydiae from the infected host. Very early, intensive treatment may suppress antibody formation. Late treatment with antimicrobial drugs in moderate doses may suppress disease but permit persistence of the infecting agent in tissues.

The immunization of humans has been singularly unsuccessful in protecting against reinfection. Prior infection or immunization at most tends to result in milder disease upon reinfection, but at times the accompanying hypersensitization aggravates inflammation and scarring (eg, in trachoma).

Classification

Chlamydiae are arranged according to their pathogenic potential, host range, antigenic differences, and other methods. Three species that infect humans have been characterized (Table 28–1).

Table 28–1. Characteristics of the Chlamydiae.

	C trachomatis	*C pneumoniae*	*C psittaci*
Inclusion morphology	Round, vacuolar	Round, dense	Large, variable shape, dense
Glycogen in inclusions	Yes	No	No
Elementary body morphology	Round	Pear-shaped, round	Round
Susceptible to sulfonamides	Yes	No	No
DNA homology to *C pneumoniae*	< 10%	100%	< 10%
Plasmid	Yes	No	Yes
Serovars	15	1	≥ 4
Natural host	Humans	Humans	Birds
Mode of transmission	Person to person, mother to infant	Airborne person to person	Airborne bird excreta to humans
Major diseases	Trachoma, STDs, infant pneumonia, lymphogranuloma venereum	Pneumonia, bronchitis, pharyngitis, sinusitis	Psittacosis, pneumonia, fever of unexplained origin

C TRACHOMATIS

This species produces compact intracytoplasmic inclusions that contain glycogen; it is usually inhibited by sulfonamides. It includes agents of human disorders such as trachoma, inclusion conjunctivitis, nongonococcal urethritis, salpingitis, cervicitis, pneumonitis of infants, and lymphogranuloma venereum. A *C trachomatis* variant also causes mouse pneumonitis.

C PNEUMONIAE

This species produces intracytoplasmic inclusions that lack glycogen; it is usually resistant to sulfonamides. It causes respiratory tract infections in humans.

C PSITTACI

This species produces diffuse intracytoplasmic inclusions that lack glycogen; it is usually resistant to sulfonamides. It includes agents of psittacosis in humans, ornithosis in birds, meningopneumonitis, feline pneumonitis, and other animal diseases.

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS OCULAR, GENITAL, & RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS

Humans are the natural host for *C trachomatis.* Monkeys and chimpanzees can be infected in the eye and genital tract. *C trachomatis* also replicates in cells in tissue culture. *C trachomatis* of different serovars replicates differently. Isolates from trachoma do not grow as well as those from lymphogranuloma venereum or genital infections. Intracytoplasmic replication results in the formation of compact inclusions with a glycogen matrix in which elementary bodies are embedded.

Immunotype-specific antisera permit typing of isolates that gives results analogous to those achieved by typing by microimmunofluorescence. The serovars specifically associated with endemic trachoma are A, B, Ba, and C; those associated with sexually transmitted disease are D–K; and those that cause lymphogranuloma venereum are L1, L2, and L3.

TRACHOMA

Trachoma is an ancient eye disease, well described in the Ebers Papyrus, which was written in Egypt 3800 years ago. It is a chronic keratoconjunctivitis that begins with acute inflammatory changes in the conjunctiva and cornea and progresses to scarring and blindness.

Clinical Findings

In experimental human infections, the incubation period for chlamydial conjunctival infection is 3–10 days. In endemic areas, initial infection occurs in early childhood, and the onset of the long-term consequence, trachoma, is insidious. Chlamydial infection is often mixed with bacterial conjunctivitis in endemic areas, and the two together produce the clinical picture. The earliest symptoms of trachoma are lacrimation, mucopurulent discharge, conjunctival hyperemia, and follicular hypertrophy. Microscopic examination of the cornea reveals epithelial keratitis, subepithelial infiltrates, and extension of limbal vessels into the cornea (pannus). As the pannus extends downward across the cornea, there is scarring of the conjunctiva, eyelid deformities (entropion, trichiasis), and added insult caused by eyelashes sweeping across the cornea. With secondary bacterial infection, loss of vision progresses over a period of years. There are, however, no systemic symptoms or signs of infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The laboratory diagnosis of chlamydial infections is discussed also in Chapter 47.

CULTURE

Typical cytoplasmic inclusions are found in epithelial cells of conjunctival scrapings stained with fluorescent antibody or by the Giemsa method. These occur most frequently in the early stages of the disease and on the upper tarsal conjunctiva.

Inoculation of conjunctival scrapings into cycloheximide-treated McCoy cell cultures permits growth of *C trachomatis* if the number of viable infectious particles is sufficiently large. Centrifugation of the inoculum into the cells increases the sensitivity of the method. The diagnosis can sometimes be made in the first passage after 2–3 days of incubation by looking for inclusions by immunofluorescence or staining with iodine or Giemsa stain.

SEROLOGY

Infected individuals often develop both group antibodies and serovar-specific antibodies in serum and in eye secretions. Immunofluorescence is the most sensitive method for their detection. Neither ocular nor serum antibodies confer significant resistance to reinfection.

MOLECULAR METHODS

Developing countries, where trachoma is endemic, generally do not have the resources to apply PCR or other molecular methods to the diagnosis of C trachomatis infections of the eye. Developed countries have relatively little trachoma and little need for such tests. Thus, the molecular methods have been developed for the diagnosis of genital infections. Only research projects have used PCR in studies of trachoma.

Treatment

Clinical trials, in villages with endemic trachoma, using mass azithromycin treatment show that infection and clinical disease are greatly decreased at 6 and 12 months post therapy; this is true even with single dose therapy. Thus, azithromycin has replaced erythromycin and doxycycline in the mass treatment of endemic trachoma. Topical therapy is of little value.

Epidemiology & Control

It is believed that more than 400 million people throughout the world have trachoma and that 20 million are blinded by it. The disease is most prevalent in Africa, Asia, and the Mediterranean basin, where hygienic conditions are poor and water is scarce. In such hyperendemic areas, childhood infection may be universal, and severe blinding disease (resulting from frequent bacterial superinfection) is common. In the United States, trachoma occurs sporadically in some areas, and endemic foci persist.

The WHO has initiated the S-A-F-E program to eliminate blinding trachoma and at least markedly reduce clinically active disease. The S-A-F-E program is as follows: Surgery for deformed eyelids; periodic Azithromycin therapy; Face washing and hygiene; and, Environmental improvement such as building latrines and decreasing the number of flies that feed on conjunctival exudates. It is clear that improved socioeconomic conditions enhance the disappearance of endemic trachoma.

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS GENITAL INFECTIONS & INCLUSION CONJUNCTIVITIS

C trachomatis serovars D–K cause sexually transmitted diseases—especially in developed countries—and may also produce infection of the eye (inclusion conjunctivitis). In sexually active men, *C trachomatis* causes nongonococcal urethritis and, occasionally, epididymitis. In women, *C trachomatis* causes urethritis, cervicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease, which can lead to sterility and predispose to ectopic pregnancy. Proctitis and protocolitis may occur in men and women although these infections appear to be most common in men who have sex with men. Any of these anatomic sites of infection may give rise to symptoms and signs, or the infection may remain asymptomatic but communicable to sex partners. Up to 50% of nongonococcal urethritis (men) or the urethral syndrome (women) is attributed to chlamydiae and produces dysuria, nonpurulent discharge, and frequency of urination. Genital secretions of infected adults can be self-inoculated into the conjunctiva, resulting in inclusion conjunctivitis, an ocular infection that closely resembles trachoma.

The newborn acquires the infection during passage through an infected birth canal. Probably 20–50% of infants of infected mothers acquire the infection, with 15–20% of infected infants manifesting eye symptoms and 10–20% manifesting respiratory tract involvement. Inclusion conjunctivitis of the newborn begins as a mucopurulent conjunctivitis 7–12 days after delivery. It tends to subside with erythromycin or tetracycline treatment, or spontaneously after weeks or months. Occasionally, inclusion conjunctivitis persists as a chronic chlamydial infection with a clinical picture indistinguishable from that of subacute or chronic childhood trachoma in nonendemic areas and usually not associated with bacterial conjunctivitis.

Laboratory Diagnosis

CULTURE

Collect endocervical specimens following removal of discharge and secretions from the cervix. A swab or cytology brush is used to scrape epithelial cells from 1–2 cm deep into the endocervix. A similar method is used to collect specimens from the vagina, urethra, or conjunctiva. Biopsy specimens of the uterine tube or epididymis can also be cultured. Dacron, cotton, rayon, or calcium alginate on a plastic shaft should be used to collect the specimen; some other swab materials and wooden shafts are toxic to chlamydiae. The swab specimens should be placed in a chlamydiae transport medium and kept at refrigerator temperature before transport to the laboratory. McCoy cells are grown in monolayers on coverslips in dram or shell vials. Some laboratories use flat-bottomed microdilution trays, but cultures by this method are not as sensitive as those achieved with the shell vial method. The McCoy cells are treated with cycloheximide to inhibit metabolism and increase the sensitivity of isolation of the chlamydiae. The inoculum from the swab specimen is centrifuged onto the monolayer and incubated at 35–37 °C for 48–72 hours. A second monolayer can be inoculated, and after incubation it can be sonicated and passaged to another monolayer to enhance sensitivity. The monolayers are examined by direct immunofluorescence to visualize the cytoplasmic inclusions. Chlamydial cultures by this method are about 80% sensitive but 100% specific.

DIRECT CYTOLOGIC EXAMINATION (DIRECT FLUORESCENT ANTIBODY OR DFA) AND ENZYME-LINKED IMMUNOASSAY (EIA)

Commercially available DFA and EIA assays to detect *C trachomatis* can be used in laboratories that lack the expertise or facilities to perform culture. Specimens are collected with techniques similar to those used to collect specimens for culture. Urine specimens may be used with some of the tests. The DFA uses monoclonal antibodies directed against a species-specific antigen on the chlamydial major outer membrane protein (MOMP). The EIA detects the presence of genus-specific lipopolysaccharide antigens extracted from elementary bodies in the specimen. The sensitivity of the DFA is 80–90%, and the specificity is 98–99%; the sensitivity of EIA is 80–95%, and the specificity is 98–99% when compared with culture.

NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

The specimens used for the molecular methods to diagnose *C trachomatis* are the same as those used for culture; urine may be tested as well. One commercial method uses a chemiluminescent DNA probe that hybridizes to a species-specific sequence of chlamydia 16S rRNA; chlamydiae have up to 10^4 copies of the 16S rRNA. Once the hybrids are formed they are absorbed onto beads, and the amount of chemiluminescence is then detected in a luminometer. The overall sensitivity and specificity of this method are about 85% and 98–99%, respectively.

Nucleic acid amplification tests have also been developed and marketed. One test is based on the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and another on the ligase chain reaction (LCR). These tests are much more sensitive than culture and other nonamplification tests and have required redefinition of sensitivity in the laboratory documentation of chlamydial infection. The specificity of the tests appears to be close to 100%. The nucleic acid amplification tests are the tests of choice to diagnose genital *C trachomatis* infections.

SEROLOGY

Because of the relatively great antigenic mass of chlamydiae in genital tract infections, serum antibodies occur much more commonly than in trachoma and are of higher titer. A titer rise occurs during and after acute chlamydial infection. Because of the high prevalence of chlamydial genital tract infections in some societies, there is a high background of antichlamydial antibodies in the population; serologic tests to diagnose genital tract chlamydial infections generally are not useful.

In genital secretions (eg, cervical), antibody can be detected during active infection and is directed against the infecting immunotype (serovar).

Treatment

It is essential that chlamydial infections be treated simultaneously in both sex partners and in offspring to prevent reinfection. Tetracyclines (eg, doxycycline) are commonly used in nongonococcal urethritis and in nonpregnant infected females. Azithromycin is effective and can be given to pregnant women. Topical tetracycline or erythromycin is used for inclusion conjunctivitis, sometimes in combination with a systemic drug.

Epidemiology & Control

Genital chlamydial infection and inclusion conjunctivitis are sexually transmitted diseases that are spread by contact with infected sex partners. Neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis originates in the mother's infected genital tract. Prevention of neonatal eye disease depends upon diagnosis and treatment of the pregnant woman and her sex partner. As in all sexually transmitted diseases, the presence of multiple etiologic agents (gonococci, treponemes, trichomonads, herpes, etc) must be considered. Instillation of erythromycin or tetracycline into the newborn's eyes does not prevent development of chlamydial conjunctivitis. The ultimate control of this—and all—sexually transmitted disease depends on safe sex practices and on early diagnosis and treatment of infected persons.

RESPIRATORY TRACT INVOLVEMENT WITH *CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS*

Of newborns infected by the mother, 10–20% may develop respiratory tract involvement 2–12 weeks after birth, culminating in pneumonia. *C trachomatis* may be the most common cause of neonatal pneumonia. There is striking tachypnea, characteristic paroxysmal cough, absence of fever, and eosinophilia. Consolidation of lungs and hyperinflation can be seen by x-ray. The diagnosis should be suspected if pneumonitis develops in a newborn who has inclusion conjunctivitis and can be established by isolation of *C trachomatis* from respiratory secretions. In such neonatal pneumonia, an IgM antibody titer to *C trachomatis* of 1:32 or more is considered diagnostic. Systemic erythromycin is effective treatment in severe cases.

Adults with inclusion conjunctivitis often manifest upper respiratory tract symptoms (eg, otalgia, otitis, nasal obstruction, pharyngitis), presumably resulting from drainage of infectious chlamydiae through the nasolacrimal duct. Pneumonitis is infrequent in adults.

LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM

Lymphogranuloma venereum is a sexually transmitted disease caused by *C trachomatis* and characterized by suppurative inguinal adenitis; it is more common in tropical climates.

Properties of the Agent

The particles contain CF heat-stable chlamydial group antigens that are shared with all other chlamydiae. They also contain one of three serovar antigens (L1–L3), which can be defined by immunofluorescence.

Clinical Findings

Several days to several weeks after exposure, a small, evanescent papule or vesicle develops on any part of the external genitalia, anus, rectum, or elsewhere. The lesion may ulcerate, but usually it remains unnoticed and heals in a few days. Soon thereafter, the regional lymph nodes enlarge and tend to become matted and painful. In males, inguinal nodes are most commonly involved both above and below Poupart's ligament, and the overlying skin often turns purplish as the nodes suppurate and eventually discharge pus through multiple sinus tracts. In females and in homosexual males, the perirectal nodes are prominently involved, with proctitis and a bloody mucopurulent anal discharge. Lymphadenitis may be most marked in the cervical chains.

During the stage of active lymphadenitis, there are often marked systemic symptoms including fever, headaches, meningismus, conjunctivitis, skin rashes, nausea and vomiting, and arthralgias. Meningitis, arthritis, and pericarditis occur rarely. Unless effective antimicrobial drug treatment is given at that stage, the chronic inflammatory process progresses to fibrosis, lymphatic obstruction, and rectal strictures. The lymphatic obstruction may lead to elephantiasis of the penis, scrotum, or vulva. The chronic proctitis of women or homosexual males may lead to progressive rectal strictures, rectosigmoid obstruction, and fistula formation.

Laboratory Diagnosis

SMEARS

Pus, buboes, or biopsy material may be stained, but particles are rarely recognized.

CULTURE

Suspected material is inoculated into McCoy cell cultures. The inoculum can be treated with an aminoglycoside (but not with penicillin) to lessen bacterial contamination. The agent is identified by morphology and serologic tests.

SEROLOGY

Antibodies are commonly demonstrated by the CF reaction. The test becomes positive 2–4 weeks after onset of illness, at which time skin hypersensitivity can sometimes also be demonstrated. In a clinically compatible case, a rising antibody level or a single titer of more than 1:64 is good evidence of active infection. If treatment has eradicated the lymphogranuloma venereum infection, the CF titer falls. Serologic diagnosis of lymphogranuloma venereum can employ immunofluorescence, but the antibody is broadly reactive with many chlamydial antigens.

Immunity

Untreated infections tend to be chronic, with persistence of the agent for many years. Little is known about active immunity. The coexistence of latent infection, antibodies, and cell-mediated reactions is typical of many chlamydial infections.

Treatment

The sulfonamides and tetracyclines have been used with good results, especially in the early stages. In some drug-treated persons there is a marked decline in complement-fixing antibodies, which may indicate that the infective agent has been eliminated from the body. Late stages require surgery.

Epidemiology & Control

Although the highest incidence of lymphogranuloma venereum has been reported from subtropical and tropical areas, the infection occurs all over the world. The disease is most often spread by sexual contact, but not exclusively so. The portal of entry may sometimes be the eye (conjunctivitis with an oculoglandular syndrome). The genital tracts and rectums of chronically infected (but at times asymptomatic) persons serve as reservoirs of infection. Laboratory personnel exposed to aerosols of *C trachomatis* serovars L1–L3 can develop a chlamydial pneumonitis with mediastinal and hilar adenopathy. If the infection is recognized, treatment with tetracycline or erythromycin is effective.

The measures used for the control of other sexually transmitted diseases apply also to the control of lymphogranuloma venereum. Case-finding and early treatment and control of infected persons are essential.

CHLAMYDOPHILA PNEUMONIAE & RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS

The first *C pneumoniae* (TWAR) strain was obtained in the 1960s in chick embryo yolk sac culture. Following the development of cell culture methods, this initial strain was thought to be a member of the species *C psittaci.* Subsequently, *C pneumoniae* has been firmly established as a new species that causes respiratory disease. Humans are the only known host.

Properties of the Agent

C pneumoniae produces round, dense, glycogen-negative inclusions that are sulfonamide-resistant, much like *C psittaci* (Table 28–1). The elementary bodies sometimes have a pear-shaped appearance. The genetic relatedness of *C pneumoniae* isolates is > 95%. Only one serovar has been demonstrated.

Clinical Findings

Most infections with *C pneumoniae* are asymptomatic or associated with mild illness, but severe disease has been reported. There are no signs or symptoms that specifically differentiate *C pneumoniae* infections from those caused by many other agents. Both upper and lower airway disease occur. Pharyngitis is common. Sinusitis and otitis media may occur and be accompanied by lower airway disease. An atypical pneumonia similar to that caused by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* is the primary recognized illness. Five to 20 percent of community-acquired pneumonia in young persons is thought to be caused by *C pneumoniae.*

Laboratory Diagnosis

SMEARS

Direct detection of elementary bodies in clinical specimens using fluorescent antibody techniques is insensitive. Other stains do not effectively demonstrate the organism.

CULTURE

Swab specimens of the pharynx should be put into a chlamydiae transport medium and placed at 4 °C; *C pneumoniae* is rapidly inactivated at room temperature. It grows poorly in cell culture, forming inclusions smaller than those formed by the other chlamydiae. *C pneumoniae* grows better in HL and HEp-2 cells than in HeLa 229 or McCoy cells; the McCoy cells are widely used to culture *C trachomatis.* The sensitivity of the culture is increased by incorporation of cycloheximide into the cell culture medium to inhibit the eukaryotic cell metabolism and by centrifugation of the inoculum onto the cell layer. Growth is better at 35 °C than 37 °C. After 3 days' incubation, the cells are fixed and inclusions detected by fluorescent antibody staining with genus- or species-specific antibody or, preferably, with a *C pneumoniae*-specific monoclonal antibody conjugated with fluorescein. Giemsa staining is insensitive, and the glycogen-negative inclusions do not stain with iodine. It is moderately difficult to grow *C pneumoniae*—as evidenced by the number of isolates described compared with the incidence of infection.

SEROLOGY

Serology using the microimmunofluorescence test is the most sensitive method for diagnosis of *C pneumoniae* infection. The test is species-specific and can detect IgG or IgM antibodies by using the appropriate reagents. Primary infection yields IgM antibody after about 3 weeks followed by IgG antibody at 6–8 weeks. In reinfection, the IgM response may be absent or minimal and the IgG response occurs in 1–2 weeks. The following criteria have been suggested for the serologic diagnosis of *C pneumoniae* infection: a single IgM titer of ≥ 1:16; a single IgG titer of ≥ 1:512; and a fourfold rise in either the IgM or IgG titers.

The complement fixation test can be used, but it is group-reacting, does not differentiate *C pneumoniae* infection from psittacosis or lymphogranuloma venereum, and is less sensitive than the microimmunofluorescence test.

Immunity

Little is known about active or potentially protective immunity. Prolonged infections can occur with *C pneumoniae,* and asymptomatic carriage may be common.

Treatment

C pneumoniae is susceptible to the macrolides and tetracyclines and to some fluoroquinolones. Treatment with doxycycline, azithromycin, or clarithromycin appears to significantly benefit patients with *C pneumoniae* infection, but there are only limited data on the efficacy of antibiotic treatment. Reports indicate that the symptoms may continue or recur after routine courses of therapy with erythromycin, doxycycline, or tetracycline, and these drugs should be given for 10- to 14-day courses.

Epidemiology

Infection with *C pneumoniae* is common. Worldwide, 30–50% of people have antibody to *C pneumoniae.* Few young children have antibody, but after the age of 6–8 years, the prevalence of antibody increases through young adulthood. Infection is both endemic and epidemic, with multiple outbreaks attributed to *C pneumoniae.* There is no known animal reservoir, and transmission is presumed to be from person to person, predominantly by the airborne route.

Lines of evidence suggesting that *C pneumoniae* is associated with atherosclerotic coronary artery and cerebrovascular disease consist of seroepidemiologic studies, detection of *C pneumoniae* in atherosclerotic tissues, cell culture studies, animal models, and trials of prevention using antibiotic agents. The association appears valid, but additional work is needed before causation can be considered established or disproved.

CHLAMYDIA PSITTACI & PSITTACOSIS

The term "psittacosis" is applied to the human *C psittaci* disease acquired from contact with birds and also the infection of psittacine birds (parrots, parakeets, cockatoos, etc). The term "ornithosis" is applied to infection with similar agents in all types of domestic birds (pigeons, chickens, ducks, geese, turkeys, etc) and free-living birds (gulls, egrets, petrels, etc). In humans, *C psittaci* produces a spectrum of clinical manifestations ranging from severe pneumonia and sepsis with a high mortality rate to a mild inapparent infection.

Properties of the Agent

C psittaci can be propagated in embryonated eggs, in mice and other animals, and in some cell cultures. The heat-stable group-reactive CF antigen resists proteolytic enzymes and appears to be a lipopolysaccharide. Treatment of *C psittaci* infection with deoxycholate and trypsin yields extracts that contain group-reactive CF antigens, whereas the cell walls retain the species-specific antigen. Antibodies to the species-specific antigen are able to neutralize toxicity and infectivity. Specific serovars characteristic for certain mammalian and avian species may be demonstrated by immunofluorescence typing. Neutralization of infectivity of the agent by specific antibody or cross-protection of immunized animals can also be used for serotyping, and the results parallel those of immunofluorescence typing.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The agent enters through the respiratory tract, is found in the blood during the first 2 weeks of the disease, and may be found in the sputum at the time the lung is involved.

Psittacosis causes a patchy inflammation of the lungs in which consolidated areas are sharply demarcated. The exudate is predominantly mononuclear. Only minor changes occur in the large bronchioles and bronchi. The lesions are similar to those found in pneumonitis caused by some viruses and mycoplasmas. Liver, spleen, heart, and kidney are often enlarged and congested.

Clinical Findings

A sudden onset of illness taking the form of influenza or nonbacterial pneumonia in a person exposed to birds is suggestive of psittacosis. The incubation period averages 10 days. The onset is usually sudden, with malaise, fever, anorexia, sore throat, photophobia, and severe headache. The disease may progress no further, and the patient may improve in a few days. In severe cases, the signs and symptoms of bronchial pneumonia appear at the end of the first week of the disease. The clinical picture often resembles that of influenza, nonbacterial pneumonia, or typhoid fever. The mortality rate may be as high as 20% in untreated cases, especially in the elderly.

Laboratory Diagnosis

CULTURE

Culture of *C psittaci* can be dangerous, and detection of the organism using immunoassays or polymerase chain reaction is preferred. If necessary, *C psittaci* can be cultured from blood or sputum or from lung tissue by culture in tissue culture cells, embryonated eggs, or mice. Isolation of *C psittaci* is confirmed by the serial transmission, its microscopic demonstration, and serologic identification.

DETECTION OF *C PSITTACI*

Antigen detection by direct fluorescent antibody staining or by immunoassay or molecular diagnosis by polymerase chain reaction is done in reference or research laboratories.

SEROLOGY

A diagnosis of psittacosis is usually confirmed by demonstrating complement-fixing or microimmunofluorescent antibodies in serum specimens. A confirmed case is one with a positive culture or associated with a compatible clinical illness plus a fourfold or greater change in antibody titer to at least 1:32 or a microimmunofluorescence IgM titer of at least 1:16. A probable case is one associated with a compatible illness linked epidemiologically with a confirmed case or a titer of at least 1:32 in a single specimen. The complement fixation test is cross-reactive with *C trachomatis* and *C pneumoniae.* The microimmunofluorescence test (MIF) is more sensitive and specific than the CF test, but cross-reactions do occur. MIF allows detection of IgM and IgG. Although antibodies usually develop within 10 days, the use of antibiotics may delay their development for 20–40 days or suppress it altogether.

In live birds, infection is suggested by a positive CF test and an enlarged spleen or liver. This can be confirmed by demonstration of particles in smears or sections of organs and by passage of the agent in mice and eggs.

MOLECULAR METHODS

Multiple PCR assays have been developed to detect *C psittaci* in respiratory tract specimens, vascular tissues, serum, and mononuclear cells from peripheral blood. These tests hold great promise of being more sensitive than culture or serology in detecting *C psittaci*. None of the tests is approved by the FDA for clinical use, and until they are approved they will remain for research use only.

Immunity

Immunity in animals and humans is incomplete. A carrier state in humans can persist for 10 years after recovery. During this period, the agent may continue to be excreted in the sputum.

Live or inactivated vaccines induce only partial resistance in animals. They have not been used in humans.

Treatment

Because of the difficulty in obtaining laboratory confirmation of *C psittaci* infection, most infections are treated based only on the clinical diagnosis. Information on therapeutic efficacy comes from several clinical trials. Azithromycin, clarithromycin, and erythromycin (and doxycycline in adults) clear most, but not all, respiratory *C psittaci* infections. All the patients improve clinically, even those with persistent infection.

Epidemiology & Control

Outbreaks of human disease can occur whenever there is close and continued contact between humans and infected birds that excrete or shed large amounts of infectious agent. Birds often acquire infection as fledglings in the nest, may develop diarrheal illness or no illness, and often carry the infectious agent for their normal life span. When subjected to stress (eg, malnutrition, shipping), birds may become sick and die. The agent is present in tissues (eg, spleen) and is often excreted in feces by healthy birds. The inhalation of infected dried bird feces is a common method of human infection. Another source of infection is the handling of infected tissues (eg, in poultry rendering plants) and inhalation of an infected aerosol.

Birds kept as pets have been an important source of human infection. Foremost among these were the many imported psittacine birds. Latent infections often flared up in these birds during transport and crowding, and sick birds excreted exceedingly large quantities of infectious agent. Control of bird shipment, quarantine, testing of imported birds for psittacosis infection, and prophylactic tetracyclines in bird feed have helped to control this source. Pigeons kept for racing or as pets or raised for squab meat have been important sources of infection. Pigeons populating buildings and thoroughfares in many cities, if infected, shed relatively small quantities of agent.

REFERENCES

Chlamydial diseases. Vol 2 Part III, Section C. In: *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R (editors). Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Mahony JB, Coombs BK, Chernesky MA: *Chlamydia* and *Chlamydophila*. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 8th ed. Murray PR et al (editors). ASM Press, 2003.

McGraw-Hill's ACCESSMedicine
Print CloseWindow

INTRODUCTION

Viruses are the smallest infectious agents (ranging from about 20 nm to about 300 nm in diameter) and contain only one kind of nucleic acid (RNA or DNA) as their genome. The nucleic acid is encased in a protein shell, which may be surrounded by a lipid-containing membrane. The entire infectious unit is termed a virion. Viruses are inert in the extracellular environment; they replicate only in living cells, being parasites at the genetic level. The viral nucleic acid contains information necessary for programming the infected host cell to synthesize virus-specific macromolecules required for the production of viral progeny. During the replicative cycle, numerous copies of viral nucleic acid and coat proteins are produced. The coat proteins assemble together to form the capsid, which encases and stabilizes the viral nucleic acid against the extracellular environment and facilitates the attachment and penetration by the virus upon contact with new susceptible cells. The virus infection may have little or no effect on the host cell or may result in cell damage or death.

The universe of viruses is rich in diversity. Viruses vary greatly in structure, genome organization and expression, and strategies of replication and transmission. The host range for a given virus may be broad or extremely limited. Viruses are known to infect unicellular organisms such as mycoplasmas, bacteria, and algae and all higher plants and animals. Details of the effects of viral infection on the host are considered in Chapter 30.

Much information on virus-host relationships has been obtained from studies on bacteriophages, the viruses that attack bacteria. This subject is discussed in Chapter 7. Properties of individual viruses are discussed in Chapters 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, and 44.

TERMS & DEFINITIONS IN VIROLOGY

See Figure 291.

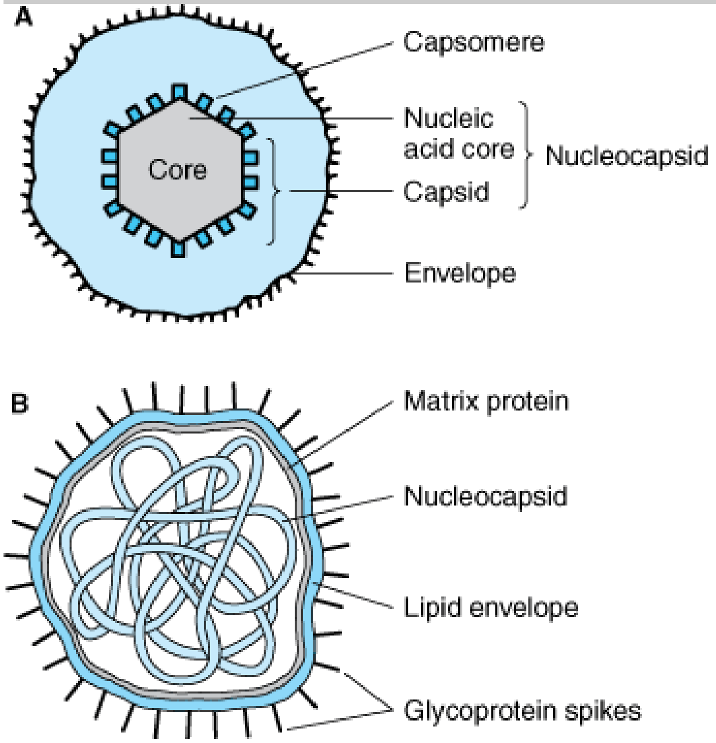
> **Capsid:** The protein shell, or coat, that encloses the nucleic acid genome.
>
> **Capsomeres:** Morphologic units seen in the electron microscope on the surface of icosahedral virus particles. Capsomeres represent clusters of polypeptides, but the morphologic units do not necessarily correspond to the chemically defined structural units.
>
> **Defective virus:** A virus particle that is functionally deficient in some aspect of replication.
>
> **Envelope:** A lipid-containing membrane that surrounds some virus particles. It is acquired during viral maturation by a budding process through a cellular membrane. Virus-encoded glycoproteins are exposed on the surface of the envelope. These projections are called **peplomers**.
>
> **Nucleocapsid:** The protein-nucleic acid complex representing the packaged form of the viral genome. The term is commonly used in cases where the nucleocapsid is a substructure of a more complex virus particle.

Structural units: The basic protein building blocks of the coat. They are usually a collection of more than one nonidentical protein subunit. The structural unit is often referred to as a protomer.

Subunit: A single folded viral polypeptide chain.

Virion: The complete virus particle. In some instances (eg, papillomaviruses, picornaviruses), the virion is identical with the nucleocapsid. In more complex virions (herpesviruses, orthomyxoviruses), this includes the nucleocapsid plus a surrounding envelope. This structure, the virion, serves to transfer the viral nucleic acid from one cell to another.

Figure 291.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram illustrating the components of the complete virus particle (the virion). A: Enveloped virus with icosahedral symmetry. B: Virus with helical symmetry.

EVOLUTIONARY ORIGIN OF VIRUSES

The origin of viruses is not known. There are profound differences among the DNA viruses, the RNA viruses, and viruses that utilize both DNA and RNA as their genetic material during different stages of their life cycle. It is possible that different types of agents are of different origins. Two theories of viral origin can be summarized as follows:

(1) Viruses may be derived from DNA or RNA nucleic acid components of host cells that became able to replicate autonomously and evolve independently. They resemble genes that have acquired the capacity to exist independently of the cell. Some viral sequences are related to portions of cellular genes encoding protein functional

domains. It seems likely that at least some viruses evolved in this fashion.

(2) Viruses may be degenerate forms of intracellular parasites. There is no evidence that viruses evolved from bacteria, though other obligately intracellular organisms, eg, rickettsiae and chlamydiae, presumably did so. However, poxviruses are so large and complex that they might represent evolutionary products of some cellular ancestor.

CLASSIFICATION OF VIRUSES

Basis of Classification

The following properties have been used as a basis for the classification of viruses. The amount of information available in each category is not the same for all viruses. The way in which viruses are characterized is changing rapidly. Genome sequencing is now often performed early in virus identification, and comparisons with databases obviate the need to obtain more classic data (virion buoyant density, etc). Genomic sequence data are advancing taxonomic criteria (eg, gene order) and may provide the basis for the identification of new virus families.

(1) Virion morphology, including size, shape, type of symmetry, presence or absence of peplomers, and presence or absence of membranes.

(2) Virus genome properties, including type of nucleic acid (DNA or RNA), size of genome in kilobases (kb) or kilobase pairs (kbp), strandedness (single or double), whether linear or circular, sense (positive, negative, ambisense), segments (number, size), nucleotide sequence, G + C content, and presence of special features [repetitive elements, isomerization, 5'-terminal cap, 5'-terminal covalently linked protein, 3'-terminal poly(A) tract].

(3) Physicochemical properties of the virion, including molecular mass, buoyant density, pH stability, thermal stability, and susceptibility to physical and chemical agents, especially ether and detergents.

(4) Virus protein properties, including number, size, and functional activities of structural and nonstructural proteins, amino acid sequence, modifications (glycosylation, phosphorylation, myristylation), and special functional activities (transcriptase, reverse transcriptase, neuraminidase, fusion activities).

(5) Genome organization and replication, including gene order, number and position of open reading frames, strategy of replication (patterns of transcription, translation), and cellular sites (accumulation of proteins, virion assembly, virion release).

(6) Antigenic properties.

(7) Biologic properties, including natural host range, mode of transmission, vector relationships, pathogenicity, tissue tropisms, and pathology.

Universal System of Virus Taxonomy

A system has been established in which viruses are separated into major groupingscalled familieson the basis of virion morphology, genome structure, and strategies of replication. Virus family names have the suffix -viridae. Table 291 sets forth a convenient scheme used for classification. Diagrams of animal virus families are shown in a later figure (see Figure 294).

Table 291. Families of Animal Viruses that Contain Members Able to Infect Humans.

DNA
Icosahedral

Naked
Resistant
32
1826
5.6
ss
Parvoviridae
72
45
5
ds circular
Polyomaviridae
72
55
8
ds circular
Papillomaviridae
252
7090
2645
ds
Adenoviridae
Enveloped
Sensitive
180
4048
3.2
ds circular[3]

Hepadnaviridae
162
150200
125240
ds
Herpesviridae
Complex
Complex coats
Resistant[4]

230 x 400
130375
ds
Poxviridae
RNA
Icosahedral
Naked
Resistant
32
2830

7.28.4
ss
Picornaviridae

2830
6.47.4
ss
Astroviridae
32
2740
7.48.3
ss
Caliciviridae

6080
1627
ds segmented
Reoviridae
Enveloped
Sensitive
42
5070
9.711.8
ss
Togaviridae
Unknown or complex
Enveloped
Sensitive
4060
9.512.5
ss
Flaviviridae

50300
1014
ss segmented
Arenaviridae

120160
2732
ss
Coronaviridae

80110
711[5]

ss diploid
Retroviridae
Helical

Enveloped
Sensitive
80120
1013.6
ss segmented
Orthomyxoviridae

80120
1121
ss segmented
Bunyaviridae

80125
8.510.5
ss
Bornaviridae

75 x 180
1316
ss
Rhabdoviridae

150300
1620
ss
Paramyxoviridae

80 x 1000[6]

19.1
ss
Filoviridae

Nucleic Acid Core	Capsid Symmetry	Virion: Enveloped or Naked	Ether Sensitivity	Number of Capsomeres	Virus Particle Size (nm)[1]	Size of Nucleic Acid in Virion (kb/kbp)	Physical Type of Nucleic Acid[2]	Virus Family

[1] Diameter, or diameter x length.

[2] ss = single-stranded; ds = double-stranded.

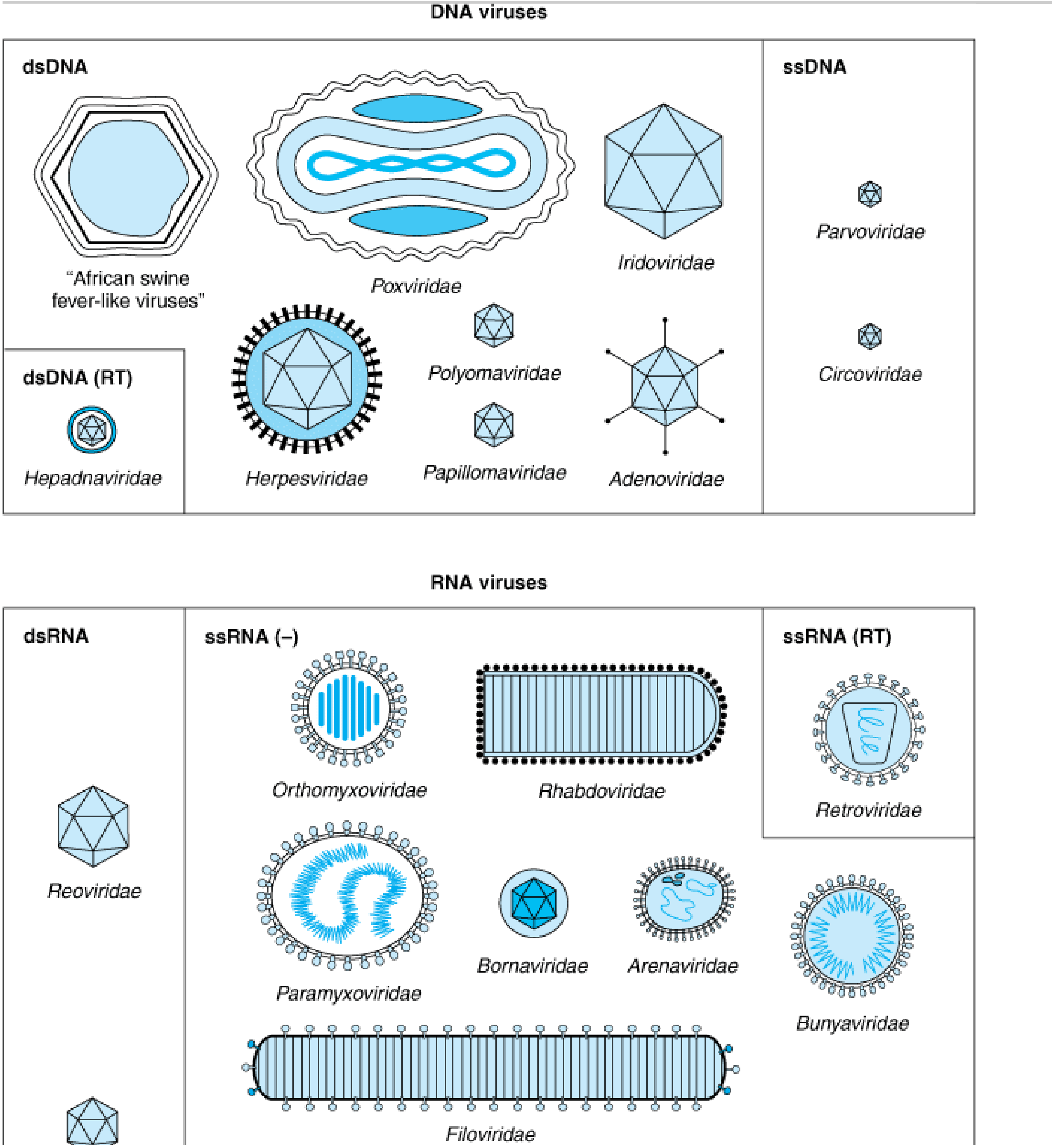
[3] The negative-sense strand has a constant length of 3.2 kb; the other varies in length, leaving a large single-stranded gap.

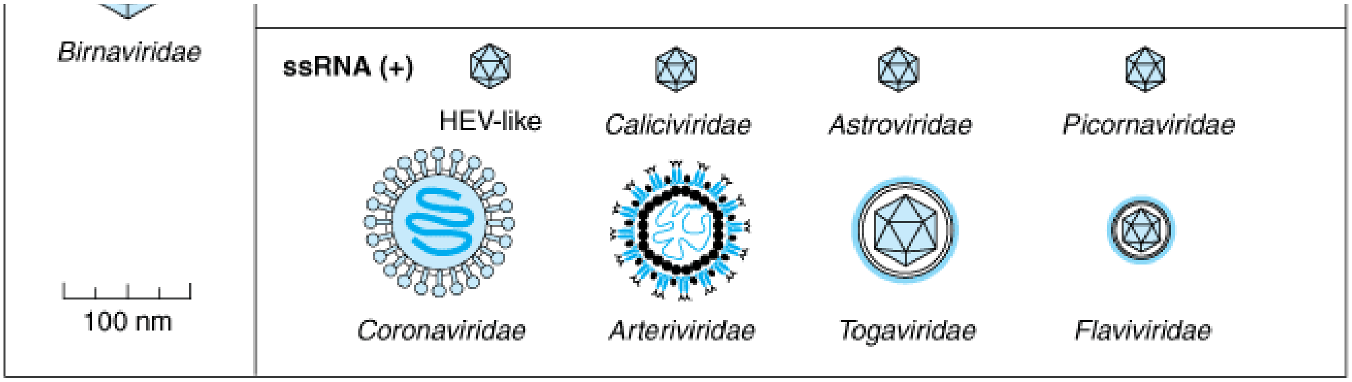
[4] The genus *Orthopoxvirus,* which includes the better-studied poxviruses (eg, vaccinia), is ether-resistant; some of the poxviruses belonging to other genera are ether-sensitive.

[5] Size of monomer.

[6] Filamentous forms vary greatly in length.

Figure 294.





Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Shapes and relative sizes of animal viruses of families that infect vertebrates. In some diagrams, certain internal structures of the particles are represented. Only those families that include human pathogens are listed in Table 291 and described in the text.

(Reproduced, with permission, from van Regenmortel MHV et al [editors]: Virus taxonomy: Classification and nomenclature of viruses. Seventh report of the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses. Academic Press, 2000.)

Within each family, subdivisions called genera are usually based on physicochemical or serologic differences. Criteria used to define genera vary from family to family. Genus names carry the suffix *-virus.* In four families (Poxviridae, Herpesviridae, Parvoviridae, Paramyxoviridae), a larger grouping called subfamilies has been defined, reflecting the complexity of relationships among member viruses. Virus orders may be used to group virus families that share common characteristics. Only one order has currently been defined: Mononegavirales, encompassing the Filoviridae, Paramyxoviridae, and Rhabdoviridae families.

By 2000, the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses had organized more than 4000 animal and plant viruses into 56 families, 9 subfamilies, and 233 genera, with hundreds of viruses still unassigned. Currently, 24 families contain viruses that infect humans and animals.

Properties of the major families of animal viruses that contain members important in human disease are summarized in Table 291. They are discussed briefly below, in the order shown in Table 291, and are considered in greater detail in the chapters that follow.

Survey of DNA-Containing Viruses

PARVOVIRUSES

Parvoviruses are very small viruses with a particle size of about 1826 nm. The particles have cubic symmetry, with 32 capsomeres, but they have no envelope. The genome is linear, single-stranded DNA, 5.6 kb in size. Replication occurs only in actively dividing cells; capsid assembly takes place in the nucleus of the infected cell. Many parvoviruses replicate autonomously, but the adeno-associated satellite viruses are defective, requiring the presence of an adenovirus or herpesvirus as "helper." Human parvovirus B19 replicates in immature erythroid cells and causes several adverse consequences, including aplastic crisis, fifth disease, and fetal death. (See Chapter 31.)

POLYOMAVIRUSES

Small (45 nm), nonenveloped, heat-stable, ether-resistant viruses exhibiting cubic symmetry, with 72 capsomeres. The genome is circular, double-stranded DNA, 5 kbp in size. These agents have a slow growth cycle, stimulate cell

DNA synthesis, and replicate within the nucleus. Known human polyomaviruses are JC virus, the causative agent of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, and BK virus, associated with nephropathy in transplant recipients. SV40 also infects humans and has been recovered from human tumors. Most animal species harbor one or more polyomaviruses. They produce chronic infections in their natural hosts, and all can induce tumors in some animal species. Polyomaviruses were formerly a part of the Papovaviridae family before it was split into two families. (See Chapter 43.)

PAPILLOMAVIRUSES

Also a former member of the Papovaviridae family. Similar to polyomaviruses in some respects, but with a larger genome (8 kbp) and particle size (55 nm). There are many genotypes of human papillomaviruses, also known as "wart" viruses; certain types are causative agents of genital cancers in humans. Papillomaviruses are very host- and tissue-specific. Many animal species carry papillomaviruses. (See Chapter 43.)

ADENOVIRUSES

Medium-sized (7090 nm), nonenveloped viruses exhibiting cubic symmetry, with 252 capsomeres. Fibers protrude from the vertex capsomeres. The genome is linear, double-stranded DNA, 2645 kbp in size. Replication occurs in the nucleus. Complex splicing patterns produce mRNAs. At least 51 types infect humans, especially in mucous membranes, and some types can persist in lymphoid tissue. Some adenoviruses cause acute respiratory diseases, conjunctivitis, and gastroenteritis. Some human adenoviruses can induce tumors in newborn hamsters. There are many serotypes that infect animals. (See Chapters 32 and 43.)

HEPADNAVIRUSES

Small (4048 nm) viruses containing circular double-stranded DNA molecules that are 3.2 kbp in size. The viral DNA in the particles contains a large single-stranded gap. The virion carries a DNA polymerase able to make fully double-stranded molecules. Replication involves repair of the single-stranded gap in the DNA, transcription of RNA, and reverse transcription of the RNA to make genomic DNA. The virus consists of a 27-nm icosahedral nucleocapsid core within a closely adherent envelope that contains lipid and the viral surface antigen. The surface protein is characteristically overproduced during replication of the virus, which takes place in the liver, and is shed into the bloodstream. Hepadnaviruses cause acute and chronic hepatitis; persistent infections are associated with a high risk of developing liver cancer. Three viral types are known that infect mammals (humans, woodchucks, and ground squirrels) and another that infects ducks. (See Chapter 35.)

HERPESVIRUSES

A large family of viruses 150200 nm in diameter. The nucleocapsid is 100 nm in diameter, with cubic symmetry and 162 capsomeres, surrounded by a lipid-containing envelope. The genome is linear, double-stranded DNA, 125240 kbp in size. The presence of terminal and internal reiterated sequences results in several isomeric forms of genomic DNA. Virions contain over 30 proteins. Latent infections may last for the life span of the host, usually in ganglial or lymphoblastoid cells. Human herpesviruses include herpes simplex types 1 and 2 (oral and genital lesions), varicella-zoster virus (chickenpox and shingles), cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis and association with human neoplasms), human herpesviruses 6 and 7 (T lymphotropic), and human herpesvirus 8 (associated with Kaposi's sarcoma). Other herpesviruses occur in many animals. (See Chapters 33 and 43.)

POXVIRUSES

Large brick-shaped or ovoid viruses 220450 nm long x 140260 nm wide x 140260 nm thick. Particle structure is complex, with a lipid-containing envelope. The genome is linear, covalently closed, double-stranded DNA, 130375 kbp in size. Poxvirus particles contain about 100 proteins, including many with enzymatic activities, such as a DNA-dependent RNA polymerase. Replication occurs entirely within the cell cytoplasm. All poxviruses tend to produce skin lesions. Some are pathogenic for humans (smallpox, vaccinia, molluscum contagiosum); others that are pathogenic for animals can infect humans (cowpox, monkeypox). (See Chapter 34.)

Survey of RNA-Containing Viruses

PICORNAVIRUSES

Small (2830 nm), ether-resistant viruses exhibiting cubic symmetry. The RNA genome is single-stranded and positive-sense (ie, it can serve as an mRNA), and is 7.28.4 kb in size. The groups infecting humans are enteroviruses (polio-, coxsackie-, and echoviruses and unclassified viruses), rhinoviruses (more than 100 serotypes causing common colds), and hepatovirus (hepatitis A). Rhinoviruses are acid-labile and have a high density; enteroviruses are acid-stable and have a lower density. Picornaviruses infecting animals include foot-and-mouth disease of cattle and encephalomyocarditis of rodents. (See Chapter 36.)

ASTROVIRUSES

Similar in size to picornaviruses (2830 nm), but particles display a distinctive star-shaped outline on their surface. The genome is linear, positive-sense, single-stranded RNA, 6.47.4 kb in size. These agents may be associated with gastroenteritis in humans and animals. (See Chapter 37.)

CALICIVIRUSES

Similar to picornaviruses but slightly larger (2740 nm). Particles appear to have cup-shaped depressions on the surface. The genome is single-stranded, positive-sense RNA, 7.48.3 kb in size; the virion has no envelope. An important human pathogen is Norwalk virus, the cause of epidemic acute gastroenteritis. Other agents infect cats and sea lions as well as primates. (See Chapter 37.)

REOVIRUSES

Medium-sized (6080 nm), ether-resistant, nonenveloped viruses having icosahedral symmetry. Particles have two or three protein shells with channels extending from the surface to the core; short spikes extend from the virion surface. The genome is linear, double-stranded, segmented RNA (1012 segments), totaling 1627 kbp in size. Individual RNA segments range in size from 680 to 3900 bp. Replication occurs in the cytoplasm; genome segment reassortment occurs readily. Reoviruses of humans include rotaviruses, which have a distinctive wheel-shaped appearance and cause gastroenteritis. Antigenically similar reoviruses infect many animals. The genus *Coltivirus* includes Colorado tick fever virus of humans. (See Chapter 37.)

ARBOVIRUSES

An ecologic grouping (not a virus family) of viruses with diverse physical and chemical properties. All of these viruses (there are over 350 of them) have a complex cycle involving arthropods as vectors that transmit the viruses to vertebrate hosts by their bite. Viral replication does not seem to harm the infected arthropod. Arboviruses infect humans, mammals, birds, and snakes and use mosquitoes and ticks as vectors. Human pathogens include dengue, yellow fever, encephalitis viruses, and others. Arboviruses belong to several virus families, including togavirus, flavivirus, bunyavirus, rhabdovirus, arenavirus, and reovirus. (See Chapter 38.)

TOGAVIRUSES

Many arboviruses that are major human pathogens, called alphavirusesas well as rubella virusbelong in this group. They have a lipid-containing envelope and are ether-sensitive, and their genome is single-stranded, positive-sense RNA, 9.711.8 kb in size. The enveloped virion measures 70 nm. The virus particles mature by budding from host cell membranes. An example is eastern equine encephalitis virus. Rubella virus has no arthropod vector. (See Chapters 38 and 40.)

FLAVIVIRUSES

Enveloped viruses, 4060 nm in diameter, containing single-stranded, positive-sense RNA. Genome sizes vary from 9.5 kb (hepatitis C) to 11 kb (flaviviruses) to 12.5 kb (pestiviruses). Mature virions accumulate within cisternae of the endoplasmic reticulum. This group of arboviruses includes yellow fever virus and dengue viruses. Most members are transmitted by blood-sucking arthropods. Hepatitis C virus has no known vector. (See Chapters 35 and 38.)

ARENAVIRUSES

Pleomorphic, enveloped viruses ranging in size from 50 to 300 nm (mean, 110130 nm). The genome is segmented, circular, single-stranded RNA that is negative-sense and ambisense, 1014 kb in total size. Replication occurs in the cytoplasm with assembly via budding on the plasma membrane. The virions incorporate host cell ribosomes during maturation, which gives the particles a "sandy" appearance. Most members of this family are unique to tropical America (ie, the Tacaribe complex). All arenaviruses pathogenic for humans cause chronic infections in rodents. Lassa fever virus of Africa is one example. These viruses require maximum containment conditions in the laboratory. (See Chapter 38.)

CORONAVIRUSES

Enveloped 120- to 160-nm particles containing an unsegmented genome of positive-sense, single-stranded RNA, 2732 kb in size; the nucleocapsid is helical, 911 nm in diameter. Coronaviruses resemble orthomyxoviruses but have petal-shaped surface projections arranged in a fringe, like a solar corona. Coronavirus nucleocapsids develop in the cytoplasm and mature by budding into cytoplasmic vesicles. These viruses have narrow host ranges. Most human coronaviruses cause mild acute upper respiratory tract illnesses"colds"but a new coronavirus identified in 2003 causes a severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). Toroviruses, which cause gastroenteritis, form a distinct genus. Coronaviruses of animals readily establish persistent infections and include mouse hepatitis virus and avian infectious bronchitis virus. (See Chapter 41.)

RETROVIRUSES

Spherical, enveloped viruses (80110 nm in diameter) whose genome contains two copies of linear, positive-sense, single-stranded RNA of the same polarity as viral mRNA. Each monomer RNA is 711 kb in size. Particles contain a helical nucleocapsid within an icosahedral capsid. Replication is unique; the virion contains a reverse transcriptase enzyme that produces a DNA copy of the RNA genome. This DNA becomes circularized and integrated into host chromosomal DNA. The virus is then replicated from the integrated "provirus" DNA copy. Virion assembly occurs by budding on plasma membranes. Hosts remain chronically infected. Retroviruses are widely distributed; there are also endogenous proviruses resulting from ancient infections of germ cells transmitted as inherited genes in most species. Leukemia and sarcoma viruses of animals and humans (see Chapter 43), foamy viruses of primates, and lentiviruses (human immunodeficiency viruses; visna of sheep) (see Chapters 42 and 44) are included in this group. Retroviruses cause acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (see Chapter 44) and made possible the identification of cellular oncogenes (see Chapter 43).

ORTHOMYXOVIRUSES

Medium-sized, 80- to 120-nm enveloped viruses exhibiting helical symmetry. Particles are either round or filamentous, with surface projections that contain hemagglutinin or neuraminidase activity. The genome is linear, segmented, negative-sense, single-stranded RNA, totaling 1013.6 kb in size. Segments range from 900 to 2350 nucleotides each. The internal nucleoprotein helix measures 915 nm. During replication, the nucleocapsid is assembled in the nucleus, whereas the hemagglutinin and neuraminidase accumulate in the cytoplasm. The virus matures by budding at the cell membrane. All orthomyxoviruses are influenza viruses that infect humans or animals. The segmented nature of the viral genome permits ready genetic reassortment when two influenza viruses infect the same cell, presumably fostering the high rate of natural variation among influenza viruses. Transmission from other species is thought to explain the emergence of new human pandemic strains of influenza A viruses. (See Chapter 39.)

BUNYAVIRUSES

Spherical or pleomorphic, 80- to 120-nm enveloped particles. The genome is made up of a triple-segmented, circular, single-stranded, negative-sense or ambisense RNA, 1119 kb in overall size. Virion particles contain three circular, helically symmetric nucleocapsids about 2.5 nm in diameter and 2003000 nm in length. Replication occurs in the cytoplasm, and an envelope is acquired by budding into the Golgi. The majority of these viruses are transmitted to vertebrates by arthropods (arboviruses). Hantaviruses are transmitted not by arthropods but by persistently infected rodents, via aerosols of contaminated excreta. They cause hemorrhagic fevers and nephropathy as well as a severe pulmonary syndrome. (See Chapter 38.)

BORNAVIRUSES

Enveloped, spherical (80125 nm) viruses. The genome is linear, single-stranded, nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA, 8.510.5 kb in size. Unique among nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA viruses, replication and transcription of the viral genome occur in the nucleus. Borna disease virus is neurotropic in animals; postulated association with neuropsychiatric disorders of humans is unproved (see Chapter 42).

RHABDOVIRUSES

Enveloped virions resembling a bullet, flat at one end and round at the other, measuring about 75 x 180 nm. The envelope has 10-nm spikes. The genome is linear, single-stranded, nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA, 1316 kb in size. Particles are formed by budding from the cell membrane. Viruses have broad host ranges. Rabies virus is a member of this group. (See Chapter 42.)

PARAMYXOVIRUSES

Similar to but larger (150300 nm) than orthomyxoviruses. Particles are pleomorphic. The internal nucleocapsid measures 1318 nm, and the linear, single-stranded, nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA is 1620 kb in size. Both the nucleocapsid and the hemagglutinin are formed in the cytoplasm. Those infecting humans include mumps, measles, parainfluenza, and respiratory syncytial viruses. These viruses have narrow host ranges. In contrast to influenza viruses, paramyxoviruses are genetically stable. (See Chapter 40.)

FILOVIRUSES

Enveloped, pleomorphic viruses that may appear very long and thread-like. They typically are 80 nm wide and about 1000 nm long. The envelope contains large peplomers. The genome is linear, negative-sense, single-stranded RNA, 19 kb in size. Marburg and Ebola viruses cause severe hemorrhagic fever in Africa. These viruses require maximum containment conditions (Biosafety Level 4) for handling (see Chapter 38).

OTHER VIRUSES

Insufficient information to permit classification. This applies to hepatitis E virus (see Chapter 35) and to some viruses of gastroenteritis (see Chapter 37).

VIROIDS

Small infectious agents that cause diseases of plants. Viroids are agents that do not fit the definition of classic viruses. They are nucleic acid molecules (MW 70,000120,000) without a protein coat. Plant viroids are single-stranded, covalently closed circular RNA molecules consisting of about 360 nucleotides and with a highly base-paired rod-like structure. Viroids replicate by an entirely novel mechanism. Viroid RNA does not encode any protein products; the devastating plant diseases induced by viroids occur by an unknown mechanism. To date, viroids have been detected only in plants; none have been demonstrated to exist in animals or humans.

PRIONS

Infectious particles composed solely of protein with no detectable nucleic acid. Highly resistant to inactivation by heat, formaldehyde, and ultraviolet light that inactivate viruses. The prion protein is encoded by a single cellular gene. Prion diseases, called "transmissible spongiform encephalopathies," include scrapie in sheep, mad cow disease in cattle, and kuru and Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in humans. Prions do not appear to be viruses. (See Chapter 42.)

PRINCIPLES OF VIRUS STRUCTURE

Viruses come in many shapes and sizes. Structural information is necessary for virus classification and for establishing structure-function relationships of viral proteins. The particular structural features of each virus family are determined by the functions of the virion: morphogenesis and release from infected cells; transmission to new hosts; and attachment, penetration, and uncoating in newly infected cells. Knowledge of virus structure will further our understanding of the mechanisms of certain processes such as the interaction of virus particles with cell surface receptors and neutralizing antibodies. It may lead also to the rational design of antiviral drugs capable of blocking viral attachment, uncoating, or assembly in susceptible cells.

Types of Symmetry of Virus Particles

Electron microscopy, cryoelectron microscopy, and x-ray diffraction techniques have made it possible to resolve fine differences in the basic morphology of viruses. The study of viral symmetry by standard electron microscopy requires the use of heavy metal stains (eg, potassium phosphotungstate) to emphasize surface structure. The heavy metal permeates the virus particle like a cloud and brings out the surface structure of viruses by virtue of "negative staining." The typical level of resolution is 34 nm. (The size of a DNA double helix is 2 nm.) However, conventional methods of sample preparation often cause distortions and changes in particle morphology. Cryoelectron microscopy uses virus samples quick-frozen in vitreous ice; fine structural features are preserved, and the use of negative stains is avoided. Three-dimensional structural information can be obtained by the use of computer image processing procedures. Examples of image reconstructions of virus particles are shown in following chapters. (See Chapters 32 and 37.)

X-ray crystallography can provide atomic resolution information, generally at a level of 0.20.3 nm. The specimen must be crystalline, and this has only been achieved with small, nonenveloped viruses. However, it is possible to obtain high-resolution structural data on well-defined substructures prepared from the more complex viruses.

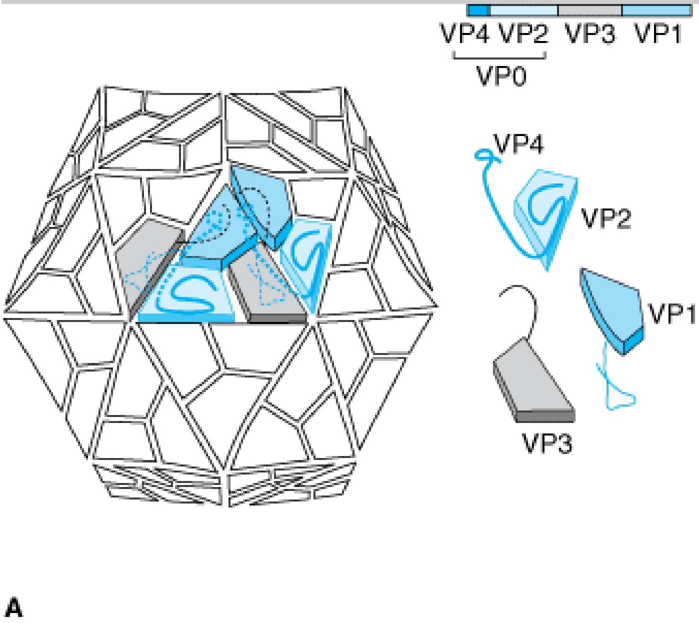
Genetic economy requires that a viral structure be made from many identical molecules of one or a few proteins. Viral architecture can be grouped into three types based on the arrangement of morphologic subunits: (1) cubic symmetry, eg, adenoviruses; (2) helical symmetry, eg, orthomyxoviruses; and (3) complex structures, eg, poxviruses.

CUBIC SYMMETRY

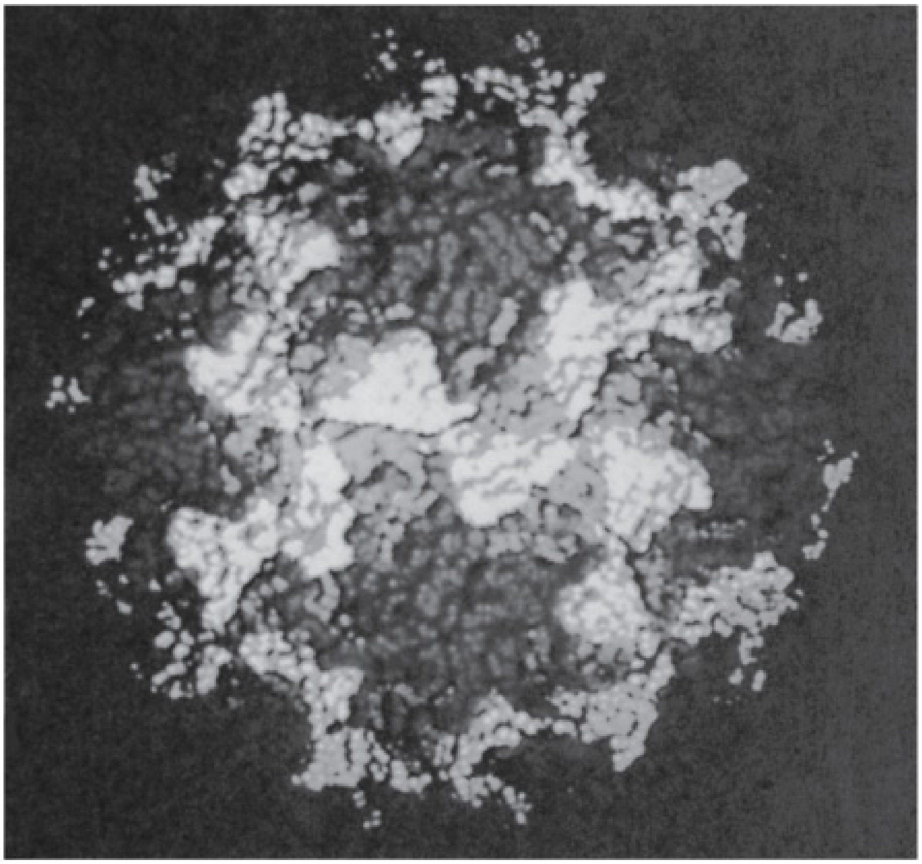
All cubic symmetry observed with animal viruses is of the icosahedral pattern, the most efficient arrangement for subunits in a closed shell. The icosahedron has 20 faces (each an equilateral triangle), 12 vertices, and fivefold, threefold, and twofold axes of rotational symmetry. The vertex units have five neighbors (pentavalent), and all others have six (hexavalent).

There are exactly 60 identical subunits on the surface of an icosahedron. In order to build a particle size adequate to encapsidate viral genomes, viral shells are composed of multiples of 60 structural units. The use of larger numbers of chemically identical protein subunits, while maintaining the rules of icosahedral symmetry, is accomplished by subtriangulation of each face of an icosahedron. An overview of the packing of subunits in picornaviruses is presented in Figure 292.

Figure 292.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: Overview of the packing of subunits in picornaviruses. The proteins are cleaved from a precursor, as shown. VP1VP3 are represented by wedge-shaped blocks (the viral capsid β-barrel domains) with amino and carboxyl terminal extensions. The amino terminal extensions interdigitate to form an internal framework. VP4 is, in effect, part of the amino terminal extension of VP0. In poliovirus and rhinovirus, the prominent GH of the VP1 loop lies across VP2 and VP3 as shown. An "exploded" view of one protomer is shown at the right. B: Surface view of poliovirus in the same orientation as in (A).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Harrison SC, Skehel JJ, Wiley DC: Virus structure. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Most viruses that have icosahedral symmetry do not have an icosahedral shaperather, the physical appearance of the particle is spherical.

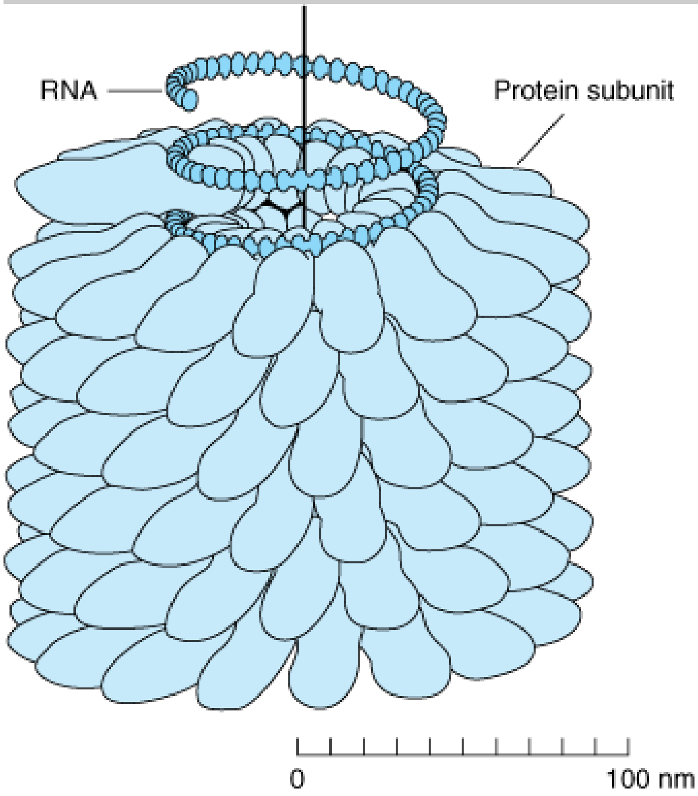
The viral nucleic acid is condensed within the isometric particles; virus-encoded core proteinsor, in the case of polyomaviruses and papillomaviruses, cellular histonesare involved in condensation of the nucleic acid into a form suitable for packaging. "Packaging sequences" on viral nucleic acid are involved in assembly into virus particles. There are size constraints on the nucleic acid molecules that can be packaged into a given icosahedral capsid. Icosahedral capsids are formed independently of nucleic acid. Most preparations of isometric viruses will contain some "empty" particles devoid of viral nucleic acid. Expression of capsid proteins from cloned genes often results in self-assembly and formation of empty "virus-like particles." Both DNA and RNA viral groups exhibit examples of cubic symmetry.

HELICAL SYMMETRY

In cases of helical symmetry, protein subunits are bound in a periodic way to the viral nucleic acid, winding it into a helix. The filamentous viral nucleic acid-protein complex (nucleocapsid) is then coiled inside a lipid-containing envelope. Thus, as is not the case with icosahedral structures, there is a regular, periodic interaction between capsid protein and nucleic acid in viruses with helical symmetry. It is not possible for "empty" helical particles to form.

An example of helical symmetry is shown in Figure 293. Tobacco mosaic virus, a plant virus, is a rigid rod. All known examples of animal viruses with helical symmetry contain RNA genomes and, with the exception of rhabdoviruses, have flexible nucleocapsids that are wound into a ball inside envelopes (Figures 291B and 294).

Figure 293.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic representation of tobacco mosaic virus. As can be seen in the cutaway section, the RNA helix is associated with protein molecules in the ratio of three nucleotides per protein molecule.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Mattern CFT: Structure. In: *Medical Microbiology.* Baron S [editor]. Addison-Wesley, 1986. Modified from Caspar DLD: Adv Protein Chem 1963;18:37.)

COMPLEX STRUCTURES

Some virus particles do not exhibit simple cubic or helical symmetry but are more complicated in structure. For example, poxviruses are brick-shaped, with ridges on the external surface and a core and lateral bodies inside (Figures 294 and 341).

Measuring the Sizes of Viruses

Small size and ability to pass through filters that hold back bacteria are classic attributes of viruses. However, because some bacteria may be smaller than the largest viruses, filterability is no longer regarded as a unique feature of viruses.

The following methods are used for determining the sizes of viruses and their components.

DIRECT OBSERVATION IN THE ELECTRON MICROSCOPE

As compared with the light microscope, the electron microscope uses electrons rather than light waves and electromagnetic lenses rather than glass lenses. The electron beam obtained has a much shorter wavelength than that of light, so that objects much smaller than the wavelength of visible or ultraviolet light can be visualized. Viruses can be visualized in preparations from tissue extracts and in ultrathin sections of infected cells. Electron microscopy is the most widely used method for estimating particle size.

SEDIMENTATION IN THE ULTRACENTRIFUGE

If particles are suspended in a liquid, they will settle to the bottom at a rate that is proportionate to their size. In an ultracentrifuge, forces of more than 100,000 times gravity may be used to drive the particles to the bottom of the tube. The relationship between the size and shape of a particle and its rate of sedimentation permits determination of particle size. Once again, the physical structure of the virus will affect the size estimate obtained.

COMPARATIVE MEASUREMENTS

See Table 291. For purposes of reference, the following data should be recalled: (1) *Staphylococcus* has a diameter of about 1000 nm. (2) Bacterial viruses (bacteriophages) vary in size (10100 nm). Some are spherical or hexagonal and have short or long tails. (3) Representative protein molecules range in diameter from serum albumin (5 nm) and globulin (7 nm) to certain hemocyanins (23 nm).

The relative sizes and morphology of various virus families are shown in Figure 294. Particles with a twofold difference in diameter have an eightfold difference in volume. Thus, the mass of a poxvirus is about 1000 times greater than that of the poliovirus particle, and the mass of a small bacterium is 50,000 times greater.

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF VIRUSES

Viral Protein

The structural proteins of viruses have several important functions. Their major purpose is to facilitate transfer of the viral nucleic acid from one host cell to another. They serve to protect the viral genome against inactivation by nucleases, participate in the attachment of the virus particle to a susceptible cell, and provide the structural symmetry of the virus particle.

The proteins determine the antigenic characteristics of the virus. The host's protective immune response is directed against antigenic determinants of proteins or glycoproteins exposed on the surface of the virus particle. Some surface proteins may also exhibit specific activities, eg, influenza virus hemagglutinin agglutinates red blood cells.

Some viruses carry enzymes (which are proteins) inside the virions. The enzymes are present in very small amounts and are probably not important in the structure of the virus particles; however, they are essential for the initiation of the viral replicative cycle when the virion enters a host cell. Examples include an RNA polymerase carried by viruses with negative-sense RNA genomes (eg, orthomyxoviruses, rhabdoviruses) that is needed to copy the first mRNAs, and reverse transcriptase, an enzyme in retroviruses that makes a DNA copy of the viral RNA, an essential step in replication and transformation. At the extreme in this respect are the poxviruses, the cores of which contain a transcriptional system; many different enzymes are packaged in poxvirus particles.

Viral Nucleic Acid

Viruses contain a single kind of nucleic acideither DNA or RNAthat encodes the genetic information necessary for replication of the virus. The genome may be single-stranded or double-stranded, circular or linear, and segmented or nonsegmented. The type of nucleic acid, its strandedness, and its size are major characteristics used for classifying viruses into families (Table 291).

The size of the viral DNA genome ranges from 3.2 kbp (hepadnaviruses) to 375 kbp (poxviruses). The size of the viral RNA genome ranges from about 7 kb (some picornaviruses and astroviruses) to 30 kb (coronaviruses).

All major DNA viral groups in Table 291 have genomes that are single molecules of DNA and have a linear or circular configuration.

Viral RNAs exist in several forms. The RNA may be a single linear molecule (eg, picornaviruses). For other viruses (eg, orthomyxoviruses), the genome consists of several segments of RNA that may be loosely associated within the virion. The isolated RNA of viruses with positive-sense genomes (ie, picornaviruses, togaviruses) is infectious, and the molecule functions as an mRNA within the infected cell. The isolated RNA of the negative-sense RNA viruses, such as rhabdoviruses and orthomyxoviruses, is not infectious. For these viral families, the virions carry an RNA polymerase that in the cell transcribes the genomic RNA molecules into several complementary RNA molecules, each of which may serve as an mRNA.

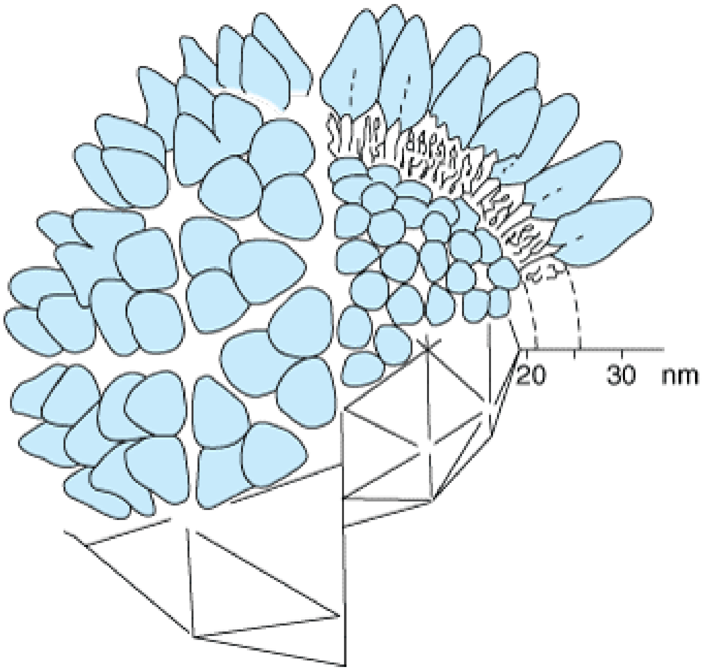
The sequence and composition of nucleotides of each viral nucleic acid are distinctive. Many viral genomes have been sequenced. The sequences can reveal genetic relationships among isolates, including unexpected relationships between viruses not thought to be closely related. The number of genes in a virus can be estimated from the open reading frames deduced from the nucleic acid sequence.

Viral nucleic acid may be characterized by its G + C content. DNA viral genomes can be analyzed and compared using restriction endonucleases, enzymes that cleave DNA at specific nucleotide sequences. Each genome will yield a characteristic pattern of DNA fragments after cleavage with a particular enzyme. Using molecularly cloned DNA copies of RNA, restriction maps also can be derived for RNA viral genomes. Polymerase chain reaction assays and molecular hybridization techniques (DNA to DNA, DNA to RNA, or RNA to RNA) permit the study of transcription of the viral genome within the infected cell as well as comparison of the relatedness of different viruses.

Viral Lipid Envelopes

A number of different viruses contain lipid envelopes as part of their structure (eg, Sindbis virus; Figure 295). The lipid is acquired when the viral nucleocapsid buds through a cellular membrane in the course of maturation. Budding occurs only at sites where virus-specific proteins have been inserted into the host cell membrane. The budding process varies markedly depending on the replication strategy of the virus and the structure of the nucleocapsid. Two different mechanisms are compared in Figure 296.

Figure 295.

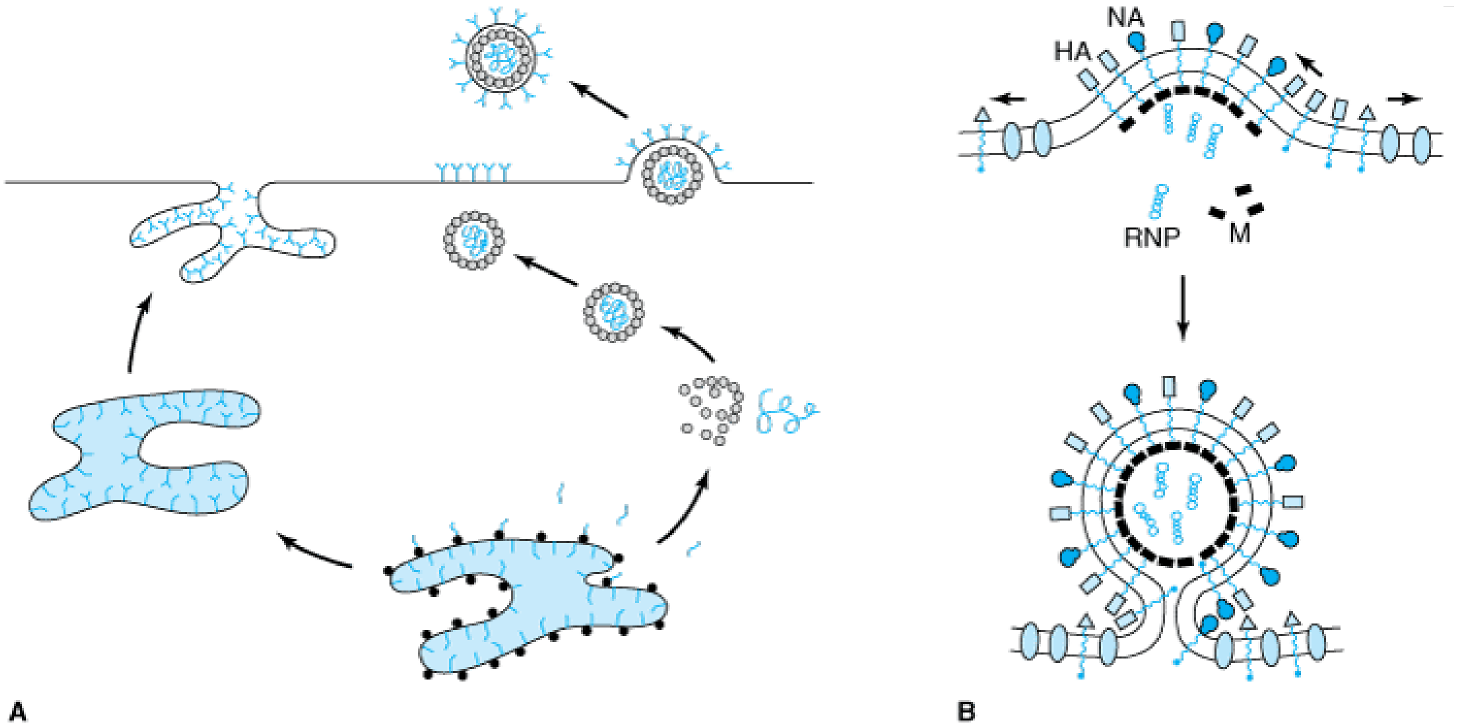


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Sindbis virus particle. Icosahedral nucleocapsid surrounded by a lipid bilayer containing heterodimer spikes (pear shaped) arranged as trimers on the virus surface in an icosahedral lattice.

(Courtesy of S Harrison; reproduced from Schlesinger S, Schlesinger MJ: Togaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology*, 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Figure 296.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Two different mechanisms of budding of enveloped viruses. A: Sindbis virus biosynthesis and assembly. The viral structural proteins are synthesized as a polyprotein from a single message. The core protein is cleaved from the precursor at an early stage, and polysomes then associate with membranes to complete synthesis of the glycoproteins, which are exported to the cell surface. Core protein and RNA assemble to form nucleocapsids, which associate with glycoprotein patches and initiate budding. B: Influenza virus budding. Nucleocapsid protein (NP), matrix protein (M), and glycoproteins (HA, NA) are synthesized from independent messages. Glycoproteins arrive at the cell surface, and budding is a coassembly at the cell surface of the glycoproteins with M and with RNP segments, the latter composed of viral RNA, NP protein, and the polymerase proteins. Host cell proteins are excluded (arrows).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Harrison SC, Skehel JJ, Wiley DC: Virus structure. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

The specific phospholipid composition of a virion envelope is determined by the specific type of cell membrane involved in the budding process. For example, herpesviruses bud through the nuclear membrane of the host cell, and the phospholipid composition of the purified virus reflects the lipids of the nuclear membrane. The acquisition of a lipid-containing membrane is an integral step in virion morphogenesis in some viral groups (see Replication of Viruses, below).

There are always viral glycosylated proteins protruding from the envelope and exposed on the external surface of the virus particle. There are unglycosylated proteins of viral origin underneath the envelope that anchor the particle together.

Lipid-containing viruses are sensitive to treatment with ether and other organic solvents (Table 291), indicating that disruption or loss of lipid results in loss of infectivity. Non-lipid-containing viruses are generally resistant to ether.

Viral Glycoproteins

Viral envelopes contain glycoproteins. In contrast to the lipids in viral membranes, which are derived from the host cell, the envelope glycoproteins are virus-encoded. However, the sugars added to viral glycoproteins often reflect the host cell in which the virus is grown.

It is the surface glycoproteins of an enveloped virus that attach the virus particle to a target cell by interacting with a cellular receptor. They are also often involved in the membrane fusion step of infection. The glycoproteins are also important viral antigens. As a result of their position at the outer surface of the virion, they are frequently involved in the interaction of the virus particle with neutralizing antibody. Extensive glycosylation of viral surface proteins may prevent effective neutralization of a virus particle by specific antibody. The three-dimensional structures of the externally exposed regions of both of the influenza virus membrane glycoproteins (hemagglutinin, neuraminidase) have been determined by x-ray crystallography (see Figure 392). Such studies provide insights into the antigenic structure and functional activities of viral glycoproteins.

CULTIVATION & ASSAY OF VIRUSES

Cultivation of Viruses

Many viruses can be grown in cell cultures or in fertile eggs under strictly controlled conditions. Growth of virus in animals is still used for the primary isolation of certain viruses and for studies of the pathogenesis of viral diseases and of viral oncogenesis. Diagnostic laboratories attempt to recover viruses from clinical samples to establish disease causes (see Chapter 47). Research laboratories cultivate viruses as the basis for detailed analyses of viral expression and replication.

The availability of cells grown in vitro has facilitated the identification and cultivation of newly isolated viruses and the characterization of previously known ones. There are three basic types of cell cultures. Primary cultures are made by dispersing cells (usually with trypsin) from freshly removed host tissues. In general, they are unable to grow for more than a few passages in culture. Diploid cell lines are secondary cultures which have undergone a change that allows their limited culture (up to 50 passages) but which retain their normal chromosome pattern. Continuous cell lines are cultures capable of more prolongedperhaps indefinitegrowth that have been derived from diploid cell lines or from malignant tissues. They invariably have altered and irregular numbers of chromosomes. The type of cell culture used for viral cultivation depends on the sensitivity of the cells to a particular virus.

DETECTION OF VIRUS-INFECTED CELLS

Multiplication of a virus can be monitored in a variety of ways:

1. Development of cytopathic effects, ie, morphologic changes in the cells. Types of virus-induced cytopathic effects include cell lysis or necrosis, inclusion formation, giant cell formation, and cytoplasmic vacuolization (Figure 297A, B, and C). Most viruses produce some obvious cytopathic effect in infected cells that is generally characteristic of the viral group.

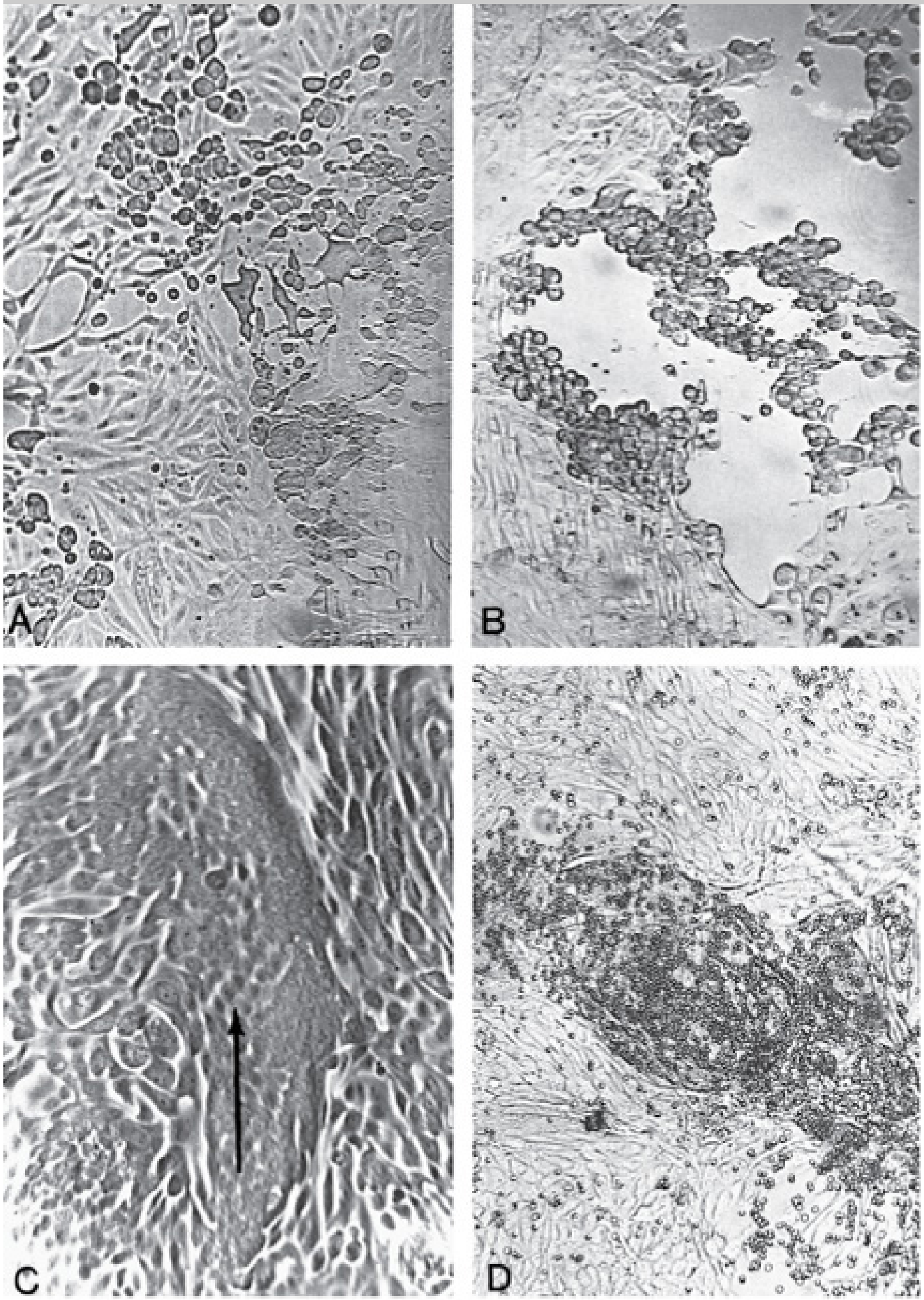
2. Appearance of a virus-encoded protein, such as the hemagglutinin of influenza virus. Specific antisera can be used to detect the synthesis of viral proteins in infected cells.

3. Adsorption of erythrocytes to infected cells, called hemadsorption, due to the presence of virus-encoded hemagglutinin (parainfluenza, influenza) in cellular membranes. This reaction becomes positive before cytopathic changes are visible and in some cases occurs in the absence of cytopathic effects (Figure 297D).

4. Detection of virus-specific nucleic acid. Molecular-based assays such as polymerase chain reaction provide rapid, sensitive, and specific methods of detection.

5. Viral growth in an embryonated chick egg may result in death of the embryo (eg, encephalitis viruses), production of pocks or plaques on the chorioallantoic membrane (eg, herpes, smallpox, vaccinia), or development of hemagglutinins in the embryonic fluids or tissues (eg, influenza).

Figure 297.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Cytopathic effects produced in monolayers of cultured cells by different viruses. The cultures are shown as they would normally be viewed in the laboratory, unfixed and unstained (60 x). A: Enterovirusrapid rounding of cells progressing to complete cell destruction. B: Herpesvirusfocal areas of swollen rounded cells. C: Paramyxovirusfocal areas of fused cells (syncytia). D: Hemadsorption. Erythrocytes adhere to those cells in the monolayer that are infected by a virus that causes a hemagglutinin to be incorporated into the plasma membrane. Many enveloped viruses that mature by budding from cytoplasmic membranes produce hemadsorption.

(Courtesy of I Jack; reproduced from White DO, Fenner FJ: *Medical Virology,* 3rd ed. Academic Press, 1986.)

INCLUSION BODY FORMATION

In the course of viral multiplication within cells, virus-specific structures called inclusion bodies may be produced. They become far larger than the individual virus particle and often have an affinity for acid dyes (eg, eosin). They may be situated in the nucleus (herpesvirus; see Figure 333), in the cytoplasm (poxvirus), or in both (measles virus; see Figure 405). In many viral infections, the inclusion bodies are the site of development of the virions (the viral factories). Variations in the appearance of inclusion material depend largely upon the tissue fixative used.

The presence of inclusion bodies may be of considerable diagnostic aid. The intracytoplasmic inclusion in nerve cellsthe Negri bodyis pathognomonic for rabies.

Quantitation of Viruses

PHYSICAL METHODS

Quantitative nucleic acid-based assays such as the polymerase chain reaction can determine the number of viral genome copies in a sample. Both infectious and noninfectious genomes are detected. Virus sequence variation may reduce virus detection and quantitation by this method.

A variety of serologic tests such as radioimmunoassays (RIA) and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA; see Chapter 47) can be standardized to quantitate the amount of virus in a sample. These tests do not distinguish infectious from noninfectious particles and sometimes detect viral proteins not assembled into particles.

Certain viruses contain a protein (hemagglutinin) that has the ability to agglutinate red blood cells of humans or some animal. Hemagglutination assays are an easy and rapid method of quantitating these types of viruses (see Chapter 47). Both infective and noninfective particles give this reaction; thus, hemagglutination measures the total quantity of virus present.

Virus particles can be counted directly in the electron microscope by comparison with a standard suspension of latex particles of similar small size. However, a relatively concentrated preparation of virus is necessary for this procedure, and infectious virus particles cannot be distinguished from noninfectious ones.

BIOLOGIC METHODS

End point biologic assays depend on the measurement of animal death, animal infection, or cytopathic effects in tissue culture at a series of dilutions of the virus being tested. The titer is expressed as the 50% infectious dose (ID_{50}), which is the reciprocal of the dilution of virus that produces the effect in 50% of the cells or animals inoculated. Precise assays require the use of a large number of test subjects.

The most widely used assay for infectious virus is the plaque assay. Monolayers of host cells are inoculated with suitable dilutions of virus and after adsorption are overlaid with medium containing agar or carboxymethylcellulose to prevent virus spreading throughout the culture. After several days, the cells initially infected have produced virus that spreads only to surrounding cells. Multiple cycles of replication and cell killing produce a small area of infection, or plaque. The length of time from infection to when plaques can be visualized for counting depends on the replication cycle of the virus and can range from a few days (eg, poliovirus) to 2 weeks or more (eg, SV40). Under controlled conditions, a single plaque can arise from a single infectious virus particle, termed a plaque-forming unit (PFU). The cytopathic effect of infected cells within the plaque can be distinguished from uninfected cells of the monolayer with or without suitable staining, and plaques can usually be counted macroscopically. The ratio of the number of infectious particles to the total number of virus particles varies widely, from near unity to less than one per 1000, but often is one per several hundred.

Certain viruses, eg, herpes and vaccinia, form pocks when inoculated onto the chorioallantoic membrane of an embryonated egg. Such viruses can be quantitated by relating the number of pocks counted to the viral dilution inoculated.

PURIFICATION & IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUSES

Purification of Virus Particles

Pure virus must be available in order for certain types of studies on the properties and molecular biology of the agent to be carried out. For purification studies, the starting material is usually large volumes of tissue culture medium, body fluids, or infected cells. The first step frequently involves concentration of the virus particles by precipitation with ammonium sulfate, ethanol, or polyethylene glycol or by ultrafiltration. Hemagglutination and elution can be used to concentrate orthomyxoviruses (see Chapter 39). Once concentrated, virus can then be separated from host materials by differential centrifugation, density gradient centrifugation, column chromatography, and electrophoresis.

More than one step is usually necessary to achieve adequate purification. A preliminary purification will remove most nonviral material. This first step may include centrifugation; the final purification step almost always involves density gradient centrifugation. In rate-zonal centrifugation, a sample of concentrated virus is layered onto a preformed linear density gradient of sucrose or glycerol, and during centrifugation the virus sediments as a band at a rate determined primarily by the size and weight of the virus particle.

Viruses can also be purified by high-speed centrifugation in density gradients of cesium chloride, potassium tartrate, potassium citrate, or sucrose. The gradient material of choice is the one that is least toxic to the virus. Virus particles migrate to an equilibrium position where the density of the solution is equal to their buoyant density and form a visible band.

Additional methods for purification are based on the chemical properties of the viral surface. In column chromatography, virus is bound to a substance such as diethylaminoethyl or phosphocellulose and then eluted by changes in pH or salt concentration. Zone electrophoresis permits the separation of virus particles from contaminants on the basis of charge. Specific antisera also can be used to remove virus particles from host materials.

Icosahedral viruses are easier to purify than enveloped viruses. Because the latter usually contain variable amounts of envelope per particle, the viral population is heterogeneous in both size and density.

It is very difficult to achieve complete purity of viruses. Small amounts of cellular material tend to adsorb to particles and copurify. The minimal criteria for purity are a homogeneous appearance in electron micrographs and the failure of additional purification procedures to remove "contaminants" without reducing infectivity.

Identification of a Particle as a Virus

When a characteristic physical particle has been obtained, it should fulfill the following criteria before it is identified as a virus particle:

(1) The particle can be obtained only from infected cells or tissues.

(2) Particles obtained from various sources are identical regardless of the cellular origin in which the virus is grown.

(3) The degree of infective activity of the preparation varies directly with the number of particles present.

(4) Destruction of the physical particle by chemical or physical means is associated with a loss of viral activity.

(5) Certain properties of the particles and infectivity must be shown to be identical, eg, their sedimentation behavior in the ultracentrifuge and their pH stability curves.

(6) The absorption spectrum of the purified physical particle in the ultraviolet range should coincide with the ultraviolet inactivation spectrum of the virus.

(7) Antisera prepared against the infectious virus should react with the characteristic particle and vice versa. Direct observation of an unknown virus can be accomplished by electron microscopic examination of aggregate formation in a mixture of antisera and crude viral suspension.

(8) The particles should be able to induce the characteristic disease in vivo (if such experiments are feasible).

(9) Passage of the particles in tissue culture should result in the production of progeny with biologic and antigenic properties of the virus.

LABORATORY SAFETY

Many viruses are human pathogens, and laboratory-acquired infections can occur. Laboratory procedures are often potentially hazardous if proper technique is not followed. Among the common hazards that might expose laboratory personnel to the risk of infection are the following: (1) aerosolsgenerated by homogenization of infected tissues, centrifugation, ultrasonic vibration, broken glassware; (2) ingestionfrom mouth pipetting, eating or smoking in the laboratory, inadequate washing of hands; (3) skin penetrationfrom needle sticks, broken glassware, hand contamination by leaking containers, handling of infected tissues, animal bites; and (4) splashes into the eye.

Good biosafety practices include the following: (1) training in and use of aseptic techniques; (2) interdiction of mouth pipetting; (3) no eating, drinking, or smoking in the laboratory; (4) use of personal protective equipment (coats, gloves, masks, etc) not to be worn outside the laboratory; (5) sterilization of experimental wastes; (6) use of biosafety hoods; and (7) immunization if relevant vaccines are available. Additional precautions and special containment facilities (Biosafety Level 4) are necessary when personnel are working with high-risk agents such as the filoviruses (see Chapter 38) and rabies virus.

REACTION TO PHYSICAL & CHEMICAL AGENTS

Heat & Cold

There is great variability in the heat stability of different viruses. Icosahedral viruses tend to be stable, losing little infectivity after several hours at 37 C. Enveloped viruses are much more heat-labile, rapidly dropping in titer at 37 C. Viral infectivity is generally destroyed by heating at 5060 C for 30 minutes, though there are some notable exceptions (eg, hepatitis B virus, polyomaviruses).

Viruses can be preserved by storage at subfreezing temperatures, and some may withstand lyophilization and can thus be preserved in the dry state at 4 C or even at room temperature. Viruses that withstand lyophilization are more heat-resistant when heated in the dry state. Enveloped viruses tend to lose infectivity after prolonged storage even at -90 C and are particularly sensitive to repeated freezing and thawing.

Stabilization of Viruses by Salts

Many viruses can be stabilized by salts in concentrations of 1 mol/L; ie, the viruses are not inactivated even by heating at 50 C for 1 hour. The mechanism by which the salts stabilize viral preparations is not known. Viruses are preferentially stabilized by certain salts. $MgCl_2$, 1 mol/L, stabilizes picornaviruses and reoviruses; $MgSO_4$, 1 mol/L, stabilizes orthomyxoviruses and paramyxoviruses; and Na_2SO_4 , 1 mol/L, stabilizes herpesviruses.

The stability of viruses is important in the preparation of vaccines. The ordinary nonstabilized oral poliovaccine must be stored at freezing temperatures to preserve its potency. However, with the addition of salts for stabilization of the virus, potency can be maintained for weeks at ambient temperatures even in the high temperatures of the tropics.

pH

Viruses are usually stable between pH values of 5.0 and 9.0. Some viruses (eg, enteroviruses) are resistant to acidic conditions. All viruses are destroyed by alkaline conditions. In hemagglutination reactions, variations of less than one pH unit may influence the result.

Radiation

Ultraviolet, x-ray, and high-energy particles inactivate viruses. The dose varies for different viruses. Infectivity is the most radiosensitive property because replication requires expression of the entire genetic contents. Irradiated particles that are unable to replicate may still be able to express some specific functions in host cells.

Photodynamic Inactivation

Viruses are penetrable to a varying degree by vital dyes such as toluidine blue, neutral red, and proflavine. These dyes bind to the viral nucleic acid, and the virus then becomes susceptible to inactivation by visible light. Neutral red is commonly used to stain plaque assays so that plaques are more readily seen. The assay plates must be protected from bright light once the neutral red has been added; otherwise, there is the risk that progeny virus will be inactivated and plaque development will cease.

Ether Susceptibility

Ether susceptibility can be used to distinguish viruses that possess an envelope from those that do not. Ether sensitivity of different virus groups is shown in Table 291.

Detergents

Nonionic detergentseg, Nonidet P40 and Triton X-100solubilize lipid constituents of viral membranes. The viral proteins in the envelope are released (undenatured). Anionic detergents, eg, sodium dodecyl sulfate, also solubilize viral envelopes; in addition, they disrupt capsids into separated polypeptides.

Formaldehyde

Formaldehyde destroys viral infectivity by reacting with nucleic acid. Viruses with single-stranded genomes are inactivated much more readily than those with double-stranded genomes. Formaldehyde has minimal adverse effects on the antigenicity of proteins and therefore has been used frequently in the production of inactivated viral vaccines.

Antibiotics & Other Antibacterial Agents

Antibacterial antibiotics and sulfonamides have no effect on viruses. Some antiviral drugs are available, however (see Chapter 30).

Quaternary ammonium compounds, in general, are not effective against viruses. Organic iodine compounds are also ineffective. Larger concentrations of chlorine are required to destroy viruses than to kill bacteria, especially in the presence of extraneous proteins. For example, the chlorine treatment of stools adequate to inactivate typhoid bacilli is inadequate to destroy poliomyelitis virus present in feces. Alcohols, such as isopropanol and ethanol, are relatively ineffective against certain viruses, especially picornaviruses.

Common Methods of Inactivating Viruses for Various Purposes

Viruses may be inactivated for various reasons: to sterilize laboratory supplies and equipment, disinfect surfaces or skin, make drinking water safe, and produce inactivated virus vaccines. Different methods and chemicals are used for these purposes.

Sterilization may be accomplished by steam under pressure, dry heat, ethylene oxide, and gamma irradiation. Surface disinfectants include sodium hypochlorite, glutaraldehyde, formaldehyde, and peracetic acid. Skin disinfectants include chlorhexidine, 70% ethanol, and iodophores. Vaccine production may involve the use of formaldehyde, β-propiolactone, psoralen + ultraviolet irradiation, or detergents (subunit vaccines) to inactivate the vaccine virus.

REPLICATION OF VIRUSES: AN OVERVIEW

Viruses multiply only in living cells. The host cell must provide the energy and synthetic machinery and the low-molecular-weight precursors for the synthesis of viral proteins and nucleic acids. The viral nucleic acid carries the genetic specificity to code for all the virus-specific macromolecules in a highly organized fashion.

In order for a virus to replicate, viral proteins must be synthesized by the host cell protein-synthesizing machinery. Therefore, the virus genome must be able to produce a usable mRNA. Various mechanisms have been identified which allow viral RNAs to compete successfully with cellular mRNAs to produce adequate amounts of viral proteins.

The unique feature of viral multiplication is that, soon after interaction with a host cell, the infecting virion is disrupted and its measurable infectivity is lost. This phase of the growth cycle is called the *eclipse period*; its duration varies depending on both the particular virus and the host cell, and it is followed by an interval of rapid accumulation of infectious progeny virus particles. The eclipse period is actually one of intense synthetic activity as the cell is redirected toward fulfilling the needs of the viral "pirate." In some cases, as soon as the viral nucleic acid enters the host cell, the cellular metabolism is redirected exclusively toward the synthesis of new virus particles and the cell will be destroyed. In other cases, the metabolic processes of the host cell are not altered significantly, although the cell synthesizes viral proteins and nucleic acids, and the cell is not killed.

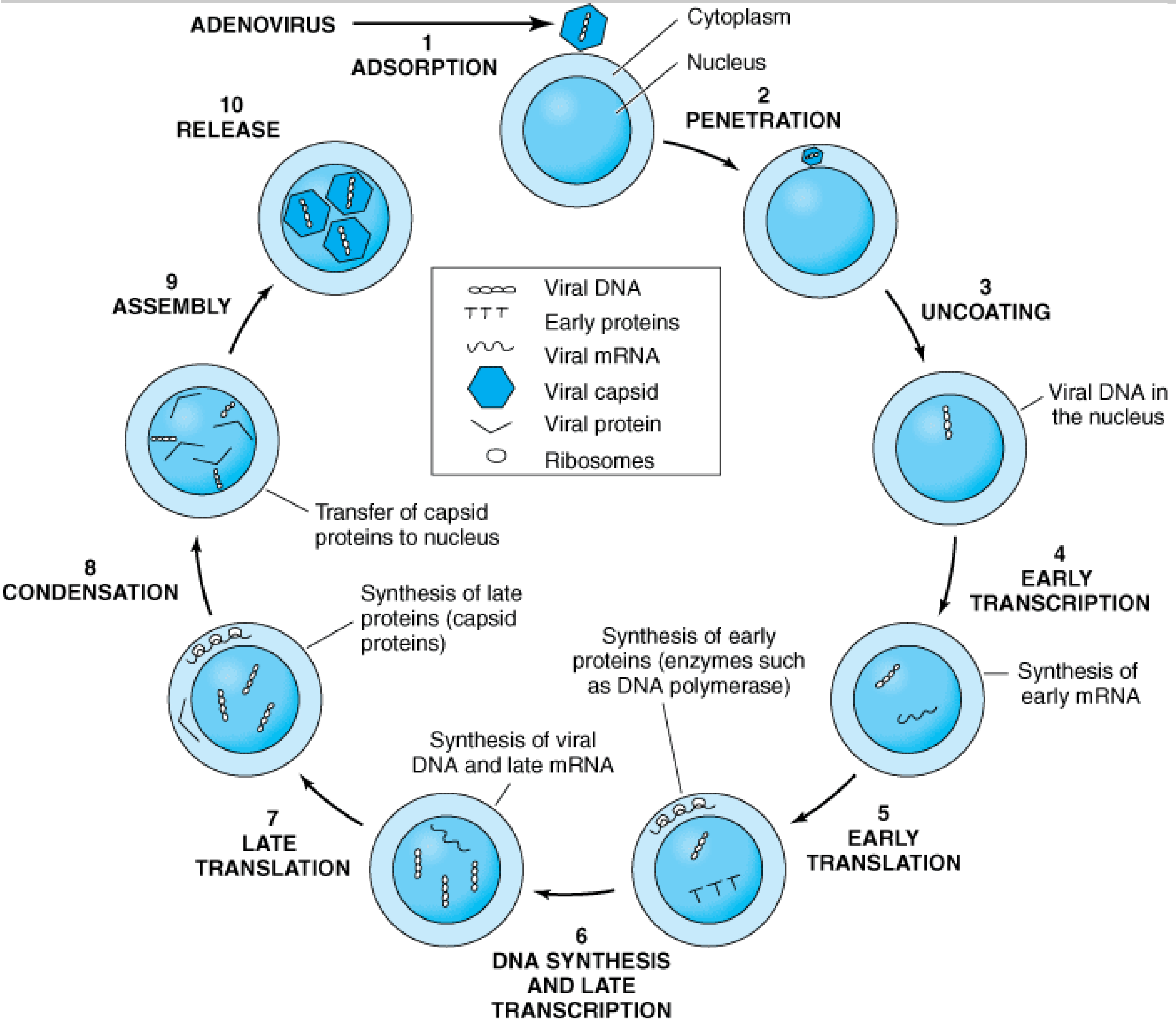
After the synthesis of viral nucleic acid and viral proteins, the components assemble to form new infectious virions. The yield of infectious virus per cell ranges widely, from modest numbers to more than 100,000 particles. The duration of the virus replication cycle also varies widely, from 68 hours (picornaviruses) to more than 40 hours (some herpesviruses).

Not all infections lead to new progeny virus. *Productive* infections occur in *permissive* cells and result in the production of infectious virus. *Abortive* infections fail to produce infectious progeny, either because the cell may be *nonpermissive* and unable to support the expression of all viral genes or because the infecting virus may be *defective*, lacking some functional viral gene. A *latent* infection may ensue, with the persistence of viral genomes, the expression of no or a few viral genes, and the survival of the infected cell.

General Steps in Viral Replication Cycles

A variety of different viral strategies have evolved for accomplishing multiplication in parasitized host cells. Although the details vary from group to group, the general outline of the replication cycles is similar. The growth cycle of a DNA virus is diagrammed in Figure 298. Details are included in the following chapters devoted to specific virus groups.

Figure 298.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Example of a viral growth cycle. The growth cycle of adenovirus, a nonenveloped DNA virus, is shown.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Levinson W, Jawetz E: *Medical Microbiology & Immunology Examination & Board Review,* 6th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2000. Modified there from Jawetz E, Melnick JL, Adelberg EA: *Review of Medical Microbiology,* 16th ed. McGraw-Hill, 1984.)

ATTACHMENT, PENETRATION, AND UNCOATING

The first step in viral infection is attachment, interaction of a virion with a specific receptor site on the surface of a cell. Receptor molecules differ for different viruses but are generally glycoproteins. In some cases the virus binds protein sequences (eg, picornaviruses) and in others oligosaccharides (eg, orthomyxoviruses and paramyxoviruses). Receptor binding is believed to reflect fortuitous configurational homologies between a virion surface structure and a cell surface component. For example, human immunodeficiency virus binds to the CD4 receptor on cells of the immune system, rhinoviruses bind ICAM-1, and Epstein-Barr virus recognizes the CD21 receptor on B cells. The presence or absence of receptors plays an important determining role in cell tropism and viral pathogenesis. Not all cells in a susceptible host will express the necessary receptors; for example, poliovirus is able to attach only to cells in the central nervous system and intestinal tract of primates. Each susceptible cell may contain up to 100,000 receptor sites for a given virus. The attachment step may initiate irreversible structural changes in the virion.

After binding, the virus particle is taken up inside the cell. This step is referred to as penetration or engulfment. In some systems, this is accomplished by receptor-mediated endocytosis, with uptake of the ingested virus particles within endosomes. There are also examples of direct penetration of virus particles across the plasma membrane. In other cases, there is fusion of the virion envelope with the plasma membrane of the cell. Those systems involve the interaction of a viral fusion protein with a second cellular receptor or "coreceptor" (eg, chemokine receptors for human immunodeficiency virus).

Uncoating occurs concomitantly with or shortly after penetration. Uncoating is the physical separation of the viral nucleic acid from the outer structural components of the virion so that it can function. The genome may be released as free nucleic acid (picornaviruses) or as a nucleocapsid (reoviruses). The nucleocapsids usually contain polymerases. Uncoating may require acidic pH in the endosome. The infectivity of the parental virus is lost at the uncoating stage. Viruses are the only infectious agents for which dissolution of the infecting agent is an obligatory step in the replicative pathway.

EXPRESSION OF VIRAL GENOMES AND SYNTHESIS OF VIRAL COMPONENTS

The synthetic phase of the viral replicative cycle ensues after uncoating of the viral genome. The essential theme in viral replication is that specific mRNAs must be transcribed from the viral nucleic acid for successful expression and duplication of genetic information. Once this is accomplished, viruses use cell components to translate the mRNA. Various classes of viruses use different pathways to synthesize the mRNAs depending upon the structure of the viral nucleic acid. Table 292 summarizes the various pathways of transcription (but not necessarily those of replication) of the nucleic acids of different classes of viruses. Some viruses (eg, rhabdoviruses) carry RNA polymerases to synthesize mRNAs. RNA viruses of this type are called negative-strand (negative-sense) viruses, as their single-strand RNA genome is complementary to mRNA, which is conventionally designated positive-strand (positive-sense). The negative-strand viruses must supply their own RNA polymerase, as eukaryotic cells lack enzymes able to synthesize mRNA off an RNA template.

Table 292. Pathways of Nucleic Acid Transcription for Various Virus Classes.

ds DNA
None

+ mRNA
Most DNA viruses (eg, herpesvirus, adenovirus)
+ ss DNA
ds DNA
+ mRNA
Parvoviruses
ds RNA
None
+ mRNA
Reoviruses
Virion contains RNA polymerase that transcribes each segment to mRNA.
+ ss RNA
ds RNA
+ mRNA
Picornaviruses, togaviruses, flaviviruses
Viral nucleic acid is infectious and serves as mRNA. For togaviruses, smaller + mRNA is also formed for certain proteins.
- ss RNA
None
+ mRNA
Rhabdoviruses, paramyxoviruses, orthomyxoviruses
Viral nucleic acid is not infectious; virion contains RNA polymerase which forms + mRNAs smaller than the genome. For orthomyxoviruses, + mRNAs are transcribed from each segment.
+ ss RNA
- DNA, DNA
+ mRNA
Retroviruses
Virion contains reverse transcriptase; viral RNA is not infectious, but complementary DNA from transformed cell is.

Type of Viral Nucleic Acid	Intermediates	Type of mRNA	Example	Comments

ds = double-stranded; ss = single-stranded; - indicates negative strand; + indicates positive strand; indicates a helix containing a positive and a negative strand.

In the course of viral replication, all the virus-specified macromolecules are synthesized in a highly organized sequence. In some viral infections, notably those involving double-stranded, DNA-containing viruses, early viral proteins are synthesized soon after infection and late proteins are made only late in infection, after viral DNA synthesis. Early genes may or may not be shut off when late products are made. In contrast, most if not all of the genetic information of RNA-containing viruses is expressed at the same time. In addition to these temporal controls, quantitative controls also exist, since not all viral proteins are made in the same amounts. Virus-specific proteins may regulate the extent of transcription of the genome or the translation of viral mRNA.

Small animal viruses and bacteriophages are good models for studies of gene expression. The total nucleotide sequences of many viruses have been elucidated. This led to the discovery of overlapping genes in which some sequences in DNA are utilized in the synthesis of two different polypeptides, either by the use of two different reading frames or by two mRNA molecules using the same reading frame but different starting points. A viral system (adenovirus) first revealed the mRNA processing phenomenon called "splicing," whereby the mRNA sequences that code for a given protein are generated from separated sequences in the template, with noncoding intervening sequences spliced out of the transcript. Recently, several DNA viruses (herpesviruses, adenovirus, polyomavirus) were found to encode microRNAs; these small (~22 nucleotide) RNAs function at a new level of post-transcriptional gene regulation, either by mediating degradation of target mRNAs or by inducing inhibition of translation of those mRNAs.

The widest variation in strategies of gene expression is found among RNA-containing viruses (Table 293). Some virions carry polymerases (orthomyxoviruses, reoviruses); some systems utilize subgenomic messages, sometimes generated by splicing (orthomyxoviruses, retroviruses); and some viruses synthesize large polyprotein precursors that are processed and cleaved to generate the final gene products (picornaviruses, retroviruses). The viral protease of human immunodeficiency virus is what is inhibited by the class of antiviral drugs called protease inhibitors.

Table 293. Comparison of Replication Strategies of Several Important RNA Virus Families.

Structure of genomic RNA
ss
ss
ss
ss
ss
ds
Sense of genomic RNA
Positive
Positive
Positive
Negative
Negative
Segmented genome
0
0
0[2]

+
0
+
Genomic RNA infectious
+
+
0
0
0
0
Genomic RNA acts as messenger
+
+
+
0
0

0
Virion-associated polymerase
0
0
+[3]

+
+
+
Subgenomic messages
0
+
+
+
+
+
Polyprotein precursors
+
+
+
0
0
0

		Grouping Based on Genomic RNA[1]				
		Positive-Strand Viruses		Negative-Strand Viruses		Double-Stranded Viruses
Characteristic	Picornaviridae	Togaviridae	Retroviridae	Orthomyxoviridae	Paramyxo- and Rhabdoviridae	Reoviridae

[1] Abbreviations used: ss = single-stranded; ds = double-stranded; positive = same sense as mRNA; negative = complementary to mRNA; + = indicated property applies to that virus family; 0 = indicated property does not apply to that virus family.

[2] Retroviruses contain a diploid genome (two copies of nonsegmented genomic RNA).

[3] Retroviruses contain a reverse transcriptase (RNA-dependent DNA polymerase).

The extent to which virus-specific enzymes are involved in these processes varies from group to group. DNA viruses that replicate in the nucleus generally use host cell DNA and RNA polymerases and processing enzymes. The larger viruses (herpesviruses, poxviruses) are more independent of cellular functions than are the smaller viruses. This is one reason the larger viruses are more susceptible to antiviral chemotherapy (see Chapter 30)because more virus-specific processes are available as targets for drug action.

The intracellular sites where the different events in viral replication take place vary from group to group (Table 294). A few generalizations are possible. Viral protein is synthesized in the cytoplasm on polyribosomes composed of virus-specific mRNA and host cell ribosomes. Many viral proteins undergo modifications (glycosylation, acylation, cleavages, etc). Viral DNA is usually replicated in the nucleus. Viral genomic RNA is generally duplicated in the cell cytoplasm, though there are exceptions.

Table 294. Summary of Replication Cycles of Major Virus Families.

DNA viruses
Parvoviridae
0
N
N
N
Polyomaviridae
0
N
N
N
48
Adenoviridae
0
N
N
N
25
Hepadnaviridae
+
N
C
ME
Herpesviridae
+
N
N
M
1572
Poxviridae
0
C
C
C
20
RNA viruses
Picornaviridae
0
C
C
C
68
Reoviridae
0

C
C
C
15
Togaviridae
+
C
C
MP
1024
Flaviviridae
+
C
C
ME
Retroviridae
+
N
C
MP
Bunyaviridae
+
C
C
MG
24
Orthomyxoviridae
+
N
N
MP
1530
Paramyxoviridae
+
C
C
MP
1048
Rhabdoviridae
+
C
C
MP
610

		Intracellular Location[1]			
Virus Family	Presence of Virion Envelope	Replication of Genome	Formation of Nucleocapsid[2]	Virion Maturation	Multiplication Cycle (Hours)[3]

[1] Abbreviations used: C = cytoplasm; N = nucleus; M = membranes; MG = Golgi membranes; MP = plasma membranes; ME = endoplasmic reticulum membranes.

[2] The synthesis of viral proteins always occurs in the cytoplasm.

[3] The values shown for duration of the multiplication cycle are approximate; ranges indicate that various members within a given family replicate with different kinetics. Different host cell types also influence the kinetics of viral replication.

MORPHOGENESIS AND RELEASE

Newly synthesized viral genomes and capsid polypeptides assemble together to form progeny viruses. Icosahedral capsids can condense in the absence of nucleic acid, whereas nucleocapsids of viruses with helical symmetry cannot form without viral RNA. In general, nonenveloped viruses accumulate in infected cells, and the cells eventually lyse and release the virus particles.

Enveloped viruses mature by a budding process. Virus-specific envelope glycoproteins are inserted into cellular membranes; viral nucleocapsids then bud through the membrane at these modified sites and in so doing acquire an envelope. Budding frequently occurs at the plasma membrane but may involve other membranes in the cell. Enveloped viruses are not infectious until they have acquired their envelopes. Therefore, infectious progeny virions typically do not accumulate within the infected cell.

Viral maturation is sometimes an inefficient process. Excess amounts of viral components may accumulate and be involved in the formation of inclusion bodies in the cell. As a result of the profound deleterious effects of viral replication, cellular cytopathic effects eventually develop and the cell dies. However, there are instances in which the cell is not damaged by the virus and long-term, persistent infections evolve (see Chapter 30). Virus-induced mechanisms may regulate apoptosis, a genetically programmed event that makes cells undergo self-destruction. Some virus infections delay early apoptosis, which allows time for the production of high yields of progeny virus. Additionally, some viruses actively induce apoptosis at late stages which would facilitate spread of progeny virus to new cells.

GENETICS OF ANIMAL VIRUSES

Genetic analysis is a powerful approach toward understanding the structure and function of the viral genome, its gene products, and their roles in infection and disease. Variation in viral properties is of great importance for human medicine. Viruses that have stable antigens on their surfaces (poliovirus, measles virus) can be controlled by vaccination. Other viruses that exist as many antigenic types (rhinoviruses) or change frequently (influenza virus A) are difficult to control by vaccination; viral genetics may help develop more effective vaccines. Some types of viral infections recur repetitively (parainfluenza viruses) or persist (retroviruses) in the presence of antibody and may be better controlled by antiviral drugs. Genetic analysis will help identify virus-specific processes that may be appropriate targets for the development of antiviral therapy.

The following terms are basic to a discussion of genetics: Genotype refers to the genetic constitution of an organism. Phenotype refers to the observable properties of an organism, which are produced by the genotype in cooperation with the environment. A mutation is a heritable change in the genotype. The genome is the sum of the genes of an organism. Wild-type virus denotes the original virus from which mutants are derived and with which the mutants are compared; the term may not accurately characterize the virus as it is isolated in nature. Fresh virus isolates from the natural host are referred to as field isolates or primary isolates.

Mapping of Viral Genomes

The rapid and precise techniques of molecular biology have facilitated the identification of viral gene products and the mapping of these on the viral genome. Biochemical and physical mapping can be done much more rapidly than genetic mapping using classic genetic techniques.

For isolates that can be cloned, sequence analysis and comparison with known viruses is often used in place of the approaches described below for mapping viral genomes.

The technique of reassortment mapping has been used with influenza A viruses, which have a genome of eight segments of RNA, each coding for one viral protein. Under suitable conditions, the RNA genome segments and the polypeptides of different influenza A viruses migrate at different rates in polyacrylamide gels, so that strains can be distinguished. By analyzing the recombinants (reassortants) formed between different influenza viruses, the RNA segment coding for each protein has been determined.

Restriction endonucleases can be used for identification of specific strains of DNA viruses. Viral DNA is isolated and incubated with a specific endonuclease until DNA sequences susceptible to the nuclease are cleaved. The fragments are then resolved on the basis of size by gel electrophoresis. The large fragments are most retarded by the sieving effect of the gel, so that an inverse relationship between size and migration is observed. The position of the DNA fragments can be determined by radioautography or by specialized staining techniques. Such physical mapping techniques were useful in distinguishing viral types in systems in which the viruses cannot be cultured (eg, papillomaviruses).

Physical maps can be correlated with genetic maps. This allows viral gene products to be mapped to individual regions of the genome defined by the restriction enzyme fragments. Transcription of mRNAs throughout the replication cycle can be assigned to specific DNA fragments. Using mutagenesis, mutations can be introduced into defined sites of the genome. Viral genome fragments generated by polymerase chain reaction can be used in place of restriction enzyme fragments in mapping and mutagenesis studies.

Types of Virus Mutants

Classic genetic studies with animal viruses require a sensitive and accurate quantitative assay method, such as a plaque assay for viral infectivity, and good mutants (resulting from single mutations) that are easily scored and reasonably stable. Some markers commonly used include plaque morphology, antibody escape or resistance to neutralizing antisera, loss of a virus protein, drug resistance, host range, and inability to grow at low or high temperatures. Mutants with such markers are obtained after treatment with a mutagen, after engineering in a mutation by molecular techniques, or after spontaneous mutation.

Cloned viral sequences are commonly used for molecular genetic analysis. RNA virus genomes are cloned as cDNA copies. This permits genetic analysis of viruses that cannot be cultured and of RNA viruses. Different types of mutations can be introduced into precise sites in cloned viral DNAs for functional analysis of coding sequences and viral cis-acting elements.

Conditional-lethal mutants are mutants that are lethal (in that no infectious virus is produced) under one set of conditionstermed nonpermissive conditionsbut that yield normal infectious progeny under other conditionstermed permissive conditions. Temperature-sensitive mutants grow at low (permissive) temperatures but not at high (nonpermissive) temperatures. Host-range mutants are able to grow in one kind of cell (permissive cell), whereas abortive infection occurs in another type (nonpermissive cell). Mixed infection studies with pairs of mutants under permissive and nonpermissive conditions can yield information concerning gene functions and mechanisms of viral replication at the molecular level.

Defective Viruses

A defective virus is one that lacks one or more functional genes required for viral replication. Defective viruses require helper activity from another virus for some step in replication or maturation.

One type of defective virus lacks a portion of its genome (ie, deletion mutant). The extent of loss by deletion may vary from a short base sequence to a large amount of the genome. Spontaneous deletion mutants may interfere with the replication of homologous virus and are called defective interfering virus particles. Defective interfering particles have lost essential segments of genome but contain normal capsid proteins; they require infectious homologous virus as helper for replication, and they interfere with the multiplication of that homologous virus.

Another category of defective virus requires an unrelated replication-competent virus as helper. Examples include the adeno-associated satellite viruses and hepatitis D virus (delta agent), which replicate only in the presence of co-infecting human adenovirus or hepatitis B virus, respectively. No nondefective isolates of this type of defective virus have been recovered. The essential helper function supplied by the helper virus varies, depending on the system.

Pseudovirions, a different type of defective particle, contain host cell DNA rather than the viral genome. During viral replication, the capsid sometimes encloses random pieces of host nucleic acid rather than viral nucleic acid. Such particles look like ordinary virus particles when observed by electron microscopy, but they do not replicate. Pseudovirions theoretically might be able to transduce cellular nucleic acid from one cell to another.

The transforming retroviruses are usually defective. A portion of the viral genome has been deleted and replaced with a piece of DNA of cellular origin that encodes a transforming protein. These viruses allowed the identification of cellular oncogenes (see Chapter 43). Another retrovirus is required as helper in order for the transforming virus to replicate.

Interactions among Viruses

When two or more virus particles infect the same host cell, they may interact in a variety of ways. They must be sufficiently closely related, usually within the same viral family, for most types of interactions to occur. Genetic interaction results in some progeny that are heritably (genetically) different from either parent. Progeny produced as a consequence of nongenetic interaction are similar to the parental viruses. In genetic interactions the actual nucleic acid molecules interact, whereas the products of the genes are involved in nongenetic interactions.

RECOMBINATION

Recombination results in the production of progeny virus (recombinant) that carries traits not found together in either parent. The classic mechanism is that the nucleic acid strands break, and part of the genome of one parent is joined to part of the genome of the second parent. The recombinant virus is genetically stable, yielding progeny like itself upon replication. Viruses vary widely in the frequency with which they undergo recombination. In the case of viruses with segmented genomes, eg, influenza virus, the formation of recombinants is due to reassortment of individual genome fragments rather than to an actual crossover event, and it occurs with ease. (See Chapter 39.)

GENETIC REACTIVATION

This phenomenon represents a special case of recombination.

Marker rescue occurs between the genome of an active virion and the genome of a virus particle that has been inactivated in some way. A portion of the genome of the inactivated virus recombines with that of the active parent, so that certain markers of the inactivated parent are rescued and appear in the viable progeny. None of the progeny produced are identical to the inactivated parent. The progeny carrying the rescued markers of the inactivated parent are genetically stable.

Multiplicity reactivation occurs when many inactive virus particles interact in the same cell to generate a viable virus. This may occur when a heavily damaged viral preparation is used to infect cells at high multiplicity of infection. Recombination occurs between the damaged nucleic acids of the parents, producing a viable genome that can replicate. The greater the damage to the parental genomes, the larger the number of inactive particles required per cell to ensure the formation of a viable genome.

COMPLEMENTATION

This refers to the interaction of viral gene products in cells infected with two viruses, one or both of which may be defective. It results in the replication of one or both under conditions in which replication would not ordinarily occur. The basis for complementation is that one virus provides a gene product in which the second is defective, allowing the second virus to grow. The genotypes of the two viruses remain unchanged. If both mutants are defective in the same gene product, they will not be able to complement each other's growth.

PHENOTYPIC MIXING

A special case of complementation is phenotypic mixing, or the association of a genotype with a heterologous phenotype. This occurs when the genome of one virus becomes randomly incorporated within capsid proteins specified by a different virus or a capsid consisting of components of both viruses. If the genome is encased in a completely heterologous protein coat, this extreme example of phenotypic mixing may be called "phenotypic masking" or "transcapsidation." Such mixing is not a stable genetic change because, upon replication, the phenotypically mixed parent will yield progeny encased in capsids homologous to the genotype.

Phenotypic mixing usually occurs between different members of the same virus family; the intermixed capsid proteins must be able to interact correctly to form a structurally intact capsid. However, phenotypic mixing also can occur between enveloped viruses, and in this case the viruses do not have to be closely related. The nucleocapsid of one virus becomes encased within an envelope specified by another, a phenomenon designated "pseudotype formation." There are many examples of pseudotype formation among the RNA tumor viruses (see Chapter 43). The nucleocapsid of vesicular stomatitis virus, a rhabdovirus, has an unusual propensity for being involved in pseudotype formation with unrelated envelope material.

INTERFERENCE

Infection of either cell cultures or whole animals with two viruses often leads to an inhibition of multiplication of one of the viruses, an effect called interference. Interference in animals is distinct from specific immunity. Furthermore, interference does not occur with all viral combinations; two viruses may infect and multiply within the same cell as efficiently as in single infections.

Several mechanisms have been elucidated as causes of interference: (1) One virus may inhibit the ability of the second to adsorb to the cell, either by blocking its receptors (retroviruses, enteroviruses) or by destroying its receptors (orthomyxoviruses). (2) One virus may compete with the second for components of the replication apparatus (eg, polymerase, translation initiation factor). (3) The first virus may cause the infected cell to produce an inhibitor (interferon; see Chapter 30) that prevents replication of the second virus.

Viral Vectors

Recombinant DNA technology has revolutionized the production of biologic materials, hormones, vaccines, interferon, and other gene products. Viral genomes have been engineered to serve as replication and expression vectors for both viral and cellular genes. Almost any virus can be converted to a vector if enough is known about its replication functions, transcription controls, and packaging signals. Viral vector technology is based on both DNA viruses (eg, SV40, parvovirus, bovine papillomavirus, adenovirus, herpesviruses, vaccinia virus) and RNA viruses (eg, poliovirus, Sindbis virus, retroviruses). Each system has distinct advantages and disadvantages.

Typical eukaryotic expression vectors contain viral regulatory elements (promoters or enhancers) that control transcription of the desired cloned gene placed adjacent, signals for efficient termination and polyadenylation of transcripts, and an intronic sequence bounded by splice donor and acceptor sites. There may be sequences that enhance translation or affect expression in a particular cell type. The principles of recombinant DNA technology are described and illustrated in Chapter 7. This approach offers the possibility of producing large amounts of a pure antigen for vaccine purposes.

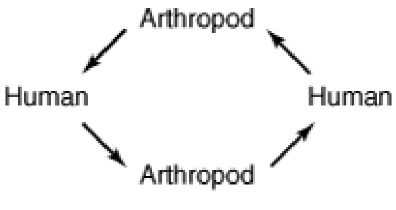
NATURAL HISTORY (ECOLOGY) & MODES OF TRANSMISSION OF VIRUSES

Ecology is the study of interactions between living organisms and their environment. Different viruses have evolved ingenious and often complicated mechanisms for survival in nature and transmission from one host to the next. The mode of transmission utilized by a given virus depends on the nature of the interaction between the virus and the host.

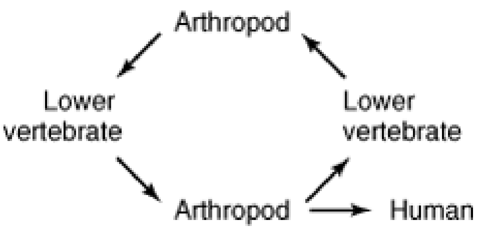
Viruses may be transmitted in the following ways: (1) Direct transmission from person to person by contact. The major means of transmission may be by droplet or aerosol infection (eg, influenza, measles, smallpox); by the fecal-oral route (eg, enteroviruses, rotaviruses, infectious hepatitis A); by sexual contact (eg, hepatitis B, herpes simplex type 2, human immunodeficiency virus); by hand-mouth, hand-eye, or mouth-mouth contact (eg, herpes simplex, rhinovirus, Epstein-Barr virus); or by exchange of contaminated blood (eg, hepatitis B, human immunodeficiency virus). (2) Transmission from animal to animal, with humans an accidental host. Spread may be by bite (rabies) or by droplet or aerosol infection from rodent-contaminated quarters (eg, arenaviruses, hantaviruses). (3) Transmission by means of an arthropod vector (eg, arboviruses, now classified primarily as togaviruses, flaviviruses, and bunyaviruses).

At least three different transmission patterns have been recognized among the arthropod-borne viruses:

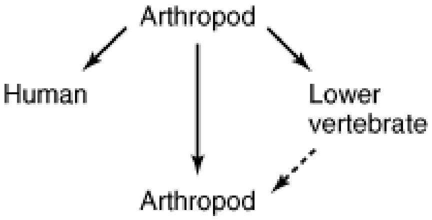
(1) Human-arthropod cycle: *Examples:* Urban yellow fever, dengue.



(2) Lower vertebrate-arthropod cycle with tangential infection of humans: *Examples:* Jungle yellow fever, St. Louis encephalitis. The infected human is a "dead end" host. This is a more common transmission mechanism.



(3) Arthropod-arthropod cycle with occasional infection of humans and lower vertebrates: *Examples:* Colorado tick fever, LaCrosse encephalitis.



In this cycle, the virus may be transmitted from the adult arthropod to its offspring through the egg (transovarian passage); thus, the cycle may continue with or without intervention of a viremic vertebrate host.

In vertebrates, the invasion of most viruses evokes a violent reaction, usually of short duration. The result is decisive. Either the host succumbs or it lives through the production of antibodies that neutralize the virus. Regardless of the outcome, the sojourn of the active virus is usually short, although persistent or latent infections that last for months to years may occur (hepatitis B, herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus, retroviruses). In arthropod vectors of the virus, the relationship is usually quite different. The viruses produce little or no ill effect and remain active in the arthropod throughout the latter's natural life. Thus arthropods, in contrast to vertebrates, act as permanent hosts and reservoirs.

Emerging Viral Diseases

Owing to wide-reaching changes in social attitudes, technology, and the environmentplus the decreased effectiveness of previous approaches to disease controlthe spectrum of infectious diseases is expanding today. New agents appear, and diseases once thought to be under control are increasing in incidence as pathogens evolve and spread. The term "emerging infectious diseases" denotes these phenomena.

Viral diseases emerge following one of three general patterns: recognition of a new agent, abrupt increase in illnesses caused by an endemic agent, and invasion of a new host population.

Combinations of factors contribute to disease emergence. Some factors increase human exposure to once-obscure pathogens; others provide for dissemination of once-localized infections; and still others force changes in viral properties or host responses to infection. Factors include (1) environmental changes (deforestation, damming or other changes in water ecosystems, flood or drought, famine); (2) human behavior (sexual behavior, drug use, outdoor recreation); (3) socioeconomic and demographic phenomena (war, poverty, population growth and migration, urban decay); (4) travel and commerce (highways, international air travel); (5) food production (globalization of food supplies, changes in methods of food processing and packaging); (6) health care (new medical devices, blood transfusions, organ and tissue transplantation, drugs causing immunosuppression, widespread use of antibiotics); (7) microbial adaptation (changes in virulence, development of drug resistance, cofactors in chronic diseases); and (8) public health measures (inadequate sanitation and vector control measures, curtailment of prevention programs, lack of trained personnel in sufficient numbers).

Examples of emerging viral infections in different regions of the world include Ebola virus, Nipah virus, hantavirus pulmonary disease, HIV infection, dengue hemorrhagic fever, West Nile virus, Rift Valley fever, and bovine spongiform encephalopathy (the latter a prion disease).

Of potential concern also is the possible use of animal organs as xenografts in humans. Because the numbers of available human donor organs cannot meet the needs of all waiting patients, xenotransplantation of nonhuman primate and porcine organs is considered an alternative. Concerns exist about the potential accidental introduction of new viral pathogens from the donor species into humans.

Bioterrorism Agents

Bioterrorism agents are microorganisms (or toxins) that could be used to produce death and disease in humans, animals, or plants for terrorist purposes. Such microorganisms could be genetically modified to increase their virulence, make them resistant to drugs or vaccines, or enhance their ability to be disseminated in the environment.

Potential bioterrorism agents are classified into risk categories based on the ease of dissemination or transmission from person to person, mortality rates, ability to cause public panic, and requirement for public health preparedness. Viral agents in the highest risk category are smallpox and the viral hemorrhagic fevers; highest risk bacteria include the agents of anthrax, botulism, plague, and tularemia.

REFERENCES

Chiu W, Burnett RM, Garcea RL (editors): *Structural Biology of Viruses.* Oxford Univ Press, 1997.

Espy MJ et al: Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: applications for routine laboratory testing. Clin Microbiol Rev 2006;19:165.

Fauquet CM et al (editors): Virus taxonomy: Classification and nomenclature of viruses. Eighth report of the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses. Academic Press, 2005.

Girones R: Tracking viruses that contaminate environments. Microbe 2006;1:19.

Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings. Recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA Hand Hygiene Task Force. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America/Association for Professionals in Infection Control/ Infectious Diseases Society of America. MMWR Recomm Rep 2002;51(RR-16):1.

Knipe DM et al (editors): *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Nathanson N: The emergence of infectious diseases: Societal causes and consequences. ASM News 1997;63:83.

Preventing emerging infectious diseases: a strategy for the 21st century. Overview of the updated CDC plan. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1998;47(RR-15):1.

U.S. Public Health Service guideline on infectious disease issues in xenotransplantation. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. MMWR Recomm Rep 2001;50(RR-15):1.

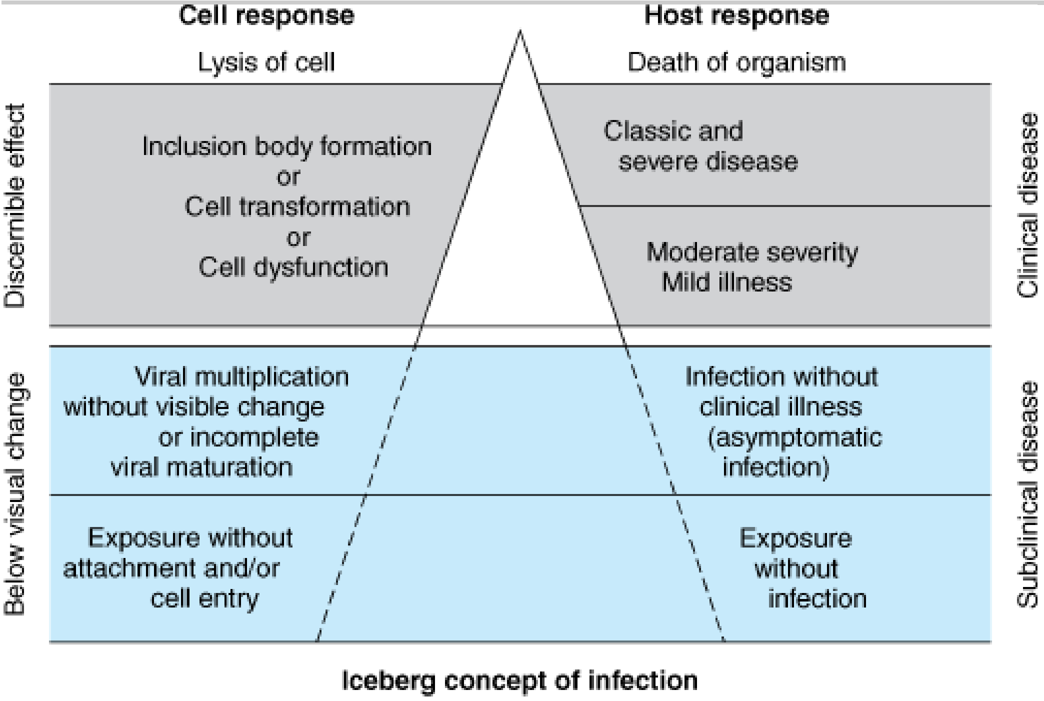
Note: Large images and tables on this page may necessitate printing in landscape mode.

PRINCIPLES OF VIRAL DISEASES

The fundamental process of viral infection is the viral replicative cycle. The cellular response to that infection may range from no apparent effect to cytopathology with accompanying cell death to hyperplasia or cancer.

Viral disease is some abnormality that results from viral infection of the host organism. Clinical disease in a host consists of overt signs and symptoms. A syndrome is a specific group of signs and symptoms. Viral infections that fail to produce any symptoms in the host are said to be inapparent (subclinical). In fact, most viral infections do not result in the production of disease (Figure 301).

Figure 301.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Types of host and cellular responses to virus infection.

(Modified, with permission, from Evans AS: Epidemiological concepts. In: Evans AS, Brachman PS [editors]: *Bacterial*

Infections of Humans, 2nd ed. Plenum, 1991.)

Important principles that pertain to viral disease include the following: (1) Many viral infections are subclinical. (2) The same disease may be produced by a variety of viruses. (3) The same virus may produce a variety of diseases. (4) The disease produced bears no relationship to viral morphology. (5) The outcome in any particular case is determined by both viral and host factors and is influenced by the genetics of each.

Viral pathogenesis refers to the interaction of viral and host factors that leads to disease production. A virus is pathogenic for a particular host if it can infect and cause signs of disease in that host. A strain of a certain virus is more virulent than another strain if it commonly produces more severe disease in a susceptible host. Viral virulence in intact animals should not be confused with cytopathogenicity for cultured cells; viruses highly cytocidal in vitro may be harmless in vivo, and, conversely, noncytocidal viruses may cause severe disease.

Important features of two general categories of acute viral diseases (local, systemic) are compared in Table 301.

Table 301. Important Features of Acute Viral Diseases.

	Local Infections	Systemic Infections
Specific disease example	Respiratory (rhinovirus)	Measles
Site of pathology	Portal of entry	Distant site
Incubation period	Relatively short	Relatively long
Viremia	Absent	Present
Duration of immunity	Variablemay be short	Usually lifelong
Role of secretory antibody (IgA) in resistance	Usually important	Usually not important

PATHOGENESIS OF VIRAL DISEASES

To produce disease, viruses must enter a host, come in contact with susceptible cells, replicate, and produce cell injury. Understanding mechanisms of viral pathogenesis at the molecular level is necessary to design effective and specific antiviral strategies. Much of our knowledge of viral pathogenesis is based on animal models, because such systems can be readily manipulated and studied.

Steps in Viral Pathogenesis

Specific steps involved in viral pathogenesis are the following: viral entry into the host, primary viral replication, viral spread, cellular injury, host immune response, viral clearance or establishment of persistent infection, and viral shedding.

ENTRY AND PRIMARY REPLICATION

In order for host infection to occur, a virus must first attach to and enter cells of one of the body surfacesskin, respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, urogenital tract, or conjunctiva. Most viruses enter their hosts through the mucosa of the respiratory or gastrointestinal tract (Table 302). Major exceptions are those viruses that are introduced directly into the bloodstream by needles (hepatitis B, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]), by blood transfusions, or by insect vectors (arboviruses).

Table 302. Common Routes of Viral Infection in Humans.

Respiratory tract
Parvovirus
B19
Adenovirus
Most types
Herpesvirus
Epstein-Barr virus, herpes simplex virus
Varicella virus
Poxvirus
Smallpox virus
Picornavirus
Rhinoviruses
Some enteroviruses
Togavirus
Rubella virus
Coronavirus
Most types
Orthomyxovirus
Influenza virus
Paramyxovirus
Parainfluenza viruses, respiratory syncytial virus
Mumps virus, measles virus
Mouth, intestinal tract
Adenovirus
Some types
Herpesvirus
Epstein-Barr virus, herpes simplex virus
Cytomegalovirus
Picornavirus
Some enteroviruses, including poliovirus and hepatitis A virus
Reovirus
Rotaviruses
Skin
Mild trauma
Papillomavirus
Most types
Herpesvirus
Herpes simplex virus
Poxvirus
Molluscum contagiosum virus, orf virus

Injection
Hepadnavirus
Hepatitis B
Herpesvirus
Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus
Retrovirus
Human immunodeficiency virus
Bites
Togavirus
Many species, including eastern equine encephalitis virus
Flavivirus
Many species, including yellow fever virus
Rhabdovirus
Rabies virus

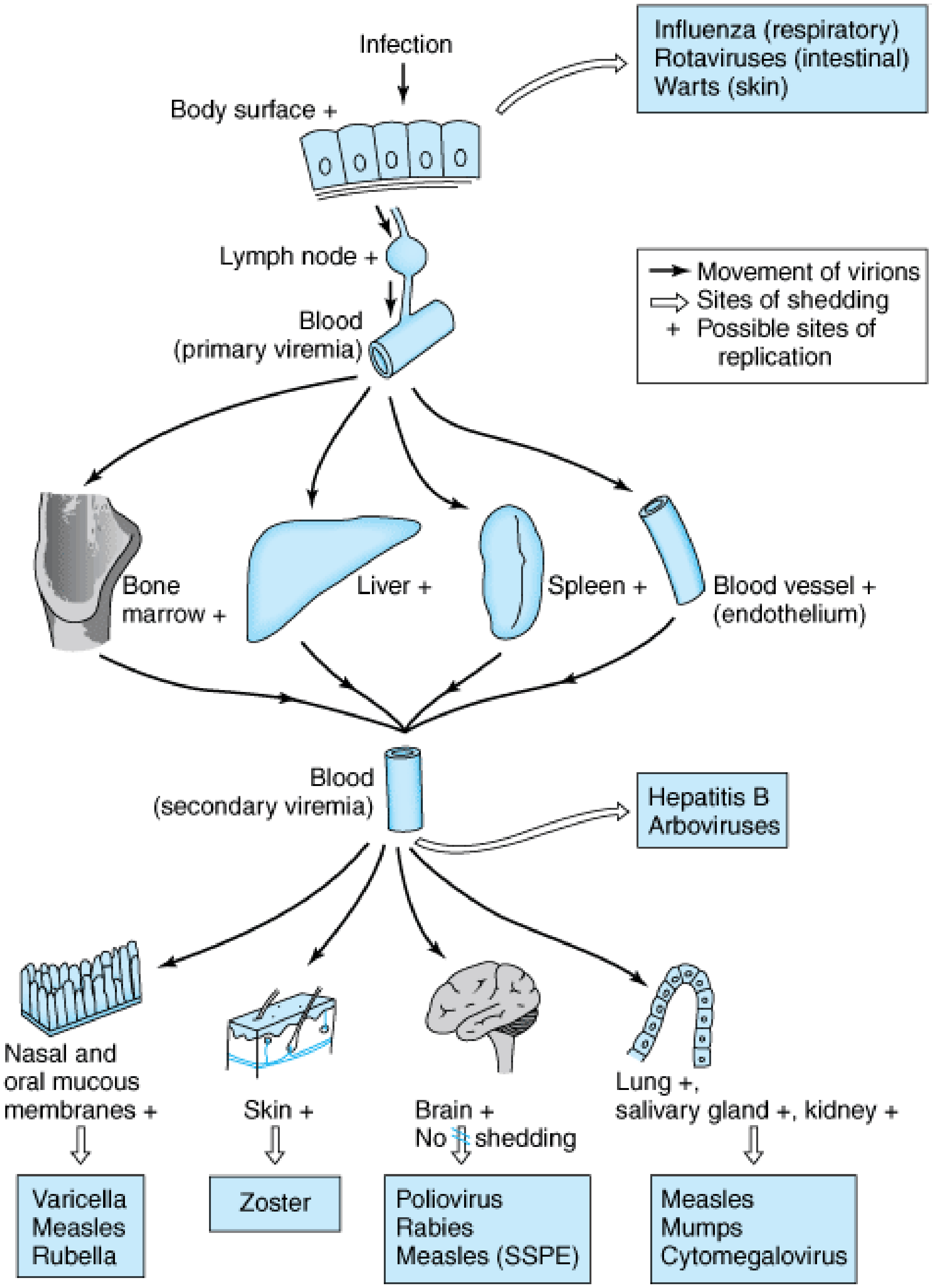
Route of Entry	Virus Group	Produce Local Symptoms at Portal of Entry	Produce Generalized Infection Plus Specific Organ Disease

Viruses usually replicate at the primary site of entry. Some, such as influenza viruses (respiratory infections) and rotaviruses (gastrointestinal infections), produce disease at the portal of entry and have no necessity for further systemic spread. They spread locally over the epithelial surfaces, but there is no invasion of underlying tissues or spread to distant sites.

VIRAL SPREAD AND CELL TROPISM

Many viruses produce disease at sites distant from their point of entry (eg, enteroviruses, which enter through the gastrointestinal tract but may produce central nervous system disease). After primary replication at the site of entry, these viruses then spread within the host (Figure 302). Mechanisms of viral spread vary, but the most common route is via the bloodstream or lymphatics. The presence of virus in the blood is called viremia. Virions may be free in the plasma (eg, enteroviruses, togaviruses) or associated with particular cell types (eg, measles virus) (Table 303). Some viruses even multiply within those cells. The viremic phase is short in many viral infections. In some instances, neuronal spread is involved; this is apparently how rabies virus reaches the brain to cause disease and how herpes simplex virus moves to the ganglia to initiate latent infections.

Figure 302.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Mechanisms of spread of virus through the body in human viral infections. + indicates possible sites of viral replication; large arrows indicate sites of shedding of virus, with illustrative examples of diseases in which that route of excretion is important. Transfer from blood is by transfusion with hepatitis B and by mosquito bite in certain arboviral infections.

(Modified and reproduced, with permission, from Mims CA, White DO: *Viral Pathogenesis and Immunology.* Blackwell, 1984.)

Table 303. Viruses Spread Via the Bloodstream.[1]

Lymphocytes
Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, hepatitis B virus, JC virus, BK virus
Mumps, measles, rubella, human immunodeficiency virus
Monocytes-macrophages
Cytomegalovirus
Poliovirus, human immunodeficiency virus, measles virus
Neutrophils
Influenza virus
Red blood cells
Parvovirus B19
Colorado tick fever virus
None (free in plasma)
Togavirus, picornavirus

	Examples	
Cell Type Associated	DNA Viruses	RNA Viruses

[1] Modified from Tyler KL, Fields BN: Pathogenesis of viral infections. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al (editors). Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

Viruses tend to exhibit organ and cell specificities. Thus, tropism determines the pattern of systemic illness produced during a viral infection. As an example, hepatitis B virus has a tropism for liver hepatocytes, and hepatitis is the primary disease caused by the virus.

Tissue and cell tropism by a given virus usually reflect the presence of specific cell surface receptors for that virus. Receptors are components of the cell surface with which a region of the viral surface (capsid or envelope) can specifically interact and initiate infection. Receptors are cell constituents that function in normal cellular metabolism but also happen to have an affinity for a particular virus. The identity of the specific cellular receptor is known for some viruses but is unknown in many cases.

Factors affecting viral gene expression are important determinants of cell tropism. Enhancer regions that show some cell-type specificity may regulate transcription of viral genes. For example, the JC polyomavirus enhancer is much more active in glial cells than in other cell types.

Another mechanism dictating tissue tropism involves proteolytic enzymes. Certain paramyxoviruses are not infectious until an envelope glycoprotein undergoes proteolytic cleavage. Multiple rounds of viral replication will not occur in tissues that do not express the appropriate activating enzymes.

Viral spread may be determined in part by specific viral genes. Studies with reovirus have demonstrated that the extent of spread from the gastrointestinal tract is determined by one of the outer capsid proteins.

CELL INJURY AND CLINICAL ILLNESS

Destruction of virus-infected cells in the target tissues and physiologic alterations produced in the host by the tissue injury are partly responsible for the development of disease. Some tissues, such as intestinal epithelium, can rapidly regenerate and withstand extensive damage better than others, such as the brain. Some physiologic effects may result from nonlethal impairment of specialized functions of cells, such as loss of hormone production. Clinical illness from viral infection is the result of a complex series of events, and many of the factors that determine degree of illness are unknown. General symptoms associated with many viral infections, such as malaise and anorexia, may result from host response functions such as cytokine production. Clinical illness is an insensitive indicator of viral infection; inapparent infections by viruses are very common.

RECOVERY FROM INFECTION

The host either succumbs or recovers from viral infection. Recovery mechanisms include both innate and adaptive immune responses. Interferon and other cytokines, humoral and cell-mediated immunity, and possibly other host defense factors are involved. The relative importance of each component differs with the virus and the disease.

The importance of host factors in influencing the outcome of viral infections is illustrated by an incident in the 1940s in which 45,000 military personnel were inoculated with hepatitis B virus-contaminated yellow fever virus vaccine. Although the personnel were presumably subjected to comparable exposures, clinical hepatitis occurred in only 2% (914 cases), and of those only 4% developed serious disease.

In acute infections, recovery is associated with viral clearance. However, there are times when the host remains persistently infected with the virus. Such long-term infections are described below.

VIRUS SHEDDING

The last stage in pathogenesis is the shedding of infectious virus into the environment. This is a necessary step to maintain a viral infection in populations of hosts. Shedding usually occurs from the body surfaces involved in viral entry (Figure 302). Shedding occurs at different stages of disease depending on the particular agent involved. It represents the time at which an infected individual is infectious to contacts. In some viral infections, such as rabies, humans represent dead-end infections, and shedding does not occur.

Host Immune Response

Nonspecific host defense mechanisms are usually elicited very soon after viral infection. The most prominent among the innate immune responses is the induction of interferons (see below). These responses help inhibit viral growth during the time it takes to induce specific humoral and cell-mediated immunity.

Both humoral and cellular components of the immune response are involved in control of viral infections. Viruses elicit a tissue response different from the response to pathogenic bacteria. Whereas polymorphonuclear leukocytes form the principal cellular response to the acute inflammation caused by pyogenic bacteria, infiltration with mononuclear cells and lymphocytes characterizes the inflammatory reaction of uncomplicated viral lesions.

Virus-encoded proteins serve as targets for the immune response. Virus-infected cells may be lysed by cytotoxic T lymphocytes as a result of recognition of viral polypeptides on the cell surface. Humoral immunity protects the host against reinfection by the same virus. Neutralizing antibody directed against capsid proteins blocks the initiation of viral infection, presumably at the stage of attachment, entry, or uncoating. Secretory IgA antibody is important in protecting against infection by viruses through the respiratory or gastrointestinal tracts.

Special characteristics of certain viruses may have profound effects on the host's immune response. Some viruses infect and damage cells of the immune system. The most dramatic example is the human retrovirus associated with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) that infects T lymphocytes and destroys their ability to function (see Chapter 44).

Viruses have evolved a variety of ways that serve to suppress or evade the host immune response and thus avoid being eradicated. Oftentimes, the viral proteins involved in modulating the host response are not essential for growth of the virus in tissue culture, and their properties are realized only in pathogenesis experiments in animals. In addition to infecting cells of the immune system and abrogating their function (HIV), they may infect neurons that express little or no class I MHC (herpesvirus), or they may encode immunomodulatory proteins that inhibit MHC function (adenovirus, herpesvirus) or inhibit cytokine activity (poxvirus, measles virus). Viruses may mutate and change antigenic sites on virion proteins (influenza virus, HIV) or may downregulate the level of expression of viral cell surface proteins (herpesvirus). Most viruses have anti-interferon strategies (see below).

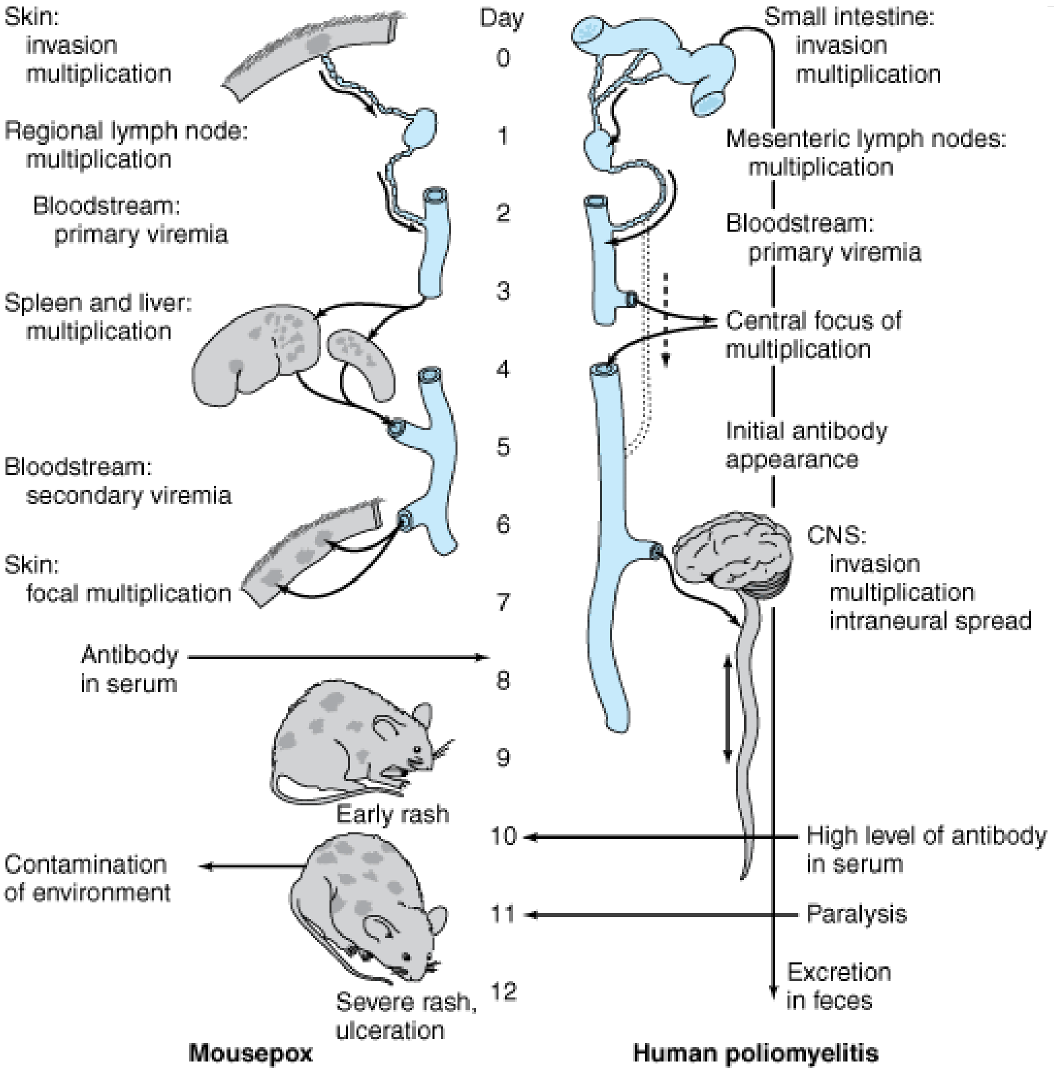
A type of immunopathologic disorder was observed in humans immunized with vaccines containing killed measles or respiratory syncytial virus (no longer in use). A few persons developed unusual immune responses that gave rise to serious consequences when they later were exposed to the naturally occurring infective virus. Dengue hemorrhagic fever with shock syndrome, which develops in persons who already have had at least one prior infection with another dengue serotype, may be a naturally occurring manifestation of the same type of immunopathology.

Another potential adverse effect of the immune response is the development of autoantibodies. If a viral antigen were to elicit antibodies that fortuitously recognized an antigenic determinant on a cellular protein in normal tissues, cellular injury or loss of function unrelated to viral infection might result. The magnitude of this potential problem in human disease is currently unknown.

Comparison of Pathogenesis of a Viral Disease of the Skin & of the Central Nervous System

The pathogenesis of mousepox, a disease of the skin, and of human poliomyelitis, a disease of the central nervous system, are outlined in Figure 303. Both viruses multiply at the primary site of entry prior to systemic spread to target organs.

Figure 303.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic illustrations of the pathogenesis of mousepox and poliomyelitis.

(Courtesy of F Fenner.)

In mousepox, the virus enters the body through minute abrasions of the skin and multiplies in the epidermal cells. At the same time, it is carried by the lymphatics to the regional lymph nodes, where multiplication also occurs. The few virus particles entering the blood by way of the efferent lymphatics are taken up by the macrophages of the liver and spleen. The virus multiplies rapidly in both organs. Following release of virus from the liver and spleen, it moves by way of the bloodstream and localizes in the basal epidermal layers of the skin, in the conjunctival cells, and near the lymph follicles in the intestine. The virus may occasionally also localize in the epithelial cells of the kidney, lung, submaxillary gland, and pancreas. A primary lesion occurs at the site of entry of the virus. It appears as a localized swelling that rapidly increases in size, becomes edematous, ulcerates, and goes on to scar formation. A generalized rash follows that is responsible for the release of large quantities of virus into the environment.

In poliomyelitis, virus enters by way of the alimentary tract, multiplies locally at the initial sites of viral implantation (tonsils, Peyer's patches) or the lymph nodes that drain these tissues, and begins to appear in the throat and in the feces. Secondary viral spread occurs by way of the bloodstream to other susceptible tissuesspecifically, other lymph nodes and the central nervous system. Within the central nervous system, the virus spreads along nerve fibers. If a high level of multiplication occurs as the virus spreads through the central nervous system, motor neurons are destroyed and paralysis occurs. The shedding of virus into the environment does not depend on secondary viral spread to the central nervous system. Spread to the central nervous system is readily prevented by the presence of antibodies induced by prior infection or vaccination.

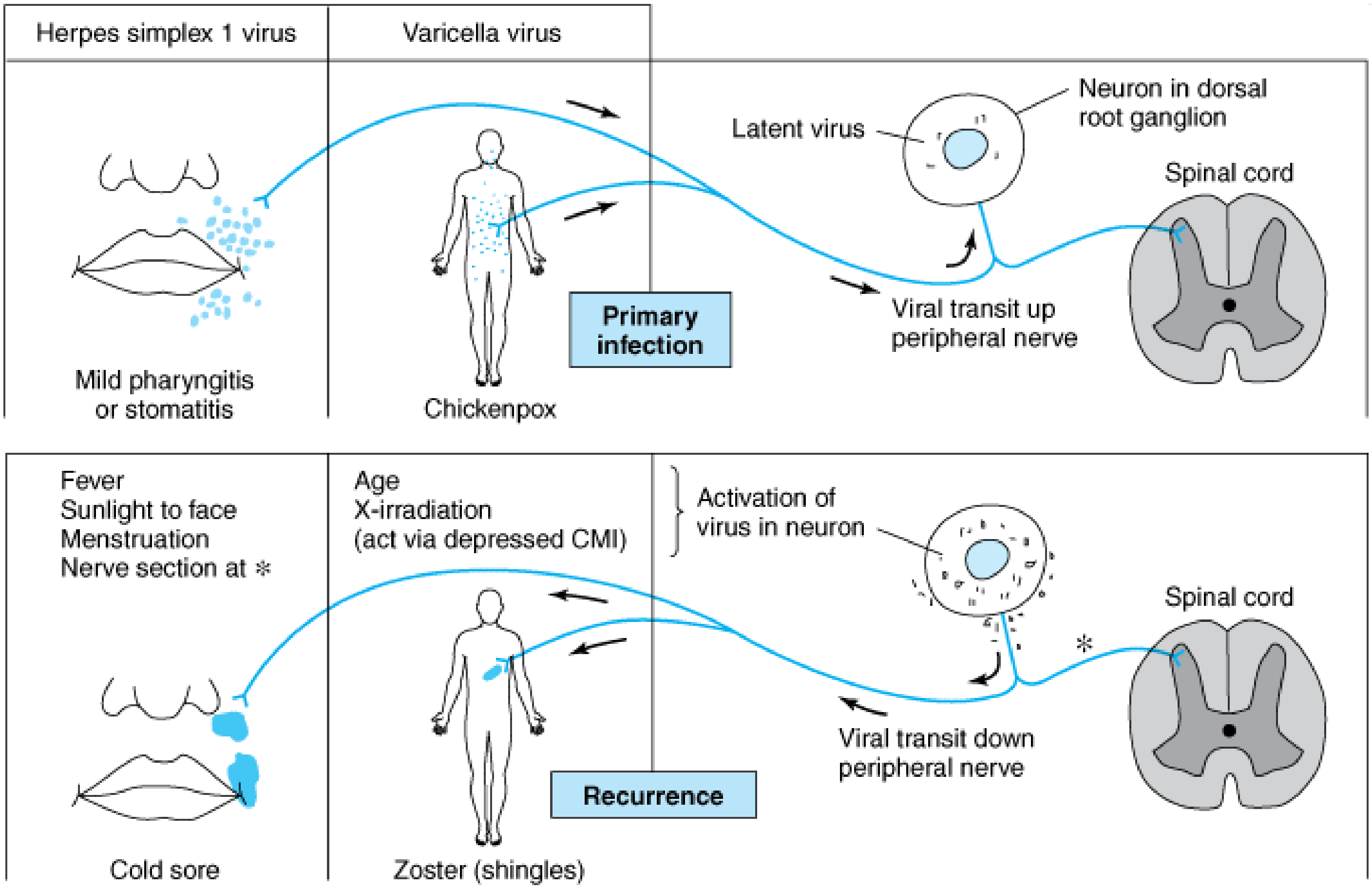
Viral Persistence: Chronic & Latent Virus Infections

Viral infections are usually self-limiting. Sometimes, however, the virus persists for long periods of time in the host. Long-term virus-host interaction may take several forms. Chronic infections are those in which replicating virus can be continuously detected, often at low levels; mild or no clinical symptoms may be evident. Latent infections are those in which the virus persists in an occult (hidden or cryptic) form most of the time. There will be intermittent flare-ups of clinical disease; infectious virus can be recovered during flare-ups. Viral sequences may be detectable by molecular techniques in tissues harboring latent infections. Inapparent or subclinical infections are those that give no overt sign of their presence.

Chronic infections occur with a number of animal viruses, and the persistence in certain instances depends upon the age of the host when infected. In humans, for example, rubella virus and cytomegalovirus infections acquired in utero characteristically result in viral persistence that is of limited duration, probably because of development of the immunologic capacity to react to the infection as the infant matures. Infants infected with hepatitis B virus frequently become persistently infected (chronic carriers); most carriers are asymptomatic (see Chapter 35). In chronic infections with RNA viruses, the viral population often undergoes many genetic and antigenic changes.

Herpesviruses typically produce latent infections. Herpes simplex viruses enter the sensory ganglia and persist in a noninfectious state (Figure 304). There may be periodic reactivations during which lesions containing infectious virus appear at peripheral sites (eg, fever blisters). Chickenpox virus (varicella-zoster) also becomes latent in sensory ganglia. Recurrences are rare and occur years later, usually following the distribution of a peripheral nerve (shingles). Other members of the herpesvirus family also establish latent infections, including cytomegalovirus and Epstein-Barr virus. All may be reactivated by immunosuppression. Consequently, reactivated herpesvirus infections may be a serious complication for persons receiving immunosuppressant therapy.

Figure 304.



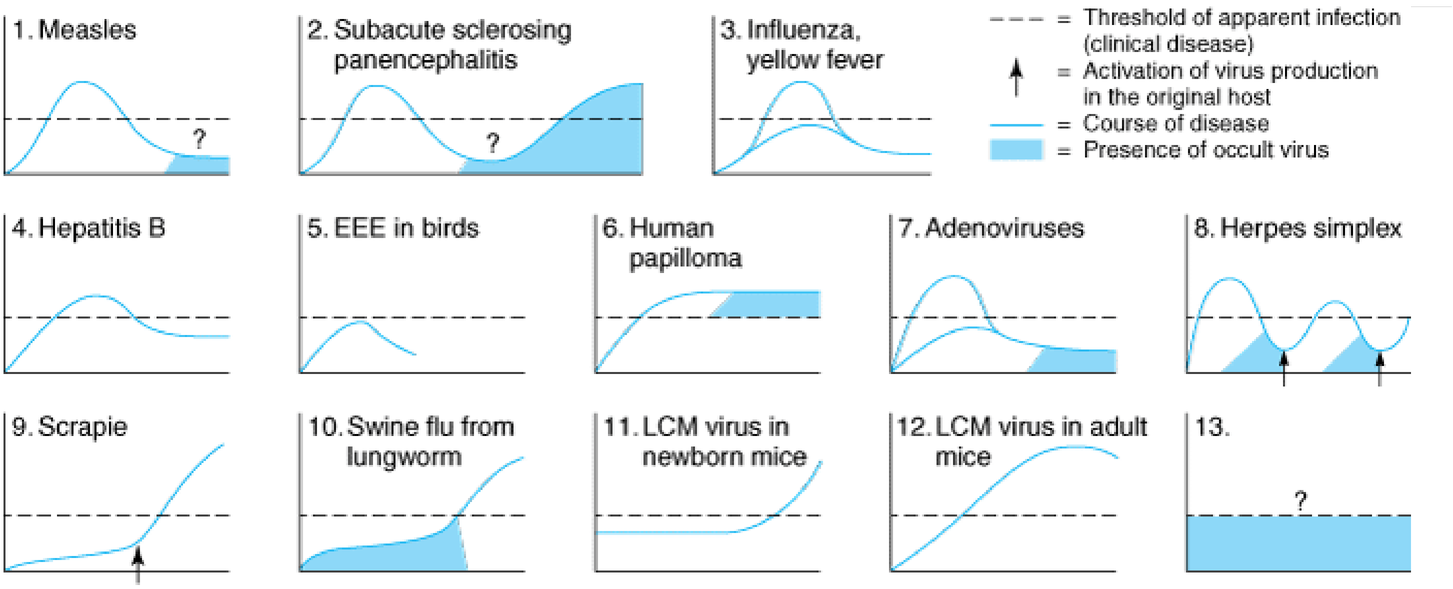
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Latent infections by herpesviruses. Examples are shown for both herpes simplex and varicella-zoster viruses. Primary infections occur in childhood or adolescence, followed by establishment of latent virus in cerebral or spinal ganglia. Later activation causes recurrent herpes simplex or zoster. Recurrences are rare for zoster.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Mims CA, White DO: *Viral Pathogenesis and Immunology.* Blackwell, 1984.)

Persistent viral infections may play a far-reaching role in human disease. Persistent viral infections are associated with certain types of cancers in humans (see Chapter 43) as well as with progressive degenerative diseases of the central nervous system of humans (see Chapter 42). Examples of different types of persistent viral infections are presented in Figure 305.

Figure 305.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Different types of virus-host interactions: apparent (clinical disease), inapparent (subclinical), chronic, latent, occult, and slow infections. (1) Measles runs an acute, almost always clinically apparent course resulting in long-lasting immunity. (2) Measles may also be associated with persistence of latent infection in subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (see Chapter 40). (3) Yellow fever and influenza follow a pattern similar to that of measles except that infection may be more often subclinical than clinical. (4) In hepatitis B, recovery from clinical disease may be associated with chronic infection in which fully active virus persists in the blood. (5) Some infections are, in a particular species, always subclinical, such as eastern equine encephalomyelitis (EEE) in some species of birds that then act as reservoirs of the virus. (6) In human papilloma, the course of infection is chronic; when cervical cancer develops, the virus present is occult (not replicating). (7) Infection of humans with certain adenoviruses may be clinical or subclinical. There may be a long latent infection during which virus is present in small quantity; virus may also persist after the illness. (8) The periodic reactivation of latent herpes simplex virus, which may recur throughout life in humans, often follows an initial acute episode of stomatitis in childhood. (9) Infection may be unrecognized for long periods of time before it becomes apparent. Examples of such "slow" infections characterized by long incubation periods are scrapie in sheep and kuru in humans (thought to be caused by prions, not viruses). (10) In pigs that have eaten virus-bearing lungworms, swine "flu" is occult until the appropriate stimulus induces viral production and, in turn, clinical disease. (11) Lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCM) virus may be established in mice by in utero infection. A form of immunologic tolerance develops in which virus-specific T cells are not activated. Antibody is produced against viral proteins; this antibody and circulating lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus form antigen-antibody complexes that produce immune complex disease in the host. The presence of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus in this chronic infection (circulating virus with little or no apparent disease) may be revealed by transmission to an indicator host, eg, adult mice from a virus-free stock. (12) All adult mice develop classic acute symptoms of lymphocytic choriomeningitis and frequently die. (13) The possibility is shown of infection with an occult virus that is not detectably replicating. Proof of the presence of such a virus remains a difficult task which, however, is attracting the attention of cancer investigators (see Chapter 43).

Spongiform encephalopathies are a group of chronic, progressive, fatal infections of the central nervous system caused by unconventional, transmissible agents called prions (see Chapter 42). Prions are thought not to be viruses. The best examples of this type of "slow" infection are scrapie in sheep and bovine spongiform encephalopathy in cattle; kuru and Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease occur in humans.

Overview of Acute Viral Respiratory Infections

Many types of viruses gain access to the human body via the respiratory tract, primarily in the form of aerosolized droplets or saliva. This is the most frequent means of viral entry into the host. Successful infection occurs despite normal host protective mechanisms, including the mucus covering most surfaces, ciliary action, collections of lymphoid cells, alveolar macrophages, and secretory IgA. Many infections remain localized in the respiratory tract, although some viruses produce their characteristic disease symptoms following systemic spread (eg, chickenpox, measles, rubella; Table 302, Figure 302).

Disease symptoms exhibited by the host depend on whether the infection is concentrated in the upper or lower respiratory tract (Table 304). Although definitive diagnosis requires isolation of the virus, identification of viral gene sequences, or demonstration of a rise in antibody titer, the specific viral disease can frequently be deduced by considering the major symptoms, the patient's age, the time of year, and any pattern of illness in the community.

Table 304. Viral Infections of the Respiratory Tract.

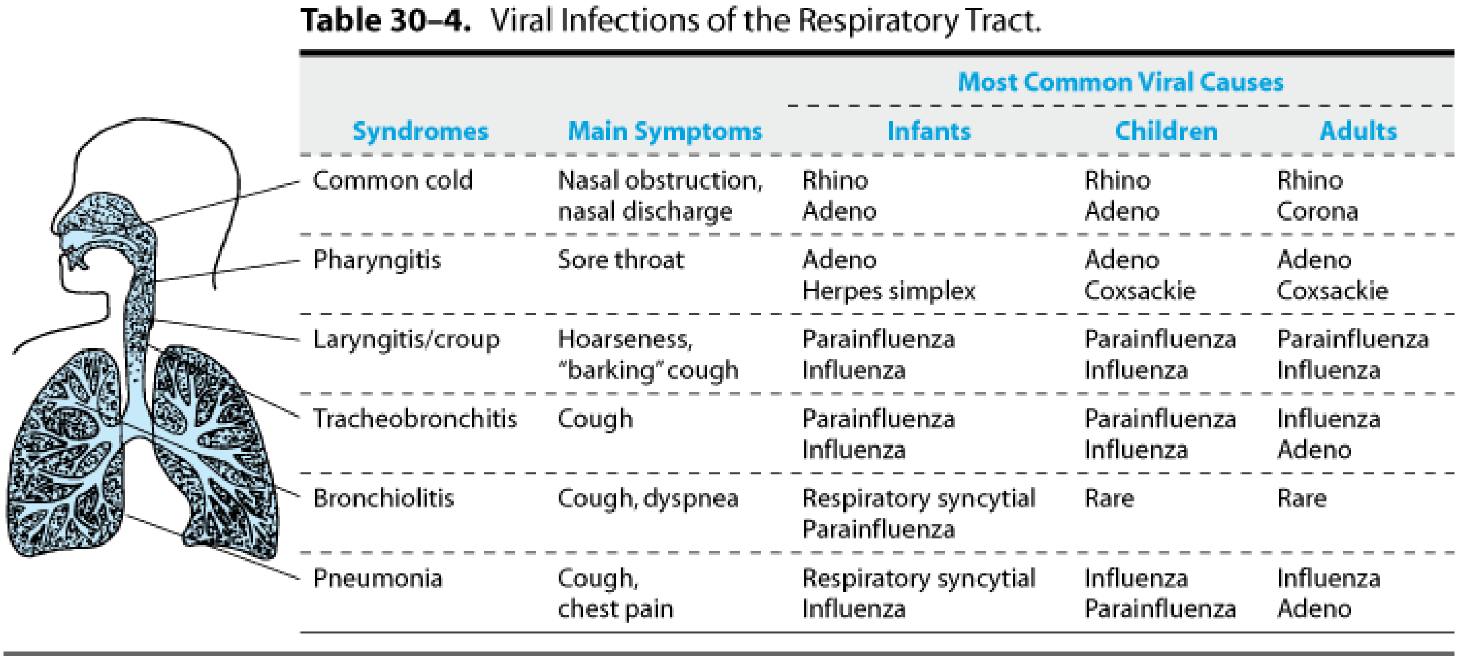


Table 30–4. Viral Infections of the Respiratory Tract.

Syndromes	Main Symptoms	Most Common Viral Causes		
		Infants	Children	Adults
Common cold	Nasal obstruction, nasal discharge	Rhino Adeno	Rhino Adeno	Rhino Corona
Pharyngitis	Sore throat	Adeno Herpes simplex	Adeno Coxsackie	Adeno Coxsackie
Laryngitis/croup	Hoarseness, "barking" cough	Parainfluenza Influenza	Parainfluenza Influenza	Parainfluenza Influenza
Tracheobronchitis	Cough	Parainfluenza Influenza	Parainfluenza Influenza	Influenza Adeno
Bronchiolitis	Cough, dyspnea	Respiratory syncytial Parainfluenza	Rare	Rare
Pneumonia	Cough, chest pain	Respiratory syncytial Influenza	Influenza Parainfluenza	Influenza Adeno

The severity of respiratory infection can range from inapparent to overwhelming. The most severe illness is usually seen in infants infected with certain paramyxoviruses and in elderly or chronically ill adults infected with influenza virus.

Overview of Viral Infections of the Gastrointestinal Tract

Many viruses initiate infection via the alimentary tract. A few agents, such as herpes simplex virus and Epstein-Barr virus, probably infect cells in the mouth. Viruses are exposed in the intestinal tract to harsh elements involved in the digestion of foodacid, bile salts (detergents), and proteolytic enzymes. Consequently, viruses able to initiate infection by this route are all acid- and bile salts-resistant. There may also be virus-specific secretory IgA and nonspecific inhibitors of viral replication to overcome.

Acute gastroenteritis is the designation for short-term gastrointestinal disease with symptoms ranging from mild, watery diarrhea to severe febrile illness characterized by vomiting, diarrhea, and prostration. Rotaviruses, Norwalk viruses, and caliciviruses are major causes of gastroenteritis. Infants and children are affected most often.

Some viruses that produce enteric infections utilize host proteases to facilitate infection. In general, proteolytic digestion alters the viral capsid by partial cleavage of a viral surface protein that then facilitates a specific event such as virus attachment or membrane fusion.

Enteroviruses, coronaviruses, and adenoviruses also infect the gastrointestinal tract, but those infections are often asymptomatic. Some enteroviruses, notably polioviruses, and hepatitis A virus are important causes of systemic disease but do not produce intestinal symptoms.

Overview of Viral Skin Infections

The skin is a tough and impermeable barrier to the entry of viruses. However, a few viruses are able to breach this barrier and initiate infection of the host (Table 302). Some obtain entry through small abrasions of the skin (poxviruses, papillomaviruses, herpes simplex viruses), others are introduced by the bite of arthropod vectors (arboviruses) or infected vertebrate hosts (rabies virus, herpes B virus), and still others are injected during blood transfusions or other manipulations involving contaminated needles, such as acupuncture and tattooing (hepatitis B virus, HIV).

A few agents remain localized and produce lesions at the site of entry (papillomaviruses and molluscum contagiosum); most spread to other sites. The epidermal layer is devoid of blood vessels and nerve fibers, so viruses that infect epidermal cells tend to stay localized. Viruses that are introduced deeper into the dermis have access to blood vessels, lymphatics, dendritic cells, and macrophages and usually spread and cause systemic infections.

Many of the generalized skin rashes associated with viral infections develop because virus spreads to the skin via the bloodstream following replication at some other site. Such infections originate by another route (eg, measles virus infections occur via the respiratory tract), and the skin becomes infected from below.

Lesions in skin rashes are designated as macules, papules, vesicles, or pustules. Macules, which are caused by local dilation of dermal blood vessels, progress to papules if edema and cellular infiltration are present in the area. Vesicles occur if the epidermis is involved, and they become pustules if an inflammatory reaction delivers polymorphonuclear leukocytes to the lesion. Ulceration and scabbing follow. Hemorrhagic and petechial rashes occur when there is more severe involvement of the dermal vessels.

Skin lesions frequently play no role in viral transmission. Infectious virus is not shed from the maculopapular rash of measles or from rashes associated with arbovirus infections. In contrast, skin lesions are important in the spread of poxviruses and herpes simplex viruses. Infectious virus particles are present in high titers in the fluid of these vesiculopustular rashes, and they are able to initiate infection by direct contact with other hosts. However, even in these instances, it is believed that virions in oropharyngeal secretions may be more important to disease transmission than the skin lesions.

Overview of Viral Infections of the Central Nervous System

Invasion of the central nervous system by viruses is always a serious matter. Viruses can gain access to the brain by two routes: by the bloodstream (hematogenous spread) and by peripheral nerve fibers (neuronal spread). Access from the blood may occur by growth through the endothelium of small cerebral vessels, by passive transport across the vascular endothelium, by passage through the choroid plexus to the cerebrospinal fluid, or by transport within infected monocytes, leukocytes, or lymphocytes. Once the blood-brain barrier is breached, more extensive spread throughout the brain and spinal cord is possible. There tends to be a correlation between the level of viremia achieved by a blood-borne neurotropic virus and its neuroinvasiveness.

The other pathway to the central nervous system is via peripheral nerves. Virions can be taken up at sensory nerve or motor endings and be moved within axons, through endoneural spaces, or by Schwann cell infections. Herpesviruses travel in axons to be delivered to dorsal root ganglia neurons.

The routes of spread are not mutually exclusive, and a virus may utilize more than one method. Many viruses, including herpes-, toga-, flavi-, entero-, rhabdo-, paramyxo-, and bunyaviruses, can infect the central nervous system and cause meningitis, encephalitis, or both. Encephalitis caused by herpes simplex virus is the most common cause of sporadic encephalitis in humans.

Pathologic reactions to cytocidal viral infections of the central nervous system include necrosis, inflammation, and phagocytosis by glial cells. The cause of symptoms in some other central nervous system infections, such as rabies, is unclear. The postinfectious encephalitis that occurs after measles infections (about one per 1000 cases) and more rarely after rubella infections is characterized by demyelination without neuronal degeneration and is probably an autoimmune disease.

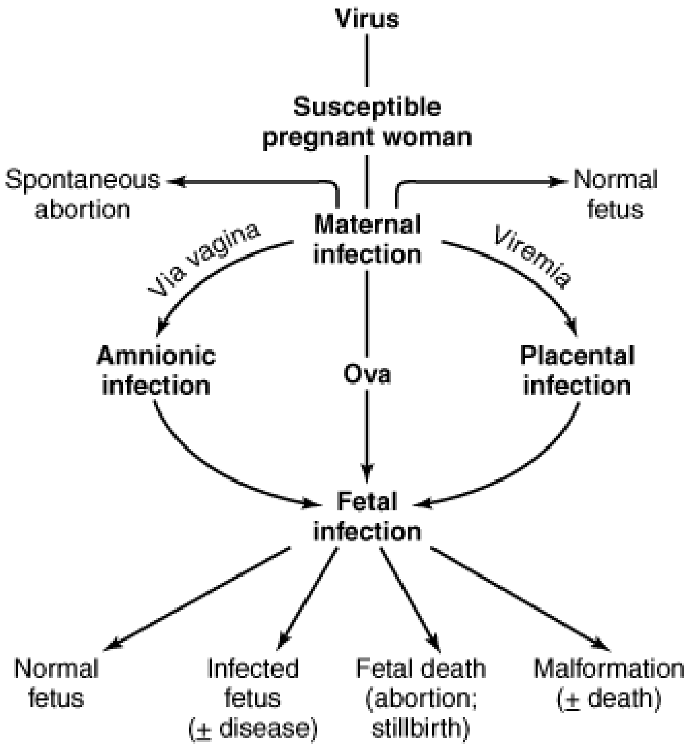
There are several rare neurodegenerative disorders, called slow virus infections, that are uniformly fatal. Features of these infections include a long incubation period (months to years) followed by the onset of clinical illness and progressive deterioration, resulting in death in weeks to months; usually only the central nervous system is involved. Some slow virus infections, such as progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (JC polyomavirus) and subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (measles virus), are caused by typical viruses. In contrast, the subacute spongiform encephalopathies, typified by scrapie, are caused by unconventional agents called prions. In those infections, characteristic neuropathologic changes occur, but no inflammatory or immune response is elicited.

Overview of Congenital Viral Infections

Few viruses produce disease in the human fetus. Most maternal viral infections do not result in viremia and fetal involvement. However, if the virus crosses the placenta and infection occurs in utero, serious damage may be done to the fetus.

Three principles involved in the production of congenital defects are (1) the ability of the virus to infect the pregnant woman and be transmitted to the fetus; (2) the stage of gestation at which infection occurs; and (3) the ability of the virus to cause damage to the fetus directly, by infection of the fetus, or indirectly, by infection of the mother resulting in an altered fetal environment (eg, fever). The sequence of events that may occur prior to and following viral invasion of the fetus is shown in Figure 306.

Figure 306.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Viral infection of the fetus.

(Courtesy of L Catalano and J Sever.)

Rubella virus and cytomegalovirus are presently the primary agents responsible for congenital defects in humans (see Chapters 33 and 40). Congenital infections can also occur with herpes simplex, varicella-zoster, hepatitis B, measles, and mumps virus and with HIV, parvovirus, and some enteroviruses (Table 305).

Table 305. Acquisition of Significant Perinatal Viral Infections.

Rubella
+
-
Rare
0.10.7
Cytomegalovirus
+
++
+
525
Herpes simplex
+
++
+

0.030.5
Varicella-zoster
+
Rare
Rare
Rare
Hepatitis B
+
++
+
07
Enterovirus
+
++
+
Uncommon
HIV
+
++
Rare
Variable
Parvovirus B19
+
-
Rare
Rare

	Frequency of Time of Infection			
Virus	Prenatal (In Utero)	Natal (during Delivery)	Postnatal (after Delivery)	Neonatal Incidence (Per 1000 Live Births)

In utero infections may result in fetal death, premature birth, intrauterine growth retardation, or persistent postnatal infection. Developmental malformations, including congenital heart defects, cataracts, deafness, microcephaly, and limb hypoplasia, may result. Fetal tissue is rapidly proliferating. Viral infection and multiplication may destroy cells or alter cell function. Lytic viruses, such as herpes simplex, may result in fetal death. Less cytolytic viruses, such as rubella, may slow the rate of cell division. If this occurs during a critical phase in organ development, structural defects and congenital anomalies may result.

Many of the same viruses can produce serious disease in newborns (Table 305). Such infections may be contracted from the mother during delivery (natal) from contaminated genital secretions, stool, or blood. Less commonly, infections may be acquired during the first few weeks after birth (postnatal) from maternal sources, family members, hospital personnel, or blood transfusions.

Effect of Host Age

Host age is a factor in viral pathogenicity. More severe disease is often produced in newborns. In addition to maturation of the immune response with age, there seem to be age-related changes in the susceptibility of certain cell types to viral infection. Viral infections usually can occur in all age groups but may have their major impact at different times of life. Examples include rubella, which is most serious during gestation; rotavirus, which is most serious for infants; and St. Louis encephalitis, which is most serious in the elderly.

PREVENTION & TREATMENT OF VIRAL INFECTIONS

Antiviral Chemotherapy

Unlike viruses, bacteria and protozoans do not rely on host cellular machinery for replication, so processes specific to these organisms provide ready targets for the development of antibacterial and antiprotozoal drugs. Because viruses are obligate intracellular parasites, antiviral agents must be capable of selectively inhibiting viral functions without damaging the host, making the development of such drugs very difficult. Another limitation is that many rounds of virus replication occur during the incubation period and the virus has spread before symptoms appear, making a drug relatively ineffective.

There is a need for antiviral drugs active against viruses for which vaccines are not available or not highly effectivethe latter perhaps because of a multiplicity of serotypes (eg, rhinoviruses) or because of a constantly changing virus (eg, influenza, HIV). Antivirals can be used to treat established infections when vaccines would not be effective. Antivirals are needed to reduce morbidity and economic loss due to viral infections and to treat increasing numbers of immunosuppressed patients who are at increased risk of infection.

Molecular virology studies are succeeding in identifying virus-specific functions that can serve as targets for antiviral therapy. The most amenable stages to target in viral infections include attachment of virus to host cells; uncoating of the viral genome; viral nucleic acid synthesis; translation of viral proteins; and assembly and release of progeny virus particles. In reality, it has been very difficult to develop antivirals that can distinguish viral from host replicative processes.

However, in the last decade a number of compounds have been developed that are of value in treatment of some viral diseases, particularly against herpesviruses and HIV infections (Table 306). Examples are summarized below. The mechanisms of action vary among antivirals. Oftentimes the drug must be activated by enzymes in the cell before it can act as an inhibitor of viral replication; the most selective drugs are activated by a virus-encoded enzyme in the infected cell.

Table 306. Examples of Antiviral Compounds Used for Treatment of Viral Infections.

Acyclovir
Yes
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Herpes simplex, varicella-zoster
Amantadine
No
Blocks viral uncoating
Influenza A
Cidofovir
No
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Cytomegalovirus, herpes simplex, polyomavirus
Didanosine (ddI)
Yes
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2

Foscarnet
No
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Herpesviruses, HIV-1, HBV
Fuzeon
No
HIV fusion inhibitor (blocks viral entry)
HIV-1
Ganciclovir
Yes
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Cytomegalovirus
Indinavir
No
HIV protease inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2
Lamivudine (3TC)
Yes
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2, HBV
Nevirapine
No
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1
Ribavirin
Yes
Perhaps blocks capping of viral mRNA
Respiratory syncytial virus, influenza A and B, Lassa fever, hepatitis C, others
Ritonavir
No
HIV protease inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2
Saquinavir
No
HIV protease inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2
Stavudine (d4T)
Yes
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2
Trifluridine
Yes
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus, vaccinia
Valacyclovir
Yes
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Herpesviruses
Vidarabine

Yes
Viral polymerase inhibitor
Herpesviruses, vaccinia, HBV
Zalcitabine (ddC)
Yes
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2, HBV
Zidovudine (AZT)
Yes
Reverse transcriptase inhibitor
HIV-1, HIV-2, HTLV-1

Drug	Nucleoside Analog	Mechanism of Action	Viral Spectrum[1]

[1] HIV-1, HIV-2, human immunodeficiency virus types 1 and 2; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HTLV-1, human T cell leukemia virus type 1.

Future work is necessary to learn how to minimize the emergence of drug-resistant variant viruses and to design more specific antivirals based on molecular insights into the structure and replication of different classes of agents.

NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGS

The majority of available antiviral agents are nucleoside analogs. They inhibit nucleic acid replication by inhibition of polymerases for nucleic acid replication. In addition, some analogs can be incorporated into the nucleic acid and block further synthesis or alter its function.

Analogs can inhibit cellular enzymes as well as virus-encoded enzymes. The most effective analogs are those able to specifically inhibit virus-encoded enzymes, with minimal inhibition of analogous host cell enzymes. Virus variants resistant to the drug usually arise over time, sometimes quite rapidly. The use of combinations of antiviral drugs can delay the emergence of resistant variants (eg, "triple drug" therapy used to treat HIV infections).

Examples of nucleoside analogs include acyclovir (Acycloguanosine), lamivudine (3TC), ribavirin, vidarabine (Adenine Arabinoside), and zidovudine (azidothymidine; AZT).

NUCLEOTIDE ANALOGS

Nucleotide analogs differ from nucleoside analogs in having an attached phosphate group. Their ability to persist in cells for long periods of time increases their potency. Cidofovir (HPMPC) is an example.

NONNUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS

Nevirapine was the first member of the class of nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. It does not require phosphorylation for activity and does not compete with nucleoside triphosphates. It acts by binding directly to reverse transcriptase and disrupting the enzyme's catalytic site. Resistant mutants emerge rapidly.

PROTEASE INHIBITORS

Saquinavir was the first protease inhibitor to be approved for treatment of HIV infection. It is a peptidomimetic agent designed by computer modeling as a molecule that fits into the active site of the HIV protease enzyme. Such drugs inhibit the viral protease that is required at the late stage of the replicative cycle to cleave the viral *gag* and *gag-pol* polypeptide precursors to form the mature virion core and activate the reverse transcriptase that will be used in the next round of infection. Inhibition of the protease yields noninfectious virus particles. Protease inhibitors include indinavir and ritonavir and others not listed here.

FUSION INHIBITOR

Fuzeon is a large peptide that blocks the virus and cellular membrane fusion step involved in entry of HIV-1 into cells.

OTHER TYPES OF ANTIVIRAL AGENTS

A number of other types of compounds have been shown to possess some antiviral activity under certain conditions.

Amantadine and Rimantadine

These synthetic amines specifically inhibit influenza A viruses by blocking viral uncoating. They must be administered prophylactically to have a significant protective effect.

Foscarnet (Phosphonoformic Acid, PFA)

Foscarnet, an organic analog of inorganic pyrophosphate, selectively inhibits viral DNA polymerases and reverse transcriptases at the pyrophosphate-binding site.

Methisazone

Methisazone is of historical interest as an inhibitor of poxviruses. It was the first antiviral agent to be described and contributed to the campaign to eradicate smallpox. It blocked a late stage in viral replication, resulting in the formation of immature, noninfectious virus particles.

Interferons

Interferons (IFNs) are host-coded proteins that are members of the large cytokine family and which inhibit viral replication. They are produced very quickly (within hours) in response to viral infection or other inducers and are one of the body's first responders in the defense against viral infection. Interferon was the first cytokine to be recognized. Interferons are central to the innate antiviral immune response. They also modulate humoral and cellular immunity and have broad cell growth regulatory activities, but the focus here will be on their antiviral effects.

PROPERTIES OF INTERFERONS

There are multiple species of interferons that fall into three general groups, designated IFN-α, IFN-β, and IFN-γ (Table 307). Both IFN-α and IFN-b are considered type I or viral IFNs, whereas IFN-γ is type II or immune IFN. The IFN-α family is large, being coded by at least 20 genes in the human genome; the IFN-β and IFN-γ families are coded by one gene each. The three gene families have diverged so that the coding sequences now are not closely related.

Table 307. Properties of Human Interferons.

Current nomenclature
IFN-α
IFN-β
IFN-γ
Former designation
Leukocyte
Fibroblast
Immune interferon
Type designation
Type I

Type I

Type II

Number of genes that code for family

≥ 20

1

1

Principal cell source

Most cell types

Most cell types

Lymphocytes

Inducing agent

Viruses; dsRNA

Viruses; dsRNA

Mitogens

Stability at pH 2.0

Stable

Stable

Labile

Glycosylated

No

Yes

Yes

Introns in genes

No

No

Yes

Homology with IFN-α

8095%

30%

< 10%

Chromosomal location of genes

9

9

12

Size of secreted protein (number of amino acids)

165

166

143

IFN receptor

IFNAR

IFNAR

IFNGR

Chromosomal location of IFN receptor genes

21

21

6

	Type		
Property	Alpha	Beta	Gamma

	Type		
Property	Alpha	Beta	Gamma

The different interferons are similar in size, but the three classes are antigenically distinct. IFN-α and IFN-β are resistant to low pH. IFN-β and IFN-γ are glycosylated, but the sugars are not necessary for biologic activity, so cloned interferons produced in bacteria are biologically active. Dendritic cells are potent interferon producers; under the same virus challenge conditions, dendritic cells can secrete up to 1000x more interferon than fibroblasts.

SYNTHESIS OF INTERFERONS

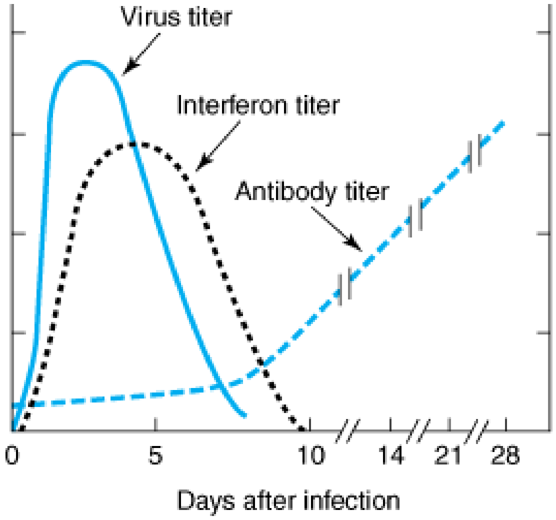
Interferons are produced by all vertebrate species. Normal cells do not generally synthesize interferon until they are induced to do so. Infection with viruses is a potent insult leading to induction; RNA viruses are stronger inducers of interferon than DNA viruses. Interferons also can be induced by double-stranded RNA, bacterial endotoxin, and small molecules such as tilorone. IFN-γ is not produced in response to most viruses but is induced by mitogen stimulation.

The different classes of interferon are produced by different cell types. IFN-α and IFN-β are synthesized by many cell types, but IFN-γ is produced mainly by lymphocytes, especially T cells and natural killer (NK) cells. Dendritic cells are potent interferon producers; under the same virus challenge conditions, dendritic cells can secrete up to 1000x more interferon than fibroblasts.

ANTIVIRAL ACTIVITY AND OTHER BIOLOGIC EFFECTS

Interferons were first recognized by their ability to interfere with viral infection in cultured cells. Interferons are detectable soon after viral infection in intact animals, and viral production then decreases (Figure 307). Antibody does not appear in the blood of the animal until several days after viral production has abated. This temporal relationship suggests that interferon plays a primary role in the nonspecific defense of the host against viral infections. This conclusion is also supported by observations that agammaglobulinemic individuals usually recover from primary viral infections about as well as normal people.

Figure 307.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Illustration of kinetics of interferon and antibody synthesis after respiratory viral infection. The temporal relationships suggest that interferons are involved in the host's early defense system against viral infections.

Interferon does not protect the virus-infected cell that produces it, and interferon itself is not the antiviral agent. Rather, interferon moves to other cells where it induces an antiviral state by prompting the synthesis of other proteins that actually inhibit viral replication. Interferon molecules bind to specific cell surface receptors on target cells. IFN-α and IFN-β have the same receptor, whereas IFN-γ recognizes a different receptor. Receptor binding triggers tyrosine phosphorylation and activation of transcription factors (STAT proteins) in the cytoplasm, which then translocate into the nucleus and mediate transcription of interferon-inducible genes (which occurs within minutes after interferon binding). This results in the synthesis of several enzymes believed to be instrumental in the development of the antiviral state. Several pathways appear to be involved, including the following: (1) a dsRNA-dependent protein kinase, PKR, which phosphorylates and inactivates cellular initiation factor eIF-2 and thus prevents formation of the initiation complex needed for viral protein synthesis; (2) an oligonucleotide synthetase, 2-5A synthetase, which activates a cellular endonuclease, RNase L, which in turn degrades mRNA; (3) a phosphodiesterase, which inhibits peptide chain elongation; and (4) nitric oxide synthetase, which is induced by IFN-γ in macrophages. These explanations, however, fail to reveal why the antiviral state acts selectively against viral mRNAs and not cellular mRNAs. Other steps in viral replication may also be inhibited by interferon.

Interferons are almost always host species-specific in function but are not specific for a given virus. The replication of a wide variety of DNA and RNA viruses can be inhibited. When interferon is added to cells prior to infection, there is marked inhibition of viral replication but nearly normal cell function. Interferons are extremely potent, so that very small amounts are required for function. It has been estimated that fewer than 50 molecules of interferon per cell are sufficient to induce the antiviral state.

VIRUS MECHANISMS TO COUNTERACT INTERFERON

Viruses display different mechanisms that block the inhibitory activities of interferons on virus replication, processes necessary to surmount this line of host defense. Examples include specific viral proteins may block induction of expression of interferon (herpesvirus, papillomavirus, filovirus, hepatitis C virus, rotavirus); may block the activation of the key PKR protein kinase (adenovirus, herpesviruses); may activate a cellular inhibitor of PKR (influenza, poliovirus); may block interferon-induced signal transduction (adenovirus, herpesviruses, hepatitis B virus); or may neutralize IFN-γ by acting as a soluble interferon receptor (myxoma virus).

CLINICAL STUDIES

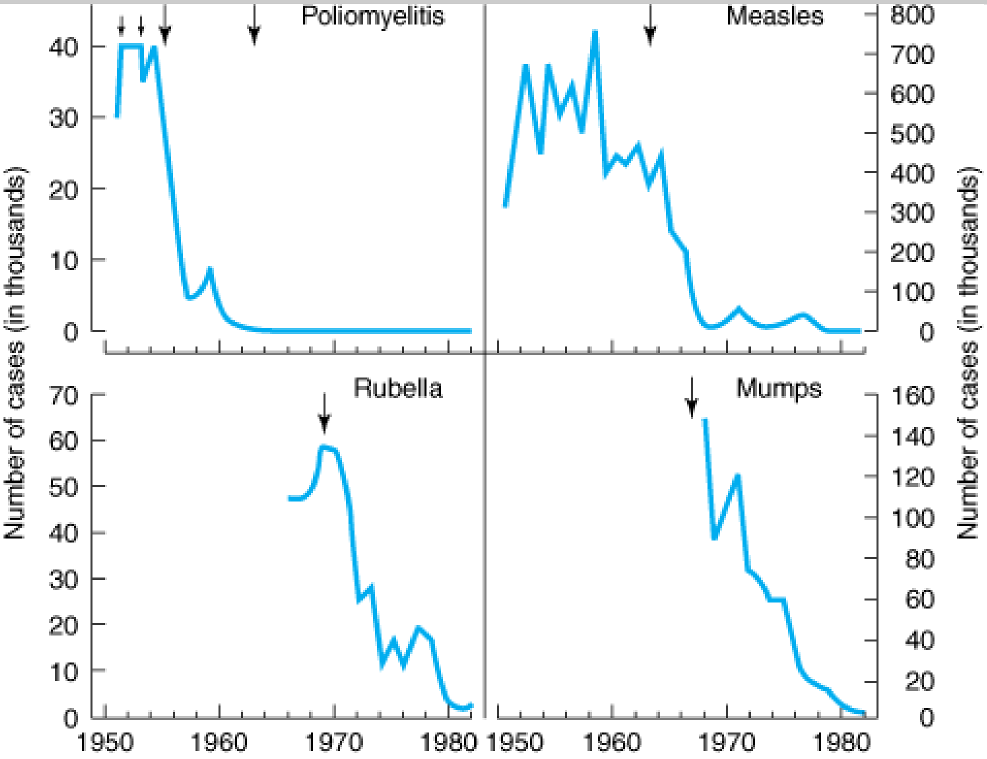
It was originally hoped that interferons might be the answer to prevention of many viral diseases, such as respiratory infections in which many different viruses may be involved. However, their use turns out to be impractical because for them to be effective, high doses must be given prior to virus exposure or early in infection before the appearance of clinical signs of disease. Recombinant IFN-α is beneficial in controlling hepatitis B and hepatitis C viral infections of the liver (Chapter 35), though relapse after cessation of treatment is common. Topical interferon in the eye may suppress herpetic keratitis and accelerate healing.

Several interferon preparations are approved for clinical use. Interferons cause many side effects, most commonly systemic and hematologic.

Viral Vaccines

The purpose of viral vaccines is to utilize the immune response of the host to prevent viral disease. Several vaccines have proved to be remarkably effective at reducing the annual incidence of viral disease (Figure 308). Vaccination is the most cost-effective method of prevention of serious viral infections.

Figure 308.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Annual incidence of various viral diseases in the United States. Date of introduction of vaccine indicated by arrow.

(Data compiled by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.)

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Immunity to viral infection is based on the development of an immune response to specific antigens located on the surface of virus particles or virus-infected cells. For enveloped viruses, the important antigens are the surface glycoproteins. Although infected animals may develop antibodies against virion core proteins or nonstructural proteins involved in viral replication, that immune response is believed to play little or no role in the development of resistance to infection.

Vaccines are available for the prevention of several significant human diseases. Currently available vaccines (Table 308) are described in detail in the chapters dealing with specific virus families and diseases.

Table 308. Virus Vaccines Approved in the United States (2006).

Common
Hepatitis A
Killed
Human diploid fibroblasts (MRC-5)
Hepatitis B
Subunit (HBsAg)
Yeast (recombinant DNA)
Influenza A and B
Killed
Embryonated chicken eggs
Influenza A and B
Live (intranasal)
Embryonated chicken eggs
Measles
Live
Chicken embryo fibroblasts
Mumps
Live
Embryonated chicken eggs and chicken embryo fibroblasts
Papilloma
Subunit (L1)
Yeast (recombinant DNA)
Poliovirus (IPV)
Killed
Monkey kidney cells (Vero)
Poliovirus (OPV)
Live
Monkey kidney cells
Rabies
Killed
Human diploid fibroblasts (MRC-5) or rhesus fetal lung diploid cells or chicken fibroblasts
Rotavirus[1]

Live
Monkey kidney cells (Vero)

Use	Vaccine	Type	Cell Substrate
	Rubella	Live	Human diploid fibroblasts (WI38)
	Varicella	Live	Human diploid fibroblasts (MRC-5)
	Zoster	Live	Human diploid fibroblasts (MRC-5)
Special situations	Adenovirus[2]	Live	Human diploid fibroblasts (WI-38)
	Japanese encephalitis[3]	Killed	Mouse brain
	Smallpox	Live	Calf lymph
	Yellow fever[3]	Live	Embryonated chicken eggs

---

[1] A live rotavirus vaccine was withdrawn from the market in 1999 because of an association with intussusception of infants. The vaccine approved in 2006 is different and has not been associated with intussusception.

[2] Used by United States military; no longer available.

[3] Used when traveling in endemic areas.

The pathogenesis of a particular viral infection influences the objectives of immunoprophylaxis. Mucosal immunity (local IgA) is important in resistance to infection by viruses that replicate exclusively in mucosal membranes (rhinoviruses, influenza viruses, rotaviruses). Viruses that have a viremic mode of spread (polio, hepatitis, measles) are controlled by serum antibodies. Cell-mediated immunity also is involved in protection against systemic infections (measles, herpes).

Certain characteristics of a virus or of a viral disease may complicate the generation of an effective vaccine. The existence of many serotypes, as with rhinoviruses, and of large numbers of animal reservoirs, as with influenza virus, makes vaccine production difficult. Other hurdles include the integration of viral DNA into host chromosomal DNA (retroviruses) and infection of cells of the host's immune system (HIV).

KILLED-VIRUS VACCINES

Inactivated (killed-virus) vaccines are made by purifying viral preparations to a certain extent and then inactivating viral infectivity in a way that does minimal damage to the viral structural proteins; mild formalin treatment is frequently used (Table 309). For some diseases, killed-virus vaccines are currently the only ones available.

Table 30-9. Comparison of Characteristics of Killed and Live Viral Vaccines.

Characteristic	Killed Vaccine	Live Vaccine
Number of doses	Multiple	Single
Need for adjuvant	Yes	No
Duration of immunity	Shorter	Longer
Effectiveness of protection (more closely mimics natural infection)	Lower	Greater
Immunoglobulins produced	IgG	IgA and IgG
Mucosal immunity produced	Poor	Yes
Cell-mediated immunity produced	Poor	Yes
Residual virulent virus in vaccine	Possible	No
Reversion to virulence	No	Possible
Excretion of vaccine virus and transmission to nonimmune contacts	No	Possible
Interference by other viruses in host	No	Possible
Stability at room temperature	High	Low

Killed-virus vaccines prepared from whole virions generally stimulate the development of circulating antibody against the coat proteins of the virus, conferring some degree of resistance.

Advantages of inactivated vaccines are that there is no reversion to virulence by the vaccine virus and that vaccines can be made when no acceptable attenuated virus is available.

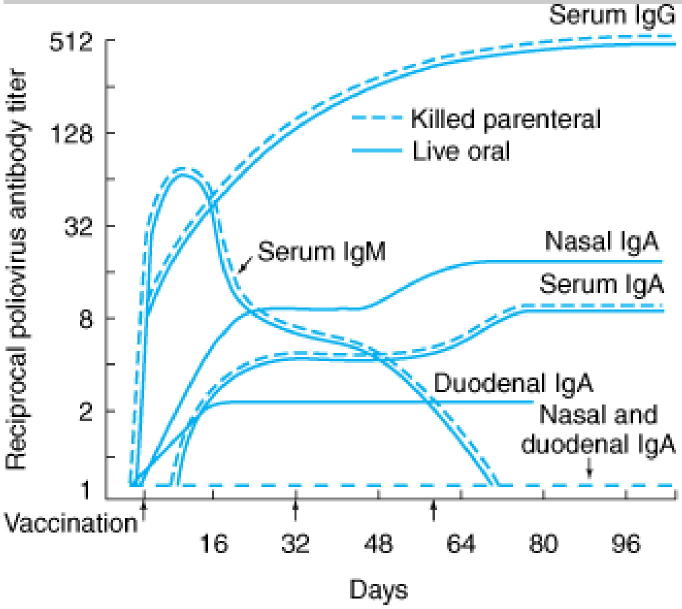
The following disadvantages apply to killed-virus vaccines:

(1) Extreme care is required in their manufacture to make certain that no residual live virulent virus is present in the vaccine.

(2) The immunity conferred is often brief and must be boosted, which not only involves the logistic problem of repeatedly reaching the persons in need of immunization but also has caused concern about the possible effects (hypersensitivity reactions) of repeated administration of foreign proteins.

(3) Parenteral administration of killed-virus vaccine, even when it stimulates circulating antibody (IgM, IgG) to satisfactory levels, has sometimes given limited protection because local resistance (IgA) is not induced adequately at the natural portal of entry or primary site of multiplication of the wild virus infectioneg, nasopharynx for respiratory viruses, alimentary tract for poliovirus (see Figure 309 and Chapters 36 and 39).

Figure 309.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Serum and secretory antibody response to orally administered, live attenuated poliovaccine and to intramuscular inoculation of killed poliovaccine.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Ogra PL et al: Rev Infect Dis 1980;2:352.)

(4) The cell-mediated response to inactivated vaccines is generally poor.

(5) Some killed-virus vaccines have induced hypersensitivity to subsequent infection, perhaps owing to an unbalanced immune response to viral surface antigens that fails to mimic infection with natural virus.

ATTENUATED LIVE-VIRUS VACCINES

Live-virus vaccines utilize virus mutants that antigenically overlap with wild-type virus but are restricted in some step in the pathogenesis of disease (Table 309).

The genetic basis for the attenuation of most viral vaccines is not known, as they were selected empirically by serial passages in animals or cell cultures (usually from a species different from the natural host). As more is learned about viral genes involved in disease pathogenesis, attenuated candidate vaccine viruses can be engineered in the laboratory.

Attenuated live-virus vaccines have the advantage of acting like the natural infection with regard to their effect on immunity. They multiply in the host and tend to stimulate longer-lasting antibody production, to induce a good cell-mediated response, and to induce antibody production and resistance at the portal of entry (Figure 309).

The disadvantages of attenuated live-virus vaccines include the following:

(1) The risk of reversion to greater virulence during multiplication within the vaccinee. Although reversion has not proved to be a problem in practice, its potential exists.

(2) Unrecognized adventitious agents latently infecting the culture substrate (eggs, primary cell cultures) may enter the vaccine stocks. Viruses found in vaccines have included avian leukosis virus, simian polyomavirus SV40, and simian cytomegalovirus. The problem of adventitious contaminants may be circumvented through the use of normal cells serially propagated in culture (eg, human diploid cell lines) as substrates for cultivation of vaccine viruses.

(3) The storage and limited shelf life of attenuated vaccines present problems, but this can be overcome in some cases by the use of viral stabilizers (eg, $MgCl_2$ for poliovaccine).

(4) Interference by coinfection with a naturally occurring, wild-type virus may inhibit replication of the vaccine virus and decrease its effectiveness. This has been noted with the vaccine strains of poliovirus, which can be inhibited by concurrent infections by various enteroviruses.

PROPER USE OF PRESENT VACCINES

One fact cannot be overemphasized: An effective vaccine does not protect against disease until it is administered in the proper dosage to susceptible individuals. Failure to reach all sectors of the population with complete courses of immunization is reflected in the continued occurrence of measles in unvaccinated persons. Preschool children in poverty areas are the least adequately vaccinated group in the United States.

Certain viral vaccines are recommended for use by the general public. Other vaccines are recommended only for use by persons at special risk due to occupation, travel, or lifestyle. In general, live-virus vaccines are contraindicated for pregnant women.

There was a theoretical possibility that antibody response might be diminished or that interference might occur if two or more live-virus vaccines were given at the same time. In practice, however, simultaneous administration of live-virus vaccines can be safe and effective. Trivalent live oral poliovaccine or a combined live measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine is effective. Antibody response to each component of these combination vaccines is comparable with antibody response to the individual vaccines given separately.

FUTURE PROSPECTS

Molecular biology and modern technologies are combining to devise novel approaches to vaccine development. Many of these approaches avoid the incorporation of viral nucleic acid in the final product, improving vaccine safety. Examples of what is ongoing in this field can be listed as follows. The ultimate success of these new approaches remains to be determined.

(1) Use of recombinant DNA techniques to insert the gene coding for the protein of interest into the genome of an avirulent virus that can be administered as the vaccine (such as vaccinia virus).

(2) Including in the vaccine only those subviral components needed to stimulate protective antibody, thus

minimizing the occurrence of adverse reactions to the vaccine.

(3) Use of purified proteins isolated from purified virus or synthesized from cloned genes (a recombinant hepatitis B virus vaccine contains viral proteins synthesized in yeast cells). Expression of cloned gene(s) sometimes results in formation of empty virus-like particles (VLPs).

(4) Use of synthetic peptides that correspond to antigenic determinants on a viral protein, thus avoiding any possibility of reversion to virulence since no viral nucleic acid would be presentalthough the immune response induced by synthetic peptides is considerably weaker than that induced by intact protein.

(5) Development of edible vaccines whereby transgenic plants synthesizing antigens from pathogenic viruses may provide new cost-effective ways of delivering vaccines.

(6) Use of naked DNA vaccinespotentially simple, cheap, and safein which recombinant plasmids carrying the gene for the protein of interest are injected into hosts and the DNA produces the immunizing protein.

(7) Administration of vaccine locally to stimulate antibody at the portal of entry (such as aerosol vaccines for respiratory disease viruses).

REFERENCES

Ada G: Vaccines and vaccination. N Engl J Med 2001;345:1042. [PMID: 11586958]

Alcami A, Koszinowski UH: Viral mechanisms of immune evasion. Trends Microbiol 2000;8:410. [PMID: 10989308]

Biron CA, Sen GC: Interferons and other cytokines. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Bonjardim CA: Interferons (IFNs) are key cytokines in both innate and adaptive antiviral immune responsesand viruses counteract IFN action. Microbes and Infection 2005;7:569. [PMID: 15792636]

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Recommended childhood and adolescent immunization scheduleUnited States, 2006. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2006;54(Nos. 51 & 52).

Espy MJ et al: Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: applications for routine laboratory testing. Clin Microbiol Rev 2006;19:165. [PMID: 16418529]

Hawley RJ, Eitzen EM Jr: Biological weaponsa primer for microbiologists. Annu Rev Microbiol 2001;55:235. [PMID: 11544355]

Immunization of health-care workers: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) and the Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC). MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1997;46(RR-18):1.

Pereira L, Maidji E, McDonagh S, Tabata T: Insights into viral transmission at the uterine-placental interface. Trends Microbiol 2005;13:164. [PMID: 15817386]

Preventing emerging infectious diseases: A strategy for the 21st century. Overview of the updated CDC plan. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1998;47(RR-15):1.

Tyler KL, Nathanson N: Pathogenesis of viral infections. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

INTRODUCTION

Parvoviruses are the simplest DNA animal viruses. Because of the small coding capacity of their genome, viral replication is dependent on functions supplied by replicating host cells or by coinfecting helper viruses. The only known parvovirus pathogenic for humans, B19, has a tropism for erythroid progenitor cells. It is the cause of erythema infectiosum ("fifth disease"), a common childhood exanthem; of a polyarthralgia-arthritis syndrome in normal adults; of aplastic crisis in patients with hemolytic disorders; of chronic anemia in immunocompromised individuals; and of fetal death.

PROPERTIES OF PARVOVIRUSES

Important properties of parvoviruses are listed in Table 31–1. It is noteworthy that there are both autonomously replicating and defective parvoviruses.

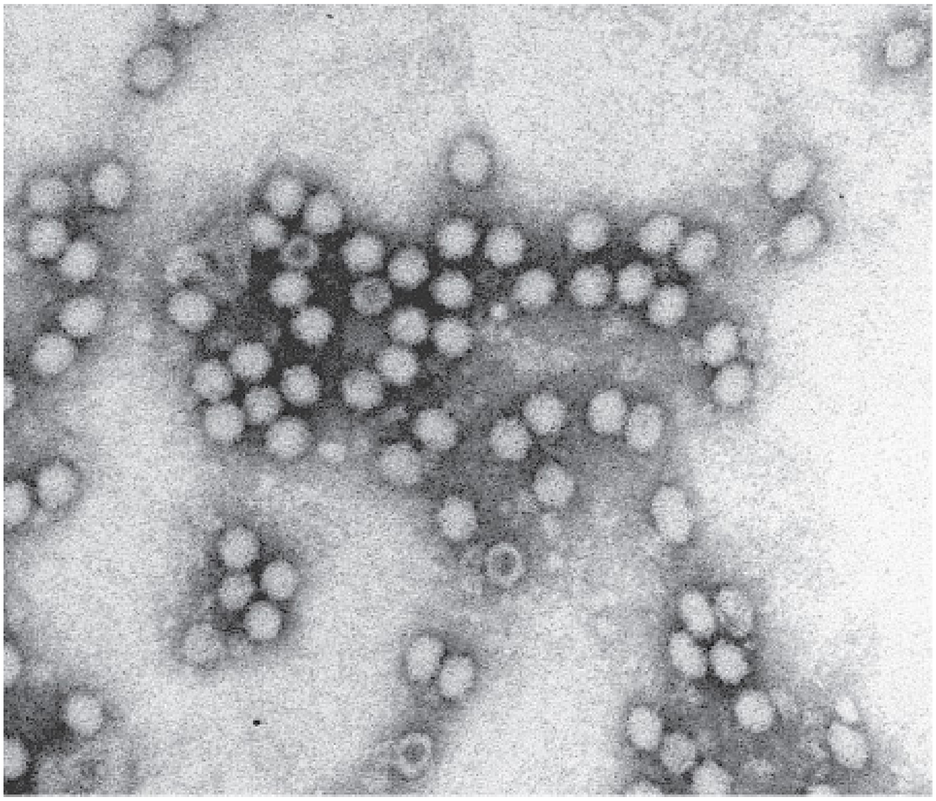
Table 31–1. Important Properties of Parvoviruses.

Virion: Icosahedral, 18–26 nm in diameter, 32 capsomeres
Composition: DNA (20%), protein (80%)
Genome: Single-stranded DNA, linear, 5.6 kb, MW 1.5–2.0 million
Proteins: One major (VP2) and one minor (VP1)
Envelope: None
Replication: Nucleus, dependent on functions of dividing host cells
Outstanding characteristics:
Very simple viruses
Human pathogen, B19, has tropism for red blood cell progenitors
One genus is replication-defective and requires a helper virus

Structure & Composition

The icosahedral, nonenveloped particles are 18–26 nm in diameter (Figure 31–1). The particles have a molecular weight of $5.5–6.2 \times 10^6$, a heavy buoyant density of 1.39–1.42 g/cm^3, and an $S_{20,w}$ of 110–122. Virions are extremely resistant to inactivation. They are stable between pH 3 and 9 and withstand heating at 56 °C for 60 minutes, but they can be inactivated by formalin, β-propiolactone, and oxidizing agents.

Figure 31–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of parvovirus particles.

(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

Virions contain two coat proteins that are encoded by an overlapping, in-frame DNA sequence, so that VP2 is identical in sequence to the carboxy portion of VP1. The major capsid protein, VP2, represents about 90% of virion protein. The genome is about 5 kb, linear, single-stranded DNA. An autonomous virus, B19, contains 5596 nucleotides, whereas a defective parvovirus, AAV-2, contains 4680 bases. Autonomous parvoviruses usually encapsidate primarily DNA strands complementary to viral mRNA; defective viruses tend to encapsidate DNA strands of both polarities with equal frequency into separate virions.

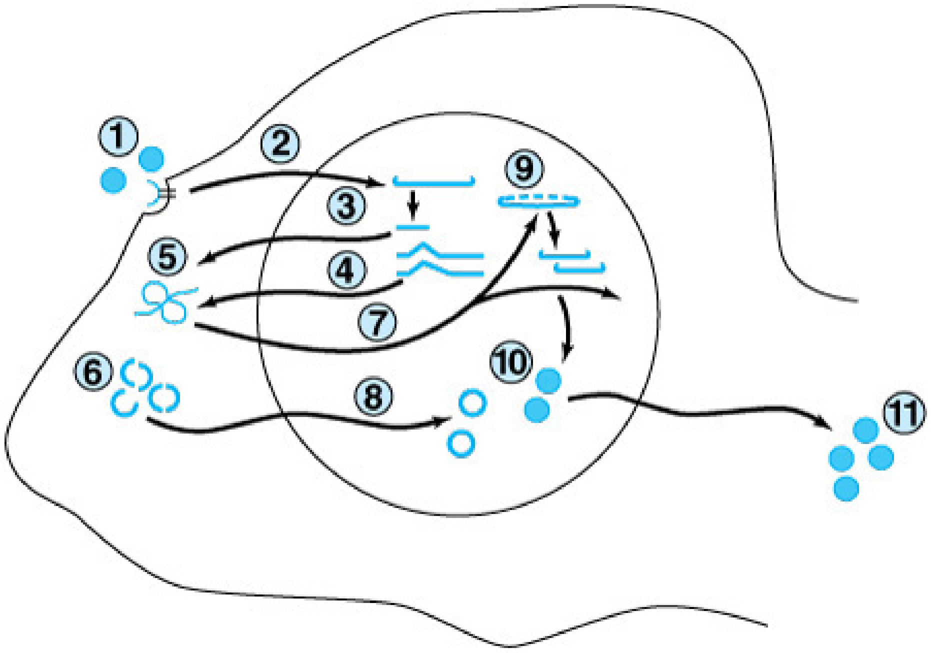
Classification

There are two subfamilies of Parvoviridae: the Parvovirinae, which infect vertebrates, and the Densovirinae, which infect insects. The Parvovirinae comprise three genera. Members of both the genus *Parvovirus* and the genus *Erythrovirus* are able to replicate autonomously in rapidly dividing cells. Feline panleukopenia virus and canine parvovirus, both serious causes of veterinary diseases, are classified as members of the *Parvovirus* genus, as are isolates from many other animals. Human parvovirus B19 is the most common member of the *Erythrovirus* genus. Two new human genotypes (types 2 and 3) were identified in humans recently (strains K71 and V9, respectively), each of which differs about 10% in nucleotide sequence from B19 (type 1). The genus *Dependovirus* contains members that are defective and depend on a helper virus (an adenovirus or herpesvirus) for replication. Human "adeno-associated viruses" have not been linked with any disease.

Parvovirus Replication

The replication cycle of human B19 parvovirus is summarized in Figure 31–2. Nonstructural viral protein NS1 is essential. The virus is highly tropic for human erythroid cells. The cellular receptor for B19 is blood group P antigen (globoside). P antigen is expressed on mature erythrocytes, erythroid progenitors, megakaryocytes, endothelial cells, placenta, and fetal liver and heart, which helps explain the narrow tissue tropism of B19 virus.

Figure 31–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Life cycle of B19 parvovirus. ① Binding to erythrocyte P antigen and entry; ② translocation of viral DNA to the nucleus; ③ transcription of nonstructural RNA and ④ later capsid protein RNA, followed by ⑤ protein translation. Not separable temporally are ⑥ capsid self-assembly, ⑦ nonstructural protein action on viral DNA, ⑧ capsid translocation to nucleus, ⑨ DNA replication, ⑩ insertion of DNA into intact capsids, and ⑪ virus release and cell lysis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Young NS: Parvoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

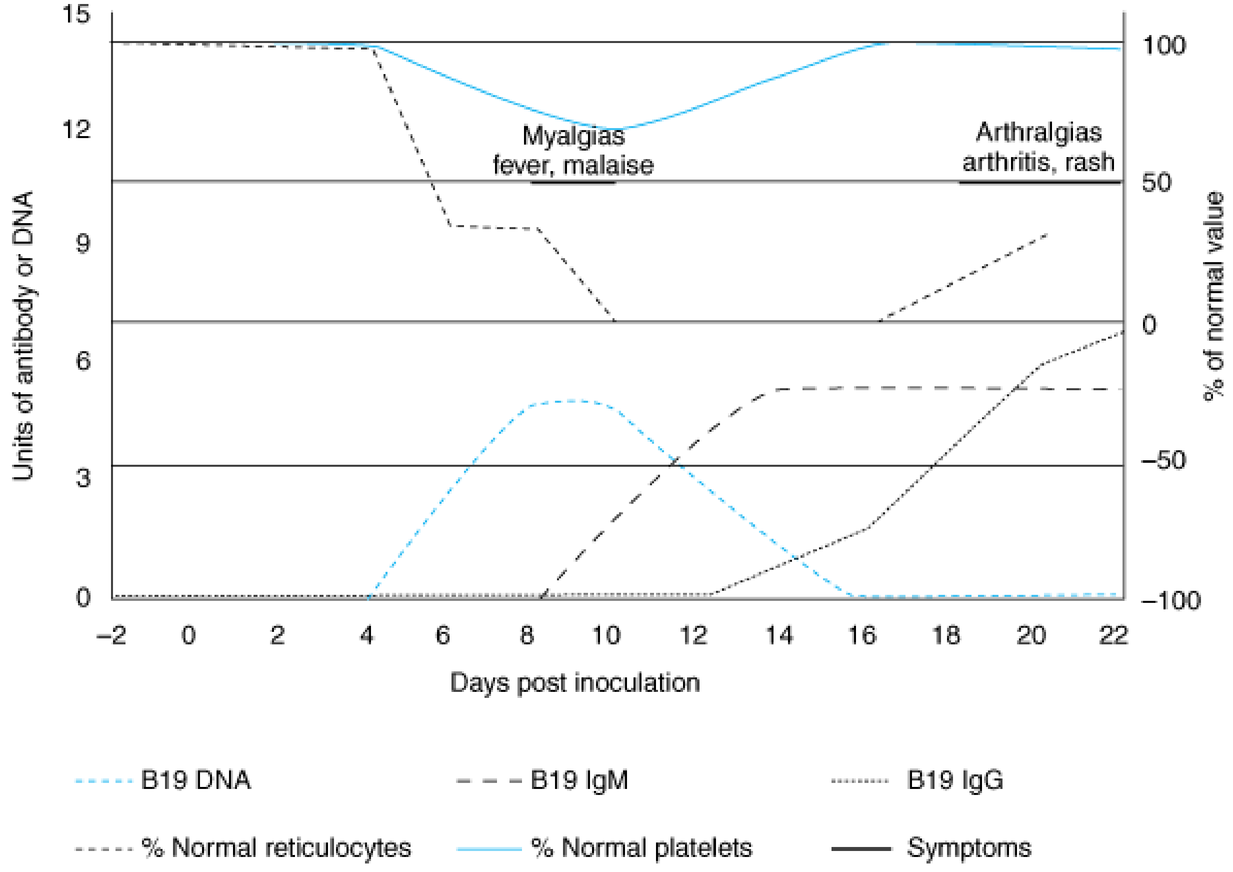
The parvoviruses are highly dependent on cellular functions for replication. Viral DNA replication occurs in the nucleus. It is necessary for the host cell to go through S phase, but the parvoviruses do not have the ability to stimulate resting cells to initiate DNA synthesis. One or more cellular DNA polymerases are involved; terminal sequences on the linear parvovirus DNA are used as primers to initiate DNA synthesis. There are two capsid proteins. The nonstructural protein, which is required for virus replication, may be important in the pathogenesis of some B19-associated diseases by modulating host cell genes. Viral replication results in cell death.

PARVOVIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

Pathogenesis & Pathology

A typical course of human parvovirus B19 infection in adults is illustrated in Figure 31–3. B19 has been implicated as the causative agent of several diseases (Table 31–2). Immature cells in the erythroid lineage are principal targets for human B19 parvovirus. Hence, the major sites of virus replication in patients are assumed to be the adult marrow, some blood cells, and the fetal liver. Viral replication causes cell death, interrupting red cell production. In immunocompromised patients, persistent B19 infections occur, resulting in chronic anemia. In cases of fetal death, chronic infections may have caused severe anemia in the fetus.

Figure 31–3.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Clinical and laboratory findings during the course of human parvovirus B19 infection in adult volunteers. The first phase of illness with flu-like symptoms coincides with viremia (days 6–12); the second phase of illness with rash appears on about day 18.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Anderson LJ: Human parvovirus B19. In: *Clinical Virology,* 2nd ed. Richman DD, Whitley RJ, Hayden FG [editors]. ASM Press, 2002; data taken from Anderson MJ et al: Experimental parvoviral infection in humans. J Infect Dis 1985;152:257.)

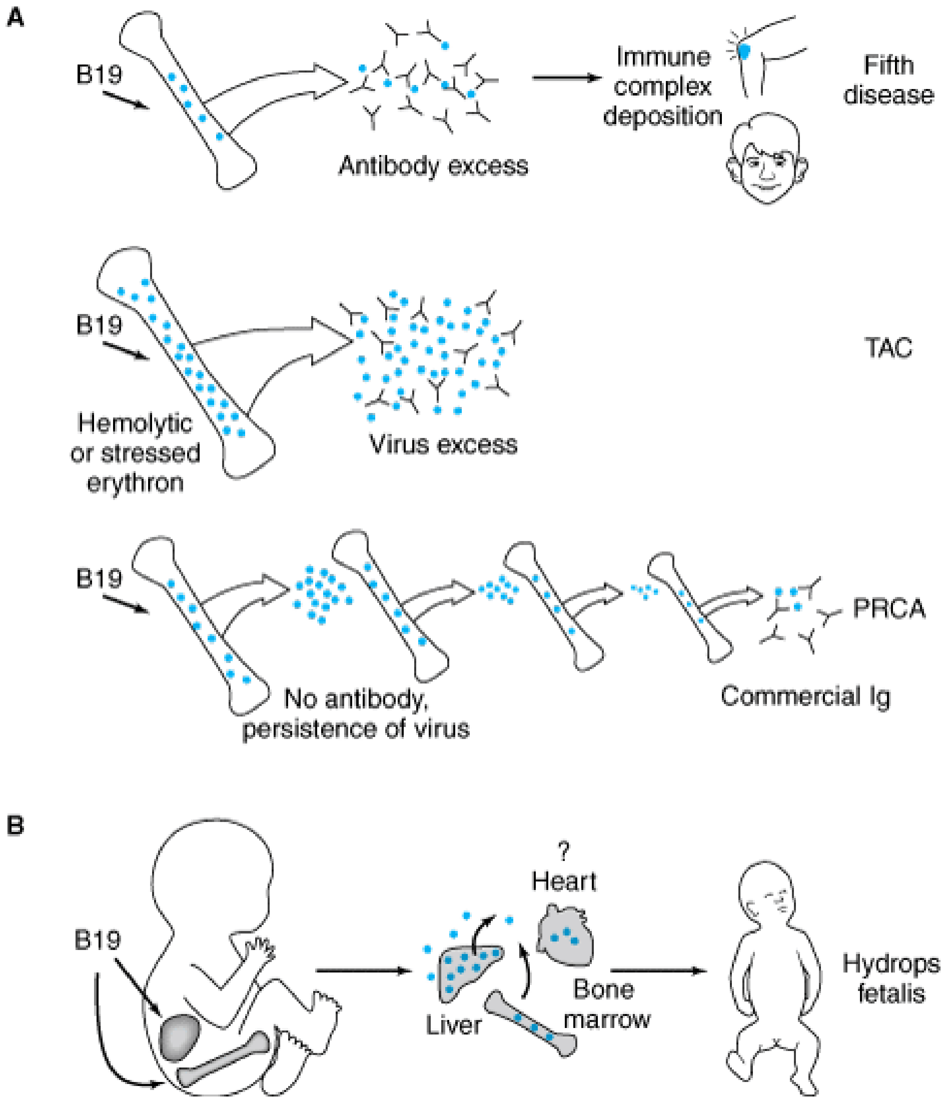
Table 31–2. Human Diseases Associated with B19 Parvovirus.[1]

Syndrome	Host or Condition	Clinical Features
Erythema infectiosum	Children (fifth disease)	Cutaneous rash
	Adults	Arthralgia-arthritis
Transient aplastic crisis	Underlying hemolysis	Severe acute anemia
Pure red cell aplasia	Immunodeficiencies	Chronic anemia
Hydrops fetalis	Fetus	Fatal anemia

[1] Modified from Young NS: Parvoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al (editors). Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

As nondefective parvoviruses require dividing host cells in order to replicate, known parvovirus diseases reflect that target specificity (Figure 31–4).

Figure 31–4.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Pathogenesis of diseases caused by B19 parvovirus. A: In children and adults. (TAC, transient aplastic crisis; PRCA, pure red cell aplasia.) B: In fetal infections.

(Modified, with permission, from Young NS: Parvoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Both virus-specific IgM and IgG antibodies are made following B19 infections. Persistent parvovirus infections occur in patients with immune deficiencies who fail to make virus-neutralizing antibodies, resulting in anemia. Persistence of low levels of B19 DNA, and to a lesser extent virus type 2 DNA, has also been detected in blood, skin, tonsil, liver, and synovial tissues of immunocompetent volunteers. The rash associated with erythema infectiosum is at least partly immune complex-mediated.

B19 can be found in blood and respiratory secretions of infected patients. Transmission is presumably by the respiratory route. There is no evidence of virus excretion in feces or urine. The virus can be transmitted parenterally by blood transfusions or by infected blood products (clotting and immunoglobulin concentrates) and vertically from mother to fetus. Because B19 is resistant to harsh treatments that inactivate enveloped viruses, some clotting factor concentrates end up contaminated. The prevalence of antibodies to B19 is higher among hemophiliacs than the general population; however, the minimal level of virus in blood products able to cause infections is not known.

Several pathogenic parvoviruses of animals replicate in intestinal mucosal cells and cause enteritis.

Clinical Findings

ERYTHEMA INFECTIOSUM (FIFTH DISEASE)

The most common manifestation of human parvovirus B19 infection is erythema infectiosum, or fifth disease. This erythematous illness is most common in children of early school age and occasionally affects adults. Mild constitutional symptoms may accompany the rash, which has a typical "slapped cheek" appearance. Both sporadic cases and epidemics have been described. Joint involvement is a prominent feature in adult cases; joints in the hands and the knees are most frequently affected. The symptoms mimic rheumatoid arthritis, and the arthropathy may persist for weeks, months, or years.

The incubation period is usually 1–2 weeks but may extend to 3 weeks. Viremia occurs 1 week after infection and persists for about 5 days. During the period of viremia, virus is present in nasal washes and gargle specimens, identifying the upper respiratory tract—most probably the pharynx—as the site of viral shedding. The first phase of illness occurs at the end of the first week; symptoms are flu-like, including fever, malaise, myalgia, chills, and itching. The first episode of illness coincides in time with viremia and reticulocytopenia and with detection of circulating IgM-parvovirus immune complexes. After an incubation period of about 17 days, a second phase of illness begins. The appearance of an erythematous facial rash and a lace-like rash on the limbs or trunk may be accompanied by joint symptoms, especially in adults. The illness is short-lived, with the rash fading after 2–4 days, although the joint symptoms may persist longer. Specific IgG antibodies appear about 15 days postinfection.

TRANSIENT APLASTIC CRISIS

Parvovirus B19 is the cause of transient aplastic crisis that may complicate chronic hemolytic anemia, eg, in patients with sickle cell disease, thalassemias, and acquired hemolytic anemias in adults. Transient aplastic crisis may also occur after bone marrow transplantation. The syndrome is an abrupt cessation of red blood cell synthesis in the bone marrow and is reflected in the absence of erythroid precursors in the marrow, accompanied by a rapid worsening of anemia. The infection lowers production of erythrocytes, causing a reduction in the hemoglobin level of peripheral blood. The temporary arrest of production of red blood cells becomes apparent only in patients with chronic hemolytic anemia because of the short life span of their erythrocytes; a 7-day interruption in erythropoiesis would not be expected to cause detectable anemia in a normal person. Few anemia patients have a rash. Symptoms of transient aplastic crisis occur during the viremic phase of infection.

INFECTION IN IMMUNODEFICIENT PATIENTS

B19 may establish persistent infections and cause chronic suppression of bone marrow and chronic anemia in immunocompromised patients. The disease is called pure red cell aplasia. The anemia is severe, and patients are dependent on blood transfusions. It has been observed in patient populations with congenital immunodeficiency, malignancies, AIDS, and organ transplants.

INFECTION DURING PREGNANCY

Maternal infection with B19 virus may pose a serious risk to the fetus, resulting in hydrops fetalis and fetal death due to severe anemia. The overall risk of human parvovirus infection during pregnancy is low; fetal loss occurs in less than 10% of primary maternal infections. Fetal death occurs most commonly before the 20th week of pregnancy. Although there is frequent intrauterine transmission of human parvovirus (with estimates of vertical transmission rates of 30% or higher), there is no evidence that B19 infection causes physical abnormalities.

MISCELLANEOUS

B19 infections have been associated with a number of other diseases, but the role of the virus, if any, remains to be established. These diseases include a range of cardiovascular, dermatologic, hematologic, hepatic, neurologic, renal, respiratory, and rheumatic disorders.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The most sensitive tests detect viral DNA. Available tests are polymerase chain reaction, probe hybridization of serum or tissue extracts, and in situ hybridization of fixed tissue. Polymerase chain reaction is the most sensitive assay. B19 DNA has been detected in serum, blood cells, tissue samples, and respiratory secretions. During acute infections, viral loads in the blood can reach approximately 10^{11} genome copies/mL. PCR assays based on B19 may miss non-B19 strains due to sequence differences.

Serologic assays based on recombinant parvovirus antigens produced in vitro using bacterial or baculovirus expression systems are used to measure antibodies. VP2 virus-like particles appear to be optimal as antigen for antibody detection. Detection of B19 IgM antibody is indicative of recent infection; it is present for 2–3 months after infection. B19 IgG antibody against conformational epitopes on VP1 and VP2 persists for years, although antibody responses against linear epitopes decline within months postinfection. Antibody may not be found in immunodeficient patients with chronic B19 infections. In those patients, chronic infection is diagnosed by detecting viral DNA.

Antigen detection assays can identify high-titered virus in clinical samples. Immunohistochemistry has been used to detect B19 antigens in fetal tissues and in bone marrow.

The virus is difficult to grow. Virus isolation is not used to detect infection.

Epidemiology

The B19 virus is widespread. Infections can occur throughout the year, in all age groups, and as outbreaks or as sporadic cases. Infections are most commonly seen as outbreaks in schools. Parvovirus infection is common in childhood; antibody most often develops between the ages of 5 and 19 years. Up to 60% of all adults and 90% of elderly people are seropositive.

Infection seems to be transmitted via the respiratory tract. The viruses are stable in the environment, and contaminated surfaces may also be involved in transmission. Transfer among siblings and children in schools and daycare centers is the main path of transmission. The source of maternal infection during pregnancy is often the mother's older child. Many infections are subclinical. Estimates of attack rates in susceptible contacts range from 20% to 50%.

Transmission of B19 from patients with aplastic crisis to members of the hospital staff has been documented. Patients with aplastic crisis are likely to be infectious during the course of their illness, whereas patients with fifth disease are probably no longer infectious by the time of onset of rash.

Treatment

Fifth disease and transient aplastic crisis are treated symptomatically. The latter may require transfusion therapy.

Commercial immunoglobulin preparations contain neutralizing antibodies to human parvovirus. They can sometimes ameliorate persistent B19 infections in immunocompromised patients and in those with anemia.

Prevention & Control

There is no vaccine against human parvovirus, though prospects are good that a vaccine can be developed. There are effective vaccines against animal parvoviruses for use in cats, dogs, and pigs. There is no antiviral drug therapy.

Good hygienic practices, such as hand washing and not sharing drinks, should help prevent the spread of B19 through respiratory secretions, aerosols, and fomites. Standard infection control practices should be followed to prevent transmission of B19 to health care workers from patients with aplastic crisis and from immunodeficient patients with chronic B19 infection.

REFERENCES

Azzi A, Morfini M, Mannucci PM: The transfusion-associated transmission of parvovirus B19. Transfusion Med Rev 1999;13:194. [PMID: 10425692]

Corcoran A, Doyle S: Advances in the biology, diagnosis, and host-pathogen interactions of parvovirus B19. J Med Microbiol 2004;53:459. [PMID: 15150324]

Faisst S, Rommelaere J (editors): *Parvoviruses: From Molecular Biology to Pathology and Therapeutic Uses.* Karger, 2000.

Magro CM, Dawood MR, Crowson AN: The cutaneous manifestations of human parvovirus B19 infection. Hum Pathol 2000;31:488. [PMID: 10821497]

Norja P et al: Bioportfolio: Lifelong persistence of variant and prototypic erythrovirus DNA genomes in human tissue. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006;103:7450. [PMID: 16651522]

Parrish CR: Molecular epidemiology of parvoviruses. Semin Virol 1995;6:415.

Saldanha J et al: Establishment of the first World Health Organization International Standard for human parvovirus B19 DNA nucleic acid amplification techniques. Vox Sang 2002;82:24. [PMID: 11856464]

INTRODUCTION

Adenoviruses can replicate and produce disease in the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and urinary tracts and in the eye. Many adenovirus infections are subclinical, and virus may persist in the host for months. About one-third of the 51 known human serotypes are responsible for most cases of human adenovirus disease. A few types serve as models for cancer induction in animals. Adenoviruses are especially valuable systems for molecular and biochemical studies of eukaryotic cell processes.

PROPERTIES OF ADENOVIRUSES

Important properties of adenoviruses are listed in Table 321.

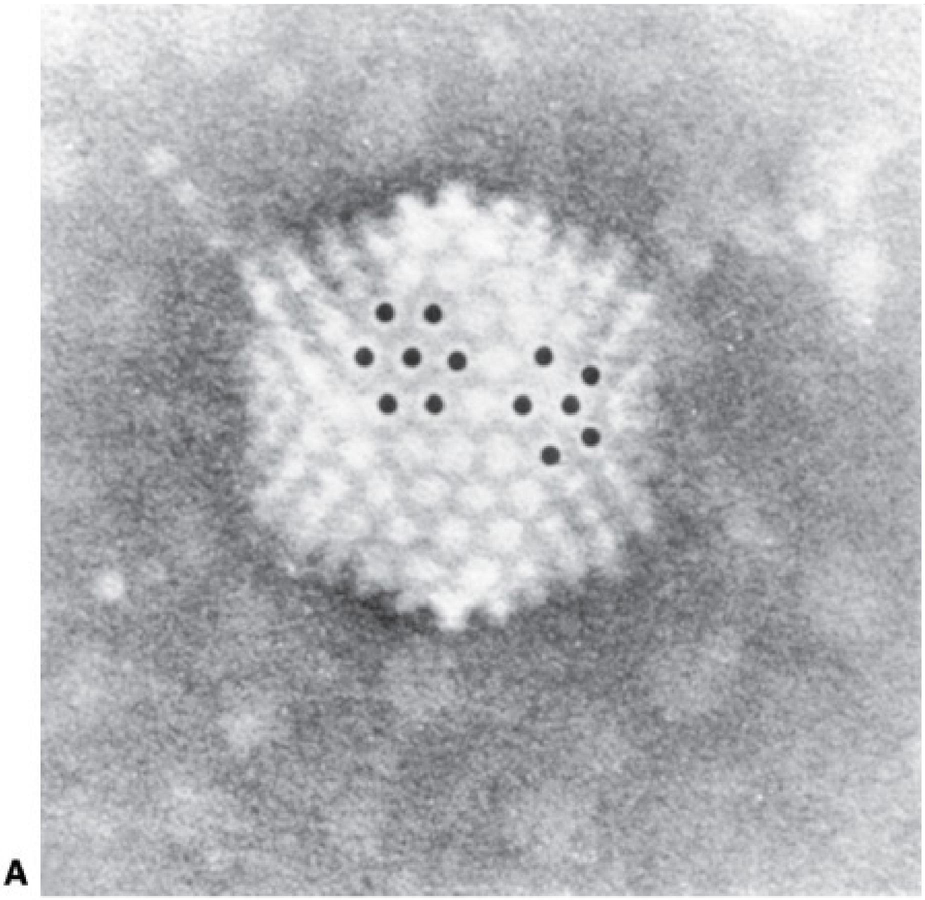
Table 321. Important Properties of Adenoviruses.

Virion: Icosahedral, 7090 nm in diameter, 252 capsomeres; fiber projects from each vertex
Composition: DNA (13%), protein (87%)
Genome: Double-stranded DNA, linear, 2645 kbp, protein-bound to termini, infectious
Proteins: Important antigens (hexon, penton base, fiber) are associated with the major outer capsid proteins
Envelope: None
Replication: Nucleus
Outstanding characteristics: Excellent models for molecular studies of eukaryotic cell processes

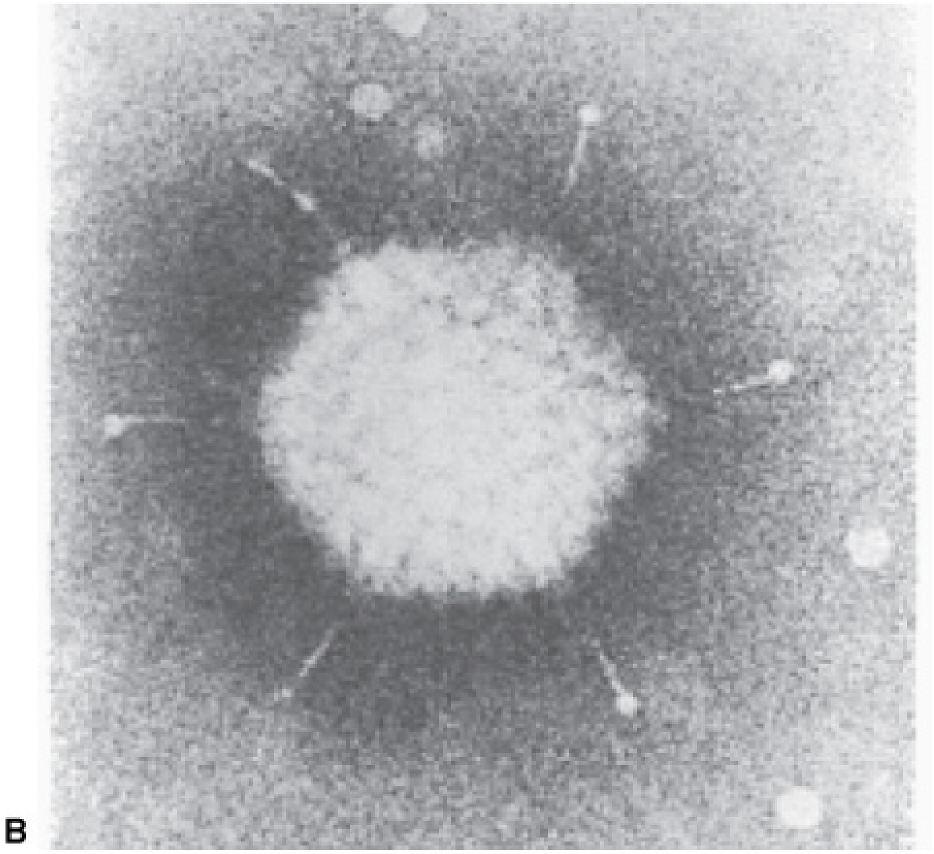
Structure & Composition

Adenoviruses are 7090 nm in diameter and display icosahedral symmetry, with capsids composed of 252 capsomeres. There is no envelope. Adenoviruses contain 13% DNA and 80% protein. The particle has an estimated molecular weight of 150180 x 10^6 . Adenoviruses are unique among icosahedral viruses in that they have a structure called a "fiber" projecting from each of the 12 vertices, or penton bases (Figures 321 and 322). The rest of the capsid is composed of 240 hexon capsomeres. The hexons, pentons, and fibers constitute the major adenovirus antigens important in viral classification and disease diagnosis.

Figure 321.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

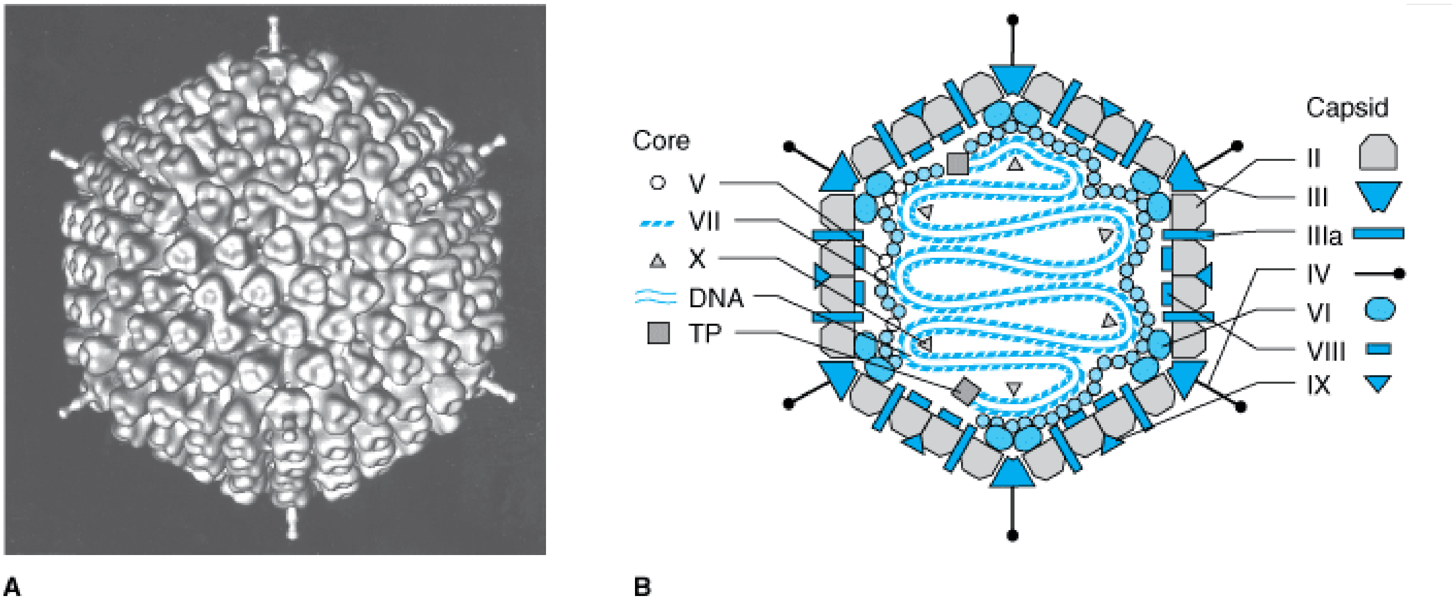


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrographs of adenovirus. A: The viral particle displays cubic symmetry and is nonenveloped. A hexon capsomere (surrounded by six identical hexons) and a penton capsomere (surrounded by five hexons) are marked with dots. B: Note the fiber structures projecting from the vertex penton capsomeres (285,000 x).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Valentine RC, Pereira HG: Antigens and structure of the adenovirus. J Mol Biol 1965;13 :13.)

Figure 322.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Models of the adenovirus virion. A: A three-dimensional image reconstruction of the intact adenovirus particle viewed along an icosahedral threefold axis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Stewart PL et al: Image reconstruction reveals the complex molecular organization of adenovirus. Cell 1991;67:145. Copyright 1991 by Cell Press.)

B: A stylized section of the adenovirus particle showing polypeptide components and DNA. No real section of the icosahedral virion would contain all components. Virion constituents are designated by their polypeptide numbers with the exception of the terminal protein (TP).

(Reproduced from Stewart PL, Burnett RM: Adenovirus structure as revealed by x-ray crystallography, electron microscopy and difference imaging. Jpn J Appl Phys 1993;32:1342.)

The DNA (2645 kbp) is linear and double-stranded. The entire DNA sequences of genomes of many adenovirus types are known. The viral genome for type 2 contains 36,000 base pairs. The guanine-plus-cytosine content of the DNA is lowest (4849%) in group A (types 12, 18, and 31) adenoviruses, the most strongly oncogenic types, and ranges as high as 61% in other types. This is one criterion used in grouping human isolates. Viral DNA contains a virus-encoded protein that is covalently linked to each 5' end of the linear genome. The DNA can be isolated in an infectious form, and the relative infectivity of that DNA is reduced at least 100-fold if the terminal protein is removed by proteolysis. The DNA is condensed in the core of the virion; a virus-encoded protein, polypeptide VII (Figure 322B), is important in forming the core structure.

There are an estimated 11 virion proteins; their structural positions in the virion are shown in Figure 322B. Hexon and penton capsomeres are the major components on the surface of the virus particle. There are group- and type-specific epitopes on both the hexon and fiber polypeptides. All human adenoviruses display this common hexon antigenicity. Pentons occur at the 12 vertices of the capsid and have fibers protruding from them. The penton base carries a toxin-like activity that causes rapid appearance of cytopathic effects and detachment of cells from the surface on which they are growing. Another group-reactive antigen is exhibited by the penton base. The fibers contain type-specific antigens that are important in serotyping. Fibers are associated with hemagglutinating activity. Because the hemagglutinin is type-specific, HI tests are commonly used for typing isolates. It is possible, however, to recover isolates that are recombinants and give discordant reactions in Nt and HI assays.

Classification

Adenoviruses have been recovered from a wide variety of species and grouped into two genera: one that infects birds *(Aviadenovirus)* and another that infects mammals *(Mastadenovirus)*. At least 51 distinct antigenic types have been isolated from humans and many other types from various animals.

Human adenoviruses are divided into six groups (AF) on the basis of their physical, chemical, and biologic properties (Table 322). Adenoviruses of a given group have fibers of a characteristic length, display considerable DNA homology (> 85%, as compared to < 20% with members of other groups), and exhibit similar capacities to agglutinate erythrocytes from either monkeys or rats. Members of a given adenovirus group resemble one another in the guanine-plus-cytosine content of their DNA and in their potential to produce tumors in newborn rodents. Importantly, viruses within a group tend to behave similarly with respect to epidemiologic spread and disease association.

Table 322. Classification Schemes for Human Adenoviruses.

A	12, 18, 31	IV	None	4849	High	+
B	3, 7, 11, 14, 16, 21, 34, 35, 50	I	Monkey (complete)	5052	Moderate	+
C	1, 2, 5, 6	III	Rat (partial)	5759	Low or none	+
D	810, 13, 15, 17, 19, 20, 2230, 32, 33, 3639, 4249, 51	II	Rat (complete)	5761	Low or none[3]	+
E						

4
III
Rat (partial)
57
Low or none
+
F
40, 41
III
Rat (partial)
5759
Low or none
+

		Hemagglutination			Oncogenic Potential	
Group	Serotypes	Group	Result	Percentage of G + C[1] in DNA	Tumorigenicity In Vivo[2]	Transformation of Cells

[1] Guanine plus cytosine.

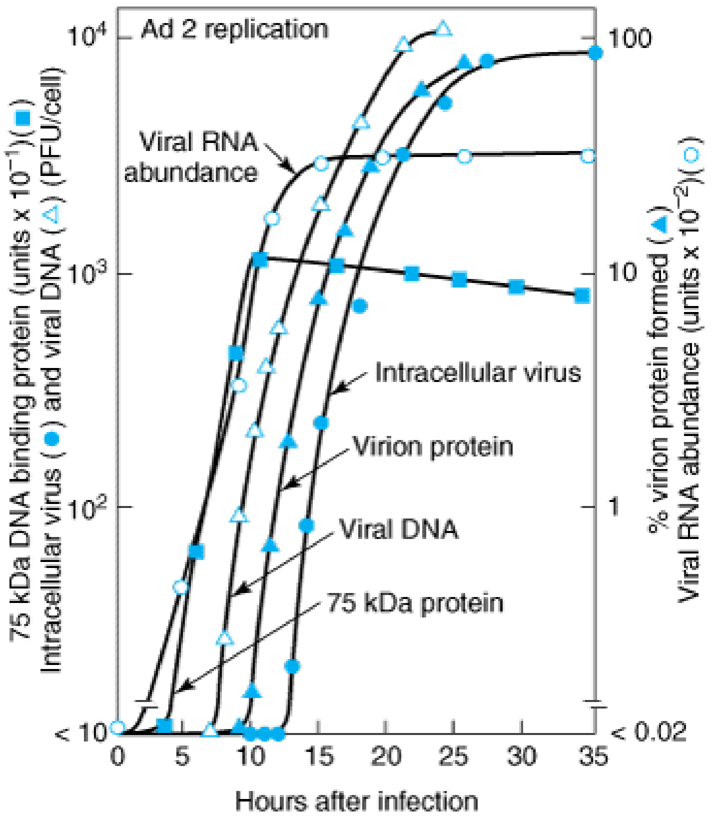
[2] Tumor induction in newborn hamsters.

[3] Adenovirus 9 can induce mammary tumors in rats.

Adenovirus Replication

Adenoviruses replicate well only in cells of epithelial origin. The replicative cycle is sharply divided into early and late events. The carefully regulated expression of sequential events in the adenovirus cycle is summarized in Figure 323. The distinction between early and late events is not absolute in infected cells; early genes continue to be expressed throughout the cycle; a few genes begin to be expressed at "intermediate" times; and low levels of late gene transcription may occur soon after infection.

Figure 323.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Time course of adenovirus replication cycle. The time between infection and the first appearance of progeny virus is the eclipse period. Note the sequential regulation of specific events in the virus replication cycle. "PFU" means "plaque-forming unit," a measure of infectious virus.

(Courtesy of M Green.)

VIRUS ATTACHMENT, PENETRATION, AND UNCOATING

The virus attaches to cells via the fiber structures. The host cell receptor for some serotypes is CAR (coxsackie-adenovirus receptor), a member of the immunoglobulin gene superfamily. The interaction of the penton base with cellular integrins following attachment promotes the internalization step. Adsorption and internalization are separate steps in the adenovirus infection process, requiring the interaction of fiber and penton proteins with different cellular target proteins. Adsorbed virus is internalized into endosomes; the majority of particles (˜ 90%) move rapidly from endosomes into the cytosol (half-life ˜ 5 minutes) by a process triggered by the acidic pH of the endosome. Microtubules are probably involved in the transport of virus particles across the cytoplasm to the nucleus. Uncoating commences in the cytoplasm and is completed in the nucleus, with release of the DNA perhaps occurring at the nuclear membrane. Uncoating is an organized, sequential process that systematically breaks down the stabilizing interactions that were established during maturation of the virus particle.

EARLY EVENTS

The steps that occur before the onset of viral DNA synthesis are defined as early events. The goals of the early events are to induce the host cell to enter the S phase of the cell cycle to create conditions conducive to viral replication, to express viral functions that protect the infected cell from host defense mechanisms, and to synthesize viral gene products needed for viral DNA replication.

The early ("E") transcripts come from seven widely separated regions of the viral genome and from both viral DNA strands. More than 20 early proteins, many of which are nonstructural and are involved in viral DNA replication, are synthesized in adenovirus-infected cells. The E1A early gene is especially important; it must be expressed in order for the other early regions to be transcribed. Modulation of the cell cycle is accomplished by the E1A gene products. The E1B early region encodes proteins that block cell death (apoptosis) that occurs due to E1A functions; this is necessary to prevent premature cell death that would adversely affect virus yields. The E1A and E1B regions contain the only adenovirus genes involved in cell transformation, since those gene products bind up cellular proteins (eg, pRb, p300, p53) that regulate cell cycle progression. The early proteins are represented by the 75-kDa DNA-binding protein shown in Figure 323.

REPLICATION OF VIRAL DNA AND LATE EVENTS

Viral DNA replication takes place in the nucleus. The virus-encoded, covalently linked terminal protein functions as a primer for initiation of viral DNA synthesis.

Late events begin concomitantly with the onset of viral DNA synthesis. The major late promoter controls the expression of the late ("L") genes coding for viral structural proteins. There is a single large primary transcript (˜ 29,000 nucleotides in length) that is processed by splicing to generate at least 18 different late mRNAs. These mRNAs are grouped (L1 to L5) based on the utilization of common poly(A) addition sites. The processed transcripts are transported to the cytoplasm, where the viral proteins are synthesized.

Although host genes continue to be transcribed in the nucleus late in the course of infection, few host genetic sequences are transported to the cytoplasm. A complex involving the E1B 55-kDa polypeptide and the E4 34-kDa polypeptide inhibits the cytoplasmic accumulation of cellular mRNAs and facilitates accumulation of viral mRNAs, perhaps by relocalizing a putative cellular factor required for mRNA transport. Very large amounts of viral structural proteins are made.

It is noteworthy that studies with adenovirus hexon mRNA led to the profound discovery that eukaryotic mRNAs are usually not colinear with their genes but are spliced products of separated coding regions in the genomic DNA.

VIRAL ASSEMBLY AND MATURATION

Virion morphogenesis occurs in the nucleus. Each hexon capsomere is a trimer of identical polypeptides. The penton is composed of five penton base polypeptides and three fiber polypeptides. A late L4-encoded "scaffold protein" assists in the aggregation of hexon polypeptides but is not part of the final structure.

Capsomeres self-assemble into empty-shell capsids in the nucleus. Naked DNA then enters the preformed capsid. A cis-acting DNA element near the left-hand end of the viral chromosome serves as a packaging signal, necessary for the DNA-capsid recognition event. Another viral scaffolding protein, encoded in the L1 group, facilitates DNA encapsidation. Finally, precursor core proteins are cleaved, which allows the particle to tighten its configuration, and the pentons are added. A virus-encoded cysteine proteinase functions in some cleavages of precursor proteins. The mature particle is then stable, infectious, and resistant to nucleases. The adenovirus infectious cycle takes about 24 hours. The assembly process is inefficient; about 80% of hexon capsomeres and 90% of viral DNA are not used. Nevertheless, about 100,000 virus particles are produced per cell. Structural proteins associated with mature virus particles are catalogued in Figure 322B.

VIRUS EFFECTS ON HOST DEFENSE MECHANISMS

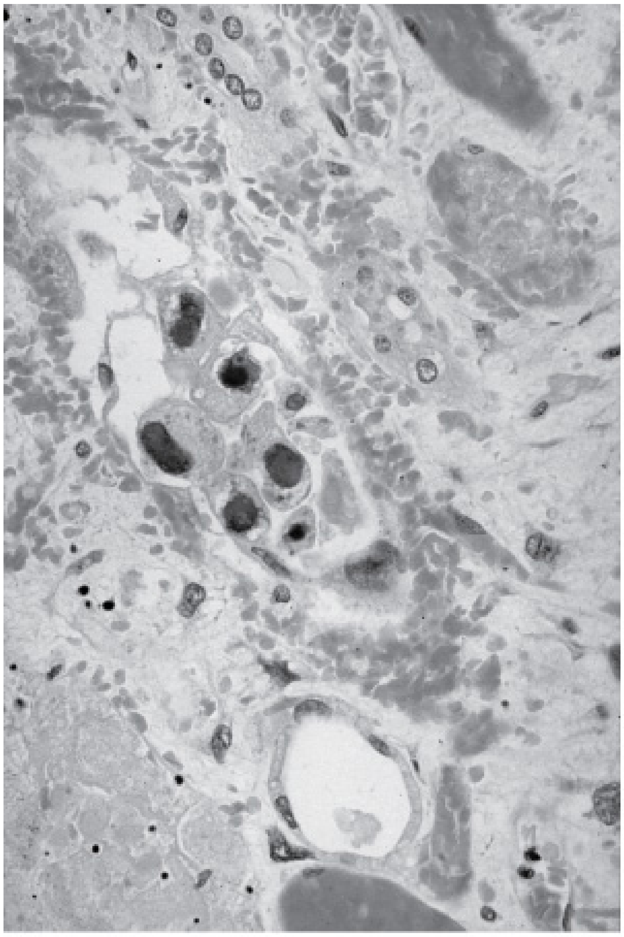
Adenoviruses encode several gene products that counter antiviral host defense mechanisms. The small, abundant VA RNAs afford protection from the antiviral effect of interferon by preventing activation of an interferon-inducible kinase that phosphorylates and inactivates eukaryotic initiation factor 2. Adenovirus E3 region proteins, which are nonessential for viral growth in tissue culture, inhibit cytolysis of infected cells by host responses. The E3 gp19-kDa protein blocks movement of the MHC class I antigen to the cell surface, thereby protecting the infected cell from cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL)-mediated lysis. Other E3-encoded proteins block induction of cytolysis by the cytokine TNF-α.

VIRUS EFFECTS ON CELLS

Adenoviruses are cytopathic for human cell cultures, particularly primary kidney and continuous epithelial cells. The cytopathic effect usually consists of marked rounding, enlargement, and aggregation of affected cells into grape-like clusters. The infected cells do not lyse even though they round up and leave the glass surface on which they have been grown.

In cells infected with some adenovirus types, rounded intranuclear inclusions containing DNA are seen (Figure 324). Such nuclear inclusions may be mistaken for those of cytomegalovirus, but adenovirus infections do not induce syncytia or multinucleated giant cells. Although the cytologic changes are not pathognomonic for adenoviruses, they are helpful for diagnostic purposes in tissue culture and biopsy specimens.

Figure 324.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Adenovirus cytopathology in human tissue. Tubular epithelial cells with basophilic inclusion bodies from a patient with necrotizing tubulointerstitial nephritis (450 x).

(Courtesy of M Ito.)

Virus particles in the nucleus frequently exhibit crystalline arrangements. Cells infected with group B viruses also contain crystals composed of protein without nucleic acid. Virus particles remain within the cell after the cycle is complete and the cell is dead.

Human adenoviruses exhibit a narrow host range. When cells derived from species other than humans are infected, the human adenoviruses usually undergo an abortive replication cycle and no infectious progeny are produced.

Gene Therapy

Adenoviruses are being used as gene delivery vehicles for cancer therapy, gene therapy, and genetic immunization studies. Adenoviruses are attractive because recombinant, replication-defective viruses possess the advantages of high transduction efficiencies of many cell types and high levels of short-term expression of transduced genes; however, significant limitations include their high immunogenicity and the high prevalence of pre-existing immunity in humans to subgroup C adenoviruses (types 2 and 5 are widely used as vectors). Other limitations are variable receptor (CAR) expression on different cells and the failure to integrate into chromosomal DNA to facilitate long-term transgene expression. Efforts are under way with vector design and targeting techniques to surmount these limitations.

A novel anticancer therapy utilizes an attenuated replication-competent adenovirus engineered to replicate only in targeted cancer cells. This "oncolytic therapy" is aimed at directly killing tumor cells due to viral lytic replication.

Animal Susceptibility & Transformation of Cells

Most laboratory animals are not readily infected with human adenoviruses, though newborn hamsters sustain a fatal infection with type 5, and young adult animals are permissive for adenovirus 5 replication in the lung. Several serotypes, especially types 12, 18, and 31, are able to induce tumors when inoculated into newborn hamsters (Table 322). All adenoviruses can morphologically transform cells in culture regardless of their oncogenic potential in vivo (see Chapter 43). Only a small part (< 20%) of the adenovirus genome is present in most transformed cells.

The transforming genes of human adenoviruses are located in the early region (E1A and E1B) at the left-hand end of the viral genome. An exception is type 9; the E4 gene is required for mammary tumorigenesis in rats. Studies of adenovirus transforming genes have revealed cellular growth control mechanisms that are altered in many types of cancer cells.

The highly oncogenic nature of adenovirus type 12 may be related to the observation that one effect of its early region is to turn off the synthesis of class I major histocompatibility antigens (H2 or HLA) in some infected and transformed cells, thereby preventing destruction by CTLs.

Adenoviruses are not thought to be important in human cancer.

ADENOVIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

Pathogenesis

Adenoviruses infect and replicate in epithelial cells of the respiratory tract, eye, gastrointestinal tract, urinary bladder, and liver. They usually do not spread beyond the regional lymph nodes. Group C viruses persist as latent infections for years in adenoids and tonsils and are shed in the feces for many months after the initial infection. In fact, the name "adenovirus" reflects the recovery of the initial isolate from explants of human adenoids.

Most human adenoviruses replicate in intestinal epithelium after ingestion but usually produce subclinical infections rather than overt symptoms.

Clinical Findings

About one-third of the known human serotypes are commonly associated with human illness. It should be noted that a single serotype may cause different clinical diseases and, conversely, that more than one type may cause the same clinical illness. Adenoviruses 17 are the most common types worldwide and account for most instances of adenovirus-associated illness.

Adenoviruses are responsible for about 5% of acute respiratory disease in young children, but they account for much less in adults. Most infections are mild and self-limited. The viruses occasionally cause disease in other organs, particularly the eye and the gastrointestinal tract.

RESPIRATORY DISEASES

Typical symptoms include cough, nasal congestion, fever, and sore throat. This syndrome is most commonly manifested in infants and children and usually involves group C viruses. These cases are difficult to distinguish from other mild viral respiratory infections that may exhibit similar symptoms.

Adenovirusesparticularly types 3, 7, and 21are thought to be responsible for about 1020% of pneumonias in childhood. Adenoviral pneumonia has been reported to have an 810% mortality rate in the very young.

Adenoviruses are the cause of an acute respiratory disease syndrome among military recruits. This syndrome is characterized by fever, sore throat, nasal congestion, cough, and malaise, sometimes leading to pneumonia. It occurs in epidemic form among young military recruits under conditions of fatigue, stress, and crowding soon after induction. This disease is caused by types 4 and 7 and occasionally by type 3. Because of vaccine unavailability, the United States military stopped vaccinating against adenoviruses (types 4 and 7) in the 1990s; this was followed by large epidemics affecting thousands of trainees.

EYE INFECTIONS

Mild ocular involvement may be part of the respiratory-pharyngeal syndromes caused by adenoviruses. Pharyngoconjunctival fever tends to occur in outbreaks, such as at children's summer camps ("swimming pool conjunctivitis"), and is associated with types 3 and 7. Duration of conjunctivitis is 12 weeks, and complete recovery with no lasting sequelae is the common outcome.

A more serious disease is epidemic keratoconjunctivitis. This disease occurs mainly in adults and is highly contagious. Adenoviruses can remain viable for several weeks on sinks and hand towels, and these may be a source of transmission. The disease is characterized by acute conjunctivitis, followed by keratitis that usually resolves in 2 weeks but may leave subepithelial opacities in the cornea for up to 2 years. It is caused by types 8, 19, and 37.

A study in Japan (19902001) where type 37 is the major cause of epidemic keratoconjunctivitis showed that mutations in the viral genome occurred chronologically and that certain mutations were correlated with epidemics of disease.

GASTROINTESTINAL DISEASE

Many adenoviruses replicate in intestinal cells and are present in stools, but the presence of most serotypes is not associated with gastrointestinal disease. However, two serotypes (types 40 and 41) have been etiologically associated with infantile gastroenteritis and may account for 515% of cases of viral gastroenteritis in young children. Adenovirus types 40 and 41 are abundantly present in diarrheal stools. The enteric adenoviruses are very difficult to cultivate.

OTHER DISEASES

Immunocompromised patients may suffer from a variety of casual and severe adenovirus infections. The most common problem caused by adenovirus infection in transplant patients is respiratory disease that may progress to severe pneumonia and may be fatal (usually types 17). Children receiving liver transplants may develop adenovirus hepatitis in the allograft. In addition, children with heart transplants who develop myocardial adenovirus infections are at increased risk of graft loss. Patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) may suffer adenovirus infections, especially in the gastrointestinal tract.

Types 11 and 21 may cause acute hemorrhagic cystitis in children, especially boys. Virus commonly occurs in the urine of such patients.

Immunity

In contrast to most respiratory infectious agents, the adenoviruses induce effective and long-lasting immunity against reinfection. This may reflect the fact that adenoviruses also infect the regional lymph nodes and lymphoid cells in the gastrointestinal tract. Resistance to clinical disease appears to be directly related to the presence of circulating neutralizing antibodies, which probably persist for life. Although type-specific neutralizing antibodies may protect against disease symptoms, they may not always prevent reinfection. (Infections with adenoviruses frequently occur without the production of overt illness.)

Maternal antibodies usually protect infants against severe adenovirus respiratory infections. Neutralizing antibodies against one or more types have been detected in over 50% of infants 611 months old. Normal, healthy adults generally have antibodies to several types.

A group-reactive antibody response, different from the type-specific neutralizing antibody, may be measured by CF, IF, or ELISA testing. Group-specific antibodies are not protective, decline with time, and do not reveal the serotypes of previous viral infections.

Laboratory Diagnosis

DETECTION, ISOLATION, AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Samples should be collected from affected sites early in the illness to optimize virus isolation. Depending on the clinical disease, virus may be recovered from stool or urine or from a throat, conjunctival, or rectal swab. Duration of adenovirus excretion varies among different illnesses: 13 days, throat of adults with common cold; 35 days, throat, stool, and eye, for pharyngoconjunctival fever; 2 weeks, eye, for keratoconjunctivitis; 36 weeks, throat and stool of children with respiratory illnesses; 212 months, urine, throat, and stool of immunocompromised patients.

Virus isolation in a cell culture requires human cells. Primary human embryonic kidney cells are most susceptible but usually unavailable. Established human epithelial cell lines, such as HEp-2, HeLa, and KB, are sensitive but are difficult to maintain without degeneration for the length of time (28 days) required to detect some slow-growing natural isolates. The development of characteristic cytopathic effectsrounding and clustering of swollen cellsindicates the presence of adenovirus in inoculated cultures. Adenoviruses cause increased glycolysis in cells, so the growth medium tends to become highly acidic on infected cultures. Isolates can be identified as adenoviruses by immunofluorescence tests using an antihexon antibody and infected cells. HI and Nt tests measure type-specific antigens and can be used to identify specific serotypes.

Infectious adenovirus detection may be made rapidly using the shell vial technique. Viral specimens are centrifuged directly onto tissue culture cells; cultures are incubated for 12 days and are then tested with monoclonal antibodies directed against a group-reactive epitope on the hexon antigen. Also, nasal epithelial cells from a patient may be stained directly to detect viral antigens.

Characterization of viral DNA by hybridization or by restriction endonuclease digestion patterns can identify an isolate as an adenovirus and group it. These approaches are especially useful for types that are difficult to cultivate.

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays can be used for diagnosis of adenovirus infections in tissue samples or body fluids, usually by using primers from a conserved viral sequence (eg, hexon, VA I) that can detect all serotypes. A PCR assay has been described that uses a single primer pair, which targets conserved segments that bracket a hypervariable region in the hexon gene. The assay can detect all known serotypes of human adenoviruses, and sequencing of the amplicon allows serotype identification. This method is rapid compared to the weeks required for virus isolation followed by neutralization assays. However, the sensitivity of the PCR assay may result in detection of latent adenoviruses in some patients.

The fastidious enteric adenoviruses can be detected by direct examination of fecal extracts by electron microscopy, by ELISA, or by latex agglutination tests. With difficulty, they can be isolated in a line of human embryonic kidney cells transformed with a fragment of adenovirus 5 DNA (293 cells).

Since adenoviruses can persist in the gut and in lymphoid tissue for long periods and since recrudescent viral shedding can be precipitated by other infections, the significance of a viral isolation must be interpreted with caution. Viral recovery from the eye, lung, or genital tract is diagnostic of current infection. Isolation of virus from throat secretions of a patient with respiratory illness can be considered relevant to the clinical disease. Viral isolation from fecal specimens is inconclusive unless one of the fastidious types is recovered from a patient with gastroenteritis.

SEROLOGY

Infection of humans with any adenovirus type stimulates a rise in complement-fixing antibodies to adenovirus group antigens shared by all types. The CF test is an easily applied method for detecting infection by any member of the adenovirus group. A fourfold or greater rise in complement-fixing antibody titer between acute-phase and convalescent-phase sera indicates recent infection with an adenovirus, though it gives no clue about the specific type involved.

If specific identification of a patient's serologic response is required, Nt or HI tests can be used. In most cases, the neutralizing antibody titer of infected persons shows a fourfold or greater rise against the adenovirus type recovered from the patient.

Epidemiology

Adenoviruses exist in all parts of the world. They are present year-round and usually do not cause community outbreaks of disease. The most common serotypes in clinical samples are the low-numbered respiratory types (1, 2, 3, 5, 7) and the gastroenteritis types (40, 41). Adenoviruses are spread by direct contact, by the fecal-oral route, by respiratory droplets, or by contaminated fomites. Most adenovirus-related diseases are not clinically pathognomonic, and many infections are subclinical.

Infections with types 1, 2, 5, and 6 occur chiefly during the first years of life; types 3 and 7 are contracted during school years; and other types (such as 4, 8, and 19) are not encountered until adulthood.

While adenoviruses cause only 25% of all respiratory illness in the general population, respiratory disease due to types 3, 4, and 7 is common among military recruits. Adenovirus disease can cause great morbidity among recruits. However, adenovirus disease is not a problem in seasoned troops.

An outbreak of acute respiratory disease caused by type 11 occurred in 1997 among young adults living in a job training facilitythe first such outbreak recognized among civilians.

Eye infections can be transmitted in several ways, but hand-to-eye transfer is particularly important. Outbreaks of swimming pool conjunctivitis are presumably waterborne, usually occur in the summer, and are commonly caused by types 3 and 7. Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis is a highly contagious and serious disease. The disease, caused by type 8, spread in 1941 from Australia via the Hawaiian Islands to the Pacific Coast. It spread rapidly through the shipyards (hence the name "shipyard eye") and across the United States. In the United States, the incidence of neutralizing antibody to type 8 in the general population is very low (about 1%), whereas in Japan it is more than 30%. More recently, adenovirus types 19 and 37 have caused epidemics of typical epidemic keratoconjunctivitis. Outbreaks of conjunctivitis traced to ophthalmologists' offices were presumably caused by contaminated ophthalmic solutions or diagnostic equipment.

The incidence of adenovirus infection in patients undergoing bone marrow transplantation has been estimated to be from about 5% to as high as 30%. The reported incidence is higher in pediatric patients than in adults. Patients may develop fatal disseminated infections. Types 34 and 35 are found most often in bone marrow and renal transplant recipients. The most likely source of infection in transplant patients is endogenous viral reactivation, though primary infections may be a factor in the pediatric population.

Treatment

There is no specific treatment for adenovirus infections.

Prevention & Control

Careful hand washing is the easiest way to prevent infections. Environmental surfaces can be disinfected with sodium hypochlorite. In group settings, paper towels may be advisable because dirty towels can be a source of infection in outbreaks. The risk of waterborne outbreaks of conjunctivitis can be minimized by chlorination of swimming pools and waste water. Strict asepsis during eye examinations, coupled with adequate sterilization of equipment, is essential for the control of epidemic keratoconjunctivitis.

Attempts to control adenovirus infections in the military have focused on vaccines. Live adenovirus vaccine containing types 4 and 7, encased in gelatin-coated capsules and given orally, was introduced in 1971. In this way virus bypasses the respiratory tract, where it could cause disease, and is released in the intestine, where it replicates and induces neutralizing antibody. It does not spread from a vaccinated person to contacts. The vaccine proved highly effective, but after 1999 was no longer available as its manufacture had been discontinued.

REFERENCES

Berk AJ: Recent lessons in gene expression, cell cycle control, and cell biology from adenovirus. Oncogene 2005;24:7673. [PMID: 16299528]

Kolavic-Gray SA et al: Large epidemic of adenovirus type 4 infection among military trainees: Epidemiological, clinical, and laboratory studies. Clin Infect Dis 2002;35:808. [PMID: 12228817]

Sarantis H, Johnson G, Brown M, Petric M, Tellier R: Comprehensive detection and serotyping of human adenoviruses by PCR and sequencing. J Clin Microbiol 2004;42:3963. [PMID: 15364976]

Shenk TE: *Adenoviridae:* the viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Mc Graw Hill Medical
a silverchair information system
The McGraw-Hill Companies

INTRODUCTION

The herpesvirus family contains several of the most important human pathogens. Clinically, the herpesviruses exhibit a spectrum of diseases. Some have a wide host-cell range, whereas others have a narrow host-cell range. The outstanding property of herpesviruses is their ability to establish lifelong persistent infections in their hosts and to undergo periodic reactivation. Their frequent reactivation in immunosuppressed patients causes serious health complications. Curiously, the reactivated infection may be clinically quite different from the disease caused by the primary infection. Herpesviruses possess a large number of genes, some of which have proved to be susceptible to antiviral chemotherapy.

The herpesviruses that commonly infect humans include herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2, varicella-zoster virus, cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, herpesviruses 6 and 7, and herpesvirus 8 (Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus). Herpes B virus of monkeys can also infect humans. There are nearly 100 viruses of the herpes group that infect many different animal species.

PROPERTIES OF HERPESVIRUSES

Important properties of herpesviruses are summarized in Table 33–1.

Table 33–1. Important Properties of Herpesviruses.

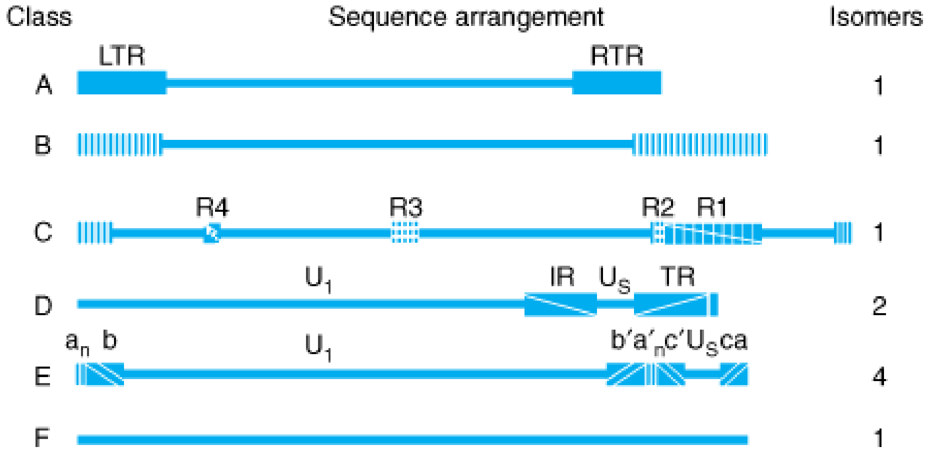
Virion: Spherical, 150–200 nm in diameter (icosahedral)
Genome: Double-stranded DNA, linear, 125–240 kbp, reiterated sequences
Proteins: More than 35 proteins in virion
Envelope: Contains viral glycoproteins, Fc receptors
Replication: Nucleus, bud from nuclear membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Encode many enzymes
Establish latent infections
Persist indefinitely in infected hosts
Frequently reactivated in immunosuppressed hosts
Some are cancer-causing

Structure & Composition

Herpesviruses are large viruses. Different members of the group share architectural details and are indistinguishable by electron microscopy. All herpesviruses have a core of double-stranded DNA, in the form of a toroid, surrounded by a protein coat that exhibits icosahedral symmetry and has 162 capsomeres. The nucleocapsid is surrounded by an envelope that is derived from the nuclear membrane of the infected cell and contains viral glycoprotein spikes about 8 nm long. An amorphous, sometimes asymmetric structure between the capsid and envelope is designated the tegument. The enveloped form measures 150–200 nm; the "naked" virion, 125 nm.

The double-stranded DNA genome (125–240 kbp) is linear. A striking feature of herpesvirus DNAs is their sequence arrangement (Figure 33–1). Herpesvirus genomes possess terminal and internal repeated sequences. Some members, such as the herpes simplex viruses, undergo genome rearrangements, giving rise to different genome "isomers." The base composition of herpesvirus DNAs varies from 31% to 75% (G + C). There is little DNA homology among different herpesviruses except for herpes simplex types 1 and 2, which show 50% sequence homology, and human herpesviruses 6 and 7, which display limited (30–50%) sequence homology. Treatment with restriction endonucleases yields characteristically different cleavage patterns for herpesviruses and even for different strains of each type. This "fingerprinting" of strains allows epidemiologic tracing of a given strain.

Figure 33–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram of sequence arrangements of herpesvirus DNAs. Genome classes A, B, C, D, E, and F are exemplified by channel catfish virus, herpesvirus saimiri, Epstein-Barr virus, varicella-zoster virus, herpes simplex viruses, and tupaia herpesvirus, respectively. Horizontal lines represent unique regions. Reiterated domains are shown as rectangles: left and right terminal repeats (LTR and RTR) for class A; repeats R1 to R4 for internal repeats of class C; and internal and terminal repeats (IR and TR) of class D. In class B, terminal sequences are reiterated numerous times at both termini. The termini of class E consist of two elements. The terminal sequences (ab and ca) are inserted in an inverted orientation separating the unique sequences into long (U_l) and short (U_s) domains. Genomes of class F have no terminal reiterations. The components of the genomes in classes D and E invert. In class D (varicella-zoster virus), the short component inverts relative to the long, and the DNA forms two populations (isomers) differing in the orientation of the short component. In class E (herpes simplex virus), both the short and long components can invert, and viral DNA consists of four isomers.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Roizman B: Herpesviridae: A brief introduction. Pages 1787–1793 in: *Virology,* 2nd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Raven Press, 1990.)

The herpesvirus genome is large and encodes at least 100 different proteins. Of these, more than 35 polypeptides are involved in the structure of the virus particle; at least 10 are part of the viral envelope. Herpesviruses encode an array of virus-specific enzymes involved in nucleic acid metabolism, DNA synthesis, gene expression, and protein regulation (DNA polymerase, helicase-primase, thymidine kinase, transcription factors, protein kinases). Many herpesvirus genes appear to be viral homologs of cellular genes.

Classification

Classification of the numerous members of the herpesvirus family is complicated. A useful division into subfamilies is based on biologic properties of the agents (Table 33–2). Alphaherpesviruses are fast-growing, cytolytic viruses that tend to establish latent infections in neurons; herpes simplex virus (genus *Simplexvirus*) and varicella-zoster virus (genus *Varicellovirus*) are members. Betaherpesviruses are slow-growing and may be cytomegalic (massive enlargements of infected cells) and become latent in secretory glands and kidneys; cytomegalovirus is classified in the *Cytomegalovirus* genus. Also included here, in the genus *Roseolovirus,* are human herpesviruses 6 and 7; by biologic criteria, they are more like gammaherpesviruses because they infect lymphocytes (T lymphotropic), but molecular analyses of their genomes reveal that they are more closely related to the betaherpesviruses. Gammaherpesviruses, exemplified by Epstein-Barr virus (genus *Lymphocryptovirus*), infect and become latent in lymphoid cells. The Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus, designated as human herpesvirus 8, is classified in the *Rhadinovirus* genus.

Table 33–2. Classification of Human Herpesviruses.

	Biologic Properties			Examples	
Subfamily ("-herpesvirinae")	Growth Cycle and Cytopathology	Latent Infections	Genus ("-*virus*")	Official Name ("Human herpesvirus")	Common Name
Alpha	Short, cytolytic	Neurons	*Simplex*	1	Herpes simplex virus type 1
				2	Herpes simplex virus type 2
			Varicello	3	Varicella-zoster virus
Beta	Long, cytomegalic	Glands, kidneys	*Cytomegalo*	5	Cytomegalovirus
	Long, lymphoproliferative	Lymphoid tissue	*Roseolo*	6	Human herpesvirus 6
				7	Human herpesvirus 7

	Biologic Properties			Examples	
Subfamily ("-herpesvirinae")	Growth Cycle and Cytopathology	Latent Infections	Genus ("-*virus*")	Official Name ("Human herpesvirus")	Common Name
Gamma	Variable, lymphoproliferative	Lymphoid tissue	*Lymphocrypto*	4	Epstein-Barr virus
			Rhadino	8	Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus

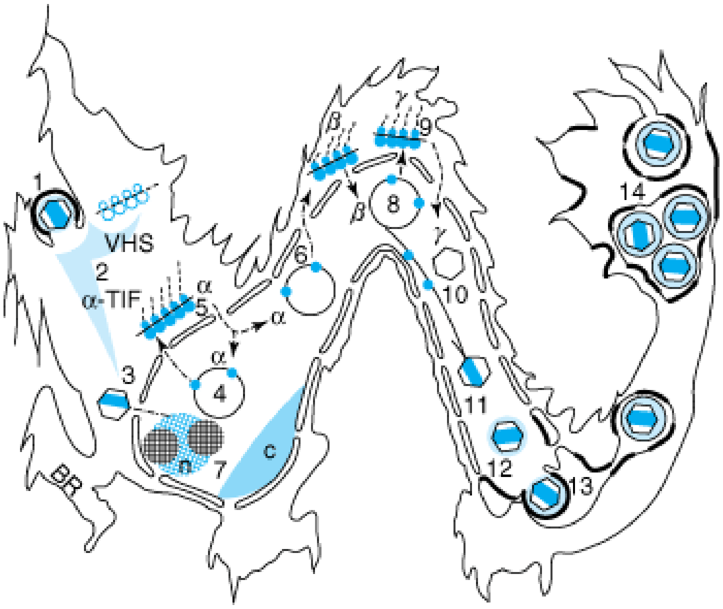
Many herpesviruses infect animals, the most notable being B virus (herpesvirus simiae) in the *Simplexvirus* genus and herpesviruses saimiri, and ateles of monkeys, both in genus *Rhadinovirus*; marmoset herpesvirus (genus *Simplexvirus*); and pseudorabies virus of pigs and infectious bovine rhinotracheitis virus of cattle, both in genus *Varicellovirus*.

There is little antigenic relatedness among members of the herpesvirus group. Only herpes simplex viruses type 1 and type 2 share a significant number of common antigens. Human herpesviruses 6 and 7 exhibit a few cross-reacting epitopes.

Herpesvirus Replication

The replication cycle of herpes simplex virus is summarized in Figure 33–2. The virus enters the cell by fusion with the cell membrane after binding to specific cellular receptors via envelope glycoproteins. Several herpesviruses bind to cell surface glycosaminoglycans, principally heparan sulfate. Virus attachment also involves binding to one of several coreceptors (eg, members of the immunoglobulin superfamily). After fusion, the capsid is transported through the cytoplasm to a nuclear pore; uncoating occurs; and the DNA becomes associated with the nucleus. The viral DNA forms a circle immediately upon release from the capsid. Expression of the viral genome is tightly regulated and sequentially ordered in a cascade fashion. VP16, a tegument protein, complexes with several cellular proteins and activates initial viral gene expression. Immediate-early genes are expressed, yielding "alpha" proteins. These proteins permit expression of the early set of genes, which are translated into "beta" proteins. Viral DNA replication begins, and late transcripts are produced that give rise to "gamma" proteins. More than 50 different proteins are synthesized in herpesvirus-infected cells. Many alpha and beta proteins are enzymes or DNA-binding proteins; most of the gamma proteins are structural components.

Figure 33–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Replication cycle of herpes simplex virus. 1: Virus fuses viral envelope with plasma membrane following attachment to the cell surface. 2: Fusion of membranes releases two proteins from the virion: VHS shuts off protein synthesis; α-trans-inducing factor (α-TIF or VP16) is transported to the nucleus. 3: Viral DNA is released from the capsid at the nuclear pore into the nucleus and immediately circularizes. 4: Transcription of α genes by cellular enzymes is induced by α-TIF. 5: The five α mRNAs are transported into the cytoplasm and translated (filled polyribosome); the proteins are transported into the nucleus. 6: New round of transcription results in synthesis of β proteins. 7: Chromatin (c) is degraded and displaced toward the nuclear membrane; nucleoli (round hatched structures) become disaggregated. 8: Viral DNA is replicated by a rolling circle mechanism, which yields concatemers of viral DNA. 9: New round of transcription-translation yields the γ proteins, consisting primarily of structural proteins of the virus. 10: The capsid proteins form empty capsids. 11: Unit-length viral DNA is cleaved from concatemers and packaged into the preformed capsids. 12: Capsids containing viral DNA acquire a new protein. 13: Viral glycoproteins and tegument proteins accumulate and form patches in cellular membranes. Capsids attach to the underside of membrane patches containing viral proteins and are enveloped. 14: Enveloped particles accumulate in the endoplasmic reticulum and are transported into the extracellular space.

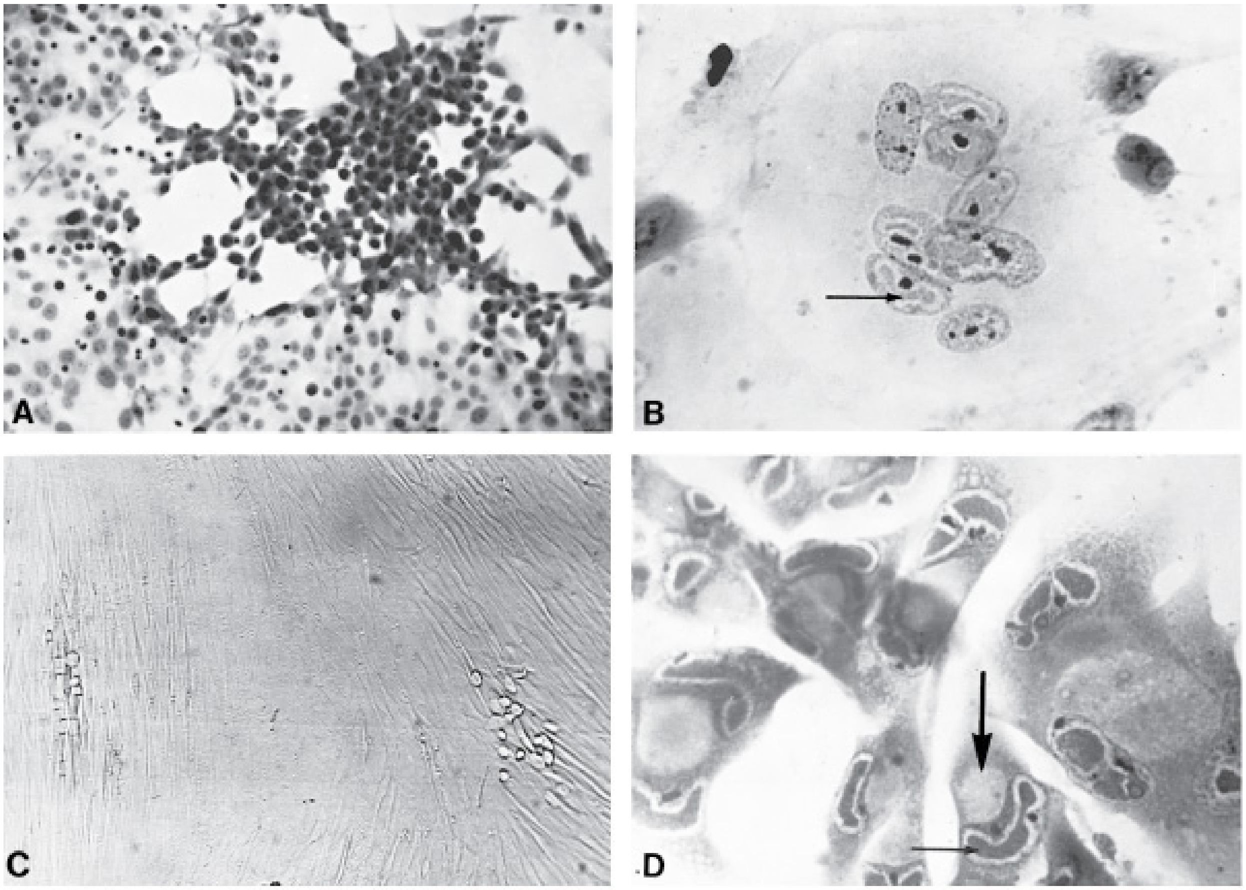
(Reproduced, with permission, from Roizman B, Sears AE: Herpes simplex viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Viral DNA is transcribed throughout the replicative cycle by cellular RNA polymerase II but with the participation of viral factors. Viral DNA is synthesized by a rolling-circle mechanism. Herpesviruses differ from other nuclear DNA viruses in that they encode a large number of enzymes involved in DNA synthesis. (These enzymes are good targets for antiviral drugs.) Newly synthesized viral DNA is packaged into preformed empty nucleocapsids in the cell nucleus.

Maturation occurs by budding of nucleocapsids through the altered inner nuclear membrane. Enveloped virus particles are then transported by vesicular movement to the surface of the cell.

The length of the replication cycle varies from about 18 hours for herpes simplex virus to over 70 hours for cytomegalovirus. Cells productively infected with herpesviruses are invariably killed. Host macromolecular synthesis is shut off early in infection; normal cellular DNA and protein synthesis virtually stop as viral replication begins. Cytopathic effects induced by human herpesviruses are quite distinct (Figure 33–3).

Figure 33–3.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Cytopathic effects induced by herpesviruses. A: Herpes simplex virus in HEp-2 cells (H&E stain, 57 x), with early focus of swollen, rounded cells. B: Varicella-zoster virus in human kidney cells (H&E stain, 228 x), with multinucleated giant cell containing acidophilic intranuclear inclusions (arrow). C: Cytomegalovirus in human fibroblasts (unstained, 35 x) with two foci of slowly developing cytopathic effect. D: Cytomegalovirus in human fibroblasts (H&E stain, 228 x), showing giant cells with acidophilic inclusions in the nuclei (small arrow) and cytoplasm (large arrow), the latter being characteristically large and round.

(Courtesy of I Jack; reproduced, with permission, from White DO, Fenner FJ: *Medical Virology,* 3rd ed. Academic Press, 1986.)

The number of potential protein-coding open-reading frames in herpesvirus genomes ranges from about 70 to more than 200. In the case of herpes simplex virus, about half the genes are not needed for growth in cultured cells. The other genes are probably required for viral survival in vivo in natural hosts.

Overview of Herpesvirus Diseases

A wide variety of diseases are associated with infection by herpesviruses. Primary infection and reactivated disease by a given virus may involve different cell types and present different clinical pictures.

Herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 infect epithelial cells and establish latent infections in neurons. Type 1 is classically associated with oropharyngeal lesions and causes recurrent attacks of "fever blisters." Type 2 primarily infects the genital mucosa and is mainly responsible for genital herpes. Both viruses also cause neurologic disease. Herpes simplex virus type 1 is the leading cause of sporadic encephalitis in the United States. Both type 1 and type 2 can cause neonatal infections which are often severe.

Varicella-zoster virus causes chickenpox (varicella) on primary infection and establishes latent infection in neurons. Upon reactivation, the virus causes zoster (shingles). Adults who are infected for the first time with varicella-zoster virus are apt to develop serious viral pneumonia.

Cytomegalovirus replicates in epithelial cells of the respiratory tract, salivary glands, and kidneys and persists in lymphocytes. It causes an infectious mononucleosis (heterophil-negative). In newborns, cytomegalic inclusion disease may occur. Cytomegalovirus is an important cause of congenital defects and mental retardation.

Human herpesvirus 6 infects T lymphocytes. It is typically acquired in early infancy and causes exanthem subitum (roseola infantum). Human herpesvirus 7, also a T-lymphotropic virus, has not yet been linked to any specific disease.

Epstein-Barr virus replicates in epithelial cells of the oropharynx and parotid gland and establishes latent infections in lymphocytes. It causes infectious mononucleosis and is the cause of human lymphoproliferative disorders, especially in immunocompromised patients. Human herpesvirus 8 appears to be associated with the development of Kaposi's sarcoma, a vascular tumor that is common in patients with AIDS.

Herpes B virus of macaque monkeys can infect humans. Such infections are rare, but those that occur usually result in severe neurologic disease and are frequently fatal.

Human herpesviruses are frequently reactivated in immunosuppressed patients (eg, transplant recipients, cancer patients) and may cause severe disease, such as pneumonia or lymphomas.

Herpesviruses have been linked with malignant diseases in humans and lower animals: Epstein-Barr virus with Burkitt's lymphoma of African children, with nasopharyngeal carcinoma, and with other lymphomas; Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus with Kaposi's sarcoma; Marek's disease virus with a lymphoma of chickens; and a number of primate herpesviruses with reticulum cell sarcomas and lymphomas in monkeys.

HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUSES

Herpes simplex viruses are extremely widespread in the human population. They exhibit a broad host range, being able to replicate in many types of cells and to infect many different animals. They grow rapidly and are highly cytolytic. The herpes simplex viruses are responsible for a spectrum of diseases, ranging from gingivostomatitis to keratoconjunctivitis, encephalitis, genital disease, and infections of newborns. The herpes simplex viruses establish latent infections in nerve cells; recurrences are common.

Properties of the Viruses

There are two distinct herpes simplex viruses: type 1 and type 2 (HSV-1, HSV-2) (Table 33–3). Their genomes are similar in organization and exhibit substantial sequence homology. However, they can be distinguished by sequence analysis or by restriction enzyme analysis of viral DNA. The two viruses cross-react serologically, but some unique proteins exist for each type. They differ in their mode of transmission; HSV-1 is spread by contact, usually involving infected saliva, whereas HSV-2 is transmitted sexually or from a maternal genital infection to a newborn. This results in different clinical features of human infections.

Table 33–3. Comparison of Herpes Simplex Virus Type 1 and Type 2.[1]

Characteristics	HSV-1	HSV-2
Biochemical		
Viral DNA base composition (G + C)	67%	69%
Buoyant density of DNA (g/cm^3)	1.726	1.728
Buoyant density of virions (g/cm^3)	1.271	1.267
Homology between viral DNAs	~50%	~50%
Biologic		
Animal vectors or reservoirs	None	None
Site of latency	Trigeminal ganglia	Sacral ganglia
Epidemiologic		
Age of primary infection	Young children	Young adults
Transmission	Contact (often saliva)	Sexual
Clinical		
Primary infection:		
Gingivostomatitis	+	-
Pharyngotonsillitis	+	-
Keratoconjunctivitis	+	-
Neonatal infections	±	+
Recurrent infection:		
Cold sores, fever blisters	+	-
Keratitis	+	-
Primary or recurrent infection:		
Cutaneous herpes		
Skin above the waist	+	±
Skin below the waist	±	+

Characteristics	HSV-1	HSV-2
Hands or arms	+	+
Herpetic whitlow	+	+
Eczema herpeticum	+	-
Genital herpes	±	+
Herpes encephalitis	+	-
Herpes meningitis	±	+

[1] Modified from Oxman MN: Herpes stomatitis. Pages 752–772 in: *Infectious Diseases and Medical Microbiology,* 2nd ed. Braude Al, Davis CE, Fierer J (editors). Saunders, 1986.

The HSV growth cycle proceeds rapidly, requiring 8–16 hours for completion. The HSV genome is large (about 150 kbp) and can encode at least 70 polypeptides; the functions of many of the proteins in replication or latency are not known. At least eight viral glycoproteins are among the viral late gene products. One (gD) is the most potent inducer of neutralizing antibodies. Glycoprotein C is a complement (C3b)-binding protein, and gE is an Fc receptor, binding to the Fc portion of IgG. Glycoprotein G is type-specific and allows for antigenic discrimination between HSV-1 (gG-1) and HSV-2 (gG-2).

Pathogenesis & Pathology

PATHOLOGY

Because HSV causes cytolytic infections, pathologic changes are due to necrosis of infected cells together with the inflammatory response. Lesions induced in the skin and mucous membranes by HSV-1 and HSV-2 are the same and resemble those of varicella-zoster virus. Changes induced by HSV are similar for primary and recurrent infections but vary in degree, reflecting the extent of viral cytopathology.

Characteristic histopathologic changes include ballooning of infected cells, production of Cowdry type A intranuclear inclusion bodies, margination of chromatin, and formation of multinucleated giant cells. Cell fusion provides an efficient method for cell-to-cell spread of HSV, even in the presence of neutralizing antibody.

PRIMARY INFECTION

HSV is transmitted by contact of a susceptible person with an individual excreting virus. The virus must encounter mucosal surfaces or broken skin in order for an infection to be initiated (unbroken skin is resistant). HSV-1 infections are usually limited to the oropharynx, and virus is spread by respiratory droplets or by direct contact with infected saliva. HSV-2 is usually transmitted by genital routes. Viral replication occurs first at the site of infection. Virus then invades local nerve endings and is transported by retrograde axonal flow to dorsal root ganglia, where, after further replication, latency is established. Oropharyngeal HSV-1 infections result in latent infections in the trigeminal ganglia, whereas genital HSV-2 infections lead to latently infected sacral ganglia.

Primary HSV infections are usually mild; in fact, most are asymptomatic. Only rarely does systemic disease develop. Widespread organ involvement can result when an immunocompromised host is not able to limit viral replication and viremia ensues.

LATENT INFECTION

Virus resides in latently infected ganglia in a nonreplicating state; only a very few viral genes are expressed. A small RNA, called a microRNA, discovered in 2006, is encoded by a latency-associated viral gene. The microRNA works to prevent cell death, maintaining the latent infection. Viral persistence in latently infected ganglia lasts for the lifetime of the host. No virus can be recovered between recurrences at or near the usual site of recurrent lesions. Provocative stimuli can reactivate virus from the latent state, including axonal injury, fever, physical or emotional stress, and exposure to ultraviolet light. The virus follows axons back to the peripheral site, and replication proceeds at the skin or mucous membranes. Spontaneous reactivations occur in spite of HSV-specific humoral and cellular immunity in the host. However, this immunity limits local viral replication, so that recurrent infections are less extensive and less severe. Many recurrences are asymptomatic, reflected only by viral shedding in secretions. When symptomatic, episodes of recurrent HSV-1 infection are usually manifested as cold sores (fever blisters) near the lip. More than 80% of the human population harbor HSV-1 in a latent form, but only a small portion experience recurrences. It is not known why some individuals suffer reactivations and others do not.

Clinical Findings

Herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 may cause many clinical entities, and the infections may be primary or recurrent (Table 33–3). Primary infections occur in persons without antibodies and in most individuals are clinically inapparent but result in antibody production and establishment of latent infections in sensory ganglia. Recurrent lesions are common.

OROPHARYNGEAL DISEASE

Primary HSV-1 infections are usually asymptomatic. Symptomatic disease occurs most frequently in small children (1–5 years of age) and involves the buccal and gingival mucosa of the mouth (Figure 33–4). The incubation period is short (about 3–5 days, with a range of 2–12 days), and clinical illness lasts 2–3 weeks. Symptoms include fever, sore throat, vesicular and ulcerative lesions, gingivostomatitis, and malaise. Gingivitis (swollen, tender gums) is the most striking and common lesion. Primary infections in adults commonly cause pharyngitis and tonsillitis. Localized lymphadenopathy may occur.

Figure 33–4.

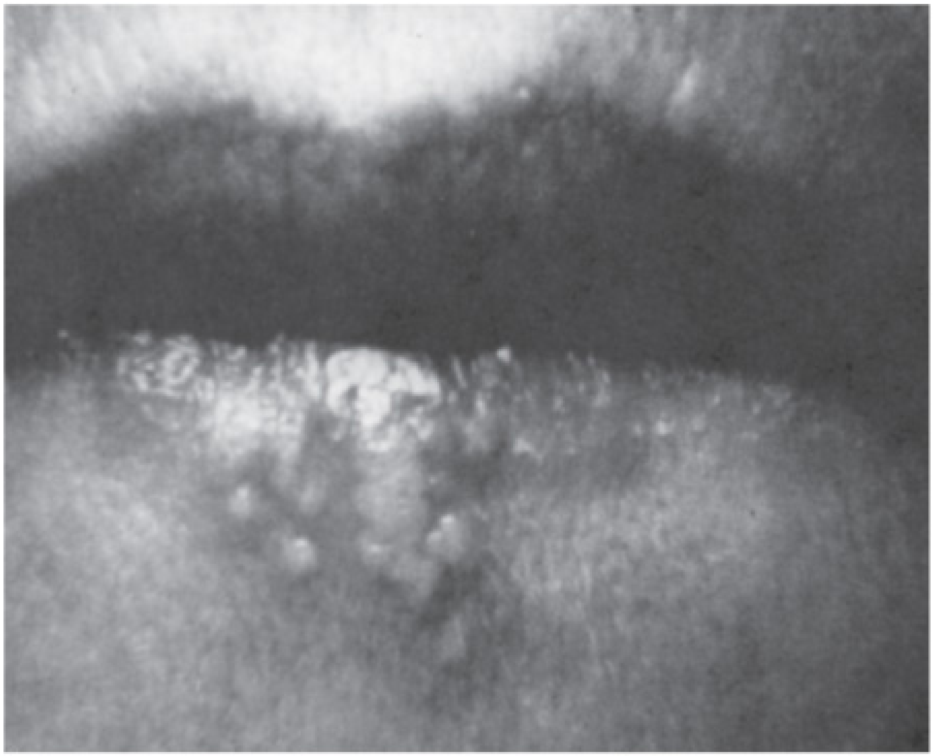
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Herpes simplex gingivostomatitis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Whitley RJ: Herpes simplex viruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Recurrent disease is characterized by a cluster of vesicles most commonly localized at the border of the lip (Figure 33–5). Intense pain occurs at the outset but fades over 4–5 days. Lesions progress through the pustular and crusting stages, and healing without scarring is usually complete in 8–10 days. The lesions may recur, repeatedly and at various intervals, in the same location. The frequency of recurrences varies widely among individuals.

Figure 33–5.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Recurrent herpes simplex labialis.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Whitley RJ: Herpes simplex viruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS

HSV-1 infections may occur in the eye, producing severe keratoconjunctivitis. Recurrent lesions of the eye are common and appear as dendritic keratitis or corneal ulcers or as vesicles on the eyelids. With recurrent keratitis, there may be progressive involvement of the corneal stroma, with permanent opacification and blindness. HSV-1 infections are second only to trauma as a cause of corneal blindness in the United States.

GENITAL HERPES

Genital disease is usually caused by HSV-2, although HSV-1 can also cause clinical episodes of genital herpes. Primary genital herpes infections can be severe, with illness lasting about 3 weeks. Genital herpes is characterized by vesiculoulcerative lesions of the penis of the male or of the cervix, vulva, vagina, and perineum of the female. The lesions are very painful and may be associated with fever, malaise, dysuria, and inguinal lymphadenopathy. Complications include extragenital lesions (˜ 20% of cases) and aseptic meningitis (˜ 10% of cases). Viral excretion persists for about 3 weeks.

Because of the antigenic cross-reactivity between HSV-1 and HSV-2, preexisting immunity provides some protection against heterotypic infection. An initial HSV-2 infection in a person already immune to HSV-1 tends to be less severe.

Recurrences of genital herpetic infections are common and tend to be mild. A limited number of vesicles appear and heal in about 10 days. Virus is shed for only a few days. Some recurrences are asymptomatic. Whether a recurrence is symptomatic or asymptomatic, a person shedding virus can transmit the infection to sexual partners.

SKIN INFECTIONS

Intact skin is resistant to HSV, so cutaneous HSV infections are uncommon in healthy persons. Localized lesions caused by HSV-1 or HSV-2 may occur in abrasions that become contaminated with the virus (traumatic herpes). These lesions are seen on the fingers of dentists and hospital personnel (herpetic whitlow) and on the bodies of wrestlers (herpes gladiatorum).

Cutaneous infections are often severe and life-threatening when they occur in individuals with disorders of the skin, such as eczema or burns, that permit extensive local viral replication and spread. Eczema herpeticum is a primary infection, usually with HSV-1, in a person with chronic eczema. In rare instances, the illness may be fatal.

ENCEPHALITIS

A severe form of encephalitis may be produced by herpesvirus. HSV-1 infections are considered the most common cause of sporadic, fatal encephalitis in the United States. The disease carries a high mortality rate, and those who survive often have residual neurologic defects. About half of patients with HSV encephalitis appear to have primary infections, and the rest appear to have recurrent infection.

NEONATAL HERPES

HSV infection of the newborn may be acquired in utero, during birth, or after birth. The mother is the most common source of infection in all cases. Neonatal herpes is estimated to occur in about one in 5000 deliveries per year. The newborn infant seems to be unable to limit the replication and spread of HSV and has a propensity to develop severe disease.

The most common route of infection (˜ 75% of cases) is for HSV to be transmitted to the newborn during birth by contact with herpetic lesions in the birth canal. To avoid infection, delivery by cesarean section has been used in pregnant women with genital herpes lesions. However, many fewer cases of neonatal HSV infection occur than cases of recurrent genital herpes, even when virus is present at term.

Neonatal herpes can be acquired postnatally by exposure to either HSV-1 or HSV-2. Sources of infection include family members and hospital personnel who are shedding virus. About 75% of neonatal herpes infections are caused by HSV-2. There do not appear to be any differences between the nature and severity of neonatal herpes in premature or full-term infants, in infections caused by HSV-1 or HSV-2, or in disease when virus is acquired during delivery or postpartum.

Neonatal herpes infections are almost always symptomatic. The overall mortality rate of untreated disease is 50%. Babies with neonatal herpes exhibit three categories of disease: (1) lesions localized to the skin, eye, and mouth; (2) encephalitis with or without localized skin involvement; and (3) disseminated disease involving multiple organs, including the central nervous system. The worst prognosis (mortality rate about 80%) applies to infants with disseminated infection, many of whom develop encephalitis. The cause of death of babies with disseminated disease is usually viral pneumonitis or intravascular coagulopathy. Many survivors of severe infections are left with permanent neurologic impairment.

INFECTIONS IN IMMUNOCOMPROMISED HOSTS

Immunocompromised patients are at increased risk of developing severe HSV infections. These include patients immunosuppressed by disease or therapy (especially those with deficient cellular immunity) and individuals with malnutrition. Renal, cardiac, and bone marrow transplant recipients are at particular risk for severe herpes infections. Patients with hematologic malignancies and patients with AIDS suffer more frequent and more severe HSV infections. Herpes lesions may spread and involve the respiratory tract, esophagus, and intestinal mucosa. Malnourished children are prone to fatal disseminated HSV infections. In most cases, the disease reflects reactivation of latent HSV infection.

Immunity

Many newborns acquire passively transferred maternal antibodies. These antibodies are lost during the first 6 months of life, and the period of greatest susceptibility to primary herpes infection occurs between ages 6 months and 2 years. Transplacentally acquired antibodies from the mother are not totally protective against infection of newborns, but they seem to ameliorate infection if not prevent it. HSV-1 antibodies begin to appear in the population in early childhood; by adolescence, they are present in most persons. Antibodies to HSV-2 rise during the age of adolescence and sexual activity.

During primary infections, IgM antibodies appear transiently and are followed by IgG and IgA antibodies that persist for long periods. The more severe the primary infection or the more frequent the recurrences, the greater the level of antibody response. However, the pattern of antibody response has not correlated with the frequency of disease recurrence. Cell-mediated immunity and nonspecific host factors (natural killer cells, interferon) are important in controlling both primary and recurrent HSV infections.

After recovery from a primary infection (inapparent, mild, or severe), the virus is carried in a latent state in the presence of antibodies. These antibodies do not prevent reinfection or reactivation of latent virus but may modify subsequent disease.

Laboratory Diagnosis

CYTOPATHOLOGY

A rapid cytologic method is to stain scrapings obtained from the base of a vesicle (eg, with Giemsa's stain); the presence of multinucleated giant cells indicates that herpesvirus (HSV-1, HSV-2, or varicella-zoster) is present, distinguishing lesions from those caused by coxsackieviruses and nonviral entities.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Virus isolation remains the definitive diagnostic approach. Virus may be isolated from herpetic lesions and may also be found in throat washings, cerebrospinal fluid, and stool, both during primary infection and during asymptomatic periods. Therefore, the isolation of HSV is not in itself sufficient evidence to indicate that the virus is the causative agent of a disease under investigation.

Inoculation of tissue cultures is used for viral isolation. The agent is then identified by Nt test or immunofluorescence staining with specific antiserum. Typing of HSV isolates may be done using monoclonal antibody or by restriction endonuclease analysis of viral DNA but is only useful for epidemiologic studies.

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION (PCR)

PCR assays can be used to detect virus and are sensitive and specific. PCR amplification of viral DNA from cerebrospinal fluid has replaced viral isolation from brain tissue obtained by biopsy or at postmortem examination as the standard assay for specific diagnosis of HSV infections of the central nervous system.

SEROLOGY

Antibodies appear in 4–7 days after infection and reach a peak in 2–4 weeks. They persist with minor fluctuations for the life of the host.

The diagnostic value of serologic assays is limited by the multiple antigens shared by HSV-1 and HSV-2. There may also be some heterotypic anamnestic responses to varicella-zoster virus in persons infected with HSV, and vice versa. The use of HSV type-specific antibodies, available in some research laboratories, allows more meaningful serologic tests.

Epidemiology

Herpes simplex viruses are worldwide in distribution. No animal reservoirs or vectors are involved with the human viruses. Transmission is by contact with infected secretions. The epidemiology of type 1 and type 2 herpes simplex virus differs.

HSV-1 is probably more constantly present in humans than any other virus. Primary infection occurs early in life and is usually asymptomatic; occasionally, it produces oropharyngeal disease (gingivostomatitis in young children, pharyngitis in young adults). Antibodies develop, but the virus is not eliminated from the body; a carrier state is established that lasts throughout life and is punctuated by transient recurrent attacks of herpes.

The highest incidence of HSV-1 infection occurs among children 6 months to 3 years of age. By adulthood, 70–90% of persons have type 1 antibodies. There is a high rate of geographic variation in seroprevalence. Middle-class individuals in developed countries acquire antibodies later in life than those in lower socioeconomic populations. Presumably this reflects more crowded living conditions and poorer hygiene among the latter. The virus is spread by direct contact with infected saliva or through utensils contaminated with the saliva of a virus shedder. The source of infection for children is usually an adult with a symptomatic herpetic lesion or with asymptomatic viral shedding in saliva.

The frequency of recurrent HSV-1 infections varies widely among individuals. At any given time, 1–5% of normal adults will be excreting virus, often in the absence of clinical symptoms.

HSV-2 is usually acquired as a sexually transmitted disease, so antibodies to this virus are seldom found before puberty. It is estimated that there are about 40–60 million infected individuals in the United States. Antibody prevalence studies have been complicated by the cross-reactivity between HSV types 1 and 2. Surveys using type-specific glycoprotein antigens recently determined that 20% of adults in the United States possess HSV-2 antibodies, with seroprevalence higher among women than men and higher among blacks than whites.

Recurrent genital infections may be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Either situation provides a reservoir of virus for transmission to susceptible persons. HSV-2 tends to recur more often than HSV-1, irrespective of the site of infection.

Maternal genital HSV infections pose risks to both mother and fetus. Rarely, pregnant women may develop disseminated disease after primary infection, with a high mortality rate. Primary infection before 20 weeks of gestation has been associated with spontaneous abortion. The fetus may acquire infection as a result of viral shedding from recurrent lesions in the mother's birth canal at the time of delivery. Estimates of the frequency of cervical shedding of virus among pregnant women vary widely.

Genital HSV infections increase acquisition of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) type 1 infections because the ulcerative lesions are openings in the mucosal surface.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

Several antiviral drugs have proved effective against HSV infections, including acyclovir, valacyclovir, and vidarabine. (See Chapter 30.) Acyclovir is currently the standard therapy. All are inhibitors of viral DNA synthesis. Acyclovir, a nucleoside analog, is monophosphorylated by the HSV thymidine kinase and is then converted to the triphosphate form by cellular kinases. The acyclovir triphosphate is efficiently incorporated into viral DNA by the HSV polymerase, where it then prevents chain elongation. The drugs may suppress clinical manifestations, shorten time to healing, and reduce recurrences of genital herpes. However, HSV remains latent in sensory ganglia. Drug-resistant virus strains may emerge.

Newborns and persons with eczema should be protected from exposure to persons with active herpetic lesions.

Experimental vaccines of various types are being developed. One approach is to use purified glycoprotein antigens found in the viral envelope, expressed in some recombinant systems. Such vaccines might be helpful for the prevention of primary infections. A recombinant HSV-2 glycoprotein vaccine tested in a recent multicenter trial prevented genital herpes infections in women who were seronegative for both HSV-1 and HSV-2; it was not effective in women who were seropositive for HSV-1 or in men.

VARICELLA-ZOSTER VIRUS

Varicella (chickenpox) is a mild, highly contagious disease, chiefly of children, characterized clinically by a generalized vesicular eruption of the skin and mucous membranes. The disease may be severe in adults and in immunocompromised children.

Zoster (shingles) is a sporadic, incapacitating disease of adults or immunocompromised individuals that is characterized by a rash limited in distribution to the skin innervated by a single sensory ganglion. The lesions are similar to those of varicella.

Both diseases are caused by the same virus. Varicella is the acute disease that follows primary contact with the virus, whereas zoster is the response of the partially immune host to reactivation of varicella virus present in latent form in neurons in sensory ganglia.

Properties of the Virus

Varicella-zoster virus is morphologically identical to herpes simplex virus. It has no animal reservoir. The virus propagates in cultures of human embryonic tissue and produces typical intranuclear inclusion bodies (see Figure 33–3B). Cytopathic changes are more focal and spread much more slowly than those induced by HSV. Infectious virus remains strongly cell-associated, and serial propagation is more easily accomplished by passage of infected cells than of tissue culture fluids.

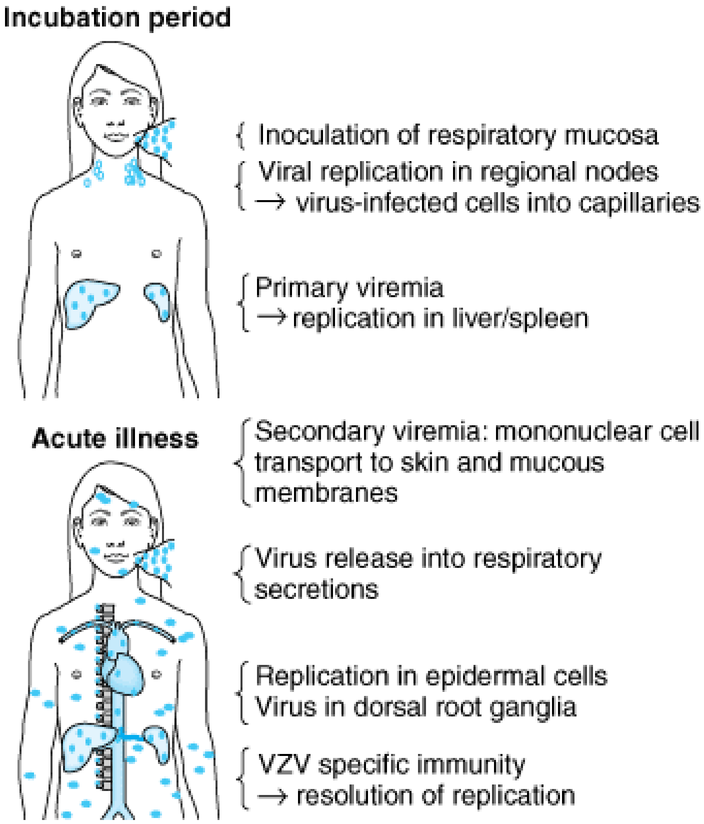
The same virus causes chickenpox and zoster. Viral isolates from the vesicles of chickenpox or zoster patients exhibit no significant genetic variation. Inoculation of zoster vesicle fluid into children produces chickenpox. Children who have recovered from zoster virus-induced infection are resistant to varicella.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

VARICELLA

The route of infection is the mucosa of the upper respiratory tract or the conjunctiva (Figure 33–6). Following initial replication in regional lymph nodes, primary viremia spreads virus and leads to replication in liver and spleen. Secondary viremia involving infected mononuclear cells transports virus to the skin, where the typical rash develops. Swelling of epithelial cells, ballooning degeneration, and the accumulation of tissue fluids result in vesicle formation (Figure 33–7).

Figure 33–6.

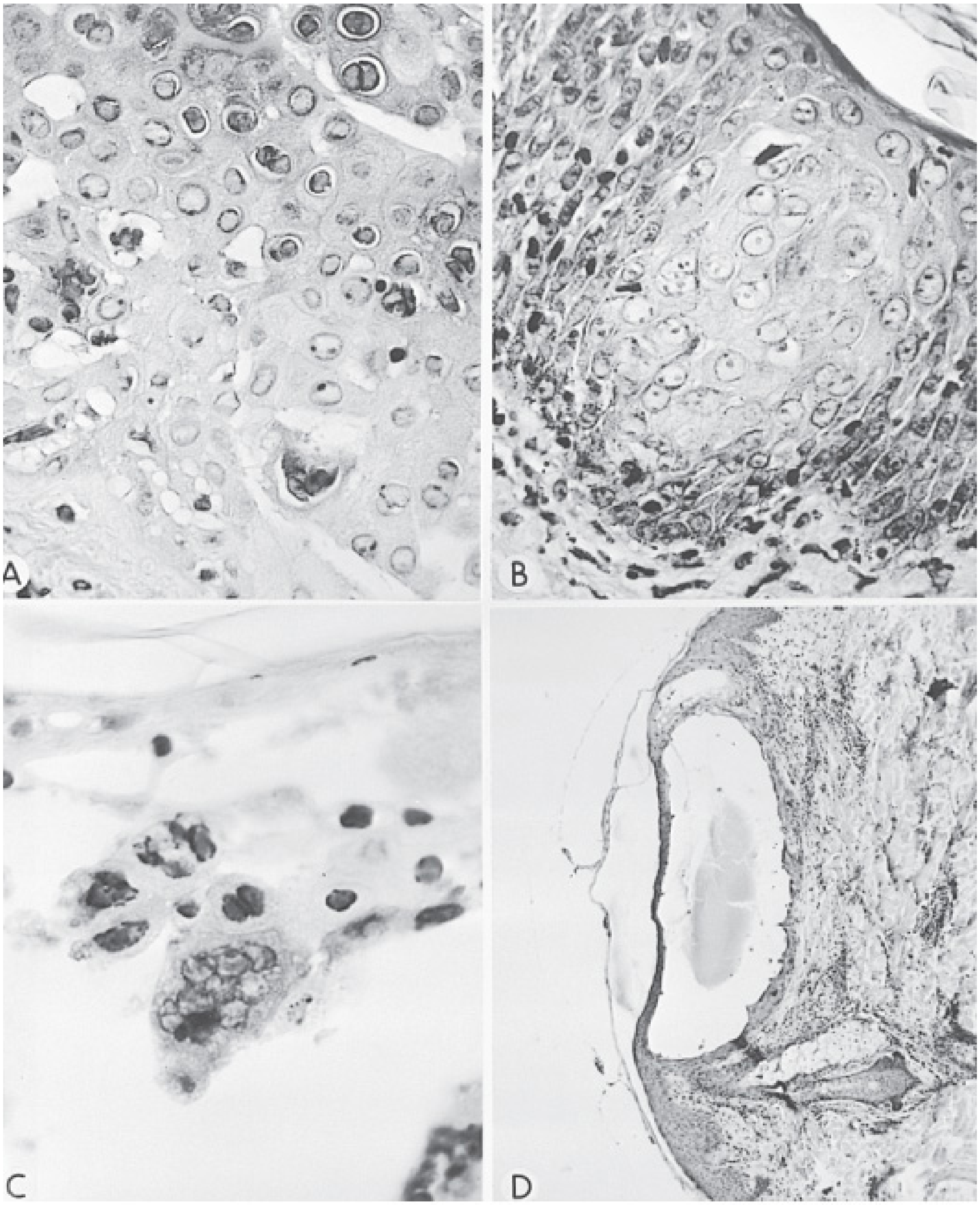


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The pathogenesis of primary infection with varicella-zoster virus. The incubation period with primary viremia lasts from 10 to 21 days. A secondary viremic phase results in the transport of virus to skin and respiratory mucosal sites. Replication in epidermal cells causes the characteristic rash of varicella, referred to as chickenpox. The induction of varicella-zoster virus-specific immunity is required to terminate viral replication. The virus gains access to cells of the trigeminal and dorsal root ganglia during primary infection and establishes latency.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Arvin AM: Varicella-zoster virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Figure 33–7.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Characteristic histologic changes of varicella-zoster virus infection. Punch biopsies of varicella-zoster virus vesicles were fixed and stained with hematoxylin-eosin. A: Early infection showing "balloon degeneration" of cells with basophilic nuclei and marginated chromatin (reduced from 480 x). B: Later infection showing eosinophilic intranuclear inclusions surrounded by wide clear zones (reduced from 480 x). C: Multinucleated giant cell in the roof of a varicella vesicle (reduced from 480 x). D: Low-power view of an early vesicle showing separation of the epidermis (acantholysis), dermal edema, and mononuclear cell infiltration (reduced from 40 x).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Gelb LD: Varicella-zoster virus. In: *Virology,* 2nd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Raven Press, 1990.)

Varicella-zoster virus replication and spread are limited by host humoral and cellular immune responses. Interferon may also be involved.

ZOSTER

The skin lesions of zoster are histopathologically identical to those of varicella. There is also an acute inflammation of the sensory nerves and ganglia. Often only a single ganglion may be involved. As a rule, the distribution of lesions in the skin corresponds closely to the areas of innervation from an individual dorsal root ganglion.

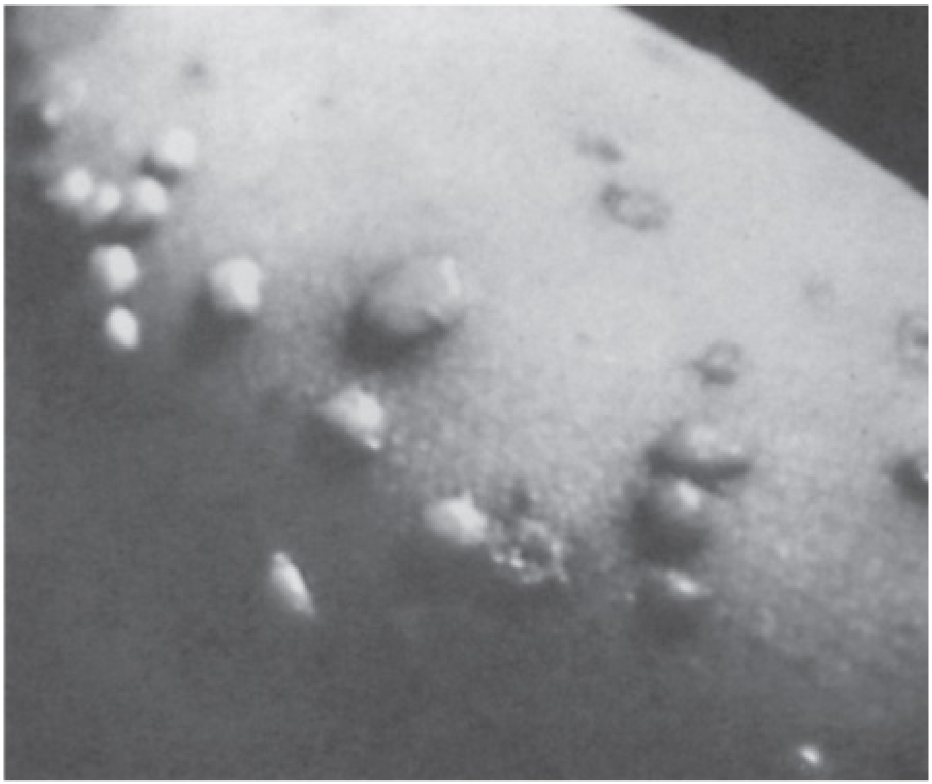
It is not clear what triggers reactivation of latent varicella-zoster virus infections in ganglia. It is believed that waning immunity allows viral replication to occur in a ganglion, causing intense inflammation and pain. Virus travels down the nerve to the skin and induces vesicle formation. Cell-mediated immunity is probably the most important host defense in containment of varicella-zoster virus. Reactivations are sporadic and recur infrequently.

Clinical Findings

VARICELLA

Subclinical varicella is unusual. The incubation period of typical disease is 10–21 days. Malaise and fever are the earliest symptoms, soon followed by the rash, first on the trunk and then on the face, the limbs, and the buccal and pharyngeal mucosa in the mouth. Successive fresh vesicles appear in crops, so that all stages of macules, papules, vesicles, and crusts may be seen at one time (Figure 33–8). The rash lasts about 5 days, and most children develop several hundred skin lesions.

Figure 33–8.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Multiple stages or "crops" of varicella skin lesions.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Gelb LD: Varicella-zoster virus. In: *Virology,* 2nd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Raven Press, 1990.)

Complications are rare in normal children, and the mortality rate is very low. Encephalitis does occur in rare cases and can be life-threatening. Survivors of varicella encephalitis may be left with permanent sequelae. In neonatal varicella, the infection is contracted from the mother just before or after birth but without sufficient immune response to modify the disease. Virus is often widely disseminated and may prove fatal. Cases of congenital varicella syndrome following maternal cases of chickenpox during pregnancy have been described.

Varicella pneumonia is rare in healthy children but is the most common complication in neonates, adults, and immunocompromised patients. It is responsible for many varicella-related deaths.

Immunocompromised patients are at increased risk of complications of varicella, including those with malignancies, organ transplants, or HIV infection and those receiving high doses of corticosteroids. Disseminated intravascular coagulation may occur that is rapidly fatal. Children with leukemia are especially prone to develop severe, disseminated varicella-zoster virus disease.

ZOSTER

Zoster usually occurs in persons immunocompromised as a result of disease, therapy, or aging, but it occasionally develops in healthy young adults. It usually starts with severe pain in the area of skin or mucosa supplied by one or more groups of sensory nerves and ganglia. Within a few days after onset, a crop of vesicles appears over the skin supplied by the affected nerves. The trunk, head, and neck are most commonly affected (Figure 33–9), with the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve involved in 10–15% of cases. The most common complication of zoster in the elderly is postherpetic neuralgia—protracted pain that may continue for months. It is especially common after ophthalmic zoster. Visceral disease, especially pneumonia, is responsible for deaths that occur in immunosuppressed patients with zoster (< 1% of patients).

Figure 33–9.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: Herpes zoster in the distribution of thoracic nerves.

(Courtesy of AA Gershon.)

B: Herpes zoster involving the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve with associated conjunctivitis and involvement of the side of the nose.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Arvin AM: Varicella-zoster virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Immunity

Varicella and zoster viruses are identical, the two diseases being the result of differing host responses. Previous infection with varicella is believed to confer lifelong immunity to varicella. Antibodies induced by varicella vaccine persist for at least 20 years. Zoster occurs in the presence of neutralizing antibody to varicella.

Increases in varicella antibody titer may occur in persons with HSV infections.

The development of varicella-zoster virus-specific cell-mediated immunity is important in recovery from both varicella and zoster. Appearance of local interferon may also contribute to recovery.

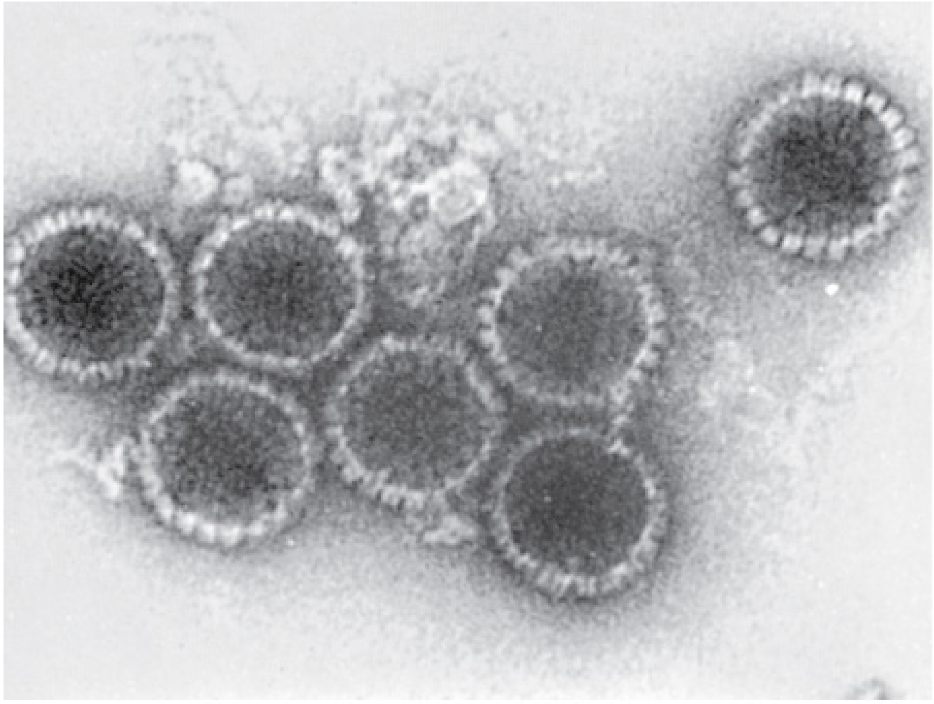
Varicella-zoster virus, like other herpesviruses, encodes means of evading host immune responses. For example, it downregulates major histocompatibility complex class I and II antigen expression.

Laboratory Diagnosis

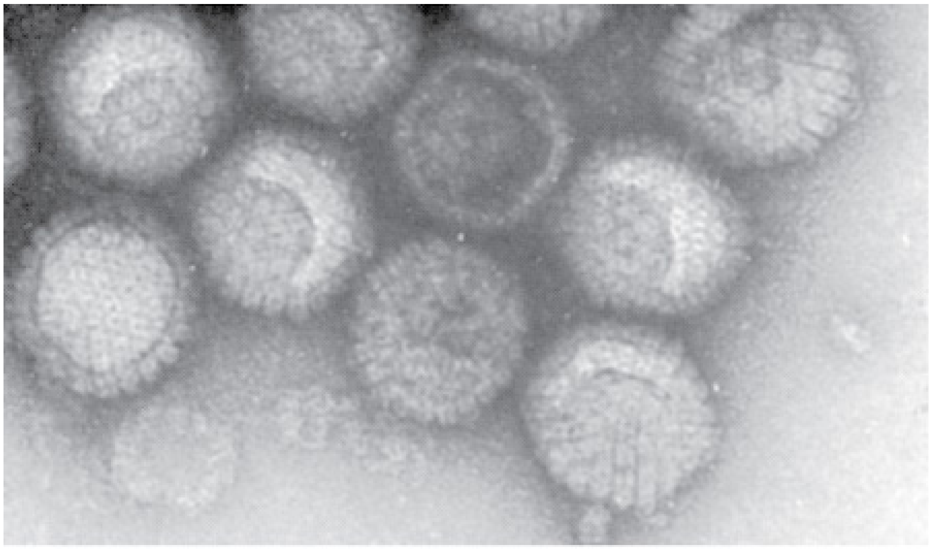
In stained smears of scrapings or swabs of the base of vesicles (Tzanck smear), multinucleated giant cells are seen (Figure 33–7). These are absent in nonherpetic vesicles. Intracellular viral antigens can be demonstrated by immunofluorescence staining of similar smears.

Rapid diagnostic procedures are clinically useful for varicella-zoster virus. Virus-specific antigens or viral DNA can be detected in vesicle fluid, in skin scrapings, or in biopsy material. Herpesviruses can be differentiated from poxviruses by the morphologic appearance of particles in vesicular fluids examined by electron microscopy (Figure 33–10).

Figure 33–10.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Top: Herpesvirus particles from human vesicle fluid, stained with uranyl acetate to show DNA core (140,000 x). Bottom: Virions stained to show protein capsomeres of the virus coat (140,000 x). *Note:* Different herpesviruses cannot be distinguished by electron microscopy.

(Courtesy of KO Smith and JL Melnick.)

Virus can be isolated from vesicle fluid early in the course of illness using cultures of human cells in 3–7 days. Varicella-zoster virus in vesicle fluid is very labile, and cell cultures should be inoculated promptly.

A rise in specific antibody titer can be detected in the patient's serum by various tests, including fluorescent antibody and enzyme immunoassay. The choice of assay to use depends on the purpose of the test and the laboratory facilities available. Cell-mediated immunity is important, but difficult to demonstrate.

Epidemiology

Varicella and zoster occur worldwide. Varicella (chickenpox) is highly communicable and is a common epidemic disease of childhood (most cases occur in children under 10 years of age). Adult cases do occur. It is much more common in winter and spring than in summer in temperate climates. Zoster occurs sporadically, chiefly in adults and without seasonal prevalence. Ten to 20 percent of adults will experience at least one zoster attack during their lifetime, usually after the age of 50.

A live attenuated vaccine is available. In the pre-vaccine era, varicella caused about 4 million illnesses, 11,000 hospitalizations, and 100 deaths annually in the United States. Since the vaccine was introduced in 1995, there has been a steady decline in the incidence of varicella diseases; however, varicella outbreaks continue to occur among school children, because some children are unvaccinated and the vaccine is 80–85% effective in vaccinated persons.

Varicella spreads readily by airborne droplets and by direct contact. A varicella patient is probably infectious (capable of transmitting the disease) from shortly before the appearance of rash to the first few days of rash. Contact infection is less common in zoster, perhaps because the virus is absent from the upper respiratory tract in typical cases. Zoster patients can be the source of varicella in susceptible children. Varicella-zoster virus DNA has been detected, using a PCR amplification method, in air samples from hospital rooms of patients with active varicella (82%) and zoster (70%) infections.

Treatment

Varicella in normal children is a mild disease and requires no treatment. Neonates and immunocompromised patients with severe infections should be treated.

Gamma globulin of high varicella-zoster virus antibody titer (varicella-zoster immune globulin) can be used to prevent the development of the illness in patients exposed to varicella who are at high risk of developing severe disease. It has no therapeutic value once varicella has started. Standard immune globulin is without value because of its low titer of varicella antibodies.

The manufacturer of the only United States-licensed varicella-zoster immune globulin discontinued its production in 2004; however, in 2006, a new investigational (not licensed) product became available. It can be requested for patients at increased risk for severe disease.

Several antiviral compounds provide effective therapy for varicella, including acyclovir, valacyclovir, famciclovir, and foscarnet. Acyclovir can prevent the development of systemic disease in varicella-infected immunosuppressed patients and can halt the progression of zoster in adults. Acyclovir does not appear to prevent postherpetic neuralgia.

Prevention & Control

A live attenuated varicella vaccine was approved in 1995 for general use in the United States. A similar vaccine has been used successfully in Japan for about 30 years. The vaccine is highly effective at inducing protection from varicella in children (80–85% effective), but less so in adults (70%). The vaccine is about 95% effective in preventing severe disease. About 5% of individuals develop a mild vaccine-associated rash 1 month after immunization. Transmission of the vaccine virus is rare but can occur when the vaccinee has a rash. The duration of protective immunity induced by the vaccine is unknown, but is probably long term. Varicella infections can occur in vaccinated persons, but they are usually mild illnesses.

A shingles vaccine is a more potent version of the varicella vaccine. It has been shown to be effective in older adults at reducing both the frequency of outbreaks of zoster and the severity of disease that does occur.

CYTOMEGALOVIRUS

Cytomegaloviruses are ubiquitous herpesviruses that are common causes of human disease. The name for the classic cytomegalic inclusion disease derives from the propensity for massive enlargement of cytomegalovirus-infected cells.

Cytomegalic inclusion disease is a generalized infection of infants caused by intrauterine or early postnatal infection with the cytomegaloviruses. Cytomegalovirus poses an important public health problem because of its high frequency of congenital infections, which may lead to severe congenital anomalies. Inapparent infection is common during childhood and adolescence. Severe cytomegalovirus infections are frequently found in adults who are immunosuppressed.

Properties of the Virus

Cytomegalovirus has the largest genetic content of the human herpesviruses. Its DNA genome (240 kbp) is significantly larger than that of HSV. Only a few of the many proteins encoded by the virus (over 200) have been characterized. One, a cell surface glycoprotein, acts as an Fc receptor that can nonspecifically bind the Fc portion of immunoglobulins. This may help infected cells evade immune elimination by providing a protective coating of irrelevant host immunoglobulins.

The major immediate early promoter-enhancer of cytomegalovirus is one of the strongest known enhancers, due to the concentration of binding sites for cellular transcription factors. It is used experimentally to support high-level expression of foreign genes.

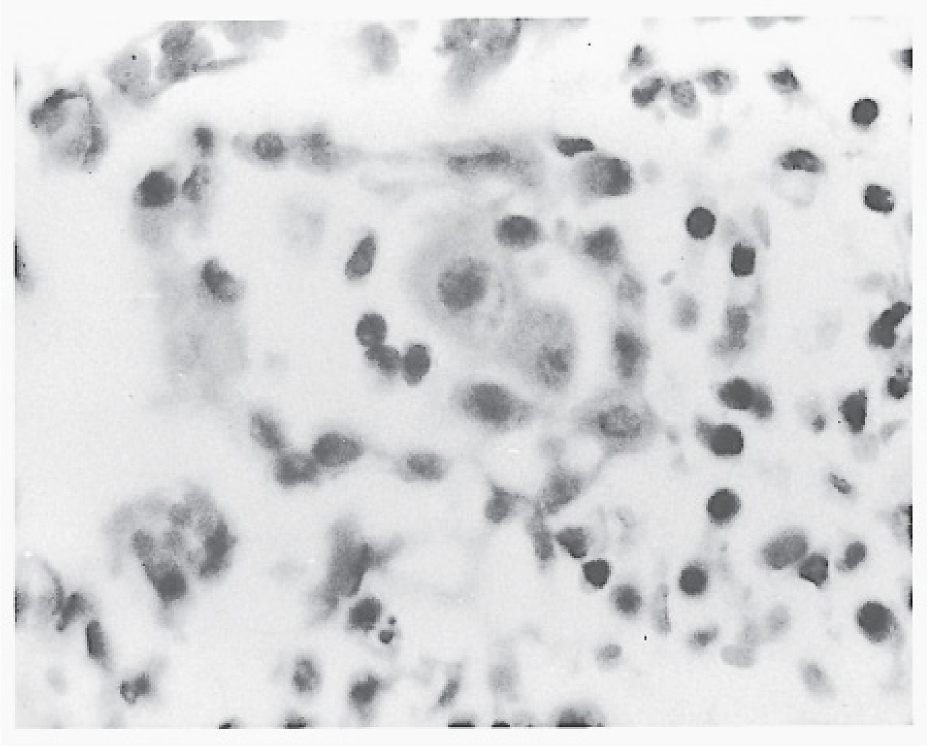
Many genetically different strains of cytomegalovirus are circulating in the human population. The strains are sufficiently related antigenically, however, so that strain differences are probably not important determinants in human disease.

Cytomegaloviruses are very species-specific and cell type-specific. All attempts to infect animals with human cytomegalovirus have failed. A number of animal cytomegaloviruses exist, all of them species-specific.

Human cytomegalovirus replicates in vitro only in human fibroblasts, although the virus is often isolated from epithelial cells of the host. Cytomegalovirus replicates very slowly in cultured cells, with growth proceeding more slowly than that of HSV or varicella-zoster virus. Very little virus becomes cell-free; infection is spread primarily cell-to-cell. It may take several weeks for an entire monolayer of cultured cells to become involved.

Cytomegalovirus produces a characteristic cytopathic effect (see Figure 33–3C). Perinuclear cytoplasmic inclusions form in addition to the intranuclear inclusions typical of herpesviruses. Multinucleated cells are seen. Many affected cells become greatly enlarged. Inclusion-bearing cytomegalic cells can be found in samples from infected individuals (Figure 33–11).

Figure 33–11.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Massively enlarged "cytomegalic" cells typical of cytomegalovirus infection present in the lung of a premature infant who died of disseminated cytomegalovirus disease.

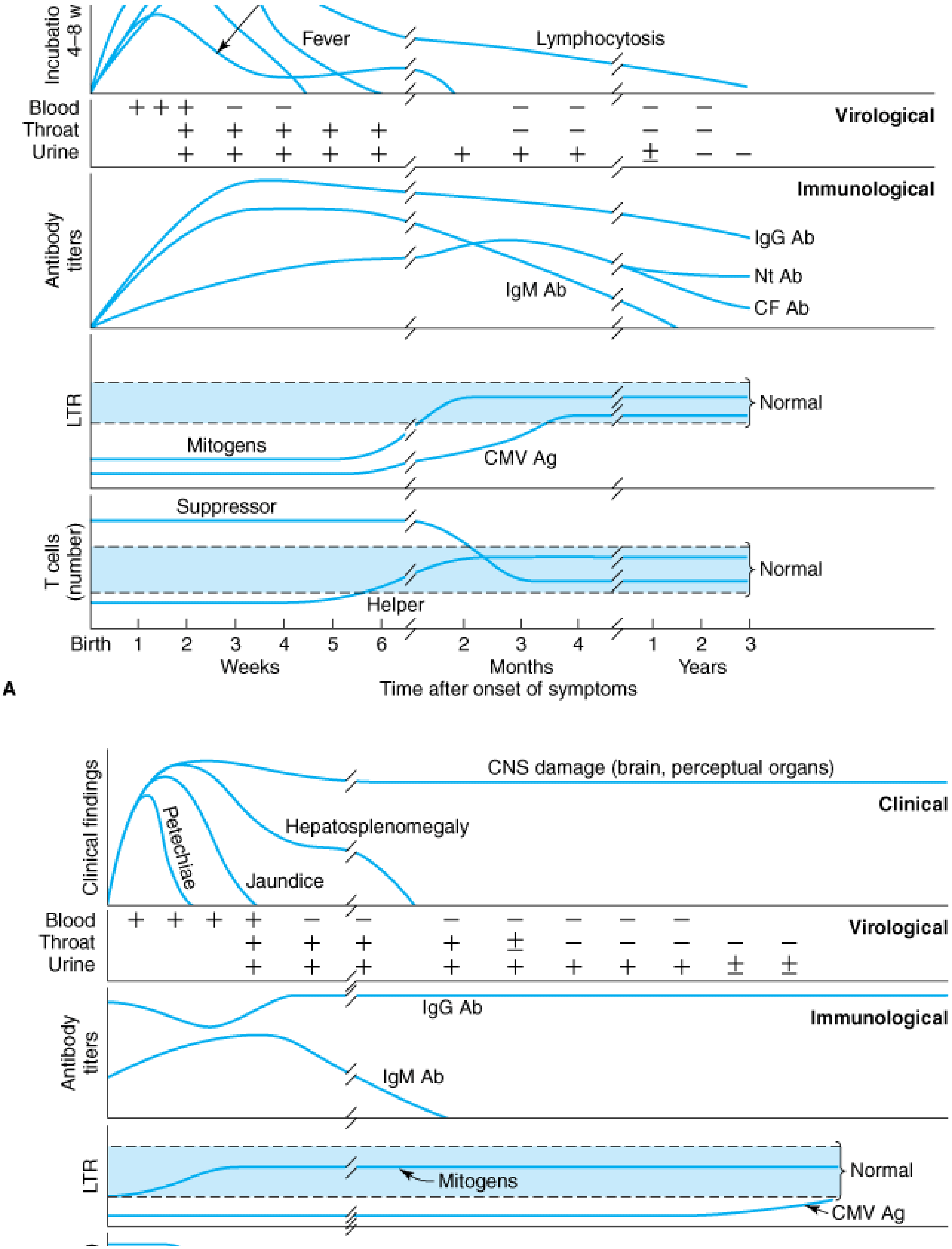
(Courtesy of GJ Demmler.)

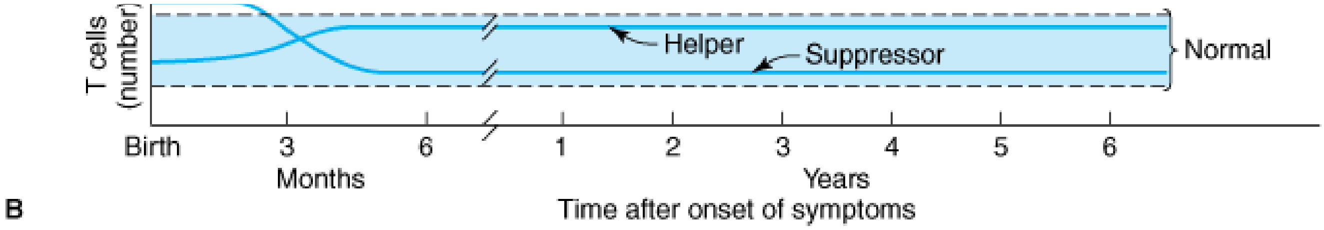
Pathogenesis & Pathology

NORMAL HOSTS

Cytomegalovirus may be transmitted person-to-person in several different ways, all requiring close contact with virus-bearing material. There is a 4- to 8-week incubation period in normal older children and adults after viral exposure. The virus causes a systemic infection; it has been isolated from lung, liver, esophagus, colon, kidneys, monocytes, and T and B lymphocytes. The disease is an infectious mononucleosis-like syndrome, although most cytomegalovirus infections are subclinical. Like all herpesviruses, cytomegalovirus establishes lifelong latent infections. Virus can be shed intermittently from the pharynx and in the urine for months to years after primary infection (Figure 33–12). Prolonged cytomegalovirus infection of the kidney does not seem to be deleterious in normal persons. Salivary gland involvement is common and is probably chronic.

Figure 33–12.


Incubatio
4–8 w
Fever
Lymphocytosis
Blood
Throat
Urine
Virological
Antibody titers
Immunological
IgG Ab
Nt Ab
IgM Ab
CF Ab
LTR
Normal
Mitogens
CMV Ag
T cells (number)
Suppressor
Normal
Helper
Birth
1
2
3
4
5
6
2
3
4
1
2
3
Weeks
Months
Years
Time after onset of symptoms
A
Clinical findings
CNS damage (brain, perceptual organs)
Clinical
Petechiae
Hepatosplenomegaly
Jaundice
Blood
Throat
Urine
Virological
Antibody titers
IgG Ab
Immunological
IgM Ab
LTR
Mitogens
Normal
CMV Ag



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Clinical, virologic, and immunologic features of cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection in normal individuals (A) and in congenitally infected infants (B). LTR, lymphocyte transformation response.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Alford CA, Britt WJ: Cytomegalovirus. In: *Virology,* 2nd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Raven Press, 1990.)

Cell-mediated immunity is depressed with primary infections (Figure 33–12), and this may contribute to the persistence of viral infection. It may take several months for cellular responses to recover.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSED HOSTS

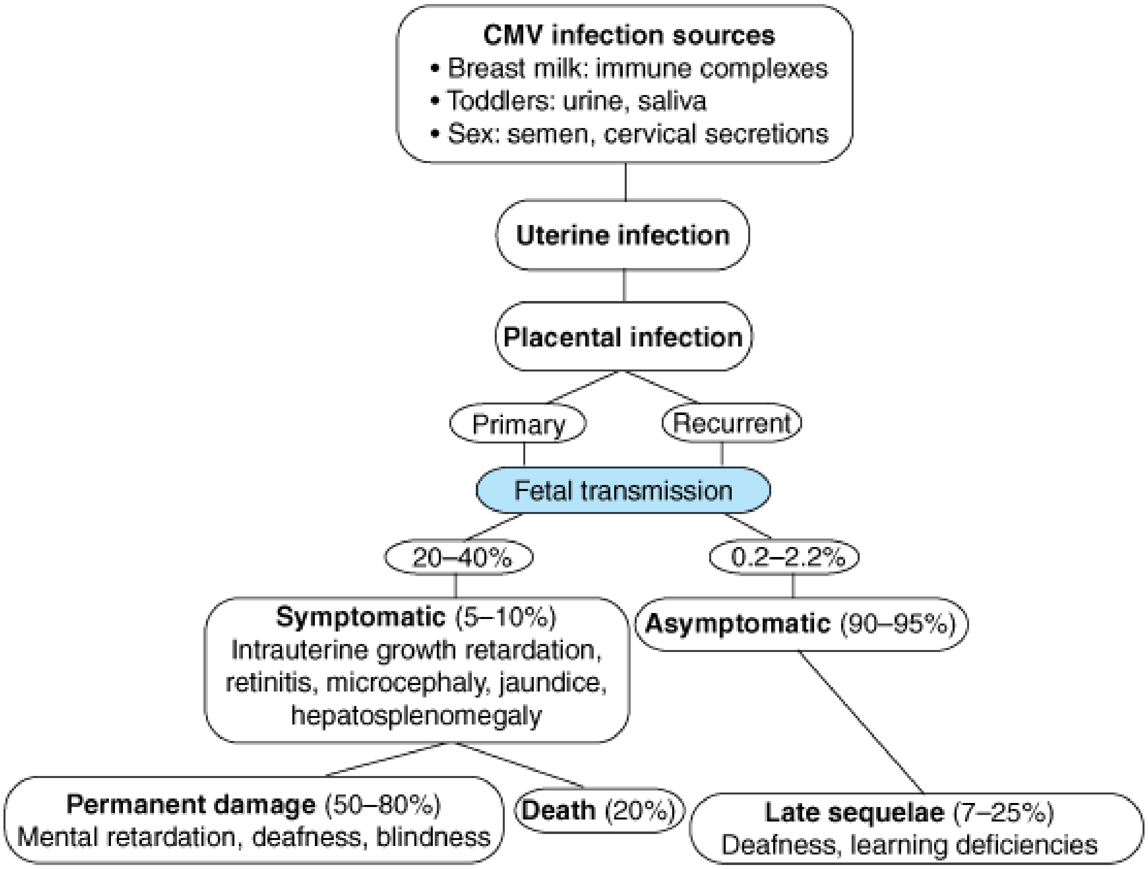
Primary cytomegalovirus infections in immunosuppressed hosts are much more severe than in normal hosts. Individuals at greatest risk for cytomegalovirus disease are those receiving organ transplants, those with malignant tumors who are receiving chemotherapy, and those with AIDS. Viral excretion is increased and prolonged, and the infection is more apt to become disseminated. Pneumonia is the most common complication.

The host immune response presumably maintains cytomegalovirus in a latent state in seropositive individuals. Reactivated infections are associated with disease much more often in immunocompromised patients than in normal hosts. Although usually less severe, reactivated infections may be as virulent as primary infections.

CONGENITAL AND PERINATAL INFECTIONS

Fetal and newborn infections with cytomegalovirus may be severe (Figure 33–13). About 1% of live births annually in the United States have congenital cytomegalovirus infections and about 5–10% of those will suffer cytomegalic inclusion disease. A high percentage of babies with this disease will exhibit developmental defects and mental retardation.

Figure 33–13.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Congenital infections by cytomegalovirus and birth defects in symptomatic and asymptomatic children. Cytomegalovirus is the most common intrauterine infection associated with congenital defects.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Pereira L et al: Insights into viral transmission at the uterine-placental interface. Trends Microbiol 2005;13:164.)

The virus can be transmitted in utero with both primary and reactivated maternal infections. About one-third of pregnant women with primary infection transmit the virus. Generalized cytomegalic inclusion disease results most often from primary maternal infections. There is no evidence that gestational age at the time of maternal infection affects expression of disease in the fetus. Intrauterine transmission occurs in about 1% of seropositive women. Fetal damage seldom results from these reactivated maternal infections; the infection of the infant remains subclinical though chronic (Figure 33–12).

Cytomegalovirus can also be acquired by the infant from exposure to virus in the mother's genital tract during delivery and from maternal breast milk. In these cases, the infants usually have received some maternal antibody, and the perinatally acquired cytomegalovirus infections tend to be subclinical. Transfusion-acquired cytomegalovirus infections in newborns will vary, depending on the amount of virus received and the serologic status of the blood donor. Whether cytomegalovirus is acquired in utero or perinatally, a more chronic infection results—with respect to viral excretion—than when the virus is acquired later in life (Figure 33–12).

Clinical Findings

NORMAL HOSTS

Primary cytomegalovirus infection of older children and adults is usually asymptomatic but occasionally causes a spontaneous infectious mononucleosis syndrome. The disease is characterized by malaise, myalgia, protracted fever, liver function abnormalities, and lymphocytosis. Cytomegalovirus is estimated to cause 20–50% of heterophil-negative (non-Epstein-Barr virus) mononucleosis cases.

Cytomegalovirus mononucleosis is a mild disease, and complications are rare. Subclinical hepatitis is common. In younger children (under 7 years old), hepatosplenomegaly is frequently observed.

An association has been observed between the presence of cytomegalovirus and restenosis following coronary angioplasty. It is speculated that the virus may be contributing to the proliferation of smooth muscle cells, leading to restenosis.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED HOSTS

Both morbidity and mortality rates are increased with primary and recurrent cytomegalovirus infections in immunocompromised individuals. Pneumonia is a frequent complication. Interstitial pneumonitis caused by cytomegalovirus occurs in 10–20% of bone marrow transplant recipients. Virus-associated leukopenia is common in solid organ transplant recipients; also seen are obliterative bronchiolitis in lung transplants, graft atherosclerosis after heart transplantation, and cytomegalovirus-related rejection of renal allografts. Cytomegalovirus often causes disseminated disease in untreated AIDS patients; gastroenteritis and chorioretinitis are common problems, the latter often leading to progressive blindness.

CONGENITAL AND PERINATAL INFECTIONS

Congenital infection may result in death of the fetus in utero (Figure 33–13). Cytomegalic inclusion disease of newborns is characterized by involvement of the central nervous system and the reticuloendothelial system. Clinical features include intrauterine growth retardation, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, thrombocytopenia, microcephaly, and retinitis. Mortality rates are about 20%. The majority of survivors will develop significant central nervous system defects within 2 years; severe hearing loss, ocular abnormalities, and mental retardation are common. About 10% of infants with subclinical congenital cytomegalovirus infection will develop deafness. It has been estimated that one in every 1000 infants born in the United States is seriously retarded as a result of congenital cytomegalovirus infection.

Many women infected previously with cytomegalovirus show reactivation and begin to excrete the virus from the cervix during pregnancy. At the time of delivery through the infected birth canal, infants may become infected, though they possess high titers of maternal antibody acquired transplacentally. These infants begin to shed virus at about 8–12 weeks of age. They continue to excrete the virus for several years but remain healthy.

Acquired infection with cytomegalovirus is common and usually inapparent. The virus is shed in the saliva and urine of infected individuals for weeks or months. Cytomegalovirus may be a cause of isolated pneumonia in infants less than 6 months of age.

Immunity

Antibodies to cytomegalovirus occur in most human sera. Cytomegalovirus-specific antibodies of the IgM, IgA, and IgG classes have all been detected. Reactivation of latent infection occurs in the presence of humoral immunity. The presence of antibody in breast milk does not prevent transmission of infection to breast-feeding infants. Maternal antibody protects more against development of serious disease in the infant than viral transmission.

Laboratory Diagnosis

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION AND ANTIGEN DETECTION ASSAYS

PCR assays have replaced virus isolation for routine detection of cytomegalovirus infections. Cell culture methods of viral isolation are too slow to be useful in guiding therapy, particularly in immunosuppressed patients. The PCR assays are designed to detect replicating virus, not latent viral genomes. Blood and urine are most commonly tested. PCR assays can provide viral load data, which appears to be important in predicting cytomegalovirus disease. Monoclonal antibodies against viral antigens can be used to detect virus-positive leukocytes from patients.

ISOLATION OF VIRUS

Human fibroblasts are used for virus isolation attempts. The virus can be recovered most readily from throat washings and urine. In cultures, 2–3 weeks are usually needed for the appearance of cytologic changes, consisting of small foci of swollen, translucent cells with large intranuclear inclusions (see Figures 33–3C, 33–3D). The virus stays cell-associated.

SEROLOGY

Many types of assays can detect cytomegalovirus IgG antibodies, indicative of past infection (and the potential to undergo reactivation). Detection of viral IgM antibodies suggests a current infection. Serologic assays are not informative for immunocompromised patients. Furthermore, serologic techniques cannot distinguish strain differences among clinical isolates.

Epidemiology

Cytomegalovirus is endemic in all parts of the world; epidemics are unknown. It is present throughout the year, with no seasonal variation seen in infection rates.

The prevalence of infection varies with socioeconomic status, living conditions, and hygienic practices. Antibody prevalence may be moderate (40–70%) in adults in high socioeconomic groups in developed countries—in contrast to a prevalence of 90% in children and adults in developing nations and in low socioeconomic groups in developed countries.

Humans are the only known host for cytomegalovirus. Transmission requires close person-to-person contact. Virus may be shed in urine, saliva, semen, breast milk, and cervical secretions and is carried in circulating white blood cells. Oral and respiratory spread are probably the dominant routes of cytomegalovirus transmission. It can also be spread transplacentally, by blood transfusion, by organ transplantation, and by sexual contact.

New infections are almost always asymptomatic. After infection, virus is shed from multiple sites. Viral shedding may continue for years, often intermittently, as latent virus becomes reactivated. Thus, exposures to cytomegalovirus are widespread and common.

Intrauterine infection may produce serious disease in the newborn. About 1% of infants born in the United States are infected with cytomegalovirus. The majority have subclinical but chronic infections; 5–10% have cytomegalic inclusion disease with attendant developmental defects and high mortality. Congenital infections, whether subclinical or clinically apparent, result in chronic infections, with viral shedding detectable for years. Many more infants become infected with cytomegalovirus in the first months of life, often from infected breast milk or by nursery spread. Most of these infections are subclinical but are usually chronic, with persistent viral shedding.

Primary maternal infections during pregnancy are responsible for most cases of cytomegalic inclusion disease. Infants and children with subclinical cytomegalovirus infections are the major source of exposure. Other congenital infections are due to reactivations of latent maternal infections.

Cytomegalovirus can be transmitted by blood transfusion. Estimated risk varies widely but is about 1–5% per unit of whole blood. Seronegative solid organ transplantation recipients are at risk, as a seropositive organ transmits the virus in 60–80% of cases.

Cytomegalovirus infections are markedly increased in immunosuppressed populations; transplant recipients often develop infections, most of which are due to reactivations of their own latent virus.

Treatment & Control

Drug treatments of cytomegalovirus infections have shown some encouraging results. Ganciclovir, a nucleoside structurally related to acyclovir, has been used successfully to treat life-threatening cytomegalovirus infections in immunosuppressed patients. The severity of cytomegalovirus retinitis, esophagitis, and colitis is reduced by ganciclovir. In addition, early treatment with ganciclovir reduces the incidence of cytomegalovirus pneumonia in bone marrow allograft recipients. Ganciclovir also controls progressive hearing loss in neonates with congenital infections. Foscarnet, an analog of inorganic pyrophosphate, is recommended for treatment of cytomegalovirus retinitis. Acyclovir and valacyclovir have shown some benefits in bone marrow and renal transplant patients.

Specific control measures are not available to prevent cytomegalovirus spread. Isolation of newborns with generalized cytomegalic inclusion disease from other newborns is advisable.

Screening of transplant donors and recipients for cytomegalovirus antibody may prevent some transmissions of primary cytomegalovirus. The cytomegalovirus-seronegative transplant recipient population represents a high-risk group for cytomegalovirus infections. Administration of human IgG prepared from plasma pools obtained from healthy persons with high titers of cytomegalovirus antibodies (cytomegalovirus immune globulin) has given discordant results in tests to decrease the incidence of viral infections in transplant recipients. Cytomegalovirus immune globulin is in limited supply.

The use of blood from seronegative donors has been recommended when infants will require multiple transfusions. This approach would eliminate transfusion-acquired cytomegalovirus infections, but it is difficult to implement.

Both live and recombinant cytomegalovirus vaccines are under development.

EPSTEIN-BARR VIRUS

Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is a ubiquitous herpesvirus that is the causative agent of acute infectious mononucleosis and is associated with nasopharyngeal carcinoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, and other lymphoproliferative disorders in immunodeficient individuals.

Properties of the Virus

The EBV DNA genome contains about 172 kbp, has a G + C content of 59%, and encodes about 100 genes. There are two types (EBV-1, EBV-2), based on differences in the latency nuclear antigen genes (EBNAs, EBERs).

BIOLOGY OF EBV

The major target cell for EBV is the B lymphocyte. When human B lymphocytes are infected with EBV, continuous cell lines can be established, indicating that cells have been immortalized by the virus. Very few of the immortalized cells produce infectious virus. Laboratory studies of EBV are hampered by the lack of a fully permissive cell system able to propagate the virus.

EBV initiates infection of B cells by binding to the viral receptor, which is the receptor for the C3d component of complement (CR2 or CD21). EBV directly enters a latent state in the lymphocyte without undergoing a period of complete viral replication. The hallmarks of latency are viral persistence, restricted virus expression, and the potential for reactivation and lytic replication.

The efficiency of B cell immortalization by EBV is quite high. When virus binds to the cell surface, cells are activated to enter the cell cycle. Subsequently, a limited repertoire of EBV genes are expressed, and the cells are able to proliferate indefinitely. The linear EBV genome forms a circle and is amplified during the cell cycle S phase; the majority of viral DNA in the immortalized cells exists as circular episomes.

EBV-immortalized B lymphocytes express differentiated functions, such as secretion of immunoglobulin. B cell activation products (eg, CD23) are also expressed. At least 10 viral gene products are expressed in immortalized cells, including six different EBV nuclear antigens (EBNA1, 2, 3A-3C, LP), two latent membrane proteins (LMP1, 2), and two small untranslated RNAs (EBER1, 2).

At any given time, very few cells (< 10%) in an immortalized population release virus particles. Latency can be disrupted and the EBV genome activated to replicate in a cell by a variety of stimuli, including chemical inducing agents or cross-linking cell surface immunoglobulin.

EBV can replicate in vivo in epithelial cells of the oropharynx, parotid gland, and uterine cervix; it is found in epithelial cells of some nasopharyngeal carcinomas. Although epithelial cells in vivo contain an EBV receptor, the receptor is lost from cultured cells.

EBV is associated with a number of lymphoproliferative disorders. Viral gene expression in these cells is limited and varies from only EBNA1 to the full complement of proteins found in latently infected B cells.

VIRAL ANTIGENS

EBV antigens are divided into three classes, based on the phase of the viral life cycle in which they are expressed: (1) Latent phase antigens are synthesized by latently infected cells. These include the EBNAs and the LMPs. Their expression reveals that an EBV genome is present. Only EBNA1, needed to maintain the viral DNA episomes, is invariably expressed; expression of the other latent phase antigens may be regulated in different cells. LMP1 mimics an activated growth factor receptor. (2) Early antigens are nonstructural proteins whose synthesis is not dependent on viral DNA replication. The expression of early antigens indicates the onset of productive viral replication. (3) Late antigens are the structural components of the viral capsid (viral capsid antigen) and viral envelope (glycoproteins). They are produced abundantly in cells undergoing productive viral infection.

EXPERIMENTAL ANIMAL INFECTIONS

EBV is highly species-specific. However, cotton-top tamarins inoculated with EBV frequently develop fatal malignant lymphomas.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

PRIMARY INFECTION

EBV is commonly transmitted by infected saliva and initiates infection in the oropharynx. Viral replication occurs in epithelial cells (or surface B lymphocytes) of the pharynx and salivary glands. Many people shed low levels of virus for weeks to months after infection. Infected B cells spread the infection from the oropharynx throughout the body. In normal individuals, most virus-infected cells are eliminated, but small numbers of latently infected lymphocytes persist for the lifetime of the host (one in 10^5–10^6 B cells).

Primary infections in children are usually subclinical, but if they occur in young adults acute infectious mononucleosis often develops. Mononucleosis is a polyclonal stimulation of lymphocytes. EBV-infected B cells synthesize immunoglobulin. Autoantibodies are typical of the disease, with heterophil antibody that reacts with antigens on sheep erythrocytes the classic autoantibody.

REACTIVATION FROM LATENCY

Reactivations of EBV latent infections can occur, as evidenced by increased levels of virus in saliva and of DNA in blood cells. These are usually clinically silent. Immunosuppression is known to reactivate infection, sometimes with serious consequences.

CANCER

EBV is recognized as a cause of Burkitt's lymphoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, Hodgkin's disease, and some other lymphomas. Sera from patients with Burkitt's lymphoma or nasopharyngeal carcinoma contain elevated levels of antibody to virus-specific antigens, and the tumor tissues contain EBV DNA and express a limited number of viral genes. EBV-associated B cell lymphomas are a complication for immunodeficient patients.

Clinical Findings

Most primary infections in children are asymptomatic. In adolescents and young adults, the classic syndrome associated with primary infection is infectious mononucleosis (about 50% of infections). EBV is also associated with several types of cancer.

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS

After an incubation period of 30–50 days, symptoms of headache, fever, malaise, fatigue, and sore throat occur. Enlarged lymph nodes and spleen are characteristic. Some patients develop signs of hepatitis.

The typical illness is self-limited and lasts 2–4 weeks. During the disease, there is an increase in the number of circulating white blood cells, with a predominance of lymphocytes. Many of these are large, atypical T lymphocytes. Low-grade fever and malaise may persist for weeks to months after acute illness. Complications are rare in normal hosts.

ORAL HAIRY LEUKOPLAKIA

This lesion is a wart-like growth that develops on the tongue in some HIV-infected persons and transplant patients. It is an epithelial focus of EBV replication.

BURKITT'S LYMPHOMA

EBV is associated with the development of Burkitt's lymphoma (a tumor of the jaw in African children and young adults). (See Chapter 43.) Most African tumors (> 90%) contain EBV DNA and express EBNA1 antigen. In other parts of the world, only about 20% of Burkitt's lymphomas contain EBV DNA. It is speculated that EBV may be involved at an early stage in Burkitt's lymphoma by immortalizing B cells. Malaria, a recognized cofactor, may foster enlargement of the pool of EBV-infected cells. Finally, there are characteristic chromosome translocations that involve immunoglobulin genes and result in deregulation of expression of the c-*myc* proto-oncogene.

NASOPHARYNGEAL CARCINOMA

This cancer of epithelial cells is common in males of Chinese origin. EBV DNA is regularly found in nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells, and patients have high levels of antibody to EBV. EBNA1 and LMP1 are expressed. Genetic and environmental factors are believed to be important in the development of nasopharyngeal carcinoma.

LYMPHOPROLIFERATIVE DISEASES IN IMMUNODEFICIENT HOSTS

Immunodeficient patients are susceptible to EBV-induced lymphoproliferative diseases that may be fatal. From 1% to 10% of transplant patients develop an EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorder, often when experiencing a primary infection. These may be polyclonal B cell proliferations that do not show Burkitt's lymphoma-like chromosome abnormalities. Aggressive monoclonal B cell lymphomas may develop.

AIDS patients are susceptible to EBV-associated lymphomas and oral hairy leukoplakia of the tongue. Virtually all central nervous system non-Hodgkin's lymphomas are associated with EBV, whereas less than 50% of systemic lymphomas are EBV-positive. In addition, EBV appears to be associated with classic Hodgkin's disease, with the viral genome detected in the malignant Reed-Sternberg cells in up to 50% of cases.

Immunity

EBV infections elicit an intense immune response consisting of antibodies against many virus-specific proteins, a number of cell-mediated responses, and secretion of lymphokines. Cell-mediated immunity and cytotoxic T cells are important in limiting primary infections and controlling chronic infections.

Serologic testing to determine the pattern of specific antibodies to different classes of EBV antigens is the usual means of ascertaining a patient's status with regard to EBV infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Nucleic acid hybridization is the most sensitive means of detecting EBV in patient materials. EBER RNAs are abundantly expressed in both latently infected and lytically infected cells and provide a useful diagnostic target for detection of EBV-infected cells by hybridization. Viral antigens can be demonstrated directly in lymphoid tissues and in nasopharyngeal carcinomas. During the acute phase of infection, about 1% of circulating lymphocytes will contain EBV markers; after recovery from infection, about one in 1 million B lymphocytes will carry the virus.

EBV can be isolated from saliva, peripheral blood, or lymphoid tissue by immortalization of normal human lymphocytes, usually obtained from umbilical cord blood. This assay is laborious and time-consuming (6–8 weeks), requires specialized facilities, and is seldom performed. It is also possible to culture "spontaneously transformed" B lymphocytes from EBV DNA or virus-infected patients. Any recovered immortalizing agent is confirmed as EBV by detection of EBV DNA or virus-specific antigens in the immortalized lymphocytes.

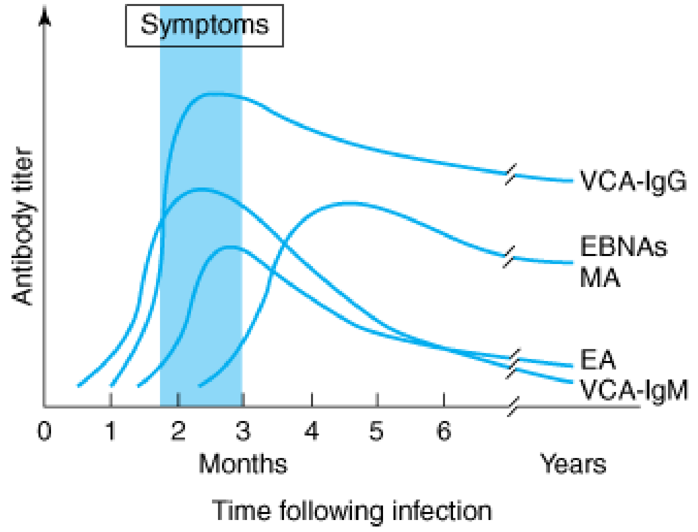
EBV is present in the saliva of many immunosuppressed patients. Up to 20% of healthy adults will also yield virus-positive throat washings.

SEROLOGY

Common serologic procedures for detection of EBV antibodies include ELISA tests, immunoblot assays, and indirect immunofluorescence tests using EBV-positive lymphoid cells.

The typical pattern of antibody responses to EBV-specific antigens after a primary infection is shown in Figure 33–14. Early in acute disease, a transient rise in IgM antibodies to viral capsid antigen occurs, replaced within weeks by IgG antibodies to this antigen, which persist for life. Slightly later, antibodies to the early antigen develop that persist for several months. Several weeks after acute infection, antibodies to EBNA and the membrane antigen arise and persist throughout life.

Figure 33–14.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Typical pattern of antibody formation to EBV-specific antigens after a primary infection. Individuals with recent infection have IgM and IgG antibodies to the viral capsid antigen (VCA-IgM, VCA-IgG); only the IgG antibodies persist for years. Antibodies to early antigens (EA) develop in many patients and persist for several months. Several weeks after acute infection, antibodies to EBV nuclear-associated antigens (EBNAs) and membrane antigen (MA) appear and persist for life.

(Modified with permission of the publisher from Straus SE, Smith HA: Cytomegalovirus, varicella-zoster virus, and Epstein-Barr virus. In: *Clinical Virology Manual.* Specter S, Lancz GJ [editors]. Copyright 1986 by Elsevier Science Publishing Co.)

The less specific heterophil agglutination test may be used to diagnose EBV infections. In the course of infectious mononucleosis, most patients develop transient heterophil antibodies that agglutinate sheep cells. Commercially available spot tests are convenient. Accidental antigenic relationships provide for the specificity of this heterophil reaction.

INTERPRETATION OF RESULTS

Serologic tests for EBV antibodies require some interpretation. The presence of antibody of the IgM type to the viral capsid antigen is indicative of current infection. Antibody of the IgG type to the viral capsid antigen is a marker of past infection and indicates immunity. Early antigen antibodies are generally evidence of current viral infection, though such antibodies are often found in patients with Burkitt's lymphoma or nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Antibodies to the EBNA antigens reveal past infection with EBV, though detection of a rise in anti-EBNA antibody would suggest a primary infection. Not all persons develop antibody to EBNA.

Epidemiology

EBV is common in all parts of the world, with over 90% of adults being seropositive. It is transmitted primarily by contact with oropharyngeal secretions. In developing areas, infections occur early in life; more than 90% of children are infected by age 6. These infections in early childhood usually occur without any recognizable disease. The inapparent infections result in permanent immunity to infectious mononucleosis. In industrialized nations, more than 50% of EBV infections are delayed until late adolescence and young adulthood. In almost half of cases, the infection is manifested by infectious mononucleosis. There are an estimated 100,000 cases of infectious mononucleosis annually in the United States.

Prevention, Treatment, & Control

There is no EBV vaccine available.

Acyclovir reduces EBV shedding from the oropharynx during the period of drug administration, but it does not affect the number of EBV-immortalized B cells. Acyclovir has no effect on the symptoms of mononucleosis and is of no proved benefit in the treatment of EBV-associated lymphomas in immunocompromised patients.

Adoptive transfer of EBV-reactive T cells shows promise as a treatment for EBV-related lymphoproliferative disease.

HUMAN HERPESVIRUS 6

The T-lymphotropic human herpesvirus 6 was first recognized in 1986. Initial isolations were made from cultures of peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with lymphoproliferative disorders.

Properties of the Virus

The viral DNA is about 160–170 kbp in size and has a mean composition of 43–44% (G + C). The genetic arrangement of the human herpesvirus 6 genome resembles that of human cytomegalovirus.

Human herpesvirus 6 appears to be unrelated antigenically to the other known human herpesviruses except for some limited cross-reactivity with human herpesvirus 7. Isolates of human herpesvirus 6 segregate into two closely related but distinct antigenic groups (designated A and B).

The virus grows well in CD4 T lymphocytes. Other cell types also support viral replication, including B cells and cells of glial, fibroblastoid, and megakaryocyte origin. Cells in the oropharynx must become infected, since virus is present in saliva. It is not known which cells in the body become latently infected. Human CD46 is the cellular receptor for the virus.

Epidemiology & Clinical Findings

Seroepidemiologic studies using immunofluorescence tests for serum antibodies or PCR assays for viral DNA in saliva or blood cells have shown that human herpesvirus 6 is widespread in the population. It is estimated that over 90% of children over age 1 and adults are virus positive.

Infections with human herpesvirus 6 typically occur in early childhood. This primary infection causes exanthem subitum (roseola infantum, or "sixth disease"), the mild common childhood disease characterized by high fever and skin rash. The 6B variant appears to be the cause of this disease. The virus is associated with febrile seizures in children.

The mode of transmission of human herpesvirus 6 is presumed to be via oral secretions. The fact that it is a ubiquitous agent suggests that it must be shed into the environment from an infected carrier.

Infections persist for life. Reactivation appears to be common in transplant patients and during pregnancy. The consequences of reactivated infection remain to be determined. Human herpesvirus 6 reactivation occurs in close to half of patients who undergo hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Those reactivations occur soon after transplant and have been associated with delayed engraftment, central nervous system dysfunction, and increased mortality.

HUMAN HERPESVIRUS 7

A T-lymphotropic human herpesvirus, designated human herpesvirus 7, was first isolated in 1990 from activated T cells recovered from peripheral blood lymphocytes of a healthy individual.

Human herpesvirus 7 is immunologically distinct from human herpesvirus 6, though they share about 50% homology at the DNA level.

Human herpesvirus 7 appears to be a ubiquitous agent, with most infections occurring in childhood but later than the very early age of infection noted with human herpesvirus 6. Persistent infections are established in salivary glands, and the virus can be isolated from saliva of most individuals. In a longitudinal study of healthy adults, 75% of subjects excreted infectious virus in saliva one or more times during a 6-month observation period. Any association of human herpesvirus 7 with disease remains to be established.

HUMAN HERPESVIRUS 8

A new herpesvirus, designated human herpesvirus 8 and also called Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (KSHV), was first detected in 1994 in Kaposi's sarcoma specimens. KSHV is lymphotropic and is more closely related to EBV and herpesvirus saimiri than to other known herpesviruses. The KSHV genome (about 165 kbp) contains numerous genes related to cellular regulatory genes involved in cell proliferation, apoptosis, and host responses (cyclin D, cytokines, chemokine receptor) that presumably contribute to viral pathogenesis. This molecular piracy of cell regulatory genes is a striking feature of the virus. KSHV is the cause of Kaposi's sarcomas, vascular tumors of mixed cellular composition, and is involved in the pathogenesis of body cavity-based lymphomas occurring in AIDS patients and of multicentric Castleman's disease.

KSHV is not as ubiquitous as other herpesviruses; about 5% of the general population in the United States and northern Europe have serologic evidence of KSHV infection. It appears to be sexually transmitted among men who have sex with men, who have a higher seroprevalence (30–60%). Infections are common in Africa (> 50%), with infections acquired early in life by nonsexual routes, possibly through contact with oral secretions. It appears that KSHV is shed in saliva independent of the subject's immune status. Viral DNA has also been detected in breast-milk samples in Africa.

The virus can be transmitted through organ transplants and places the recipients at risk of KSHV-related diseases.

Viral DNA can be detected in patient specimens using PCR assays. Direct virus culture is difficult and impractical. Serologic assays are available to measure persistent antibody to KSHV, using indirect immunofluorescence, Western blot, and ELISA formats.

Foscarnet, ganciclovir, and cidofovir have activity against KSHV replication. The rate of new Kaposi's sarcomas is markedly reduced in HIV-positive patients on effective antiretroviral therapy, probably reflecting reconstituted immune surveillance against KSHV-infected cells.

B VIRUS

Herpes B virus of Old World monkeys is highly pathogenic for humans. Transmissibility of virus to humans is limited, but those infections that do occur are associated with a high mortality rate (about 60%). B virus disease of humans is an acute ascending myelitis and encephalomyelitis.

Properties of the Virus

B virus is a typical herpesvirus that is indigenous in macaques, Old World monkeys in Asia. B virus is enzootic in rhesus, cynomolgus, and other macaque monkeys (genus *Macaca*). It is designated cercopithecine herpesvirus 1, replacing the older name of *Herpes simiae.* Its genome organization is similar to that of herpes simplex virus, with many genes arranged colinearly. Its genome is 75% G + C, the highest among herpesviruses. As with all herpesviruses, B virus establishes latent infections in infected hosts. The virus grows well in cultures of monkey kidney, rabbit kidney, and human cells with a short growth cycle. Cytopathic effects are similar to those of herpes simplex virus.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

B virus infections seldom cause disease in rhesus monkeys. Vesicular lesions of the oropharynx may occur and resemble those induced in humans by herpes simplex virus. Genital lesions also occur. Many rhesus monkeys carry latent B virus infections that may be reactivated by conditions of stress.

The virus is transmissible to other monkeys, rabbits, guinea pigs, rats, and mice. Rabbits routinely develop fatal infections after B virus inoculation.

B virus infections in humans usually result from a monkey bite, though infection by the respiratory route or ocular splash exposure is possible. The striking feature of B virus infections in humans is the very strong propensity to cause neurologic disease. Many survivors are left with neurologic impairment.

Epidemiology & Clinical Findings

B virus is transmitted by direct contact with virus or virus-containing material. Transmission occurs among *Macaca* monkeys, between monkeys and humans, and rarely from humans to humans. Virus may be present in saliva, conjunctival and vesicular fluids, genital areas, and feces of monkeys. Respiratory transmission can occur. Other sources of infection include direct contact with animal cages and with infected monkey cell cultures.

Infection in the natural host is rarely associated with obvious disease. Infections with B virus are very common in colonies of rhesus monkeys. Seroprevalence in adult animals is 70% or higher. As latent infections may be reactivated, seropositive animals are reservoirs for transmission of B virus infections. The frequency of excretion of B virus by monkeys is probably no more than 3%.

Animal workers and persons handling macaque monkeys are at risk of acquiring B virus infection, including medical researchers, veterinarians, pet owners, and zoo workers. Individuals having intimate contact with animal workers exposed to the monkeys are also at some risk.

Treatment & Control

There is no specific treatment once the clinical disease is manifest. However, treatment with acyclovir is recommended immediately after exposure. Gamma globulin has not proved to be effective treatment for human B virus infections. No vaccine is available.

The risk of B virus infections can be reduced by proper procedures in the laboratory and in the handling and management of macaque monkeys. This risk makes macaques unsuitable as pets.

REFERENCES

Arvin AM, Gershon AA: Live attenuated varicella vaccine. Annu Rev Microbiol 1996;50:59. [PMID: 8905076]

Ashley RL, Wald A: Genital herpes: Review of the epidemic and potential use of type-specific serology. Clin Microbiol Rev 1999;12:1. [PMID: 9880471]

Espy MJ et al: Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: Applications for routine laboratory testing. Clin Microbiol Rev 2006;19:165. [PMID: 16418529]

Fields BN et al (editors): Herpesviridae. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

Hengel H, Brune W, Koszinowski UH: Immune evasion by cytomegalovirus—survival strategies of a highly adapted opportunist. Trends Microbiol 1998;6:190. [PMID: 9614343]

Huff JL, Barry PA: B-virus (*Cercopithecine herpesvirus* 1) infection in humans and macaques: Potential for zoonotic disease. Emerging Infect Dis 2003;9:246. [PMID: 12603998]

Kimberlin DW, Whitley RJ: Human herpesvirus-6: Neurologic implications of a newly-described viral pathogen. J Neurovirol 1998;4:474. [PMID: 9839645]

Prevention of varicella. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1996;45(RR-11):1.

Stanberry LR et al: Glycoprotein-D-adjuvant vaccine to prevent genital herpes. N Engl J Med 2002;347:1652. [PMID: 12444179]

INTRODUCTION

Poxviruses are the largest and most complex of viruses. The family encompasses a large group of agents that are similar morphologically and share a common nucleoprotein antigen. Infections with most poxviruses are characterized by a rash, although lesions induced by some members of the family are markedly proliferative. The group includes variola virus, the etiologic agent of smallpox—the viral disease that has affected humans throughout recorded history.

Even though smallpox was declared eradicated from the world (in 1980) after an intensive campaign coordinated by the World Health Organization, there is concern that the virus could be reintroduced as a biologic weapon. There is a continuing need to be familiar with vaccinia virus (used for smallpox vaccinations) and its possible complications in humans. It is also necessary to be aware of other poxvirus diseases that may resemble smallpox and must be differentiated from it by laboratory means. Lastly, vaccinia virus is under intensive study as a vector for introducing active immunizing genes as live-virus vaccines for a variety of viral diseases of humans and domestic animals.

PROPERTIES OF POXVIRUSES

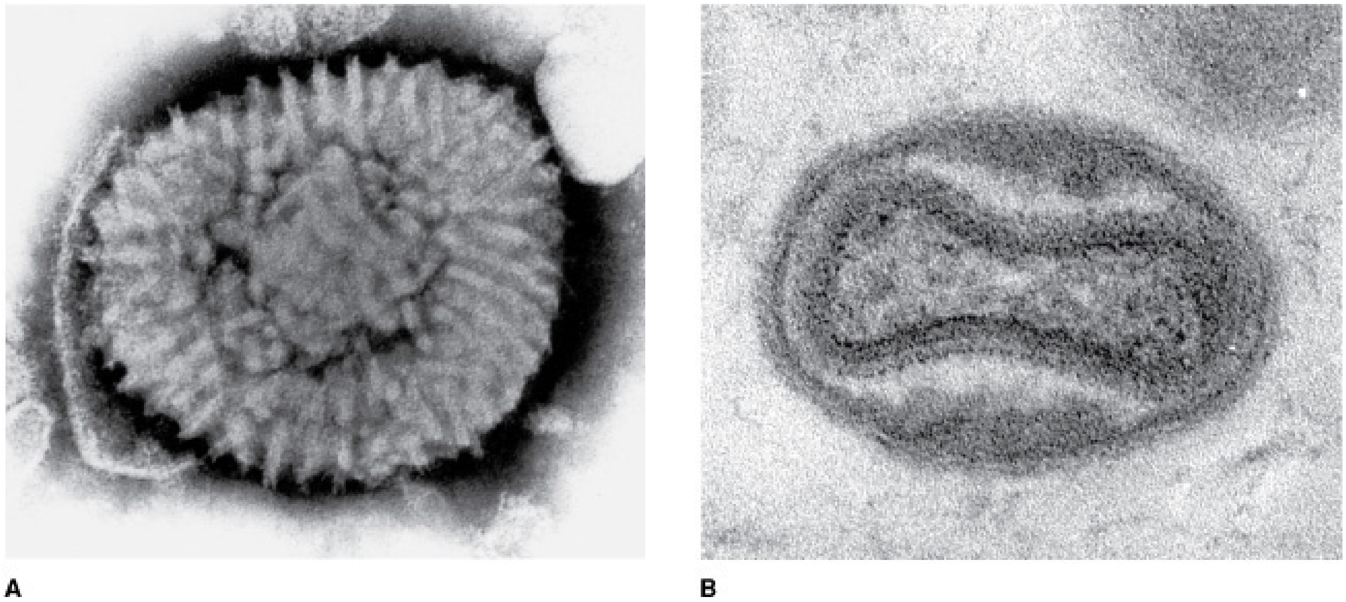
Important properties of the poxviruses are listed in Table 34–1.

Table 34–1. Important Properties of Poxviruses.
Virion: Complex structure, oval or brick-shaped, 400 nm in length × 230 nm in diameter; external surface shows ridges; contains core and lateral bodies
Composition: DNA (3%), protein (90%), lipid (5%)
Genome: Double-stranded DNA, linear; size 130–375 kbp; has terminal loops; has low G + C content (30–40%) except for *Parapoxvirus* (63%)
Proteins: Virions contain more than 100 polypeptides; many enzymes are present in core, including transcriptional system
Envelope: Virion assembly involves formation of multiple membranes
Replication: Cytoplasmic factories
Outstanding characteristics:
Largest and most complex viruses; very resistant to inactivation
Virus-encoded proteins help evade host immune defense system
Smallpox was the first viral disease eradicated from the world

Structure & Composition

Poxviruses are large enough to be seen as featureless particles by light microscopy. By electron microscopy, they appear to be brick-shaped or ellipsoid particles measuring about 400 x 230 nm. Their structure is complex and conforms to neither icosahedral nor helical symmetry. The external surface of particles contains ridges. There is an outer lipoprotein membrane, or envelope, that encloses a core and two structures of unknown function called lateral bodies (Figure 34–1).

Figure 34–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrographs of vaccinia (*Orthopoxvirus*) virions. A: Negatively stained particle showing ridges or tubular elements covering the surface (228,000 x).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Dales S: J Cell Biol 1963;18:51.)

B: Thin section of vaccinia virion showing a central biconcave core, two lateral bodies, and an outer membrane (220,000 x).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Pogo BGT, Dales S: Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1969;63:820.)

The core contains the large viral genome of linear double-stranded DNA (130–375 kbp). The complete genomic sequence is known for several poxviruses, including vaccinia and variola. The vaccinia genome contains about 185 open reading frames. The DNA contains inverted terminal repeats of variable length, and the strands are connected at the ends by terminal hairpin loops. The inverted terminal repeats may include coding regions, so some genes are present at both ends of the genome. The DNA is rich in adenine and thymine bases.

The chemical composition of a poxvirus resembles that of a bacterium. Vaccinia virus is composed predominantly of protein (90%), lipid (5%), and DNA (3%). More than 100 structural polypeptides have been detected in virus particles. A number of the proteins are glycosylated or phosphorylated. The lipids are cholesterol and phospholipids.

The virion contains a multiplicity of enzymes, including a transcriptional system that can synthesize, polyadenylate, cap, and methylate viral mRNA.

Classification

Poxviruses are divided into two subfamilies based on whether they infect vertebrate or insect hosts. The vertebrate poxviruses fall into eight genera, with the members of a given genus displaying similar morphology and host range as well as some antigenic relatedness.

Most of the poxviruses that can cause disease in humans are contained in the genera *Orthopoxvirus* and *Parapoxvirus;* there are also several that are classified in the genera *Yatapoxvirus* and *Molluscipoxvirus* (Table 34–2).

Table 34–2. Poxviruses Causing Disease in Humans.

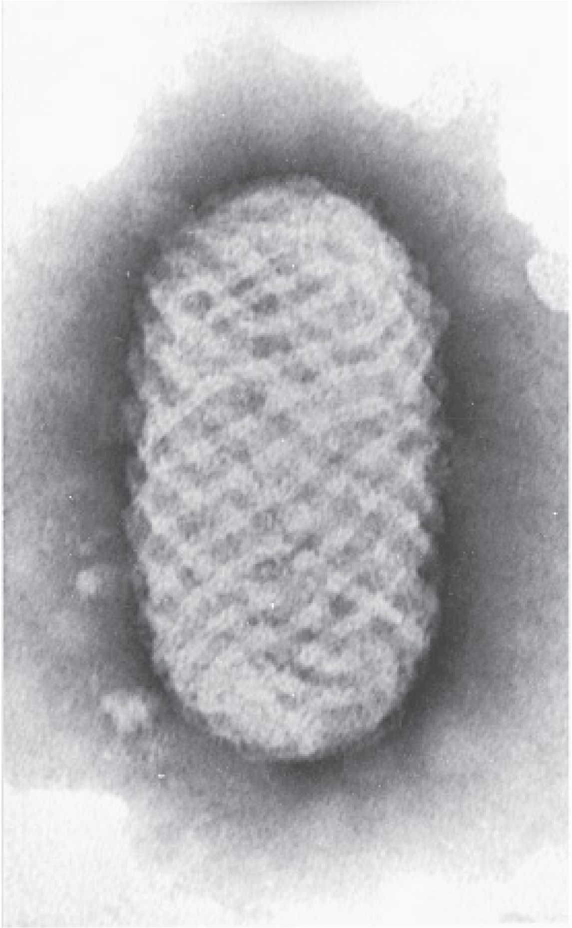
Genus	Virus	Primary Host	Disease
Orthopoxvirus	Variola	Humans	Smallpox (now eliminated)
	Vaccinia	Humans	Localized lesion; used for smallpox vaccination
	Buffalopox	Water buffalo	Human infections rare; localized lesion
	Monkeypox	Rodents, monkeys	Human infections rare; generalized disease
	Cowpox	Cows	Human infections rare; localized ulcerating lesion
Parapoxvirus	Orf	Sheep	Human infections rare; localized lesion
	Pseudocowpox	Cows	
	Bovine papular stomatitis	Cows	
Molluscipoxvirus	Molluscum contagiosum	Humans	Many benign skin nodules
Yatapoxvirus	Tanapox	Monkeys	Human infections rare; localized lesion
	Yabapox	Monkeys	Human infections very rare and accidental; localized skin tumors

The orthopoxviruses have a broad host range affecting several vertebrates. They include ectromelia (mousepox), camelpox, cowpox, monkeypox, vaccinia, and variola (smallpox) viruses. The last four are infectious for humans. Vaccinia virus differs only in minor morphologic respects from variola and cowpox viruses. It is the prototype of poxviruses in terms of structure and replication. Monkeypox can infect rodents, monkeys, and humans and may resemble smallpox clinically.

Some poxviruses have a restricted host range and infect only rabbits (fibroma and myxoma) or only birds. Others infect mainly sheep and goats (sheeppox, goatpox) or cattle (pseudocowpox, or milker's nodule).

Parapoxviruses are morphologically distinctive. Compared to the orthopoxviruses, parapoxviruses are somewhat smaller particles (260 x 160 nm), and their surfaces exhibit a crisscross pattern (Figure 34–2). Their genomes are smaller (about 135 kbp) and have a higher guanine plus cytosine content (63%) than those of the orthopoxviruses (170–250 kbp; G + C, 30–40%).

Figure 34–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of orf virus (*Parapoxvirus*). Note distinctive crisscross pattern of surface of virion (200,000 x).

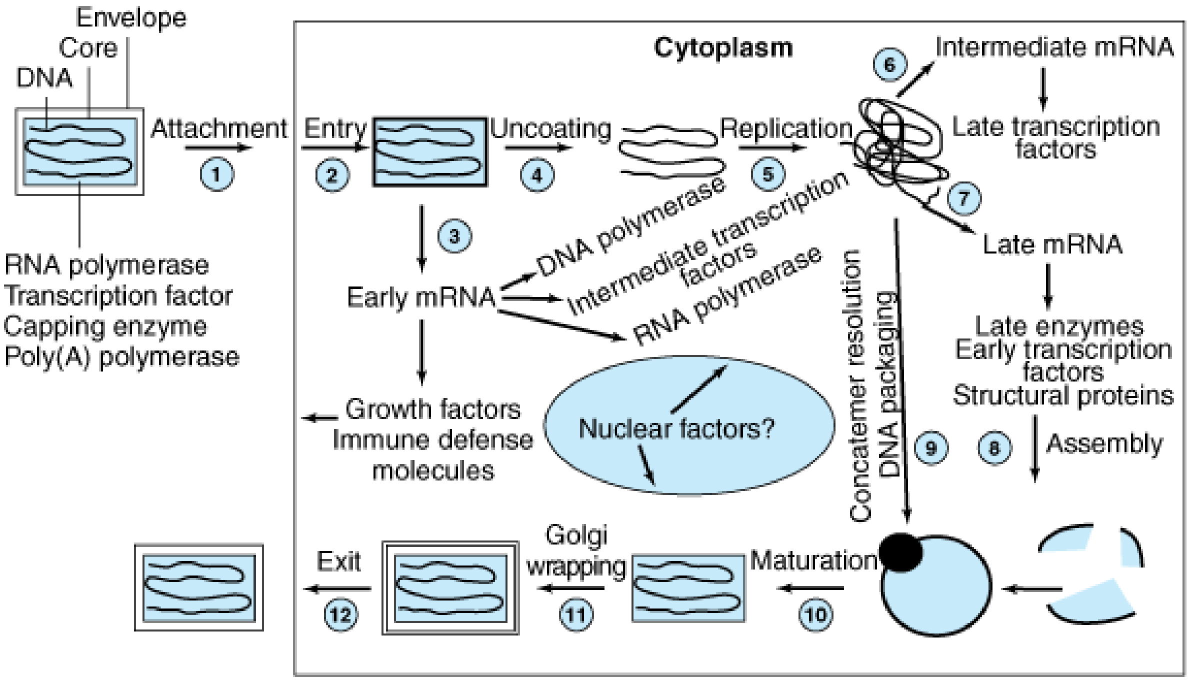
(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

All vertebrate poxviruses share a common nucleoprotein antigen in the inner core. There is serologic cross-reactivity among viruses within a given genus but very limited reactivity across genera. Consequently, immunization with vaccinia virus affords no protection against disease induced by parapoxviruses or the unclassified poxviruses.

Poxvirus Replication

The replication cycle of vaccinia virus is summarized in Figure 34–3. Poxviruses are unique among DNA viruses in that the entire multiplication cycle takes place in the cytoplasm of infected cells. It is possible, however, that nuclear factors may be involved in transcription and virion assembly. Poxviruses are further distinguished from all other animal viruses by the fact that the uncoating step requires a newly synthesized, virus-encoded protein.

Figure 34–3.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Outline of replication cycle of vaccinia virus.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Moss B: Poxviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology*. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

VIRUS ATTACHMENT, PENETRATION, AND UNCOATING

Virus particles establish contact with the cell surface and fuse with the cell membrane. Some particles may appear within vacuoles. Viral cores are released into the cytoplasm. Among the several enzymes inside the poxvirus particle, there is a viral RNA polymerase that transcribes about half the viral genome into early mRNA. These mRNAs are transcribed within the viral core and are then released into the cytoplasm. Because the necessary enzymes are contained within the viral core, early transcription is not affected by inhibitors of protein synthesis. The "uncoating" protein that acts on the cores is among the more than 50 polypeptides made early after infection. The second-stage uncoating step liberates viral DNA from the cores; it requires both RNA and protein synthesis. The synthesis of host cell macromolecules is inhibited at this stage.

Poxviruses inactivated by heat can be reactivated either by viable poxviruses or by poxviruses inactivated by nitrogen mustards (which inactivate the DNA). This process is called nongenetic reactivation and is due to the action of the uncoating protein. Heat-inactivated virus alone cannot cause second-stage uncoating because of the heat lability of the RNA polymerase. Apparently, the heat-killed virus provides the template and the second virus provides the enzymes needed for transcription. Any vertebrate poxvirus can reactivate any other vertebrate poxvirus.

REPLICATION OF VIRAL DNA AND SYNTHESIS OF VIRAL PROTEINS

Among the early proteins made after vaccinia virus infection are enzymes involved in DNA replication, including a DNA polymerase and thymidine kinase. Viral DNA replication occurs in the cytoplasm and appears to be accomplished by viral coded enzymes. Viral DNA replication starts soon after the release of viral DNA in the second stage of uncoating. It occurs 2–6 hours after infection in discrete areas of the cytoplasm, which appear as "factories" or inclusion bodies in electron micrographs. The number of inclusion bodies per cell is proportionate to the multiplicity of infection, suggesting that each infectious particle can induce a "factory." High rates of homologous recombination occur within poxvirus-infected cells. This has been exploited experimentally to construct and map mutations.

The pattern of viral gene expression changes markedly with the onset of replication of viral DNA. The synthesis of many of the early proteins is inhibited. There is a small intermediate class of genes whose expression temporally precedes the expression of the late class of genes. Late viral mRNA is translated into large amounts of structural proteins and small amounts of other viral proteins and enzymes.

MATURATION

The assembly of the virus particle from the manufactured components is a complex process. Poxviruses are unique in that de novo formation of viral membranes seems to occur. Mature virions appear in electron micrographs as a DNA-containing core encased in double membranes, surrounded by protein, and all enclosed within two outer membranes. Some of the particles are released from the cell by budding, but the majority of poxvirus particles remain within the host cell. About 10,000 virus particles are produced per cell. How the multiple components of the transcription system are incorporated within the core of the assembling virus particle is unknown.

An antiviral drug affects the morphogenesis of poxvirus particles. Rifampin can block the formation and assembly of the vaccinia virus envelope.

VIRUS-ENCODED HOST MODIFIER GENES

A polypeptide encoded by one of the early genes of vaccinia virus is closely related to epidermal growth factor and to transforming growth factor-α. Production of growth factors similar to epidermal growth factor by virus-infected cells could account for the proliferative diseases associated with members of the poxvirus family such as Shope fibroma, Yaba tumor, and molluscum contagiosum viruses.

Several poxvirus genes resemble mammalian genes for proteins that would inhibit host defense mechanisms. Examples include tumor necrosis factor receptor, gamma interferon receptor, IL-1 receptor, and a complement-binding protein. These poxvirus-encoded host defense modifiers presumably counter the complement and cytokine networks important in the host immune response to viral infection, allowing enhanced virus replication and, perhaps, facilitating virus transmission.

POXVIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS: VACCINIA & VARIOLA

Control & Eradication of Smallpox

Control of smallpox by deliberate infection with mild forms of the disease was practiced for centuries. This process, called variolation, was dangerous but decreased the disastrous effects of major epidemics, reducing the case-fatality rate from 25% to 1%. Edward Jenner introduced vaccination with live cowpox virus in 1798.

In 1967, the World Health Organization introduced a worldwide campaign to eradicate smallpox. Epidemiologic features of the disease (described below) made it feasible to attempt total eradication. At that time, there were 33 countries with endemic smallpox and 10–15 million cases per year. The last Asiatic case occurred in Bangladesh in 1975, and the last natural victim was diagnosed in Somalia in 1977. Smallpox was officially declared eliminated in 1980. There were three main reasons for this outstanding success: The vaccine was easily prepared, stable, and safe; it could be given simply by personnel in the field; and mass vaccination of the world population was not necessary. Cases of smallpox were traced, and contacts of the patient and those in the immediate area were vaccinated.

Even though there has been no evidence of smallpox transmission anywhere in the world, the World Health Organization coordinated the investigation of 173 possible cases of smallpox between 1979 and 1984. All were diseases other than smallpox, most commonly chickenpox or other illnesses that produce a rash. Even so, a suspected case of smallpox becomes a public health emergency and must be promptly investigated by means of clinical evaluation, collection of laboratory specimens, and preliminary laboratory diagnosis.

The presence of stocks of virulent smallpox virus in laboratories is of concern because of the danger of laboratory infection and subsequent spread into the community. Variola virus stocks supposedly were destroyed in all laboratories except two World Health Organization collaborating centers (one in Atlanta and one in Moscow) that pursue diagnostic and research work on variola-related poxviruses. However, in the 1990s it was learned that the former Soviet Union had used smallpox virus in its biologic warfare program. How many countries may possess the virus today is unknown. Smallpox virus is considered to be a dangerous potential biothreat agent. Because of the worldwide eradication of variola virus and subsequent discontinuation of vaccination programs, today's human population possesses low or nonexistent smallpox immunity and thus is highly susceptible to infection with smallpox virus.

Comparison of Vaccinia & Variola Viruses

Vaccinia virus, the agent used for smallpox vaccination, is a distinct species of *Orthopoxvirus.* Restriction endonuclease maps of the genome of vaccinia virus are distinctly different from those of cowpox virus, which was believed to be its ancestor. At some time after Jenner's original use of "cowpox" virus, the vaccine virus became "vaccinia virus"; the time and reasons for the change are not known. Vaccinia virus may be the product of genetic recombination, a new species derived from cowpox virus or variola virus by serial passage, or the descendant of a now extinct viral genus.

Variola has a narrow host range (only humans and monkeys), whereas vaccinia has a broad host range that includes rabbits and mice. Some strains of vaccinia can cause a severe disease in laboratory rabbits that has been called rabbitpox. Vaccinia virus has also infected cattle and water buffalo, and the disease in buffalo has persisted in India (buffalopox). Both vaccinia and variola viruses grow on the chorioallantoic membrane of the 10- to 12-day-old chick embryo, but the latter produce much smaller pocks. Both grow in several types of chick and primate cell lines.

The nucleotide sequences of variola (186 kb) and vaccinia (192 kb) are similar, with the most divergence in terminal regions of the genomes. Of 187 putative proteins, 150 were markedly similar in sequence between the two viruses; the remaining 37 diverged or were variola-specific and may represent potential virulence determinants. The sequences do not reveal variola virus origins or explain its strict human host range or its particular virulence.

Pathogenesis & Pathology of Smallpox

Although smallpox has been eradicated, the pathogenesis of the disease (described here in the past tense) is instructive for other poxvirus infections. The pathogenesis of mousepox is illustrated in Figure 30–3.

The portal of entry of variola virus was the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract. After viral entry, the following are believed to have taken place: (1) primary multiplication in the lymphoid tissue draining the site of entry; (2) transient viremia and infection of reticuloendothelial cells throughout the body; (3) a secondary phase of multiplication in those cells, leading to (4) a secondary, more intense viremia; and (5) the clinical disease.

In the preeruptive phase, the disease was barely infective. By the sixth to ninth days, lesions in the mouth tended to ulcerate and discharge virus. Thus, early in the disease, infectious virus originated in lesions in the mouth and upper respiratory tract. Later, pustules broke down and discharged virus into the environment of the smallpox patient.

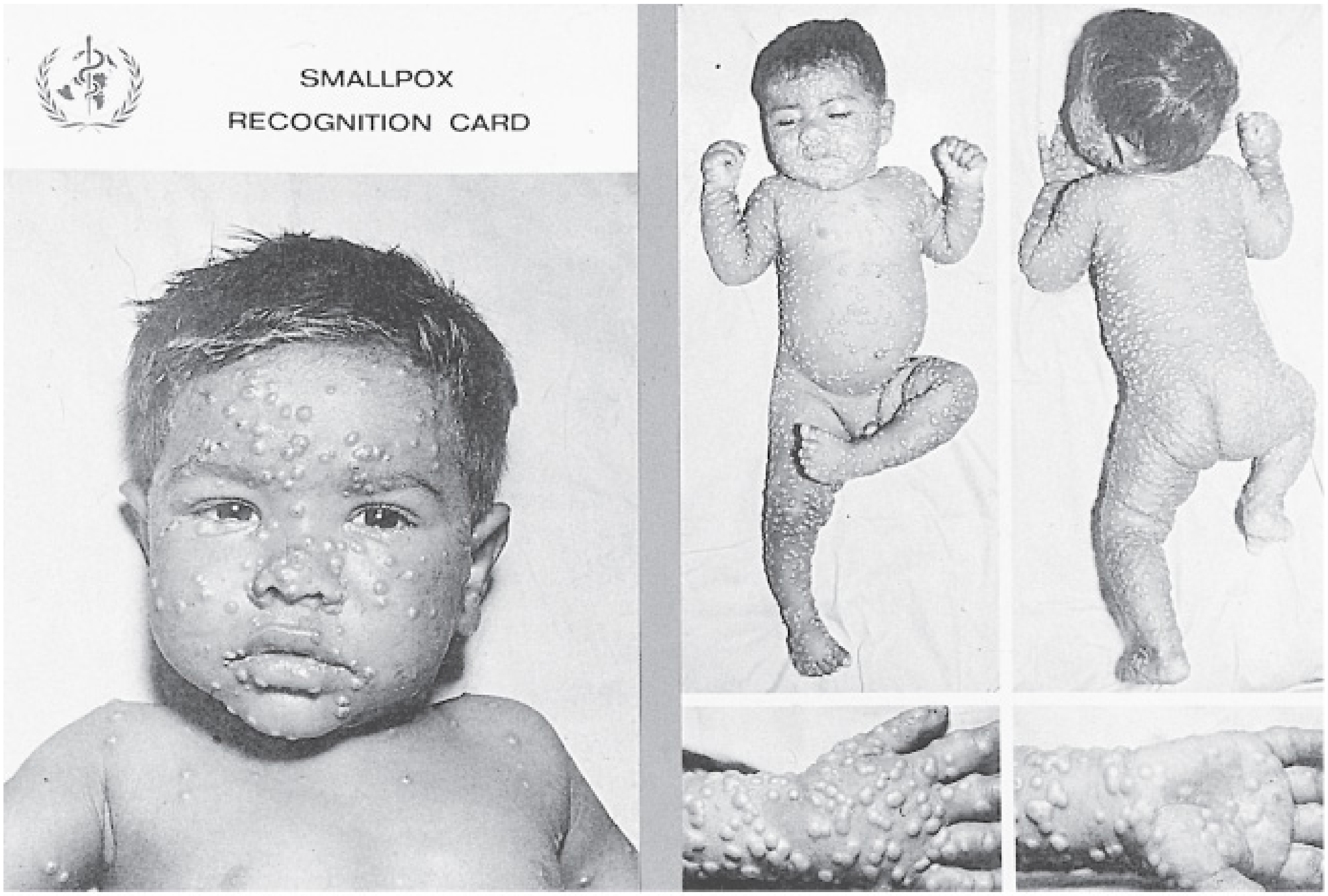
Histopathologic examination of the skin showed proliferation of the prickle-cell layer. Those proliferated cells contained many cytoplasmic inclusions. There was infiltration with mononuclear cells, particularly around the vessels in the corium. Epithelial cells of the malpighian layer became swollen through distention of cytoplasm and underwent "ballooning degeneration." The vacuoles in the cytoplasm enlarged. The cell membrane broke down and coalesced with neighboring, similarly affected cells, resulting in the formation of vesicles. The vesicles enlarged and then became filled with white cells and tissue debris. All the layers of the skin were involved, and there was actual necrosis of the corium. Thus, scarring occurred after variola infection. Similar histopathology is seen with vaccinia, though vaccinia virus ordinarily causes localized pustular lesions only at the site of inoculation.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period of variola (smallpox) was 10–14 days. The onset was usually sudden. One to 5 days of fever and malaise preceded the appearance of the exanthems, which began as macules, then papules, then vesicles, and finally pustules. These formed crusts that fell off after about 2 weeks, leaving pink scars that faded slowly. In each affected area, the lesions were generally found in the same stage of development (in contrast to chickenpox).

A "Smallpox Recognition Card" prepared by the World Health Organization shows the typical rash (Figure 34–4). Lesions were most abundant on the face and less so on the trunk. In severe cases, the rash was hemorrhagic. The case-fatality rate varied from 5% to 40%. In mild variola, called variola minor, or in vaccinated persons, the mortality rate was under 1%.

Figure 34–4.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Smallpox rash. A "Smallpox Recognition Card" from the World Health Organization illustrates the distribution and nature of the typical rash of smallpox in an unvaccinated child.

(Courtesy of F Fenner and the World Health Organization.)

Immunity

All viruses within the *Orthopoxvirus* genus are so closely related antigenically that they cannot be easily differentiated serologically. Infection with one induces an immune response that reacts with all other members of the group.

An attack of smallpox gave complete protection against reinfection. Vaccination with vaccinia induced immunity against variola virus for at least 5 years and sometimes longer. Antibodies alone are not sufficient for recovery from primary poxvirus infection. In the human host, neutralizing antibodies develop within a few days after onset of smallpox but do not prevent progression of lesions, and patients may die in the pustular stage with high antibody levels. Cell-mediated immunity is probably more important than circulating antibody. Patients with hypogammaglobulinemia generally react normally to vaccination and develop immunity despite the apparent absence of antibody. Patients who have defects in both cellular immune response and antibody response develop a progressive, usually fatal disease upon vaccination.

Production of interferon (see Chapter 30) is another possible immune mechanism. Irradiated animals without detectable antibody or delayed hypersensitivity recovered from vaccinia infection as rapidly as untreated control animals.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Several tests are available to confirm the diagnosis of smallpox. Now that the disease is presumably eradicated, it is important to diagnose any cases that resemble smallpox. The tests depend upon direct microscopic examination of material from skin lesions, recovery of virus from the patient, identification of viral DNA or antigen from the lesion, and, least importantly, demonstration of antibody in the blood.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Skin lesions are the specimen of choice for viral isolation. Poxviruses are stable and will remain viable in specimens for weeks even without refrigeration.

Direct examination of clinical material in the electron microscope is used for rapid identification of virus particles (in about 1 hour) and can readily differentiate a poxvirus infection from chickenpox (the latter is caused by a herpesvirus). Orthopoxviruses cannot be distinguished from one another by electron microscopy because they are similar in size and morphology. However, they can be easily differentiated from tanapoxvirus and parapoxviruses.

Virus isolation is carried out by inoculation of vesicular fluid onto the chorioallantoic membrane of chick embryos. This test is the easiest way of distinguishing cases of smallpox from generalized vaccinia, for the lesions produced by these viruses on the membrane differ markedly. In 2–3 days, vaccinia pocks are large with necrotic centers whereas variola pocks are much smaller. Cowpox and monkeypox produce distinctive hemorrhagic lesions. The parapoxviruses, molluscum contagiosum virus, and tanapoxvirus do not grow on the membrane.

Cell cultures can also be used for virus isolation. Human and nonhuman primate cells are most susceptible. The orthopoxviruses grow well in cultured cells; parapoxviruses and tanapoxvirus grow less well, and molluscum contagiosum virus has not yet been grown in cell culture.

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) tests that are specific for various poxviruses are available and can be used for detection and identification purposes.

Viral antigen can be detected by immunohistochemistry in tissues and in material collected from skin lesions. Many antigens are cross-reactive and identify orthopoxviruses as a group.

SEROLOGY

Virus isolation is necessary for quick and accurate identification of poxvirus infections. However, antibody assays can be used to confirm a diagnosis. Antibodies appear after the first week of infection that can be detected by HI, Nt, ELISA, RIA, or immunofluorescence tests. None of these tests will distinguish among the orthopoxviruses.

Differential Diagnosis

Smallpox may be confused with varicella, pustular acne, meningococcemia, secondary syphilis, drug rashes, and other illnesses associated with a skin eruption, but none of these illnesses yield materials that give positive laboratory tests for poxviruses.

The use of PCR or restriction enzyme cleavage of viral DNA or the analysis of polypeptides in poxvirus-infected cells can demonstrate distinct characteristics for variola, vaccinia, monkeypox, and cowpox. Smallpox-like illnesses must be identified to ascertain that variola has indeed been eradicated and has not reappeared.

Treatment

Vaccinia immune globulin is prepared from blood from persons vaccinated with the vaccinia virus. It is recommended for treatment of all complications except postvaccinial encephalitis. As of 2003, stocks of vaccinia immune globulin were very limited and available only from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Methisazone is a chemotherapeutic agent of some value against poxviruses. It is effective as prophylaxis but is not useful in treatment of established disease. Cidofovir, a nucleotide analog, shows activity against poxviruses in vitro and in vivo.

Studies in monkeys have revealed that antiviral treatment is more effective than postexposure smallpox vaccination at reducing mortality from lethal virus infection.

Epidemiology

Transmission of smallpox occurred by contact between cases. Smallpox was highly contagious. The virus was stable in the extracellular environment but was most commonly transmitted by respiratory spread. The dried virus in crusts from skin lesions could survive on clothes or other materials and result in infections.

Patients were most highly infectious during the first week of rash once fever had begun. Respiratory droplets were infectious earlier than skin lesions.

The following epidemiologic features made smallpox amenable to total eradication: There was no known nonhuman reservoir. There was one stable serotype. There was an effective vaccine. Subclinical infectious cases did not occur. Chronic asymptomatic carriage of the virus did not occur. Since virus in the environment of the patient derived from lesions in the mouth and throat (and later in the skin), patients with infection sufficiently severe to transmit the disease were likely to be so ill that they quickly reached the attention of medical authorities. The close contact required for effective spread of the disease generally made for ready identification of a patient's contacts so that specific control measures could be instituted to interrupt the cycle of transmission.

The World Health Organization was successful in eradicating smallpox by using a surveillance-containment program. The source of each outbreak was determined, and all susceptible contacts were identified and vaccinated.

Vaccination with Vaccinia

Vaccinia virus for vaccination is prepared from vesicular lesions ("lymph") produced in the skin of calves, or it can be grown in chick embryos. The final vaccine contains 40% glycerol to stabilize the virus and 0.4% phenol to destroy bacteria. World Health Organization standards require that smallpox vaccines have a potency of no fewer than 10^8 pock-forming units per milliliter. A new cell culture-produced vaccine is under development. The vaccinia vaccine does not contain smallpox (variola) virus.

The success of smallpox eradication has meant that routine vaccination is no longer recommended. Routine smallpox vaccination of children in the United States was stopped in 1971. Hence, all those born from 1972 on are susceptible to infection. Recent concerns about a possible terrorist attack involving smallpox have resulted in recommendations for using smallpox vaccine on a limited scale (eg, starting with health care workers). The following summary of vaccination is given also because vaccinia virus is under consideration as a vector for introducing foreign genes for immunization purposes.

TIME OF VACCINATION

Complications of vaccination (see below) occur most commonly under the age of 1 year. Therefore, vaccinating between 1 and 2 years of age is preferable to vaccinating in the first year of life. Revaccination has been done at 3-year intervals.

REACTIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Primary Take

In the fully susceptible person, a papule surrounded by hyperemia appears on the third or fourth day. The papule increases in size until vesiculation appears (on the fifth or sixth day). The vesicle reaches its maximum size by the ninth day and then becomes pustular. Desiccation follows and is complete in about 2 weeks, leaving a depressed pink scar that ultimately turns white. The reading of the result is usually done on the seventh day. A person is considered fully protected after a vesicular or pustular response surrounding a central lesion (scab or ulcer) occurs. If this reaction is not observed, vaccination should be repeated.

Revaccination

A successful revaccination shows in 6–8 days a vesicular or pustular lesion or an area of palpable induration surrounding a central lesion, which may be a scab or an ulcer. Only this reaction indicates with certainty that viral multiplication has taken place. Equivocal reactions may represent immunity but may also represent merely allergic reactions to a vaccine that has become inactivated. When an equivocal reaction occurs, the revaccination should be repeated using a new lot of vaccine.

ADVERSE REACTIONS OF VACCINATION

Smallpox vaccination was associated with a definite measurable risk. In the United States, the risk of death from all complications was 1 per million for primary vaccinees and 0.6 per million for revaccinees. For children under 1 year of age, the risk of death was 5 per million primary vaccinations. Severe complications of vaccination occurred in conjunction with immunodeficiency, immunosuppression, malignancies, and pregnancy. Those conditions are contraindications for vaccinia vaccine use, as well as eczema, allergy to a vaccine component, and living in a household with someone having a vaccination contraindication.

Inadvertent Autoinoculation

This occurs when a part of the body distant from the inoculation site becomes infected through scratching or through inanimate objects such as clothing. This is the most common complication, occurring about 25 times per million. Ocular vaccinia was the most frequent problem and sometimes resulted in residual visual defects. The most common nonocular sites were the face, nose, mouth, lips, and genitalia.

Contact Transmission

Contact transmission of vaccinia virus occurs when virus is transferred from a vaccinee to a close contact. Virus can be shed until the scab heals. Virus can survive for several days on clothing, bedding, and other inanimate objects. Infection acquired through contact transmission can result in the same adverse reactions as from vaccination.

Generalized Vaccinia

This is manifested by the occurrence of crops of vaccinial lesions anywhere on the body 4 days or more after vaccination (23 cases per million). The skin lesions are thought to contain virus spread by the hematogenous route. Generalized vaccinia is usually self-limited in immunocompetent hosts, but is often more severe in persons with immunodeficiency.

Eczema Vaccinatum

This is a localized or generalized rash syndrome that can occur anywhere on the body. Persons with atopic dermatitis (ie, eczema) are at highest risk, with the disease most severe in young children. Eczema vaccinatum may occur concurrently with the development of the local vaccinial lesion in vaccinees and up to 3 weeks after exposure in close contacts of the vaccinee. This condition has a high mortality; patients benefit from treatment with vaccinia immune globulin.

Progressive Vaccinia

This rare and severe complication results when a vaccination site fails to heal and vaccinia virus replication persists. It occurs in persons with underlying humoral or cellular immune deficiency and is often fatal. The incidence of disease in the United States was about 1 per million. Congenital or acquired immunodeficiency and immunosuppression are contraindications to vaccination.

Fetal Vaccinia

Very rarely, a woman vaccinated any time during pregnancy may transmit vaccinia virus to the fetus, usually resulting in stillbirth. Therefore, vaccination should be withheld during pregnancy.

Postvaccinial Central Nervous System Disease

This rare, serious reaction is an inflammation of the parenchyma of the central nervous system after smallpox vaccination, such as postvaccinial encephalitis. The mortality rate of this serious complication is high. The incidence in the United States was about 3 per million among primary vaccinees of all ages. It is most common among infants less than 1 year of age. The onset occurs about 12 days after vaccination. The cause is not clear.

MONKEYPOX INFECTIONS

Monkeypox virus is a species of *Orthopoxvirus.* The disease was first recognized in captive monkeys in 1958. Human infections with this virus were discovered in the early 1970s in West Africa and central Africa after the eradication of smallpox from those regions.

The disease is a rare zoonosis that has been detected in remote villages in tropical rain forests, particularly in the Congo basin countries of Africa and perhaps in West Africa. It is probably acquired by direct contact with wild animals killed for food and skins. The primary reservoir host is not known but squirrels and rodents can be infected.

The clinical features of human monkeypox have been established based on an examination of 282 infected patients in Zaire from 1980 to 1985. Patients were of all ages, but the majority (90%) were less than 15 years old. Clinical symptoms were similar to ordinary and modified forms of smallpox. "Cropping" of the rash occurred in some patients, posing a diagnostic problem with chickenpox. Pronounced lymphadenopathy occurred in most patients, a feature not seen with smallpox or chickenpox.

Complications were common and often serious. These were generally pulmonary distress and secondary bacterial infections. In unvaccinated patients, the fatality rate was about 11%. Vaccination with vaccinia either protects against monkeypox or lessens the severity of disease.

Human monkeypox infection is generally believed not to be easily transmitted from person to person. Previous estimates were that only about 15% of susceptible family contacts acquired monkeypox from patients. However, an outbreak in Zaire in 1996 and 1997 suggested a higher potential for person-to-person transmission.

The first outbreak of monkeypox in the western hemisphere occurred in the United States in 2003. Over 80 human cases (no deaths) were diagnosed, mostly in midwestern states. The source was traced to an exotic pet store in Illinois where apparently an imported African rat spread the virus to pet prairie dogs and they transmitted it to humans. It is likely that the isolate of monkeypox virus introduced was a naturally attenuated virus from West Africa that was less pathogenic in humans than isolates from central Africa.

COWPOX INFECTIONS

Cowpox virus is another species of *Orthopoxvirus.* This disease of cattle is milder than the pox diseases of other animals, the lesions being confined to the teats and udders (Figure 34–5A). Infection of humans occurs by direct contact during milking, and the lesion in milkers is usually confined to the hands (Figure 34–5D). The disease is more severe in unvaccinated persons than in those vaccinated with vaccinia virus. The local lesion is associated with fever and lymphadenitis.

Figure 34–5.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Cowpox, pseudocowpox, and orf in animals and humans. A: Cowpox ulcer on teat of cow 7 days after onset of signs. B: Pseudocowpox (milker's nodule virus) on teat of cow. C: Scabby mouth in a lamb, caused by orf virus. D, E, F: Hand lesions caused by these viruses. D: Cowpox. E: Milker's nodule (pseudocowpox). F: Orf.

(A and B courtesy of EPJ Gibbs; C courtesy of A Robinson; D courtesy of AD McNae; E and F courtesy of J Nagington. Reproduced from Fenner F: Poxviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Cowpox virus is similar to vaccinia virus immunologically and in host range. It is also closely related immunologically to variola virus. Jenner observed that those who have had cowpox are immune to smallpox. Cowpox virus can be distinguished from vaccinia virus by the deep red hemorrhagic lesions that cowpox virus produces on the chorioallantoic membrane of the chick embryo.

The natural reservoir of cowpox seems to be a rodent, and both cattle and humans are only accidental hosts. Domestic cats also are susceptible to cowpox virus. More than 50 cases in felines have been reported from the United Kingdom, but transmission from cats to humans is believed to be uncommon. Cowpox is no longer enzootic in cattle, although bovine and associated human cases occasionally occur. Feline cowpox is sporadic, and transmission is probably from a small wild rodent, including field voles. Human cases (with hemorrhagic skin lesions, fever, and general malaise) may occur without any known animal contact and may not be diagnosed. There is no treatment.

BUFFALOPOX INFECTIONS

Buffalopox virus is a derivative of vaccinia virus that has persisted in India in water buffalo since smallpox vaccination was discontinued. The disease in buffalo—and occasionally in cattle—is indistinguishable from cowpox. Buffalopox can be transmitted to humans, and localized pox lesions develop. There is some concern that human-to-human transmission may also occur.

ORF VIRUS INFECTIONS

The virus of orf is a species of *Parapoxvirus.* It causes a disease in sheep and goats that is prevalent worldwide (Figure 34–5C). The disease is also called contagious pustular dermatitis or sore mouth.

Orf is transmitted to humans by direct contact with an infected animal. It is an occupational disease of sheep and goat handlers. Recent reports from the United States emphasized the temporal association between human lesions and recent flock vaccination with live orf virus. Infection by orf virus is facilitated by skin trauma. Infection of humans occurs usually as a single lesion on a finger, hand, or forearm (Figure 34–5F) but may appear on the face or neck. Lesions are large nodules, rather painful, with surrounding inflamed skin. The infection is seldom generalized. Healing takes several weeks.

Electron microscopy can confirm a parapoxvirus infection, but only PCR can definitively identify a parapoxvirus as orf virus.

MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM

Molluscum contagiosum is a benign epidermal tumor that occurs only in humans (though there is evidence of a closely related virus in horses). The causative agent is classified as the sole member of the *Molluscipoxvirus* genus.

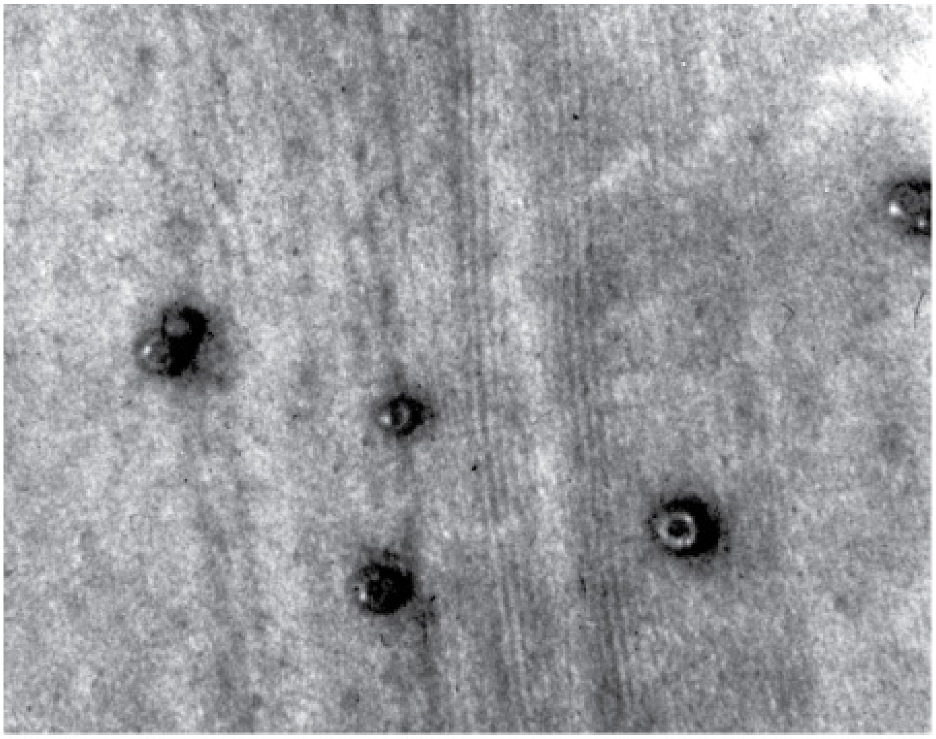
The virus has not been transmitted to animals and has not been grown in tissue culture. It has been studied in the human lesion by electron microscopy. The purified virus is oval or brick-shaped and measures 230 × 330 nm; it resembles vaccinia. Antibodies to the virus do not cross-react with any other poxviruses.

The viral DNA resembles that of vaccinia virus with respect to terminal cross-linking and inverted terminal repeats. It has an overall G + C content of about 60%. The entire genome of molluscum contagiosum virus

(˜ 190 kbp) has been sequenced. It contains at least 163 genes, about two-thirds of which resemble genes of smallpox and cowpox viruses. The large number of dissimilar genes must account for the different human illnesses produced by molluscum contagiosum and the smallpox virus.

The lesions of this disease are small, pink, wart-like tumors on the face, arms, back, and buttocks (Figure 34–6). They are rarely found on the palms, soles, or mucous membranes. The disease occurs throughout the world in both sporadic and epidemic forms and is more frequent in children than in adults. It is spread by direct and indirect contact (eg, by barbers, common use of towels, swimming pools).

Figure 34–6.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Lesions of molluscum contagiosum in humans.

(Courtesy of D Lowy. Reproduced from Fenner F: Poxviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

The incidence of molluscum contagiosum as a sexually transmitted disease in young adults is increasing. It is seen also in some patients with AIDS. The skin of late-stage AIDS patients may be covered with many papules. Although the typical lesion is an umbilicated papule, lesions in moist genital areas may become inflamed or ulcerated and may be confused with those produced by herpes simplex virus (HSV). Specimens from such lesions are often submitted to viral diagnostic laboratories for isolation of HSV (see below).

The incubation period may extend for up to 6 months. Lesions may itch, leading to autoinoculation. The lesions may persist for up to 2 years but will eventually regress spontaneously. The virus is a poor immunogen; about one-third of patients never produce antibodies against it. Second attacks are common.

Although molluscum contagiosum virus has not been serially propagated in cell culture, it can infect human and primate cells and undergo an abortive infection. Uncoating occurs to produce cores, followed by a transient characteristic cytopathic effect. The cellular changes can be mistaken for those produced by HSV; thus, isolates from specimens suspected to contain HSV should be specifically identified. In a 1985 study of 137 specimens cultured for HSV with the use of human fibroblast cells, 49 contained HSV; six others produced cytopathic effects but were negative for HSV antigens. Electron microscopy confirmed the presence of molluscum contagiosum virus in those HSV-negative, cytopathic-effect-positive samples.

The diagnosis of molluscum contagiosum can usually be made clinically. However, a semisolid caseous material can be expressed from the lesions and used for laboratory diagnosis. PCR can detect viral DNA sequences, and electron microscopy can detect poxvirus particles.

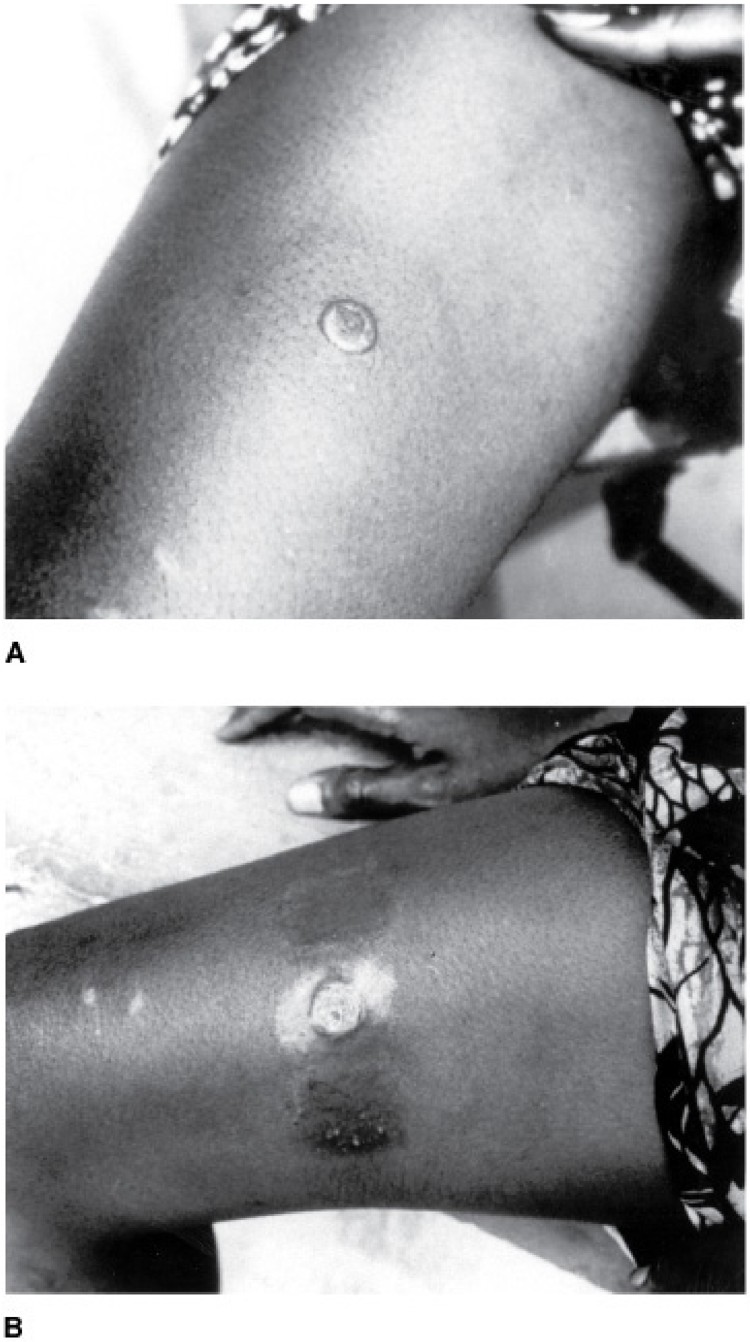
TANAPOX & YABA MONKEY TUMOR POXVIRUS INFECTIONS

Tanapox is a fairly common skin infection in parts of Africa, mainly in Kenya and the Democratic Republic of Congo. Its natural host is probably monkeys, though it is possible that there is another reservoir and that monkeys are only incidental hosts. The mode of transmission is not known.

Tanapox and Yaba monkey tumor viruses are serologically related to each other but are distinct from all other poxviruses. They are classified in the *Yatapoxvirus* genus. They are morphologically similar to orthopoxviruses. The tanapox virus genome is 160 kbp in size, whereas that of Yaba monkey tumor poxvirus is smaller (145 kbp; 32.5% G + C). The viruses grow only in cultures of monkey and human cells, with cytopathic effects. They do not grow on the chorioallantoic membrane of embryonated eggs.

Tanapox begins with a febrile period of 3–4 days and can include severe headache and prostration. There are usually only one or two skin lesions; pustulation never occurs (Figure 34–7). Healing may take 4–7 weeks.

Figure 34–7.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Lesions produced by tanapox virus. A: Ten days after first appearance of the lesion. B: Thirty-one days after appearance of the lesion.

(Courtesy of Z Jezek. Reproduced from Fenner F: Poxviruses. In: *Fields Virology*, 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Yaba monkey tumor poxvirus causes benign histiocytomas 5–20 days after subcutaneous or intramuscular administration to monkeys. The tumors regress after about 5 weeks. Intravenous administration of the virus causes the appearance of multiple histiocytomas in the lungs, heart, and skeletal muscles. True neoplastic changes do not occur. The virus is easily isolated from tumor tissue, and characteristic inclusions are found in the tumor cells. Monkeys of various species and humans are susceptible to the cellular proliferative effects of the virus, but other laboratory animals are insusceptible. Although animal handlers have become infected, Yaba virus infections of humans have not been observed naturally in Africa.

REFERENCES

Haig DM: Poxvirus interference with the host cytokine response. Vet Immunol Immunopathol 1998;63:149. [PMID: 9656450]

McFadden G: Poxvirus tropism. Nature Rev Microbiol 2005;3:201. [PMID: 15738948]

Mercer A et al: Molecular genetic analyses of parapoxviruses pathogenic for humans. Arch Virol 1997;13 (Suppl):25.

Moss B: Genetically engineered poxviruses for recombinant gene expression, vaccination, and safety. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1996;93:11341. [PMID: 8876137]

Surveillance guidelines for smallpox vaccine (vaccinia) adverse reactions. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2006;55(RR-1):1.

Vaccinia (smallpox) vaccine: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2001. MMWR Recomm Rep 2001;50(RR-10):1.

Wharton M et al: Recommendations for using smallpox vaccine in a pre-event vaccination program: Supplemental recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC). MMWR Recomm Rep 2003;52(RR-7):1.

INTRODUCTION

Viral hepatitis is a systemic disease primarily involving the liver. Most cases of acute viral hepatitis in children and adults are caused by one of the following agents: hepatitis A virus (HAV), the etiologic agent of viral hepatitis type / (infectious hepatitis); hepatitis B virus (HBV), which is associated with viral hepatitis B (serum hepatitis); hepatitis (virus (HCV), the agent of hepatitis C (common cause of posttransfusion hepatitis); or hepatitis E virus (HEV), the ag of enterically transmitted hepatitis. Other viruses are associated with hepatitis that cannot be ascribed to known agents, and the associated disease is designated non-AE hepatitis. Additional well-characterized viruses that can cau sporadic hepatitis, such as yellow fever virus, cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, herpes simplex virus, rubella viru and the enteroviruses, are discussed in other chapters. Hepatitis viruses produce acute inflammation of the liver, resulting in a clinical illness characterized by fever, gastrointestinal symptoms such as nausea and vomiting, and jaundice. Regardless of the virus type, identical histopathologic lesions are observed in the liver during acute diseas

PROPERTIES OF HEPATITIS VIRUSES

The characteristics of the five known hepatitis viruses are shown in Table 351. Nomenclature of the hepatitis viruses antigens, and antibodies is presented in Table 352.

Table 351. Characteristics of Hepatitis Viruses.

Family
Picornaviridae
Hepadnaviridae
Flaviviridae
Unclassified
Unclassified

Genus
Hepatovirus
Orthohepadnavirus
Hepacivirus
Deltavirus
Hepevirus
Virion
27 nm, icosahedral
42 nm, spherical
60 nm, spherical
35 nm, spherical
3032 nm, icosahedral

Envelope
No
Yes (HBsAg)
Yes
Yes (HBsAg)
No
Genome
ssRNA
dsDNA
ssRNA
ssRNA
ssRNA
Genome size
7.5 kb
3.2 kb
9.4 kb
1.7 kb
7.6 kb
Stability
Heat- and acid-stable
Acid-sensitive
Ether-sensitive, acid-sensitive
Acid-sensitive
Heat-stable
Transmission
Fecal-oral
Parenteral
Parenteral
Parenteral
Fecal-oral
Prevalence
High
High
Moderate
Low, regional
Regional
Fulminant disease
Rare
Rare
Rare
Frequent
In pregnancy
Chronic disease
Never
Often
Often
Often
Never
Oncogenic

No
Yes
Yes
?
No

Virus	Hepatitis A	Hepatitis B	Hepatitis C	Hepatitis D	Hepatitis E

Table 352. Nomenclature and Definitions of Hepatitis Viruses, Antigens, and Antibodies.

Hepatitis A
HAV
Hepatitis A virus. Etiologic agent of infectious hepatitis. A picornavirus, the prototype of a new genus, *Hepatovirus.*
Anti-HAV
Antibody to HAV. Detectable at onset of symptoms; lifetime persistence.
IgM anti-HAV
IgM class antibody to HAV. Indicates recent infection with hepatitis A; positive up to 46 months after infection.
Hepatitis B
HBV
Hepatitis B virus. Etiologic agent of serum hepatitis. A hepadnavirus.
HBsAg
Hepatitis B surface antigen. Surface antigen(s) of HBV detectable in large quantity in serum; several subtypes identified.
HBeAg
Hepatitis B e antigen. Associated with HBV nucleocapsid; indicates viral replication; circulates as soluble antigen in serum.
HBcAg
Hepatitis B core antigen.
Anti-HBs
Antibody to HBsAg. Indicates past infection with and immunity to HBV, presence of passive antibody from HBIG, or immune response from HBV vaccine.
Anti-HBe
Antibody to HBeAg. Presence in serum of HBsAg carrier suggests lower titer of HBV.
Anti-HBc
Antibody to HBcAg. Indicates infection with HBV at some undefined time in the past.
IgM anti-HBc
IgM class antibody to HBcAg. Indicates recent infection with HBV; positive for 46 months after infection.
Hepatitis C
HCV
Hepatitis C virus, a common etiologic agent of posttransfusion hepatitis. A flavivirus, genus *Hepacivirus.*
Anti-HCV
Antibody to HCV.
Hepatitis D
HDV
Hepatitis D virus. Etiologic agent of delta hepatitis; causes infection only in presence of HBV.
HDAg
Delta antigen (delta-Ag). Detectable in early acute HDV infection.
Anti-HDV

Antibody to delta-Ag (anti-delta). Indicates past or present infection with HDV.
Hepatitis E
HEV
Hepatitis E virus. Enterically transmitted hepatitis virus. Causes large epidemics in Asia, North and West Africa, and Mexico; fecal-oral or waterborne transmission. Unclassified.
Immune globulins
IG
Immune globulin USP. Contains antibodies to HAV; no antibodies to HBsAg, HCV, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).
HBIG
Hepatitis B immune globulin. Contains high titers of antibodies to HBV.

Disease	Component of System	Definition

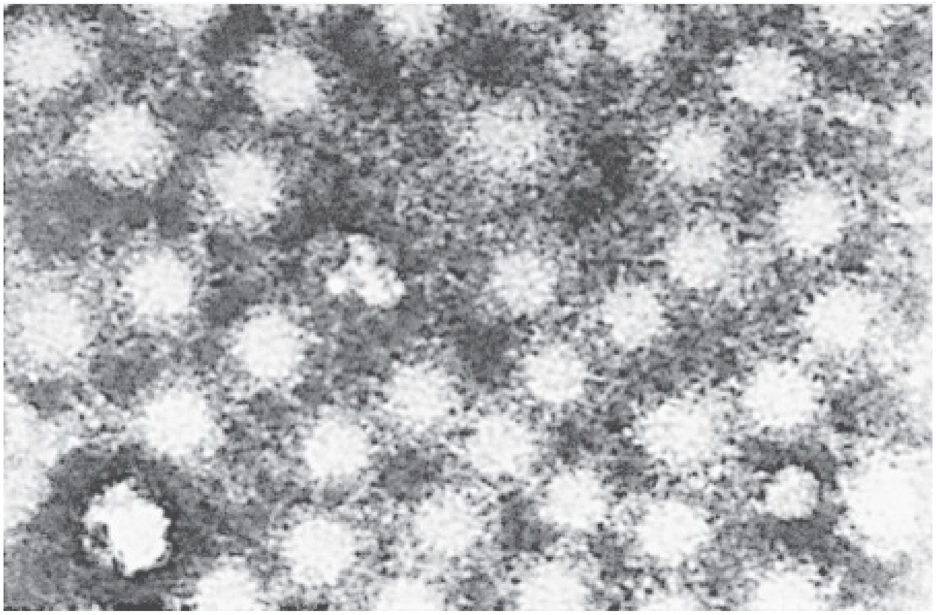
Hepatitis Type A

HAV is a distinct member of the picornavirus family (see Chapter 36). HAV is a 27- to 32-nm spherical particle with cubic symmetry, containing a linear single-stranded RNA genome with a size of 7.5 kb. Although it was first provisionally classified as enterovirus 72, the nucleotide and amino acid sequences of HAV are sufficiently distinct t assign it to a new picornavirus genus, *Hepatovirus.* Only one serotype is known. There is no antigenic cross-reactivi with HBV or with the other hepatitis viruses. Genomic sequence analysis of a variable region involving the junction the 1D and 2A genes divided HAV isolates into seven genotypes. Important properties of the family Picornaviridae a listed in Table 361.

HAV is stable to treatment with 20% ether, acid (pH 1.0 for 2 hours), and heat (60 C for 1 hour), and its infectivity be preserved for at least 1 month after being dried and stored at 25 C and 42% relative humidity or for years at -2 The virus is destroyed by autoclaving (121 C for 20 minutes), by boiling in water for 5 minutes, by dry heat (180 C 1 hour), by ultraviolet irradiation (1 minute at 1.1 watts), by treatment with formalin (1:4000 for 3 days at 37 C), by treatment with chlorine (1015 ppm for 30 minutes). Heating food to > 85 C (185 F) for 1 minute and disinfectin surfaces with sodium hypochlorite (1:100 dilution of chlorine bleach) are necessary to inactivate HAV. The relative resistance of HAV to disinfection procedures emphasizes the need for extra precautions in dealing with hepatitis patients and their products.

HAV initially was identified in stool and liver preparations by employing immune electron microscopy as the detectio system (Figure 351). Sensitive serologic assays and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods have made it possibl to detect HAV in stools and other samples and to measure specific antibody in serum.

Figure 351.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of 27-nm hepatitis A virus aggregated with antibody (222,000 ×). Note the presence of an antibody "halo around each particle.

(Courtesy of DW Bradley, CL Hornbeck, and JE Maynard.)

Various primate cell lines will support growth of HAV, though fresh isolates of virus are difficult to adapt and grow. Usually, no cytopathic effects are apparent. Mutations in the viral genome are selected during adaptation to tissue culture.

Hepatitis Type B

HBV is classified as a hepadnavirus (Table 353). HBV establishes chronic infections, especially in those infected as infants; it is a major factor in the eventual development of liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma in those individuals.

Table 353. Important Properties of Hepadnaviruses.[1]

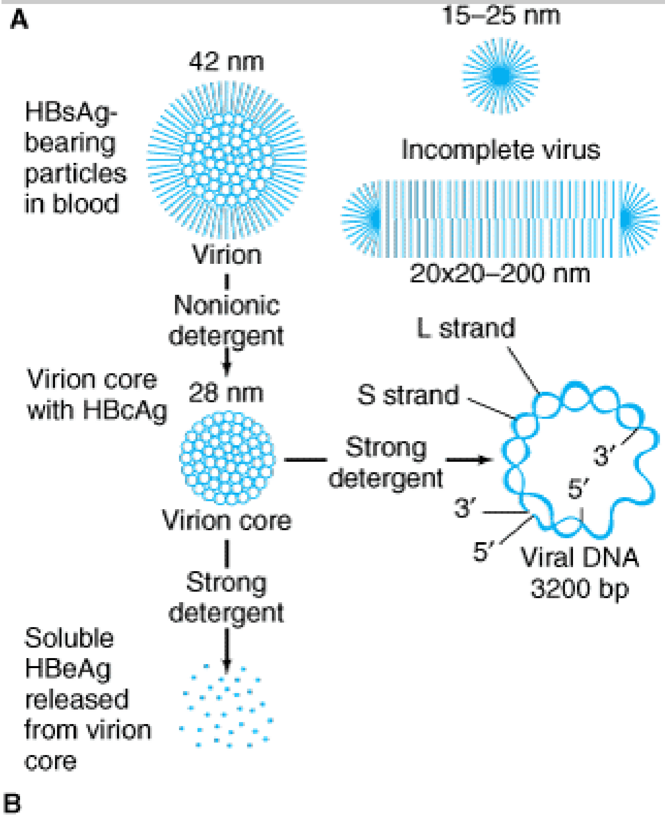
Virion: About 42 nm in diameter overall (nucleocapsids, 18 nm)
Genome: One molecule of double-stranded DNA, circular, 3.2 kbp. In virion, negative DNA strand is full length and positive DNA strand is partially complete. The gap must be completed at beginning of replication cycle.
Proteins: Two major polypeptides (one glycosylated) are present in HBsAg; one polypeptide is present in HBcAg.
Envelope: Contains HBsAg and lipid.
Replication: By means of an intermediate RNA copy of the DNA genome (HBcAg in nucleus; HBsAg in cytoplasm). Both mature virus and 22-nm spherical particles consist of HBsAg secreted from the cell surface.
Outstanding characteristics:
Family is made up of many types that infect humans and lower animals (eg, woodchucks, squirrels, ducks).
Cause acute and chronic hepatitis, often progressing to permanent carrier states and hepatocellular carcinoma.

[1] For HAV, see properties of picornaviruses (Table 361); for HCV, see description of flaviviruses (Table 381).

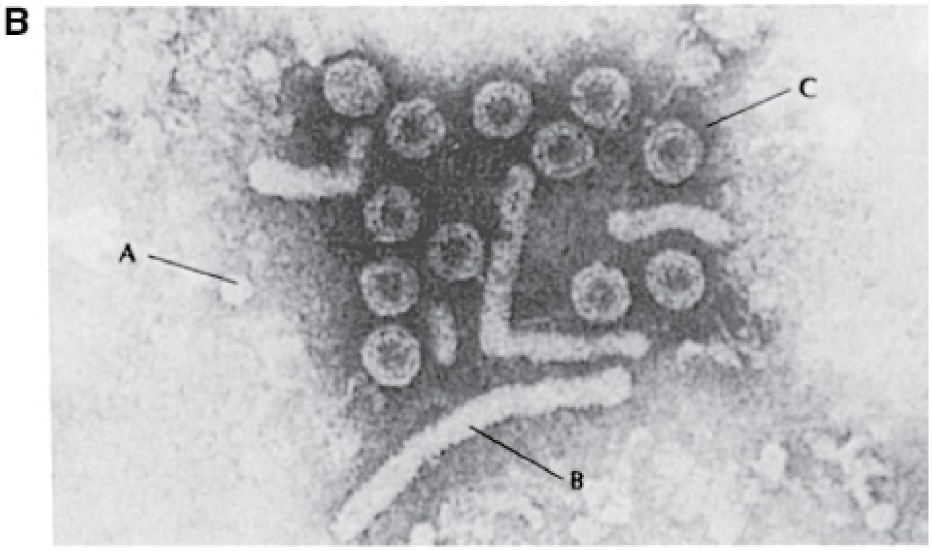
STRUCTURE AND COMPOSITION

Electron microscopy of HBsAg-positive serum reveals three morphologic forms (Figures 352 and 353A). The most numerous are spherical particles measuring 22 nm in diameter (Figure 353B). These small particles are made up exclusively of HBsAgas are tubular or filamentous forms, which have the same diameter but may be over 200 nm longand result from overproduction of HBsAg. Larger, 42-nm spherical virions (originally referred to as Dane particle are less frequently observed (Figure 352). The outer surface, or envelope, contains HBsAg and surrounds a 27-nm inner nucleocapsid core that contains HBcAg (Figure 353C). The variable length of a single-stranded region of the circular DNA genome results in genetically heterogeneous particles with a wide range of buoyant densities.

Figure 352.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

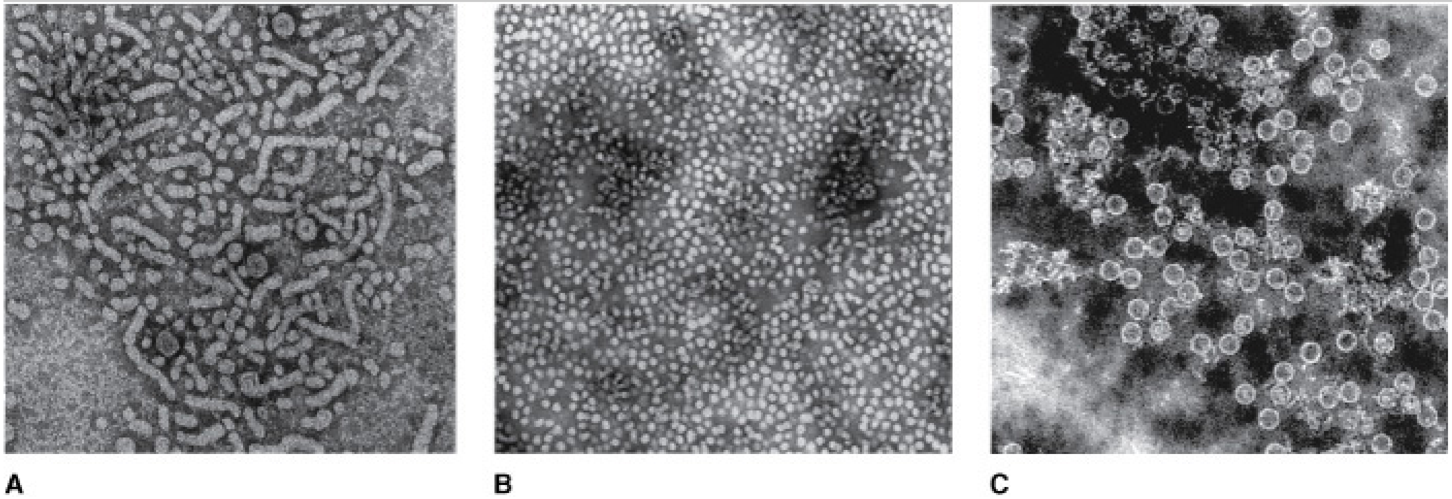


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Hepatitis B viral and subviral forms. A: Schematic representation of three HBsAg-containing forms that can be identified in ser from HBV carriers. The 42-nm spherical Dane particle can be disrupted by nonionic detergents to release the 28-nm core that contains the partially double-stranded viral DNA genome. A soluble antigen, termed HBeAg, may be released from core particl by treatment with strong detergent. B: Electron micrograph showing three distinct HBsAg-bearing forms: 20-nm pleomorphic spherical particles (A), filamentous forms (B), and 42-nm spherical Dane particles, the infectious form of HBV (C).

(Courtesy of FB Hollinger.)

Figure 353.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: Unfractionated HBsAg-positive human plasma. Filaments, 22-nm spherical particles, and a few 42-nm virions are shown (77,000 x). B: Purified HBsAg (55,000 x).

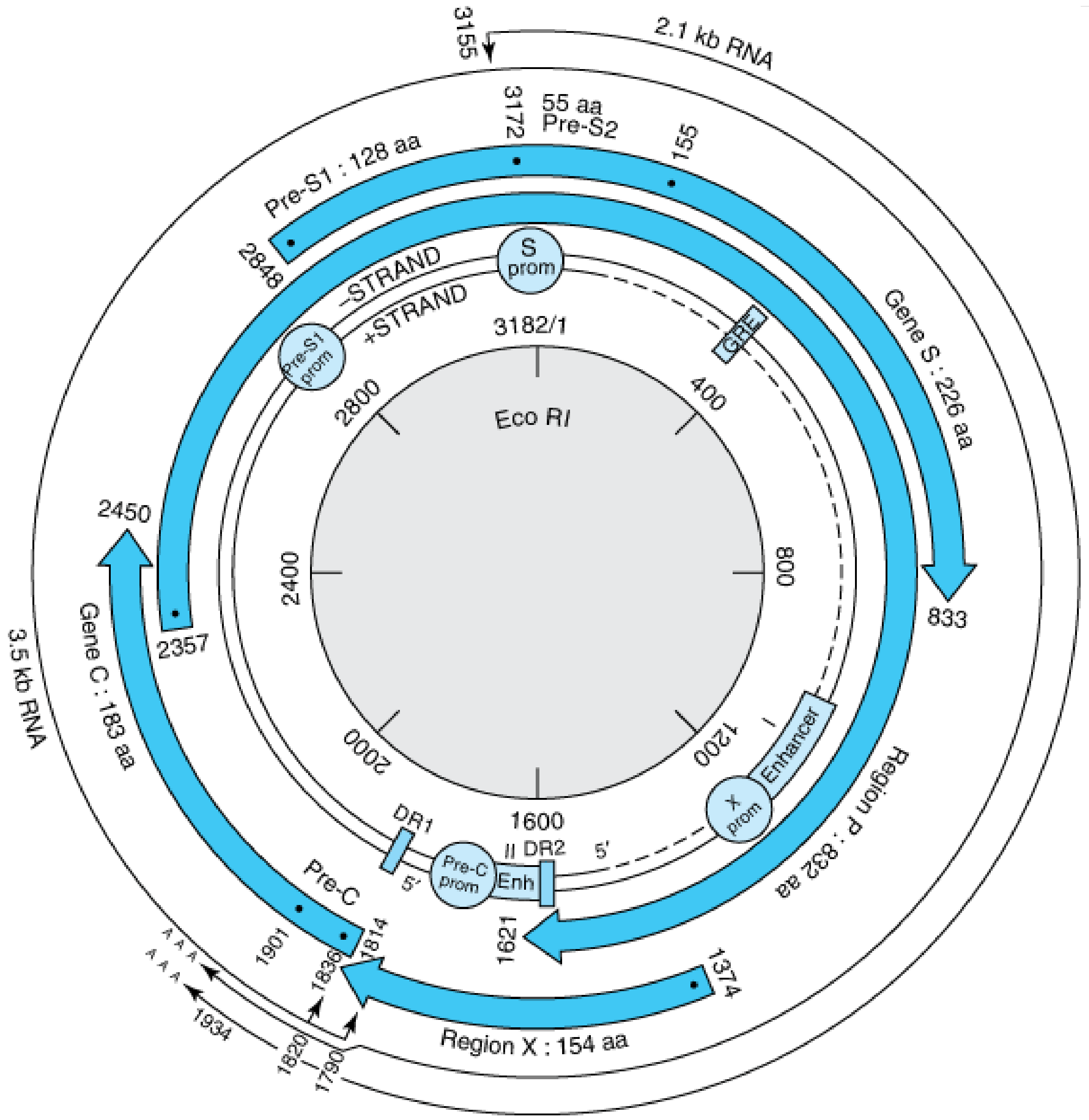
(Courtesy of RM McCombs and JP Brunschwig.)

C: HBcAg purified from infected liver nuclei (122,400 x). The diameter of the core particles is 27 nm.

(Courtesy of HA Fields, GR Dreesman, and G Cabral.)

The viral genome (Figure 354) consists of partially double-stranded circular DNA, 3200 bp in length. Different HBV isolates share 9098% nucleotide sequence homology. The full-length DNA minus strand (L or long strand) is complementary to all HBV mRNAs; the positive strand (S or short strand) is variable and between 50 and 80% of ur length.

Figure 354.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genetic organization of the HBV genome. Four open reading frames encoding seven peptides are indicated by large arrows. Regulatory sequences (promoters [prom], enhancers [Enh], and glucocorticoid responsive element [GRE]) are marked. Only t two major transcripts (core/pre-genome and S mRNAs) are represented. DR1 and DR2 are two directly repeated sequences of bp at the 5' extremities of the minus- and plus-strand DNA.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Buendia MA: Hepatitis B viruses and hepatocellular carcinoma. Adv Cancer Res 1992;59:1 Academic Press, Inc., 1992.)

There are four open reading frames that encode seven polypeptides. These include structural proteins of the virion surface and core, a small transcriptional transactivator (X), and a large polymerase (P) protein that includes DNA polymerase, reverse transcriptase, and RNase H activities. The S gene has three in-frame initiation codons and encodes the major HBsAg, as well as polypeptides containing in addition pre-S2 or pre-S1 and pre-S2 sequences. Th C gene has two in-frame initiation codons and encodes HBcAg plus the HBe protein, which is processed to produce soluble HBeAg.

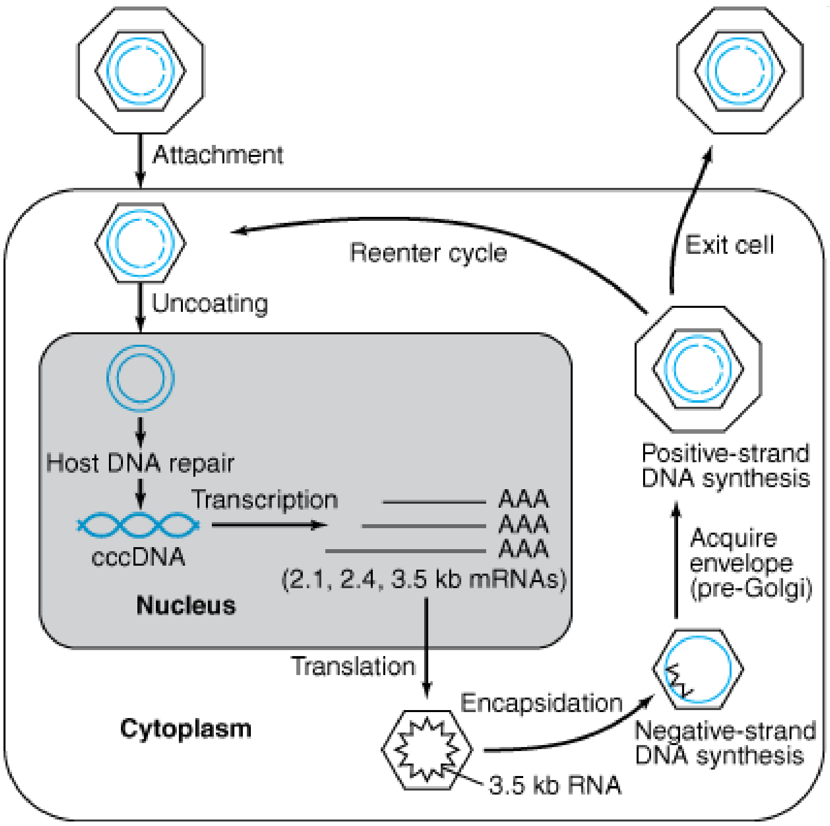
The particles containing HBsAg are antigenically complex. Each contains a group-specific antigen, *a,* in addition to tw pairs of mutually exclusive subdeterminants, *d/y* and *w/r.* Thus, four phenotypes of HBsAg have been observed: *adw* *ayw, adr,* and *ayr.* In the United States, *adw* is the predominant subtype. These virus-specific markers are useful in epidemiologic investigations, as secondary cases have the same subtype as the index case.

The stability of HBsAg does not always coincide with that of the infectious agent. However, both are stable at -20 C over 20 years and stable to repeated freezing and thawing. The virus also is stable at 37 C for 60 minutes and rema viable after being dried and stored at 25 C for at least 1 week. HBV (but not HBsAg) is sensitive to higher temperatures (100 C for 1 minute) or to longer incubation periods (60 C for 10 hours). HBsAg is stable at pH 2.4 for up to 6 hours, but HBV infectivity is lost. Sodium hypochlorite, 0.5% (eg, 1:10 chlorine bleach), destroys antigenicit within 3 minutes at low protein concentrations, but undiluted serum specimens require higher concentrations (5%). HBsAg is not destroyed by ultraviolet irradiation of plasma or other blood products, and viral infectivity may also res such treatment.

REPLICATION OF HEPATITIS B VIRUS

The infectious virion attaches to cells and becomes uncoated (Figure 355). In the nucleus, the partially double-stranded viral genome is converted to covalently closed circular double-stranded DNA (cccDNA). The cccDNA serves template for all viral transcripts, including a 3.5-kb pregenome RNA. The pregenome RNA becomes encapsidated wi newly synthesized HBcAg. Within the cores, the viral polymerase synthesizes by reverse transcription a negative-strand DNA copy. The polymerase starts to synthesize the positive DNA strand, but the process is not completed. Cores bud from the pre-Golgi membranes, acquiring HBsAg-containing envelopes, and may exit the cell. Alternative cores may be reimported into the nucleus and initiate another round of replication in the same cell.

Figure 355.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

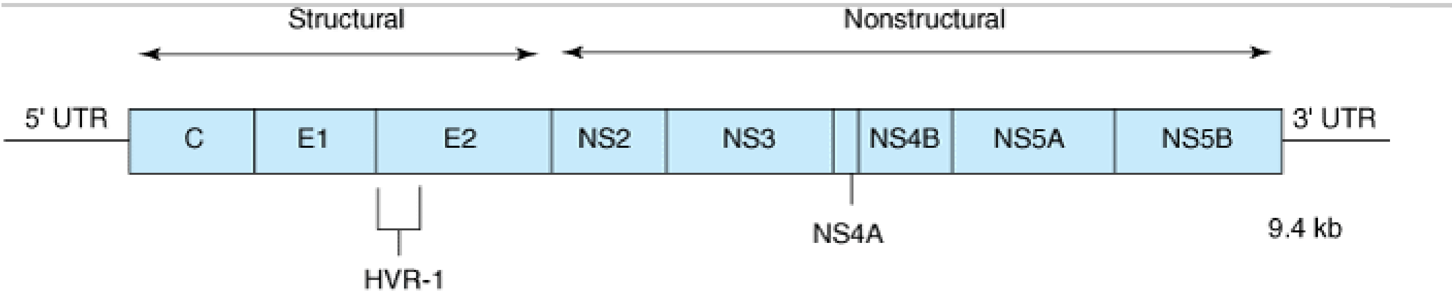
HBV replication cycle. HBV attachment to a receptor on the surface of hepatocytes occurs via a portion of the pre-S region of HBsAg. After uncoating of the virus, unidentified cellular enzymes convert the partially double-stranded DNA to covalent close circular (ccc) DNA that can be detected in the nucleus. The cccDNA serves as the template for the production of HBV mRNAs a the 3.5-kb RNA pregenome. The pregenome is encapsidated by a packaging signal located near the 5' end of the RNA into ne synthesized core particles, where it serves as template for the HBV reverse transcriptase encoded within the polymerase gene RNase H activity of the polymerase removes the RNA template as the negative-strand DNA is being synthesized. Positive-stra DNA synthesis does not proceed to completion within the core, resulting in replicative intermediates consisting of full-length minus-strand DNA plus variable-length (2080%) positive-strand DNA. Core particles containing these DNA replicative intermediates bud from pre-Golgi membranes (acquiring HBsAg in the process) and may either exit the cell or reenter the intracellular infection cycle.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Butel JS, Lee TH, Slagle BL: Is the DNA repair system involved in hepatitis-B-virus-mediat hepatocellular carcinogenesis? Trends Microbiol 1996;4:119.)

Hepatitis Type C

Clinical and epidemiologic studies and cross-challenge experiments in chimpanzees had suggested that there were several non-A, non-B (NANB) hepatitis agents which, based on serologic tests, were not related to HAV or HBV. The major agent was identified as hepatitis C virus (HCV). HCV is a positive-stranded RNA virus, classified as family Flaviviridae, genus *Hepacivirus.* Various viruses can be differentiated by RNA sequence analysis into at least six maj genotypes (clades) and more than 100 subtypes. Clades differ from each other by 2535% at the nucleotide level; subtypes differ from each other by 1525%. The genome is 9.4 kb in size and encodes a core protein, two envelope glycoproteins, and several nonstructural proteins (Figure 356). The expression of cDNA clones of HCV in yeast led t the development of serologic tests for antibodies to HCV. Most cases of posttransfusion NANB hepatitis were caused HCV.

Figure 356.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genetic organization of the HCV genome. The single open reading frame is expressed as a polyprotein that gets processed; th positions of structural and nonstructural domains are shown. HVR-1 represents the highly variable region of an envelope glycoprotein.

(Redrawn, with permission, from Chung RT, Liang TJ: Hepatitis C virus and hepatocellular carcinoma. In: *Microbes and Malignancy: Infection as a Cause of Human Cancers.* Parsonnet J [editor]. Oxford University Press, 1999.)

Most new infections with HCV are subclinical. The majority (7090%) of HCV patients develop chronic hepatitis, and many are at risk of progressing to chronic active hepatitis and cirrhosis (1020%). In some countries, as in Japan, H infection often leads to hepatocellular carcinoma. About 25,000 individuals die annually of chronic liver disease and cirrhosis in the United States; HCV appears to be a major contributor to this burden (approximately 40%).

HCV displays genomic diversity, with different genotypes (clades) predominating in different parts of the world. The virus undergoes sequence variation during chronic infections. This complex viral population in a host is referred to a "quasi-species." This genetic diversity is not correlated with differences in clinical disease, although differences do e in response to antiviral therapy according to viral genotype.

Hepatitis Type D (Delta Hepatitis)

An antigen-antibody system termed the delta antigen (delta-Ag) and antibody (anti-delta) is detected in some HBV infections. The antigen is found within certain HBsAg particles. In blood, HDV (delta agent) contains delta-Ag (HDAg surrounded by an HBsAg envelope. It has a particle size of 3537 nm and a buoyant density of 1.241.25 g/mL in CsC The genome of HDV consists of single-stranded, circular, negative-sense RNA, 1.7 kb in size. It is the smallest of known human pathogens and resembles subviral plant pathogens, ie, viroids. No homology exists with the HBV genome. HDAg is the only protein coded for by HDV RNA and is distinct from the antigenic determinants of HBV. HD is a defective virus that acquires an HBsAg coat for transmission. It is often associated with the most severe forms hepatitis in HBsAg-positive patients.

Hepatitis Type E

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) is transmitted enterically and occurs in epidemic form in developing countries, where water food supplies are sometimes fecally contaminated. It was first documented in samples collected during the New Del outbreak of 1955, when 29,000 cases of icteric hepatitis occurred after sewage contamination of the city's drinking water supply. Pregnant women may have a high (20%) mortality rate if fulminant hepatitis develops. The viral genc has been cloned and is a positive-sense, single-stranded RNA 7.6 kb in size. The virus resembles caliciviruses but ha not been placed in a virus family. It has been categorized in an unclassified genus called *Hepevirus* . Animal strains HEV are common throughout the world. There is evidence of HEV or HEV-like infections in rodents, pigs, sheep, and cattle in the United States. There is the possibility of spread of virus from animals to humans.

HEPATITIS VIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

Pathology

Hepatitis is a general term meaning inflammation of the liver. Microscopically, there is spotty parenchymal cell degeneration, with necrosis of hepatocytes, a diffuse lobular inflammatory reaction, and disruption of liver cell cords These parenchymal changes are accompanied by reticuloendothelial (Kupffer) cell hyperplasia, periportal infiltration mononuclear cells, and cell degeneration. Localized areas of necrosis are frequently observed. Later in the course o the disease, there is an accumulation of macrophages near degenerating hepatocytes. Preservation of the reticulum framework allows hepatocyte regeneration so that the highly ordered architecture of the liver lobule can be ultimate regained. The damaged hepatic tissue is usually restored in 812 weeks.

Chronic carriers of HBsAg may or may not have demonstrable evidence of liver disease. Persistent (unresolved) vira hepatitis, a mild benign disease that may follow acute hepatitis B in 810% of adult patients, is characterized by sporadically abnormal aminotransferase values and hepatomegaly. Histologically, the lobular architecture is preserv with portal inflammation, swollen and pale hepatocytes (cobblestone arrangement), and slight to absent fibrosis. Th lesion is frequently observed in asymptomatic carriers, usually does not progress toward cirrhosis, and has a favora prognosis.

Chronic active hepatitis features a spectrum of histologic changes from inflammation and necrosis to collapse of the normal reticulum framework with bridging between the portal triads or terminal hepatic veins. HBV is detected in 1050% of these patients.

Occasionally during acute viral hepatitis, more extensive damage may occur that prevents orderly liver cell regeneration. Such fulminant or massive hepatocellular necrosis is seen in 12% of jaundiced patients with hepatitis It is ten times more common in those coinfected with HDV than in the absence of HDV.

None of the hepatitis viruses are typically cytopathogenic, and it is believed that the cellular damage seen in hepati is immune-mediated.

Both HBV and HCV have significant roles in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma that may appear many (1560) years after establishment of chronic infection.

Clinical Findings

The clinical features of infections by HAV, HBV, and HCV are summarized in Table 354. In individual cases, it is not possible to make a reliable clinical distinction among cases caused by the hepatitis viruses.

Table 354. Epidemiologic and Clinical Features of Viral Hepatitis Types A, B, and C.

Incubation period
1050 days (avg, 2530)
50180 days (avg, 6090)
15160 days (avg, 50)

Principal age distribution
Children,[1] young adults

1529 years,[2] babies

Adults[2]

Seasonal incidence
Throughout the year but tends to peak in autumn
Throughout the year
Throughout the year
Route of infection
Predominantly fecal-oral
Predominantly parenteral
Predominantly parenteral
Occurrence of virus
Blood
2 weeks before to ≤ 1 week after jaundice
Months to years
Months to years
Stool
2 weeks before to 2 weeks after jaundice
Absent
Probably absent
Urine
Rare
Absent
Probably absent
Saliva, semen
Rare (saliva)
Frequently present
Present (saliva)
Clinical and laboratory features
Onset
Abrupt
Insidious
Insidious
Fever > 38 C (100.4 F)
Common
Less common
Less common
Duration of aminotransferase elevation
13 weeks
16+ months
16+ months
Immunoglobulins (IgM levels)
Elevated
Normal to slightly elevated
Normal to slightly elevated

Complications
Uncommon, no chronicity
Chronicity in 510% (95% of neonates)
Chronicity in 7090%
Mortality rate (icteric cases)
< 0.5%
< 12%
0.51%
HBsAg
Absent
Present
Absent
Immunity
Homologous
Yes
Yes
Probably no
Heterologous
No
No
No
Duration
Probably lifetime
Probably lifetime
?
Immune globulin intramuscular (IG, gamma globulin, ISG)
Regularly prevents jaundice
Prevents jaundice only if immune globulin is of sufficient potency against HBV
?

Feature	Viral Hepatitis Type A	Viral Hepatitis Type B	Viral Hepatitis Type C

[1] Nonicteric hepatitis is common in children.

[2] Among the age group 1529 years, hepatitis B and C are often associated with drug abuse or promiscuous sexual behavior. Patients with transfusion-associated HBV or HCV are generally over age 29.

Other viral diseases that may present as hepatitis are infectious mononucleosis, yellow fever, cytomegalovirus infection, herpes simplex, rubella, and some enterovirus infections. Hepatitis may occasionally occur as a complicati of leptospirosis, syphilis, tuberculosis, toxoplasmosis, and amebiasis, all of which are susceptible to specific drug therapy. Noninfectious causes include biliary obstruction, primary biliary cirrhosis, Wilson's disease, drug toxicity, ar drug hypersensitivity reactions.

In viral hepatitis, onset of jaundice is often preceded by gastrointestinal symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, anorexia, and mild fever. Jaundice may appear within a few days of the prodromal period, but anicteric hepatitis is more common.

Extrahepatic manifestations of viral hepatitis (primarily type B) include a transient serum sickness-like prodrome consisting of fever, skin rash, and polyarthritis; necrotizing vasculitis (polyarteritis nodosa); and glomerulonephritis. Circulating immune complexes have been suggested as the cause of these syndromes. Diseases associated with chronic HCV infections include mixed cryoglobulinemia and glomerulonephritis. Extrahepatic manifestations are unusual with HAV infections.

Uncomplicated viral hepatitis rarely continues for more than 10 weeks without improvement. Relapses occur in 520 of cases and are manifested by abnormalities in liver function with or without the recurrence of clinical symptoms.

The median incubation period is different for each type of viral hepatitis (Table 354). However, there is considerable overlap in timing, and the patient may not know when exposure occurred, so the incubation period is not very usefu determining the specific viral cause.

The onset of disease tends to occur abruptly with HAV (within 24 hours), in contrast to a more insidious onset with HBV and HCV. Complete recovery occurs in most hepatitis A cases; chronicity has not been observed (Table 355). T disease is more severe in adults than in children, in whom it often goes unnoticed. Relapses of HAV infection can oc 14 months after initial symptoms have resolved.

Table 355. Outcomes of Infection with Hepatitis A Virus.[1]

Outcome	Children	Adults
Inapparent (subclinical) infection	8095%	1025%
Icteric disease	520%	7590%
Complete recovery	> 98%	> 98%
Chronic disease	None	None
Mortality rate	0.1%	0.32.1%

[1] Adapted from Hollinger FB, Ticehurst JR: Hepatitis A virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al (editors). Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

The outcome after infection with HBV varies, ranging from complete recovery to progression to chronic hepatitis an rarely, death due to fulminant disease. In adults, 6580% of infections are inapparent, with 9095% of all patients recovering completely. In contrast, 8095% of infants and young children infected with HBV become chronic carriers (Table 356), and their serum remains positive for HBsAg. The vast majority of individuals with chronic HBV remain asymptomatic for many years; there may or may not be biochemical and histologic evidence of liver disease. Chron carriers are at high risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma.

Table 356. Transmission of Hepatitis B Virus and Spectrum of Outcomes of Infection.

Age at infection

Newborns, infants
Young children
Teenagers, adults
Recovery from acute infection
5%
20%
9095%
Progression to chronic infection
95%
80%
510%
Chronic carriers[2] (% of total population)

1020%
1020%
0.5%

	Transmission[1]		
	Vertical (Asia)	Contact (Africa)	Parenteral, Sexual

[1] Vertical and contact-associated transmission occurs in endemic regions; parenteral and sexual transmission are th main modes of transmission in nonendemic regions.

[2] At high risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma.

Fulminant hepatitis occasionally develops during acute viral hepatitis, defined as hepatic encephalopathy within the first 8 weeks of disease in patients without preexisting liver disease. It is fatal in 7090% of cases, with survival uncommon over the age of 40 years. Fulminant HBV disease is associated with superinfection by other agents, including HDV. In most patients who survive, complete restoration of the hepatic parenchyma and normal liver func is the rule. Fulminant disease rarely occurs with HAV or HCV infections.

Hepatitis C is usually clinically mild, with only minimal to moderate elevation of liver enzymes. Hospitalization is unusual, and jaundice occurs in less than 25% of patients. Despite the mild nature of the disease, 7090% of cases progress to chronic liver disease. Most patients are asymptomatic, but histologic evaluation often reveals evidence c chronic active hepatitis, especially in those whose disease is acquired following transfusion. Many patients (2050%) develop cirrhosis and are at high risk for hepatocellular carcinoma (525%) decades later. About 40% of chronic live disease is HCV-related, resulting in an estimated 800010,000 deaths annually in the United States. End-stage liver disease associated with HCV is the most frequent indication for adult liver transplants.

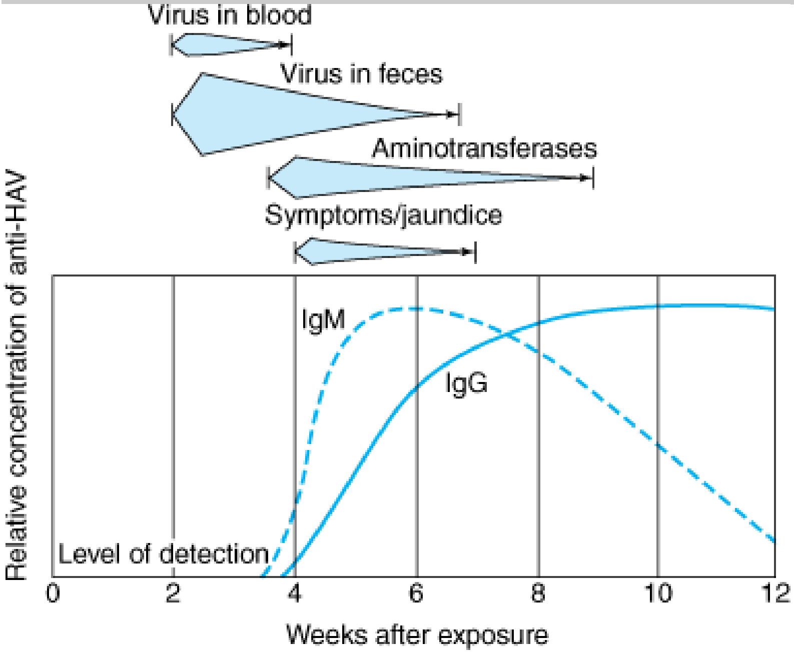
Laboratory Features

Liver biopsy permits a tissue diagnosis of hepatitis. Tests for abnormal liver function, such as serum alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and bilirubin, supplement the clinical, pathologic, and epidemiologic findings.

HEPATITIS A

The clinical, virologic, and serologic events following exposure to HAV are shown in Figure 357. Virus particles have been detected by immune electron microscopy in fecal extracts of hepatitis A patients (Figure 351). Virus appears early in the disease and disappears within 2 weeks following the onset of jaundice.

Figure 357.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Immunologic and biologic events associated with human infection with hepatitis A virus.

(Reproduced from Hollinger FB, Ticehurst JR: Hepatitis A virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996. Modified there from Hollinger FB, Dienstag JL: Hepatitis viruses. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology,* 4th ed. American Society for Microbiology, 1985.)

HAV can be detected in the liver, stool, bile, and blood of naturally infected humans and experimentally infected nonhuman primates by immunoassays, nucleic acid hybridization assays, or PCR. HAV is detected in the stool from about 2 weeks prior to the onset of jaundice up to 2 weeks after.

Anti-HAV appears in the IgM fraction during the acute phase, peaking about 2 weeks after elevation of liver enzyme (Table 357). Anti-HAV IgM usually declines to nondetectable levels within 36 months. Anti-HAV IgG appears soon af the onset of disease and persists for decades. Thus, detection of IgM-specific anti-HAV in the blood of an acutely infected patient confirms the diagnosis of hepatitis A. ELISA is the method of choice for measuring HAV antibodies.

Table 357. Interpretation of HAV, HCV, and HDV Serologic Markers in Patients with Hepatitis.

Anti-HAV IgM-positive
Acute infection with HAV
Anti-HAV IgG-positive
Past infection with HAV
Anti-HCV-positive
Current or past infection with HCV
Anti-HDV-positive, HBsAg-positive

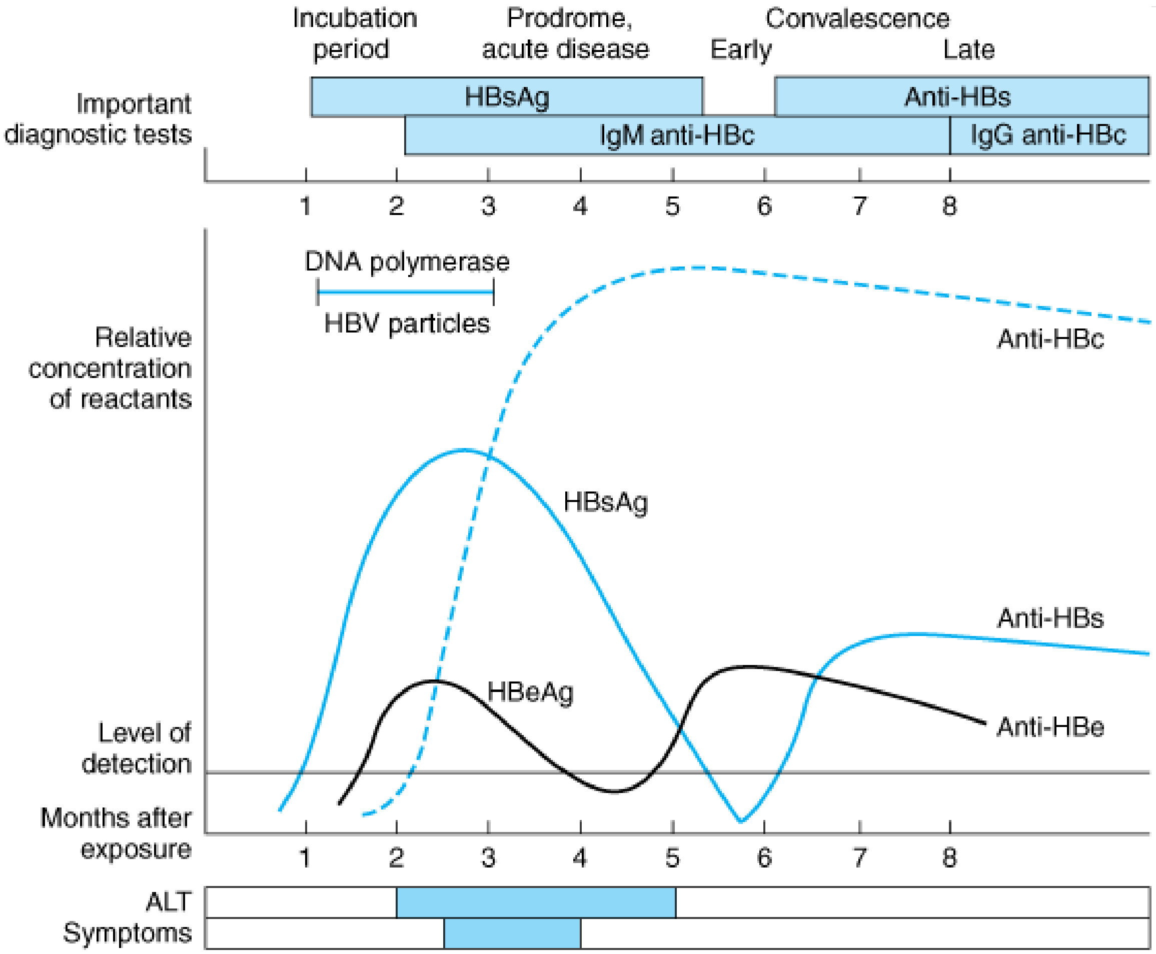
Infection with HDV
Anti-HDV-positive, anti-HBc IgM-positive
Coinfection with HDV and HBV
Anti-HDV-positive, anti-HBc IgM-negative
Superinfection of chronic HBV infection with HDV

Assay Results	Interpretation

HEPATITIS B

Clinical and serologic events following exposure to HBV are depicted in Figure 358 and summarized in Table 358. DN polymerase activity, HBV DNA, and HBeAg, which are representative of the viremic stage of hepatitis B, occur early the incubation period, concurrently or shortly after the first appearance of HBsAg. High concentrations of HBV partic may be present in the blood (up to 10^{10} particles/mL) during the initial phase of infection; communicability is highe at this time. HBsAg is usually detectable 26 weeks in advance of clinical and biochemical evidence of hepatitis and persists throughout the clinical course of the disease but typically disappears by the sixth month after exposure.

Figure 358.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Clinical and serologic events occurring in a patient with acute hepatitis B virus infection. The common diagnostic tests and thei interpretation are presented in Table 358.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Hollinger FB, Dienstag JL, Murray PR: Hepatitis B and D viruses. In: *Manual of Clinical Microbiology*, 6th ed. American Society for Microbiology, 1995.)

Table 358. Interpretation of HBV Serologic Markers in Patients with Hepatitis.[1]

Positive

Negative

Negative

Early acute HBV infection. Confirmation is required to exclude nonspecific reactivity.

Positive

()

Positive

HBV infection, either acute or chronic. Differentiate with IgM anti-HBc. Determine level of replicative activity (infectivity) with HBeAg or HBV DNA.

Negative

Positive
Positive
Indicates previous HBV infection and immunity to hepatitis B.
Negative
Negative
Positive
Possibilities include: HBV infection in remote past; "low-level" HBV carrier; "window" between disappearance of HBs and appearance of anti-HBs; or false-positive or nonspecific reaction. Investigate with IgM anti-HBc. When present, anti-HBe helps validate the anti-HBc reactivity.
Negative
Negative
Negative
Never infected with HBV. Possibilities include another infectious agent, toxic injury to liver, disorder of immunity, hereditary disease of the liver, or disease of the biliary tract.
Negative
Positive
Negative
Vaccine-type response.

	Assay Results		
HBsAg	Anti-HBs	Anti-HBc	Interpretation

[1] Modified and reproduced, with permission, from Hollinger FB: Hepatitis B virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields et al (editors). Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

High levels of IgM-specific anti-HBc are frequently detected at the onset of clinical illness. Because this antibody is directed against the 27-nm internal core component of HBV, its appearance in the serum is indicative of viral replication. Antibody to HBsAg is first detected at a variable period after the disappearance of HBsAg. It is present low concentrations. Before HBsAg disappears, HBeAg is replaced by anti-HBe, signaling the start of resolution of the disease. Anti-HBe levels often are no longer detectable after 6 months.

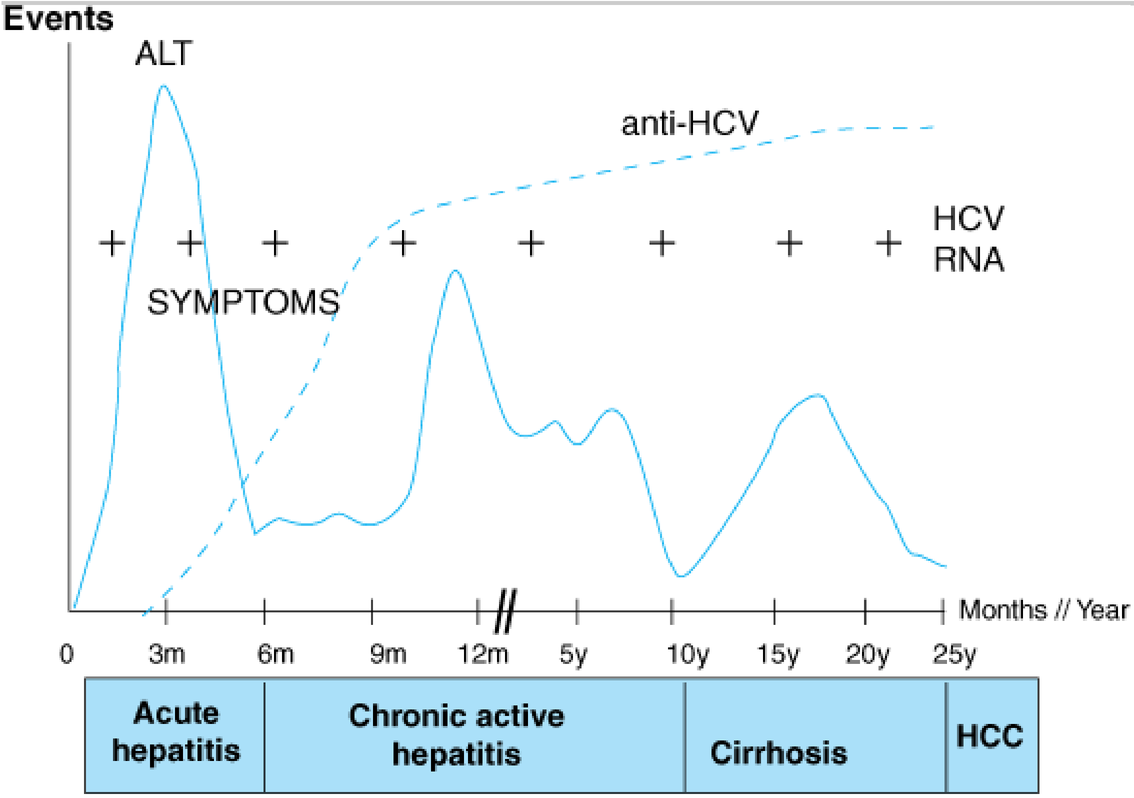
By definition, HBV chronic carriers are those in whom HBsAg persists for more than 6 months in the presence of HB or anti-HBe. HBsAg may persist for years after loss of HBeAg. In contrast to the high titers of IgM-specific anti-HBc observed in acute disease, low titers of IgM anti-HBc are found in the sera of most chronic HBsAg carriers. Small amounts of HBV DNA are usually detectable in the serum as long as HBsAg is present.

The most useful detection methods are ELISA for HBV antigens and antibodies and PCR for viral DNA.

HEPATITIS C

Clinical and serologic events associated with HCV infections are shown in Figure 359. Most primary infections are asymptomatic or clinically mild (2030% have jaundice, 1020% have only nonspecific symptoms such as anorexia, malaise, and abdominal pain). Serologic assays are available for diagnosis of HCV infection. Enzyme immunoassays (EIA) detect antibodies to HCV but do not distinguish between acute, chronic, or resolved infection (Table 357). Ant HCV antibodies can be detected in 5070% of patients at onset of symptoms, whereas in others antibody appearance delayed 36 weeks. Antibodies are directed against core, envelope, and NS3 and NS4 proteins and tend to be relativ low in titer. Nucleic acid-based assays (eg, RT-PCR) detect the presence of circulating HCV RNA and are useful for monitoring patients on antiviral therapy. Nucleic acid assays also are used to genotype HCV isolates.

Figure 359.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Clinical and serologic events associated with hepatitis C virus infection. ALT, alanine aminotransferase; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma.

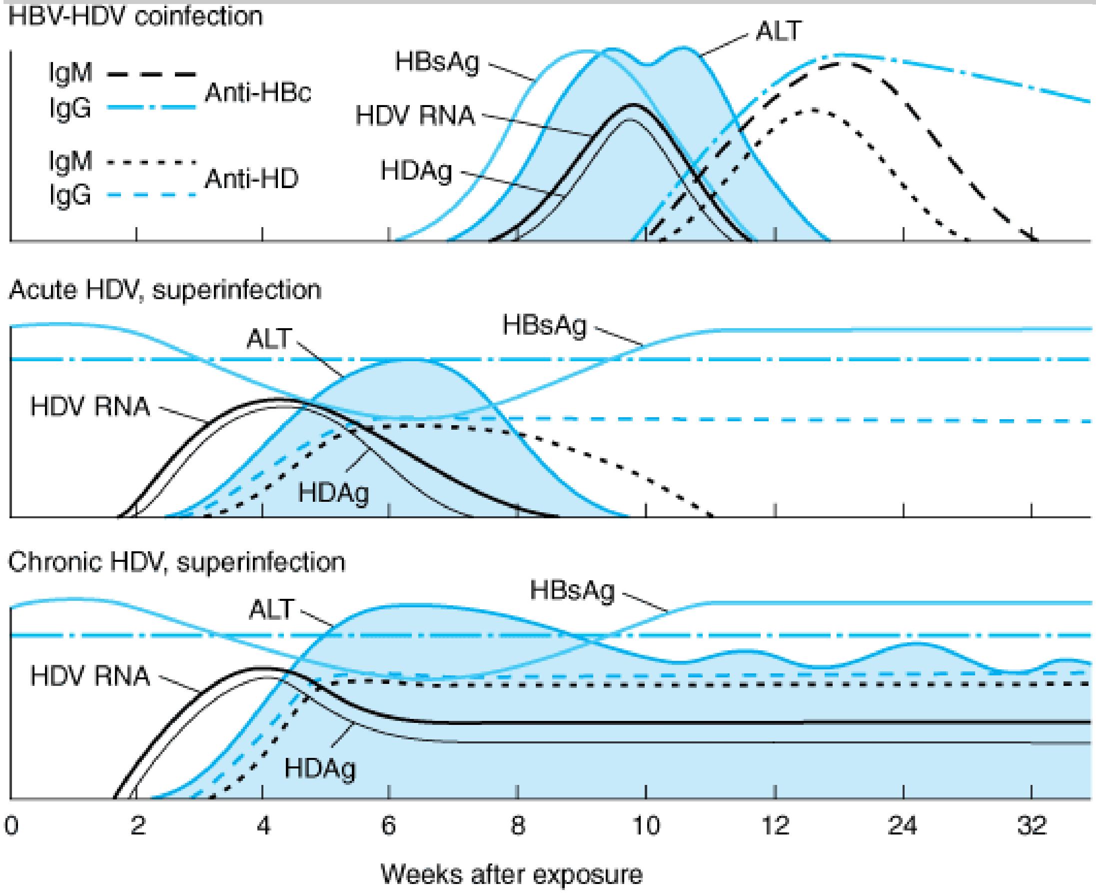
(Reproduced, with permission, from Garnier L, Inchauspé G, Trépo C: Hepatitis C virus. In: *Clinical Virology,* 2nd ed. Richman DD, Whitley RJ, Hayden FG [editors]. ASM Press, 2002.)

Occult HBV infections occur frequently (about 33%) in patients with chronic HCV liver disease. Occult infections are those in which the patients lack detectable HBsAg but HBV DNA can be identified in liver or serum samples. These unrecognized HBV infections may be clinically significant.

HEPATITIS D

Serologic patterns following HDV infection are shown in Figure 3510 and listed in Table 357. Because HDV is dependent on a coexistent HBV infection, acute type D infection will occur either as a simultaneous infection (coinfection) with HBV or as a superinfection of a person chronically infected with HBV. In the coinfection pattern, antibody to HDAg develops late in the acute phase of infection and may be of low titer. Assays for HDAg or HDV RN the serum or for IgM-specific anti-HDV are preferable. All markers of HDV replication disappear during convalescenc even the HDV antibodies may disappear within months to years. However, superinfection by HDV usually results in persistent HDV infection (over 70% of cases). High levels of both IgM and IgG anti-HD persist, as do levels of HDV RNA and HDAg. HDV superinfections may be associated with fulminant hepatitis.

Figure 3510.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Serologic patterns of type D hepatitis following coinfection or superinfection of person with HBV infection. Top: Coexistent acu hepatitis B and hepatitis D. Middle: Acute hepatitis D superimposed on a chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Bottom: Acute hepatitis D progressing to chronic hepatitis, superimposed on a chronic hepatitis B virus infection.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Purcell RH et al: Hepatitis. In: *Diagnostic Procedures for Viral, Rickettsial and Chlamydial Infections,* 6th ed. Schmidt NJ, Emmons RW [editors]. American Public Health Association, 1989.)

Virus-Host Interactions

Currently there is evidence for five hepatitis virusestypes A, B, C, D, and E. A single infection with any is believed tc confer homologous but not heterologous protection against reinfection. A possible exception may be HCV, where reinfection may occur.

Most cases of hepatitis type A presumably occur without jaundice during childhood, and by late adulthood there is a widespread resistance to reinfection. However, serologic studies in the United States and several Asian countries indicate that the incidence of infection may be declining as a result of improvements in sanitation commensurate wi a rise in the standard of living, coupled with expanded use of the vaccine in some countries. It has been estimated t as many as 6090% of young middle- to upper-income adults in the United States may be susceptible to type A hepatitis.

Infection with HBV of a specific subtype, eg, HBsAg/*adw* , appears to confer immunity to other HBsAg subtypes, probably because of their common group *a* specificity. The immunopathogenetic mechanisms that result in viral persistence and hepatocellular injury in type B hepatitis remain to be elucidated. As the virus is not cytopathic, it is believed that hepatocellular injury during acute disease represents a host immune attack against HBV-infected hepatocytes.

Host responses, both immunologic and genetic, have been proposed to account for the frequency of HBV chronicity those infected as infants. About 95% of newborns infected at birth become chronic carriers of virus, often for life (Table 356). This risk decreases steadily with time, so that the risk of infected adults becoming carriers decreases t 10%. Hepatocellular carcinoma is most likely to occur in adults who experienced HBV infection at a very early age a became carriers. Therefore, for vaccination to be maximally effective against the carrier state, cirrhosis, and hepatoma, it must be carried out during the first week of life.

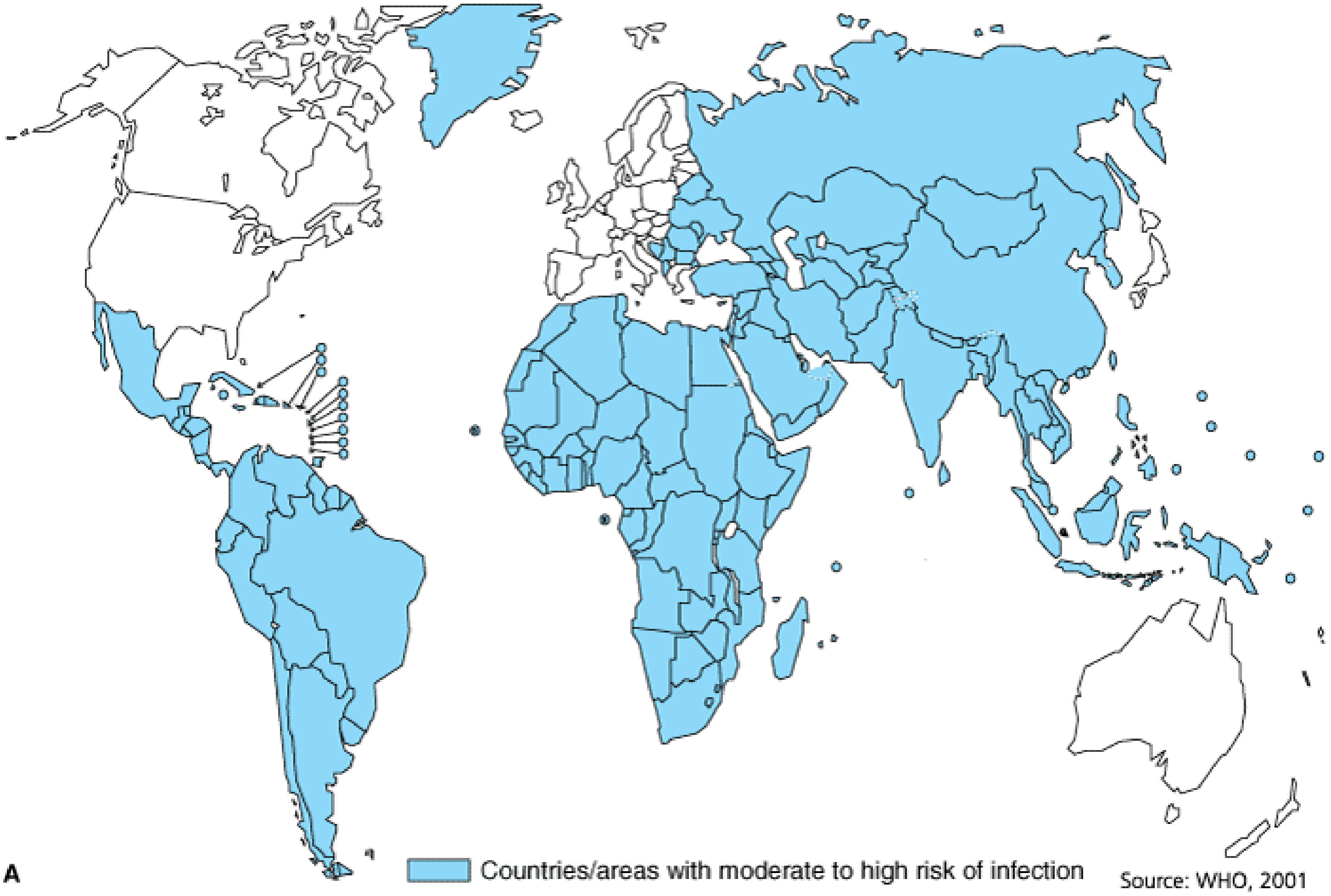
HCV genotypes 14 are the predominant types circulating in Western countries and display some differential characteristics. Genotype 1 is predominant in North America, Japan, and western Europe. It shows the poorest response to interferon therapy and may have a more deleterious effect on the progression of human immunodeficie virus (HIV) type 1 disease than other HCV genotypes. In contrast, HCV genotype 2 responds the best to interferon-based therapies. Genotype 3 shows the highest rate of spontaneous clearance, whereas genotype 4 seems to have highest frequency leading to chronic infection after acute infection.

Less is known about host immune responses to HCV. The majority of acute infections are asymptomatic or mild, and chronic infections usually progress slowly and insidiously. It appears that the immune response is slow to develop a relatively weak, reflecting the fact that HCV has particularly effective immune evasion mechanisms.

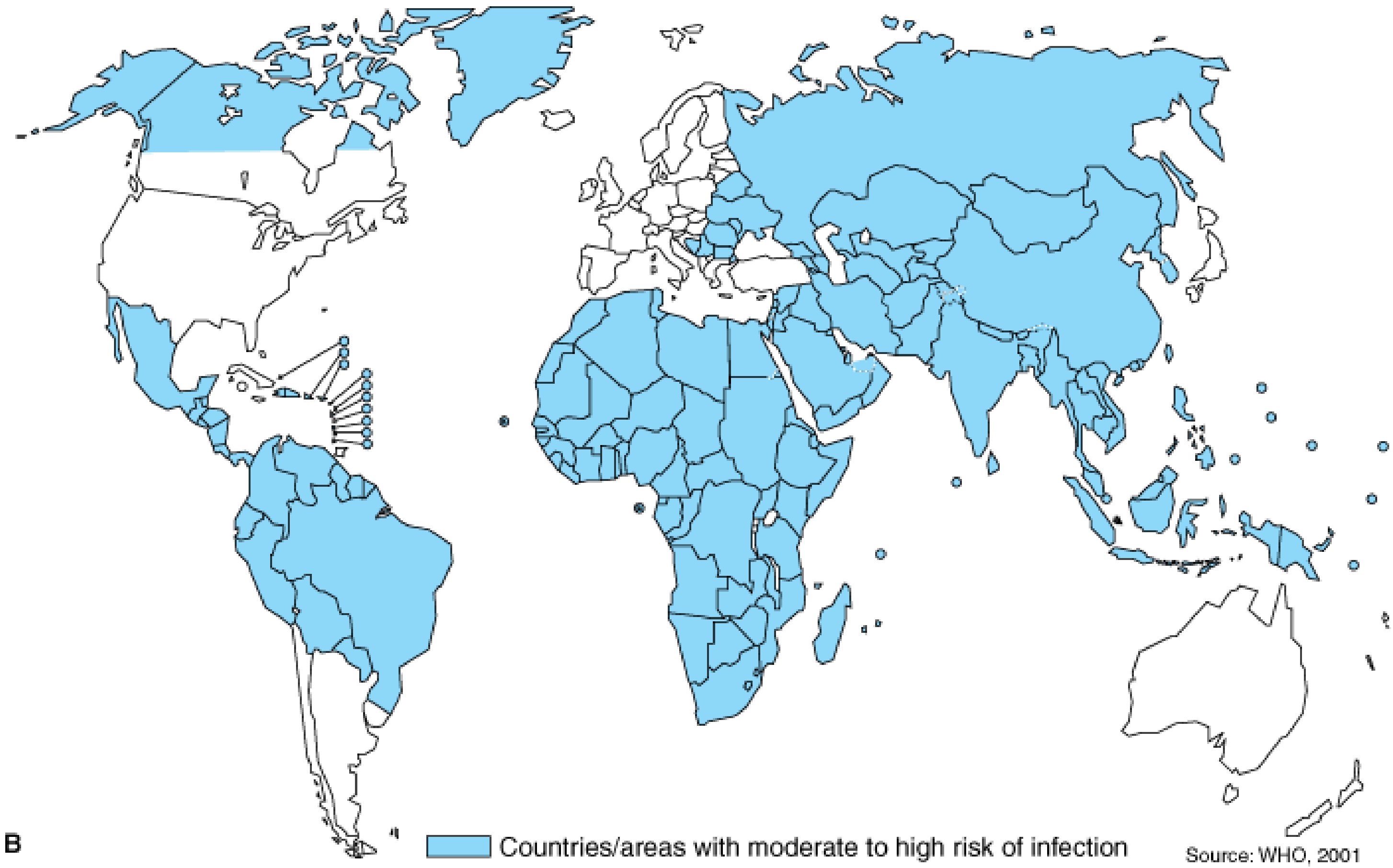
Epidemiology

The global distributions of hepatitis A, B, and C infections are shown in Figure 3511. There are marked differences i the epidemiologic features of these infections (Table 354).

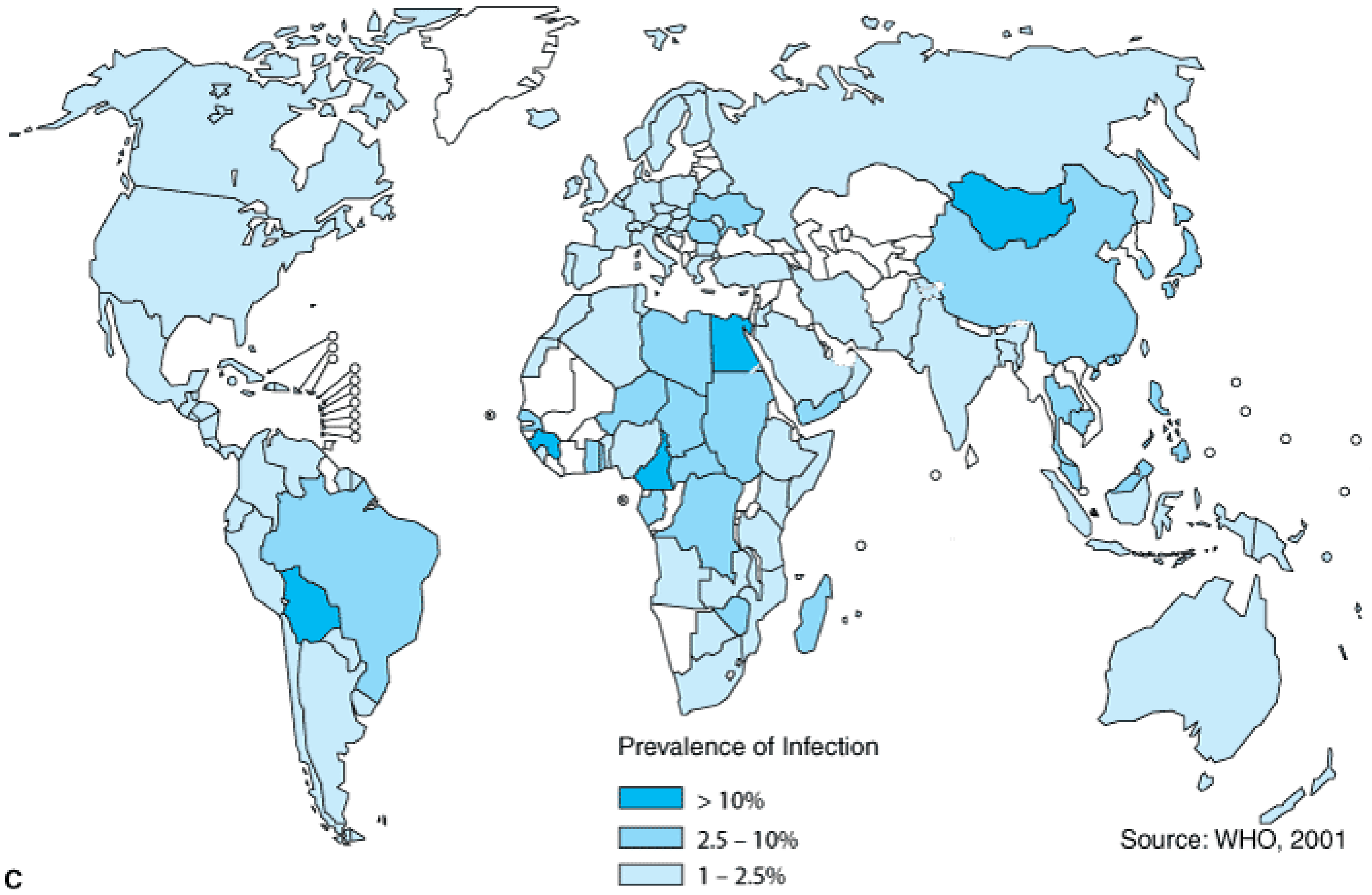
Figure 3511.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Global distribution of hepatitis viruses causing human disease in 2001. (A) Hepatitis A virus. (B) Hepatitis B virus. (C) Hepati C virus.

(Source, World Health Organization, 2001.)

The risk of these viruses being transmitted by transfusion today in the United States is markedly reduced as a resul improved screening tests and the establishment of volunteer donor populations. It was calculated in 1996 that the r of transmission of HBV by blood transfusion was 1:63,000 and for HCV 1:103,000.

HEPATITIS A

HAV is widespread throughout the world. Outbreaks of type A hepatitis are common in families and institutions, summer camps, day care centers, neonatal intensive care units, and among military troops. The most likely mode o transmission under these conditions is by the fecal-oral route through close personal contact. Stool specimens may infectious for up to 2 weeks before to 2 weeks after onset of jaundice.

Under crowded conditions and poor sanitation, HAV infections occur at an early age; most children in such circumstances become immune by age 10. Clinical illness is uncommon in infants and children; disease is most ofte manifest in children and adolescents, with the highest rates in those between 5 and 14 years of age. The ratio of anicteric to icteric cases in adults is about 1:3; in children, it may be as high as 12:1. However, fecal excretion of H antigen and RNA persists longer in the young than in adults.

Recurrent epidemics are a prominent feature. Sudden, explosive epidemics of type A hepatitis usually result from fe contamination of a single source (eg, drinking water, food, or milk). The consumption of raw oysters or improperly steamed clams obtained from water polluted with sewage has also resulted in several outbreaks of hepatitis. The largest outbreak of this type occurred in Shanghai in 1988, when over 300,000 cases of hepatitis A were attributed uncooked clams from polluted water. A multistate foodborne outbreak that was traced to frozen strawberries occurr in the United States in 1997.

Other identified sources of potential infection are nonhuman primates. There have been more than 35 outbreaks in which primates, usually chimpanzees, have infected humans in close personal contact with them.

HAV is seldom transmitted by the use of contaminated needles and syringes or through the administration of blood. Transfusion-associated hepatitis A is rare because the viremic stage of infection occurs during the prodromal phase and is of short duration, the titer of virus in the blood is low, and there is no carrier state. However, a 1996 report documented the transmission of HAV to hemophiliacs through clotting factor concentrates. There is little evidence fo HAV transmission by exposure to urine or nasopharyngeal secretions of infected patients. Hemodialysis plays no rol the spread of hepatitis A infections to either patients or staff.

In the United States in the pre-vaccine era, there were an estimated 271,000 infections per year. Since the advent hepatitis A vaccines, infection rates have declined sharply to an estimated 24,000 cases in 2004. Prior to the use of vaccine, the prevalence of antibodies to HAV was directly related to age: 10% for those under 10 years of age; 18 for those 2029 years of age; 49% for those 4049 years of age; and 75% for those over 70 years of age. There was higher prevalence in those from lower socioeconomic groups.

Groups who are at increased risk of acquiring hepatitis A are travelers to developing countries from developed countries, men who have sex with men, users of injection and noninjection drugs, persons with clotting factor disorders, and persons working with nonhuman primates. Individuals with chronic liver disease are at increased risk fulminant hepatitis if a hepatitis A infection occurs. These groups should be vaccinated.

HEPATITIS B

HBV is worldwide in distribution. Transmission modes and response to infection vary, depending on the age at time infection (Table 356). Most individuals infected as infants develop chronic infections. As adults they are subject to li disease and are at high risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma. There are more than 250 million carriers, of wh about 1 million live in the United States; 25% of carriers develop chronic active hepatitis. Worldwide, 1 million deat a year are attributed to HBV-related liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma.

There is no seasonal trend for HBV infection and no high predilection for any age group, although there are definite high-risk groups such as parenteral drug abusers, institutionalized persons, health care personnel, multiply transfus patients, organ transplant patients, hemodialysis patients and staff, highly promiscuous persons, and newborn infan born to mothers with hepatitis B. Since mandatory screening of blood donors for HBsAg was instituted, the number cases of transfusion-associated hepatitis has been dramatically reduced. People have been infected by improperly sterilized syringes, needles, or scalpels and even by tattooing or ear piercing. The estimated ratio of anicteric to icte infections is reported to be as high as 4:1.

Other modes of transmission of hepatitis B exist. HBsAg can be detected in saliva, nasopharyngeal washings, semen menstrual fluid, and vaginal secretions as well as in blood. Transmission from carriers to close contacts by the oral route or by sexual or other intimate exposure occurs. There is strong evidence of transmission from persons with subclinical cases and carriers of HBsAg to homosexual and heterosexual long-term partners. Transmission by the fe oral route has not been documented. Recalling that there may be more than 1 billion virions per milliliter of blood fr an HBeAg-positive carrier and that the virus is resistant to drying, it should be assumed that all bodily fluids from H infected patients may be infectious. Subclinical infections are common, and these unrecognized infections represent the principal hazard to hospital personnel.

Health care personnel (medical and dental surgeons, pathologists, other physicians, nurses, laboratory technicians, and blood bank personnel) have a higher incidence of hepatitis and prevalence of detectable HBsAg or anti-HBs tha those who have no occupational exposure to patients or blood products. The risk that these apparently healthy HBs carriers (especially medical and dental surgeons) represent to the patients under their care remains to be determin but is probably small.

Hepatitis B infections are common among patients and staff of hemodialysis units. As many as 50% of the renal dialysis patients who contract hepatitis B may become chronic carriers of HBsAg compared with 2% of the staff grou emphasizing differences in the host immune response. Family contacts are also at increased risk.

The incubation period of hepatitis B is 50180 days, with a mean between 60 and 90 days. It appears to vary with th dose of HBV administered and the route of administration, being prolonged in patients who receive a low dose of vir or who are infected by a nonpercutaneous route.

HEPATITIS C

Infections by HCV are extensive throughout the world. The World Health Organization estimated in 1997 that about 3% of the world population has been infected, with population subgroups in Africa having prevalence rates as high 10%. Other high-prevalence areas are found in South America and Asia. It is estimated that there are more than 17 million chronic carriers worldwide who are at risk of developing liver cirrhosis, liver cancer, or bothand that over 3 million of them are in the United States.

HCV is transmitted primarily through direct percutaneous exposures to blood, though in 1050% of cases the source HCV cannot be identified. In roughly decreasing order of prevalence of infection are injecting drug users (about 80% hemophiliacs treated with clotting factor products before 1987, recipients of transfusions from HCV-positive donors, chronic hemodialysis patients (10%), persons who engage in high-risk sexual practices, and health care workers (1 The virus can be transmitted from mother to infant, though not as frequently as for HBV. Estimates of mother-to-ch vertical transmission vary from 3% to 10%. Mothers with higher HCV viral loads or coinfection with HIV more frequently transmit HCV. No risk of transmission has been associated with breast feeding.

HCV was found in saliva from more than a third of patients with HCV and HIV coinfections. HCV has been transmitte by commercial intravenous immune globulin preparations, including an outbreak in the United States in 1994. The population of Egypt has a high prevalence of HCV (about 20%). Transmission of HCV has been linked to an attempt (from the 1950s to 1980s) to treat the parasitic disease schistosomiasis by therapy that involved multiple injections often with improperly sterilized or reused needles. HCV infection has been associated with tattooing and, in some countries, with folk medicine practices.

The average incubation period for HCV is 67 weeks. The average time from exposure to seroconversion is 89 weeks and about 90% of patients are anti-HCV-positive within 5 months.

HEPATITIS D (DELTA AGENT)

HDV is found throughout the world but with a nonuniform distribution. Its highest prevalence has been reported in

Italy, the Middle East, central Asia, West Africa, and South America. HDV infects all age groups. Persons who have received multiple transfusions, intravenous drug abusers, and their close contacts are at high risk.

The primary routes of transmission are believed to be similar to those of HBV, though HDV does not appear to be a sexually transmitted disease. Infection is dependent on HBV replication, as HBV provides an HBsAg envelope for HD The incubation period varies from 2 to 12 weeks, being shorter in HBV carriers who are superinfected with the agen than in susceptible persons who are simultaneously infected with both HBV and HDV. HDV has been transmitted perinatally, but fortunately it is not prevalent in regions of the world (such as Asia) where perinatal transmission of HBV occurs frequently.

Two epidemiologic patterns of delta infection have been identified. In Mediterranean countries, delta infection is endemic among persons with hepatitis B, and most infections are thought to be transmitted by intimate contact. In nonendemic areas, such as the United States and northern Europe, delta infection is confined to persons exposed frequently to blood and blood products, primarily drug addicts and hemophiliacs.

Delta hepatitis may occur in explosive outbreaks and affect entire localized pockets of hepatitis B carriers. Outbreak of severe, often fulminant and chronic delta hepatitis have occurred for decades in isolated populations in the Orino and Amazon basins of South America. In the United States, HDV has been found to participate in 2030% of cases o chronic hepatitis B, acute exacerbations of chronic hepatitis B, and fulminant hepatitis B, and 312% of blood donors with serum HBsAg have antibodies to HDV. Delta hepatitis is not a new disease, because globulin lots prepared fro plasma collected in the United States more than 40 years ago contain antibodies to HDV.

Treatment

Treatment of patients with hepatitis is supportive and directed at allowing hepatocellular damage to resolve and rep itself. Only HBV and HCV have specific treatments, and those are only partially effective.

Recombinant interferon-alfa is currently the therapy of proved benefit in the treatment of patients chronically infect with HBV or HCV. Not all who responded clinically and biochemically had histologic improvement; many relapsed aft cessation of treatment. Only about 35% of patients with chronic HBV infections have long-lasting remissions, and about 25% of those with chronic HCV infection have a sustained response.

Several antiviral drugs are being tested against chronic hepatitis infections. Lamivudine, a reverse transcriptase inhibitor (Table 306), reduces HBV DNA levels, but viral replication resumes in the majority of patients when treatm is stopped and resistant virus mutants are selected. Combination therapy of interferon-alfa and ribavirin against chronic hepatitis C gives a sustained response rate of up to 50%, though that therapy is less successful in patients with genotype 1. New antiviral drugs are under development for treatment of hepatitis C infections.

Orthotopic liver transplantation is a treatment for chronic hepatitis B and C end-stage liver damage. However, the ri of reinfection on the graft is at least 80% with HBV and 50% with HCV.

Prevention & Control

Viral vaccines and protective immune globulin preparations are available against HAV and HBV. Neither type of reag is currently available to prevent HCV infections.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS

Simple environmental procedures can limit the risk of infection to health care workers, laboratory personnel, and others. With this approach, all blood and body fluids and materials contaminated with them are treated as if they ar infectious for HIV, HBV, HCV, and other blood-borne pathogens. Exposures that might place workers at risk of infec include percutaneous injury (eg, needlestick) or contact of mucous membrane or nonintact skin (eg, chapped, cuts, dermatitis) with blood, tissue, or other body fluids that are potentially infectious. Methods are devised to prevent contact with such samples. Examples of specific precautions include the following: Gloves should be used when handling all potentially infectious materials; protective garments should be worn and removed before leaving the wo area; masks and eye protection should be worn whenever splashes or droplets from infectious material pose a risk; only disposable needles should be used; needles should be discarded directly into special containers without resheathing; work surfaces should be decontaminated using a bleach solution; and laboratory personnel should refra from mouth-pipetting, eating, drinking, and smoking in the work area. Metal objects and instruments can be disinfected by autoclaving or by exposure to ethylene oxide gas.

HEPATITIS A

Formalin-inactivated HAV vaccines made from cell culture-adapted virus were licensed in the United States in 1995. The vaccines are safe, effective, and recommended for use in persons over 1 year of age. Until all susceptible at-ris groups are immunized, prevention and control of hepatitis A still must emphasize interrupting the chain of transmiss and using passive immunization.

The appearance of hepatitis in camps or institutions is often an indication of poor sanitation and poor personal hygie Control measures are directed toward the prevention of fecal contamination of food, water, or other sources by the individual. Reasonable hygienesuch as hand washing, the use of disposable plates and eating utensils, and the use c 0.5% sodium hypochlorite (eg, 1:10 dilution of chlorine bleach) as a disinfectantis essential in preventing the sprea HAV during the acute phase of the illness.

Immune (gamma) globulin (IG) is prepared from large pools of normal adult plasma and confers passive protection about 90% of those exposed when given within 12 weeks after exposure to hepatitis A. Its prophylactic value decreases with time, and its administration more than 2 weeks after exposure or after onset of clinical symptoms is not indicated. In the doses generally prescribed, IG does not prevent infection but rather makes the infection mild o subclinical and permits active immunity to develop. HAV vaccine produces a more enduring immunity and should replace the use of IG.

HEPATITIS B

A vaccine for hepatitis B has been available since 1982. The initial vaccine was prepared by purifying HBsAg associa with the 22-nm particles from healthy HBsAg-positive carriers and treating the particles with virus-inactivating agen (formalin, urea, heat). Preparations containing intact 22-nm particles have been highly effective in reducing HBV infection. Although plasma-derived vaccines are still in use in certain countries, they have been replaced in the Unit States by recombinant DNA-derived vaccines. These vaccines consist of HBsAg produced by a recombinant DNA in yeast cells or in continuous mammalian cell lines. The HBsAg expressed in yeast forms particles 1530 nm in diamete with the morphologic characteristics of free surface antigen in plasma though the polypeptide antigen produced by recombinant yeast is not glycosylated. The vaccine formulated using this purified material has a potency similar to t of vaccine made from plasma-derived antigen.

Preexposure prophylaxis with a commercially available hepatitis B vaccine currently is recommended by the World Health Organization, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for all susceptible, at-risk groups. In the United States, HBV vaccine is recommended for all children as pa of their regular immunization schedule.

Hepatitis B vaccination is the most effective measure to prevent HBV and its consequences. A comprehensive public health strategy exists to eliminate HBV transmission in the United States. It involves universal vaccination of infants routine screening of all pregnant women for HBsAg, postexposure immunoprophylaxis of infants born to HBsAg-positive mothers, vaccination of children and adolescents not previously vaccinated, and vaccination of unvaccinate adults at increased risk for infection.

Immunosuppressed groups, such as hemodialysis patients or those receiving cancer chemotherapy or infected with HIV, respond to vaccination less well than healthy individuals.

Studies on passive immunization using specific hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) have shown a protective effect i is given soon after exposure. HBIG is not recommended for preexposure prophylaxis because the HBV vaccine is available and effective. Persons exposed to HBV percutaneously or by contamination of mucosal surfaces should immediately receive both HBIG and HBsAg vaccine administered simultaneously at different sites to provide immedi protection with passively acquired antibody followed by active immunity generated by the vaccine.

Immune globulin isolated from plasma by the cold ethanol fractionation method has not been documented to transm HBV, HAV, or HIV, though transmission of HCV by such a preparation occurred in the United States in 1994. Immun globulins prepared outside the United States by other methods have been implicated in outbreaks of hepatitis B and

Women who are HBV carriers or who acquire type B hepatitis while pregnant can transmit the disease to their infant The effectiveness of hepatitis vaccine and HBIG in preventing hepatitis B in infants born to HBV-positive mothers ha been substantiated. Reduction in the cost of vaccine for public health programs has made vaccination of newborns feasible in areas of high endemicity. The high cost of HBIG precludes its use in most countries.

Patients with acute type B hepatitis generally need not be isolated so long as blood and instrument precautions are stringently observed, both in the general patient care areas and in the laboratories. Because spouses and intimate contacts of persons with acute type B hepatitis are at risk of acquiring clinical type B hepatitis, they need to be informed about practices that might increase the risk of infection or transmission. There is no evidence that asymptomatic HBsAg-positive food handlers pose a health risk to the general public.

HEPATITIS C

There is no vaccine for hepatitis C although several candidate vaccines are undergoing tests. Control measures focu on prevention activities that reduce risks for contracting HCV. These include screening and testing blood, plasma, organ, tissue, and semen donors; virus inactivation of plasma-derived products; counseling of persons with high-ris drug or sexual practices; implementation of infection control practices in health care and other settings; and professional and public education.

HEPATITIS D

Delta hepatitis can be prevented by vaccinating HBV-susceptible persons with hepatitis B vaccine. However, vaccination does not protect hepatitis B carriers from superinfection by HDV.

REFERENCES

Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices: Prevention of hepatitis A through active or passive immunization. MMWR Morb Mortal Wk Rep 2006;55(RR-7).

Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices: A comprehensive immunization strategy to eliminate transmission of hepatitis B virus infection in the United States. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2005;54(RR-16).

Alter MJ, Kuhnert WL, Finelli L: Guidelines for laboratory testing and result reporting of antibody to hepatitis C virus. MMWR Recomm Rep 2003;52(RR-3):1.

Gerin JL, Casey JL, Purcell RH: Hepatitis delta virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 20

Hollinger FB, Emerson SU: Hepatitis A virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Hollinger FB, Liang TJ: Hepatitis B virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Major ME, Rehermann B, Feinstone SM: Hepatitis C viruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Recommendations for prevention and control of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection and HCV-related chronic disease. MMWR Morb Mortal Wk Rep 1998;47(RR-19).

Updated U.S. Public Health Service guidelines for the management of occupational exposures to HBV, HCV, and HIV and recommendation postexposure prophylaxis. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2001;50(RR-11).

Weinbaum C, Lyerla R, Margolis HS: Prevention and control of infections with hepatitis viruses in correctional settings. MMWR Recomm Re 2003;52(RR-1):1.

Weiss U: Insight: Hepatitis C. Nature 2005;436:929978.

PICORNAVIRUSES

Picornaviruses represent a very large virus family with respect to the number of members but one of the smallest in terms of virion size and genetic complexity. They include two major groups of human pathogens: enteroviruses and rhinoviruses. Enteroviruses are transient inhabitants of the human alimentary tract and may be isolated from the throat or lower intestine. Rhinoviruses are isolated chiefly from the nose and throat.

Many picornaviruses cause diseases in humans ranging from severe paralysis to aseptic meningitis, pleurodynia, myocarditis, vesicular and exanthematous skin lesions, mucocutaneous lesions, respiratory illnesses, undifferentiated febrile illness, conjunctivitis, and severe generalized disease of infants. However, subclinical infection is far more common than clinically manifest disease. Etiology is difficult to establish, as different viruses may produce the same syndrome; the same picornavirus may cause more than a single syndrome; and some clinical symptoms cannot be distinguished from those caused by other types of viruses. The most serious disease caused by any enterovirus is poliomyelitis.

A worldwide effort is now under way with the goal of total eradication of poliomyelitis.

PROPERTIES OF PICORNAVIRUSES

Important properties of picornaviruses are shown in Table 361.

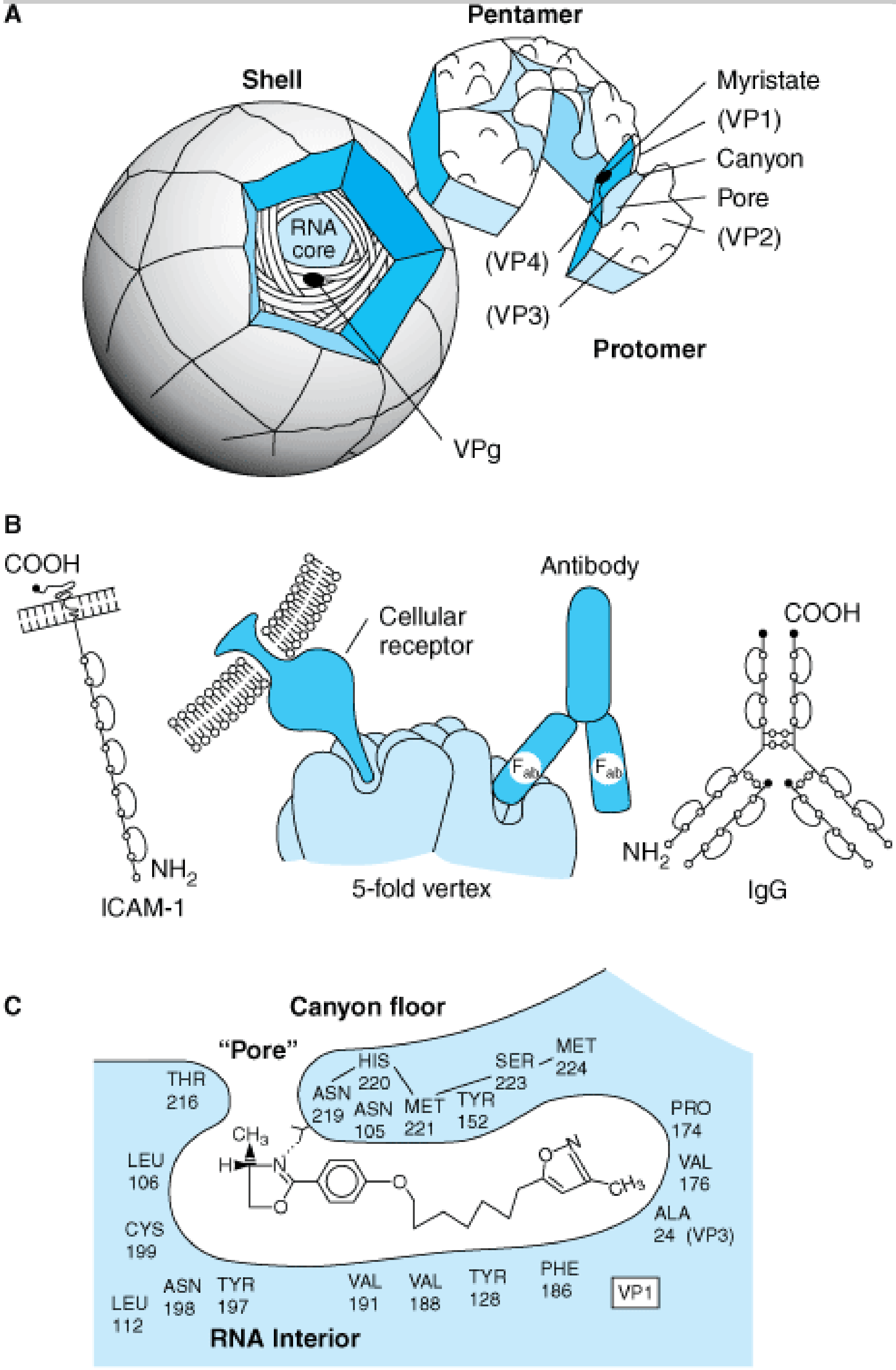
Table 361. Important Properties of Picornaviruses.

Virion: Icosahedral, 2830 nm in diameter, contains 60 subunits
Composition: RNA (30%), protein (70%)
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, positive-sense, 7.28.4 kb in size, MW 2.5 million, infectious, contains genome-linked protein (VPg)
Proteins: Four major polypeptides cleaved from a large precursor polyprotein. Surface capsid proteins VP1 and VP3 are major antibody-binding sites. VP4 is an internal protein.
Envelope: None
Replication: Cytoplasm
Outstanding characteristics: Family is made up of many enterovirus and rhinovirus types that infect humans and lower animals, causing various illnesses ranging from poliomyelitis to aseptic meningitis to the common cold.

Structure & Composition

The virion of enteroviruses and rhinoviruses consists of a capsid shell of 60 subunits, each of four proteins (VP1VP4) arranged with icosahedral symmetry around a genome made up of a single strand of positive-sense RNA (Figure 361). Parechoviruses are similar except that their capsids contain only three proteins, as VP0 does not get cleaved into VP2 and VP4.

Figure 361.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structure of a typical picornavirus. A: Exploded diagram showing internal location of the RNA genome surrounded by capsid composed of pentamers of proteins VP1, VP2, VP3, and VP4. Note the "canyon" depression surrounding the vertex of the pentamer. B: Binding of cellular receptor to the floor of the canyon. The major rhinovirus receptor (ICAM-1 molecule) has a diameter roughly half that of an IgG antibody molecule. C: Location of a drug binding site in VP1 of a rhinovirus. The antiviral drug shown, WIN 52084, prevents viral attachment by deforming part of the canyon floor.

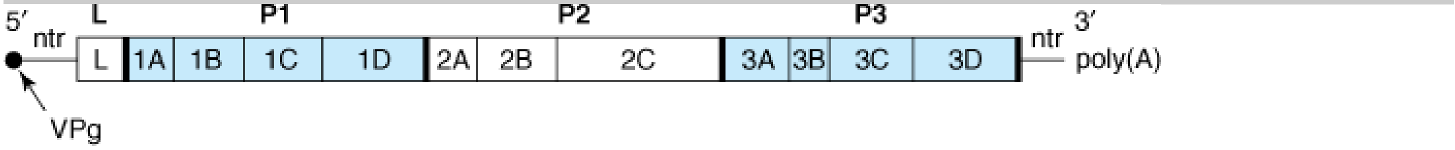
(Reproduced, with permission, from Rueckert RR: Picornaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

By means of x-ray diffraction studies, the molecular structures of poliovirus and rhinovirus have been determined. The three largest viral proteins, VP1VP3, have a very similar core structure, in which the peptide backbone of the protein loops back on itself to form a barrel of eight strands held together by hydrogen bonds (the beta barrel). The amino acid chain between the beta barrel and the amino and carboxyl terminal portions of the protein contains a series of loops. These loops include the main antigenic sites that are found on the surface of the virion and are involved in the neutralization of viral infection.

There is a prominent cleft or canyon around each pentameric vertex on the surface of the virus particle. The receptor binding site used to attach the virion to a host cell is thought to be located near the floor of the canyon. This location would presumably protect the crucial cell attachment site from structural variation influenced by antibody selection in hosts, as the canyon is too narrow to permit deep penetration of antibody molecules (Figure 361).

The genome RNA ranges in size from 7.2 kb (human rhinovirus) to 7.4 kb (poliovirus, hepatitis A virus) to 8.4 kb (aphthovirus). The organization of the genome is similar for all (Figure 362). The genome is polyadenylated at the 3' end and has a small viral coded protein (VPg) covalently bound to the 5' end. The positive-sense genomic RNA is infectious.

Figure 362.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Structure of picornavirus RNA and genetic organization of its polyprotein (open bar). The RNA is organized 5'-VPg-ntr-polyprotein-ntr-poly(A). ntr refers to nontranslated regions flanking the polyprotein. L specifies a leader protein found in cardioviruses and aphthoviruses but not in enteroviruses, human rhinoviruses, or human hepatitis virus A. P1, P2, and P3 refer to precursor proteins cleaved by virus-coded proteinases into four, three, and four end products, respectively.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Rueckert RR: Picornaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Enteroviruses are stable at acid pH (3.05.0) for 13 hours, whereas rhinoviruses are acid-labile. Enteroviruses and some rhinoviruses are stabilized by magnesium chloride against thermal inactivation. Enteroviruses have a buoyant density in cesium chloride of about 1.34 g/mL; human rhinoviruses, about 1.4 g/mL.

Classification

The Picornaviridae family contains nine genera, including *Enterovirus* (enteroviruses), *Rhinovirus* (rhinoviruses), *Hepatovirus* (hepatitis A virus), *Parechovirus* (parechoviruses), *Aphthovirus* (foot-and-mouth disease viruses), and *Cardiovirus* (cardioviruses). The first four groups contain important human pathogens.

Enteroviruses of human origin are subdivided into five species based mainly upon sequence analyses. The former taxonomy for these viruses included the following: (1) polioviruses, types 13; (2) coxsackieviruses of group A, types 124 (there is no type 23); (3) coxsackieviruses of group B, types 16; (4) echoviruses, types 133 (no types 10, 22, 23, or 28); and (5) enteroviruses, types 6878 (no type 72) (Table 362). Since 1969, new enterovirus types have been assigned enterovirus type numbers rather than being subclassified as coxsackieviruses or echoviruses. The vernacular names of the previously identified enteroviruses have been retained. The coxsackie A viruses fall primarily into human enterovirus species (HEV)-A and HEV-C, and coxsackie B viruses and echoviruses into HEV-B.

Table 362. Characteristics of Human Picornaviruses.

Serotypes
13
124
16
133
6878
13
> 100
Acid pH (pH 3.0)
Stable
Stable
Stable
Stable
Stable
Stable
Labile
Density (g/mL)
1.34
1.34
1.34
1.34
1.34
1.4
Optimal temperature for growth
37 C
37 C
37 C
37 C
37 C
37 C
33 C
Common sites of isolation from humans
Nose
0

0
0
0
0
0
+
Throat
+
+
+
+
+
+
Lower intestine
+
+
+
+
+
+
0
Infect newborn mice[5]

0
+
+
0
0

	Enteroviruses						
		Coxsackie					
Property	Polio	A[1]	B	Echo[1]	Entero[2]	Parechoviruses[3]	Rhinoviruses[4]

[1] Because of reclassifications there is no coxsackievirus A23, echovirus type 10, 22, 23, or 28, or enterovirus type 72.

[2] Since 1969, new enteroviruses have been assigned a number rather than being subclassified as coxsackieviruses or echoviruses.

[3] Parechoviruses 1 and 2 were previously classified as echovirus types 22 and 23.

[4] Rhinovirus 87 is considered to be the same as enterovirus 68.

[5] Some variability exists in this property.

Enteroviruses also exist in many animals, including cattle, pigs, monkeys, and mice.

Human rhinoviruses include more than 100 antigenic types. Rhinoviruses of other host species include those of horses and cattle.

Hepatitis A virus was originally classified as enterovirus type 72 but is now assigned to a separate genus. It is described in Chapter 35.

Parechoviruses, previously classified as echoviruses 22 and 23, were found to differ significantly from the enteroviruses in both biologic properties and molecular characteristics and were placed into a new genus *(Parechovirus).*

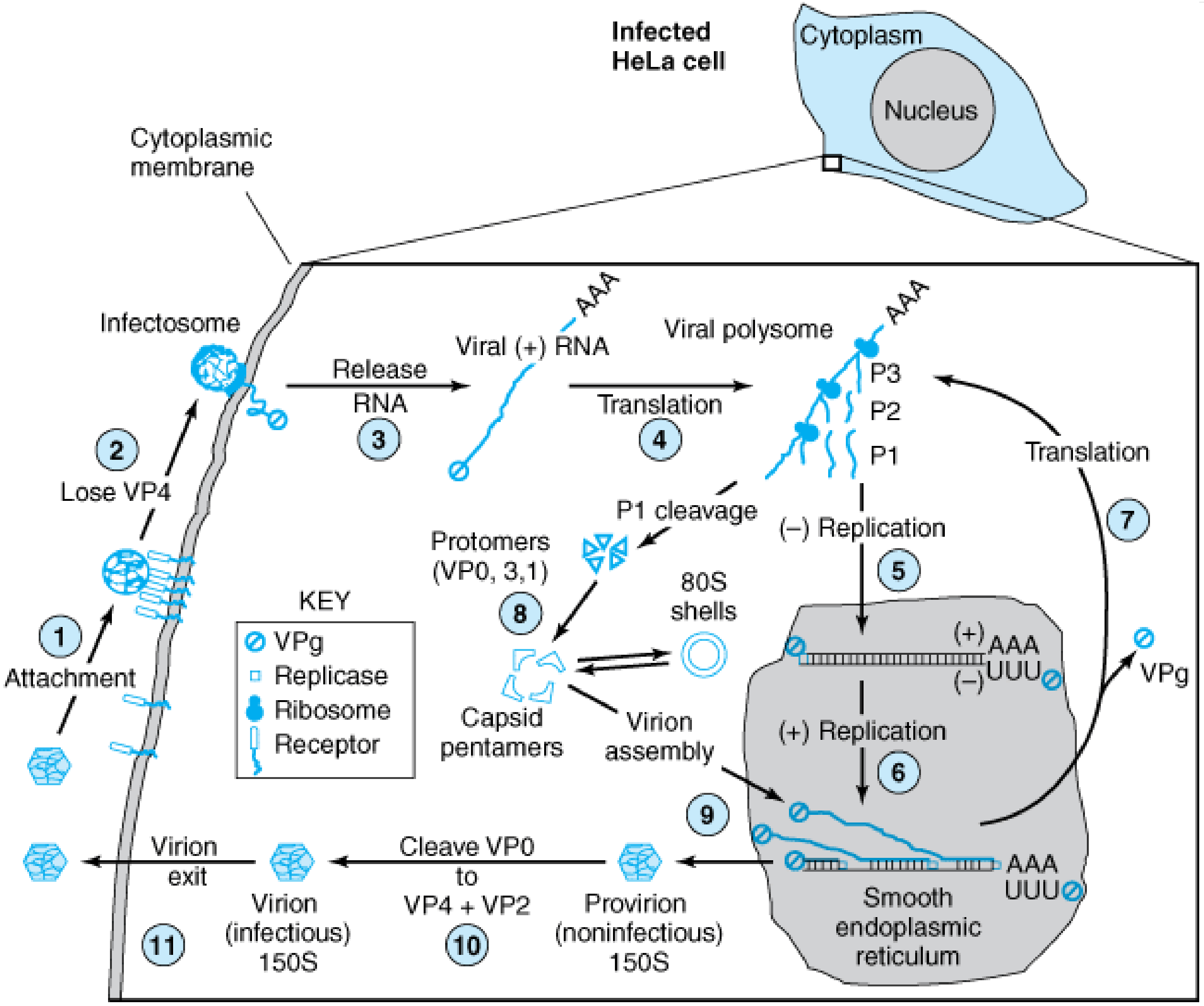
Other picornaviruses are foot-and-mouth disease virus of cattle *(Aphthovirus)* and encephalomyocarditis virus of rodents *(Cardiovirus).*

The host range of picornaviruses varies greatly from one type to the next and even among strains of the same type. Many enteroviruses (polioviruses, echoviruses, some coxsackieviruses) can be grown at 37 C in human and monkey cells; most rhinovirus strains can be recovered only in human cells at 33 C. Coxsackieviruses are pathogenic for newborn mice.

Picornavirus Replication

The picornavirus replication cycle occurs in the cytoplasm of cells (Figure 363). First, the virion attaches to a specific receptor in the plasma membrane. The receptors for poliovirus and human rhinovirus are members of the immunoglobulin gene superfamily, which includes antibodies and some cell surface adhesion molecules. In contrast, echoviruses recognize a member of the integrin adhesion superfamily. Not all rhinoviruses or echoviruses use the same cellular receptor. Receptor binding triggers a conformational change in the virion which results in release of the viral RNA into the cell cytosol. VPg is removed from the viral RNA as it associates with ribosomes. Translation occurs via a cap-independent mechanism, using the internal ribosome entry site (IRES) downstream from the 5' end of the viral genome. This bypasses the need for intact cellular initiation factor complex (eIF4F), required by many capped cellular mRNAs. eIF4 is often cleaved by a viral protease, leading to shut-off of host protein synthesis and preferential translation of viral RNAs.

Figure 363.



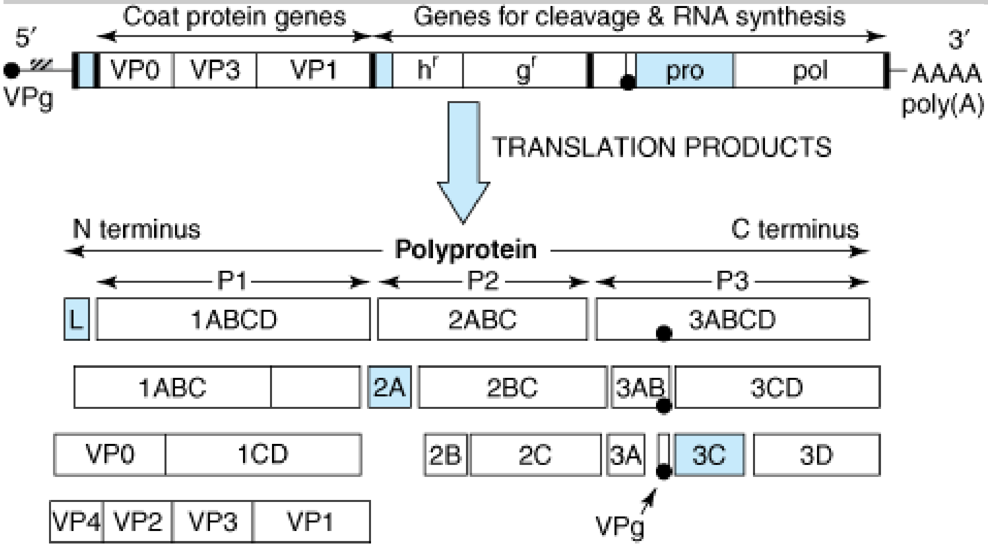
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Overview of the picornavirus infection cycle.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Rueckert RR: Picornaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

The infecting viral RNA is translated into a polyprotein that contains both coat proteins and essential replication proteins. This polyprotein is rapidly cleaved into fragments by proteinases encoded in the polyprotein (Figure 364). Synthesis of new viral RNA cannot begin until the virus-coded replication proteins, including an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, are produced. The infecting viral RNA strand is copied, and that complementary strand serves as template for the synthesis of new plus strands. Many plus strands are generated from each minus-strand template. Some new plus strands are recycled as templates to amplify the pool of progeny RNA; many plus strands get packaged into virions.

Figure 364.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Organization and expression of the picornavirus genome. The striped bar over the 5'-nontranslated region indicates the presence of a polycytidylic acid tract found in cardioviruses and aphthoviruses. Synthesis of the protein is from left (N terminus) to right (C terminus). Growth functions, ie, proteins needed for RNA synthesis and proteinases required to cleave the polyprotein, are encoded downstream from the capsid protein. Cleavage of the polyprotein is accomplished by three virus-coded proteinases: the M or maturation proteinase, the early 2A proteinase, and the 3C proteinase. The maturation cleavage (VP0 → VP4 + VP2) occurs only after the RNA has been packaged in the protein shell. Protein 2A performs early cleavages of the polyprotein, and all other cleavages are performed by proteinase 3C or a precursor form, 3CD.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Rueckert RR: Picornaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Maturation involves several cleavage events. Coat precursor protein P1 (Figure 364) is cleaved to form aggregates of VP0, VP3, and VP1. When an adequate concentration is reached, these "protomers" assemble into pentamers that package plus-stranded VPg-RNA to form "provirions." The provirions are not infectious until a final cleavage changes VP0 to VP4 and VP2. The mature virus particles are released when the host cell disintegrates. The multiplication cycle for most picornaviruses takes 510 hours.

ENTEROVIRUS GROUP

POLIOVIRUSES

Poliomyelitis is an acute infectious disease that in its serious form affects the central nervous system. The destruction of motor neurons in the spinal cord results in flaccid paralysis. However, most poliovirus infections are subclinical.

Poliovirus has served as a model picornavirus in many laboratory studies of the molecular biology of picornavirus replication.

Properties of the Virus

GENERAL PROPERTIES

Poliovirus particles are typical enteroviruses (see above). They are inactivated when heated at 55 C for 30 minutes, but Mg^{2+} , 1 mol/L, prevents this inactivation. Whereas purified poliovirus is inactivated by a chlorine concentration of 0.1 ppm, much higher concentrations of chlorine are required to disinfect sewage containing virus in fecal suspensions and in the presence of other organic matter. Polioviruses are not affected by ether or sodium deoxycholate.

ANIMAL SUSCEPTIBILITY AND GROWTH OF VIRUS

Polioviruses have a very restricted host range. Most strains will infect monkeys when inoculated directly into the brain or spinal cord. Chimpanzees and cynomolgus monkeys can also be infected by the oral route; in chimpanzees, the infection is usually asymptomatic and the animals become intestinal carriers of the virus.

Most strains can be grown in primary or continuous cell line cultures derived from a variety of human tissues or from monkey kidney, testis, or muscle but not from tissues of lower animals.

Poliovirus requires a primate-specific membrane receptor for infection, and the absence of this receptor on the surface of nonprimate cells makes them virus-resistant. This restriction can be overcome by transfection of infectious poliovirus RNA into resistant cells. Once inside the cell, poliovirus replicates normally (but only for a single round as surrounding cells cannot be infected by progeny virus). Introduction of the viral receptor gene also converts resistant cells to susceptible cells. Transgenic mice harboring the primate receptor gene have been developed; they are susceptible to human polioviruses.

ANTIGENIC PROPERTIES

There are three antigenic types of polioviruses.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The mouth is the portal of entry of the virus, and primary multiplication takes place in the oropharynx or intestine. The virus is regularly present in the throat and in the stools before the onset of illness. One week after infection there is little virus in the throat, but virus continues to be excreted in the stools for several weeks even though high antibody levels are present in the blood.

The virus may be found in the blood of patients with nonparalytic poliomyelitis and in orally infected monkeys in the preparalytic phase of the disease. Antibodies to the virus appear early in the disease, usually before paralysis occurs.

It is believed that the virus first multiplies in the tonsils, the lymph nodes of the neck, Peyer's patches, and the small intestine. The central nervous system may then be invaded by way of the circulating blood.

Poliovirus can spread along axons of peripheral nerves to the central nervous system, where it continues to progress along the fibers of the lower motor neurons to increasingly involve the spinal cord or the brain. Poliovirus invades certain types of nerve cells, and in the process of its intracellular multiplication it may damage or completely destroy these cells.

Poliovirus does not multiply in muscle in vivo. The changes that occur in peripheral nerves and voluntary muscles are secondary to the destruction of nerve cells. Some cells that lose their function may recover completely. Inflammation occurs secondary to the attack on the nerve cells.

In addition to pathologic changes in the nervous system, there may be myocarditis, lymphatic hyperplasia, and ulceration of Peyer's patches.

Clinical Findings

When an individual susceptible to infection is exposed to the virus, the response ranges from inapparent infection without symptoms, to a mild febrile illness, to severe and permanent paralysis. Most infections are subclinical; only about 1% of infections result in clinical illness.

The incubation period is usually 714 days, but it may range from 3 days to 35 days.

MILD DISEASE

This is the most common form of disease. The patient has only a minor illness, characterized by fever, malaise, drowsiness, headache, nausea, vomiting, constipation, and sore throat in various combinations. Recovery occurs in a few days.

NONPARALYTIC POLIOMYELITIS (ASEPTIC MENINGITIS)

In addition to the symptoms and signs listed in the preceding paragraph, the patient with the nonparalytic form has stiffness and pain in the back and neck. The disease lasts 210 days, and recovery is rapid and complete. Poliovirus is only one of many viruses that produce aseptic meningitis. In a small percentage of cases, the disease advances to paralysis.

PARALYTIC POLIOMYELITIS

The predominating complaint is flaccid paralysis resulting from lower motor neuron damage. However, incoordination secondary to brain stem invasion and painful spasms of nonparalyzed muscles may also occur. The amount of damage varies greatly. Maximal recovery usually occurs within 6 months, with residual paralysis lasting much longer.

PROGRESSIVE POSTPOLIOMYELITIS MUSCLE ATROPHY

A recrudescence of paralysis and muscle wasting has been observed in individuals decades after their experience with paralytic poliomyelitis. Although progressive postpoliomyelitis muscle atrophy is rare, it is a specific syndrome. It does not appear to be a consequence of persistent infection but rather a result of physiologic and aging changes in paralytic patients already burdened by loss of neuromuscular functions.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The virus may be recovered from throat swabs taken soon after onset of illness and from rectal swabs or stool samples collected over long periods. No permanent carriers have been identified among immunocompetent individuals, but long-term excretion of poliovirus has been observed in some immunodeficient persons. Poliovirus is uncommonly recovered from the cerebrospinal fluidunlike some coxsackieviruses and echoviruses.

Specimens should be kept frozen during transit to the laboratory. Cultures of human or monkey cells are inoculated, incubated, and observed. Cytopathogenic effects appear in 36 days. An isolated virus is identified and typed by neutralization with specific antiserum. Virus can also be identified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays.

Paired serum specimens are required to show a rise in antibody titer during the course of the disease. Only first infection with poliovirus produces strictly type-specific responses. Subsequent infections with heterotypic polioviruses induce antibodies against a group antigen shared by all three types.

Immunity

Immunity is permanent to the virus type causing the infection and is predominantly antibody mediated. There may be a low degree of heterotypic resistance induced by infection, especially between type 1 and type 2 polioviruses.

Passive immunity is transferred from mother to offspring. The maternal antibodies gradually disappear during the first 6 months of life. Passively administered antibody lasts only 35 weeks.

Virus-neutralizing antibody forms soon after exposure to the virus, often before the onset of illness, and apparently persists for life. Its formation early in the disease reflects the fact that viral multiplication occurs in the body before the invasion of the nervous system. As the virus in the brain and spinal cord is not influenced by high titers of antibodies in the blood, immunization is of value only if it precedes the onset of symptoms referable to the nervous system.

The VP1 surface protein of poliovirus contains several virus-neutralizing epitopes, each of which may contain fewer than ten amino acids. Each epitope is capable of inducing virus-neutralizing antibodies.

Global Eradication

A major campaign was launched by the World Health Organization in 1988 to eradicate poliovirus from the world as was done for smallpox virus. There were an estimated 350,000 cases of polio worldwide in 1988. The Americas were certified as free from wild poliovirus in 1994, the Western Pacific Region in 2000, and Europe in 2002. Progress is being made globally, but several thousand cases of polio still occur each year, principally in Africa and the Indian subcontinent.

In 2003, only six countries remained polio-endemic; however, in 20042005 wild poliovirus spread into a number of polio-free countries, primarily because vaccination programs had been discontinued.

Epidemiology

Poliomyelitis has had three epidemiologic phases: endemic, epidemic, and the vaccine era. The first two reflect prevaccine patterns. The generally accepted explanation is that improved systems of hygiene and sanitation in cooler climates promoted the transition from endemic to epidemic paralytic disease in those societies.

Before global eradication efforts began, poliomyelitis occurred worldwideyear-round in the tropics and during summer and fall in the temperate zones. Winter outbreaks are rare.

The disease occurs in all age groups, but children are usually more susceptible than adults because of the acquired immunity of the adult population. In developing areas, where living conditions favor the wide dissemination of virus, poliomyelitis is a disease of infancy and early childhood ("infantile paralysis"). In developed countries, before the advent of vaccination, the age distribution shifted so that most patients were over age 5 and 25% were over age 15 years. The case fatality rate is variable. It is highest in the oldest patients and may reach 510%.

Humans are the only known reservoir of infection. Under crowded conditions of poor hygiene and sanitation in warm areas, where almost all children become immune early in life, polioviruses maintain themselves by continuously infecting a small part of the population. In temperate zones with high levels of hygiene, epidemics have been followed by periods of little spread of virus until sufficient numbers of susceptible children have grown up to provide a pool for transmission in the area. Virus can be recovered from pharynx and intestine of patients and healthy carriers. The prevalence of infection is highest among household contacts. When the first case is recognized in a family, all susceptibles in the family are already infectedthe result of rapid dissemination of virus.

In temperate climates, infection with enteroviruses, including poliovirus, occurs mainly during the summer. Virus is present in sewage during periods of high prevalence and can serve as a source of contamination of water used for drinking, bathing, or irrigation. There is a direct correlation between poor hygiene, sanitation, and crowding and the acquisition of infection and antibodies at an early age.

Prevention & Control

Both live-virus and killed-virus vaccines are available. Formalinized vaccine (Salk) is prepared from virus grown in monkey kidney cultures. A course of at least four inoculations over a period of 12 years has been recommended in the primary series. Periodic booster immunizations have been necessary to maintain immunity. Killed-virus vaccine induces humoral antibodies but does not induce local intestinal immunity so that virus is still able to multiply in the gut. Oral vaccines contain live attenuated virus grown in primary monkey or human diploid cell cultures. The vaccine can be stabilized by magnesium chloride so that it can be kept without losing potency for a year at 4 C and for weeks at moderate room temperature (about 25 C). Nonstabilized vaccine must be kept frozen until used.

The live poliovaccine infects, multiplies, and thus immunizes. In the process, infectious progeny of the vaccine virus are disseminated in the community. The vaccine produces not only IgM and IgG antibodies in the blood but also secretory IgA antibodies in the intestine, which then becomes resistant to reinfection (see Figure 309).

Both killed-virus and live-virus vaccines induce antibodies and protect the central nervous system from subsequent invasion by wild virus. However, the gut develops a far greater degree of resistance after administration of live-virus vaccine.

A potential limiting factor for oral vaccine is interference. If the alimentary tract of a child is infected with another enterovirus at the time the vaccine is given, the establishment of polio infection and immunity may be blocked. This may be an important problem in areasparticularly in tropical regionswhere enterovirus infections are common.

The vaccine virusesparticularly types 2 and 3may mutate in the course of their multiplication in vaccinated children. However, only extremely rare cases of paralytic poliomyelitis have occurred in recipients of oral poliovaccine or their close contacts (no more than one vaccine-associated case for every two million persons vaccinated).

Trivalent oral poliovaccine was generally used in the United States. However, in 2000 the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices recommended a switch to the use of only inactivated poliovaccine (four doses) for children in the United States. The change was made because of the reduced risk for wild virus-associated disease resulting from continuing progress in global eradication of poliovirus. This schedule will reduce the incidence of vaccine-associated disease while maintaining individual and population immunity against polioviruses.

Once global eradication is achieved, the use of oral poliovaccine will cease. Continuation of its use could lead to the re-emergence of polio due to mutation and increased transmissibility and neurovirulence of vaccine virus.

Pregnancy is neither an indication for nor a contraindication to required immunization. Live-virus vaccine should not be administered to immunodeficient or immunosuppressed individuals or their household contacts. Only killed-virus (Salk) vaccine is to be used in those cases.

There are no antiviral drugs for treatment of poliovirus infection. Quarantine of patients or intimate contacts is ineffective in controlling the spread of the disease. This is understandable in view of the large number of inapparent infections that occur. Immune globulin can provide protection for a few weeks against the paralytic disease but does not prevent subclinical infection. Immune globulin is effective only if given shortly before infection; it is of no value after clinical symptoms develop.

Before the beginning of vaccination campaigns in the United States, there were about 21,000 cases of paralytic poliomyelitis per year.

COXSACKIEVIRUSES

Coxsackieviruses, a large subgroup of the enteroviruses, are divided into two groups, A and B, having different pathogenic potentials for mice. They produce a variety of illnesses in humans, including aseptic meningitis and respiratory and undifferentiated febrile illnesses. Herpangina (vesicular pharyngitis), hand-foot-and-mouth disease, and acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis are caused by certain coxsackievirus group A serotypes; pleurodynia (epidemic myalgia), myocarditis, pericarditis, and severe generalized disease of infants are caused by some group B coxsackieviruses. In addition to these, a number of group A and B serotypes can give rise to meningoencephalitis and paralysis. Generally, paralysis produced by nonpolio enteroviruses is incomplete and reversible. Coxsackie B viruses are the most commonly identified causative agents of viral heart disease in humans (Table 363). The coxsackieviruses tend to be more pathogenic than the echoviruses. Some of the more recent isolates of enteroviruses exhibit properties similar to the coxsackieviruses.

Table 363. Human Enteroviruses and Commonly Associated Clinical Syndromes.[1]

Neurologic
Aseptic meningitis
13
Many
16
Many
71
1
Paralysis
13
7, 9
25
2, 4, 6, 9, 11, 30
70, 71
3
Encephalitis
2, 57, 9
15
2, 6, 9, 19
70, 71
Skin and mucosa
Herpangina
26, 8, 10
71
Hand-foot-and-mouth disease
5, 10, 16
71
Exanthems
Many
5
2, 4, 6, 9, 11, 16, 18
Cardiac and muscular
Pleurodynia (epidemic myalgia)
15
1, 6, 9
Myocarditis, pericarditis
15
1, 6, 9, 19

1
Ocular
Acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis
24
70
Respiratory
Colds
21, 24
1, 3, 4, 5
4, 9, 11, 20, 25
1
Pneumonia
4, 5
68
1
Pneumonitis of infants
9, 16
Pulmonary edema
71
Gastrointestinal
Diarrhea
18, 2022, 24[2]

Many[2]

1
Hepatitis
4, 9
5
4, 9
Other
Undifferentiated febrile illness
13
16
Generalized disease of infants
15
11
Diabetes mellitus
3, 4

		Coxsackievirus				
Syndrome	Poliovirus Types 13	Group A Types 124	Group B Types 16	Echovirus Types 133	Enterovirus Types 6871	Parechovirus Types 13

---

[1] Examples are not all-inclusive. Other enterovirus types may be associated with a given disease.

[2] Causality not established.

Properties of the Virus

Coxsackieviruses are highly infective for newborn mice, in contrast to most other human enteroviruses. Certain strains (B16, A7, 9, 16, and 24) also grow in monkey kidney cell culture. Some group A strains grow in human amnion and human embryonic lung fibroblast cells. Type A14 produces poliomyelitis-like lesions in adult mice and in monkeys, but only myositis in suckling mice. Type A7 strains produce paralysis and severe central nervous system lesions in monkeys. Group A viruses produce widespread myositis in the skeletal muscles of newborn mice, resulting in flaccid paralysis without other observable lesions. The genetic makeup of inbred strains of mice determines their susceptibility to coxsackie B viruses.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Virus has been recovered from the blood in the early stages of natural infection in humans. Virus is also found in the throat for a few days early in the infection and in the stools for up to 56 weeks. Virus distribution is similar to that of the other enteroviruses.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period of coxsackievirus infection ranges from 2 to 9 days. The clinical manifestations of infection with various coxsackieviruses are diverse and may present as distinct disease entities (Table 363). They range from mild febrile illness to central nervous system, skin, cardiac, and respiratory diseases. The examples shown are not all-inclusive; different serotypes may be associated with a particular outbreak.

Aseptic meningitis is caused by all types of group B coxsackieviruses and by many group A coxsackieviruses, most commonly A7 and A9. Fever, malaise, headache, nausea, and abdominal pain are common early symptoms. The disease sometimes progresses to mild muscle weakness suggestive of paralytic poliomyelitis. Patients almost always recover completely from nonpoliovirus paresis.

Herpangina is a severe febrile pharyngitis that is caused by certain group A viruses. Despite its name, it has nothing to do with herpesviruses. There is an abrupt onset of fever and sore throat with discrete vesicles on the posterior half of the palate, pharynx, tonsils, or tongue. The illness is self-limited and most frequent in small children.

Hand-foot-and-mouth disease is characterized by oral and pharyngeal ulcerations and a vesicular rash of the palms and soles that may spread to the arms and legs. Vesicles heal without crusting, which clinically differentiates them from the vesicles of herpesviruses and poxviruses. This disease has been associated particularly with coxsackievirus A16. Virus may be recovered not only from the stool and pharyngeal secretions but also from vesicular fluid. It is not to be confused with foot-and-mouth disease of cattle, caused by an unrelated picornavirus that does not infect humans.

Pleurodynia (also known as epidemic myalgia) is caused by group B viruses. Fever and stabbing chest pain are usually abrupt in onset but are sometimes preceded by malaise, headache, and anorexia. The chest pain may last from 2 days to 2 weeks. Abdominal pain occurs in approximately half of cases, and in children this may be the chief complaint. The illness is self-limited and recovery is complete, though relapses are common.

Myocarditis is a serious disease. It is an acute inflammation of the heart or its covering membranes (pericarditis). Coxsackievirus B infections are a cause of primary myocardial disease in adults as well as children. About 5% of all symptomatic coxsackievirus infections induce heart disease. Infections may be fatal in neonates or may cause permanent heart damage at any age. Persistent viral infections of heart muscle may occur, sustaining chronic inflammation.

Enteroviruses are estimated to cause 1520% of respiratory tract infections, especially in the summer and fall. A number of coxsackieviruses have been associated with common colds and with undifferentiated febrile illnesses.

Generalized disease of infants is an extremely serious disease in which the infant is overwhelmed by simultaneous viral infections of multiple organs, including heart, liver, and brain. The clinical course may be rapidly fatal, or the patient may recover completely. The disease is caused by group B coxsackieviruses. In severe cases, myocarditis or pericarditis can occur within the first 8 days of life; it may be preceded by a brief episode of diarrhea and anorexia. The disease may sometimes be acquired transplacentally.

Although the gastrointestinal tract is the primary site of replication for enteroviruses, they do not cause marked disease there. Certain group A coxsackieviruses have been associated with diarrhea in children, but causality is unproved.

Laboratory Diagnosis

RECOVERY OF VIRUS

Virus can be isolated from throat washings during the first few days of illness and from stools during the first few weeks. In coxsackievirus A21 infections, the largest amount of virus is found in nasal secretions. In cases of aseptic meningitis, strains have been recovered from the cerebrospinal fluid as well as from the alimentary tract. In hemorrhagic conjunctivitis cases, A24 virus is isolated from conjunctival swabs, throat swabs, and feces.

Specimens are inoculated into tissue cultures and also into suckling mice. In tissue culture, a cytopathic effect appears within 514 days. In suckling mice, signs of illness appear usually within 38 days with group A strains and 514 days with group B strains. The virus is identified by the pathologic lesions it produces and by immunologic means. Because of the difficulty of the technique, virus isolation in suckling mice is rarely attempted.

NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

Methods for the direct detection of enteroviruses provide rapid and sensitive assays useful for clinical samples. Reverse transcription-PCR tests can be broadly reactive (detect many serotypes) or more specific. Such assays have advantages over cell culture methods, as many enterovirus clinical isolates have poor growth characteristics. Real-time PCR assays are comparable in sensitivity to conventional PCR assays, but are less labor intensive to perform.

SEROLOGY

Neutralizing antibodies appear early during the course of infection, tend to be specific for the infecting virus, and persist for years. Serum antibodies can also be detected and titrated by the immunofluorescence technique, using infected cell cultures on coverslips as antigens. Serologic tests are difficult to evaluate (because of the multiplicity of types) unless the antigen used in the test has been isolated from a specific patient or during an epidemic outbreak.

Immunity

In humans, neutralizing antibodies are transferred passively from mother to fetus. Adults have antibodies against more types of coxsackieviruses than do children, indicating that multiple experiences with these viruses are common and increasingly so with age.

Epidemiology

Viruses of the coxsackie group have been encountered around the globe. Isolations have been made mainly from human feces, pharyngeal swabbings, sewage, and flies. Antibodies to various coxsackieviruses are found in serum collected from persons all over the world and in pooled immune globulin.

The most frequent types of coxsackieviruses recovered worldwide over an 8-year period (19671974) were types A9 and B2B5. In the United States in 19931996, the most common coxsackievirus isolates were types A9, B2, and B5. However, in any given year or area, another type may predominate.

Coxsackieviruses are recovered much more frequently in summer and early fall. Children develop antibodies in summer, indicating infection by coxsackieviruses during this period. Such children have much higher incidence rates for acute, febrile minor illnesses during the summer than children who fail to develop coxsackievirus antibodies.

Familial exposure is important in the acquisition of infections with coxsackieviruses. Once the virus is introduced into a household, all susceptible persons usually become infected, although all do not develop clinically apparent disease.

The coxsackieviruses share many properties with other enteroviruses, including the echoviruses and polioviruses. Because of their epidemiologic similarities, various enteroviruses may occur together in nature, even in the same human host or the same specimens of sewage.

Control

There are no vaccines or antiviral drugs currently available for prevention or treatment of diseases caused by coxsackieviruses.

OTHER ENTEROVIRUSES

Echoviruses (*e* nteric *c* ytopathogenic *h* uman *o* rphan viruses), based on historical terminology, were grouped together because they infect the human enteric tract and because they can be recovered from humans only by inoculation of certain tissue cultures. More than 30 serotypes are known, but not all cause human illness. More recent isolates are designated as numbered enteroviruses. Aseptic meningitis, encephalitis, febrile illnesses with or without rash, common colds, and ocular disease are among the diseases caused by echoviruses and other enteroviruses.

Clinical Findings

To establish etiologic association of an enterovirus with disease, the following criteria are used: (1) There is a much higher rate of recovery of virus from patients with the disease than from healthy individuals of the same age and socioeconomic level living in the same area at the same time. (2) Antibodies against the virus develop during the course of the disease. If the clinical syndrome can be caused by other known agents, virologic or serologic evidence must be negative for concurrent infection with such agents. (3) The virus is isolated from body fluids or tissues manifesting lesions, eg, from the cerebrospinal fluid in cases of aseptic meningitis.

Many echoviruses have been associated with aseptic meningitis. Rashes are most common in young children. Infantile diarrhea may be associated with some types, but causality has not been established. For many echoviruses, no disease entities have been defined.

Enterovirus 70 is the chief cause of acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis. It was isolated from the conjunctiva of patients with this striking eye disease, which occurred in pandemic form in 19691971 in Africa and Southeast Asia. Acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis has a sudden onset of subconjunctival hemorrhage. The disease is most common in adults, with an incubation period of 1 day and a duration of 810 days. Complete recovery is the rule. The virus is highly communicable and spreads rapidly under crowded or unhygienic conditions.

Enterovirus 71 has been isolated from patients with meningitis, encephalitis, and paralysis resembling poliomyelitis. It is one of the main causes of central nervous system disease, sometimes fatal, around the world.

With the virtual elimination of poliomyelitis in developed countries, the central nervous system syndromes associated with coxsackieviruses, echoviruses, and other enteroviruses have assumed greater prominence. The latter in children under age 1 year may lead to neurologic sequelae and mental impairment. Enteroviruses recovered from fecal samples of patients with acute flaccid paralysis in Australia between 1996 and 2004 included coxsackieviruses A24 and B5; echoviruses 9, 11, and 18; and enteroviruses 71 and 75. Enterovirus 71 was most common.

Laboratory Diagnosis

It is impossible in an individual case to diagnose an echovirus infection on clinical grounds. However, in the following epidemic situations, echoviruses must be considered: (1) summer outbreaks of aseptic meningitis and (2) summer epidemics, especially in young children, of a febrile illness with rash.

The diagnosis is dependent upon laboratory tests. Nucleic acid detection assays, such as PCR, are more rapid than virus isolation for diagnosis. Although the specific virus may not be identified by PCR, it is often not necessary to determine the specific serotype of infecting enterovirus associated with a disease.

Virus isolation may be accomplished from throat swabs, stools, rectal swabs, and, in aseptic meningitis, cerebrospinal fluid. Serologic tests are impracticalbecause of the many different viral typesexcept when a virus has been isolated from a patient or during an outbreak of typical clinical illness. Neutralizing and hemagglutination-inhibiting antibodies are type-specific and may persist for years.

If an agent is isolated in tissue culture, it can be tested against different pools of antisera against enteroviruses. Determination of the type of virus present is by either immunofluorescence or Nt tests. Infection with two or more enteroviruses may occur simultaneously.

Epidemiology

The epidemiology of echoviruses is similar to that of other enteroviruses. They occur in all parts of the globe and are more apt to be found in the young than in the old. In the temperate zone, infections occur chiefly in summer and autumn and are about five times more prevalent in children of lower-income families than in those living in more favorable circumstances.

The most commonly recovered echoviruses worldwide in the period 19671974 were types 4, 6, 9, 11, and 30. In 19931996, types 6, 9, 11, and 30 were the echoviruses most commonly isolated in the United States, and the diseases most often seen in those patients were aseptic meningitis and encephalitis. However, as with all enteroviruses, dissemination of different serotypes may occur in waves and spread widely.

Studies of families into which enteroviruses were introduced demonstrated the ease with which these agents spread and the high frequency of infection in persons who had formed no antibodies from earlier exposures. This is true for all enteroviruses.

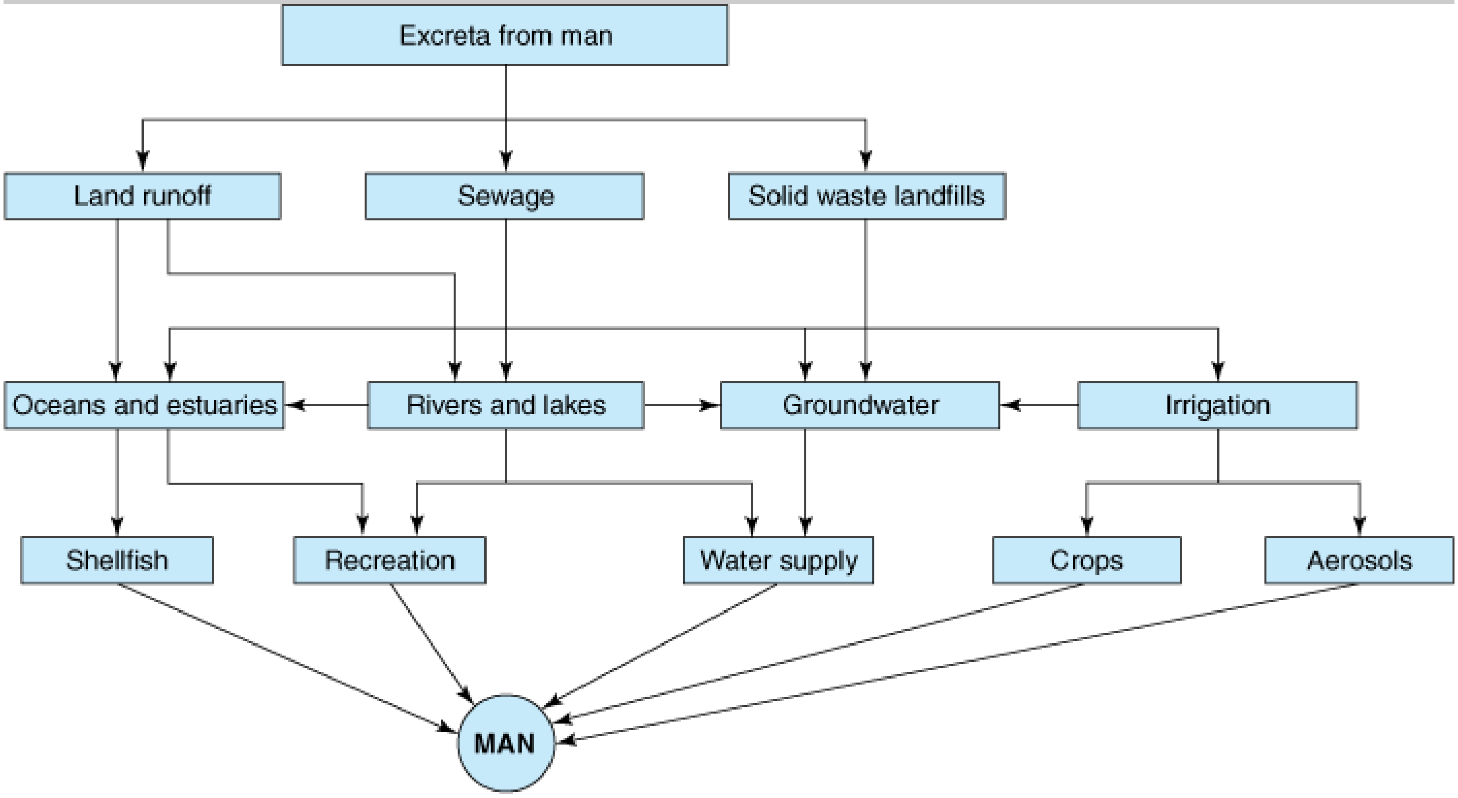
Control

Avoidance of contact with patients exhibiting acute febrile illness, especially those with a rash, is advisable for very young children. There are no antivirals or vaccines (other than poliovaccines) available for the treatment or prevention of any enterovirus diseases.

ENTEROVIRUSES IN THE ENVIRONMENT

Humans are the only known reservoir for members of the human enterovirus group. These viruses are generally shed for longer periods of time in stools than in secretions from the upper alimentary tract. Thus, fecal contamination (hands, utensils, food, water) is the usual avenue of virus spread. Enteroviruses are present in variable amounts in sewage. This may serve as a source of contamination of water supplies used for drinking, bathing, irrigation, or recreation (Figure 365). Enteroviruses survive exposure to the sewage treatments and chlorination in common practice, and human wastes in much of the world are discharged into natural waters with little or no treatment. Waterborne outbreaks due to enteroviruses are difficult to recognize, and it has been shown that the viruses can travel long distances from the source of contamination and remain infectious. Adsorption to organics and sediment material protects viruses from inactivation and helps in transport. Filter-feeding shellfish (oysters, clams, mussels) have been found to concentrate viruses from water and, if inadequately cooked, may transmit disease. Bacteriologic standards using fecal coliform indices as a monitor of water quality probably are not an adequate reflection of a potential for transmission of viral disease.

Figure 365.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Routes of potential enteric virus transmission in the environment.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Melnick JL, Gerba CP, Wallis C: Viruses in water. Bull World Health Organ 1978;56:499.)

PARECHOVIRUS GROUP

This genus contains three species, of which types 1 and 2 were originally classified as echoviruses 22 and 23. Parechoviruses are highly divergent from enteroviruses, with no protein sequence having greater than 30% identity with the corresponding protein of other picornaviruses. The capsid contains three proteins, as the VP0 precursor protein does not get cleaved.

Parechoviruses replicate in the respiratory and gastrointestinal tract. They have been reported to cause diseases similar to other enteroviruses, such as aseptic meningitis, encephalitis, respiratory diseases, and neonatal diseases.

RHINOVIRUS GROUP

Rhinoviruses are the common cold viruses. They are the most commonly recovered agents from people with mild upper respiratory illnesses. They are usually isolated from nasal secretions but may also be found in throat and oral secretions. These virusesas well as coronaviruses, adenoviruses, enteroviruses, parainfluenza viruses, and influenza virusescause upper respiratory tract infections, including the common cold syndrome.

Classification

Human rhinovirus isolates are numbered sequentially. More than 100 species are known. Isolates within a species share more than 70% sequence identity within certain protein-coding regions.

Human rhinoviruses can be divided into major and minor receptor groups. Viruses of the major group use intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) as receptor and those of the minor group bind members of the low-density lipoprotein receptor (LDLR) family.

Properties of the Virus

GENERAL PROPERTIES

Rhinoviruses are picornaviruses similar to enteroviruses but differ from them in having a buoyant density in cesium chloride of 1.40 g/mL and in being acid-labile. Virions are unstable below pH 56 and complete inactivation occurs at pH 3.0. Rhinoviruses are more thermostable than enteroviruses and may survive for hours on environmental surfaces.

Nucleotide sequence identity over the entire genome is more than 50% among all rhinoviruses and between enteroviruses and rhinoviruses. There is greater or less identity for particular genomic regions.

ANIMAL SUSCEPTIBILITY AND GROWTH OF VIRUS

These viruses are infectious only for humans, gibbons, and chimpanzees. They can be grown in a number of human cell lines, including the WI-38 and MRC-5 lines. Organ cultures of ferret and human tracheal epithelium may be necessary for some fastidious strains. Most grow better at 33 C, which is similar to the temperature of the nasopharynx in humans, than at 37 C.

ANTIGENIC PROPERTIES

More than 100 serotypes are known. New serotypes are based on the absence of cross-reactivity in Nt tests using polyclonal antisera. Human rhinovirus 87 is now considered the same serotype as human enterovirus 68.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The virus enters via the upper respiratory tract. High titers of virus in nasal secretionswhich can be found as early as 24 days after exposureare associated with maximal illness. Thereafter, viral titers fall, although illness persists.

In some instances, virus may remain detectable for 3 weeks. There is a direct correlation between the amount of virus in secretions and the severity of illness.

Replication is limited to the surface epithelium of the nasal mucosa. Biopsies have shown that histopathologic changes are limited to the submucosa and surface epithelium. These include edema and mild cellular infiltration. Nasal secretion increases in quantity and in protein concentration.

Rhinoviruses rarely cause lower respiratory tract disease. Experiments under controlled conditions have shown that chilling, including the wearing of wet clothes, does not produce a cold or increase susceptibility to the virus. Chilliness is an early symptom of the common cold.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period is brieffrom 2 days to 4 daysand the acute illness usually lasts for 7 days although a nonproductive cough may persist for 23 weeks. The average adult has 12 attacks each year. Usual symptoms in adults include sneezing, nasal obstruction, nasal discharge, and sore throat; other symptoms may include headache, mild cough, malaise, and a chilly sensation. There is little or no fever. The nasal and nasopharyngeal mucosa become red and swollen, and the sense of smell becomes less keen. There are no distinctive clinical findings that permit an etiologic diagnosis of colds caused by rhinoviruses versus colds caused by other viruses. Secondary bacterial infection may produce acute otitis media, sinusitis, bronchitis, or pneumonitis, especially in children.

Immunity

Neutralizing antibody to the infecting virus develops in serum and secretions of most persons. Depending on the test used, estimates of the frequency of response have ranged from 37% to over 90%.

Antibody develops 721 days after infection; the time of appearance of neutralizing antibody in nasal secretions parallels that of serum antibodies. Because recovery from illness usually precedes appearance of antibodies, it seems that recovery is not dependent on antibody. However, antibody may accomplish final clearance of infection. Serum antibody persists for years but decreases in titer.

Epidemiology

The disease occurs throughout the world. In the temperate zones, the attack rates are highest in early fall and late spring. Prevalence rates are lowest in summer. Members of isolated communities form highly susceptible groups.

The virus is believed to be transmitted through close contact, by means of virus-contaminated respiratory secretions. The fingers of a person with a cold are usually contaminated, and transmission to susceptible persons then occurs by hand to hand, hand to eye, or hand to object (eg, doorknob) to hand contamination. Rhinoviruses can survive for hours on contaminated environmental surfaces. Self-inoculation after hand contamination may be a more important mode of spread than that by airborne particles.

Infection rates are highest among infants and children and decrease with increasing age. The family unit is a major site of spread of rhinoviruses. Introduction of virus is generally attributable to preschool-aged and school-aged children. Secondary attack rates in the family vary from 30% to 70%.

In a single community, multiple rhinovirus serotypes cause outbreaks of disease in a single season, and different serotypes predominate during different respiratory disease seasons. There are usually a limited number of serotypes causing disease at any given time.

Treatment & Control

No specific prevention method or treatment is available. The development of a potent rhinovirus vaccine is unlikely because of the difficulty in growing rhinoviruses to high titer in culture, the fleeting immunity, and the multiplicity of serotypes causing colds.

Antiviral drugs are thought to be a more likely control measure for rhinoviruses because of the problems with vaccine development. Many compounds effective in vitro have failed to be effective clinically.

A 5-day course of high doses of intranasal interferon-alfa has been shown to be effective in preventing the spread of rhinoviruses from an index case within a family. It was not effective as therapy of established infections.

FOOT-AND-MOUTH DISEASE (APHTHOVIRUS OF CATTLE)

This highly infectious disease of cloven-hoofed animals such as cattle, sheep, pigs, and goats is rare in the United States but endemic in other countries. It may be transmitted to humans by contact or ingestion. In humans, the disease is characterized by fever, salivation, and vesiculation of the mucous membranes of the oropharynx and of the skin of the palms, soles, fingers, and toes.

The virus is a typical picornavirus and is acid-labile (particles are unstable below pH 6.8). It has a buoyant density in cesium chloride of 1.43 g/mL. There are at least seven types with more than 50 subtypes.

The disease in animals is highly contagious in the early stages of infection when viremia is present and when vesicles in the mouth and on the feet rupture and liberate large amounts of virus. Excreted material remains infectious for long periods. The mortality rate in animals is usually low but may reach 70%. Infected animals become poor producers of milk and meat. Many cattle serve as foci of infection for up to 8 months. Immunity after infection is of short duration.

A variety of animals are susceptible to infection. The virus has been recovered from at least 70 species of mammals. The typical disease can be reproduced by inoculating the virus into the pads of the foot. Formalin-treated vaccines have been prepared from virus grown in tissue cultures, but such vaccines do not produce long-lasting immunity. New vaccines are being developed based on recombinant DNA techniques.

The methods of control of the disease are dictated by its high degree of contagiousness and the resistance of the virus to inactivation. Should a focus of infection occur in the United States, all exposed animals are slaughtered and their carcasses destroyed. Strict quarantine is established, and the area is not presumed to be safe until susceptible animals fail to develop symptoms within 30 days. Another method is to quarantine the herd and vaccinate all unaffected animals. Other countries have successfully employed systematic vaccination schedules. Some nations (eg, the United States and Australia) forbid the importation of potentially infective materials such as fresh meat, and the disease has been eliminated in these areas.

REFERENCES

Couch RB: Rhinoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Pallansch MA, Roos RP: Enteroviruses: Polioviruses, coxsackieviruses, echoviruses, and newer enteroviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al [editors]. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Rotbart HA: Antiviral therapy for enteroviruses and rhinoviruses. Antiviral Chem Chemother 2000;11:261. [PMID: 10950388]

Technical Consultative Group to the World Health Organization on the Global Eradication of Poliomyelitis: "Endgame" issues for the global polio eradication initiative. Clin Infect Dis 2002;34:72.

Whitton JL, Cornell CT, Feuer R: Host and virus determinants of picornavirus pathogenesis and tropism. Nature Rev Microbiol

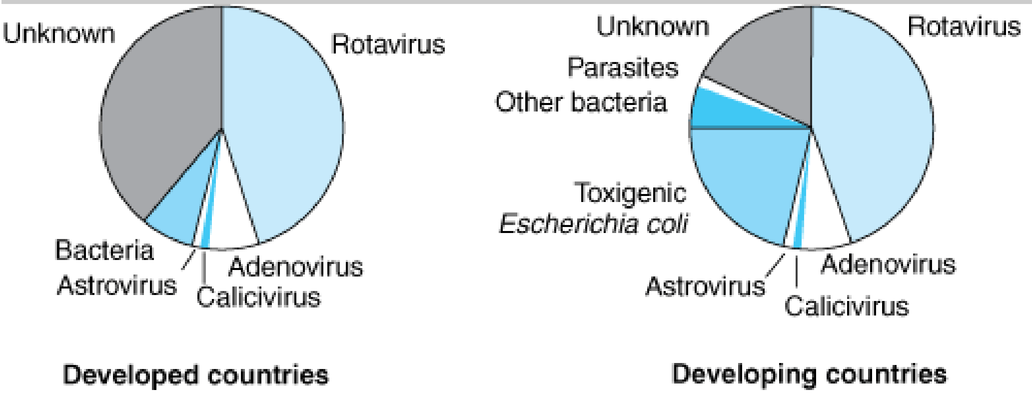
2005;3:765. [PMID: 16205710]

Note: Large images and tables on this page may necessitate printing in landscape mode.

INTRODUCTION

Reoviruses are medium-sized viruses with a double-stranded, segmented RNA genome. The family includes human rotaviruses, the most important cause of infantile gastroenteritis around the world (Figure 371). Acute gastroenteritis is a very common disease with significant public health impact. In developing countries it is estimated to cause as many as 1.5 million deaths of preschool children annually, of which rotavirus is responsible for about 600,000 deaths. In the United States, acute gastroenteritis is second only to acute respiratory infections as a cause of disease in families.

Figure 371.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

An estimate of the role of etiologic agents in severe diarrheal illnesses requiring hospitalization of infants and young children in developed countries (left) and in developing countries (right).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Kapikian AZ: Viral gastroenteritis. JAMA 1993;269:627.)

Caliciviruses are small viruses with a single-stranded RNA genome. The family contains Norwalk virus, the major cause of nonbacterial epidemic gastroenteritis worldwide.

REOVIRUSES AND ROTAVIRUSES

Important properties of reoviruses are summarized in Table 371.

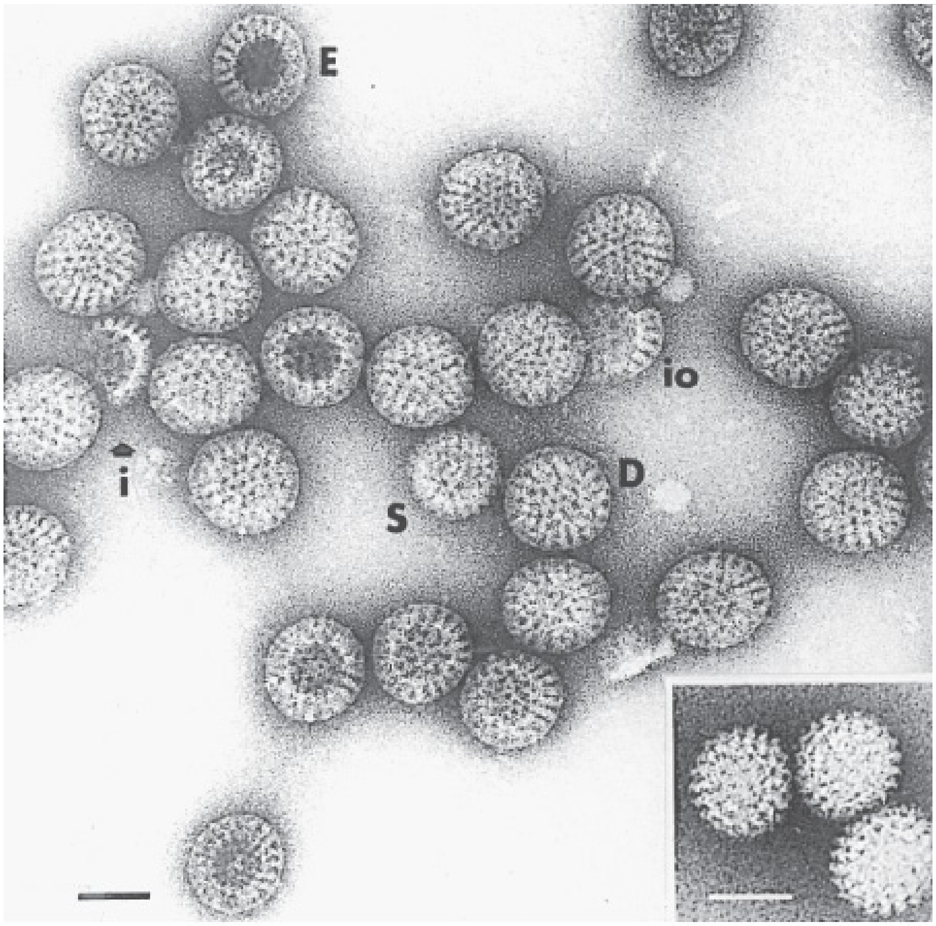
Table 371. Important Properties of Reoviruses.

Virion: Icosahedral, 6080 nm in diameter, double capsid shell
Composition: RNA (15%), protein (85%)
Genome: Double-stranded RNA, linear, segmented (1012 segments); total genome size 1627 kbp
Proteins: Nine structural proteins; core contains several enzymes
Envelope: None (transient pseudoenvelope is present during rotavirus particle morphogenesis)
Replication: Cytoplasm; virions not completely uncoated
Outstanding characteristics:
Genetic reassortment occurs readily
Rotaviruses are the major cause of infantile diarrhea
Reoviruses are good models for molecular studies of viral pathogenesis

Structure & Composition

The virions measure 6080 nm in diameter and possess two concentric capsid shells, each of which is icosahedral. (Rotaviruses have a triple-layered structure.) There is no envelope. Single-shelled virus particles that lack the outer capsid are 5060 nm in diameter. The inner core of the particles is 3340 nm in diameter (Figure 372). The double-shelled particle is the complete infectious form of the virus.

Figure 372.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrograph of a negatively stained preparation of human rotavirus. (D, double-shelled particles; S, single-shelled particles; E, empty capsids; i, fragment of inner shell; io, fragments of a combination of inner and outer shell.) Inset: Single-shelled particles obtained by treatment of the viral preparation with sodium dodecyl sulfate. Bars, 50 nm.

(Courtesy of J Esparza and F Gil.)

The reovirus genome consists of double-stranded RNA in 1012 discrete segments with a total genome size of 1627 kbp, depending on the genus. Rotaviruses contain 11 genome segments, whereas orthoreoviruses and orbiviruses each possess ten segments and coltiviruses have 12 segments. The individual RNA segments vary in size from 680 bp (rotavirus) to 3900 bp (orthoreovirus). The virion core contains several enzymes needed for transcription and capping of viral RNAs.

Rotaviruses are stable to heat at 50 C, to a 3.09.0 range of pH, and to lipid solvents, such as ether and chloroform, but they are inactivated by 95% ethanol, phenol, and chlorine. Limited treatment with proteolytic enzymes increases infectivity.

Classification

The family Reoviridae is divided into twelve genera. Four of the genera are able to infect humans and animals:

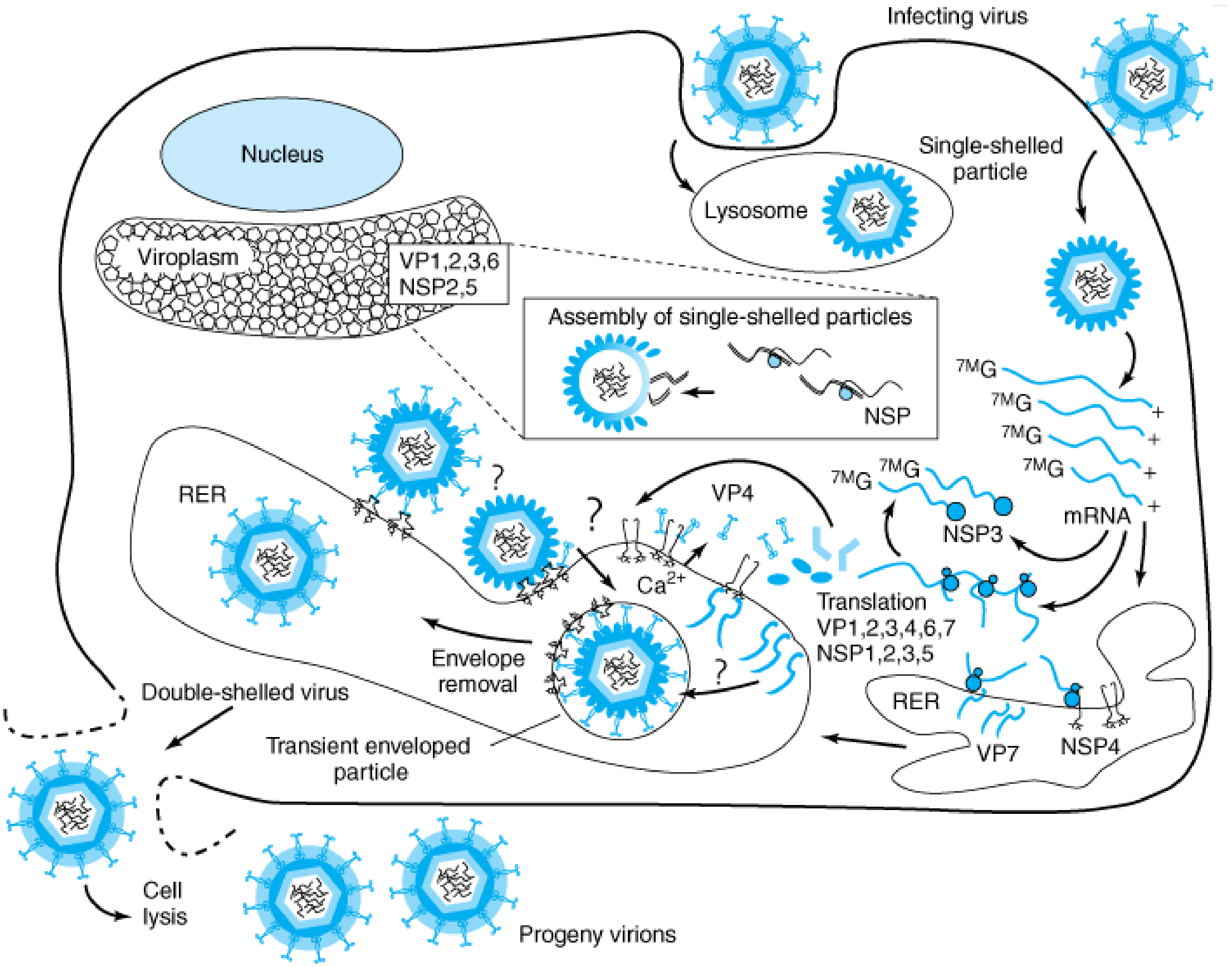
Orthoreovirus, Rotavirus, Coltivirus, and *Orbivirus.* These 12 genera can be divided into two groups; one group contains viruses with large spikes at the 12 vertices on the particle (eg, *Orthoreovirus*) whereas members of the second group appear more smooth, lacking the large surface projections (eg, *Rotavirus*).

There are at least five species or groups of rotaviruses (AE), plus two tentative species (F and G), of which three species (A, B, C) infect humans. Strains of human and animal origin may fall in the same serotype. Other rotavirus groups and serotypes are found only in animals. Three different serotypes of reovirus are recognized, along with about 100 different orbivirus serotypes and two coltivirus serotypes.

Reovirus Replication

Viral particles attach to specific receptors on the cell surface (Figure 373). The cell attachment protein for reoviruses is the viral hemagglutinin (σ1 protein), a minor component of the outer capsid.

Figure 373.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Overview of the rotavirus replication cycle.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Estes MK: Rotaviruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

After attachment and penetration, uncoating of virus particles occurs in lysosomes in the cell cytoplasm. Only the outer shell of the virus is removed, and a core-associated RNA transcriptase is activated. This transcriptase transcribes mRNA molecules from the minus strand of each genome double-stranded RNA segment contained in the intact core. There are short terminal sequences at both ends of the RNA segments that are conserved among all isolates of a given subgroup. These conserved sequences may be recognition signals for the viral transcriptase. The functional mRNA molecules correspond in size to the genome segments. Most RNA segments encode a single protein, although a few (depending on the virus) encode two proteins. Reovirus cores contain all enzymes necessary for transcribing, capping, and extruding the mRNAs from the core, leaving the double-stranded RNA genome segments inside.

Once extruded from the core, the mRNAs are translated into primary gene products. Some of the full-length transcripts are encapsidated to form immature virus particles. A viral replicase is responsible for synthesizing negative-sense strands to form the double-stranded genome segments. This replication to form progeny double-stranded RNA occurs in partially completed core structures. The mechanisms that ensure assembly of the correct complement of genome segments into a developing viral core are unknown. However, genome reassortment occurs readily in cells coinfected with different viruses of the same subgroup, giving rise to virus particles containing RNA segments from the different parental strains. Viral polypeptides probably self-assemble to form the inner and outer capsid shells.

Reoviruses produce inclusion bodies in the cytoplasm in which virus particles are found. These viral factories are closely associated with tubular structures (microtubules and intermediate filaments). Rotavirus morphogenesis involves budding of single-shelled particles into the rough endoplasmic reticulum. The "pseudoenvelopes" so acquired are then removed and the outer capsids are added (Figure 373). This unusual pathway is utilized because the major outer capsid protein of rotaviruses is glycosylated.

Cell lysis results in release of progeny virions.

Rotaviruses

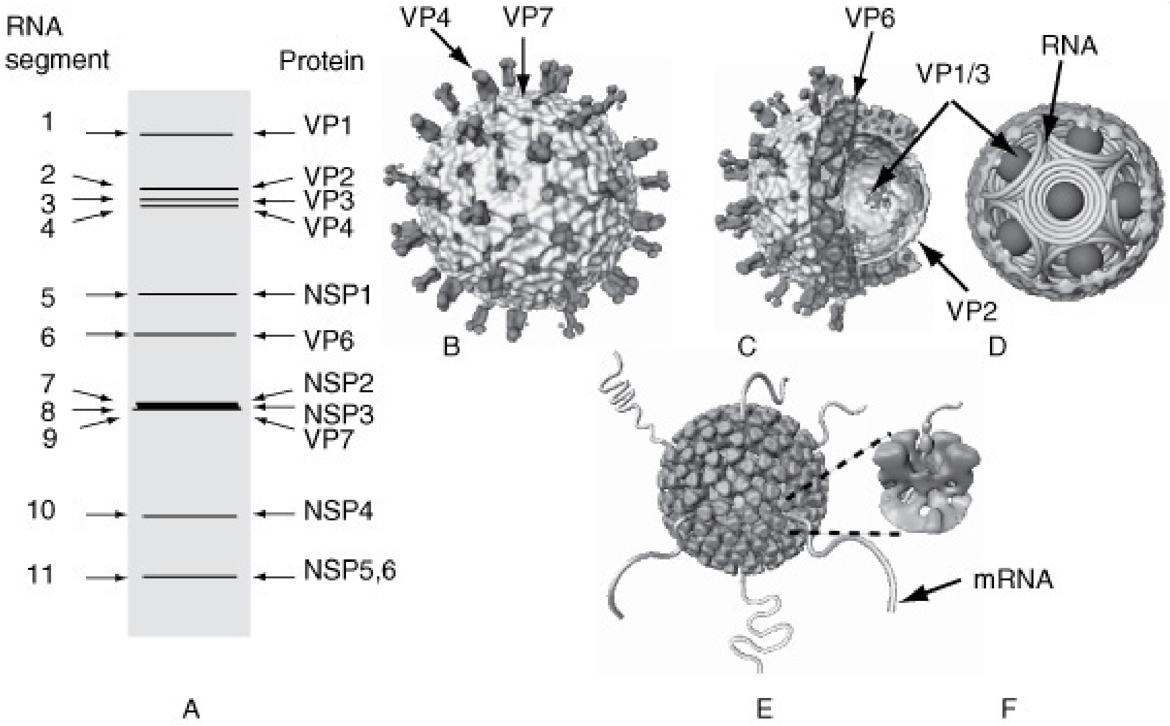
Rotaviruses are a major cause of diarrheal illness in human infants and young animals, including calves and piglets. Infections in adult humans and animals are also common. Among rotaviruses are the agents of human infantile diarrhea, Nebraska calf diarrhea, epizootic diarrhea of infant mice, and SA11 virus of monkeys.

Rotaviruses resemble reoviruses in terms of morphology and strategy of replication.

Classification & Antigenic Properties

Rotaviruses have been classified into five species (AE), plus two tentative species (F and G), based on antigenic epitopes on the internal structural protein VP6. These can be detected by immunofluorescence, ELISA, and immune electron microscopy (IEM). Group A rotaviruses are the most frequent human pathogens. Outer capsid proteins VP4 and VP7 carry epitopes important in neutralizing activity, with VP7 glycoprotein being the predominant antigen. These type-specific antigens differentiate among rotaviruses and are demonstrable by Nt tests. Multiple serotypes have been identified among human and animal rotaviruses. Some animal and human rotaviruses share serotype specificity. For example, monkey virus SA11 is antigenically very similar to human serotype 3. The gene-coding assignments responsible for the structural and antigenic specificities of rotavirus proteins are shown in Figure 374.

Figure 374.



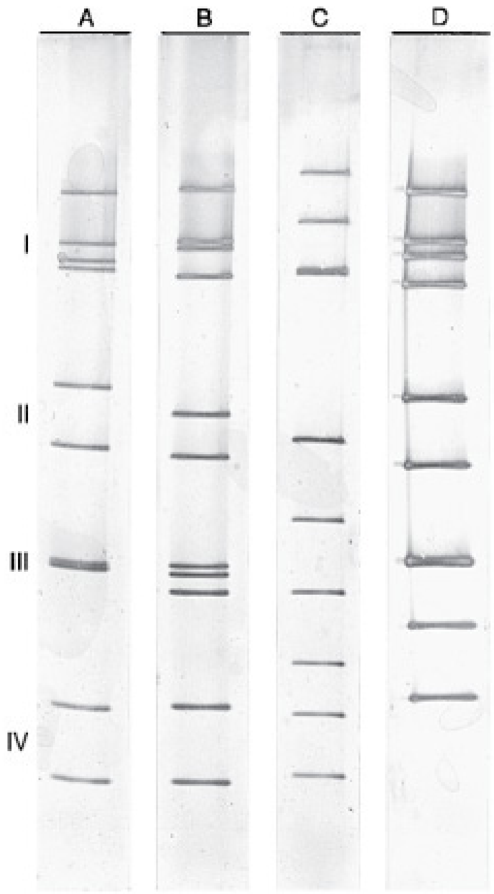
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Rotavirus structure. A: Gel diagram showing the 11 segments of the genome. The structural (VP) and nonstructural (NSP) proteins encoded by these segments are indicated. B: Surface representation of the rotavirus structure from cryo-electron microscopic analysis. The two outer layer proteins are VP4, which forms the spikes, and VP7, which forms the capsid layer. C: Cut-away view showing the triple-layered organization of the virion, with the intermediate VP6 layer and the innermost VP2 layer indicated. The enzymes required for endogenous transcription (VP1) and capping (VP3) are attached as heterodimeric complexes to the inner surface of the VP2 layer. D: Proposed organization of the double-stranded RNA genome inside the VP2 layer along with transcription enzyme complexes (VP1/3) depicted as balls. E: Exit of transcripts from the channels at the 5-fold vertices of actively transcribing double-layered particles. F: Close-up view of one of the exit channels.

(Courtesy of BVV. Prasad.)

Molecular epidemiologic studies have analyzed isolates based on differences in the migration of the 11 genome segments following electrophoresis of the RNA in polyacrylamide gels (Figure 375). These differences in electropherotypes can be used to differentiate group A viruses from other groups, but they cannot be used to predict serotypes.

Figure 375.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electrophoretic profiles of rotavirus RNA segments. Viral RNAs were electrophoresed in 10% polyacrylamide gels and visualized by silver stain. Different rotavirus groups and RNA patterns are illustrated: a group A monkey virus (SA11; lane A), a group A human rotavirus (lane B), a group B human adult diarrhea virus (lane C), and a group A rabbit virus that exhibits a "short" RNA pattern (lane D). Rotaviruses contain 11 genome RNA segments, but sometimes two or three segments migrate closely together and are difficult to separate.

(Photograph provided by T Tanaka and MK Estes.)

Animal Susceptibility

Rotaviruses have a wide host range. Most isolates have been recovered from newborn animals with diarrhea. Cross-species infections can occur in experimental inoculations, but it is not clear if they occur in nature. Swine rotavirus infects both newborn and weanling piglets. Newborns often exhibit subclinical infection due perhaps to the presence of maternal antibody, whereas overt disease is more common in weanling animals.

Propagation in Cell Culture

Rotaviruses are fastidious agents to culture. Most group A human rotaviruses can be cultivated if pretreated with the proteolytic enzyme trypsin and if low levels of trypsin are included in the tissue culture medium. This cleaves an outer capsid protein and facilitates uncoating. Very few non-group A rotavirus strains have been cultivated.

Pathogenesis

Rotaviruses infect cells in the villi of the small intestine (gastric and colonic mucosa are spared). They multiply in the cytoplasm of enterocytes and damage their transport mechanisms. One of the rotavirus-encoded proteins, NSP4, is a viral enterotoxin and induces secretion by triggering a signal transduction pathway. Damaged cells may slough into the lumen of the intestine and release large quantities of virus, which appear in the stool (up to 10^{10} particles per gram of feces). Viral excretion usually lasts 212 days in otherwise healthy patients but may be prolonged in those with poor nutrition. Diarrhea caused by rotaviruses may be due to impaired sodium and glucose absorption as damaged cells on villi are replaced by nonabsorbing immature crypt cells. It may take 38 weeks for normal function to be restored.

Clinical Findings & Laboratory Diagnosis

Rotaviruses cause the major portion of diarrheal illness in infants and children worldwide but not in adults (Table 372). There is an incubation period of 13 days. Typical symptoms include watery diarrhea, fever, abdominal pain, and vomiting, leading to dehydration.

Table 372. Viruses Associated with Acute Gastroenteritis in Humans.[1]

Rotaviruses			
Group A	6080	Single most important cause (viral or bacterial) of endemic severe diarrheal illness in infants and young children worldwide (in cooler months in temperate climates).	Yes
Group B	6080	Outbreaks of diarrheal illness in adults and children in China.	No
Group C	6080	Sporadic cases and occasional outbreaks of diarrheal illness in children.	No
Enteric adenovirus	7090	Second most important viral agent of endemic diarrheal illness of infants and young children worldwide.	Yes
Caliciviruses			
Norwalk	2740	Important cause of outbreaks of vomiting and diarrheal illness in older children and adults in families, communities, and institutions; frequently associated with ingestion of food.	No
Sapporo	2740	Sporadic cases and occasional outbreaks of diarrheal illness in infants, young children, and the elderly.	No
Astroviruses	2830	Sporadic cases and occasional outbreaks of diarrheal illness in infants, young children, and the elderly.	

No

Virus	Size (nm)	Epidemiology	Important as a Cause of Hospitalization

[1] Modified from Kapikian AZ: Viral gastroenteritis. JAMA 1993;269:627.

In infants and children, severe loss of electrolytes and fluids may be fatal unless treated. Patients with milder cases have symptoms for 38 days and then recover completely. However, viral excretion in the stool may persist up to 50 days after onset of diarrhea. Asymptomatic infections, with seroconversion, occur. In children with immunodeficiencies, rotavirus can cause severe and prolonged disease.

Adult contacts may be infected, as evidenced by seroconversion, but they rarely exhibit symptoms, and virus is infrequently detected in their stools. A common source of infection is contact with pediatric cases. However, epidemics of severe disease have occurred in adults, especially in closed populations, as in a geriatric ward. Group B rotaviruses have been implicated in large outbreaks of severe gastroenteritis in adults in China (Table 372).

Laboratory diagnosis rests on demonstration of virus in stool collected early in the illness and on a rise in antibody titer. Virus in stool is demonstrated by IEM, latex agglutination tests, or ELISA. Genotyping of rotavirus nucleic acid from stool specimens by the polymerase chain reaction is the most sensitive detection method. Serologic tests can be used to detect an antibody titer rise, particularly ELISA.

Epidemiology & Immunity

Rotaviruses are the single most important worldwide cause of gastroenteritis in young children. Estimates range from 3 billion to 5 billion for annual diarrheal episodes in children under 5 years of age in Africa, Asia, and Latin America, resulting in as many as 1 million deaths. Developed countries have a high morbidity rate but a low mortality rate. Typically, up to 50% of cases of acute gastroenteritis of hospitalized children throughout the world are caused by rotaviruses.

Rotavirus infections usually predominate during the winter season. Symptomatic infections are most common in children between ages 6 months and 2 years, and transmission appears to be by the fecal-oral route. Nosocomial infections are frequent.

Rotaviruses are ubiquitous. By age 3 years, 90% of children have serum antibodies to one or more types. This high prevalence of rotavirus antibodies is maintained in adults, suggesting subclinical reinfections by the virus. Rotavirus reinfections are common; it has been shown that young children can suffer up to five reinfections by 2 years of age. Asymptomatic infections are more common with successive reinfections. Local immune factors, such as secretory IgA or interferon, may be important in protection against rotavirus infection. Asymptomatic infections are common in infants before age 6 months, the time during which protective maternal antibody acquired passively by newborns should be present. Such neonatal infection does not prevent reinfection, but it does protect against the development of severe disease during reinfection.

Treatment & Control

Treatment of gastroenteritis is supportive, to correct the loss of water and electrolytes that may lead to dehydration, acidosis, shock, and death. Management consists of replacement of fluids and restoration of electrolyte balance either intravenously or orally, as feasible. The infrequent mortality from infantile diarrhea in developed countries is due to routine use of effective replacement therapy.

In view of the fecal-oral route of transmission, wastewater treatment and sanitation are significant control measures.

An oral live attenuated rhesus-based rotavirus vaccine was licensed in the United States in 1998 for vaccination of infants. It was withdrawn a year later because of reports of intussusception (bowel blockages) as an uncommon but serious side effect associated with the vaccine. In 2006, an oral bovine-based rotavirus vaccine was licensed in the United States. A safe and effective vaccine remains the best hope for reducing the worldwide burden of rotavirus disease.

Reoviruses

The viruses of this genus, which have been studied most thoroughly by molecular biologists, are not known to cause human disease.

Classification & Antigenic Properties

Reoviruses are ubiquitous, with a very wide host range. Three distinct but related types of reovirus have been recovered from many species and are demonstrable by Nt and HI tests. Reoviruses contain a hemagglutinin for human O or bovine erythrocytes.

Epidemiology

Reoviruses cause many inapparent infections, because most people have serum antibodies by early adulthood. Antibodies are also present in other species. All three types have been recovered from healthy children, from young children during outbreaks of minor febrile illness, from children with diarrhea or enteritis, and from chimpanzees with epidemic rhinitis.

Human volunteer studies have failed to demonstrate a clear cause-and-effect relationship of reoviruses to human illness. In inoculated volunteers, reovirus is recovered far more readily from feces than from the nose or throat. An association of reovirus type 3 with biliary atresia in infants has been suggested.

Pathogenesis

Reoviruses have become important model systems for the study of the pathogenesis of viral infection at the molecular level. Defined recombinants from two reoviruses with differing pathogenic phenotypes are used to infect mice. Segregation analysis is then used to associate particular features of pathogenesis with specific viral genes and gene products. The pathogenic properties of reoviruses are primarily determined by the protein species found on the outer capsid of the virion.

Orbiviruses & Coltiviruses

Orbiviruses are a genus within the reovirus family. They commonly infect insects, and many are transmitted by insects to vertebrates. About 100 serotypes are known. None of these viruses cause serious clinical disease in humans, but they may cause mild fevers. Serious animal pathogens include bluetongue virus of sheep and African horse sickness virus. Antibodies to orbiviruses are found in many vertebrates, including humans.

The genome consists of ten segments of double-stranded RNA, with a total genome size of 18 kbp. The replicative cycle is similar to that of reoviruses. Orbiviruses are sensitive to low pH, in contrast with the general stability of other reoviruses.

Coltiviruses form another species within the Reoviridae . Their genome consists of 12 segments of double-stranded RNA, totaling about 29 kbp. Colorado tick fever virus, transmitted by ticks, is able to infect humans.

CALICIVIRUSES

In addition to rotaviruses and noncultivable adenoviruses, members of the family Caliciviridae are important agents of viral gastroenteritis in humans. The most significant member is Norwalk virus. Properties of caliciviruses are summarized in Table 373.

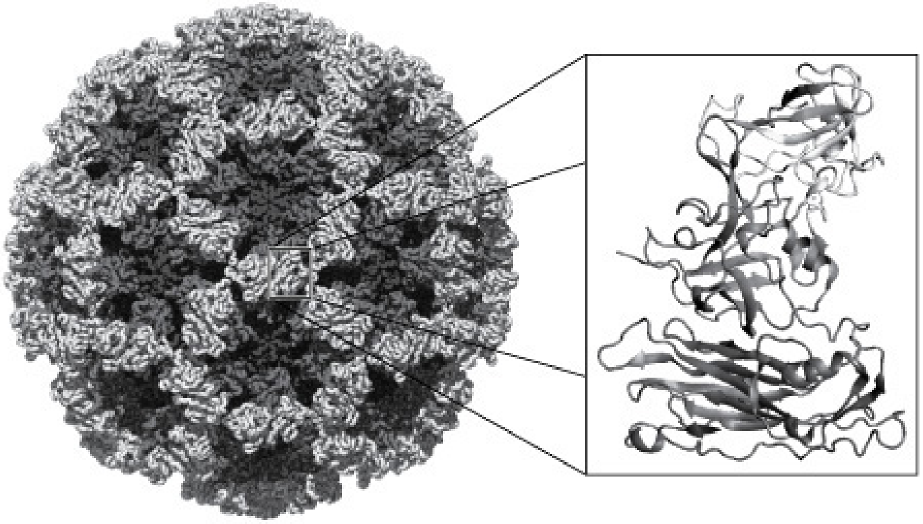
Table 373. Important Properties of Caliciviruses.

Virion: Icosahedral, 2740 nm in diameter; cup-like depressions on capsid surface
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, positive-sense, nonsegmented; 7.48.3 kb in size; contains genome-linked protein (VPg)
Proteins: Polypeptides cleaved from a precursor polyprotein; capsid is composed of a single protein
Envelope: None
Replication: Cytoplasm
Outstanding characteristics:
Norwalk viruses are major cause of nonbacterial epidemic gastroenteritis
Human viruses are noncultivable

Classification & Antigenic Properties

Caliciviruses are similar to picornaviruses but are slightly larger (2740 nm) and contain a single major structural protein (Figure 376). They exhibit a distinctive morphology in the electron microscope (Figure 377). The family Caliciviridae is divided into four genera: *Norovirus,* which includes the Norwalk viruses; *Sapovirus,* which includes the Sapporo-like viruses; *Lagovirus,* the rabbit hemorrhagic disease virus; and *Vesivirus,* which includes vesicular exanthem virus of swine, feline calicivirus, and marine viruses found in pinnipeds, whales, and fish. The first two genera contain human viruses that cannot be cultured; the latter two genera contain only animal strains that can be grown in vitro. Rabbit hemorrhagic disease virus was introduced in 1995 in Australia as a biologic control agent to reduce that country's population of wild rabbits.

Figure 376.

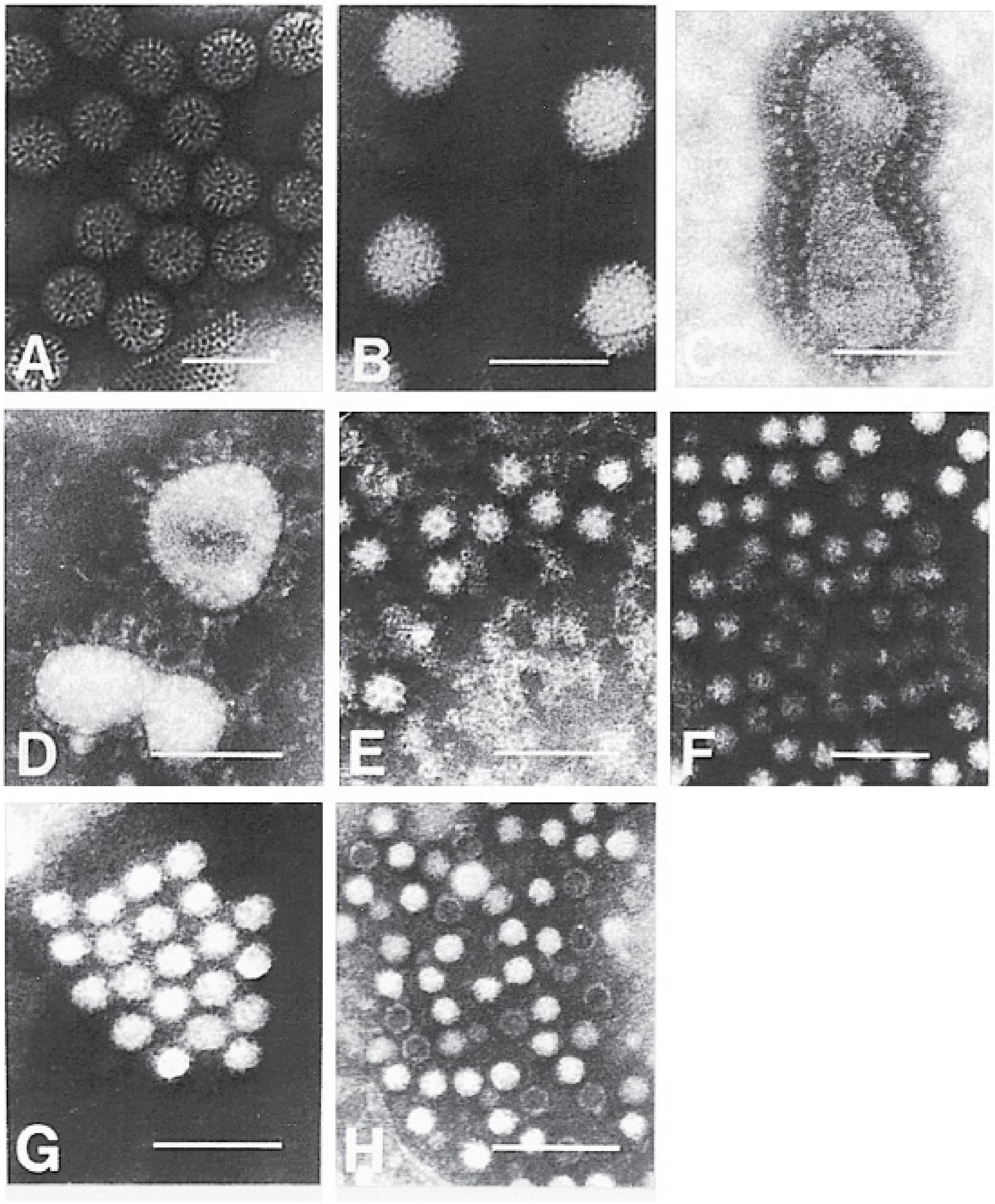


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

X-ray structure of the Norwalk virus capsid (*left*). The capsid subunit structure is illustrated (*right panel*). S, P1, and P2 domains are shaded in dark gray, medium gray, and light gray, respectively.

(Courtesy of BVV. Prasad.)

Figure 377.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrographs of virus particles found in stools of patients with gastroenteritis. These viruses were visualized following negative staining. Specific viruses and the original magnifications of the micrographs are as follows. A: Rotavirus (185,000 x). B: Enteric adenovirus (234,000 x). C: Coronavirus (249,000 x). D: Torovirus (coronavirus) (249,000 x). E: Calicivirus (250,000 x). F: Astrovirus (196,000 x). G: Norwalk virus (calicivirus) (249,000 x). H: Parvovirus (249,000 x). The electron micrographs in panels CH were originally provided by T Flewett; panel E was originally obtained from CR Madeley. Bars, 100 nm.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Graham DY, Estes MK: Viral infections of the intestine. Pages 566578 in: *Principles and Practice of Gastroenterology and Hepatology.* Gitnick G et al [editors]. Elsevier Science Publishing Co., 1988.)

Historically, the Norwalk viruses were referred to as "small round structured viruses" based on their detection by electron microscopy.

Human calicivirus serotypes are not defined. Multiple genotypes of noroviruses have been detected.

Clinical Findings & Laboratory Diagnosis

Norwalk virus is the most important cause of epidemic viral gastroenteritis in adults (Table 372). Epidemic nonbacterial gastroenteritis is characterized by (1) absence of bacterial pathogens; (2) gastroenteritis with rapid onset and recovery and relatively mild systemic signs; and (3) an epidemiologic pattern of a highly communicable disease that spreads rapidly with no particular predilection in terms of age or geography. Various descriptive terms have been used in reports of different outbreaks (eg, epidemic viral gastroenteritis, viral diarrhea, winter vomiting disease) depending on the predominant clinical feature.

Norwalk viral gastroenteritis has an incubation period of 2448 hours. Onset is rapid, and the clinical course is brief, lasting 1260 hours; symptoms include diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, low-grade fever, abdominal cramps, headache, and malaise. The illness can be incapacitating during the symptomatic phase, but hospitalization is rarely required. Norwalk infections are more likely to induce vomiting than those with Sapporo-like viruses. Dehydration is the most common complication in the young and elderly. No sequelae have been reported.

Volunteer experiments have clearly shown that the appearance of Norwalk virus coincides with clinical illness. Antibody develops during the illness and is usually protective on a short-term basis against reinfection with the same agent. Long-term immunity does not correspond well to the presence of serum antibodies. Some volunteers can be reinfected with the same virus after about 2 years.

Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction is the most widely used technique for detection of human caliciviruses in clinical specimens (feces, vomitus) and environmental samples (contaminated food, water). Because of the genetic diversity among circulating strains, the choice of polymerase chain reaction primer pairs is very important.

Electron microscopy is frequently used to detect virus particles in stool samples. However, Norwalk virus particles are usually present in low concentration and are difficult to recognize; they should be identified by immunoelectron microscopy. ELISA immunoassays based on recombinant virus-like particles can detect antibody responses, with a fourfold or greater rise in IgG antibody titer in acute and convalescent-phase sera indicative of a recent infection. However, the necessary reagents are not widely available, and the antigens are not able to detect responses to all antigenic types of Norwalk virus.

Epidemiology & Immunity

Human caliciviruses have worldwide distribution. Norwalk viruses are the most common cause of nonbacterial gastroenteritis in the United States, causing an estimated 23 million cases annually.

The viruses are most often associated with epidemic outbreaks of waterborne, food-borne, and shellfish-associated gastroenteritis. Community outbreaks can occur in any season. All age groups can be affected. Outbreaks occur throughout the year, with a seasonal peak during cooler months. Most outbreaks involve food-borne or person-to-person transmission via fomites or aerosolization of contaminated body fluids (vomitus, fecal material).

Characteristics of Norwalk virus include a low infectious dose (as few as 10 virus particles), relative stability in the environment, and multiple modes of transmission. It survives 10 ppm chlorine and heating to 60 C; it can be maintained in steamed oysters.

Fecal-oral spread is probably the primary means of transmission of Norwalk virus. During a 5-year period in the United States (19962000), food was implicated in 39% of outbreaks of Norwalk gastroenteritis, person-to-person contact in 12%, and water in 3%, with the source in 18% unknown.

Outbreaks of Norwalk gastroenteritis occur in multiple settings. In the same 5-year period as above, 39% occurred in restaurants, 29% in nursing homes and hospitals, 12% in schools and daycare centers, 10% in vacation settings, including cruise ships, and 9% in other settings. In 2006, following Hurricane Katrina, a norovirus outbreak occurred in a crowded evacuee setting in Texas.

No in vitro neutralization assay is available to study immunity. Volunteer challenge studies have shown that about 50% of adults are susceptible to illness. Norwalk virus antibody is acquired later in life than rotavirus antibody, which develops early in childhood. In developing countries, most children have developed Norwalk virus antibodies by 4 years of age.

Treatment & Control

Treatment is symptomatic. The low infectious dose permits efficient transmission of the virus. Because of the infectious nature of the stools, care should be taken in their disposal. Effective hand washing can decrease transmission in family or institutional settings. Containment and disinfection of soiled areas and bedding can help decrease viral spread. Careful processing of food and education of food handlers are important, as many food-borne outbreaks occur. Purification of drinking water and swimming pool water should decrease Norwalk virus outbreaks. There is no vaccine.

ASTROVIRUSES

Astroviruses are about 2830 nm in diameter and exhibit a distinctive star-like morphology in the electron microscope (Figure 377). They contain single-stranded, positive-sense RNA, 6.47.4 kb in size. At least eight serotypes of human viruses are recognized by IEM and neutralization. Astroviruses cause diarrheal illness and may be shed in extraordinarily large quantities in feces.

Astroviruses are transmitted by the fecal-oral route through contaminated food or water, person-to-person contact, or contaminated surfaces. They are recognized as pathogens for infants and children, elderly institutionalized patients, and immunocompromised persons (Table 372). They may be shed for prolonged periods by immunocompromised hosts.

REFERENCES

Bresee JS, Nelson EA, Glass RI (guest editors): Rotavirus in Asia: Epidemiology, burden of disease, and current status of vaccines. J Infect Dis 2005;192 (Supplement 1). [Entire issue.]

Green KY, Chanock RM, Kapikian AZ: Human caliciviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Kapikian AZ, Hoshino Y, Chanock RM: Rotaviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Monroe SS, Ando T, Glass RI (guest editors): International Workshop on Human Caliciviruses. J Infect Dis 2000;181 (Supp12). [Entire issue.]

Prevention of rotavirus among infants and children. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2006;55(RR=12):1.

McGraw-Hill's ACCESSMedicine

Print CloseWindow

Lange Microbiology >Chapter 38. Arthropod-Borne & Rodent-Borne Viral Diseases>

INTRODUCTION

The arthropod-borne viruses (arboviruses) and rodent-borne viruses represent ecologic groupings of viruses w complex transmission cycles involving arthropods or rodents. These viruses have diverse physical and chemical properties and are classified in several virus families.

The arboviruses are transmitted by bloodsucking arthropods from one vertebrate host to another. The vector acquir a lifelong infection through the ingestion of blood from a viremic vertebrate. The viruses multiply in the tissues of th arthropod without evidence of disease or damage. Some arboviruses are maintained in nature by transovarian transmission in arthropods.

The major arbovirus diseases worldwide are yellow fever, dengue, Japanese B encephalitis, St. Louis encephalitis, western equine encephalitis, eastern equine encephalitis, Russian spring-summer encephalitis, West Nile fever, and sandfly fever. In the United States the most important arboviral infections are La Crosse encephalitis, West Nile feve St. Louis encephalitis, eastern equine encephalitis, and western equine encephalitis.

Rodent-borne viral diseases are maintained in nature by direct intraspecies or interspecies transmission from roden rodent without participation of arthropod vectors. Viral infection is usually persistent. Transmission occurs by contac with body fluids or excretions.

Major rodent-borne viral diseases include hantavirus infections, Lassa fever, and South American hemorrhagic fever In the United States, the most important rodent-borne diseases are hantavirus pulmonary syndrome and Colorado t fever. Also considered here are the African hemorrhagic feversMarburg and Ebola. Their reservoir hosts are unknow but are suspected to be rodents or bats.

Arboviruses and rodent-borne viruses are classified among the arenavirus, bunyavirus, flavivirus, reovirus, and togavirus families. The African hemorrhagic fever viruses are classified as filoviruses (Table 381, Figure 381). A number of the diseases described here are considered emerging infectious diseases (see Chapter 29).

Table 381. Classification and Properties of Some Arthropod-Borne and Rodent-Borne Viruses.

Arenaviridae
Genus *Arenavirus*
New World: Junin, Machupo, Guanarito, Sabia, and Whitewater Arroyo viruses. Old World: Lassa and lymphocytic choriomeningitis viruses. Rodent-borne.
Spherical, 50300 nm in diameter (mean, 110130 nm). Genome: double-segmented, negative-sense and ambisense single-stranded RNA,1014 kb in overall size. Virion contains a transcriptase. Four major polypeptides. Envelope. Replication: cytoplasm. Assembly: incorporate ribosomes and bud from plasma membrane.

Bunyaviridae

Genus *Orthobunyavirus*

Anopheles A and B, Bunyamwera, California encephalitis, Guama, La Crosse, Oropouche, and Turlock viruses. Arthropod-borne (mosquitoes).

Spherical, 80120 nm in diameter. Genome: triple-segmented, negative-sense or ambisense, single-stranded RNA, 1119 kb in total size. Virion contains a transcriptase. Four major polypeptides. Envelope. Replication: cytoplasm. Assembly: budding into the Golgi.

Genus *Hantavirus*

Hantaan virus (Korean hemorrhagic fever), Seoul virus (hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome), Sin Nombre virus (hantavirus pulmonary syndrome). Rodent-borne.

Genus *Nairovirus*

Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, Nairobi sheep disease, and Sakhalin viruses. Arthropod-borne (ticks).

Genus *Phlebovirus*

Rift Valley fever, sandfly *(Phlebotomus)* fever, and Uukuniemi viruses. Arthropod-borne (mosquitoes, sandflies, tick

Filoviridae

Genus *Marburgvirus*

Marburg viruses

Long filaments, 80 nm in diameter x varying length (> 10,000 nm), though most average about 1000 nm. Genome: negative-sense, nonsegmented, single-stranded RNA, 19 kb in size. Seven polypeptides. Envelope. Replication: cytoplasm. Assembly: budding from plasma membrane.

Genus *Ebolavirus*

Ebola viruses

Flaviviridae

Genus *Flavivirus*

Brazilian encephalitis (Rocio virus), dengue, Japanese B encephalitis, Kyasanur Forest disease, louping ill, Murray Valley encephalitis, Omsk hemorrhagic fever, Russian spring-summer encephalitis, St. Louis encephalitis, tick-borne encephalitis, West Nile fever, and yellow fever viruses. Arthropod-borne (mosquitoes, ticks).

Spherical, 4060 nm in diameter. Genome: positive-sense, single-stranded RNA, 11 kb in size. Genome RNA infectio Envelope. Three structural polypeptides, two glycosylated. Replication: cytoplasm. Assembly: within endoplasmic reticulum. All viruses serologically related.

Reoviridae

Genus *Coltivirus*

Colorado tick fever virus. Arthropod-borne (ticks, mosquitoes).

Spherical, 6080 nm in diameter. Genome: 1012 segments of linear, double-stranded RNA, 1627 kbp total size. No envelope. Ten to 12 structural polypeptides. Replication and assembly: cytoplasm. (See Chapter 37.)

Genus *Orbivirus*

African horse sickness and bluetongue viruses. Arthropod-borne (mosquitoes).

Togaviridae

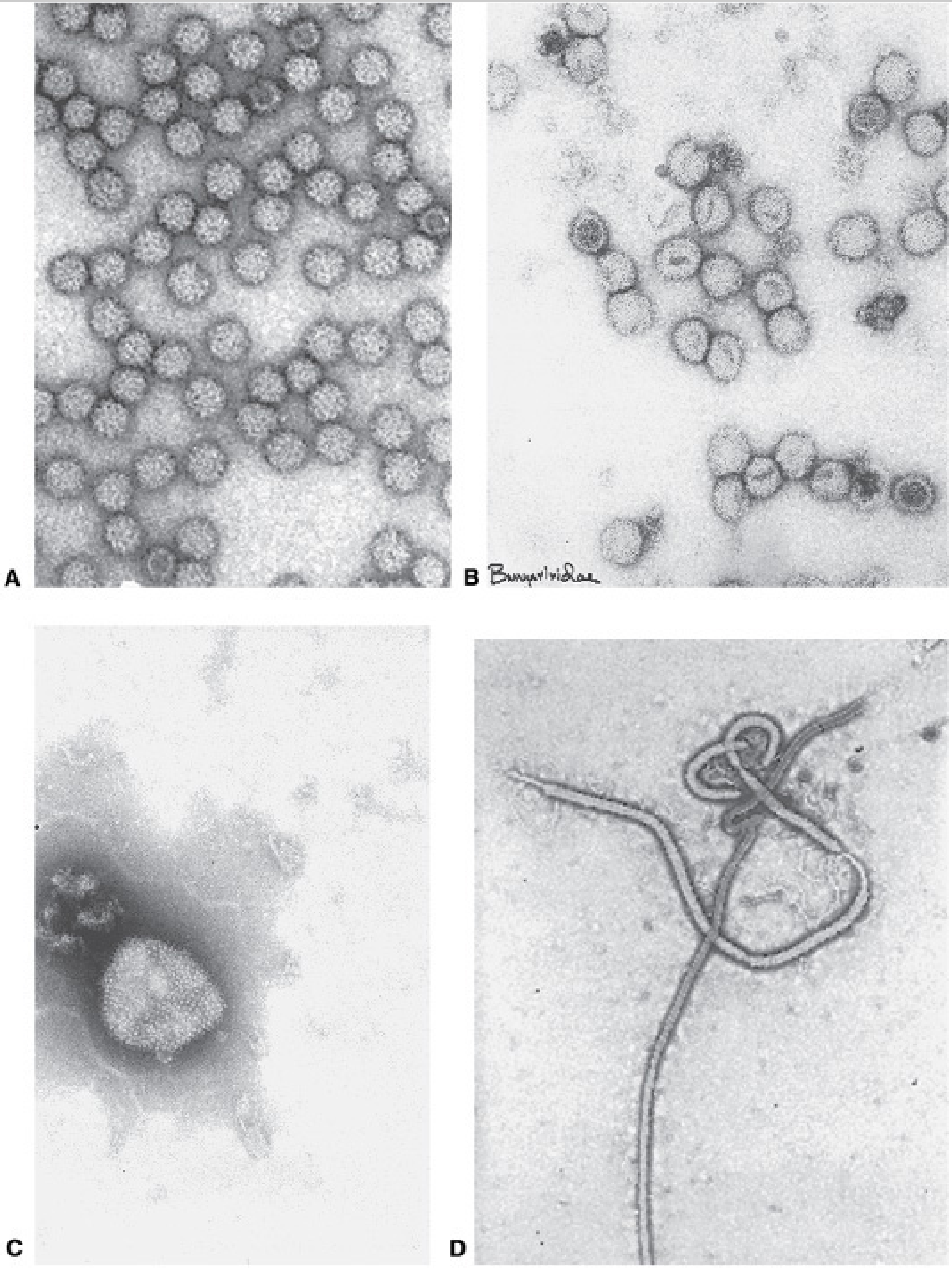
Genus *Alphavirus*

Chikungunya, eastern, western, and Venezuelan equine encephalitis viruses, Mayaro, O'Nyong-nyong, Ross River, Semliki Forest, and Sindbis viruses. Arthropod-borne (mosquitoes).

Spherical, 70 nm in diameter, nucleocapsid has 42 capsomeres. Genome: positive-sense, single-stranded RNA, 111 kb in size. Envelope. Three or four major structural polypeptides, two glycosylated. Replication: cytoplasm. Assembl budding through host cell membranes. All viruses serologically related.

Taxonomic Classification	Important Arbovirus and Rodent-Borne Virus Members	Virus Propertie

Figure 381.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Electron micrographs of typical arboviruses and rodent-borne viruses. A: An alphavirus, Semliki Forest virus (Togaviridae). B: representative member of Bunyaviridae, Uukuniemi virus. C: An arenavirus, Tacaribe virus. D: Ebola virus (Filoviridae).

(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

INTRODUCTION

There are several hundred arboviruses, of which about 100 are known human pathogens. Those infecting humans a all believed to be zoonotic, with humans the accidental hosts who play no important role in the maintenance or transmission cycle of the virus. Exceptions are urban yellow fever and dengue. Some of the natural cycles are simpl and involve infection of a nonhuman vertebrate host (mammal or bird) transmitted by a species of mosquito or tick (eg, jungle yellow fever, Colorado tick fever). Others, however, are more complex. For example, tick-borne encephalitis can occur following ingestion of raw milk from goats and cows infected by grazing in tick-infested pastu where a tick-rodent cycle is occurring.

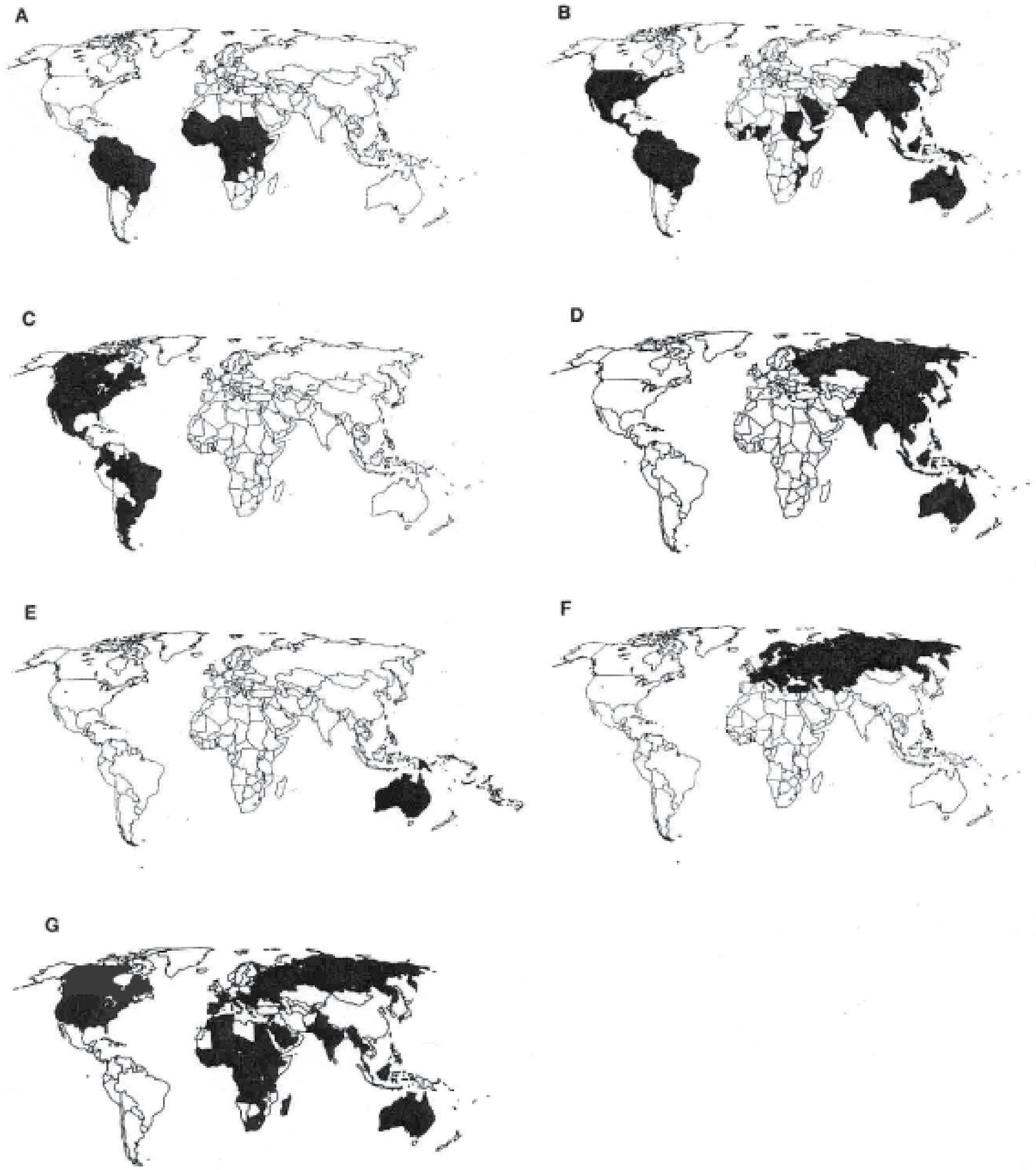
Individual viruses were sometimes named after a disease (dengue, yellow fever) or after the geographic area where the virus was first isolated (St. Louis encephalitis, West Nile fever). Arboviruses are found in all temperate and tropi zones, but they are most prevalent in the tropics with its abundance of animals and arthropods.

Diseases produced by arboviruses may be divided into three clinical syndromes: (1) fevers of an undifferentiated ty with or without a maculopapular rash and usually benign; (2) encephalitis (inflammation of the brain), often with a high case-fatality rate; and (3) hemorrhagic fevers, also frequently severe and fatal. These categories are somewha arbitrary, and some arboviruses may be associated with more than one syndrome, eg, dengue.

The degree of viral multiplication and its predominant site of localization in tissues determine the clinical syndrome. Thus, individual arboviruses can produce a minor febrile illness in some patients and encephalitis or a hemorrhagic diathesis in others.

Arbovirus infections occur in distinct geographic distributions and vector patterns (Figure 382). Each continent tend to have its own arbovirus pattern, and names are usually suggestive, eg, Venezuelan equine encephalitis, Japanese encephalitis, Murray Valley (Australia) encephalitis. Many encephalitides are alphavirus and flavivirus infections spre by mosquitoes, although the group of California encephalitis diseases is caused by bunyavi ruses. On a given contin there may be a shifting distribution depending on viral hosts and vectors in a given year.

Figure 382.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Known distributions of flaviviruses causing human disease. A: Yellow fever virus. B: Dengue virus. C: St. Louis encephalitis vir D: Japanese B encephalitis virus. E: Murray Valley encephalitis virus. F: Tick-borne encephalitis virus. G: West Nile virus.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Monath TP, Tsai TF: Flaviviruses. In: *Clinical Virology,* 2nd ed. Richman DD, Whitley RJ, Hayden FG [editors]. ASM Press, 2002.)

Several arboviruses cause significant human infections in the United States (Table 382). The numbers of cases vary widely from year to year.

Table 382. Summary of Major Human Arbovirus and Rodent-Borne Virus Infections that Occur in the United States.

Eastern equine encephalitis *(Alphavirus)*
Rural
Atlantic, southern coastal
Aedes, Culex
10:1 (infants)

50:1 (middle-aged)

20:1 (elderly)

+
3070%
Western equine encephalitis *(Alphavirus)*
Rural
Pacific, Mountain, Southwest
Culex tarsalis , Aedes
50:1 (under 5)

1000:1 (over 15)

+
37%
Venezuelan equine encephalitis *(Alphavirus)*
Rural
South (also South and Central America)
Aedes, Psorophora, Culex
25:1 (under 15)

1000:1 (over 15)

Fatalities rare
St. Louis encephalitis *(Flavivirus)*
Urban-rural
Widespread
Culex
800:1 (under 9)

400:1 (959)

85:1 (over 60)

310% (under 65) 30% (over 65)
West Nile fever *(Flavivirus)*
Urban-rural
Widespread

Culex, Aedes, Anopheles
150:1
Unknown
315%
California encephalitis (La Crosse) *(Orthobunyavirus)*
Rural
North central, Atlantic, South
Aedes triseriatus
Unknown ratio (most cases under 20)
Rare
About 1%
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome *(Hantavirus)*
Rural
Southwest, West
Peromyscus maniculatus [3]

Unknown
Unknown
30%
Colorado tick fever *(Coltivirus)*
Rural
Pacific, Mountain
Dermacentor andersoni
Unknown ratio (all ages affected)
Rare
Fatalities rare

Diseases[1]	Exposure	Distribution	Major Vectors	Infection: Case Ratio (Age Incidence)	Sequelae[2]	Mortality Rate

[1] Shown in parentheses under the name of the disease is the genus in which the causative virus(es) is(are) classifie
Virus families are indicated and described in Table 381.

[2] Sequelae: +, common; , occasional.

[3] Rodent reservoir; no vector.

TOGAVIRUS & FLAVIVIRUS ENCEPHALITIS

Classification & Properties of Togaviruses & Flaviviruses

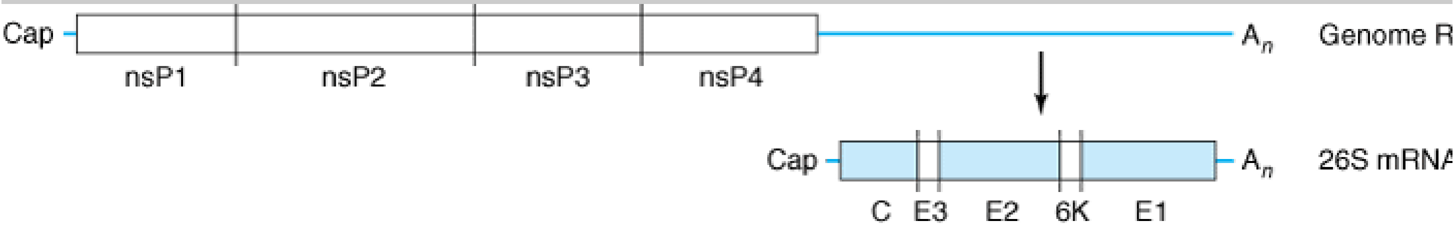
In the Togaviridae family, the *Alphavirus* genus consists of about 30 viruses 70 nm in diameter that possess a singl
stranded, positive-sense RNA genome (Table 381). The envelope surrounding the particle contains two glycoprotein
Alphaviruses often establish persistent infections in mosquitoes and are transmitted between vertebrates by mosquitoes or other blood-feeding arthropods. They have a worldwide distribution. All alphaviruses are antigenicall
related. The viruses are inactivated by acid pH, heat, lipid solvents, detergents, bleach, phenol, 70% alcohol, and formaldehyde. Most possess hemagglutinating ability (Figure 381). Rubella virus, classified in a separate genus in th
Togaviridae family, has no arthropod vector and is not an arbovirus (see Chapter 40).

Arboviruses are in the *Flavivirus* genus in the Flaviviridae family. Initially, the flaviviruses were included in the togavirus family as "group B arboviruses" but were moved to a separate family because of differences in viral genor organization. The Flaviviridae family consists of about 70 viruses 4060 nm in diameter that have a single-stranded, positive-sense RNA genome. The viral envelope contains two glycoproteins. Some flaviviruses are transmitted betw vertebrates by mosquitoes and ticks, whereas others are transmitted among rodents or bats without any known ins vectors. Many have worldwide distribution. All flaviviruses are antigenically related. Flaviviruses are inactivated similarly to alphaviruses, and many also exhibit hemagglutinating ability. Hepatitis C virus, classified in a separate genus in the Flaviviridae family, has no arthropod vector and is not an arbovirus (see Chapter 35).

Replication of Togaviruses & Flaviviruses

The alphavirus RNA genome is positive-sense (Figure 383). Genomic length and subgenomic (26S) mRNAs are produced during transcription. The genomic-length transcript produces a precursor polyprotein encoding the nonstructural proteins (ie, replicase, transcriptase) needed for viral RNA replication. The subgenomic mRNA encode structural proteins. The proteins are elaborated by posttranslational cleavage. Alphaviruses replicate in the cytoplas and mature by budding nucleocapsids through the plasma membrane. Sequence data indicate that western equine encephalitis virus is a genetic recombinant of eastern equine encephalitis and Sindbis viruses.

Figure 383.



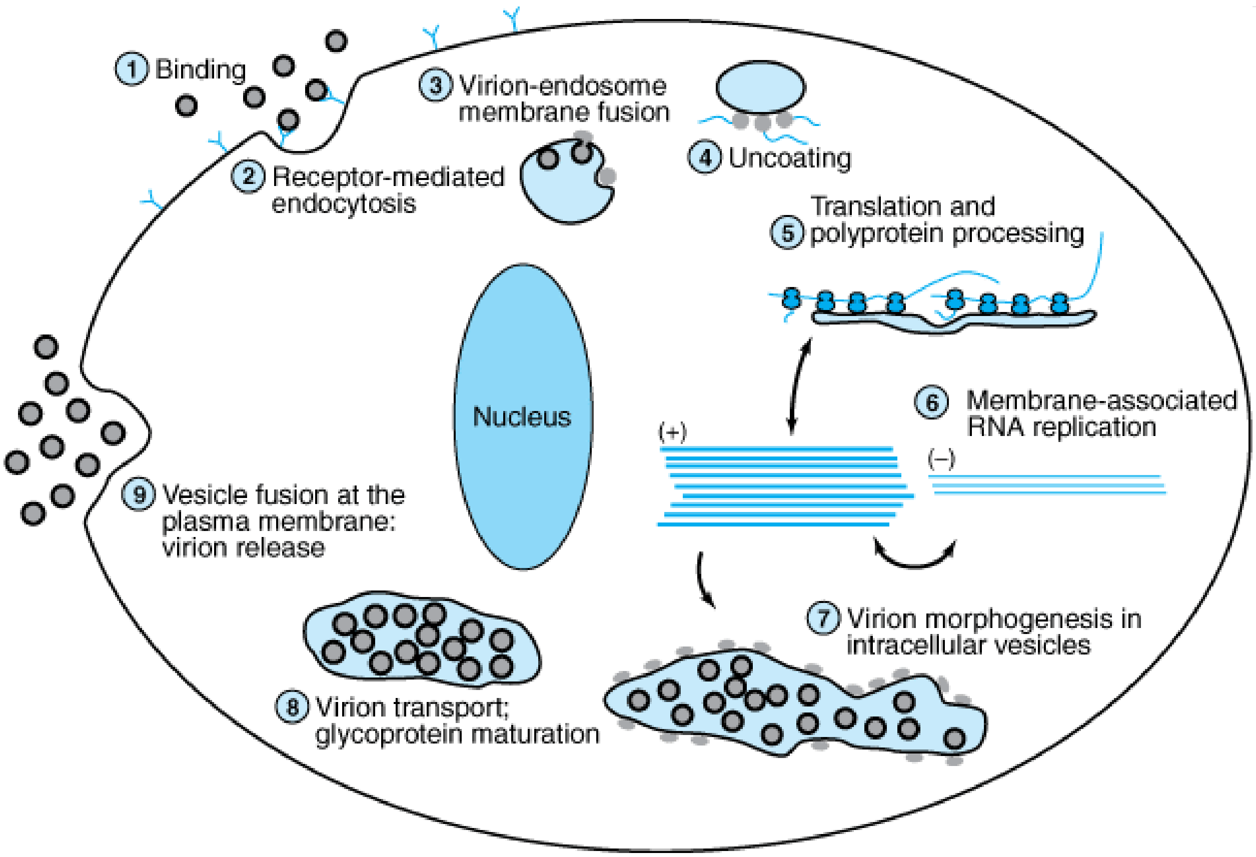
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genomic organization of alphaviruses. The nonstructural proteins (nsP) are translated from the genomic RNA as a polyprotein that is processed into four nonstructural proteins by a viral protease present in nsP2. The structural proteins are translated fro a subgenomic 26S mRNA as a polyprotein that is processed by a combination of viral and cellular proteases into a capsid prote (C), three envelope glycoproteins (E3, E2, and E1), and a membrane-associated protein named 6K. C, E2, and E1 are major components of virions and are shaded in the figure.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Strauss JH, Strauss EG, Kuhn RJ: Budding of alphaviruses. Trends Microbiol 1995;3:346.)

The flavivirus RNA genome also is positive-sense. A large precursor protein is produced from genome-length mRNA during viral replication; it is cleaved by viral and host proteases to yield all the viral proteins, both structural and nonstructural. Flaviviruses replicate in the cytoplasm, and particle assembly occurs in intracellular vesicles (Figure 384). Proliferation of intracellular membranes is a characteristic of flavivirus-infected cells.

Figure 384.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The flavivirus life cycle.

(Courtesy of CM Rice.)

Antigenic Properties of Togaviruses & Flaviviruses

All alphaviruses are antigenically related. Because of common antigenic determinants, the viruses show cross-reactions in immunodiagnostic techniques. HI, ELISA, and IF tests define eight antigenic complexes or serogroups o alphaviruses, four of which are typified by western equine encephalitis, eastern equine encephalitis, Venezuelan equ encephalitis, and Semliki Forest virus. Identification of a specific virus can be accomplished using Nt tests. Similarly all flaviviruses share antigenic sites. At least eight antigenic complexes have been identified based on Nt tests. The envelope (E) protein is the viral hemagglutinin and contains the group-, serocomplex-, and type-specific determinar Sequence comparisons of the E glycoprotein gene show that viruses within a serocomplex share over 70% amino ac sequences, whereas amino acid homology across serocomplexes is < 50%.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

In susceptible vertebrate hosts, primary viral multiplication occurs either in myeloid and lymphoid cells or in vascula endothelium. Multiplication in the central nervous system depends on the ability of the virus to pass the blood-brain barrier and to infect nerve cells. In natural infection of birds and mammals, an inapparent infection is usual. For several days there is viremia, and arthropod vectors acquire the virus by sucking blood during this periodthe first st in its dissemination to other hosts.

The disease in experimental animals provides insights into human disease. Mice have been used to study the pathogenesis of encephalitis. After subcutaneous inoculation, virus replication occurs in local tissues and regional lymph nodes. Virus then enters the bloodstream and is disseminated. Depending on the specific agent, different tissues support further virus replication, including monocyte-macrophages, endothelial cells, lung, liver, and muscle Virus crosses the blood-brain barrier by unknown mechanisms, perhaps involving olfactory neurons or cerebral vascular cells, and spreads. Widespread neuronal degeneration occurs in all arbovirus-induced encephalitides.

In the vast majority of infections, the virus is controlled before neuroinvasion occurs. Invasion depends on many factors, including the level of viremia, the genetic background of the host, the host innate and adaptive immune responses, and the virulence of the virus strain. Humans show an age-dependent susceptibility to central nervous system infections, with infants and the elderly being most susceptible.

The equine encephalitides in horses are diphasic. In the first phase (minor illness), the virus multiplies in nonneural tissue and is present in the blood several days before the first signs of involvement of the central nervous system. I the second phase (major illness), the virus multiplies in the brain, cells are injured and destroyed, and encephalitis becomes clinically apparent. High concentrations of virus in brain tissue are necessary before the clinical disease becomes manifest.

Clinical Findings

Incubation periods of the encephalitides are between 4 days and 21 days. Inapparent infections are common. Some infected persons develop mild flu-like illness, whereas others develop encephalitis. There is a sudden onset with severe headache, chills and fever, nausea and vomiting, generalized pains, and malaise. Within 2448 hours, marke drowsiness develops and the patient may become stuporous. Mental confusion, tremors, convulsions, and coma develop in severe cases. Fever lasts 410 days. The mortality rate in encephalitides varies (Table 382). With Japanes B encephalitis, the mortality rate in older age groups may be as high as 80%. Sequelae may be mild to severe and include mental deterioration, personality changes, paralysis, aphasia, and cerebellar signs.

Laboratory Diagnosis

RECOVERY OF VIRUS AND DIRECT DETECTION

Virus isolation attempts require appropriate biosafety precautions to prevent laboratory infections. Virus occurs in t blood only early in the infection, usually before the onset of symptoms. Virus can also be found in cerebrospinal flui and tissue specimens, depending on the agent. Alphaviruses and flaviviruses are usually able to grow in common ce lines, such as Vero, BHK, HeLa, and MRC-5. Mosquito cell lines are useful. Intracerebral inoculation of suckling mice hamsters may also be used for virus isolation.

Antigen detection and polymerase chain reaction assays are available for direct detection of viral RNA or proteins in clinical specimens for some arboviruses. The use of virus-specific monoclonal antibodies in immunofluorescence ass has facilitated rapid virus identification in clinical samples.

SEROLOGY

Neutralizing and hemagglutination-inhibiting antibodies are detectable within a few days after the onset of illness. T neutralizing and the hemagglutination-inhibiting antibodies endure for years. The HI test is the simplest diagnostic test, but it identifies the group rather than the specific causative virus. The most sensitive serologic assays detect virus-specific IgM in serum or cerebrospinal fluid by ELISA.

It is necessary to establish a fourfold or greater rise in specific antibodies during infection to confirm a diagnosis. Th first sample of serum should be taken as soon after the onset as possible and the second sample 23 weeks later. Th cross-reactivity within the alphavirus or flavivirus group must be considered in making the diagnosis. Following a single infection by one member of the group, antibodies to other members may also appear. Serologic diagnosis becomes difficult when an epidemic caused by one member of the serologic group occurs in an area where another group member is endemic.

Immunity

Immunity is believed to be permanent after a single infection. Both humoral antibody and cellular immune response are thought to be important in protection and recovery from infection. In endemic areas, the population may build u immunity as a result of inapparent infections; the proportion of persons with antibodies to the local arthropod-borne virus increases with age.

Because of common antigens, the response to immunization or to infection with one of the viruses of a group may b modified by prior exposure to another member of the same group. This mechanism may be important in conferring protection on a community against an epidemic of another related agent (eg, no Japanese B encephalitis in areas endemic for West Nile fever).

Epidemiology

In highly endemic areas, almost the entire human population may become infected with an arbovirus, and most infections are asymptomatic. High infection-to-case ratios exist among specified age groups for many arbovirus infections (Table 382). Most cases occur in the summer months in the northern hemisphere when arthropods are m active.

EASTERN & WESTERN ENCEPHALITIS

Eastern equine encephalitis is the most severe of the arboviral encephalitides, with the highest case-fatality rate. Infections are rare and sporadic in the United States, averaging five confirmed cases per year. Inapparent infections are unusual. In the case of western equine encephalitis, transmission occurs at a low level in the rural West, where birds and *Culex tarsalis* mosquitoes are involved in the maintenance cycle of the virus. Infections of humans averag about 15 confirmed cases annually. However, there have been instances in the past (most recently in 1987) when humans and equines became infected at epidemic and epizootic levels. Outbreaks have affected wide areas of the western United States and Canada.

ST. LOUIS ENCEPHALITIS

St. Louis encephalitis virus is the most important cause of epidemic encephalitis of humans in North America (Figure 382), having caused about 10,000 cases and 1000 deaths since it was first recognized in 1933. Seroprevalence rate are generally low, and the incidence of St. Louis encephalitis varies each year in the United States. There are curren an average of 130 confirmed cases annually. Less than 1% of viral infections are clinically apparent. The presence o infected mosquitoes is required before human infections can occur, although socioeconomic and cultural factors (air conditioning, screens, mosquito control) affect the degree of exposure of the population to these virus-carrying vectors.

WEST NILE FEVER

West Nile fever is caused by a member of the Japanese B encephalitis antigenic complex of flaviviruses. It occurs in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, the former Soviet Union, Southwest Asia, and, more recently, the United States. It appeared unexpectedly in the New York City area in 1999, resulting in seven deaths and extensive mortality in a rar of domestic and exotic birds. Sequence analysis of virus isolates showed that it originated in the Middle East; it probably crossed the Atlantic in an infected bird, mosquito, or human traveler.

Within 3 years West Nile virus had completed transcontinental movement across the United States and was established as a permanent presence in temperate North America. It is now the leading cause of arboviral encephali in the United States. It is estimated that about 80% of West Nile infections are asymptomatic, with about 20% causing West Nile fever and < 1% causing neuroinvasive disease (meningitis, encephalitis, or acute flaccid paralysis Fatal encephalitis is more common in older people.

An epidemic in 2002 in the United States was the largest arbovirus meningoencephalitis epidemic documented in th Western Hemisphere. There were 3389 reported cases of human West Nile virus illness, 69% with meningoencepha and 21% with West Nile fever. Over 9000 cases occurred in horses. In 2005, a total of 2744 cases of West Nile viru disease in humans was reported in the United States, 42% of which were neuroinvasive disease. (The large percentage of neuroinvasive disease reflects underreporting of other infections.)

The 2002 West Nile virus epidemic included the first documented cases of person-to-person transmission through organ transplantation, blood transfusion, in utero, and perhaps breast feeding.

West Nile virus produces viremia and an acute, mild febrile disease with lymphadenopathy and rash. Transitory meningeal involvement may occur during the acute stage. Only one antigenic type of virus exists, and immunity is presumably permanent.

A West Nile vaccine for horses became available in 2003. There is no human vaccine.

JAPANESE B ENCEPHALITIS

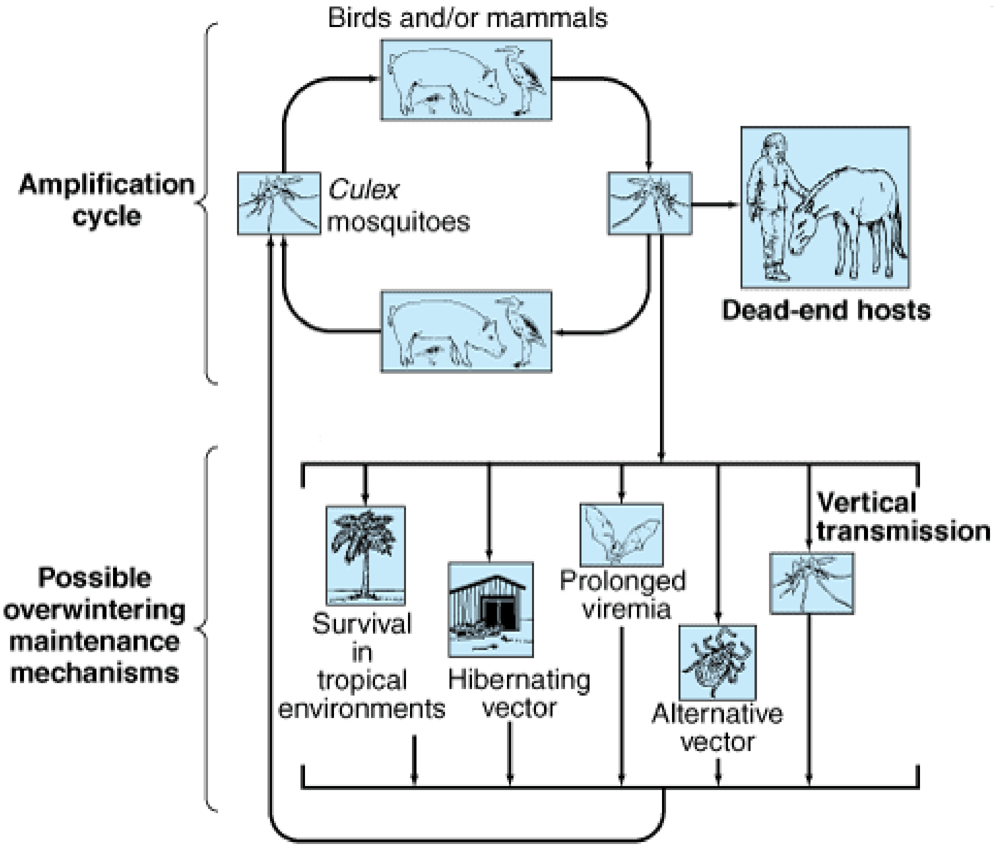
Japanese B encephalitis is the leading cause of viral encephalitis in Asia (Figure 382). About 50,000 cases occur annually in China, Japan, Korea, and the Indian subcontinent, with 10,000 deaths, mostly among children and the elderly. Mortality can exceed 30%. A high percentage of survivors (up to 30%) are left with neurologic and psychiat sequelae. Seroprevalence studies indicate nearly universal exposure to Japanese B encephalitis virus by adulthood. The estimated ratio of asymptomatic to symptomatic infections is 300:1. Infections during the first and second trimesters of pregnancy have reportedly led to fetal death.

Arbovirus Host-Vector Transmission Cycles

Infection of humans by mosquito-borne encephalitis viruses occurs when a mosquito or another arthropod bites firs an infected animal and later a human.

The equine encephalitideseastern, western, and Venezuelanare transmitted by culicine mosquitoes to horses or humans from a mosquito-bird-mosquito cycle (Figure 385). Equines, like humans, are unessential hosts for the maintenance of the virus. Both eastern and Venezuelan equine encephalitis in horses are severe, with up to 90% of affected animals dying. Epizootic western equine encephalitis is less frequently fatal for horses. In addition, eastern equine encephalitis produces severe epizootics in certain domestic game birds. A mosquito-bird-mosquito cycle also occurs in St. Louis encephalitis, West Nile virus, and Japanese B encephalitis. Swine are an important host of Japane B encephalitis. Mosquitoes remain infected for life (several weeks to months). Only the female feeds on blood and c feed and transmit the virus more than once. The cells of the mosquito's midgut are the site of primary viral multiplication. This is followed by viremia and invasion of organschiefly salivary glands and nerve tissue, where secondary viral multiplication occurs. The arthropod remains healthy.

Figure 385.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

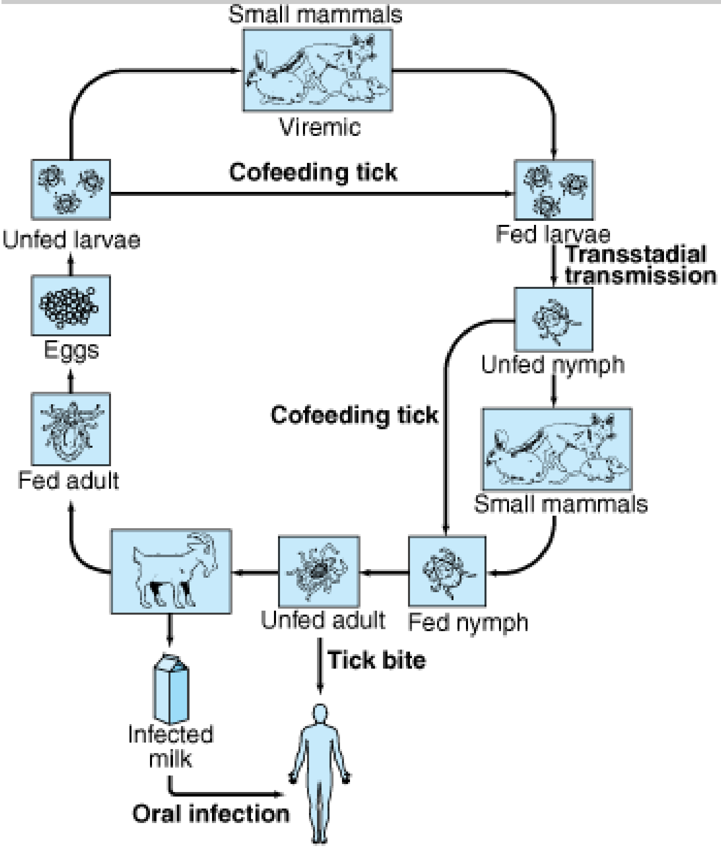
Generalized transmission cycle of mosquito-borne flaviviruses causing encephalitis. Summertime amplification and possible overwintering mechanisms are shown. Humans are dead-end hosts and do not contribute to perpetuation of virus transmissior Wild birds are the most common viremic hosts, but pigs play an important role in the case of Japanese encephalitis virus. The pattern shown applies to many (but not all) flaviviruses.

(Adapted from Monath TP, Heinz FX: Flaviviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

Infection of insectivorous bats with arboviruses produces a viremia that lasts 612 days without any illness or pathologic changes in the bat. While the viral concentration is high, the infected bat may infect mosquitoes that are then able to transmit the infection to wild birds and domestic fowl as well as to other bats.

There are also tick-borne flavivirus encephalitides, such as Russian spring-summer encephalitis. This disease occurs chiefly in the early summer, particularly in humans exposed to the ticks *Ixodes persulcatus* and *Ixodes ricinus* in uncleared forest areas. Ticks can become infected at any stage in their metamorphosis, and virus can be transmitte transovarially (Figure 386). Virus is secreted in the milk of infected goats for long periods, and infection may be transmitted to those who drink unpasteurized milk. Powassan encephalitis virus was the first member of the Russiar spring-summer complex isolated in North America. The original fatal case was reported from Canada in 1959. Huma infection is rare.

Figure 386.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Generalized transmission cycle of tick-borne flaviviruses, showing hosts for larval, nymphal, and adult ticks. Virus is passed to succeeding tick stages during moulting (transstadial transmission), as well as transovarially to progeny of adult ticks. Both ma and female ticks are involved in transmission. Tick-borne encephalitis virus may be transmitted to uninfected ticks cofeeding o vertebrate host without the requirement for active viremic infection of the host.

(Adapted from Monath TP, Heinz FX: Flaviviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

Overwintering of Arboviruses

The epidemiology of the arthropod-borne encephalitides must account for the maintenance and dissemination of the viruses in nature in the absence of humans. Viruses have been isolated from mosquitoes and ticks, which serve as reservoirs of infection. In ticks, the viruses may pass from generation to generation by the transovarian route, and i such instances the tick acts as a true reservoir of the virus as well as its vector (Figure 386). In tropical climates, where mosquito populations are present throughout the year, arboviruses cycle continually between mosquitoes and reservoir animals.

In temperate climates, the virus may be reintroduced each year from the outside (eg, by birds migrating from tropi areas) or it may survive the winter in the local area. Possible but unproved overwintering mechanisms include the following (Figures 385 and 386): (1) Hibernating mosquitoes at the time of their emergence may reinfect birds; (2) the virus may remain latent in winter within birds, mammals, or arthropods; and (3) cold-blooded vertebrates (snakes, turtles, lizards, alligators, frogs) may act as winter reservoirs. Mosquitoes can be infected by feeding on emerged snakes and then transmit the virus. Virus has been found in the blood of wild snakes.

Mosquitoes are closely associated with bats, both in summer and during the winter (in hibernation sites). The mosquito-bat-mosquito cycle may be a possible overwintering mechanism for some arboviruses.

Treatment & Control

There is no specific treatment. Biologic control of the natural vertebrate host is generally impractical, especially whe the hosts are wild birds. The most effective method is arthropod control, such as spraying of insecticides to kill mosquitoes. Personal measures include avoiding mosquitoes by using repellents and wearing protective clothing. Houses should have adequate window screens.

Effective killed-virus vaccines have been developed to protect horses against eastern, western, and Venezuelan equ encephalitis. An attenuated live-virus vaccine for Venezuelan equine encephalitis is available for curtailing epidemics among horses. These vaccines are not for human use. Experimental inactivated human vaccines against eastern, western, and Venezuelan equine encephalitis viruses are available on an investigational basis to protect laboratory workers. A killed-virus vaccine for Japanese B encephalitis is used in some Asian countries. The vaccine is available the United States for individuals traveling to endemic countries.

YELLOW FEVER

Yellow fever virus is the prototype member of the Flaviviridae family. It causes yellow fever, an acute, febrile, mosquito-borne illness that occurs only in Africa and South America (Figure 382). Severe cases are characterized by liver and renal dysfunction and hemorrhage, with high mortality.

Based on sequence analysis, at least seven genotypes of yellow fever virus have been identified, five in Africa and t in South America. There is a single serotype.

Yellow fever virus multiplies in many different types of animals and in mosquitoes and grows in embryonated eggs, chick embryo cell cultures, and cell lines, including those of monkey, human, hamster, and mosquito origin.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The virus is introduced by a mosquito through the skin where it multiplies. It spreads to the local lymph nodes, liver spleen, kidney, bone marrow, and myocardium, where it may persist for days. It is present in the blood early during infection.

The lesions of yellow fever are due to the localization and propagation of the virus in a particular organ. Infections may result in necrotic lesions in the liver and kidney. Degenerative changes also occur in the spleen, lymph nodes, a heart. Serious disease is characterized by hemorrhage and circulatory collapse. Virus injury to the myocardium may contribute to shock.

Clinical Findings

The incubation period is 36 days. At the abrupt onset, the patient has fever, chills, headache, dizziness, myalgia, an backachefollowed by nausea, vomiting, and bradycardia. During this initial "period of infection," which lasts several days, the patient is viremic and a source of infection for mosquitoes. There may be a brief abatement of fever and symptoms; some patients recover at this point. In about 15% of cases, the disease progresses to a more severe for with fever, jaundice, renal failure, and hemorrhagic manifestations. The vomitus may be black with altered blood. Some patients have clotting abnormalities. When the disease progresses to the severe stage (hepato-renal failure), the mortality rate is high (20% or higher), especially among young children and the elderly. Death occurs on day 71 of illness. Encephalitis is rare.

On the other hand, the infection may be so mild as to go unrecognized. Regardless of severity, there are no sequela patients either die or recover completely.

Laboratory Diagnosis

VIRUS DETECTION OR ISOLATION

The virus may be recovered from the blood the first 4 days after onset, or from postmortem tissue by intracerebral inoculation of mice or by use of cell lines. Virus antigen or nucleic acid can be identified in tissue specimens using immunohistochemistry, ELISA antigen capture, or polymerase chain reaction tests.

SEROLOGY

IgM antibodies appear during the first week of illness. The detection of IgM antibody by ELISA capture in a single sample provides a presumptive diagnosis, with confirmation by a fourfold or greater rise in titer of neutralizing antibody between acute phase and convalescent phase serum samples. Older serologic methods, such as HI, have largely been replaced by ELISA. Specific hemagglutination-inhibiting antibodies appear first, followed rapidly by antibodies to other flaviviruses.

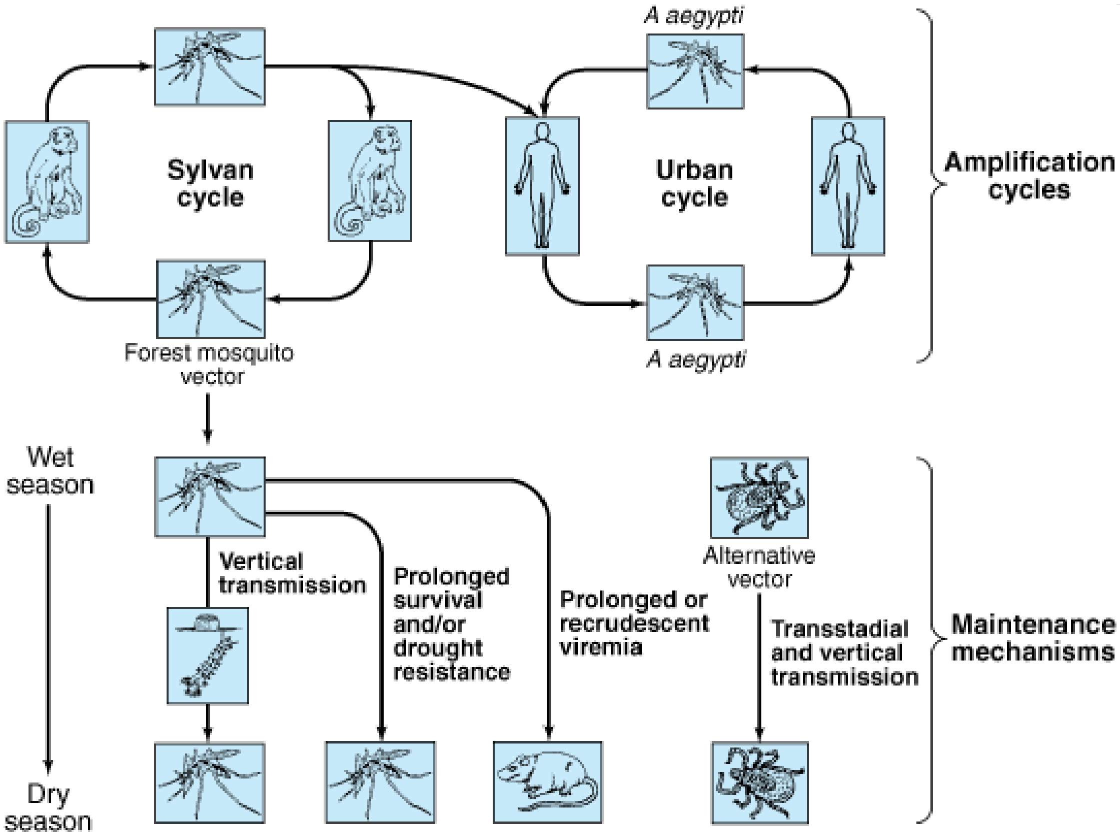
Immunity

Neutralizing antibodies develop about a week into the illness and are responsible for viral clearance. Neutralizing antibodies endure for life and provide complete protection from disease. Demonstration of neutralizing antibodies is the only useful test for immunity to yellow fever.

Epidemiology

Two major epidemiologic cycles of transmission of yellow fever are recognized: (1) urban yellow fever and (2) jungl yellow fever (Figure 387). Urban yellow fever involves person-to-person transmission by domestic *Aedes* mosquitoe In the western hemisphere and West Africa, this species is primarily *Aedes aegypti,* which breeds in the accumulatic of water that accompany human settlement. In areas where *A aegypti* has been eliminated or suppressed, urban yellow fever has disappeared.

Figure 387.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Transmission cycles of yellow fever and dengue viruses. These viruses have enzootic maintenance cycles involving *Aedes* vect and nonhuman primates. Dengue viruses are transmitted principally between humans and *Aedes aegypti* that breed in domest water containers. In the case of yellow fever, sylvatic (jungle) transmission is widespread throughout the geographic distributi of the virus. In tropical America, human yellow fever cases derive from contact with forest mosquito vectors, and there have been no cases of urban (*A aegypti* -borne) yellow fever for over 50 years. In Africa, sylvatic vectors are responsible for monke monkey and interhuman virus transmission, and there is frequent involvement of *A aegypti* in urban and dry savanna regions.

(Adapted from Monath TP, Heinz FX: Flaviviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

Jungle yellow fever is primarily a disease of monkeys. In South America and Africa, it is transmitted from monkey t monkey by arboreal mosquitoes (ie, *Haemagogus, Aedes*) that inhabit the moist forest canopy. The infection in animals may be severe or inapparent. The virus multiplies in mosquitoes, which remain infectious for life. Persons involved in forest clearing activities come in contact with these mosquitoes in the forest and become infected.

Yellow fever has not invaded Asia, even though the vector, *A aegypti,* is widely distributed there.

Yellow fever continues to infect and kill thousands of persons worldwide because they have failed to be immunized. is estimated that annually, yellow fever strikes 200,000 persons, of whom about 30,000 die. The majority of outbre

(~90%) occur in Africa. Epidemics usually occur in a typical emergence zone for yellow fever: humid and semihumi savanna adjoining a rain forest where the sylvatic cycle is maintained in a large monkey population. During epidemi in Africa, the infection:case ratio ranges from 20:1 to 2:1. All age groups are susceptible.

Yellow fever in the Americas presents epidemiologic features typical of its jungle cycle: Most cases are in males age 1545 years and engaged in agricultural or forestry activities.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

There is no antiviral drug therapy.

Vigorous mosquito abatement programs have virtually eliminated urban yellow fever throughout much of South America; however, vector control is impractical in many parts of Africa. The last reported outbreak of yellow fever i the United States occurred in 1905. However, with the speed of modern air travel, the threat of a yellow fever outbreak exists wherever *A aegypti* is present. Most countries insist upon proper mosquito control on airplanes and vaccination of all persons at least 10 days before arrival in or from an endemic zone.

The 17D strain of yellow fever virus is an excellent attenuated live-virus vaccine. During the serial passage of a pantropic strain of yellow fever virus through tissue cultures, the relatively avirulent 17D strain was recovered. This strain lost its capacity to induce viscerotropic or neurotropic disease and has been used as a vaccine for over 70 yea

The virulent Asibi strain of yellow fever virus has been sequenced and its sequence compared with that of the 17D vaccine strain, which was derived from it. These two strains are separated by more than 240 passages. The two RN genomes (10,862 nucleotides long) differ at 68 nucleotide positions, resulting in a total of 32 amino acid differences

Vaccine is prepared in eggs and dispensed as a dried powder. It is a live virus and must be kept cold. A single dose produces a good antibody response in over 95% of vaccinated persons that persists for at least 30 years. After vaccination, the virus multiplies and may be isolated from the blood before antibodies develop.

Vaccination is contraindicated for infants under 9 months of age, during pregnancy, and in persons with egg allergie or altered immune systems (eg, human immunodeficiency virus infection, malignancy, organ transplantation).

The 17D vaccine is safe. More than 400 million doses of yellow fever vaccine have been administered and severe adverse reactions are extremely rare. There have been about two dozen cases worldwide of vaccine-associated neurotropic disease (postvaccinal encephalitis), most of which occurred in infants. In 2000, a serious syndrome calle yellow fever vaccine-associated viscerotropic disease was described. Less than 20 cases of multiple organ system failure in vaccine recipients have been reported worldwide.

Vaccination is the most effective preventive measure against yellow fever, a potentially severe infection with a high death rate for which there is no specific treatment.

DENGUE

Dengue (**breakbone fever**) is a mosquito-borne infection caused by a flavivirus that is characterized by fever, seve headache, muscle and joint pain, nausea and vomiting, eye pain, and rash. A severe form of the disease, dengue hemorrhagic fever/dengue shock syndrome, principally affects children. Dengue is endemic in more than 100 countries.

Clinical Findings

Clinical disease begins 47 days (range of 314 days) after an infective mosquito bite. The onset of fever may be sud or there may be prodromal symptoms of malaise, chills, and headache. Pains soon develop, especially in the back, joints, muscles, and eyeballs. Viremia is present at the onset of fever and may persist for 35 days. The temperature returns to normal after 56 days or may subside on about the third day and rise again about 58 days after onset ("saddleback" form). Myalgia and deep bone pain (breakbone fever) are characteristic. A rash may appear on the th or fourth day and last for 15 days. Lymph nodes are frequently enlarged. Classic dengue fever is a self-limited disea Convalescence may take weeks, although complications and death are rare. Especially in young children, dengue ma be a mild febrile illness lasting a short time.

A severe syndromedengue hemorrhagic fever may occur in individuals (usually children) with passively acquired maternal antibody) or preexisting nonneutralizing heterologous dengue antibody due to a previous infection with a different serotype of virus. Although initial symptoms simulate normal dengue, the patient's condition abruptly worsens. Dengue shock syndrome, a more severe form of the disease characterized by shock and hemoconcentration, may ensue. Circumstantial evidence suggests that secondary infection with dengue type 2 following a type 1 infection is a particular risk factor for severe disease. The pathogenesis of the severe syndrome involves preexisting dengue antibody. It is postulated that virus-antibody complexes are formed within a few days c the second dengue infection and that the nonneutralizing enhancing antibodies promote infection of higher numbers mononuclear cells, followed by the release of cytokines, vasoactive mediators, and procoagulants, leading to the disseminated intravascular coagulation seen in the hemorrhagic fever syndrome.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction-based methods are available for rapid identification and serotypin dengue virus in acute-phase serum, roughly during the period of fever. Isolation of the virus is difficult. The current favored approach is inoculation of a mosquito cell line with patient serum, coupled with nucleic acid assays to identi a recovered virus.

Serological diagnosis is complicated by cross-reactivity of IgG antibodies to heterologous flavivirus antigens. A varie of methods are available; the most commonly used methods are E/M viral protein-specific capture IgM or IgG ELISA and the hemagglutination inhibition test. IgM antibodies develop within a few days of illness. Neutralizing and hemagglutination-inhibiting antibodies appear within a week after onset of dengue fever. Analysis of paired acute ar convalescent sera to show a significant rise in antibody titer is the most reliable evidence of an active dengue infection.

Immunity

Four serotypes of the virus exist that can be distinguished by molecular-based assays and by Nt tests. Infection confers lifelong protection against that serotype, but cross-protection between serotypes is of short duration. Reinfection with a virus of a different serotype after the primary attack is more apt to result in severe disease (deng hemorrhagic fever).

Epidemiology

Dengue viruses are distributed worldwide in tropical regions (Figure 382). Most subtropical and tropical regions arou the world where *Aedes* vectors exist are endemic areas. In the last 20 years, epidemic dengue has emerged as a problem in the Americas. In 1995, more than 200,000 cases of dengue and over 5500 cases of dengue hemorrhagic fever occurred in Central and South America. The changing disease patterns are probably related to rapid urban population growth, overcrowding, and lax mosquito control efforts.

Dengue in 2005 is the most important mosquito-borne viral disease affecting humans. There are an estimated 50 million or more cases of dengue annually worldwide, with 400,000 cases of dengue hemorrhagic fever. The latter is leading cause of childhood death in several Asian countries.

The risk of the hemorrhagic fever syndrome is about 0.2% during the first dengue infection but is at least tenfold higher during infection with a second dengue virus serotype. The fatality rate with dengue hemorrhagic fever can reach 15%, but can be reduced to less than 1% with proper treatment.

The ratio of inapparent to apparent infections is variable but may be about 15:1 for primary infections; the ratio is lower in secondary infections.

In urban communities, dengue epidemics are explosive and involve appreciable portions of the population. They oft start during the rainy season, when the vector mosquito, *A aegypti,* is abundant (Figure 387). The mosquito breeds tropical or semitropical climates in water-holding receptacles or in plants close to human dwellings.

A aegypti is the primary vector mosquito for dengue in the western hemisphere. The female acquires the virus by feeding upon a viremic human. After a period of 814 days, mosquitoes are infective and probably remain so for life months). In the tropics, mosquito breeding throughout the year maintains the disease.

World War II was responsible for the spread of dengue from Southeast Asia throughout the Pacific region. Only den type 2 was present in the Americas for years. Then, in 1977, a dengue type 1 virus was detected; this was the first time type 1 virus had been isolated in the western hemisphere. In 1981, dengue type 4 was first recognized in the western hemisphere, followed in 1994 by dengue type 3. The viruses are now spread throughout Central and South America, and dengue hemorrhagic fever is endemic in many countries.

Endemic dengue in the Caribbean and Mexico is a constant threat to the United States, where *A aegypti* mosquitoes are prevalent in the summer months. Concurrent with the increased epidemic activity of dengue in the tropics, ther has been an increase in the number of cases imported into the United States.

A albopictus, a mosquito of Asian origin, was discovered in Texas in 1985; by 1989 it had spread throughout the southeastern United States, where *A aegypti,* the principal vector of dengue virus, is prevalent. In contrast to *A aegypti,* which cannot overwinter in northern states, *A albopictus* can overwinter farther north, increasing the risk o epidemic dengue in the United States.

Treatment & Control

There is no antiviral drug therapy. Dengue hemorrhagic fever can be treated by fluid replacement therapy. There is vaccine, but candidate vaccines are under development. Vaccine development is difficult because a vaccine must provide protection against all four serotypes of virus.

Control depends upon antimosquito measures, eg, elimination of breeding places and the use of insecticides. Scree windows and doors can reduce exposure to the vectors.

BUNYAVIRUS ENCEPHALITIS

The Bunyaviridae family contains more than 300 viruses, mostly arthropod-transmitted. Spherical particles measuri 80120 nm contain a single-stranded, negative-sense or ambisense, triple-segmented RNA genome 1119 kb in total size. The envelope has two glycoproteins. Several member viruses produce mosquito-borne encephalitides of huma and animals; others cause hemorrhagic fevers. Transovarial transmission occurs in some mosquitoes. Some are transmitted by sandflies. A recently recognized disease, hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, is caused by a virus transmitted by rodents. Bunyaviruses are sensitive to inactivation by heat, detergents, formaldehyde, and low pH; some are hemagglutinating (Figure 381).

The California encephalitis virus complex comprises 14 antigenically related viruses in the *Orthobunyavirus* genus of the family. This includes La Crosse virus, a significant human pathogen in the United States (Table 382). La Crosse virus is a major cause of encephalitis and aseptic meningitis in children, particularly in the upper Midwest. Most case occur between July and September in children under the age of 16. There are about 70 cases of La Crosse encephal reported per year.

The viruses are transmitted by various woodland mosquitoes, primarily *Aedes triseriatus.* Principal vertebrate hosts are small mammals such as squirrels, chipmunks, and rabbits. Human infection is tangential. Overwintering can occ in eggs of the mosquito vector. The virus is transmitted transovarially, and adult mosquitoes that develop from infected eggs can transmit the virus by bite.

The onset of California encephalitis viral infection is abrupt, typically with a severe bifrontal headache, a fever of 38 C, and in some cases vomiting, lethargy, and convulsions. About half the patients develop seizures, and the case-fatality rate is about 1%. Less frequently, there is only aseptic meningitis. The illness lasts 1014 days, although convalescence may be prolonged. Neurologic sequelae are rare. There are many infections for every case of encephalitis. Serologic confirmation by HI, ELISA, or Nt tests is done on acute and convalescent specimens.

SANDFLY FEVER

Sandfly fever is a mild, insect-borne disease that occurs commonly in countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea an in Russia, Iran, Pakistan, India, Panama, Brazil, and Trinidad. Sandfly fever (also called *Phlebotomus* fever) is cause by a bunyavirus in the *Phlebovirus* genus (Table 381).

The disease is transmitted by the female sandfly, *Phlebotomus papatasii* , a midge only a few millimeters in size. In the tropics, the sandfly is prevalent all year; in cooler climates, only during the warm seasons. Transovarial transmission occurs.

In endemic areas, infection is common in childhood. When nonimmune adults (eg, troops) arrive, large outbreaks ca occur among the new arrivals and are occasionally mistaken for malaria.

In humans, the bite of the sandfly results in small itching papules on the skin that persist for up to 5 days. The disea begins abruptly after an incubation period of 36 days. The virus is found in the blood briefly near the time of onset o symptoms. Clinical features consist of headache, malaise, nausea, fever, photophobia, stiffness of the neck and bac abdominal pain, and leukopenia. All patients recover. There is no specific treatment.

Sandflies are most common just above the ground. Because of their small size, they can pass through ordinary screens and mosquito nets. The insect feeds primarily at night. Prevention of disease in endemic areas relies on use insect repellents during the night and residual insecticides around living quarters.

RIFT VALLEY FEVER

The agent of this disease, a bunyavirus of the *Phlebovirus* genus, is a mosquito-borne zoonotic virus pathogenic primarily for domestic livestock. Humans are secondarily infected during the course of epizootics in domesticated animals. Infection among laboratory workers is common.

Epizootics occur periodically following heavy rains that allow hatches of the primary vector and reservoir (*Aedes* species mosquitoes). Viremia in animals leads to infection of other vectors with collateral transmission to humans. Transmission to humans is primarily by contact with infected animal blood and body fluids and mosquito bites.

Disease in humans is usually a mild febrile illness that is short-lived, and recovery almost always is complete. Complications include retinitis, encephalitis, and hemorrhagic fever. Permanent loss of vision may occur (110% of cases with retinitis). About 1% of infected patients die.

Rift Valley fever exists in most countries of sub-Saharan Africa. It spread in 1977 to Egypt, where it caused enormo losses of sheep and cattle and thousands of human cases, with 600 deaths. A large outbreak occurred in West Afric 1987 and in East Africa in 1997. The first documented spread of Rift Valley fever virus outside of Africa occurred in 2000 in Yemen and Saudi Arabia.

COLORADO TICK FEVER

A few arboviruses are members of the family Reoviridae (see Chapter 37). Colorado tick fever is classified in the ge *Coltivirus.* African horse sickness and bluetongue viruses are in the genus *Orbivirus.* Rotaviruses and orthoreovirus have no arthropod vectors.

Colorado tick fever, also called mountain fever or tick fever, is transmitted by a tick (Table 381). The virus appears be antigenically distinct from other known viruses, and only one antigenic type is recognized.

Colorado tick fever is a mild febrile disease, without rash. The incubation period is 46 days. The disease has a sudd onset with fever and myalgia. Symptoms include headache, muscle and joint pains, lethargy, and nausea and vomiting. The temperature is usually diphasic. After the first bout of 2 days, the patient may feel well, but symptom reappear and last 34 more days. The disease in humans is self-limited (Table 382).

The virus may be isolated from whole blood by inoculation of cell cultures. Viremia may persist for 4 weeks or longe Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction assays can detect viral RNA in red blood cells and in plasma. Speci neutralizing antibodies appear in the second week of illness that can be detected by plaque reduction tests. Other serologic assays include ELISA and fluorescent antibody tests. A single infection is believed to produce lasting immunity.

There are several hundred reported cases of Colorado tick fever annually, but that is believed to be only a fraction o total cases. The disease is limited to areas where the wood tick *Dermacentor andersoni* is distributed, primarily high altitudes in the western United States and southwestern Canada. Patients have been in a tick-infested area before onset of symptoms. Cases occur chiefly in young men, the group with greatest exposure to ticks. *D andersoni* collec in nature can carry the virus. This tick is a true reservoir, and the virus is transmitted transovarially by the adult female. Natural infection occurs in rodents, which act as hosts for immature stages of the tick.

There is no specific therapy. The disease can be prevented by avoiding tick-infested areas and by using protective clothing or repellent chemicals.

INTRODUCTION

The zoonotic rodent-borne hemorrhagic fevers include Asian (eg, Hantaan and Seoul viruses), South American (eg, Junin and Machupo viruses), and African (Lassa virus) fevers. Hantaviruses also cause a hantavirus pulmonary syndrome in the Americas (eg, Sin Nombre virus). The natural reservoirs of Marburg and Ebola viruses (African hemorrhagic fever) are not known, but it is suspected that they are harbored by rodents or bats. The causative age are classified as bunyaviruses, arenaviruses, and filoviruses (Table 381).

BUNYAVIRUS DISEASES

Hantaviruses are classified in the *Hantavirus* genus of the Bunyaviridae family. The viruses are found worldwide and cause two serious and often fatal human diseases: hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS) and hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS). It is estimated there are 100,000200,000 cases of hantavirus infection annually worldwide. There are several distinct hantaviruses, each associated with a specific rodent host. The virus infections rodents are lifelong and without deleterious effects. Transmission among rodents seems to occur horizontally, and transmission to humans occurs by inhaling aerosols of rodent excreta (urine, feces, saliva). The presence of hantavirus-associated diseases is determined by the geographic distribution of the rodent reservoirs.

Hemorrhagic Fever with Renal Syndrome

Hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS) is an acute viral infection that causes an interstitial nephritis that ca lead to acute renal insufficiency and renal failure in severe forms of the disease. Hantaan and Dobrava viruses caus the severe disease that occurs in Asia, particularly in China, Russia, and Korea, and in Europe, primarily in the Balkans. Generalized hemorrhage and shock may occur, with a case-fatality rate of 515%. A moderate form of HFR caused by Seoul virus occurs throughout Eurasia. In a mild clinical form, called nephropathia epidemica, which is caused by Puumala virus and is prevalent in Scandinavia, the nephritis generally resolves without hemorrhagic complications, and fatalities are rare (< 1%).

More than 2000 cases of HFRS occurred among United Nations troops during the Korean war, but Hantaan virus wa not isolated until 1976 in Korea from a rodent, *Apodemus agrarius.*

Urban rats are known to be persistently infected with hantaviruses, and it has been suggested that rats on trading ships may have dispersed hantaviruses worldwide. Serosurveys indicated that brown Norway rats in the United Stat are infected with Seoul virus. Infected laboratory rats were proved to be sources of Hantaan outbreaks in scientific institutes in Europe and Asia, but such infections have not been detected in laboratory rats raised in the United Stat Hantavirus infections have occurred in persons whose occupations place them in contact with rats (eg, longshoreme

HFRS is treated using supportive therapy. Prevention depends on rodent control and protection from exposure to rodent droppings and contaminated material.

Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome

In 1993 an outbreak of severe respiratory illness occurred in the United States, now designated the hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS). It was found to be caused by a novel hantavirus (Sin Nombre virus). This agent was th first hantavirus recognized to cause disease in North America and the first to cause primarily an adult respiratory distress syndrome. Since that time, numerous hantaviruses have been detected in rodents in North, Central, and South America (Table 382).

The deer mouse (*Peromyscus maniculatus*) is the primary rodent reservoir for Sin Nombre virus. Deer mice are widespread and about 10% of those tested show evidence of infection with Sin Nombre virus. Other hantaviruses known to cause HPS in the United States include New York virus, Black Creek Canal virus, and Bayou virus, each having a different rodent host. HPS is more common in South America than in the United States. Andes virus is one causative hantavirus and is found in Argentina and Chile. Choclo virus has been identified in Panama.

Infections with hantaviruses are not common, and subclinical infections appear to be unusual, particularly with Sin Nombre virus. HPS is generally severe, with reported mortality rates of 30% or greater. This case-fatality rate is substantially higher than that of other hantavirus infections. The disease begins with fever, headache, and myalgia, followed by rapidly progressive pulmonary edema, often leading to severe respiratory compromise. There are no sig of hemorrhage. Hantaviral antigens are detected in endothelial cells and macrophages in lung, heart, spleen, and lymph nodes. Pathogenesis of HPS involves the functional impairment of vascular endothelium. Person-to-person transmission of hantaviruses seldom occurs, though it has been observed during outbreaks of HPS caused by Andes virus.

Laboratory diagnosis depends on detection of viral nucleic acid by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction, detection of viral antigens in fixed tissues by immunohistochemistry, or detection of specific antibodies using recombinant proteins. An ELISA test to detect IgM antibodies may be used to diagnose acute infections. A fourfold r in IgG antibody titer between acute and convalescent sera is diagnostic. IgG antibodies are long lasting. Isolation of hantaviruses is difficult and requires the use of containment facilities.

Current therapy for hantavirus pulmonary syndrome consists of maintenance of adequate oxygenation and support hemodynamic functioning. The antiviral drug ribavirin is of some benefit as therapy in HPS. Preventive measures ar based on rodent control and avoidance of contact with rodents and rodent droppings. Care must be taken to avoid inhaling aerosolized dried excreta when cleaning rodent-infested structures.

ARENAVIRUS DISEASES

Arenaviruses are typified by pleomorphic particles that contain a segmented RNA genome; are surrounded by an envelope with large, club-shaped peplomers; and measure 50300 nm in diameter (mean, 110130 nm) (Figure 381) The arenavirus genome consists of two single-stranded RNA molecules with unusual ambisense genetic organization

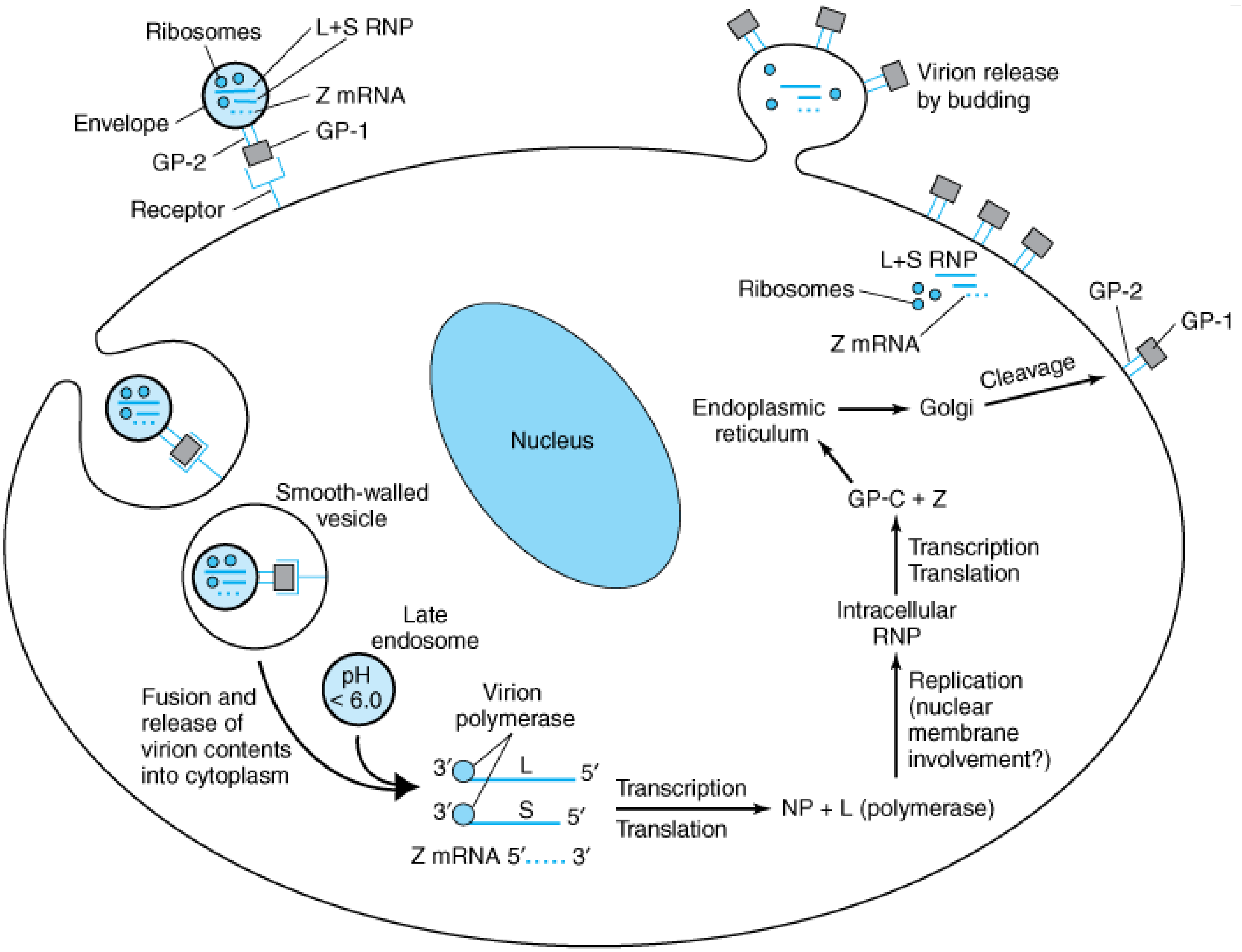
Based on sequence data, arenaviruses are divided into Old World viruses (eg, Lassa virus) and New World viruses. T latter division is divided into three groups, with Group A including Pichinde virus and Group B containing the human pathogenic viruses, such as Machupo virus. Some isolates, such as Whitewater Arroyo virus, appear to be recombinants between New World lineages A and B.

Arenaviruses establish chronic infections in rodents. Each virus is generally associated with a single rodent species. The geographic distribution of a given arenavirus is determined in part by the range of its rodent host. Humans are infected when they come in contact with rodent excreta. Some viruses cause severe hemorrhagic fever. Several arenaviruses are known to infect the fetus and may cause fetal death in humans.

Multiple arenaviruses cause human disease, including Lassa, Junin, Machupo, Guanarito, Sabia, Whitewater Arroyo, and lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCM) (Table 381). Because these arenaviruses are infectious by aerosols, great care must be taken when processing rodent and human specimens. High-level containment conditions are required i the laboratory. Transmission of arenaviruses in the natural rodent hosts may occur by vertical and horizontal routes Milk, saliva, and urine may be involved in transmission. Arthropod vectors are believed not to be involved.

A generalized replication cycle is shown in Figure 388. Host ribosomes are encapsidated during the morphogenesis virus particles. Arenaviruses typically do not cause cytopathic effects when replicating in cultured cells.

Figure 388.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The arenavirus life cycle.

(Courtesy of PJ Southern.)

Lassa Fever

The first recognized cases of Lassa fever occurred in 1969 among Americans stationed in the Nigerian village of Las
Lassa virus is highly virulentthe mortality rate is about 15% for patients hospitalized with Lassa fever. Overall, abou
1% of Lassa virus infections are fatal. In western Africa, estimates are that the annual toll may reach several hundr
thousand infections and 5000 deaths. Lassa virus is active in all western African countries situated between Senega
and Republic of Congo. Occasional cases identified outside the endemic area usually are imported, often by persons returning from West Africa.

The incubation period for Lassa fever is 13 weeks from time of exposure. The disease can involve many organ systems, although symptoms may vary in the individual patient. Onset is gradual, with fever, vomiting, and back ar chest pain. The disease is characterized by very high fever, mouth ulcers, severe muscle aches, skin rash with hemorrhages, pneumonia, and heart and kidney damage. Deafness is a common complication, affecting about 25% cases during recovery; hearing loss is often permanent.

Lassa virus infections cause fetal death in more than 75% of pregnant women. During the third trimester, maternal mortality is increased (30%) and fetal mortality is very high (> 90%). Benign febrile cases do occur.

Diagnosis usually involves detection of IgM and IgG antibodies by ELISA. Immunohistochemistry can be used to det viral antigens in postmortem tissue specimens. Viral sequences can be detected using reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction assays in research laboratories.

A house rat *(Mastomys natalensis)* is the principal rodent reservoir of Lassa virus. Rodent control measures are one way to minimize virus spread but are often impractical in endemic areas. The virus can be transmitted by human-to human contact. When the virus spreads within a hospital, human contact is the mode of transmission. Meticulous barrier nursing procedures and standard precautions to avoid contact with virus-contaminated blood and body fluid can prevent transmission to hospital personnel.

The antiviral drug ribavirin is the drug of choice for Lassa fever and is most effective if given early in the disease process. No vaccine exists, although a vaccinia virus recombinant that expresses the glycoprotein gene of Lassa viru is able to induce protective immunity both in guinea pigs and in monkeys.

South American Hemorrhagic Fevers

Based on both serologic and phylogenetic studies of viral RNA, the South American arenaviruses are all considered t be members of the Tacaribe complex. Most have cricetid rodent reservoirs. The viruses tend to be prevalent in a particular area, limited in their distribution. Numerous viruses have been discovered; serious human pathogens are the closely related Junin, Machupo, Guanarito, and Sabia viruses. Bleeding is more common in Argentine (Junin) an other South American hemorrhagic fevers than in Lassa fever.

Junin hemorrhagic fever (Argentine hemorrhagic fever) is a major public health problem in certain agricultural areas of Argentina; over 18,000 cases were reported between 1958 and 1980, with a mortality rate of 1015% in untreated patients. Many cases continue to occur each year. The disease has a marked seasonal variation, and the infection occurs almost exclusively among workers in maize and wheat fields who are exposed to the reservoir rode *Calomys musculinus.*

Junin virus produces both humoral and cell-mediated immunodepression; deaths due to Junin hemorrhagic fever ma be related to an inability to initiate a cell-mediated immune response. Administration of convalescent human plasm to patients during the first week of illness reduced the mortality rate from 1530% to 1%. Some of these patients develop a self-limited neurologic syndrome 36 weeks later. An effective live-attenuated Junin virus vaccine is used t vaccinate high-risk individuals in South America.

The first outbreak of Machupo hemorrhagic fever (Bolivian hemorrhagic fever) was identified in Bolivia in 1962. I estimated that 20003000 persons were affected by the disease, with a case-fatality rate of 20%. An effective roden control program directed against infected *Calomys callosus,* the host of Machupo virus, was undertaken in Bolivia ar has greatly reduced the number of cases of Machupo hemorrhagic fever.

Guanarito virus (the agent of Venezuelan hemorrhagic fever) was identified in 1990; it has a mortality rate of about 33%. Its emergence was tied to clearance of forest land for small farm use. Sabia virus was isolated in 199 from a fatal case of hemorrhagic fever in Brazil. Both Guanarito virus and Sabia virus induce a clinical disease resembling that of Argentine hemorrhagic fever and probably have similar mortality rates.

Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis

LCM virus was discovered in 1933 and is widespread in Europe and the Americas. Its natural vector is the wild hous mouse, *Mus musculus.* It is endemic in mice and can be acquired by other rodents through exposure to infected mic About 5% of mice throughout the United States carry the virus. It may chronically infect mouse or hamster colonies and may infect pet rodents.

LCM virus is occasionally transmitted to humans, presumably via mouse droppings. There is no evidence of horizont person-to-person spread. LCM in humans is an acute disease manifested by aseptic meningitis or a mild systemic influenza-like illness. Rarely is there a severe encephalomyelitis or a fatal systemic disease in healthy people (mortality is less than 1%). Many infections are subclinical. The incubation period is usually 12 weeks. There may b fever, chills, malaise, generalized muscle aches and pains, weakness, headache, and sore throat. The illness lasts 1 weeks.

LCM virus infections can be serious in people with impaired immune systems. In 2005 four solid-organ transplant recipients in the United States became infected from a common organ donor. Three of the four organ recipients die 2327 days after transplantation. The source of the virus was determined to be a pet hamster recently purchased by the organ donor. The LCM virus also can be transmitted vertically from mother to fetus and infection of the fetus ea in pregnancy can lead to serious defects, such as hydrocephalus, blindness, and fetal death.

Infections are usually diagnosed retrospectively by serology using ELISA for IgM and IgG antibodies. Other diagnost approaches include immunohistochemical staining of tissues for viral antigens, reverse transcriptase-polymerase ch reaction for viral nucleic acid, and viral culture using Vero cells. Serological studies in urban areas have shown infection rates in humans ranging from 2% to 5%.

Experimental studies have shown that the immune response may be protective or deleterious in LCM-infected mice. cells are required to control the infection but may also induce immune-mediated disease. The result depends on the age, immune status, and genetic background of the mouse and the route of inoculation of the virus. Mice infected a adults may develop a rapidly fatal disease due to a T cell-mediated inflammatory response in the brain. Congenitall or neonatally infected mice do not become acutely ill but carry a lifelong persistent infection. They fail to clear the infection because they were infected before the cellular immune system matured. They make a strong antibody response that may lead to circulating viral antigen-antibody complexes and immune complex disease.

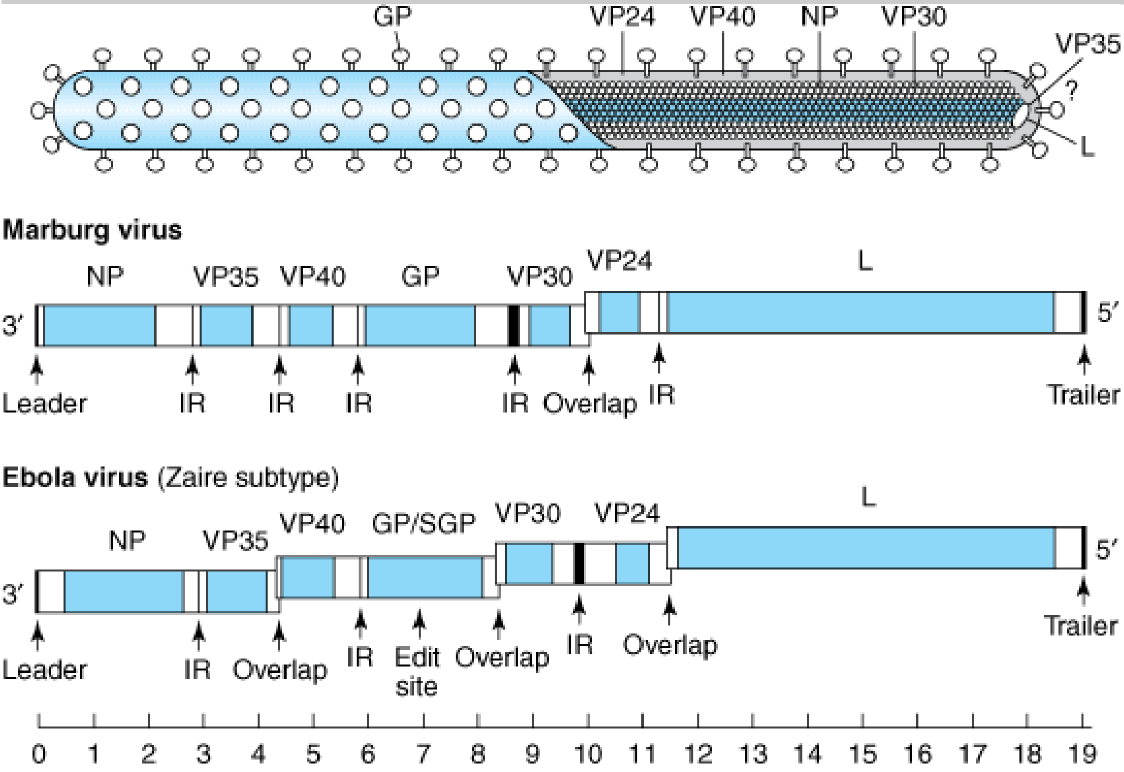
FILOVIRUS DISEASES

Classification & Properties of Filoviruses

Filoviruses are pleomorphic particles, appearing as long filamentous threads or as odd-shaped forms 80 nm in diameter (Figure 381). Unit-length particles are from 665 nm (Marburg) to 805 nm (Ebola). The two known filovirus (Marburg virus and Ebola virus) are antigenically distinct and are classified in separate genera (Table 381). The four subtypes of Ebola virus (Zaire, Sudan, Reston, Ivory Coast) differ from one another by up to 40% at the nucleotide level but share some common epitopes. The subtypes appear to be stable over time.

The large filovirus genome is single-stranded, nonsegmented, negative-sense RNA 19 kb in size and contains seven genes (Figure 389). An unusual coding strategy with the Ebola viruses is that the envelope glycoprotein (GP) is encoded in two reading frames and requires transcriptional editing or translational frameshifting to be expressed. T glycoprotein makes up the viral surface spikes in the form of trimers 10 nm in length. Virions are released via buddi from the plasma membrane.

Figure 389.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Virion structure and genome organization of filoviruses. The genome organization of Marburg virus and the Zaire subtype of Eb virus are shown. The diagram of the virion shows the single-strand, negative-sense RNA encased in the nucleocapsid and enveloped in a lipid bilayer membrane. Structural proteins associated with the nucleocapsid are the nucleoprotein (NP), VP30, VP35, and the polymerase (L) protein. Membrane-associated proteins are the matrix protein (VP40), VP24, and the GP (peplor glycoprotein). The genes encoding the structural proteins are identified and drawn to scale in the genome structures. Shaded areas denote the coding regions and white areas the noncoding sequences. Genes begin with a conserved transcriptional start site and end with a transcriptional stop (polyadenylation) site; adjoining genes are either separated from one another by an intergenic region (IR) or overlap one another. The site at which the additional A is added within the GP gene during transcriptional editing is indicated in the diagram of Ebola. The primary gene product of the GP gene of Ebola viruses is the SG a nonstructural secreted glycoprotein. At the extreme 3' and 5' ends of the genomes are the complementary leader and trailer sequences, respectively.

(Adapted from Peters CJ et al: Filoviridae: Marburg and Ebola viruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Filoviruses are highly virulent and require maximum containment facilities (Biosafety Level 4) for laboratory work. Filovirus infectivity is destroyed by heating for 30 minutes at 60 C, by ultraviolet and gamma irradiation, by lipid solvents, and by bleach and phenolic disinfectants. The natural hosts and vectors, if any, are unknown.

African Hemorrhagic Fevers (Marburg & Ebola Viruses)

Marburg and Ebola viruses are highly virulent in humans and nonhuman primates, with infections usually ending in death. The incubation period is 39 days for Marburg disease and 221 days for Ebola. They cause similar acute disea characterized by fever, headache, sore throat, and muscle pain, followed by abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea, an rash, with both internal and external bleeding, often leading to shock and death. Filoviruses have a tropism for cells the macrophage system, dendritic cells, interstitial fibroblasts, and endothelial cells. Very high titers of virus are present in many tissues, including liver, spleen, lungs, and kidneys, and in blood and other fluids. These viruses hav the highest mortality rates (2590%) of all the viral hemorrhagic fevers.

Marburg virus disease was recognized in 1967 among laboratory workers exposed to tissues of African green monke *(Cercopithecus aethiops)* imported into Germany and Yugoslavia. Transmission from patients to medical personnel occurred, with high mortality rates. Antibody surveys have indicated that the virus is present in East Africa and caus infection in monkeys and humans. Recorded cases of the disease are rare, but outbreaks have been documented in Kenya, South Africa, Democratic Republic of the Congo, and most recently, in 2005, in Angola. Marburg virus can infect guinea pigs, mice, hamsters, monkeys, and various cell culture systems.

Ebola virus was discovered in 1976 when two severe epidemics of hemorrhagic fever occurred in Sudan and Zaire (now the Democratic Republic of the Congo). The outbreaks involved more than 500 cases and at least 400 deaths due to clinical hemorrhagic fever. In each outbreak, hospital staff became infected through close and prolonged contact with patients, their blood, or their excreta. These subtypes of Ebola virus (Zaire, Sudan) are highly virulent. The mean time to death from the onset of symptoms is 78 days.

Subsequent outbreaks of Ebola hemorrhagic fever have occurred in Uganda (2000), the Republic of the Congo (199 2001, 2002, 2003), Gabon (1994, 1996, 1997, 2002), South Africa (1996), and Sudan (2004). Epidemics are often stopped by the institution of barrier nursing methods and training of hospital personnel.

Since Ebola virus was discovered, approximately 1850 cases had been recognized by 2004, with more than 1200 deaths. The outbreak in 2003 was first recognized by a large number of dead gorillas and chimpanzees.

In 1989, infections caused by a filovirus closely related to Ebola virus were detected in cynomolgus monkeys *(Macac fascicularis)* imported into the United States from the Philippines and held in a quarantine facility in Virginia. The infection spread to only a few of the 149 persons who came in contact with the infected monkeys or their tissues, bu none of the workers became sick, indicating that the virus (Reston subtype) possesses low pathogenicity for human

Filovirus infections appear to be immunosuppressive. Fatal cases often show impaired humoral immune responses. However, filovirus antibodies appear as patients recover that are detectable by ELISA. Viral antigens in serum can b detected by ELISA, providing a rapid screening test of human samples. Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction can also be used on clinical specimens. One hazard to performing tests for filoviruses is that patient sera a other specimens may contain virulent virus. Tests can only be conducted under maximum biologic containment conditions. Fresh virus isolates can be cultured in cell lines such as Vero and MA-104 monkey cell lines.

It is probable that Marburg and Ebola viruses have a reservoir host, perhaps a rodent or a bat, and become transmitted to humans only accidentally. Monkeys are not considered to be reservoir hosts as most infected animal die too rapidly to sustain virus survival. Human infections are highly communicable to human contacts, generally by direct contact with blood or body fluids. Typically, outbreaks of Ebola virus infection are associated with the introduction of virus into the community by one infected person, followed by dissemination by person-to-person spread, often within medical facilities.

Because the natural reservoirs of Marburg and Ebola viruses are still unknown, no control activities can be organize The use of isolation facilities in hospital settings remains the most effective means of controlling Ebola disease outbreaks. Strict barrier nursing techniques should be implemented. Extreme care must be taken with infected bloo secretions, tissues, and wastes. Personnel involved in the transportation and care of nonhuman primates should be instructed about the potential hazards of handling such animals.

There are no specific antiviral therapies available. Treatment is directed at maintaining renal function and electrolyt balance and combating hemorrhage and shock. There is no vaccine, but candidate vaccines are under development.

REFERENCES

Brinton MA: The molecular biology of West Nile Virus: A new invader of the western hemisphere. Annu Rev Microbio1 2002;56:371. [PMID 12142476]

Burke DS, Monath TP: Flaviviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Calisher CH, Childs JE, Field HE, Holmes KV, Schountz T: Bats: Important reservoir hosts of emerging viruses. Clin Microbiol Rev 2006;19:531. [PMID: 16847084]

Griffin DE: Alphaviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Inactivated Japanese encephalitis virus vaccine. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1993;42(RR-1):1.

Mills JN et al: Hantavirus pulmonary syndromeUnited States: Updated recommendations for risk reduction. Centers for Disease Control ar Prevention. MMWR Recomm Rep 2002;51(RR-9):1

Peters CJ, LeDuc JW (guest editors): Ebola: The virus and the disease. J Infect Dis 1999;179(Suppl 1). [Entire issue.]

Shu PY, Huang JH: Current advances in dengue diagnosis. Clin Diagnostic Lab Immunol 2004;11:642. [PMID: 15242935]

Soldan SS, González-Scarano F: Emerging infectious diseases: The *Bunyaviridae.* J Neurovirol 2005;11:412. [PMID: 16287682]

Sss J: Epidemiology and ecology of TBE relevant to the production of effective vaccines. Vaccine 2003;21:S1/19. [PMID: 12628811]

WHO position paper: Yellow fever vaccine. Wld Hlth Org Weekly Epidem Record 2003;78:349.

INTRODUCTION

Respiratory illnesses are responsible for more than half of all acute illnesses each year in the United States. The Orthomyxoviridae (influenza viruses) are a major determinant of morbidity and mortality caused by respiratory disease, and outbreaks of infection sometimes occur in worldwide epidemics. Influenza has been responsible for millions of deaths worldwide. Mutability and high frequency of genetic reassortment and resultant antigenic changes in the viral surface glycoproteins make influenza viruses formidable challenges for control efforts. Influenza type A is antigenically highly variable and is responsible for most cases of epidemic influenza. Influenza type B may exhibit antigenic changes and sometimes causes epidemics. Influenza type C is antigenically stable and causes only mild illness in immunocompetent individuals.

PROPERTIES OF ORTHOMYXOVIRUSES

Three immunologic types of influenza viruses are known, designated A, B, and C. Antigenic changes continually occur within the type A group of influenza viruses and to a lesser degree in the type B group, whereas type C appears to be antigenically stable. Influenza A strains are also known for aquatic birds, chickens, ducks, pigs, horses, and seals. Some of the strains isolated from animals are antigenically similar to strains circulating in the human population.

The following descriptions are based on influenza virus type A, the best-characterized type (Table 391).

Table 391. Important Properties of Orthomyxoviruses.[1]

Virion: Spherical, pleomorphic, 80120 nm in diameter (helical nucleocapsid, 9 nm)
Composition: RNA (1%), protein (73%), lipid (20%), carbohydrate (6%)
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, segmented (eight molecules), negative-sense, 13.6 kb overall size
Proteins: Nine structural proteins, one nonstructural
Envelope: Contains viral hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA) proteins
Replication: Nuclear transcription; capped 5' termini of cellular RNA scavenged as primers; particles mature by budding from plasma membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Genetic reassortment common among members of the same genus
Influenza viruses cause worldwide epidemics

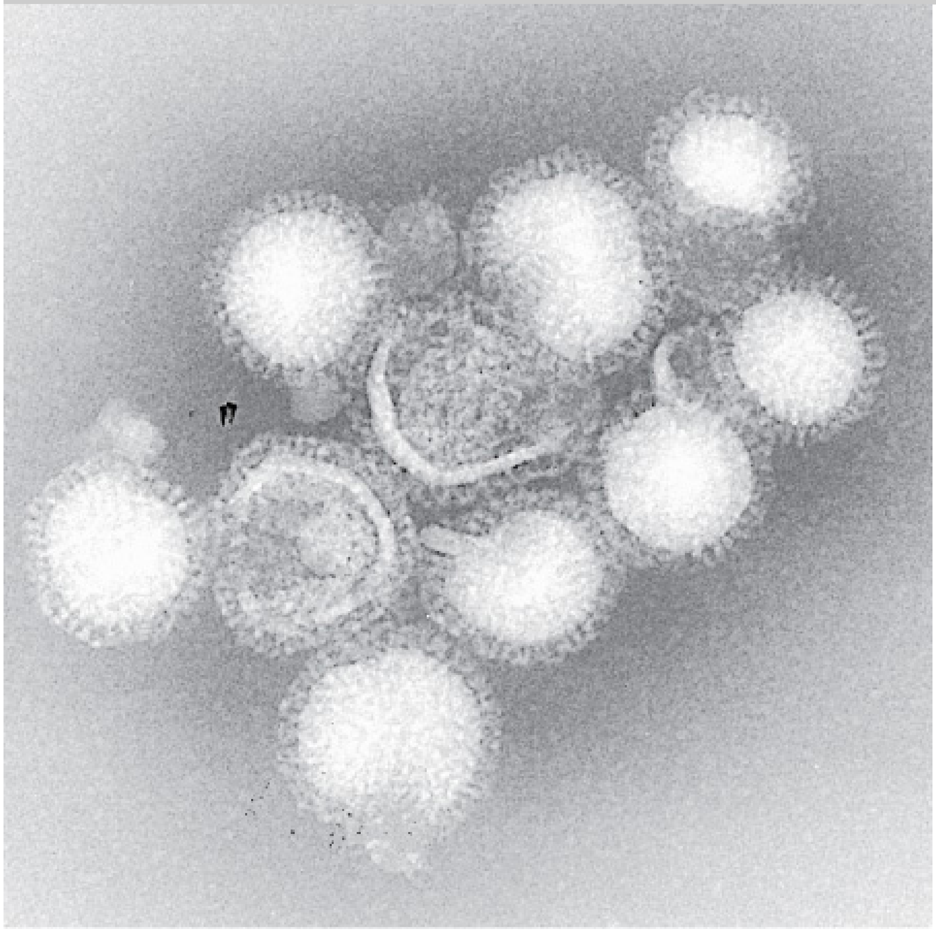
---

[1] Description for influenza A virus, genus *Influenzavirus A* .

Structure & Composition

Influenza virus particles are usually spherical and about 100 nm in diameter (80120 nm), although virions may display great variation in size (Figure 391).

Figure 391.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Influenza virus A/Hong Kong/1/68(H3N2). Note pleomorphic shapes and glycoprotein projections covering particle surfaces (315,000 x).

(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

The single-stranded, negative-sense RNA genomes of influenza A and B viruses occur as eight separate segments; influenza C viruses contain seven segments of RNA, lacking a neuraminidase gene. Sizes and protein-coding assignments are known for all the segments (Table 392). Most of the segments code for a single protein. The complete nucleotide sequence is known for many influenza viruses. The first 1213 nucleotides at each end of each genomic segment are conserved among all eight RNA segments; these sequences are important in viral transcription.

Table 392. Coding Assignments of Influenza Virus A RNA Segments.[1]

1

2341
PB2
85,700
3060
RNA transcriptase components
2
2341
PB1
86,500
3
2233
PA
84,200
4
1778
HA
61,500
500
Hemagglutinin; trimer; envelope glycoprotein; mediates virus attachment to cells; activated by cleavage; fusion activity at acid pH
5
1565
NP
56,100
1000
Associated with RNA and polymerase proteins; helical structure; nucleocapsid
6
1413
NA
50,000
100
Neuraminidase; tetramer; envelope glycoprotein; enzyme
7
1027
M_1

27,800
3000
Matrix protein; major component of virion; lines inside of envelope; involved in assembly; interacts with viral RNPs and NS_2

M_2

11,000
2060
Integral membrane protein; ion channel; essential for virus uncoating; from spliced mRNA
8
890
NS_1

26,800
0
Nonstructural; high abundance; inhibits pre-mRNA splicing; reduces interferon response
NS_2

14,200
130200
Minor component of virions; nuclear export of viral RNPs; from spliced mRNA

Genome Segment		Encoded Polypeptide			
Number[2]	Size (Number of Nucleotides)	Designation	Predicted Molecular Weight[3]	Approximate Number of Molecules per Virion	Function

[1] Adapted from Lamb RA, Krug RM: Orthomyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al (editors). Lippincott-Raven, 1996.

[2] RNA segments are numbered in order of decreasing size.

[3] The molecular weights of the two glycoproteins, HA and NA, appear larger (about 76,000 and 56,000, respectively) because of the added carbohydrate.

Influenza virus particles contain nine different structural proteins. The nucleoprotein (NP) associates with the viral RNA to form a ribonucleoprotein (RNP) structure 9 nm in diameter that assumes a helical configuration and forms the viral nucleocapsid. Three large proteins (PB1, PB2, and PA) are bound to the viral RNP and are responsible for RNA transcription and replication. The matrix (M_1) protein, which forms a shell underneath the viral lipid envelope, is important in particle morphogenesis and is a major component of the virion (about 40% of viral protein).

A lipid envelope derived from the cell surrounds the virus particle. Two virus-encoded glycoproteins, the hemagglutinin (HA) and the neuraminidase (NA), are inserted into the envelope and are exposed as spikes about 10 nm long on the surface of the particle. These two surface glycoproteins are the important antigens that determine antigenic variation of influenza viruses and host immunity. The HA represents about 25% of viral protein, and the NA about 5%. The M_2 ion channel protein and the NS_2 protein are also present in the envelope but at only a few copies per particle.

Because of the segmented nature of the genome, when a cell is coinfected by two different viruses of a given type, mixtures of parental gene segments may be assembled into progeny virions. This phenomenon, called genetic reassortment, may result in sudden changes in viral surface antigensa property that explains the epidemiologic features of influenza and poses significant problems for vaccine development.

Influenza viruses are relatively hardy in vitro and may be stored at 04 C for weeks without loss of viability. Lipid solvents, protein denaturants, formaldehyde, and irradiation destroy infectivity. Both infectivity and hemagglutination are more resistant to inactivation at alkaline pH than at acid pH.

Classification & Nomenclature

Genus *Influenzavirus A* contains human and animal strains of influenza type A; *Influenzavirus B* contains human strains of type B; and *Influenzavirus C* contains influenza type C viruses of humans and swine.

Antigenic differences exhibited by two of the internal structural proteins, the nucleocapsid (NP) and matrix (M) proteins, are used to divide influenza viruses into types A, B, and C. These proteins possess no cross-reactivity among the three types. Antigenic variations in the surface glycoproteins, HA and NA, are used to subtype the viruses. Only type A has designated subtypes.

The standard nomenclature system for influenza virus isolates includes the following information: type, host of origin, geographic origin, strain number, and year of isolation. Antigenic descriptions of the HA and the NA are given in parentheses for type A. The host of origin is not indicated for human isolates, eg, A/Hong Kong/03/68(H3N2), but it is indicated for others, eg, A/swine/Iowa/15/30(H1N1).

So far, 15 subtypes of HA (H1H15) and nine subtypes of NA (N1N9), in many different combinations, have been recovered from birds, animals, or humans. Four HA (H1H3, H5) and two NA (N1, N2) subtypes have been recovered from humans.

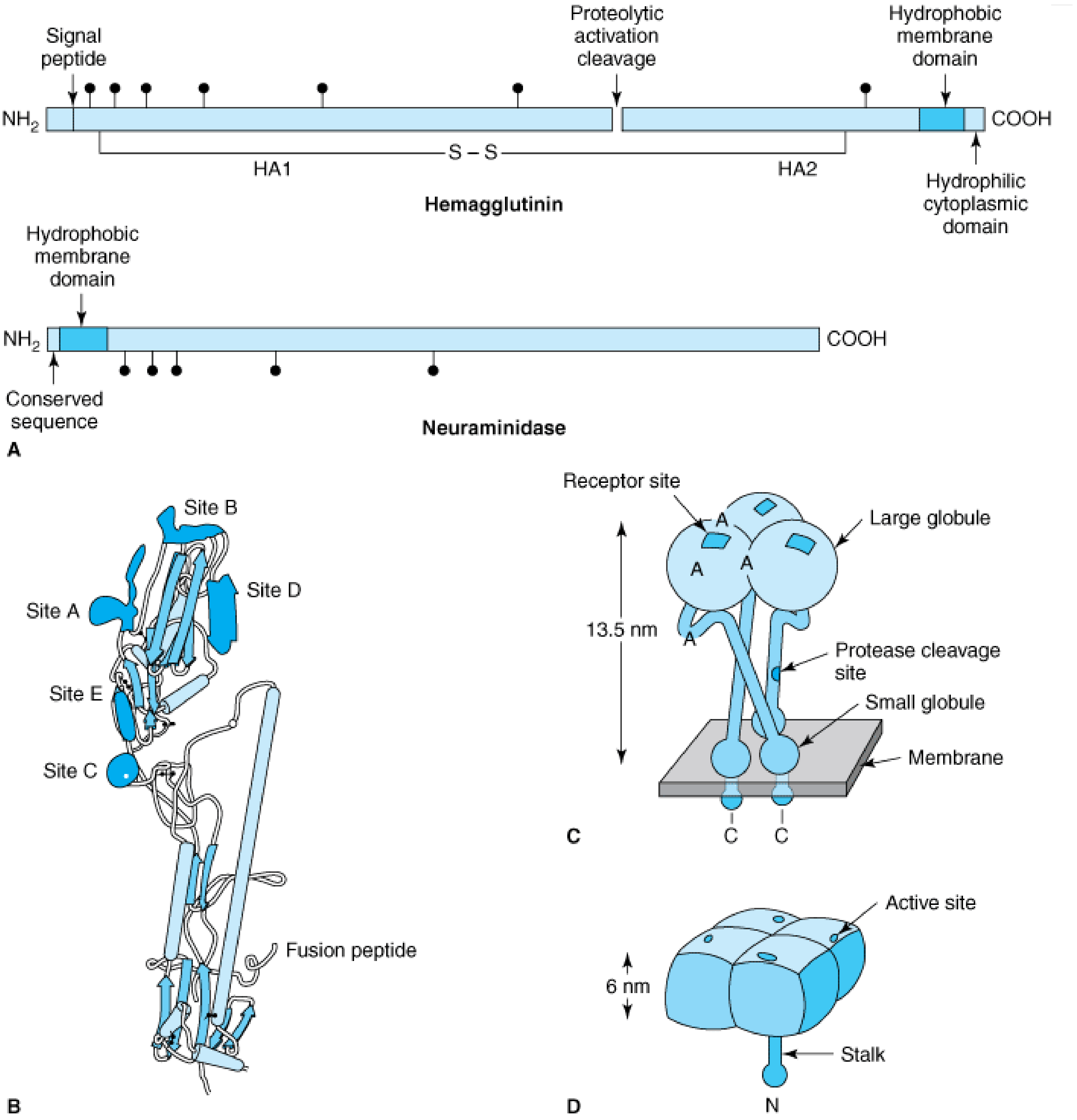
Structure & Function of Hemagglutinin

The HA protein of influenza virus binds virus particles to susceptible cells and is the major antigen against which neutralizing (protective) antibodies are directed. Variability in HA is primarily responsible for the continual evolution of new strains and subsequent influenza epidemics. Hemagglutinin derives its name from its ability to agglutinate erythrocytes under certain conditions.

The amino acid sequence for HA can be calculated from the sequence of the HA gene, and the three-dimensional structure of the protein has been revealed by x-ray crystallography, so it is possible to correlate functions of the HA molecule with its structure.

The primary sequence of HA contains 566 amino acids (Figure 392A). A short signal sequence at the amino terminal inserts the polypeptide into the endoplasmic reticulum; the signal is then removed. The HA protein is cleaved into two subunits, HA1 and HA2, that remain tightly associated by a disulfide bridge. A hydrophobic stretch near the carboxyl terminal of HA2 anchors the HA molecule in the membrane, with a short hydrophilic tail extending into the cytoplasm. Oligosaccharide residues are added at several sites.

Figure 392.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Influenza virus hemagglutinin and neuraminidase surface glycoproteins. A: Primary structures of HA and NA polypeptides. The cleavage of HA into HA1 and HA2 is necessary for virus to be infectious. HA1 and HA2 remain linked by a disulfide bond

(SS). No posttranslational cleavage occurs with NA. Carbohydrate attachment sites (xl) are shown. The hydrophobic amino acids that anchor the proteins in the viral membrane are located near the carboxyl terminal of HA and the amino terminal of NA. B: Folding of the HA1 and HA2 polypeptides in an HA monomer. Five major antigenic sites (sites AE) that undergo change are shown as shaded areas. The amino terminal of HA2 provides fusion activity (fusion peptide). The fusion particle is buried in the molecule until it is exposed by a conformational change induced by low pH. C: Structure of the HA trimer as it occurs on a virus particle or the surface of infected cells. Some of the sites involved in antigenic variation are shown (A). Carboxyl terminal residues (C) protrude through the membrane. D: Structure of the NA tetramer. Each NA molecule has an active site on its upper surface. The amino terminal region (N) of the polypeptides anchors the complex in the membrane.

(Redrawn, with permission, from [A, B] Murphy BR, Webster RG: Influenza viruses, page 1179, and [C, D] Kingsbury DW: Orthomyxo- and paramyxoviruses and their replication, page 1157. In: *Virology.* Fields BN et al [editors]. Raven Press, 1985.)

The HA molecule is folded into a complex structure (Figure 392B). Each linked HA1 and HA2 dimer forms an elongated stalk capped by a large globule. The base of the stalk anchors it in the membrane. Five antigenic sites on the HA molecule exhibit extensive mutations. These sites occur at regions exposed on the surface of the structure, are apparently not essential to the molecule's stability, and are involved in viral neutralization. Other regions of the HA molecule are conserved in all isolates, presumably because they are necessary for the molecule to retain its structure and function.

The HA spike on the virus particle is a trimer, composed of three intertwined HA1 and HA2 dimers (Figure 392C). The trimerization imparts greater stability to the spike than could be achieved by a monomer. The cellular receptor binding site (viral attachment site) is a pocket located at the top of each large globule. The pocket is inaccessible to antibody.

The cleavage that separates HA1 and HA2 is necessary for the virus particle to be infectious and is mediated by cellular proteases. Influenza viruses normally remain confined to the respiratory tract because the protease enzymes that cleave HA are common only at those sites. Examples have been noted of more virulent viruses that have adapted to use a more ubiquitous enzyme, such as plasmin, to cleave HA and promote widespread infection of cells. The amino terminal of HA2, generated by the cleavage event, is necessary for the viral envelope to fuse with the cell membrane, an essential step in the process of viral infection. Low pH triggers a conformational change that activates the fusion activity.

Structure & Function of Neuraminidase

The antigenicity of NA, the other glycoprotein on the surface of influenza virus particles, is also important in determining the subtype of influenza virus isolates.

The spike on the virus particle is a tetramer, composed of four identical monomers (Figure 392D). A slender stalk is topped with a box-shaped head. There is a catalytic site for NA on the top of each head, so that each NA spike contains four active sites.

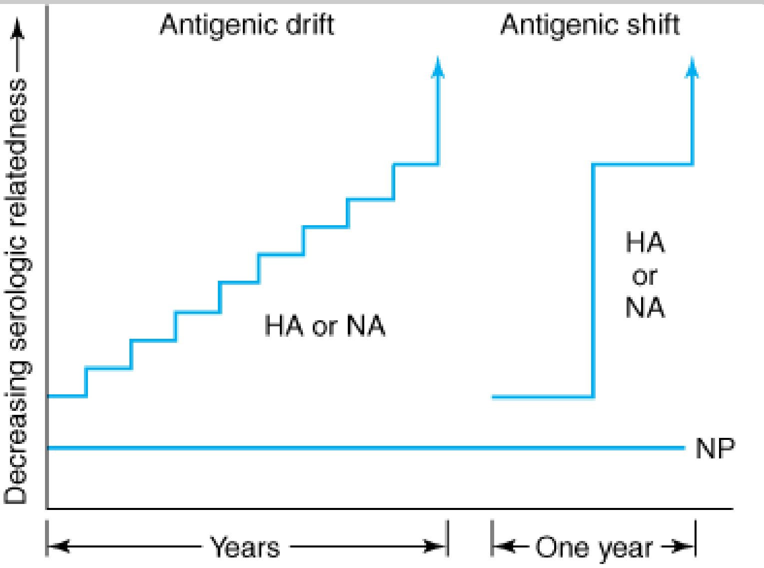
The NA functions at the end of the viral replication cycle. It is a sialidase enzyme that removes sialic acid from glycoconjugates. It facilitates release of virus particles from infected cell surfaces during the budding process and helps prevent self-aggregation of virions by removing sialic acid residues from viral glycoproteins. It is possible that NA helps the virus negotiate through the mucin layer in the respiratory tract to reach the target epithelial cells.

Antigenic Drift & Antigenic Shift

Influenza viruses are remarkable because of the frequent antigenic changes that occur in HA and NA. Antigenic variants of influenza virus have a selective advantage over the parental virus in the presence of antibody directed against the original strain. This phenomenon is responsible for the unique epidemiologic features of influenza. Other respiratory tract agents do not display significant antigenic variation.

The two surface antigens of influenza undergo antigenic variation independent of each other. Minor antigenic changes are termed antigenic drift; major antigenic changes in HA or NA, called antigenic shift, result in the appearance of a new subtype (Figure 393). Antigenic shift is most likely to result in an epidemic.

Figure 393.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Antigenic drift and antigenic shift account for antigenic changes in the two surface glycoproteins (HA and NA) of influenza virus. Antigenic drift is a gradual change in antigenicity due to point mutations that affect major antigenic sites on the glycoprotein. Antigenic shift is an abrupt change due to genetic reassortment with an unrelated strain. Changes in HA and NA occur independently. Internal proteins of the virus, such as the nucleoprotein (NP), do not undergo antigenic changes.

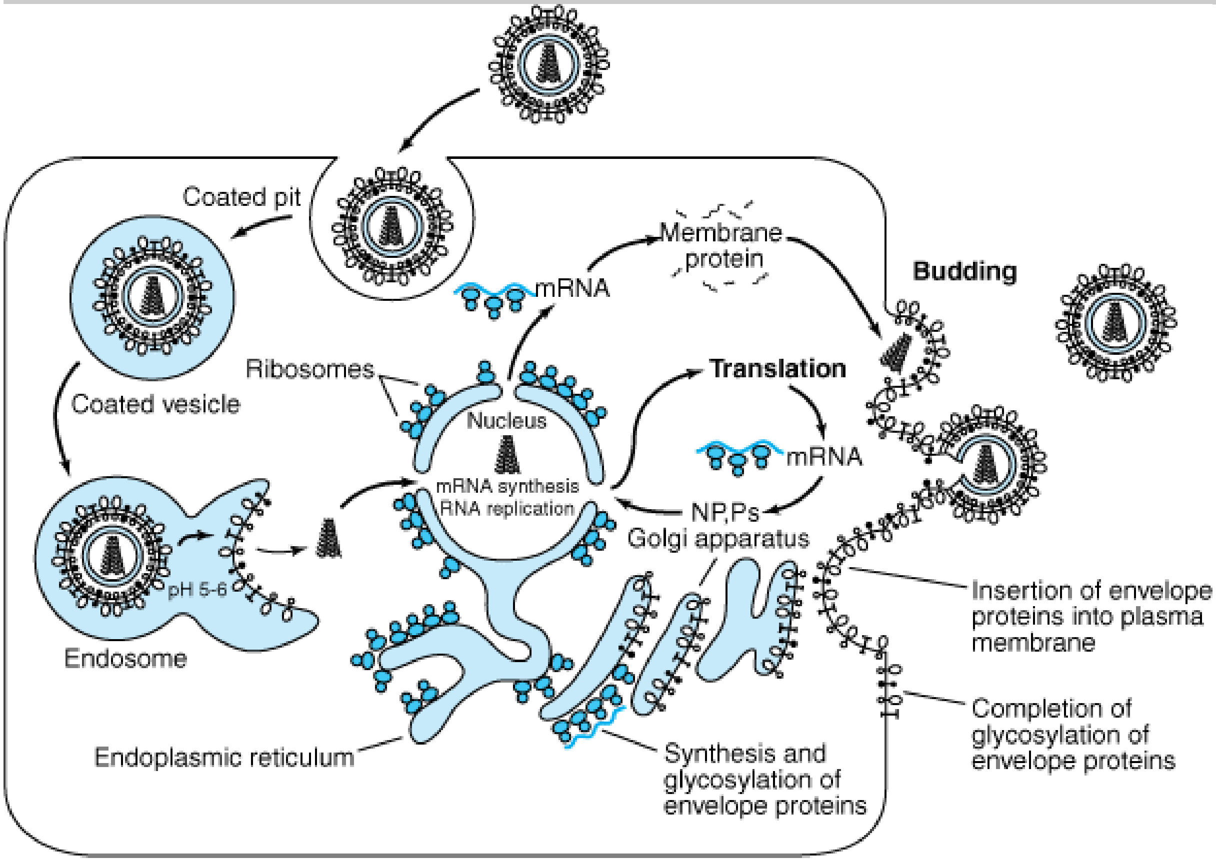
Antigenic drift is due to the accumulation of point mutations in the gene, resulting in amino acid changes in the protein. Sequence changes can alter antigenic sites on the molecule such that a virion can escape recognition by the host's immune system. The immune system does not cause the antigenic variation, but rather functions as a selection force that allows new antigenic variants to expand. A variant must sustain two or more mutations before a new, epidemiologically significant strain emerges.

Antigenic shift reflects drastic changes in the sequence of a viral surface protein, changes too extreme to be explained by mutation. The segmented genomes of influenza viruses reassort readily in doubly infected cells. The mechanism for shift is genetic reassortment between human and avian influenza viruses. Influenza B and C viruses do not exhibit antigenic shift because few related viruses exist in animals.

Influenza Virus Replication

The replication cycle of influenza virus is summarized in Figure 394. Influenza is unusual among nononcogenic RNA viruses because all of its RNA transcription and replication occur in the nucleus of infected cells. The viral multiplication cycle proceeds rapidly. There is the shut-off of host cell protein synthesis by about 3 hours postinfection, permitting selective translation of viral mRNAs. New progeny viruses are produced within 810 hours.

Figure 394.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram of the life cycle of influenza virus. The phases of viral replication are (1) virus attachment and entry into the cell; (2) transcription of viral RNA and translation of viral proteins; (3) replication of viral RNA; and (4) assembly of new virions and release from the cell.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Lamb RA, Krug RM: Orthomyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

VIRAL ATTACHMENT, PENETRATION, AND UNCOATING

The virus attaches to cell-surface sialic acid via the receptor site located on the top of the large globule of the HA. Virus particles are then internalized within endosomes by a process called receptor-mediated endocytosis. The next step involves fusion between the viral envelope and cell membrane, triggering uncoating. The low pH within the endosome is required for virus-mediated membrane fusion that releases viral RNPs into the cytosol. Acid pH causes a conformational change in the HA structure to bring the HA2 "fusion peptide" in correct contact with the membrane. The M_2 ion channel protein present in the virion permits the entry of ions from the endosome into the virus particle, triggering the conformational change in HA. Viral nucleocapsids are then released into the cell cytoplasm.

TRANSCRIPTION AND TRANSLATION

Transcription mechanisms used by orthomyxoviruses differ markedly from those of other RNA viruses in that cellular functions are more intimately involved. Viral transcription occurs in the nucleus. The mRNAs are produced from viral nucleocapsids. The virus-encoded polymerase, consisting of a complex of the three P proteins, is primarily responsible for transcription. Its action must be primed by scavenged capped and methylated 5' terminals from cellular transcripts that are newly synthesized by cellular RNA polymerase II. This explains why influenza virus replication is inhibited by dactinomycin and α-amanitin, which block cellular transcription, whereas other RNA viruses are not affected because they do not use cellular transcripts in viral RNA synthesis.

Six of the genome segments yield monocistronic mRNAs that are translated in the cytoplasm into six viral proteins. The other two transcripts undergo splicing, each yielding two mRNAs that are translated in different reading frames. At early times after infection, the NS_1 and NP proteins are preferentially synthesized. At later times, the structural proteins are synthesized at high rates. The two glycoproteins, HA and NA, are modified using the secretory pathway.

The influenza virus nonstructural protein NS_1 has a posttranscriptional role in regulating viral and cellular gene expression. The NS_1 protein binds to poly(A) sequences, inhibits pre-mRNA splicing, and inhibits the nuclear export of spliced mRNAs, ensuring a pool of donor cellular molecules to provide the capped primers needed for viral mRNA synthesis. The NS_2 protein interacts with M_1 protein and is involved in nuclear export of viral RNPs.

VIRAL RNA REPLICATION

Viral genome replication is accomplished by the same virus-encoded polymerase proteins involved in transcription. The mechanisms that regulate the alternative transcription and replication roles of the same proteins are related to the abundance of one or more of the viral nucleocapsid proteins.

As with all other negative-strand viruses, templates for viral RNA synthesis remain coated with nucleoproteins. The only completely free RNAs are mRNAs. The first step in genome replication is production of positive-strand copies of each segment. These antigenome copies differ from mRNAs at both terminals; the 5' ends are not capped, and the 3' ends are neither truncated nor polyadenylated. These copies serve as templates for synthesis of faithful copies of genomic RNAs.

Because there are common sequences at both ends of all viral RNA segments, they can be recognized efficiently by the RNA-synthesizing machinery. Intermingling of genome segments derived from different parents in coinfected cells is presumably responsible for the high frequency of genetic reassortment typical of influenza viruses within a genus. Frequencies of reassortment as high as 40% have been observed.

MATURATION

The virus matures by budding from the surface of the cell. Individual viral components arrive at the budding site by different routes. Nucleocapsids are assembled in the nucleus and move out to the cell surface. The glycoproteins, HA and NA, are synthesized in the endoplasmic reticulum; are modified and assembled into trimers and tetramers, respectively; and are inserted into the plasma membrane. The M_1 protein serves as a bridge, linking the nucleocapsid to the cytoplasmic ends of the glycoproteins. Progeny virions bud off the cell. During this sequence of events, the HA is cleaved into HA1 and HA2 if the host cell possesses the appropriate proteolytic enzyme. The NA removes terminal sialic acids from cellular and viral surface glycoproteins, facilitating release of virus particles from the cell and preventing their aggregation.

Many of the particles are not infectious. Particles sometimes fail to encapsidate the complete complement of genome segments; frequently, one of the large RNA segments is missing. These noninfectious particles are capable of causing hemagglutination and can interfere with the replication of intact virus.

Reverse-genetics systems that allow the generation of infectious influenza viruses from cloned cDNAs of viral RNA segments are available and allow mutagenesis and functional studies.

INFLUENZA VIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

A comparison of influenza A virus with other viruses that infect the human respiratory tract is shown in Table 393. Influenza virus is considered here.

Table 39-3. Comparison of Viruses that Infect the Human Respiratory Tract.

RNA viruses
Influenza A virus
Influenza
Many
No
+
-
Parainfluenza virus
Croup
Many
No
-
-
Respiratory syncytial virus
Bronchiolitis
One
No
-
-
Rubella virus
Rubella
One
Yes
+
-
Measles virus
Measles
One
Yes
+
-
Mumps virus
Parotitis, meningitis
One
Yes
+

Virus	Disease	Number of Serotypes	Lifelong Immunity to Disease	Vaccine Available	Viral Latency
					-
Rhinovirus	Common cold	Many	No	-	-
Coronavirus	Common cold	Many	No	-	-
Coxsackievirus	Herpangina, pleurodynia	Many	No	-	-
DNA viruses					
Herpes simplex virus type 1	Gingivostomatitis	One	No	-	+
Epstein-Barr virus	Infectious mononucleosis	One	Yes	-	+
Varicella-zoster virus	Chickenpox, shingles	One	Yes[1]	+	+
Adenovirus	Pharyngitis, pneumonia	Many	No	-	+

---

[1] Lifelong immunity to reinfections with varicella (chickenpox) but not to reactivation of zoster (shingles).

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Influenza virus spreads from person to person by airborne droplets or by contact with contaminated hands or surfaces. A few cells of respiratory epithelium are infected if deposited virus particles avoid removal by the cough reflex and escape neutralization by preexisting specific IgA antibodies or inactivation by nonspecific inhibitors in the mucous secretions. Progeny virions are soon produced and spread to adjacent cells, where the replicative cycle is repeated. Viral NA lowers the viscosity of the mucous film in the respiratory tract, laying bare the cellular surface receptors and promoting the spread of virus-containing fluid to lower portions of the tract. Within a short time, many cells in the respiratory tract are infected and eventually killed.

The incubation period from exposure to virus and the onset of illness varies from 1 day to 4 days, depending upon the size of the viral dose and the immune status of the host. Viral shedding starts the day preceding onset of symptoms, peaks within 24 hours, remains elevated for 12 days, and then declines over the next 5 days. Infectious virus is very rarely recovered from blood.

Interferon is detectable in respiratory secretions about 1 day after viral shedding begins. Influenza viruses are sensitive to the antiviral effects of interferon, and it is believed that the interferon response contributes to host recovery from infection. Specific antibody and cell-mediated responses cannot be detected for another 12 weeks.

Influenza infections cause cellular destruction and desquamation of superficial mucosa of the respiratory tract but do not affect the basal layer of epithelium. Complete reparation of cellular damage probably takes up to 1 month. Viral damage to the respiratory tract epithelium lowers its resistance to secondary bacterial invaders, especially staphylococci, streptococci, and *Haemophilus influenzae.*

Edema and mononuclear infiltrations in response to cell death and desquamation due to viral replication probably account for local symptoms. The prominent systemic symptoms associated with influenza probably reflect the production of cytokines.

Clinical Findings

Influenza attacks mainly the upper respiratory tract. It poses a serious risk for the elderly, the very young, and people with underlying medical conditions such as lung, kidney, or heart problems, diabetes, or cancer.

UNCOMPLICATED INFLUENZA

Symptoms of classic influenza usually appear abruptly and include chills, headache, and dry cough, followed closely by high fever, generalized muscular aches, malaise, and anorexia. The fever usually lasts 35 days, as do the systemic symptoms. Respiratory symptoms typically last another 34 days. The cough and weakness may persist for 24 weeks after major symptoms subside. Mild or asymptomatic infections may occur. These symptoms may be induced by any strain of influenza A or B. In contrast, influenza C rarely causes the influenza syndrome, causing instead a common cold illness. Coryza and cough may last for several weeks.

Clinical symptoms of influenza in children are similar to those in adults, although children may have higher fever and a higher incidence of gastrointestinal manifestations such as vomiting. Febrile convulsions can occur. Influenza A viruses are an important cause of croup in children under 1 year of age, which may be severe. Finally, otitis media may develop.

When influenza appears in epidemic form, clinical findings are consistent enough that the disease can be diagnosed. Sporadic cases cannot be diagnosed on clinical grounds, as disease manifestations cannot be distinguished from those caused by other respiratory tract pathogens. However, those other agents rarely cause severe viral pneumonia, which is a complication of influenza A virus infection.

PNEUMONIA

Serious complications usually occur only in the elderly and debilitated, especially those with underlying chronic disease. Pregnancy appears to be a risk factor for lethal pulmonary complications in some epidemics. The lethal impact of an influenza epidemic is reflected in the excess deaths due to pneumonia and cardiopulmonary diseases.

Pneumonia complicating influenza infections can be viral, secondary bacterial, or a combination of the two. Increased mucous secretion helps carry agents into the lower respiratory tract. Influenza infection enhances susceptibility of patients to bacterial superinfection. This is attributed to loss of ciliary clearance, dysfunction of phagocytic cells, and provision of a rich bacterial growth medium by the alveolar exudate. Bacterial pathogens are most often *Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae,* and *H influenzae.*

Combined viral-bacterial pneumonia is approximately three times more common than primary influenza pneumonia. *S aureus* coinfection has been reported to have a fatality rate of up to 42%. A molecular basis for a synergistic effect between virus and bacteria may be that some *S aureus* strains secrete a protease able to cleave the influenza HA, thereby allowing production of much higher titers of infectious virus in the lungs.

REYE'S SYNDROME

Reye's syndrome is an acute encephalopathy of children and adolescents, usually between 2 and 16 years of age. The mortality rate is high (1040%). The cause of Reye's syndrome is unknown, but it is a recognized rare complication of influenza B, influenza A, and herpesvirus varicella-zoster infections. There is a possible relationship between salicylate use and subsequent development of Reye's syndrome. The incidence of the syndrome has decreased with the reduced use of salicylates in children with flu-like symptoms.

Immunity

Immunity to influenza is long-lived and subtype-specific. Antibodies against HA and NA are important in immunity to influenza, whereas antibodies against the other virus-encoded proteins are not protective. Resistance to initiation of infection is related to antibody against the HA, whereas decreased severity of disease and decreased ability to transmit virus to contacts are related to antibody directed against the NA. Antibodies against the ribonucleoprotein are type-specific and are useful in typing viral isolates (as influenza A or B).

Protection correlates with both serum antibodies and secretory IgA antibodies in nasal secretions. The local secretory antibody is probably important in preventing infection. Serum antibodies persist for many months to years, whereas secretory antibodies are of shorter duration (usually only several months). Antibody also modifies the course of illness. A person with low titers of antibody may be infected but will experience a mild form of disease. Immunity can be incomplete, as reinfection with the same virus can occur.

The three types of influenza viruses are antigenically unrelated and therefore induce no cross-protection. When a viral type undergoes antigenic drift, a person with preexisting antibody to the original strain may suffer only mild infection with the new strain. Subsequent infections or immunizations reinforce the antibody response to the first subtype of influenza experienced years earlier, a phenomenon called "original antigenic sin."

The primary role of cell-mediated immune responses in influenza is believed to be clearance of an established infection; cytotoxic T cells lyse infected cells. The cytotoxic T lymphocyte response is cross-reactive (able to lyse cells infected with any subtype of virus) and appears to be directed against both internal proteins (NP, M) and the surface glycoproteins.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Clinical characteristics of viral respiratory infections can be produced by many different viruses. Consequently, diagnosis of influenza relies on isolation of the virus, identification of viral antigens or viral nucleic acid in the patient's cells, or demonstration of a specific immunologic response by the patient.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Nasal washings, gargles, and throat swabs are the best specimens for viral isolation and should be obtained within 3 days after the onset of symptoms. The sample should be held at 4 C until inoculation into cell culture, as freezing and thawing reduce the ability to recover virus. However, if storage time will exceed 5 days, the sample should be frozen at 70 C.

Classically, embryonated eggs and primary monkey kidney cells have been the isolation methods of choice for influenza viruses, although some continuous cell lines may be used. Inoculated cell cultures are incubated in the absence of serum, which may contain nonspecific viral inhibitory factors, and in the presence of trypsin, which cleaves and activates the HA so that replicating virus will spread throughout the culture.

Cell cultures can be tested for the presence of virus by hemadsorption 35 days after inoculation, or the culture fluid can be examined for virus after 57 days by hemagglutination. If the results are negative, a passage is made into fresh cultures. This passage may be necessary, because primary viral isolates are often fastidious and grow slowly.

Viral isolates can be identified by hemagglutination inhibition, a procedure that permits rapid determination of the influenza type and subtype. To do this, reference sera to currently prevalent strains must be used. Hemagglutination by the new isolate will be inhibited by antiserum to the homologous subtype.

For rapid diagnosis, cell cultures on coverslips in shell vials may be inoculated and stained 1 or 2 days later with pools of monoclonal antibodies to respiratory agents. Positives are confirmed by use of single fluorescent antibodies.

It is possible to identify viral antigen directly in exfoliated cells in nasal aspirates using fluorescent antibodies. This test is rapid but is not as sensitive as viral isolation, does not provide full details about the viral strain, and does not yield an isolate that can be characterized.

Rapid tests based on detection of influenza RNA in clinical specimens using polymerase chain reaction are also possible. A new assay designed to detect avian influenza A/H5 viruses (Asian lineage), based on real-time reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction, was developed in 2006. It will be useful for diagnostic testing and for identification of these viruses in laboratory viral cultures.

SEROLOGY

Antibodies to several viral proteins (hemagglutinin, neuraminidase, nucleoprotein, and matrix) are produced during infection with influenza virus. The immune response against the HA glycoprotein is associated with resistance to infection.

Routine serodiagnostic tests in use are based on hemagglutination inhibition (HI) and ELISA. Paired acute and convalescent sera are necessary, because normal individuals usually have influenza antibodies. A fourfold or greater increase in titer must occur to indicate influenza infection. Human sera often contain nonspecific mucoprotein inhibitors that must be destroyed before testing by HI.

The HI test reveals the strain of virus responsible for infection only if the correct antigen is available for use. Neutralization tests are the most specific and the best predictor of susceptibility to infection but are more unwieldy and more time-consuming to perform than the other tests. The ELISA test is more sensitive than other assays.

Complications may be encountered in attempting to identify the strain of infecting influenza virus by the patient's antibody response because anamnestic responses frequently occur.

Epidemiology

Influenza viruses occur worldwide and cause annual outbreaks of variable intensity. It is estimated that annual epidemics cause 35 million cases of severe illness and 250,000500,000 deaths worldwide. The economic impact of influenza A outbreaks is significant because of the morbidity associated with infections. Economic costs have been estimated at $1060 million per million population in industrialized countries, depending on the size of the epidemic.

The three types of influenza vary markedly in their epidemiologic patterns. Influenza C is least significant; it causes mild, sporadic respiratory disease but not epidemic influenza. Influenza B sometimes causes epidemics, but influenza type A can sweep across continents and around the world in massive epidemics called pandemics.

The incidence of influenza peaks during the winter. In the United States, influenza epidemics usually occur from January through April (and from May to August in the Southern Hemisphere). A continuous person-to-person chain of transmission must exist for maintenance of the agent between epidemics. Some viral activity can be detected in large population centers throughout each year, indicating that the virus remains endemic in the population and causes a few subclinical or minor infections.

ANTIGENIC CHANGE

Periodic outbreaks appear because of antigenic changes in one or both surface glycoproteins of the virus. When the number of susceptible persons in a population reaches a sufficient level, the new strain of virus causes an epidemic. The change may be gradual (hence the term "antigenic drift"), due to point mutations reflected in alterations at major antigenic sites on the glycoprotein (see Figure 393); or drastic and abrupt (hence the term "antigenic shift"), owing to genetic reassortment during coinfection with an unrelated strain.

All three types of influenza virus exhibit antigenic drift. However, only influenza A undergoes antigenic shift, presumably because types B and C are restricted to humans, whereas related influenza A viruses circulate in animal and bird populations. These animal strains account for antigenic shift by genetic reassortment of the glycoprotein genes. Influenza A viruses have been recovered from many aquatic birds, especially ducks; from domestic poultry, such as turkeys, chickens, geese, and ducks; from pigs and horses; and even from seals and whales.

Influenza outbreaks occur in waves, although there is no regular periodicity in the occurrence of epidemics. The experience in any given year will reflect the interplay between extent of antigenic drift of the predominant virus and waning immunity in the population. The period between epidemic waves of influenza A tends to be 23 years; the interepidemic period for type B is longer (36 years). Every 1040 years, when a new subtype of influenza A appears, a pandemic results. This happened in 1918 (H1N1), 1957 (H2N2), and 1968 (H3N2). The H1N1 subtype reemerged in 1977, although no epidemic materialized. Since 1977, influenza A (H1N1) and (H3N2) viruses and influenza B viruses have been in global circulation.

Surveillance for influenza outbreaks is necessary to identify the early appearance of new strains, with the aim of preparing vaccines against them before an epidemic occurs. That surveillance may extend into animal populations, especially birds, pigs, and horses. Isolation of a virus with an altered hemagglutinin in the late spring during a mini-epidemic signals a possible epidemic the following winter. This warning sign, termed a "herald wave," has been observed to precede influenza A and B epidemics.

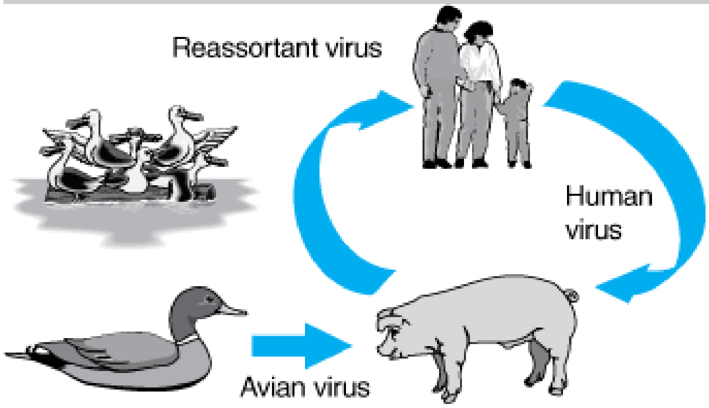
AVIAN INFLUENZA

Sequence analyses of influenza A viruses isolated from many hosts in different regions of the world support the theory that all mammalian influenza viruses derive from the avian influenza reservoir. Of the 15 HA subtypes found in birds, only a few have been transferred to mammals (H1, H2, H3, and H5 in humans; H1 and H3 in swine; and H3 and H7 in horses). The same pattern holds for NA; nine NA subtypes are known for birds, only two of which are found in humans (N1, N2). The influenza viruses do not appear to undergo antigenic change in the birds, perhaps because of their brief life span. This means the genes that caused previous influenza pandemics in humans still exist unchanged in the aquatic bird reservoir.

Avian influenza ranges from inapparent infections to highly lethal infections in chickens and turkeys. Most influenza infections in ducks are avirulent. Influenza viruses of ducks multiply in cells lining the intestinal tract and are shed in high concentrations in fecal material into water, where they remain viable for days or weeks, especially at low temperatures. It is likely that avian influenza is a waterborne infection, moving from wild to domestic birds and pigs.

To date, all human pandemic strains have been reassortants between avian and human influenza viruses. Evidence supports the model that pigs serve as mixing vessels for reassortants as their cells contain receptors recognized by both human and avian viruses (Figure 395). School-age children are the predominant vectors of influenza transmission. Crowding in schools favors the aerosol transmission of virus, and children take the virus home to the family.

Figure 395.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

The pig may act as an intermediate host for the generation of human-avian reassortant influenza viruses with pandemic potential.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Claas ECJ, Osterhaus ADME: New clues to the emergence of flu pandemics. Nat Med 1998;4:1122.)

In 1997, in Hong Kong, the first documented infection of humans by avian influenza A virus (H5N1) occurred. The source was domestic poultry. By 2006, the geographic presence of this highly pathogenic H5N1 avian influenza virus in both wild and domestic birds had expanded to include many countries in Asia, Africa, Europe, and the Middle East. Outbreaks were the largest and most severe on record. Of about 200 laboratory-confirmed human cases, more than half have been fatal. So far, isolates from human cases have contained all RNA gene segments from avian viruses, indicating that, in those infections, the avian virus had jumped directly from bird to human. All evidence to date indicates that close contact with diseased birds has been the source of human H5N1 infection. The concern is that, given enough opportunities, the highly pathogenic H5N1 avian influenza virus will acquire the ability to spread efficiently and be sustained among humans, either by reassortment or by adaptive mutation. This would result in a devastating influenza pandemic.

SEROARCHEOLOGY

Human influenza virus was first isolated in 1933 using ferrets. The subtypes that circulated prior to that time have been deduced using retrospective seroepidemiology. This technique is based on screening HI titers against numerous HA subtypes of virus with sera from many individuals in different age groups.

The range of the influenza antibody spectrum is narrow in early life, but it becomes progressively broader in later years. Antibodies acquired from initial infections in childhood reflect dominant antigens of the prevailing strains. Later exposures to viruses result in an antibody spectrum broadening toward a larger number of common antigens of influenza viruses. Exposures later in life to antigenically related strains result in progressive reinforcement of the primary antibody. The highest antibody levels in a particular age group therefore reflect dominant antigens of the virus responsible for childhood infections of the group. Thus, a serologic recapitulation of past infection with influenza viruses of different antigenic makeup can be obtained by studying age distribution of influenza antibodies in normal populations.

This approach suggests that the epidemic of 1890 was probably caused by an H2N8 subtype and the epidemic of 1900 by an H3N8 virus. The catastrophic pandemic of 19181919 (Spanish flu) was caused by the abrupt appearance of the H1N1 subtype, the swine-like influenza. (More than 20 million people died during this pandemic, mainly from complicating bacterial pneumonias.) Subsequent antigenic shifts have been documented by viral isolations; H2N2 (Asian flu) appeared in 1957 and was replaced in 1968 by the H3N2 subtype (Hong Kong flu). The H1N1 strain reappeared in 1977 (Russian flu).

RECONSTRUCTION OF 1918 INFLUENZA VIRUS

Polymerase chain reaction technology has yielded gene fragments of influenza virus from archival lung tissue specimens from victims of the 1918 Spanish flu epidemic. The complete coding sequences of all eight viral RNA segments have been determined, and the sequences document that it was an H1N1 influenza A virus. It appears that the 1918 virus was not a reassortant, but was derived entirely from an avian source that adapted to humans. Using reverse genetics, an infectious virus containing all the gene segments from the 1918 pandemic virus was constructed. In contrast to ordinary influenza viruses, the 1918 virus was highly pathogenic, including being able to kill mice rapidly. The 1918 HA and polymerase genes appeared to be responsible for the high virulence.

Prevention & Treatment by Drugs

Amantadine hydrochloride and an analog, rimantadine, are M_2 ion channel inhibitors for systemic use in the treatment and prophylaxis of influenza A. The NA inhibitors zanamivir and oseltamivir were approved in 1999 for treatment of both influenza A and influenza B. To be maximally effective, the drugs must be administered very early in the disease. Resistant viruses emerge more frequently during therapy with M_2 inhibitors than with NA inhibitors and more frequently in children than adults. During the influenza season in the United States in late 2005, 92% of influenza A (H3N2) virus isolates were resistant to M_2 inhibitors.

Prevention & Control by Vaccines

Inactivated viral vaccines are the primary means of prevention of influenza in the United States. However, certain characteristics of influenza viruses make prevention and control of the disease by immunization especially difficult.

Existing vaccines are continually being rendered obsolete as the viruses undergo antigenic drift and shift. Surveillance programs by government agencies and the World Health Organization constantly monitor subtypes of influenza circulating around the world to promptly detect the appearance and spread of new strains.

Several other problems are worthy of mention. Although protection can reach 70100% in healthy adults, frequency of protection is lower (3060%) among the elderly and among young children. Inactivated viral vaccines usually do not generate good local IgA or cell-mediated immune responses. The immune response is influenced by whether the person is "primed" by having had prior antigenic experience with an influenza A virus of the same subtype.

PREPARATION OF INACTIVATED VIRAL VACCINES

Inactivated influenza A and B virus vaccines are licensed for parenteral use in humans. Federal bodies and the World Health Organization make recommendations each year about which strains should be included in the vaccine. The vaccine is usually a cocktail containing one or two type A viruses and a type B virus of the strains isolated in the previous winter's outbreaks.

Selected seed strains are grown in embryonated eggs, the substrate used for vaccine production. Sometimes the natural isolates grow too poorly in eggs to permit vaccine production, in which case a reassortant virus is made in the laboratory. The reassortant virus, which carries the genes for the surface antigens of the desired vaccine with the replication genes from an egg-adapted laboratory virus, is then used for vaccine production.

Virus is harvested from the egg allantoic fluid, purified, concentrated by zonal centrifugation, and inactivated with formalin or β-propiolactone. The quantity of HA is standardized in each vaccine dose (approximately 15 μg of antigen), but the quantity of NA is not standardized, as it is more labile under purification and storage conditions. Each dose of vaccine contains the equivalent of about 10 billion virus particles.

Vaccines are either whole virus (WV), subvirion (SV), or surface antigen preparations. The WV vaccine contains intact, inactivated virus; the SV vaccine contains purified virus disrupted with detergents; and the surface antigen vaccines contain purified HA and NA glycoproteins. All are efficacious.

LIVE-VIRUS VACCINES

A live-virus vaccine must be attenuated so as not to induce the disease it is designed to prevent. In view of the constantly changing face of influenza viruses in nature and the extensive laboratory efforts required to attenuate a virulent virus, the only feasible strategy is to devise a way to transfer defined attenuating genes from an attenuated master donor virus to each new epidemic or pandemic isolate.

A cold-adapted donor virus, able to grow at 25 C but not at 37 Cthe temperature of the lower respiratory tractshould replicate in the nasopharynx, which has a cooler temperature (33 C). A live attenuated, cold-adapted, temperature-sensitive, trivalent influenza virus vaccine administered by nasal spray was licensed in the United States in 2003. It was the first live-virus influenza vaccine approved in the United States, as well as the first nasally administered vaccine in the United States.

USE OF INFLUENZA VACCINES

The only contraindication to vaccination is a history of allergy to egg protein. Since vaccine strains are grown in eggs, some egg protein antigens are present in the vaccine.

Annual influenza vaccination is recommended for high-risk groups. These include individuals at increased risk of complications associated with influenza infection (those with either chronic heart or lung disease, including children with asthma, or metabolic or renal disorders; residents of nursing homes; persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]; and those 65 years of age and older) and persons who might transmit influenza to high-risk groups (medical personnel, employees in chronic care facilities, household members). The live-virus intranasal vaccine is not currently recommended for individuals in the high-risk groups.

REFERENCES

Avian influenza fact sheet. World Hlth Org Wkly Epidem Record 2006;81:129.

Belshe RB et al: The efficacy of live attenuated, cold-adapted, trivalent, intranasal influenzavirus vaccine in children. N Engl J Med 1998;338:1405. [PMID: 9580647]

Couch RB: Prevention and treatment of influenza. N Engl J Med 2000;343:1778. [PMID: 11114318]

Horimoto T, Kawaoka Y: Influenza: Lessons from past pandemics, warnings from current incidents. Nature Rev Microbiol 2005;3:591. [PMID: 16064053]

Influenza vaccination of health-care personnel. Recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2006;55(RR-2):1.

Lamb RA, Krug RM: Orthomyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Olsen B et al: Global patterns of influenza A virus in wild birds. Science 2006;312:384. [PMID: 16627734]

Prevention and control of influenza. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2005;54(RR-8):1.

Reid AH et al: Origin and evolution of the 1918 "Spanish" influenza virus hemagglutinin gene. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1999;96:1651. [PMID: 9990079]

Taubenberger JK, Morens DM (guest editors): Influenza. Emerging Infect Dis 2006:12:1. [Entire issue.]

Tumpey TM et al: Characterization of the reconstructed 1918 Spanish influenza pandemic virus. Science 2005;310:77. [PMID: 16210530]

Wright PF, Webster RG: Orthomyxoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Mc Graw Hill Medical
a silverchair information system
The McGraw-Hill Companies

INTRODUCTION

The paramyxoviruses include the most important agents of respiratory infections of infants and young children (respiratory syncytial virus and the parainfluenza viruses) as well as the causative agents of two of the most comm contagious diseases of childhood (mumps and measles). The World Health Organization estimates that acute respiratory infections and pneumonia are responsible every year worldwide for the deaths of 4 million children unde 5 years of age. Paramyxoviruses are the major respiratory pathogens in this age group.

All members of the Paramyxoviridae family initiate infection via the respiratory tract. Replication of the respirator pathogens is limited to the respiratory epithelia, whereas measles and mumps become disseminated throughout the body and produce generalized disease.

Rubella virus, though classified as a togavirus because of its chemical and physical properties (see Chapter 29), can be considered with the paramyxoviruses on an epidemiologic basis.

PROPERTIES OF PARAMYXOVIRUSES

Major properties of paramyxoviruses are listed in Table 401. The differences between paramyxoviruses and orthomyxoviruses are summarized in Table 392. Despite the similarity in names, the two families differ in many biologic properties.

Table 401. Important Properties of Paramyxoviruses.

Virion: Spherical, pleomorphic, 150 nm or more in diameter (helical nucleocapsid, 1318 nm)
Composition: RNA (1%), protein (73%), lipid (20%), carbohydrate (6%)
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, nonsegmented, negative-sense, noninfectious, about 15 kb
Proteins: Six to eight structural proteins
Envelope: Contains viral glycoprotein (G, H, or HN) (which sometimes carries hemagglutinin or neuraminidase activity) and fusion (F) glycoprotein; very fragile
Replication: Cytoplasm; particles bud from plasma membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Antigenically stable
Particles are labile yet highly infectious

Structure & Composition

The morphology of Paramyxoviridae is pleomorphic, with particles 150 nm or more in diameter, occasionally ranging up to 700 nm. A typical particle is shown in Figure 401. The envelope of paramyxoviruses seems to be fragile, making virus particles labile to storage conditions and prone to distortion in electron micrographs.

Figure 401.

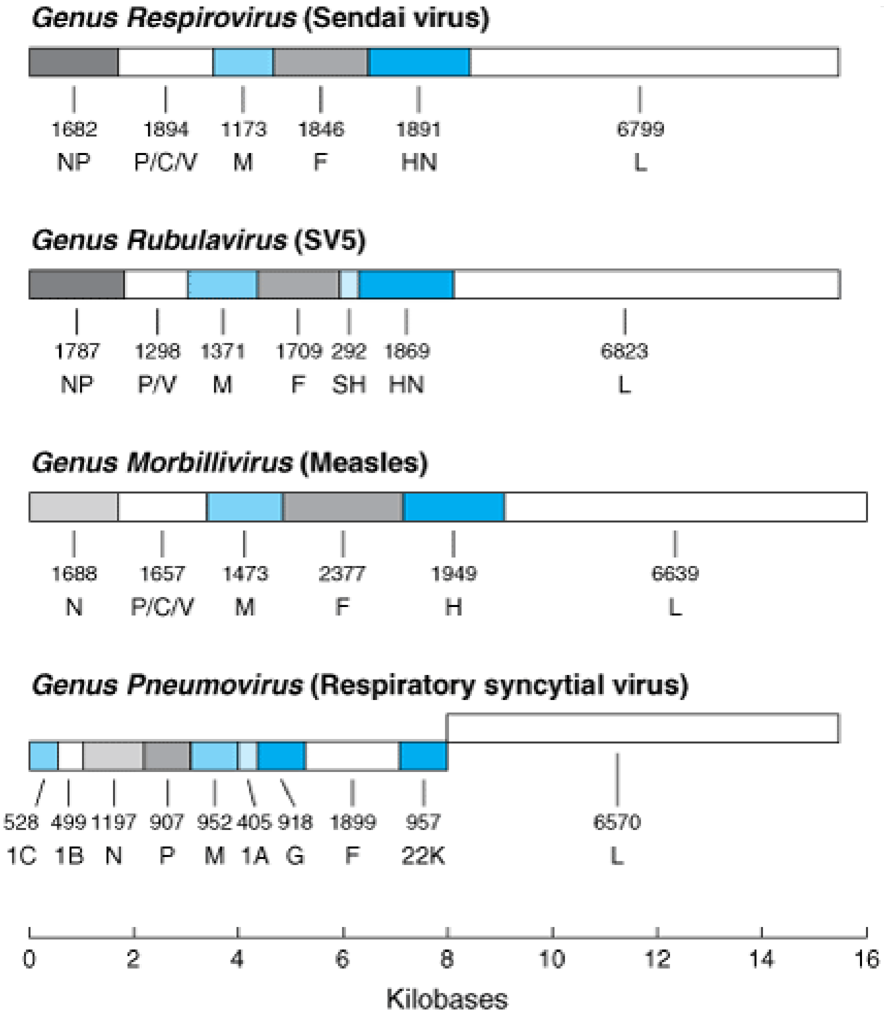
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Ultrastructure of parainfluenza virus type 1. The virion is partially disrupted, showing the nucleocapsid. Surface projections are visible along the edge of the particle.

(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

The viral genome is linear, negative-sense, single-stranded, nonsegmented RNA, about 15 kb in size (Figure 402). A the genome is not segmented, this negates any opportunity for frequent genetic reassortment, resulting in the fact that all members of the paramyxovirus group are antigenically stable.

Figure 402.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genetic maps of typical members of the family Paramyxoviridae. The gene size is drawn to scale. Gene boundaries are shown by vertical lines. The number beneath each gene is its length in bases.

(Adapted from Lamb RA, Kolakofsky D: Paramyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields E et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Most paramyxoviruses contain six structural proteins. Three proteins are complexed with the viral RNAthe nucleoprotein (N or NP) that forms the helical nucleocapsid (13 or 18 nm in diameter) and represents the major internal protein and two other large proteins (designated P and L), which are involved in the viral polymerase activi that functions in transcription and RNA replication.

Three proteins participate in the formation of the viral envelope. A matrix (M) protein underlies the viral envelope; i has an affinity for both the N and the viral surface glycoproteins and is important in virion assembly. The nucleocapsid is surrounded by a lipid envelope that is studded with 8- to 12-nm spikes of two different transmembrane glycoproteins. The activities of these surface glycoproteins help differentiate the various genera of the Paramyxoviridae family (Table 402). The larger glycoprotein (HN or H or G) may or may not possess hemagglutination and neuraminidase activities and is responsible for attachment to the host cell. It is assembled as tetramer in the mature virion. The other glycoprotein (F) mediates membrane fusion and hemolysin activities. The pneumoviruses appear to contain two additional small envelope proteins (M2-1 and SH).

Table 402. Characteristics of Genera in the Subfamilies of the Family Paramyxoviridae.

Human viruses	Parainfluenza 1, 3	Mumps, parainfluenza 2, 4a, 4b	Measles	Hendra, Nipah	Respiratory syncytial virus	Human metapneumovirus
Serotypes	1 each	1 each	1	?	2	?
Diameter of nucleocapsid (nm)	18	18	18	?	13	13
Membrane fusion (F protein)	+	+	+	+	+	+
Hemolysin[2]	+	+	+	?	0	0
Hemagglutinin[3]	+	+	+	0		

0
0
Hemadsorption
+
+
+
0
0
0
Neuraminidase[3]

+
+
0
0
0
0
Inclusions[4]

C
C
N,C
?
C
?

	Paramyxovirinae				Pneumovirinae	
Property	*Respirovirus*	*Rubulavirus*	*Morbillivirus*	*Henipavirus* [1]	*Pneumovirus*	*Metapneumovirus*

[1] Zoonotic paramyxoviruses.

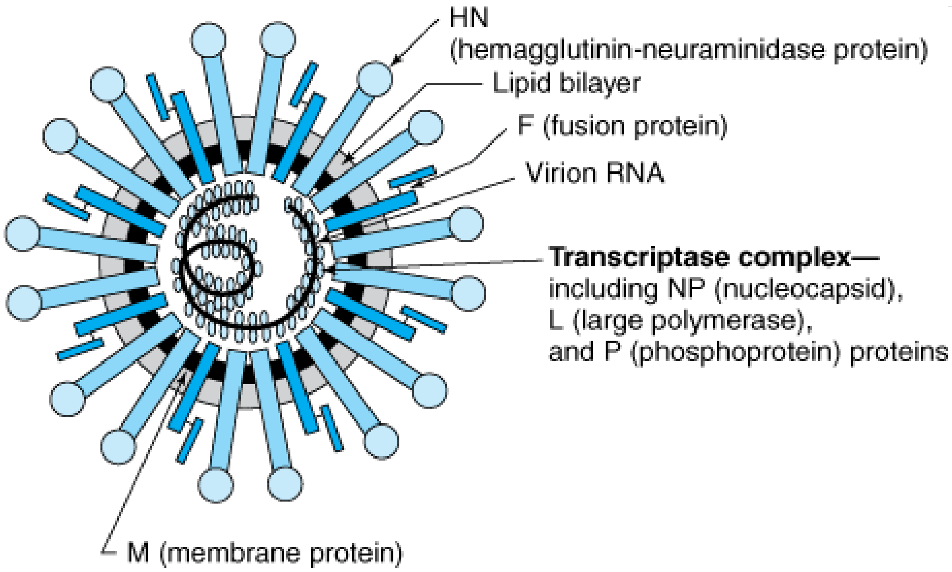
[2] Hemolysin activity carried by F glycoprotein.

[3] Hemagglutination and neuraminidase activities carried by HN glycoprotein of respiroviruses and rubulaviruses; H glycoprotein of morbilliviruses lacks neuraminidase activity; G glycoprotein of other paramyxoviruses lacks both activities.

[4] C, cytoplasm; N, nucleus.

A diagram of a paramyxovirus particle is shown in Figure 403.

Figure 403.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic diagram of a paramyxovirus showing major components (not drawn to scale). The lipid bilayer is shown as the gray concentric circle; underlying the lipid bilayer is the viral matrix protein (black concentric circle). Inserted through the viral membrane are the hemagglutinin-neuraminidase (HN) attachment glycoprotein and the fusion (F) glycoprotein. (Not all paramyxoviruses possess hemagglutinin and neuraminidase activities; those glycoproteins are designated H or G.) Inside the virus is the negative-strand virion RNA, which is encased in the nucleocapsid protein (N/NP). Associated with the nucleocapsid are the L and P proteins, and together this complex has RNA-dependent RNA transcriptase activity.

(Adapted from Lamb RA, Kolakofsky D: Paramyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields E et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Classification

The Paramyxoviridae family is divided into two subfamilies and seven genera, six of which contain human pathogens (Table 402). Most of the members are monotypic (ie, they consist of a single serotype); all are antigenically stable.

The genus *Respirovirus* contains two serotypes of human parainfluenza viruses, and the genus *Rubulavirus* contains two other parainfluenza viruses as well as mumps virus. Some animal viruses are related to the human strains. Sendai virus of mice, which was the first parainfluenza virus isolated and is now recognized as a common infection i mouse colonies, is a subtype of human type 1 virus. SV5, a common contaminant of primary monkey cells, is the same as canine parainfluenza virus type 2, whereas shipping fever virus of cattle and sheep, SF4, is a subtype of ty 3. Newcastle disease virus, the prototype avian parainfluenza virus of genus *Avulavirus* , is also related to the huma viruses.

Members within a genus share common antigenic determinants. Although the viruses can be distinguished antigenically using well-defined reagents, hyperimmunization stimulates cross-reactive antibodies that react with all four parainfluenza viruses, mumps virus, and Newcastle disease virus. Such heterotypic antibody responses, which include antibodies directed against both internal and surface proteins of the virus, are commonly observed in older people. This phenomenon makes it difficult to determine by serodiagnosis the most likely infecting type. All membe of the genera *Respirovirus* and *Rubulavirus* possess hemagglutinating and neuraminidase activities, both carried by the HN glycoprotein, as well as membrane fusion and hemolysin properties, both functions of the F protein.

The *Morbillivirus* genus contains measles virus (rubeola) of humans as well as canine distemper virus, rinderpest virus of cattle, and aquatic morbilliviruses that infect marine mammals. These viruses are antigenically related to each other but not to members of the other genera. The F protein is highly conserved among the morbilliviruses, whereas the H proteins display more variability. Measles virus has a hemagglutinin but lacks neuraminidase activity Measles virus induces formation of intranuclear inclusions, whereas other paramyxoviruses do not.

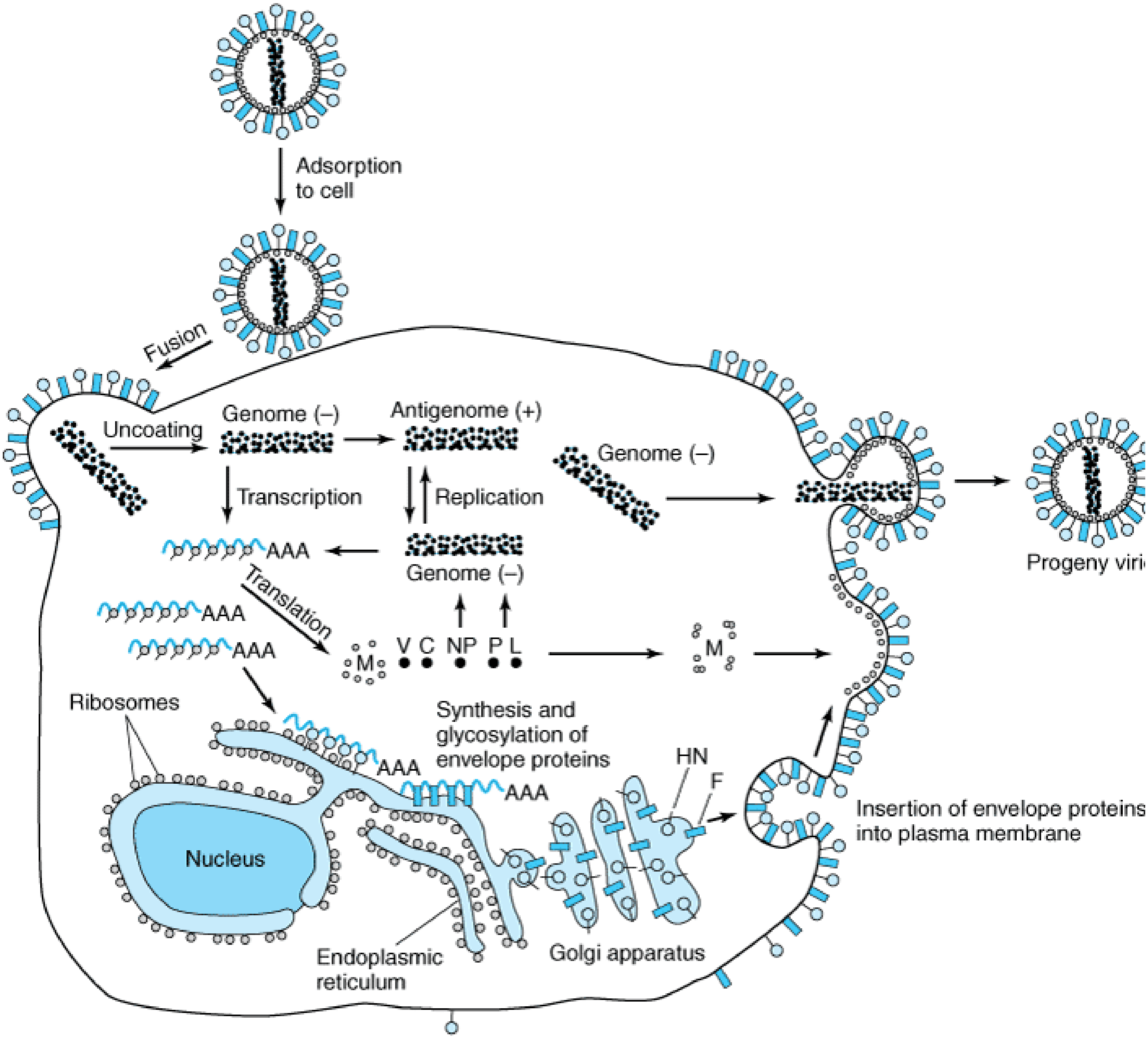
The *Henipavirus* genus contains zoonotic paramyxoviruses that are able to infect and cause disease in humans. Hendra and Nipah viruses, both indigenous to fruit bats, are members of the genus.

Respiratory syncytial viruses of humans and cattle and pneumonia virus of mice constitute the genus *Pneumovirus.* There are two antigenically distinct strains of respiratory syncytial virus of humans, subgroups A and B. The larger surface glycoprotein of pneumoviruses lacks hemagglutinating and neuraminidase activities characteristic of respiroviruses and rubulaviruses, so it is designated the G protein. The F protein of respiratory syncytial virus exhibi membrane fusion activity but no hemolysin activity. Newly recognized respiratory pathogens of humans are classifie in the genus *Metapneumovirus.*

Paramyxovirus Replication

The typical paramyxovirus replication cycle is illustrated in Figure 404.

Figure 404.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Typical replication cycle of a paramyxovirus.

(Adapted from Lamb RA, Kolakofsky D: Paramyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields E et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

VIRUS ATTACHMENT, PENETRATION, AND UNCOATING

Paramyxoviruses attach to host cells via the hemagglutinin glycoprotein (HN, H, or G protein). In the case of measle virus, the receptor is the membrane CD46 or the CD150 molecule. Next, the virion envelope fuses with the cell membrane by the action of the fusion glycoprotein F_1 cleavage product. The F_1 protein undergoes complex refolding during the process of viral and cellular membrane fusion. If the F_0 precursor is not cleaved, it has no fusion activity; virion penetration does not occur; and the virus particle is unable to initiate infection. Fusion by F_1 occurs at the neutral pH of the extracellular environment, allowing release of the viral nucleocapsid directly into the cell. Thus, paramyxoviruses are able to bypass internalization through endosomes.

TRANSCRIPTION, TRANSLATION, AND RNA REPLICATION

Paramyxoviruses contain a nonsegmented, negative-strand RNA genome. Messenger RNA transcripts are made in th cell cytoplasm by the viral RNA polymerase. There is no need for exogenous primers and therefore no dependence c cell nuclear functions. The mRNAs are much smaller than genomic size; each represents a single gene. Transcriptional regulatory sequences at gene boundaries signal transcriptional start and termination. The position of a gene relative to the 3' end of the genome correlates with transcription efficiency. The most abundant class of transcripts produced by an infected cell is from the N (NP) gene, located nearest the 3' end of the genome, whereas the least abundant is from the L gene, located at the 5' end (Figure 402).

Viral proteins are synthesized in the cytoplasm, and the quantity of each gene product corresponds to the level of mRNA transcripts from that gene. Viral glycoproteins are synthesized and glycosylated in the secretory pathway.

The viral polymerase protein complex (P and L proteins) is also responsible for viral genome replication. For successful synthesis of a positive-strand antigenome intermediate template, the polymerase complex must disregar the termination signals interspersed at gene boundaries. Full-length progeny genomes are then copied from the antigenome template.

The nonsegmented genome of paramyxoviruses negates the possibility of gene segment reshuffling (ie, genetic reassortment) so important to the natural history of influenza viruses. The HN/H/G and F surface proteins of paramyxoviruses exhibit minimal antigenic variation over long periods of time. It is surprising that they do not undergo antigenic drift as a result of mutations introduced during replication, as RNA polymerases tend to be error-prone. One possible explanation is that nearly all the amino acids in the primary structures of paramyxovirus glycoproteins may be involved in structural or functional roles, leaving little opportunity for substitutions that would not markedly diminish the viability of the virus.

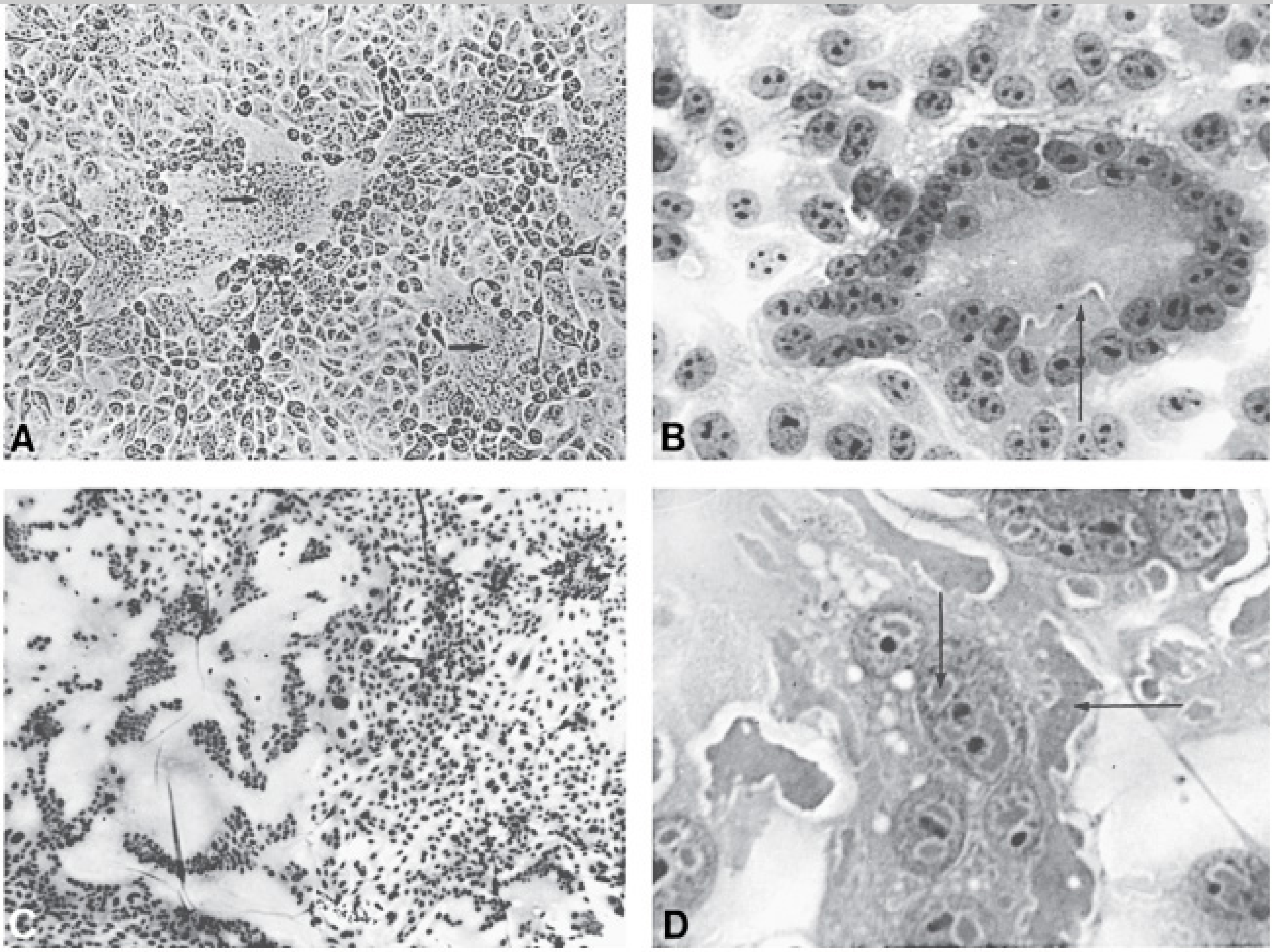
MATURATION

The virus matures by budding from the cell surface. Progeny nucleocapsids form in the cytoplasm and migrate to th cell surface. They are attracted to sites on the plasma membrane that are studded with viral HN/H/G and F_0 glycoprotein spikes. The M protein is essential for particle formation, probably serving to link the viral envelope to t nucleocapsid. During budding, most host proteins are excluded from the membrane.

The neuraminidase activity of the HN protein of parainfluenza viruses and mumps virus presumably functions to prevent self-aggregation of virus particles. Other paramyxoviruses do not possess neuraminidase activity (Table 402).

If appropriate host cell proteases are present, F_0 proteins in the plasma membrane will be activated by cleavage. Activated fusion protein will then cause fusion of adjacent cell membranes, resulting in formation of large syncytia (Figure 405). Syncytium formation is a common response to paramyxovirus infection. Acidophilic cytoplasmic inclusions are regularly formed (Figure 405). Inclusions are believed to reflect sites of viral synthesis and have been found to contain recognizable nucleocapsids and viral proteins. Measles virus also produces intranuclear inclusions (Figure 405).

Figure 405.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Syncytial formation induced by paramyxoviruses. A: Respiratory syncytial virus in MA104 cells (unstained, 100 x). Syncytia (arrows) result from fusion of plasma membranes; nuclei are accumulated in the center. B: Respiratory syncytial virus in HEp-cells (H&E stain, 400 x). Syncytium contains many nuclei and acidophilic cytoplasmic inclusions (arrow). C: Measles virus in human kidney cells (H&E stain, 30 x). Huge syncytium contains hundreds of nuclei. D: Measles virus in human kidney cells (H&E stain, 400 x). Multinucleated giant cell contains acidophilic nuclear inclusions (vertical arrow) and cytoplasmic inclusions (horizontal arrow).

(Courtesy of I Jack; reproduced from White DO, Fenner FJ: *Medical Virology,* 3rd ed. Academic Press, 1986.)

PARAINFLUENZA VIRUS INFECTIONS

Parainfluenza viruses are ubiquitous and cause common respiratory illnesses in persons of all ages. They are major pathogens of severe respiratory tract disease in infants and young children. Only respiratory syncytial virus, and perhaps human metapneumovirus, causes more cases of serious respiratory disease in children. Reinfections with parainfluenza viruses are common.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Parainfluenza virus replication in the immunocompetent host appears to be limited to respiratory epithelia. Viremia, it occurs at all, is uncommon. The infection may involve only the nose and throat, resulting in a harmless "common cold" syndrome. However, infection may be more extensive and, especially with types 1 and 2, may involve the larynx and upper trachea, resulting in croup (laryngotracheobronchitis). Croup is characterized by respiratory obstruction due to swelling of the larynx and related structures. The infection may spread deeper to the lower trach and bronchi, culminating in pneumonia or bronchiolitis, especially with type 3, but at a much lower frequency than that observed with respiratory syncytial virus.

Duration of parainfluenza virus shedding is about 1 week after onset of illness; some children may excrete virus several days prior to illness. Type 3 may be excreted for up to 4 weeks after onset of primary illness. This persisten shedding from young children facilitates spread of infection. Prolonged viral shedding may occur in children with compromised immune function and in adults with chronic lung disease.

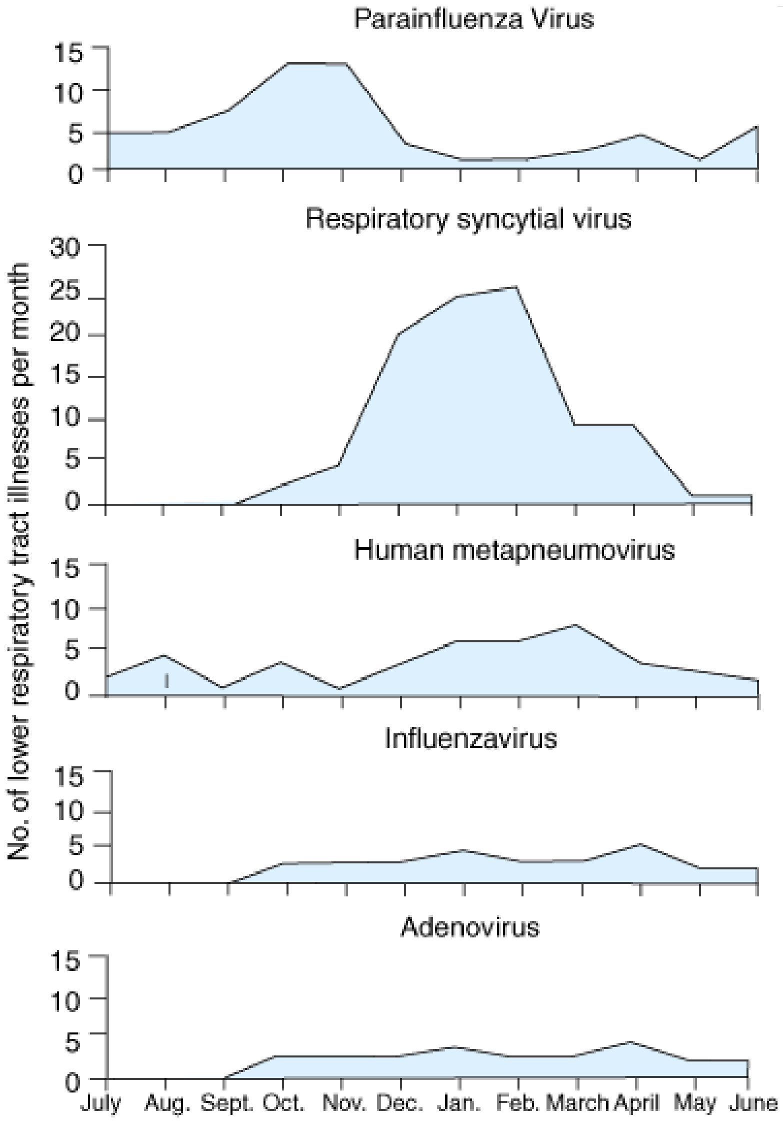
Factors that determine the severity of parainfluenza virus disease are unclear but include both viral and host properties, such as susceptibility of the protein to cleavage by different proteases, production of an appropriate protease by host cells, immune status of the patient, and airway hyperreactivity.

The production of virus-specific IgE antibodies during primary infections has been associated with disease severity. The mechanism may involve release of mediators of inflammation which alter airway function.

Clinical Findings

The relative importance of parainfluenza viruses as a cause of respiratory diseases in different age groups is indicat in Table 304. Their presence in lower respiratory tract infections in young children is shown in Figure 406.

Figure 406.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Patterns of lower respiratory tract infections in infants and young children with paramyxoviruses and other viruses. Data from 25 years of surveillance (19762001), involving 2009 children from birth to age 5 years.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Williams JV et al: Human metapneumovirus and lower respiratory tract disease in otherwi healthy infants and children. New Engl J Med 2004;350:443.)

Primary infections in young children usually result in rhinitis and pharyngitis, often with fever and some bronchitis. However, children with primary infections caused by parainfluenza virus type 1, 2, or 3 may have serious illness, ranging from laryngotracheitis and croup (particularly with types 1 and 2) to bronchiolitis and pneumonia (particularly with type 3). The severe illness associated with type 3 occurs mainly in infants under the age of 6 months; croup or laryngotracheobronchitis is more likely to occur in older children, between ages 6 months and 18 months. More than one-half of initial infections with parainfluenza virus types 13 result in febrile illness. It is estimated that only 23% develop into croup. Parainfluenza virus type 4 does not cause serious disease, even on firs infection.

The most common complication of parainfluenza virus infection is otitis media.

Immunocompromised children and adults are susceptible to severe infections. Mortality rates following parainfluenz infection in bone marrow transplant recipients range from 10% to 20%.

Newcastle disease virus is an avian paramyxovirus that produces pneumoencephalitis in young chickens and "influenza" in older birds. In humans, it may produce inflammation of the conjunctiva. Recovery is complete in 1014 days. Infection in humans is an occupational disease limited to workers handling infected birds.

Immunity

Parainfluenza virus types 13 are distinct serotypes that lack significant cross-neutralization (Table 402). Virtually all infants have maternal antibodies to the viruses in serum, yet these antibodies do not prevent infection or disease. Reinfection of older children and adults also occurs in the presence of antibodies elicited by an earlier infection. However, those antibodies modify the disease, as such reinfections usually present simply as nonfebrile upper respiratory infections (colds).

Natural infection stimulates appearance of IgA antibody in nasal secretions and concomitant resistance to reinfectio The secretory IgA antibodies are most important for providing protection against reinfection but disappear within a few months. Reinfections are thus common even in adults.

Serum antibodies are made to both HN and F viral surface proteins, but their relative roles in determining resistanc are unknown. As successive reinfections occur, the antibody response becomes less specific because of shared antigenic determinants among parainfluenza viruses and mumps virus. This makes it difficult to diagnose the specifi paramyxovirus associated with a given infection using serologic assays.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The immune response to the initial parainfluenza virus infection in life is type-specific. However, with repeated infections the response becomes less specific, and cross-reactions extend even to mumps virus. Antigen detection methods are useful for rapid diagnosis. Definitive diagnosis relies on viral isolation from appropriate specimens.

ANTIGEN DETECTION

Direct identification of viral antigens in specimens is commonly done. Antigens may be detected in exfoliated nasopharyngeal cells by direct or indirect immunofluorescence tests. These methods are rapid but less sensitive tha viral isolation and must be carefully controlled. Highly specific immune reagents are essential if specific serotype identification is desired.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Nasal washes are good specimens for viral isolation. Bronchoalveolar lavage fluid and lung tissue have also been used. Primary monkey kidney cells are the most sensitive for isolation of parainfluenza viruses, but such cells are difficult to obtain. A continuous monkey kidney cell line, LLC-MK$_2$, is a suitable alternative. Prompt inoculation of samples into cell cultures is important for successful viral isolation, as viral infectivity drops rapidly if clinical specimens are stored.

For rapid diagnosis, samples are inoculated onto cells growing on coverslips in shell vials and centrifuged (30 minut at 700 x g), and the cultures are incubated. Twenty-four to 72 hours later, the cells are fixed and tested by immunofluorescence using monoclonal antibodies. If desired, pools of antibodies to multiple respiratory viruses can be used, followed by specific typing of positive samples with individual antibodies.

Parainfluenza viruses grow slowly and produce very little cytopathic effect. Another way to detect the presence of virus is to perform hemadsorption using guinea pig erythrocytes. Depending on the amount of virus, 10 days or mo of incubation may be necessary before the cultures become hemadsorption-positive.

SEROLOGY

Serodiagnosis should be based on paired sera. Antibody responses can be measured using Nt, HI, or ELISA tests. A fourfold rise in titer is indicative of infection with a parainfluenza virus, as is the appearance of specific IgM antibod However, because of the problem of shared antigens, it is impossible to be confident of the specific virus type involved.

NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

Polymerase chain reaction assays are not commonly used at this time outside of research settings because of difficulties of RNA detection in respiratory secretions. Sequence analyses are useful in molecular epidemiology studi of parainfluenza virus infections.

Epidemiology

Parainfluenza viruses are a major cause of lower respiratory tract disease in young children (Figure 406). Parainfluenza viruses are widely distributed geographically. Type 3 is most prevalent, with about two-thirds of infan infected during the first year of life; virtually all have antibodies to type 3 by age 2 years. Infections with types 1 ar 2 occur at a lower rate, reaching prevalences of about 75% and 60%, respectively, by 5 years of age.

Type 3 is endemic, with some increase during the spring, whereas types 1 and 2 tend to cause epidemics during the fall or winter, frequently on a 2-year cycle.

Reinfections are common throughout childhood and in adults and result in mild upper respiratory tract illnesses. Reportedly, 67% of children are reinfected with parainfluenza type 3 during the second year of life. Reinfections ma necessitate hospitalization of adults with chronic lung diseases (eg, asthma).

Parainfluenza viruses are transmitted by direct person-to-person contact or by large-droplet aerosols. Type 1 has been recovered from air samples collected in the vicinity of infected patients. Infections can occur through both the nose and the eyes.

Parainfluenza viruses are usually introduced into a group by preschool children and then spread readily from person to person. The incubation period appears to be 56 days. Type 3 virus especially will generally infect all susceptible individuals in a semiclosed population, such as a family or a nursery, within a short time. Parainfluenza viruses are troublesome causes of nosocomial infection in pediatric wards in hospitals. Other high-risk situations include day ca centers and schools.

Treatment & Prevention

Contact isolation precautions are necessary to manage nosocomial outbreaks of parainfluenza virus. These include restriction of visitors, isolation of infected patients, and gowning and hand washing by medical personnel.

The antiviral drug ribavirin has been used with some benefit in treatment of immunocompromised patients with low respiratory tract disease.

Both subunit vaccines and a live attenuated type 3 virus vaccine to be administered intranasally are being tested.

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS INFECTIONS

Respiratory syncytial virus is the most important cause of lower respiratory tract illness in infants and young childre usually outranking all other microbial pathogens as the cause of bronchiolitis and pneumonia in infants under 1 yea of age. It is estimated to account for approximately 25% of pediatric hospitalizations due to respiratory disease.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Respiratory syncytial virus replication occurs initially in epithelial cells of the nasopharynx. Virus may spread into th lower respiratory tract and cause bronchiolitis and pneumonia. There is lymphocyte migration, resulting in peribronchiolar infiltration; submucosal tissues become edematous; and plugs consisting of mucus, cellular debris, and fibrin occlude the smaller bronchioles. Viral antigens can be detected in the upper respiratory tract and in shed epithelial cells in the plugs but are seldom detected in the small bronchioles. Viremia occurs rarely if at all.

The incubation period between exposure and onset of illness is 35 days. Viral shedding may persist for 13 weeks fro infants and young children, whereas adults shed for only 12 days. High viral titers are present in respiratory tract secretions from young children. Inoculum size is an important determinant of successful infection in adults (and possibly in children as well).

An intact immune system seems to be important in resolving an infection, as patients with impaired cell-mediated immunity may become persistently infected with respiratory syncytial virus and shed virus for months.

Although the airways of very young infants are narrow and more readily obstructed by inflammation and edema, it i not known why only a subset of young babies develops severe respiratory syncytial virus disease.

Possible involvement of the immune response in the pathogenesis of some respiratory syncytial virus respiratory symptoms, especially bronchiolitis, has been the subject of much speculation for many years. In the late 1960s, an experimental formalin-inactivated respiratory syncytial virus vaccine was tested. Recipients developed high titers of serum antibodies, but when immunized children encountered a subsequent infection with wild-type respiratory syncytial virus, they suffered significantly more severe lower respiratory tract illness than did children from the control group.

Clinical Findings

The spectrum of respiratory illness caused by respiratory syncytial virus ranges from inapparent infection or the common cold through pneumonia in infants to bronchiolitis in very young babies. Bronchiolitis is the distinct clinical syndrome associated with this virus. About one-third of primary respiratory syncytial virus infections involve the lower respiratory tract severely enough to require medical attention. The child may wheeze. Almost 2% of infected babies require hospitalization, resulting in an estimated 51,00082,000 hospitalizations annually in the United States with the peak occurrence at 2 months of age.

Progression of symptoms may be very rapid, culminating in death. With availability of modern pediatric intensive care, the mortality rate in normal infants is low (about 1% of hospitalized patients). But if a respiratory syncytial virus infection is superimposed on preexisting disease, such as congenital heart disease, the mortality rate may be high.

Reinfection is common in both children and adults. Although reinfections tend to be symptomatic, the illness is usually limited to the upper respiratory tract, resembling a cold, in healthy individuals.

Respiratory syncytial virus infections account for about one-third of respiratory infections in bone marrow transplant patients. Pneumonia develops in about one-half of infected immunocompromised children and adults, especially if infection occurs in the early posttransplant period. Reported mortality rates range from 20% to 80%.

Infections in the elderly may cause symptoms similar to influenza virus disease. Pneumonia may develop. Estimates of respiratory syncytial virus prevalence in long-term care facilities include infection rates of 510%, pneumonia in 1020% of those infected, and mortality rates of 25%.

Children who suffered from respiratory syncytial virus bronchiolitis and pneumonia as infants often exhibit recurrent episodes of wheezing illness for many years. However, no causal relationship has been shown between respiratory syncytial virus infections and long-term abnormalities. It may be that certain individuals have underlying physiologi traits that predispose them both to severe respiratory syncytial virus infections and to reactive airway disease.

Respiratory syncytial virus is an important cause of otitis media. It is estimated that 3050% of wintertime episodes infants may be due to respiratory syncytial virus infection.

Immunity

High levels of neutralizing antibody that is maternally transmitted and present during the first several months of life are believed to be critical in protective immunity against lower respiratory tract illness. Severe respiratory syncytial disease begins to occur in infants at 24 months of age, when maternal antibody levels are falling. Reported incidenc rates of protective levels of serum neutralizing antibodies ($\geq$ 1:512) vary from 14% to 55%. However, primary infection and reinfection can occur in the presence of viral antibodies. Serum neutralizing antibody appears to be strongly correlated with immunity against disease of the lower respiratory tract but not of the upper respiratory trac

Respiratory syncytial virus is not an effective inducer of interferonin contrast to influenza and parainfluenza virus infections, in which interferon levels are high and correlate with disappearance of virus.

Both serum and secretory antibodies are made in response to respiratory syncytial virus infection. Primary infection with one subgroup induces cross-reactive antibodies to virus of the other subgroup (Table 402). Younger infants hav lower IgG and IgA secretory antibody responses to respiratory syncytial virus than do older infants. It is not clear if secretory IgA in nasal secretions is involved in protection against reinfection. Cellular immunity is important in recovery from infection.

An association has been noted between virus-specific IgE antibody and severity of disease. Viral secretory IgE antibodies have been correlated with occurrence of bronchiolitis.

It is apparent that immunity is only partially effective and is often overcome under natural conditions; reinfections are common, but the severity of ensuing disease is lessened.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Isolation of virus and detection of viral antigen in respiratory secretions are the procedures of choice to diagnose respiratory syncytial virus infection. Respiratory syncytial virus differs from other paramyxoviruses in that it does n have a hemagglutinin; therefore, diagnostic methods cannot use hemagglutination or hemadsorption assays.

ANTIGEN DETECTION

Direct identification of viral antigens in clinical samples is rapid and sensitive. Immunofluorescence on exfoliated cel or ELISA on nasopharyngeal secretions is commonly used. A nasal wash or nasal aspirate is a good source of virus. Large amounts of virus are present in nasal washes from young children (10^3 10^8 plaque-forming units [PFU] per milliliter), but much less is present in specimens from adults (< 100 PFU/mL). ELISA kits are useful for rapid diagnosis, which is desirable because antiviral therapy is available.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Respiratory syncytial virus can be isolated from nasal secretions. It is extremely labile. Samples should be inoculate into cell cultures immediately; freezing of clinical specimens may result in complete loss of infectivity.

Human heteroploid cell lines HeLa and HEp-2 are the most sensitive for viral isolation. The presence of respiratory syncytial virus can usually be recognized by development of giant cells and syncytia in inoculated cultures (Figure 405). It may take as long as 10 days for cytopathic effects to appear. Definitive diagnosis can be established by detecting viral antigen in infected cells using a defined antiserum and the immunofluorescence test. More rapid isolation of respiratory syncytial virus can be achieved by spin-amplified inoculation of vials containing tissue culture growing on cover slips. Cells can be tested 2448 hours later by immunofluorescence.

Detection of respiratory syncytial virus is strong evidence that the virus is involved in a current illness because it is almost never found in healthy people.

SEROLOGY

Serum antibodies can be assayed in a variety of waysimmunofluorescence, ELISA, and Nt tests are all used. Measurements of serum antibody are important for epidemiologic studies but play only a small role in clinical decisio making.

NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

Polymerase chain reaction assays are being developed for application to detection of respiratory syncytial virus in respiratory secretions. Such assays also are useful for subtyping respiratory syncytial virus isolates and for the analysis of genetic variation in outbreaks.

Epidemiology

Respiratory syncytial virus is distributed worldwide and is recognized as the major pediatric respiratory tract pathogen (Figure 406). About 70% of infants are infected by age 1 and almost all by age 2 years. Serious bronchiolitis or pneumonia is most apt to occur in infants between the ages of 6 weeks and 6 months, with peak incidence at 2 months. The virus can be isolated from most infants under age 6 months suffering from bronchiolitis, but it is almost never isolated from healthy infants. Subgroup A infections appear to cause more severe illness than subgroup B infections. Respiratory syncytial virus is the most common cause of viral pneumonia in children under ag 5 years but may also cause pneumonia in the elderly or in immunocompromised persons. Respiratory syncytial viru infection of older infants and children results in milder respiratory tract infection than in those under age 6 months.

Respiratory syncytial virus is spread by large droplets and direct contact. Although the virus is very labile, it can survive on environmental surfaces for up to 6 hours. The main portal of entry into the host is through the nose and eyes.

Reinfection occurs frequently (in spite of the presence of specific antibodies), but resulting symptoms are those of a mild upper respiratory infection (a cold). In families with an identified case of respiratory syncytial infection, virus spread to siblings and adults is common.

Respiratory syncytial virus spreads extensively in children every year during the winter season. Although the virus persists throughout the summer months, outbreaks tend to peak in February or March in the Northern Hemisphere. In tropical areas, respiratory syncytial virus epidemics may coincide with rainy seasons.

Respiratory syncytial virus causes nosocomial infections in nurseries and on pediatric hospital wards. Transmission occurs primarily via hospital staff members.

Respiratory syncytial virus can also cause symptomatic disease in healthy young adults in crowded conditions (military recruits in basic training). In a study in 2000, respiratory syncytial virus was identified in 11% of recruits with respiratory symptoms. This compared to identification of adenoviruses (48%), influenza viruses (11%), and parainfluenza virus 3 (3%) in the symptomatic recruits.

Treatment & Prevention

Treatment of serious respiratory syncytial virus infections depends primarily on supportive care (eg, removal of secretions, administration of oxygen). The antiviral drug ribavirin is approved for treatment of lower respiratory trac disease due to respiratory syncytial virus, especially in infants at high risk for severe disease. The drug is administered in an aerosol for 36 days. Oral ribavirin is not useful.

Immune globulin with high-titer antibodies against respiratory syncytial virus is of marginal benefit. Humanized antiviral monoclonal antibodies are being developed.

Much research effort has been expended in an attempt to develop a respiratory syncytial virus vaccine. The vaccine enhanced disease that occurred in the 1960s following immunization with inactivated respiratory syncytial virus vaccine has stood in the way of vaccine development because the basis of the adverse effects remains unknown. Recombinant attenuated live-virus vaccines are in clinical trials.

Respiratory syncytial virus poses special problems for vaccine development. The target group, newborns, would hav to be immunized soon after birth to afford protection at the time of greatest risk of serious respiratory syncytial viru infection, and eliciting a protective immune response at this early age is difficult in the presence of maternal antibody. A strategy being tested is maternal immunization with a vaccine. The aim is to ensure transfer of protecti levels of virus-specific neutralizing antibody to infants that would persist for 35 months, the period of greatest vulnerability of newborns to severe respiratory syncytial virus disease.

Control measures necessary when nosocomial outbreaks occur are the same as described above for parainfluenza viruses (contact isolation, hand washing, and restriction of visitors).

HUMAN METAPNEUMOVIRUS INFECTIONS

Human metapneumovirus is a respiratory pathogen first described in 2001 (Table 402). It was detected using a molecular (polymerase chain reaction) approach on clinical samples from children with respiratory illnesses but with negative viral test results. It appears to be widespread, with 100% seroprevalence in young adults and older persons. Human metapneumovirus is able to cause a wide range of respiratory illnesses from mild upper respiratory symptoms to severe lower respiratory tract disease. In general, symptoms are similar to those caused by respirator syncytial virus.

It appears that infections with human metapneumovirus in young children are less common than with respiratory syncytial virus but more common than with the parainfluenza viruses (Figure 406). In a 25-year surveillance study i the United States (19762001) involving over 2000 children from birth to 5 years of age, 20% of stored nasal wash specimens from children with lower respiratory tract infections and previously negative for viruses by culture were found to be positive for human metapneumovirus by polymerase chain reaction. The majority of infections occurred between December and April.

Human metapneumovirus also causes respiratory disease in adults with hematologic malignancies.

MUMPS VIRUS INFECTIONS

Mumps is an acute contagious disease characterized by nonsuppurative enlargement of one or both salivary glands. Mumps virus mostly causes a mild childhood disease, but in adults complications including meningitis and orchitis ar fairly common. More than one-third of all mumps infections are asymptomatic.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Humans are the only natural hosts for mumps virus. Primary replication occurs in nasal or upper respiratory tract epithelial cells. Viremia then disseminates the virus to the salivary glands and other major organ systems. Involvement of the parotid gland is not an obligatory step in the infectious process.

The incubation period may range from 2 weeks to 4 weeks but is typically about 1418 days. Virus is shed in the sali from about 3 days before to 9 days after the onset of salivary gland swelling. About one-third of infected individuals do not exhibit obvious symptoms (inapparent infections) but are equally capable of transmitting infection. It is difficult to control transmission of mumps because of the variable incubation periods, the presence of virus in saliva before clinical symptoms develop, and the large number of asymptomatic but infectious cases.

Mumps is a systemic viral disease with a propensity to replicate in epithelial cells in various visceral organs. Virus frequently infects the kidneys and can be detected in the urine of most patients. Viruria may persist for up to 14 day after the onset of clinical symptoms. The central nervous system is also commonly infected and may be involved in the absence of parotitis.

Clinical Findings

The clinical features of mumps reflect the pathogenesis of the infection. At least one-third of all mumps infections ar subclinical, including the majority of infections in children under 2 years of age. The most characteristic feature of symptomatic cases is swelling of the salivary glands, which occurs in about 50% of patients.

A prodromal period of malaise and anorexia is followed by rapid enlargement of parotid glands as well as other salivary glands. Swelling may be confined to one parotid gland, or one gland may enlarge several days before the other. Gland enlargement is associated with pain.

Central nervous system involvement is common (1030% of cases). Mumps causes aseptic meningitis and is more common among males than females. Meningoencephalitis usually occurs 57 days after inflammation of the salivary glands, but up to half of patients will not have clinical evidence of parotitis. Meningitis is reported in up to 15% of cases and encephalitis in less than 0.3%. Cases of mumps meningitis and meningoencephalitis usually resolve without sequelae, although unilateral deafness occurs in about 5:100,000 cases. The mortality rate from mumps encephalitis is about 1%.

The testes and ovaries may be affected, especially after puberty. Twenty to 50 percent of men who are infected wit mumps virus develop orchitis (often unilateral). Because of the lack of elasticity of the tunica albuginea, which does not allow the inflamed testis to swell, the complication is extremely painful. Atrophy of the testis may occur as a result of pressure necrosis, but only rarely does sterility result. Mumps oophoritis occurs in about 5% of women. Pancreatitis is reported in about 4% of cases.

Immunity

Immunity is permanent after a single infection. There is only one antigenic type of mumps virus, and it does not exhibit significant antigenic variation (Table 402).

Antibodies to the HN glycoprotein (V antigen), the F glycoprotein, and the internal nucleocapsid protein (S antigen) develop in serum following natural infection. Antibodies to S antigen appear earliest (37 days after onset of clinical symptoms) but are transient and are usually gone within 6 months. Antibodies to V antigen develop more slowly (about 4 weeks after onset) but persist for years.

Antibodies against the HN antigen correlate well with immunity. Even subclinical infections are thought to generate lifelong immunity. A cell-mediated immune response also develops. Interferon is induced early in mumps infection. immune individuals, IgA antibodies secreted in the nasopharynx exhibit neutralizing activity.

Passive immunity is transferred from mother to offspring; thus, it is rare to see mumps in infants under 6 months o age.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Laboratory studies are not usually required to establish the diagnosis of typical cases. However, mumps can sometimes be confused with enlargement of the parotids due to suppuration, drug sensitivity, tumors, etc. In cases without parotitis (particularly in aseptic meningitis), the laboratory can be helpful in establishing the diagnosis.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

The most appropriate clinical samples for viral isolation are saliva, cerebrospinal fluid, and urine collected within a few days after onset of illness. Virus can be recovered from the urine for up to 2 weeks.

Monkey kidney cells are preferred for viral isolation. Samples should be inoculated shortly after collection, as mump virus is thermolabile. For rapid diagnosis, immunofluorescence using mumps-specific antiserum can detect mumps virus antigens as early as 23 days after the inoculation of cell cultures in shell vials.

In traditional culture systems, cytopathic effects typical of mumps virus consist of cell rounding and giant cell formation. As not all primary isolates show characteristic syncytial formation, the hemadsorption test may be used demonstrate the presence of a hemadsorbing agent 1 and 2 weeks after inoculation. An isolate can be confirmed as mumps virus by hemadsorption inhibition using mumps-specific antiserum.

SEROLOGY

Antibody rise can be detected using paired sera: a fourfold or greater rise in antibody titer is evidence of mumps infection. The ELISA or HI test is commonly used.

ELISA is useful because it can be designed to detect either mumps-specific IgM antibody or mumps-specific IgG antibody. Mumps IgM is uniformly present early in the illness and seldom persists longer than 60 days. Therefore, demonstration of mumps-specific IgM in serum drawn early in illness strongly suggests recent infection. Heterotypic antibodies induced by parainfluenza virus infections do not cross-react in the mumps IgM ELISA.

Epidemiology

Mumps occurs endemically worldwide. Cases appear throughout the year in hot climates and peak in winter and spring in temperate climates. Outbreaks occur where crowding favors dissemination of the virus. Mumps is primarily an infection of children. The disease reaches its highest incidence in children aged 59 years, but epidemics may occu in army camps. In children under 5 years of age, mumps may commonly cause upper respiratory tract infection without parotitis.

Mumps is quite contagious; most susceptible individuals in a household will acquire infection from an infected member. The virus is transmitted by direct contact, airborne droplets, or fomites contaminated with saliva or urine. Closer contact is necessary for transmission of mumps than for transmission of measles or varicella.

About one-third of infections with mumps virus are inapparent. During the course of inapparent infection, the patien can transmit the virus to others. Individuals with subclinical mumps acquire immunity.

The overall mortality rate for mumps is low (13.8 deaths per 10,000 cases in the United States), mostly due to encephalitis.

The incidence of mumps and associated complications has declined markedly since introduction of the live-virus vaccine. In 1967, the year mumps vaccine was licensed, there were about 200,000 mumps cases (and 900 patients with encephalitis) in the United States. In 20012003, there were fewer than 300 mumps cases each year.

In 2006, there was an outbreak of mumps in the United States that resulted in over 5700 cases. Six states in the midwest reported 84% of the cases. The outbreak started on a college campus among young adults and spread to a age groups. The outbreak probably spread because of close living conditions on college campuses and the accumulation of susceptible persons who were not successfully immunized. This led to updated recommendations fo mumps vaccination.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

There is no specific therapy.

Immunization with attenuated live mumps virus vaccine is the best approach to reducing mumps-associated morbidity and mortality rates. Attempts to minimize viral spread during an outbreak by using isolation procedures are futile because of the high incidence of asymptomatic cases and the degree of viral shedding before clinical symptoms appear; however, students and health care workers who acquire mumps illness should be excluded from school and work until 9 days after the onset of parotitis.

An effective attenuated live-virus vaccine made in chick embryo cell culture is available. It produces a subclinical, noncommunicable infection. Mumps vaccine is available in combination with measles and rubella (MMR) live-virus vaccines. Combination live-virus vaccines produce antibodies to each of the viruses in about 78% to 95% of vaccinees. There is no increased risk of aseptic meningitis after MMR vaccination.

Two doses of MMR vaccine are recommended for school entry. Because of the 2006 outbreak of mumps, updated vaccination recommendations for prevention of mumps transmission in settings with high risk for spread of infection were released. Two doses of vaccine should be given to health care workers born before 1957 without evidence of mumps immunity, and a second dose of vaccine should be considered for those who had received only a single dose

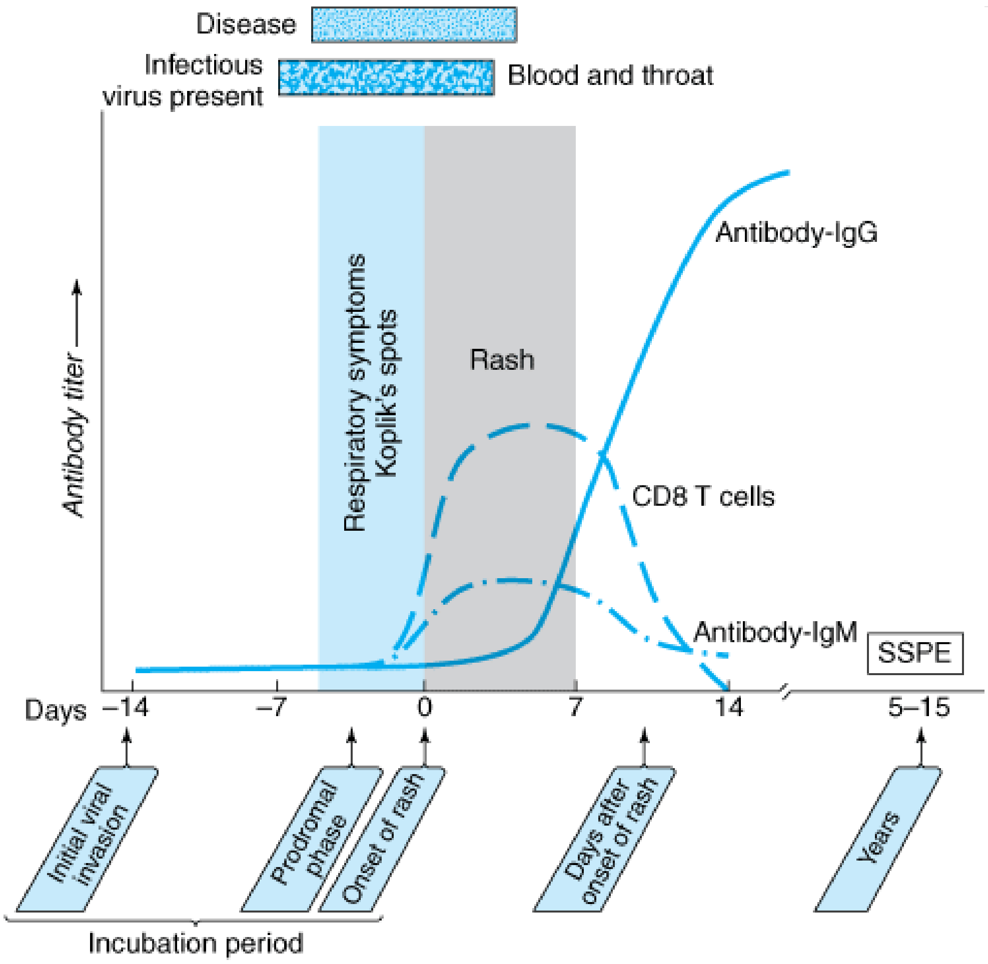
MEASLES (RUBEOLA) VIRUS INFECTIONS

Measles is an acute, highly infectious disease characterized by fever, respiratory symptoms, and a maculopapular rash. Complications are common and may be quite serious. The introduction of an effective live-virus vaccine has dramatically reduced the incidence of this disease in the United States, but measles is still a leading cause of death young children in many developing countries.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Humans are the only natural hosts for measles virus, although numerous other species, including monkeys, dogs, a mice, can be experimentally infected. The natural history of measles infection is shown in Figure 407.

Figure 407.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

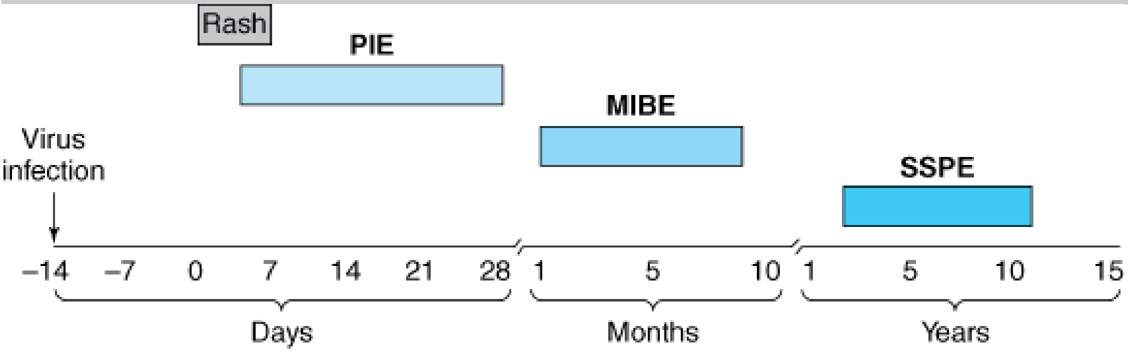
Natural history of measles infection. Viral replication begins in the respiratory epithelium and spreads to monocyte-macrophages, endothelial cells, and epithelial cells in the blood, spleen, lymph nodes, lung, thymus, liver, and skin and to the mucosal surfaces of the gastrointestinal, respiratory, and genitourinary tracts. The virus-specific immune response is detectab when the rash appears. Clearance of virus is approximately coincident with fading of the rash. (SSPE, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.)

The virus gains access to the human body via the respiratory tract, where it multiplies locally; the infection then spreads to the regional lymphoid tissue, where further multiplication occurs. Primary viremia disseminates the virus which then replicates in the reticuloendothelial system. Finally, a secondary viremia seeds the epithelial surfaces of the body, including the skin, respiratory tract, and conjunctiva, where focal replication occurs. Measles can replicate in certain lymphocytes, which aids in dissemination throughout the body. Multinucleated giant cells with intranuclea inclusions are seen in lymphoid tissues throughout the body (lymph nodes, tonsils, appendix). The described events occur during the incubation period, which typically lasts 812 days but may last up to 3 weeks in adults.

During the prodromal phase (24 days) and the first 25 days of rash, virus is present in tears, nasal and throat secretions, urine, and blood. The characteristic maculopapular rash appears about day 14 just as circulating antibodies become detectable, the viremia disappears, and the fever falls. The rash develops as a result of interacti of immune T cells with virus-infected cells in the small blood vessels and lasts about 1 week. (In patients with defective cell-mediated immunity, no rash develops.)

Involvement of the central nervous system is common in measles (Figure 408). Symptomatic encephalitis develops about 1:1000 cases. Because infectious virus is rarely recovered from the brain, it has been suggested that an autoimmune reaction is the mechanism responsible for this complication. In contrast, progressive measles inclusion body encephalitis may develop in patients with defective cell-mediated immunity. Actively replicating virus is preser in the brain in this usually fatal form of disease.

Figure 408.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Timing of neurologic complications of measles. PIE, postinfectious encephalomyelitis (also called acute disseminated encephalomyelitis); MIBE, measles inclusion body encephalitis; SSPE, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis. Encephalitis occurs in about one out of every 1000 cases of measles, whereas subacute sclerosing panencephalitis is a rare late complication that develops in about one out of 300,000 cases.

(Adapted from Griffin DE, Bellini VVJ: Measles virus. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

A rare late complication of measles is subacute sclerosing panencephalitis. This fatal disease develops years after th initial measles infection and is caused by virus that remains in the body after acute measles infection. Large amoun of measles antigens are present within inclusion bodies in infected brain cells, but only a few virus particles mature. Viral replication is defective owing to lack of production of one or more viral gene products, often the matrix protein

Clinical Findings

Infections in nonimmune hosts are almost always symptomatic. After an incubation period of 812 days, measles is typically a 7- to 11-day illness (with a prodromal phase of 24 days followed by an eruptive phase of 58 days).

The prodromal phase is characterized by fever, sneezing, coughing, running nose, redness of the eyes, Koplik's spot and lymphopenia. The cough and coryza reflect an intense inflammatory reaction involving the mucosa of the respiratory tract. The conjunctivitis is commonly associated with photophobia. Koplik's spotspathognomonic for measlesare small, bluish-white ulcerations on the buccal mucosa opposite the lower molars. These spots contain giant cells and viral antigens and appear about 2 days before the rash. The fever and cough persist until the rash appears and then subside within 12 days. The rash, which starts on the head and then spreads progressively to the chest, the trunk, and down the limbs, appears as light pink, discrete maculopapules that coalesce to form blotches, becoming brownish in 510 days. The fading rash resolves with desquamation. Symptoms are most marked when the rash is at its peak but subside rapidly thereafter.

Modified measles occurs in partially immune persons, such as infants with residual maternal antibody. The incubatio period is prolonged, prodromal symptoms are diminished, Koplik's spots are usually absent, and rash is mild.

The most common complication of measles is otitis media (59% of cases).

Pneumonia is the most common life-threatening complication of measles, caused by secondary bacterial infections. This occurs in less than 10% of cases in developed countries but is much more frequent (2080%) in developing countries. Pulmonary complications account for more than 90% of measles-related deaths. Pneumonia develops in 315% of adults with measles, but most cases are due to the virus itself rather than bacteria. Fatalities are rare.

Giant cell pneumonia is a serious complication in children and adults with deficiencies in cell-mediated immunity. It believed to be due to unrestrained viral replication and has a high fatality rate.

Complications involving the central nervous system are the most serious. About 50% of children with regular measl register electroencephalographic changes. Acute encephalitis occurs in about 1:1000 cases. There is no apparent correlation between the severity of the measles and the appearance of neurologic complications. Postinfectious encephalomyelitis (acute disseminated encephalomyelitis) is an autoimmune disease associated with an immune response to myelin basic protein. The mortality rate in encephalitis associated with measles is about 1020%. The majority of survivors have neurologic sequelae.

Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, the rare late complication of measles infection, occurs with an incidence o about 1:300,000 cases. The disease begins insidiously 515 years after a case of measles; it is characterized by progressive mental deterioration, involuntary movements, muscular rigidity, and coma. It is usually fatal within 13 years after onset. Patients with subacute sclerosing panencephalitis exhibit high titers of measles antibody in cerebrospinal fluid and serum and defective measles virus in brain cells. With the widespread use of measles vaccin subacute sclerosing panencephalitis has become less common.

Immunity

There is only one antigenic type of measles virus (Table 402). Infection confers lifelong immunity. Most so-called second attacks represent errors in diagnosis of either the initial or the second illness.

The presence of humoral antibodies indicates immunity. However, cellular immunity appears to be essential for recovery and protection: Patients with immunoglobulin deficiencies recover from measles and resist reinfection, whereas patients with cellular immune deficiencies do very poorly when they acquire measles infections. The role of mucosal immunity in resistance to infections is unclear.

Measles immune responses are involved in disease pathogenesis. Local inflammation causes the prodromal symptoms, and specific cell-mediated immunity plays a role in development of the rash.

Measles infection causes immune suppressionmost importantly in the cell-mediated arm of the immune systembut i observed to affect all components. This is the cause of the serious secondary infections and may persist for months after measles infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Typical measles is reliably diagnosed on clinical grounds; laboratory diagnosis may be necessary in cases of modifie or atypical measles.

ANTIGEN DETECTION

Measles antigens can be detected directly in epithelial cells in respiratory secretions and urine. Antibodies to the nucleoprotein are useful because that is the most abundant viral protein in infected cells.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Nasopharyngeal and conjunctival swabs, blood samples, respiratory secretions, and urine collected from a patient during the febrile period are appropriate sources for viral isolation. Monkey or human kidney cells or a lymphoblastoid cell line (B95-a) are optimal for isolation attempts. Measles virus grows slowly; typical cytopathic effects (multinucleated giant cells containing both intranuclear and intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies) take 710 days to develop (Figure 405). Shell vial culture tests can be completed in 23 days using fluorescent antibody staining to detect measles antigens in the inoculated cultures. However, virus isolation is technically difficult.

SEROLOGY

Serologic confirmation of measles infection depends on a fourfold rise in antibody titer between acute-phase and convalescent-phase sera or on demonstration of measles-specific IgM antibody in a single serum specimen drawn between 1 and 2 weeks after the onset of rash. ELISA, HI, and Nt tests all may be used to measure measles antibodies, though ELISA is the most practical method.

The major part of the immune response is directed against the viral nucleoprotein. Patients with subacute sclerosin panencephalitis display an exaggerated antibody response, with titers 10- to 100-fold higher than those seen in typical convalescent sera.

Epidemiology

The key epidemiologic features of measles are as follows: The virus is highly contagious, there is a single serotype, there is no animal reservoir, inapparent infections are rare, and infection confers lifelong immunity. Prevalence and age incidence of measles are related to population density, economic and environmental factors, and the use of an effective live-virus vaccine.

Transmission occurs predominantly via the respiratory route (by inhalation of large droplets of infected secretions). Fomites do not appear to play a significant role in transmission. Hematogenous transplacental transmission can occ when measles occurs during pregnancy.

A continuous supply of susceptible individuals is required for the virus to persist in a community. A population size approaching 500,000 is necessary to sustain measles as an endemic disease; in smaller communities, the virus disappears until it is reintroduced from the outside after a critical number of nonimmune persons accumulates.

Measles is endemic throughout the world. In general, epidemics recur regularly every 23 years. A population's state of immunity is the determining factor; the disease will flare up when there is an accumulation of susceptible childre The severity of an epidemic is a function of the number of susceptible individuals. When the disease is introduced in isolated communities where it has not been endemic, an epidemic builds rapidly and attack rates are almost 100%. All age groups develop clinical measles, and the mortality rate may be as high as 25%.

In industrialized countries, measles occurs in 5- to 10-year-old children, whereas in developing countries it commo infects children under 5 years of age. Measles rarely causes death in healthy people in developed countries. Howeve in malnourished children in developing countries where adequate medical care is unavailable, measles is a leading cause of infant mortality. The World Health Organization estimated in 2005 that there were 3040 million measles cases and 530,000 deaths annually worldwide. Measles is the fifth leading global cause of mortality among children under 5 years of age, and measles deaths occur disproportionately in Africa and Southeast Asia.

Measles cases occur throughout the year in temperate climates. Epidemics tend to occur in late winter and early spring.

There were 540 measles cases in the United States from 1997 to 2001, 67% of which were linked to imports (persons infected outside the United States). Over an 8-year period (19962004), 117 passengers with imported measles cases were considered infectious while traveling by aircraft. Despite the highly infectious nature of the viru only four secondary-spread cases were identified.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

Vitamin A treatment in developing countries has decreased mortality and morbidity. Measles virus is susceptible in vitro to inhibition by ribavirin, but clinical benefits have not been proved.

A highly effective and safe attenuated live measles virus vaccine has been available since 1963. Measles vaccine is available in monovalent form and in combination with live attenuated rubella vaccine (MR) and live attenuated rube and mumps vaccines (MMR). However, because of failure to vaccinate children and because of infrequent cases of vaccine failure, measles has not been eliminated. The vaccine has reduced indigenous measles in the United States from prevaccine levels of more than 500,000 cases annually to only 37 cases in 2004.

Mild clinical reactions (fever or mild rash) will occur in 25% of vaccinees, but there is little or no virus excretion and no transmission. Immunosuppression occurs as with measles, but it is transient and clinically insignificant. Antibody titers tend to be lower than after natural infection, but studies have shown that vaccine-induced antibodies persist f up to 33 years, indicating that immunity is probably lifelong.

It is recommended that all children, health care workers, and international travelers be vaccinated. Contraindication to vaccination include pregnancy, allergy to eggs or neomycin, immune compromise (except that due to infection with human immunodeficiency virus), and recent administration of immunoglobulin.

The use of killed measles virus vaccine was discontinued by 1970, as certain vaccinees became sensitized and developed severe atypical measles when infected with wild virus.

Quarantine is not effective as a control measure because transmission of measles occurs during the prodromal phas

NIPAH VIRUS & HENDRA VIRUS INFECTIONS

Two zoonotic paramyxoviruses that represent a new genus were recognized in the late 1990s in disease outbreaks i Australasia (Table 402). An outbreak of severe encephalitis in Malaysia in 1998 and 1999 was caused by Nipah viru There was a high mortality rate (> 35%) among more than 250 cases; a few survivors had persistent neurologic deficits. It appeared that the infections were caused by direct viral transmission from pigs to humans. Hendra virusa equine virushas caused many horse fatalities and a few human fatalities in Australia.

Fruit bats (flying foxes) are the natural host for both Nipah and Hendra viruses. Ecologic changes, including land us and animal husbandry practices, are probably the reason for the emergence of these two infectious diseases.

Both viruses are of public health concern because of their high mortality, wide host range, and ability to jump speci barriers. They are classified as Biosafety Level 4 pathogens.

RUBELLA (GERMAN MEASLES) VIRUS INFECTIONS

Rubella (German measles; 3-day measles) is an acute febrile illness characterized by a rash and lymphadenopathy that affects children and young adults. It is the mildest of common viral exanthems. However, infection during early pregnancy may result in serious abnormalities of the fetus, including congenital malformations and mental retardation. The consequences of rubella in utero are referred to as the congenital rubella syndrome.

Classification

Rubella virus, a member of the Togaviridae family, is the sole member of the genus *Rubivirus.* Although its morphologic features and physicochemical properties place it in the togavirus group, rubella is not transmitted by arthropods. Togavirus structure and replication are described in Chapter 38.

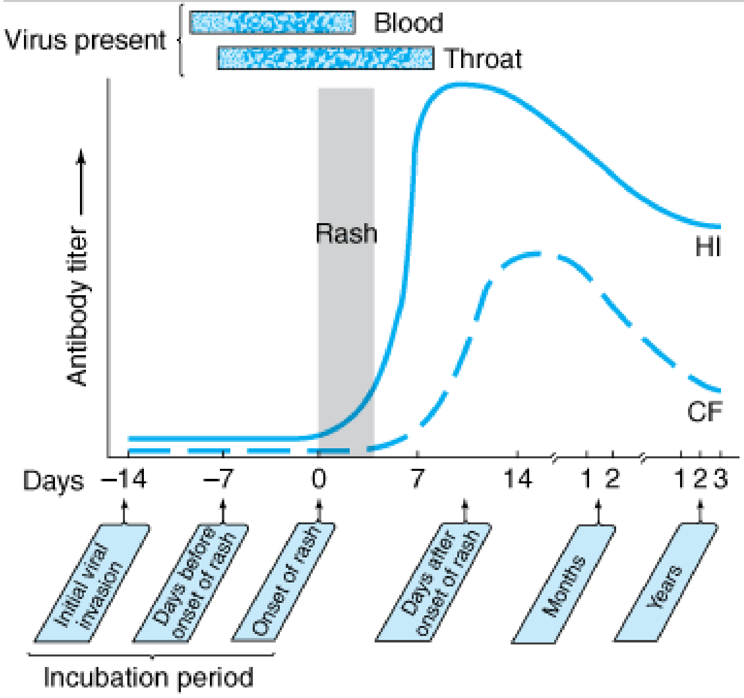
For clarity in presentation, postnatal rubella and congenital rubella infections are described separately.

Postnatal Rubella

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Neonatal, childhood, and adult infections occur through the mucosa of the upper respiratory tract. Initial viral replication probably occurs in the respiratory tract, followed by multiplication in the cervical lymph nodes. Viremia develops after 79 days and lasts until the appearance of antibody on about day 1315. The development of antibody coincides with the appearance of the rash, suggesting an immunologic basis for the rash. After the rash appears, the virus remains detectable only in the nasopharynx, where it may persist for several weeks (Figure 409). In 2050% of cases, primary infection is subclinical.

Figure 409.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Natural history of primary rubella infection: virus production and antibody responses.

Clinical Findings

Rubella usually begins with malaise, low-grade fever, and a morbilliform rash appearing on the same day. The rash starts on the face, extends over the trunk and extremities, and rarely lasts more than 3 days. No feature of the rash is pathognomonic for rubella. Unless an epidemic occurs, the disease is difficult to diagnose clinically, as the rash caused by other viruses (eg, enteroviruses) is similar.

Transient arthralgia and arthritis are commonly seen in adults, especially women. Despite certain similarities, rubell arthritis is not etiologically related to rheumatoid arthritis. Rare complications include thrombocytopenic purpura an encephalitis.

Immunity

Rubella antibodies appear in the serum of patients as the rash fades and the antibody titer rises rapidly over the ne 13 weeks. Much of the initial antibody consists of IgM antibodies, which generally do not persist beyond 6 weeks aft the illness. IgM rubella antibodies found in a single serum sample obtained 2 weeks after the rash give evidence of recent rubella infection. IgG rubella antibodies usually persist for life.

One attack of the disease confers lifelong immunity, as only one antigenic type of the virus exists. Because of the nondescript nature of the rash, a history of "rubella" is not a reliable index of immunity. Immune mothers transfer antibodies to their offspring, who are then protected for 46 months.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Clinical diagnosis of rubella is unreliable because many viral infections produce symptoms similar to those of rubella Certain diagnosis rests on specific laboratory studies (isolation of virus or evidence of seroconversion).

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Nasopharyngeal or throat swabs taken 6 days before and after onset of rash are a good source of rubella virus. Various cell lines of monkey or rabbit origin may be used. Rubella produces a rather inconspicuous cytopathic effect in most of the cell lines. Using cells cultured in shell vials, viral antigens can be detected by immunofluorescence 34 days postinoculation.

SEROLOGY

The HI test is a standard serologic test for rubella. However, serum must be pretreated to remove nonspecific inhibitors before testing. ELISA tests are preferred because serum pretreatment is not required and they can be adapted to detect specific IgM.

Detection of IgG is evidence of immunity, as there is only one serotype of rubella virus. To accurately confirm a recent rubella infection (critically important in the case of a pregnant woman), either a rise in antibody titer must be demonstrated between two serum samples taken at least 10 days apart or rubella-specific IgM must be detected in single specimen.

Accurate serologic testing for rubella antibodies is so important that various diagnostic kits in a variety of formats ar commercially available. Most individuals are unable to assess their rubella immunity status reliably, because subclinical infections are common and rashes induced by other viruses may be mistaken for rubella.

Epidemiology

Rubella is worldwide in distribution. Infection occurs throughout the year with a peak incidence in the spring. Epidemics occur every 610 years, with explosive pandemics every 2025 years. Infection is transmitted by the respiratory route, but rubella is not as contagious as measles.

A worldwide rubella epidemic occurred in 19621965. There were over 12 million cases in the United States, resultin in 2000 cases of encephalitis, over 11,000 fetal deaths, 2000 neonatal deaths, and 20,000 infants born with congenital rubella syndrome. The economic impact of this epidemic in the United States was estimated at $1.5 billion. The use of rubella vaccine has now eliminated both epidemic and endemic rubella in the United States.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

Rubella is a mild, self-limited illness, and no specific treatment is indicated.

Laboratory-proved rubella in the first 34 months of pregnancy is almost uniformly associated with fetal infection. Immune globulin intravenous (IGIV) injected into the mother does not protect the fetus against rubella infection because it is usually not given early enough to prevent viremia.

Attenuated live rubella vaccines have been available since 1969. The vaccine is available as a single antigen or combined with measles and mumps vaccine. The primary purpose of rubella vaccination is to prevent congenital rubella infections. The vaccine virus multiplies in the body and is shed in small amounts, but it does not spread to contacts. Vaccinated children pose no threat to mothers who are susceptible and pregnant. In contrast, nonimmunized children can bring home wild virus and spread it to susceptible family contacts. The vaccine induces lifelong immunity in at least 95% of recipients.

The vaccine is safe and causes few side effects in children. In adults, the only significant side effects are transient arthralgia and arthritis in about one-fourth of vaccinated women.

Vaccination in the United States has decreased the incidence of rubella from about 70,000 cases in 1969 to less tha 10 in 2003 and 2004. These cases occurred predominantly among persons born outside the United States. Cost-benefit studies in both developed and developing countries have shown that the benefits of rubella vaccination outweigh the costs.

Congenital Rubella Syndrome

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Maternal viremia associated with rubella infection during pregnancy may result in infection of the placenta and fetus Only a limited number of fetal cells become infected. The growth rate of infected cells is reduced, resulting in fewer numbers of cells in affected organs at birth. The infection may lead to deranged and hypoplastic organ development resulting in structural anomalies in the newborn.

Timing of the fetal infection determines the extent of teratogenic effect. In general, the earlier in pregnancy infectio occurs, the greater the damage to the fetus. Infection during the first trimester of pregnancy results in abnormalitie in the infant in about 85% of cases, whereas detectable defects are found in about 16% of infants who acquired infection during the second trimester. Birth defects are uncommon if maternal infection occurs after the 20th week gestation.

Inapparent maternal infections can produce these anomalies as well. Rubella infection can also result in fetal death and spontaneous abortion.

Intrauterine infection with rubella is associated with chronic persistence of the virus in the newborn. At birth, virus i easily detectable in pharyngeal secretions, multiple organs, cerebrospinal fluid, urine, and rectal swabs. Viral excretion may last for 1218 months after birth, but the level of shedding gradually decreases with age.

Clinical Findings

Rubella virus has been isolated from many different organs and cell types from infants infected in utero, and rubella induced damage is similarly widespread.

Clinical features of congenital rubella syndrome may be grouped into three broad categories: (1) transient effects in infants, (2) permanent manifestations that may be apparent at birth or become recognized during the first year, an (3) developmental abnormalities that appear and progress during childhood and adolescence.

The classic triad of congenital rubella consists of cataracts, cardiac abnormalities, and deafness. Infants may also display transient symptoms of growth retardation, rash, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, and meningoencephalitis.

Central nervous system involvement is more global. The most common developmental manifestation of congenital rubella is moderate to profound mental retardation. Problems with balance and motor skills develop in preschool children. Severely affected infants may require institutionalization.

Progressive rubella panencephalitis, a rare complication that develops in the second decade of life in children with congenital rubella, is a severe neurologic deterioration that inevitably progresses to death.

Immunity

Normally, maternal rubella antibody in the form of IgG is transferred to infants and is gradually lost over a period o 6 months. Demonstration of rubella antibodies of the IgM class in infants is diagnostic of congenital rubella. As IgM antibodies do not cross the placenta, their presence indicates that they must have been synthesized by the infant in utero. Children with congenital rubella exhibit impaired cell-mediated immunity specific for rubella virus.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

There is no specific treatment for congenital rubella. It can be prevented by childhood immunization with rubella vaccine to ensure that women of childbearing age are immune.

REFERENCES

Collins PL, Murphy BR: Respiratory syncytial virus: Reverse genetics and vaccine strategies. Virology 2002;296:204. [PMID: 12069519]

Eaton BT, Broder CC, Middleton D, Wang LF: Hendra and Nipah viruses: Different and dangerous. Nature Rev Microbiol 2006;4:23. [PMID 16357858]

Falsey AR et al: Human metapneumovirus infections in young and elderly adults. J Infect Dis 2003;187:785. [PMID: 12599052]

Hall AJ: Morbilliviruses in marine mammals. Trends Microbiol 1995;3:4. [PMID: 7719638]

Hall CB: Respiratory syncytial virus and parainfluenza virus. N Engl J Med 2001;344:1917. [PMID: 11419430]

Henrickson KJ: Parainfluenza viruses. Clin Microbiol Rev 2003;16:242. [PMID: 12692097]

Kahn JS: Epidemiology of human metapneumovirus. Clin Microbiol Rev 2006;19:546. [PMID: 16847085]

Lamb RA, Kolakofsky D: Paramyxoviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincot Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

INTRODUCTION

Coronaviruses are large, enveloped RNA viruses. The human coronaviruses cause common colds and have been implicated in gastroenteritis in infants. A novel coronavirus was identified as the cause of a worldwide outbreak of a severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) in 2003. Animal coronaviruses cause diseases of economic importance in domestic animals. Coronaviruses of lower animals establish persistent infections in their natural hosts. The human viruses are difficult to culture and therefore are more poorly characterized.

PROPERTIES OF CORONAVIRUSES

Important properties of the coronaviruses are listed in Table 411.

Table 411. Important Properties of Coronaviruses.

Virion: Spherical, 120160 nm in diameter, helical nucleocapsid
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, nonsegmented, positive-sense, 2732 kb, capped and polyadenylated, infectious
Proteins: Two glycoproteins and one phosphoprotein. Some viruses contain a third glycoprotein (hemagglutinin esterase)
Envelope: Contains large, widely spaced, club- or petal-shaped spikes
Replication: Cytoplasm; particles mature by budding into endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi
Outstanding characteristics:
Cause colds and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)
Display high frequency of recombination
Difficult to grow in cell culture

Structure & Composition

Coronaviruses are enveloped, 120- to 160-nm particles that contain an unsegmented genome of single-stranded positive-sense RNA (2732 kb), the largest genome among RNA viruses. Isolated genomic RNA is infectious. The helical nucleocapsid is 911 nm in diameter. There are 20-nm-long club- or petal-shaped projections that are widely spaced on the outer surface of the envelope, suggestive of a solar corona (Figure 411). The viral structural proteins include a 5060 kDa phosphorylated nucleocapsid (N) protein, a 2035 kDa membrane (M) glycoprotein that serves as a matrix protein embedded in the envelope lipid bilayer and interacting with the nucleocapsid, and the spike (S; 180220 kDa) glycoprotein that makes up the petal-shaped peplomers. Some viruses, including human coronavirus OC43, contain a third glycoprotein (HE; 65 kDa) that causes hemagglutination and has acetylesterase activity.

Figure 411.

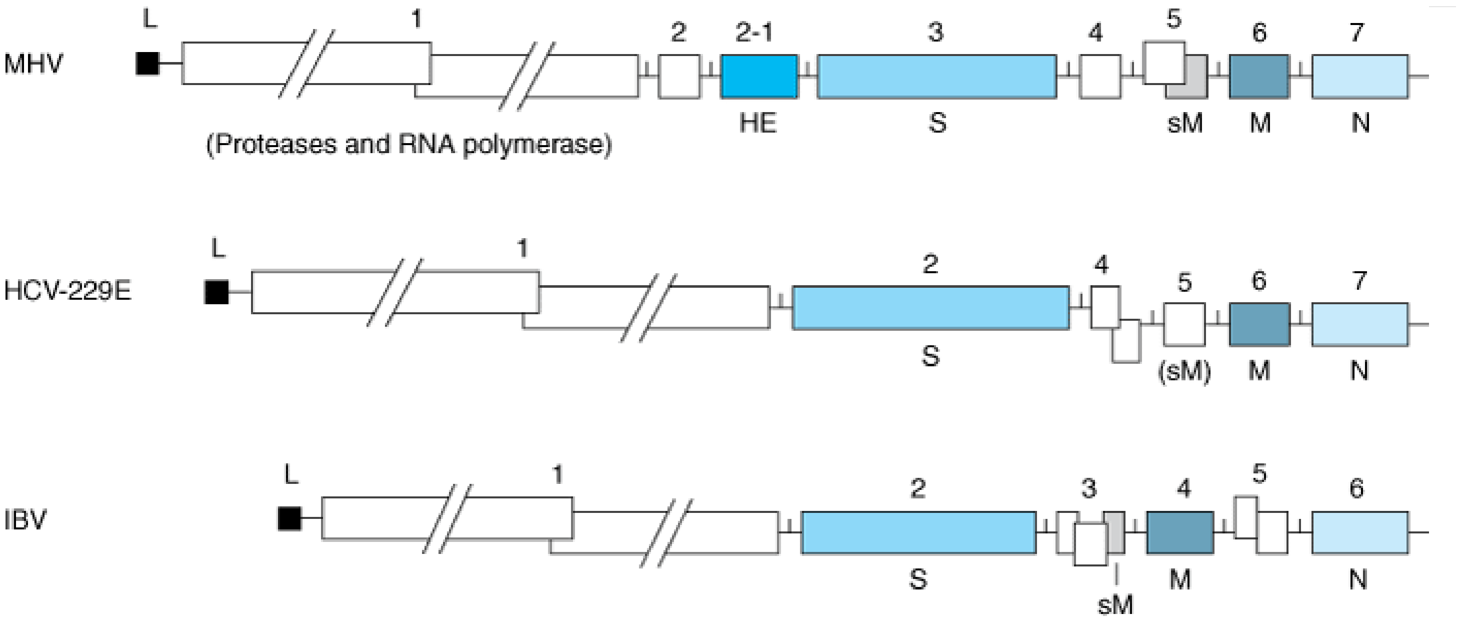
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Human coronavirus OC43. Note the characteristic large, widely spaced spikes that form a "corona" around the virion (297,000 ×).

(Courtesy of FA Murphy and EL Palmer.)

The genome organizations of representative coronaviruses are shown in Figure 412. The gene order for the proteins encoded by all coronaviruses is Pol-S-M-N. Several open reading frames encoding nonstructural proteins and the HE protein differ in number and gene order among coronaviruses.

Figure 412.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genomic organization of coronaviruses. The mouse hepatitis virus (MHV) genome is 31.2 kb, whereas the infectious bronchitis virus (IBV) genome is 27.6 kb. Also included is human coronavirus (HCV) 229E. Open reading frames encoding structural proteins are shown (boxes).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Holmes KV, Lai MMC: Coronaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

Classification

Characteristics used to classify Coronaviridae include particle morphology, unique RNA replication strategy, genome organization, and nucleotide sequence homology. There are two genera in the Coronaviridae family: *Coronavirus* and *Torovirus.* The toroviruses are widespread in ungulates and appear to be associated with diarrheas.

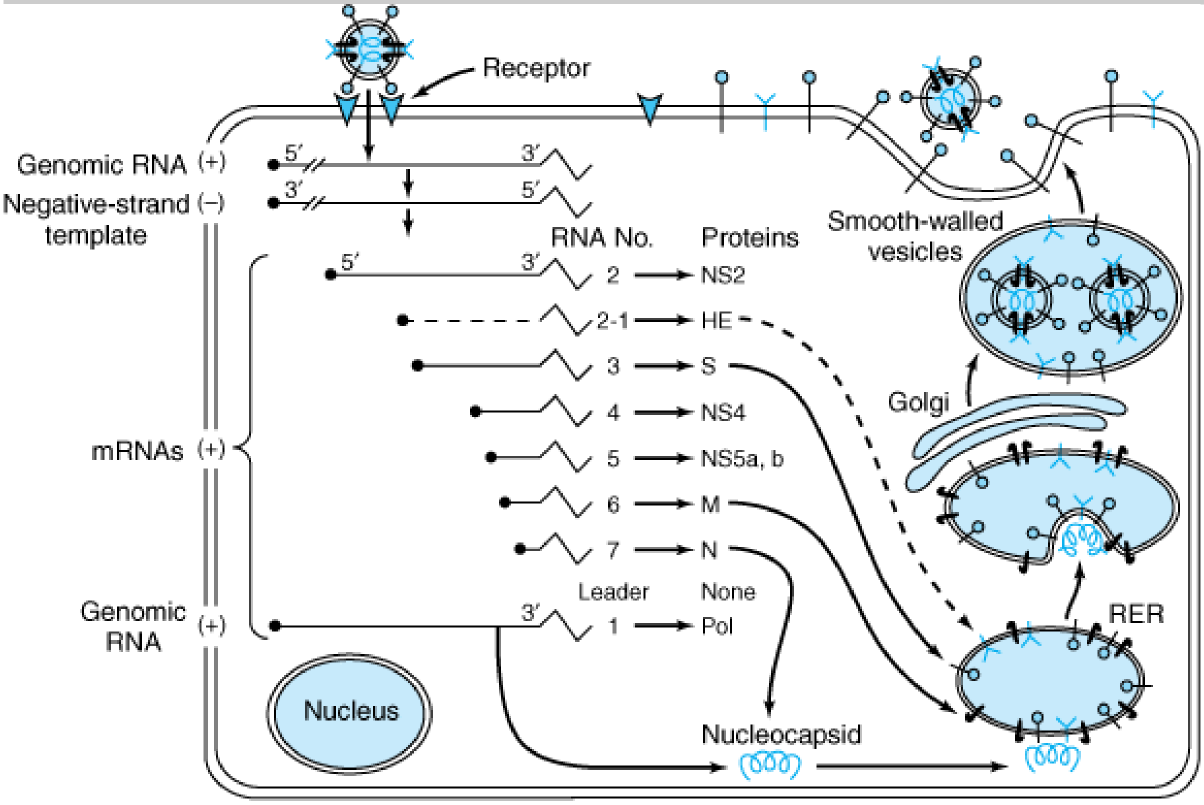
There seem to be two serogroups of human coronaviruses, represented by strains 229E and OC43. The novel coronavirus recovered in 2003 from patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is in the same group (Group 2) as OC43. Coronaviruses of domestic animals and rodents are included in these two groups. There is a third distinct antigenic group which contains the avian infectious bronchitis virus of chickens. There appears to be significant antigenic heterogeneity among viral strains within a major antigenic group (ie, 229E-like). Cross-reactions occur between some human and some animal strains. Some strains have hemagglutinins.

Viruses can also be placed into the same groups based on genome sequence analysis.

Coronavirus Replication

Because human coronaviruses do not grow well in cell culture, details of viral replication have come from studies with mouse hepatitis virus, which is closely related to human strain OC43 (Figure 413). The replication cycle takes place in the cytoplasm of cells.

Figure 413.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Model of coronavirus replication based on mouse hepatitis virus. Virions bind to the plasma membrane by interaction with specific receptor glycoproteins. Penetration occurs by S protein-mediated fusion of the viral envelope with the plasma membrane or, for some strains, with endocytic membranes. The genomic RNA is translated to form a polyprotein (> 800 kDa) which is processed to yield multiple proteins that serve as a virus-specific, RNA-dependent RNA polymerase and perhaps play other roles in transcription and replication of viral RNAs. Overlapping nested sets of 3' coterminal subgenomic mRNAs are made in infected cells. The genomic RNA and mRNAs are capped and polyadenylated. Each of the polycistronic mRNAs is translated to yield only the polypeptide encoded at the 5' end of the mRNA. The N protein and newly formed genomic RNA assemble in the cytoplasm to form helical nucleocapsids. The S glycoprotein is glycosylated, trimerized, and transported through the Golgi apparatus, where it is further processed. Excess S protein that is not incorporated into virions is transported to the plasma membrane, where it may participate in cell-cell fusion. The matrix glycoprotein M is transported to the Golgi apparatus, where it accumulates; it is not transported to the plasma membrane. Virions are formed in a budding compartment between the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER) and the Golgi apparatus. Virions do not bud from the plasma membrane but are apparently released by fusion of virion-containing vesicles with the plasma membrane. Numerous virions may remain adsorbed to the plasma membranes of infected cells.

(Reproduced from Holmes KV, Lai MMC: Coronaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996. Adapted from Sturman LS, Holmes KV: Adv Virus Res 1983;28:35.)

The virus attaches to receptors on target cells by the glycoprotein spikes on the viral envelope (either by S or HE). The receptor for human coronavirus 229E is aminopeptidase N, whereas a functional receptor for the SARS virus is angiotensin-converting enzyme 2. Multiple isoforms of the carcinoembryonic antigen-related glycoprotein family serve as receptors for mouse coronavirus. The particle is then internalized, probably by absorptive endocytosis. The S glycoprotein may cause fusion of the viral envelope with the cell membrane.

The first event after uncoating is translation of the viral genomic RNA to produce a virus-specific RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The viral polymerase transcribes a full-length complementary (minus-strand) RNA that serves as the template for a nested set of five to seven subgenomic mRNAs. Only the 5' terminal gene sequence of each mRNA is translated. Full-length genomic RNA copies are also transcribed off the complementary RNA. As each subgenomic mRNA is translated into a single polypeptide, polyprotein precursors are not common in coronavirus infections, although the genomic RNA encodes a large polyprotein that gets processed to yield the viral RNA polymerase.

Newly synthesized genomic RNA molecules interact in the cytoplasm with the nucleocapsid protein to form helical nucleocapsids. There is a preferred binding site for N protein within the leader RNA. The nucleocapsids bud through membranes of the rough endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus in areas that contain the viral glycoproteins. Mature virions may then be transported in vesicles to the cell periphery for exit or may wait until the cell dies to be released.

Virions are apparently not formed by budding at the plasma membrane. Large numbers of particles may be seen on the exterior of infected cells and are presumably adsorbed to it after virion release. Certain coronaviruses induce cell fusion; this is mediated by the S glycoprotein and requires pH 6.5 or higher. Some coronaviruses establish persistent infections of cells rather than being cytocidal.

Coronaviruses exhibit a high frequency of mutation during each round of replication, including the generation of a high incidence of deletion mutations. Coronaviruses undergo a high frequency of recombination during replication; this is unusual for an RNA virus with a nonsegmented genome and may contribute to the evolution of new virus strains.

CORONAVIRUS INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

Pathogenesis

Coronaviruses tend to be highly species-specific. Little is known about the pathogenesis of coronavirus disease in humans. Most of the known animal coronaviruses display a tropism for epithelial cells of the respiratory or gastrointestinal tract. Coronavirus infections in vivo may be disseminated, such as with mouse hepatitis virus, or localized. Coronavirus infections in humans usually remain limited to the upper respiratory tract.

In contrast, the outbreak of SARS in 2003 was characterized by serious respiratory illness, including pneumonia and progressive respiratory failure. In all likelihood, the SARS virus originated in a nonhuman host and acquired the ability to infect humans. Chinese horseshoe bats are natural reservoirs of SARS-like coronaviruses. In rural regions of southern China, where the outbreak began, people, pigs, and domestic fowl live close together and there is widespread use of wild species for food and traditional medicineconditions that promote the emergence of new viral strains.

Coronaviruses are suspected of causing some gastroenteritis in humans, but the agents have not been isolated. There are several animal models for enteric coronaviruses, including porcine transmissible gastroenteritis virus (TGEV). Disease occurs in young animals and is marked by epithelial cell destruction and loss of absorptive capacity. It is of interest that a novel porcine respiratory coronavirus (PRCV) appeared in Europe in the 1980s and caused widespread epizootics in pigs. Sequence analysis showed that PRCV was derived from TGEV by a large deletion in the S1 glycoprotein.

Clinical Findings

The human coronaviruses produce "colds," usually afebrile, in adults. The symptoms are similar to those produced by rhinoviruses, typified by nasal discharge and malaise. The incubation period is from 2 days to 5 days, and symptoms usually last about 1 week. The lower respiratory tract is seldom involved, although pneumonia in military recruits has been attributed to coronavirus infection. Asthmatic children may suffer wheezing attacks, and chronic pulmonary disease in adults may exacerbate respiratory symptoms.

The SARS coronavirus causes severe respiratory disease. The incubation period averages about 6 days. Common early symptoms include fever, malaise, chills, headache, dizziness, cough, and sore throat, followed a few days later by shortness of breath. Many patients have abnormal chest radiographs. Some cases progress rapidly to acute respiratory distress, requiring ventilatory support. Death from progressive respiratory failure occurs in almost 10% of cases, with the death rate highest among the elderly.

Clinical features of coronavirus-associated enteritis have not been clearly described. They appear to be similar to those of rotavirus infections.

Immunity

As with other respiratory viruses, immunity develops but is not absolute. Immunity against the surface projection antigen is probably most important for protection. Resistance to reinfection may last several years, but reinfections with similar strains are common.

Most patients (> 95%) with SARS developed an antibody response to viral antigens detectable by a fluorescent antibody test or ELISA. It was important that the convalescent serum be collected more than 28 days after symptom onset.

Laboratory Diagnosis

ANTIGEN AND NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION

Coronavirus antigens in cells in respiratory secretions may be detected using the ELISA test if a high-quality antiserum is available. Enteric coronaviruses can be detected by examination of stool samples by electron microscopy. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays are useful to detect coronavirus nucleic acid in respiratory secretions and in stool samples. SARS virus RNA was detectable in plasma by PCR, with viremia most readily detectable between days 4 and 8 of infection.

ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF VIRUS

Isolation of human coronaviruses in cell culture has been difficult. However, the SARS virus was recovered from oropharyngeal specimens using Vero monkey kidney cells.

SEROLOGY

Because of the difficulty of virus isolation, serodiagnosis using acute and convalescent sera is the practical means of confirming coronavirus infections. ELISA and hemagglutination tests may be used. Serologic diagnosis of infections with strain 229E is possible using a passive hemagglutination test in which red cells coated with coronavirus antigen are agglutinated by antibody-containing sera.

Epidemiology

Coronaviruses are distributed worldwide. They are a major cause of respiratory illness in adults during some winter months when the incidence of colds is high, but the isolation of rhinoviruses or other respiratory viruses is low.

They tend to be associated with well-defined outbreaks.

It is estimated that coronaviruses cause 1530% of all colds. The incidence of coronavirus infections varies markedly from year to year, ranging in one 3-year study from 1% to 35%.

Antibodies to respiratory coronaviruses appear in childhood, increase in prevalence with age, and are found in more than 90% of adults. It appears that reinfection with symptoms can occur after a period of 1 year.

Coronaviruses are commonly associated with acute respiratory disease in the elderly, along with rhinoviruses, influenza virus, and respiratory syncytial virus. The frequency of coronavirus infection is estimated to be about half that of rhinoviruses and equivalent to those of the latter two viruses.

It has been shown that SARS coronavirus can be airborne in a health care setting, suggesting that airborne transmission might occur. SARS contamination of frequently touched surfaces, such as a bed table (fomites), has been observed also.

The outbreak of SARS erupted in southern China in late 2002 and, by the time it waned in mid-2003, had resulted in over 8000 cases in 29 countries, with over 800 deaths (case fatality rate of 9.6%). In almost all cases there was a history of close contact with a SARS patient or of recent travel to an area where SARS was reported. International air travel allowed SARS to spread around the world with unprecedented speed. The experience with SARS illustrated that in a globalized world, an infectious disease outbreak anywhere places every country at risk.

Interestingly, a few persons with SARS were identified as "super spreaders"; each appeared to have infected more than ten contacts. Super spreaders have been described for other diseases such as rubella, Ebola, and tuberculosis and presumably reflect a certain constellation of host, viral, and environmental factors.

Very little is known about the epidemiology of enteric coronavirus infections.

Treatment, Prevention, & Control

There is no proven treatment for coronavirus infections and no vaccine.

Control measures that were effective in stopping the spread of SARS included isolation of patients, quarantine of those who had been exposed, and travel restrictions, as well as the use of gloves, gowns, goggles, and respirators by health care workers.

REFERENCES

Booth TF et al: Detection of airborne severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) coronavirus and environmental contamination in SARS outbreak units. J Infect Dis 2005;191:1472. [PMID: 15809906]

Lee N et al: A major outbreak of severe acute respiratory syndrome in Hong Kong. N Engl J Med 2003;348:1986. [PMID: 12682352]

Perlman S, Dandekar AA: Immunopathogenesis of coronavirus infections: Implications for SARS. Nature Rev Immunol 2005;5:917. [PMID: 16322745]

Rota PA et al: Characterization of a novel coronavirus associated with severe acute respiratory syndrome. Science 2003; 30:1394.

INTRODUCTION

Many different viruses can invade the central nervous system and cause disease. This chapter discusses rabies, a viral encephalitis feared since antiquity that is still an incurable disease; slow virus infections; and transmissible spongiform encephalopathies—rare neurodegenerative disorders that are caused by unconventional agents called "prions."

RABIES

Rabies is an acute infection of the central nervous system that is almost always fatal. The virus is usually transmitted to humans from the bite of a rabid animal. Although the number of human cases is small, rabies is a major public health problem because it is widespread among animal reservoirs.

Properties of the Virus

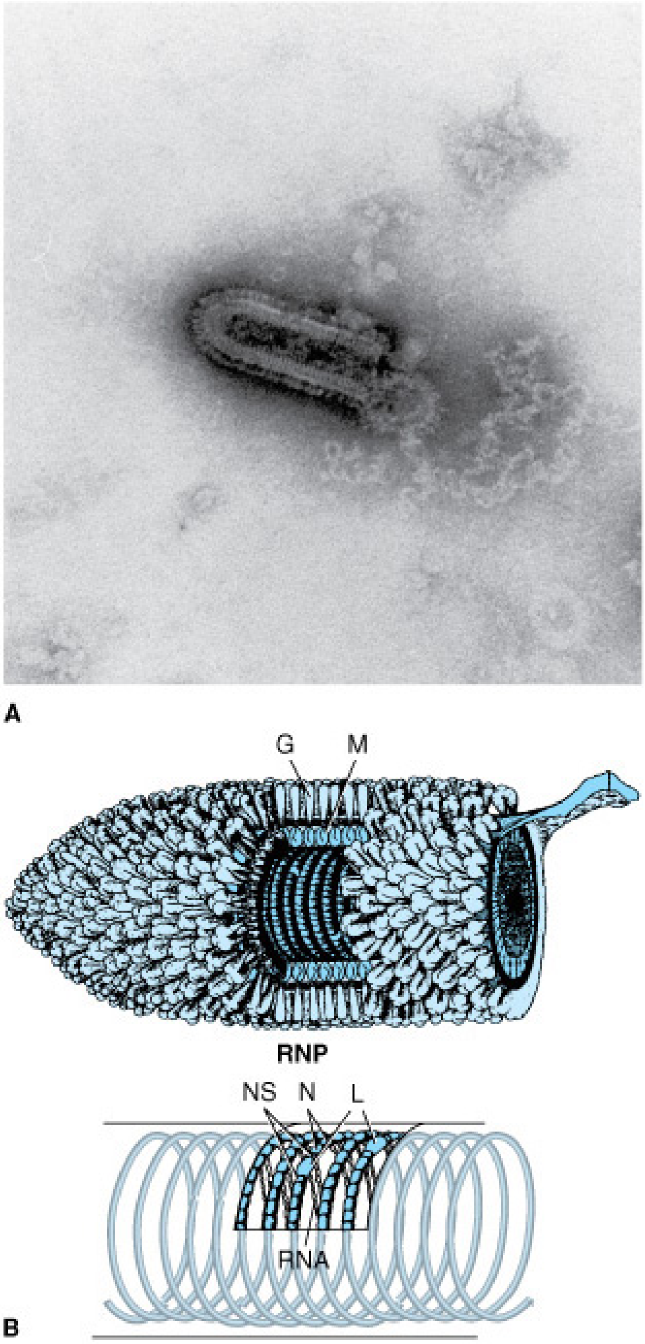
STRUCTURE

Rabies virus is a rhabdovirus with morphologic and biochemical properties in common with vesicular stomatitis virus of cattle and several animal, plant, and insect viruses (Table 42–1). The rhabdoviruses are rod- or bullet-shaped particles measuring 75 x 180 nm (Figure 42–1). The particles are surrounded by a membranous envelope with protruding spikes, 10 nm long. The peplomers (spikes) are composed of trimers of the viral glycoprotein (G). Inside the envelope is a ribonucleocapsid. The genome is single-stranded, negative-sense RNA (12 kb; MW 4.6 x 10^6). Virions contain an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The particles have a buoyant density in CsCl of about 1.19 g/cm^3 and a molecular weight of 300–1000 x 10^6.

Table 42–1. Important Properties of Rhabdoviruses.

Virion: Bullet-shaped, 75 nm in diameter x 180 nm in length
Composition: RNA (4%), protein (67%), lipid (26%), carbohydrate (3%)
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, nonsegmented, negative-sense, MW 4.6 million, 12 kb
Proteins: Five major proteins; one is the envelope glycoprotein
Envelope: Present
Replication: Cytoplasm; virions bud from plasma membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Wide array of viruses with broad host range
Group includes the deadly rabies virus

Figure 42–1.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

A: Electron micrograph of bullet-shaped particle typical of the rhabdovirus family (100,000 x). Shown here is vesicular stomatitis virus negatively stained with potassium phosphotungstate.

(Courtesy of RM McCombs, M Benyesh-Melnick, and JP Brunschwig.)

B: Schematic illustration of rabies virus (top) showing the surface glycoprotein (G) projections extending from the lipid envelope that surrounds the internal ribonucleoprotein (RNP) and the matrix (M) protein lining the envelope. The helical RNP (bottom) comprises the single RNA genome plus nucleoprotein (N) and the polymerase proteins (L and P [also called NS]).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Dietzschold B et al: Rhabdoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 3rd ed. Fields BN et al [editors]. Lippincott-Raven, 1996.)

CLASSIFICATION

The viruses are classified in the family Rhabdoviridae. Rabies viruses belong to the genus *Lyssavirus,* whereas the vesicular stomatitis-like viruses are members of the genus *Vesiculovirus.* The rhabdoviruses are very widely distributed in nature, infecting vertebrates, invertebrates, and plants. Rabies is the only medically important rhabdovirus. Many of the animal rhabdoviruses infect insects, but rabies virus does not.

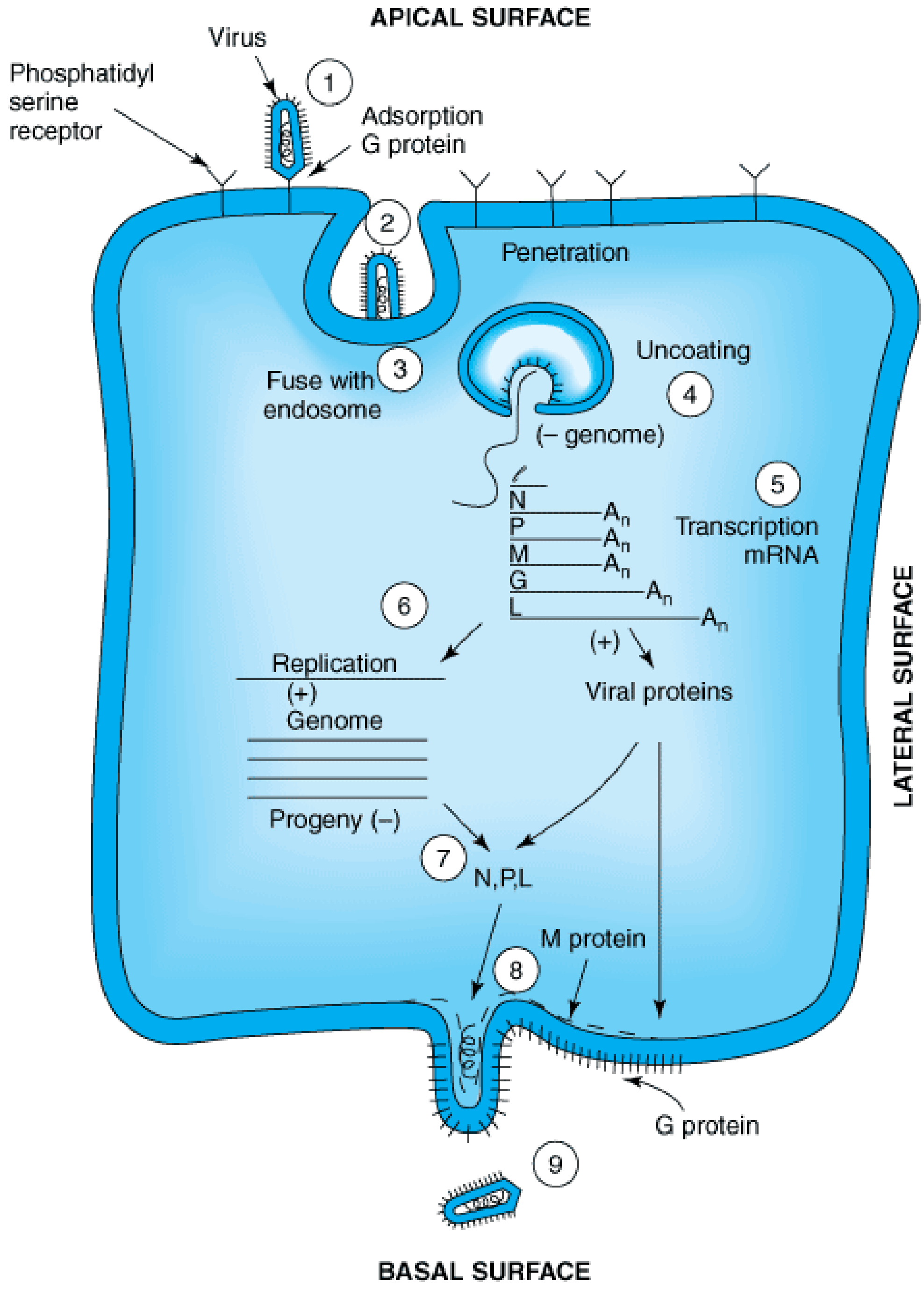
REACTIONS TO PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL AGENTS

Rabies virus survives storage at 4 °C for weeks and at -70 °C for years. It is inactivated by CO_2, so on dry ice it must be stored in glass-sealed vials. Rabies virus is killed rapidly by exposure to ultraviolet radiation or sunlight, by heat (1 hour at 50 °C), by lipid solvents (ether, 0.1% sodium deoxycholate), by trypsin, by detergents, and by extremes of pH.

VIRUS REPLICATION

The rhabdovirus replication cycle is shown in Figure 42–2. Rabies virus attaches to cells via its glycoprotein spikes; the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor may serve as a cellular receptor for rabies virus. The single-stranded RNA genome is transcribed by the virion-associated RNA polymerase to five mRNA species. The template for transcription is the genome RNA in the form of ribonucleoprotein (RNP) (encased in N protein and containing the viral transcriptase). The monocistronic mRNAs code for the five virion proteins: nucleocapsid (N), polymerase proteins (L, P), matrix (M), and glycoprotein (G). The genome RNP is a template for complementary positive-sense RNA, which is responsible for the generation of negative-sense progeny RNA. The same viral proteins serve as polymerase for viral RNA replication as well as for transcription. Ongoing translation is required for replication, particularly of viral N and P proteins. The newly replicated genomic RNA associates with the viral transcriptase and nucleoprotein to form RNP cores in the cytoplasm. The particles acquire an envelope by budding through the plasma membrane. The viral matrix protein forms a layer on the inner side of the envelope, whereas the viral glycoprotein is on the outer layer and forms the spikes.

Figure 42–2.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Steps in the replication of a rhabdovirus: (1) virus attachment; (2) penetration within an endosome; (3) fusion of virus with endosomal membrane, releasing core into cytoplasm; (4) uncoating of nucleocapsid; (5) viral negative-sense genomic RNA transcribed into positive-sense RNA; (6) positive-sense RNA serves as template for synthesis of viral genome, plus mRNA that gives rise to viral proteins; (7) negative-sense RNA becomes incorporated into nucleocapsids (N); (8) nucleocapsids join matrix protein (M) at cell surface; (9) budding of virus from cell surface.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Levy JA, Fraenkel-Conrat H, Owens RA: *Virology,* 3rd ed. Prentice Hall, 1994.)

ANIMAL SUSCEPTIBILITY AND GROWTH OF VIRUS

Rabies virus has a wide host range. All warm-blooded animals, including humans, can be infected. Susceptibility varies among mammalian species, ranging from very high (foxes, coyotes, wolves) to low (opossums); those with intermediate susceptibility include skunks, raccoons, and bats (Table 42–2). The virus is widely distributed in infected animals, especially in the nervous system, saliva, urine, lymph, milk, and blood. Recovery from infection is rare except in certain bats, where the virus has become peculiarly adapted to the salivary glands. Vampire bats may transmit the virus for months without themselves ever showing any signs of disease.

Table 42–2. Animal Susceptibility to Rabies.[1]

Very High	High	Moderate	Low
Foxes	Hamsters	Dogs	Opossums
Coyotes	Skunks	Sheep	
Jackals	Raccoons	Goats	
Wolves	Cats	Horses	
Cotton rats	Bats	Nonhuman primates	
	Rabbits		
	Cattle		

[1] Modified from Baer GM, Bellini WJ, Fishbein DB: Rhabdoviruses. In: *Fields Virology*. Fields BN et al (editors). Raven Press, 1990.

When freshly isolated in the laboratory, the strains are referred to as street virus. Such strains show long and variable incubation periods (usually 21–60 days in dogs) and regularly produce intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies. Serial brain-to-brain passage in rabbits yields a "fixed" virus that no longer multiplies in extraneural tissues. This fixed (or mutant) virus multiplies rapidly, and the incubation period is shortened to 4–6 days. Inclusion bodies are found only with difficulty.

ANTIGENIC PROPERTIES

There is a single serotype of rabies virus. However, there are strain differences among viruses isolated from different species (raccoons, foxes, skunks, canines, bats) in different geographic areas. These viral strains can be distinguished by epitopes in the nucleoprotein and glycoprotein recognized by monoclonal antibodies as well as by specific nucleotide sequences. There are at least seven antigenic variants found in terrestrial animals and bats.

The G glycoprotein is a major factor in rabies virus neuroinvasiveness and pathogenicity. Avirulent mutants of rabies virus have been selected using certain monoclonal antibodies against the viral glycoprotein. A substitution at amino acid position 333 of the glycoprotein results in loss of virulence, indicating some essential role for that site of the protein in disease pathogenesis.

Purified spikes containing the viral glycoprotein elicit ne utralizing antibody in animals. Antiserum prepared against the purified nucleocapsid is used in diagnostic immunofluorescence for rabies.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Rabies virus multiplies in muscle or connective tissue at the site of inoculation and then enters peripheral nerves at neuromuscular junctions and spreads up the nerves to the central nervous system. However, it is also possible for rabies virus to enter the nervous system directly without local replication. It multiplies in the central nervous system and progressive encephalitis develops. The virus then spreads through peripheral nerves to the salivary glands and other tissues. The organ with the highest titers of virus is the submaxillary salivary gland. Other organs where rabies virus has been found include pancreas, kidney, heart, retina, and cornea. Rabies virus has not been isolated from the blood of infected persons.

Susceptibility to infection and the incubation period may depend on the host's age, genetic background, and immune status, the viral strain involved, the amount of inoculum, the severity of lacerations, and the distance the virus has to travel from its point of entry to the central nervous system. There is a higher attack rate and shorter incubation period in persons bitten on the face or head; the lowest mortality occurs in those bitten on the legs.

Rabies virus produces a specific eosinophilic cytoplasmic inclusion, the Negri body, in infected nerve cells. Negri bodies are filled with viral nucleocapsids. The presence of such inclusions is pathognomonic of rabies but is not observed in at least 20% of cases. Therefore, the absence of Negri bodies does not rule out rabies as a diagnosis. The importance of Negri bodies in rabies diagnosis has been lessened by the development of the more sensitive fluorescent antibody diagnostic test.

Clinical Findings

Rabies is primarily a disease of lower animals and is spread to humans by bites of rabid animals or by contact with saliva from rabid animals. The disease is an acute, fulminant, fatal encephalitis. The incubation period in humans is typically 1–2 months but may be as short as 1 week or as long as many years (up to 19 years). It is usually shorter in children than in adults. The clinical spectrum can be divided into three phases: a short prodromal phase, an acute neurologic phase, and coma. The prodrome, lasting 2–10 days, may show any of the following nonspecific symptoms: malaise, anorexia, headache, photophobia, nausea and vomiting, sore throat, and fever. Usually there is an abnormal sensation around the wound site.

During the acute neurologic phase, which lasts 2–7 days, patients show signs of nervous system dysfunction such as nervousness, apprehension, hallucinations, and bizarre behavior. General sympathetic overactivity is observed, including lacrimation, pupillary dilatation, and increased salivation and perspiration. A large fraction of patients will exhibit hydrophobia (fear of water). The act of swallowing precipitates a painful spasm of the throat muscles. This phase is followed by convulsive seizures or coma and death. The major cause of death is respiratory paralysis. Paralytic rabies occurs in about 20% of patients, most frequently in those infected with bat rabies virus. The disease course is slower, with some patients surviving 30 days. Recovery and survival are extremely rare.

Rabies should be considered in any case of encephalitis or myelitis of unknown cause even in the absence of an exposure history, and particularly in a person who has lived or traveled outside the United States. Most cases of rabies in the United States are in individuals with no known exposure. Because of the long incubation period, people may forget a possible exposure incident. People who contract bat rabies often have no recollection of being bitten by a bat.

The usual incubation period in dogs ranges from 3 to 8 weeks, but it may be as short as 10 days. Clinically, the disease in dogs is divided into the same three phases as human rabies.

Laboratory Diagnosis

RABIES ANTIGENS OR NUCLEIC ACIDS

Tissues infected with rabies virus are currently identified most rapidly and accurately by means of immunofluorescence or immunoperoxidase staining using antirabies monoclonal antibodies. A biopsy specimen is usually taken from the skin of the neck at the hairline. Impression preparations of brain or cornea tissue may be used.

A definitive pathologic diagnosis of rabies can be based on the finding of Negri bodies in the brain or the spinal cord. They are sharply demarcated, more or less spherical, and 2–10 μm in diameter, and they have a distinctive internal structure with basophilic granules in an eosinophilic matrix. Negri bodies contain rabies virus antigens and can be demonstrated by immunofluorescence. Both Negri bodies and rabies antigen can usually be found in animals or humans infected with rabies, but they are rarely found in bats.

Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction testing can be used to amplify parts of a rabies virus genome from fixed or unfixed brain tissue. Although unusual as a diagnostic test, sequencing of amplified products allows identification of the infecting virus strain.

VIRAL ISOLATION

Available tissue is inoculated intracerebrally into suckling mice. Infection in mice results in encephalitis and death. The central nervous system of the inoculated animal is examined for Negri bodies and rabies antigen. In specialized laboratories, hamster and mouse cell lines can be inoculated for rapid (2- to 4-day) growth of rabies virus; this is much faster than virus isolation in mice. An isolated virus is identified by fluorescent antibody tests with specific antiserum. Virus isolation takes too long to be useful in making a decision about whether to give vaccine.

SEROLOGY

Serum antibodies to rabies can be detected by immunofluorescence or Nt tests. Such antibodies develop slowly in infected persons or animals during progression of the disease but promptly after vaccination with cell-derived vaccines. Antibodies in cerebrospinal fluid are produced in rabies-infected individuals but not in response to vaccination.

ANIMAL OBSERVATION

All animals considered "rabid or suspected rabid" (Table 42–3) should be sacrificed immediately for laboratory examination of neural tissues. Other animals should be held for observation for 10 days. If they show any signs of encephalitis, rabies, or unusual behavior, they should be killed humanely and the tissues examined in the laboratory. If they appear normal after 10 days, decisions must be made on an individual basis in consultation with public health officials.

Table 42–3. Rabies Postexposure Prophylaxis Guide.[1]

The following recommendations are only a guide. In applying them, take into account the animal species involved, the circumstances of the bite or other exposure, the vaccination status of the animal, and the presence of rabies in the region. Note: Local or state public health officials should be consulted if questions arise about the need for rabies prophylaxis.

Animal Type	Evaluation of Animal	Treatment of Exposed Person[2]
Domestic		
Dogs, cats, and ferrets	Healthy and available for 10 days of observation	None, unless animal develops symptoms of rabies
	Rabid or suspected rabid	Vaccinate immediately
	Unknown (escaped)	Consult public health officials
Wild		
Skunks, raccoons, bats, foxes, coyotes, and other carnivores	Regard as rabid unless animal is proved negative by laboratory tests	Consider immediate vaccination
Other		
Livestock, rodents, and lagomorphs (rabbits and hares)	Consider individually. Local and state public health officials should be consulted about the need for rabies prophylaxis. Bites of squirrels, hamsters, guinea pigs, gerbils, chipmunks, rats, mice, other rodents, rabbits, and hares almost never require rabies prophylaxis.	

[1] Modified from MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1999;48(RR-1):1.

[2] All bites and wounds should immediately be thoroughly cleansed with soap and water.

Immunity & Prevention

Only one antigenic type of rabies virus is known. More than 99% of infections in humans and other mammals who develop symptoms end fatally. Survival after the onset of rabies symptoms is extremely rare. It is therefore essential that individuals at high risk receive preventive immunization, that the nature and risk of any exposure be evaluated, and that individuals be given postexposure prophylaxis if their exposure is believed to have been dangerous (Table 42–3). Because treatment is of no benefit after the onset of clinical disease, it is essential that postexposure treatment be initiated promptly. Postexposure rabies prophylaxis consists of the immediate and thorough cleansing of all wounds with soap and water, administration of rabies immune globulin, and a vaccination regimen.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF RABIES PREVENTION BY VACCINE

Presumably the virus must be amplified in muscle near the site of inoculation until the concentration of virus is sufficient to accomplish infection of the central nervous system. If immunogenic vaccine or specific antibody can be administered promptly, virus replication can be depressed and virus can be prevented from invading the central nervous system. The action of passively administered antibody is to neutralize some of the inoculated virus and lower the concentration of virus in the body, providing additional time for a vaccine to stimulate active antibody production to prevent entry into the central nervous system.

TYPES OF VACCINES

All vaccines for human use contain only inactivated rabies virus. Three vaccines are available in the United States, though a number of others are in use in other countries. All three US rabies vaccines are equally safe and efficacious.

Human Diploid Cell Vaccine (HDCV)

To obtain a rabies virus suspension free from nervous system and foreign proteins, rabies virus was adapted to growth in the WI-38 human normal fibroblast cell line. The rabies virus preparation is concentrated by ultrafiltration and inactivated with β-propiolactone. No serious anaphylactic or encephalitic reactions have been reported. This vaccine has been used in the United States since 1980.

Rabies Vaccine, Adsorbed (RVA)

A vaccine made in a diploid cell line derived from fetal rhesus monkey lung cells was licensed in the United States in 1988. This vaccine virus is inactivated with β-propiolactone and concentrated by adsorption to aluminum phosphate.

Purified Chick Embryo Cell Vaccine (PCEC)

This vaccine is prepared from the fixed rabies virus strain Flury LEP grown in chicken fibroblasts. It is inactivated with β-propiolactone and further purified by zonal centrifugation. It became available in the United States in 1997.

Nerve Tissue Vaccine

This is made from infected sheep, goat, or mouse brains and is used in many parts of the world including Asia, Africa, and South America. It has a low potency per dose, and a complete treatment involves up to 23 painful injections. It causes sensitization to nerve tissue and results in postvaccinal encephalitis (an allergic disease) with substantial frequency (0.05%). Estimates of its efficacy in persons bitten by rabid animals vary from 5% to 50%.

Duck Embryo Vaccine

Duck embryo vaccine was developed to minimize the problem of postvaccinal encephalitis. The rabies virus is grown in embryonated duck eggs. Anaphylactic reactions are infrequent but the antigenicity of the vaccine is low, so that many (16–25) doses have to be given to obtain a satisfactory postexposure antibody response. It is no longer manufactured.

Live Attenuated Viruses

Live attenuated viruses adapted to growth in chick embryos (eg, Flury strain) are used for animals but *not* for humans. Occasionally, such vaccines can cause death from rabies in injected cats or dogs. Rabies viruses grown in various animal cell cultures have also been used as vaccines for domestic animals.

A recombinant viral vaccine consisting of vaccinia virus carrying the rabies surface glycoprotein gene has successfully immunized animals following oral administration. This vaccine may prove valuable in the immunization of both wildlife reservoir species and domestic animals.

TYPES OF RABIES ANTIBODY

Rabies Immune Globulin, Human (HRIG)

HRIG is a gamma globulin prepared by cold ethanol fractionation from the plasma of hyperimmunized humans. There are fewer adverse reactions to human rabies immune globulin than to equine antirabies serum.

Antirabies Serum, Equine

This is concentrated serum from horses hyperimmunized with rabies virus. It has been used in countries where HRIG is not available.

PREEXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS

This is indicated for persons at high risk of contact with rabies virus (research and diagnostic laboratory workers, spelunkers) or with rabid animals (veterinarians, animal control and wildlife workers). The goal is to attain an antibody level presumed to be protective by means of vaccine administration prior to any exposure. It is recommended that antibody titers of vaccinated individuals be monitored periodically and that boosters be given when required.

POSTEXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS

Although few (0–5) cases of human rabies occur in the United States per year, more than 20,000 persons receive some treatment every year for possible bite wound exposure. The decision to administer rabies antibody, rabies vaccine—or both—depends on several factors: (1) the nature of the biting animal (species, state of health, domestic or wild) and its vaccination status; (2) the availability of the animal for laboratory examination (*all* bites by wild animals and bats require rabies immune globulin and vaccine); (3) the existence of rabies in the area; (4) the manner of attack (provoked or unprovoked); (5) the severity of the bite and contamination by saliva of the animal; and (6) advice from local public health officials (Table 42–3). Schedules for postexposure prophylaxis involving the administration of rabies immune globulin and vaccine are available from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and state public health offices.

Epidemiology

Rabies is believed to be the tenth most common cause of death in humans due to infections.

Rabies is enzootic in both wild and domestic animals. Worldwide, at least 50,000 cases of human rabies occur each year; however, rabies is grossly underreported in many countries. Almost all rabies deaths (> 99%) occur in developing countries, with Asia accounting for over 90% of all rabies fatalities. In these countries, where canine rabies is still endemic, most human cases develop from bites of rabid dogs. Children aged 5–15 years are at particular risk. An estimated 10 million persons are given postexposure prophylaxis annually.

In the United States, Canada, and western Europe, where canine rabies has been controlled, dogs are responsible for very few cases. Rather, human rabies develops from bites of wild animals (especially bats, raccoons, skunks, and foxes) or occurs in travelers bitten by dogs elsewhere in the world. The most serious problem in livestock appears to be vampire bat-transmitted rabies in Latin America. The increase in wildlife rabies in the United States and some other developed countries presents a far greater risk to humans than do dogs or cats.

Primarily as a result of the successful control of rabies in domestic dogs, the incidence of human rabies in the United States declined to fewer than 3 persons per year during the 1990s.

Antigenic analysis with monoclonal antibodies and genotyping by nucleotide sequence analysis can distinguish rabies virus isolates from different animal reservoirs. From 1990 to 2003, there were 35 diagnosed human rabies cases in the United States, 26 (74%) of which were proved to be due to bat-associated virus. Five patients with imported rabies had dog-associated strains.

Raccoons are an important reservoir for rabies in the United States and account for over half of all reported cases of animal rabies. It is believed that raccoon rabies was introduced into the mid-Atlantic region in the 1970s, when infected raccoons were transported there from the southeastern United States to replenish hunting stocks. The raccoon rabies epizootic has spread and now covers the eastern United States into Canada.

Bats present a special problem because they may carry rabies virus while they appear to be healthy, excrete it in saliva, and transmit it to other animals and to humans. Among human rabies cases in the United States attributed to bat-associated variants, about 70% were caused by the silver-haired bat and eastern pipistrelle bat variants. However, only two cases were associated with a history of bat bite, as most bat exposures go undetected. Bat caves may contain aerosols of rabies virus and present a risk to spelunkers. Migrating fruit-eating bats exist in many countries and are a source of infection for many animals and humans. Bat rabies may be important in the initiation of terrestrial enzootics in new regions. Australia, long considered to be a rabies-free continent, was found in 1996 to harbor rabies virus in fruit bats. All persons bitten by bats must receive postexposure rabies prophylaxis.

Human-to-human rabies infection is very rare. The only documented cases involve rabies transmitted by corneal and organ transplants. One example involves corneal transplants—the corneas came from donors who died with undiagnosed central nervous system diseases, and the recipients died from rabies 50–80 days later. The first documented case involving solid organ transplants occurred in the United States in 2004. The liver and kidneys from a single donor were transplanted into three recipients, all of whom died of confirmed rabies 5–7 weeks later. Transmission likely occurred via neuronal tissue in the transplanted organs, as rabies virus is not spread in the blood. Theoretically, rabies could originate from the saliva of a patient who has rabies and exposes attending personnel, but such transmission has never been documented.

Treatment & Control

There is no successful treatment for clinical rabies. Interferons, ribavirin, and other drugs have shown no beneficial effects. Symptomatic treatment may prolong life, but the outcome is almost always fatal.

Historically, several key events have contributed to the control of human rabies: the development of a human rabies vaccine (1885), the discovery of the diagnostic Negri body (1903), the use of rabies vaccines for dogs (1940s), the addition of rabies immune globulin to human postexposure vaccination treatments (1954), the growth of rabies virus in cultured cells (1958), and the development of diagnostic fluorescent antibody tests (1959).

Preexposure vaccination is desirable for all persons who are at high risk of contact with rabid animals, such as veterinarians, animal care personnel, certain laboratory workers, and spelunkers. Persons traveling to developing countries where rabies control programs for domestic animals are not optimal should be offered preexposure prophylaxis if they plan to stay for more than 30 days. However, preexposure prophylaxis does not eliminate the need for prompt postexposure prophylaxis if an exposure to rabies occurs.

Isolated countries (eg, Great Britain) that have no indigenous rabies in wild animals can establish quarantine procedures for dogs and other pets to be imported. In countries where dog rabies exists, stray animals should be destroyed and vaccination of pet dogs and cats should be mandatory. In countries where wildlife rabies exists and where contact between domestic animals, pets, and wildlife is inevitable, all domestic animals and pets should be vaccinated.

An oral vaccinia-rabies glycoprotein recombinant virus vaccine (V-RG) proved effective at controlling rabies in foxes in Europe. Added to baits, the oral vaccine is being used to curtail rabies epizootics in wildlife in the United States.

BORNA DISEASE

Borna disease, a central nervous system disease primarily of horses and sheep in certain areas of Germany, is manifested by behavioral abnormalities usually ending in death. Inflammatory cell infiltrates are present in the brain. The disorder is immune-mediated.

Borna disease virus (BDV) is an enveloped, nonsegmented, negative-stranded RNA virus in the family Bornaviridae (Table 42–4). Although similar to the rhabdoviruses and paramyxoviruses, BDV is novel in that it transcribes and replicates its genome in the nucleus and uses RNA splicing for regulation of gene expression. BDV is noncytolytic and highly neurotropic; it establishes persistent infections. There is a single recognized serotype of BDV. Titers of neutralizing antibodies produced in host species are usually very low.

Table 42–4. Important Properties of Bornaviruses.
Virion: Spherical, 90 nm in diameter
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, nonsegmented, negative-sense, 8.9 kb, MW 3 million
Proteins: Six structural proteins
Envelope: Present
Replication: Nucleus; site of maturation not identified
Outstanding characteristics:
Broad host range
Neurotropic
Cause neurobehavioral abnormalities

Many species can be infected by bornaviruses, including humans. Serologic data suggest that BDV may be associated with neuropsychiatric disorders in humans, although it remains to be established whether BDV is etiologically involved in the pathophysiology of certain human mental disorders.

SLOW VIRUS INFECTIONS & PRION DISEASES

Some chronic degenerative diseases of the central nervous system in humans are caused by "slow" or chronic, persistent infections by classic viruses. Among these are subacute sclerosing panencephalitis and progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Other diseases known as transmissible spongiform encephalopathies—eg, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease—appear to be caused by unconventional transmissible agents termed "prions" (Table 42–5). The progressive neurologic diseases produced by these agents may have incubation periods of years before clinical manifestations of the infections become evident (Table 42–5).

Table 42–5. Slow Virus and Prion Diseases.

Disease	Agent	Hosts	Incubation Period	Nature of Disease
Diseases of humans				
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis	Measles virus variant	Humans	2–20 years	Chronic sclerosing panencephalitis
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy	Polyomavirus JCV	Humans	Years	Central nervous system demyelination
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease	Prion	Humans, chimpanzees, monkeys	Months to years	Spongiform encephalopathy
Kuru	Prion	Humans, chimpanzees, monkeys	Months to years	Spongiform encephalopathy
Diseases of animals				
Visna	Retrovirus	Sheep	Months to years	Central nervous system demyelination
Scrapie	Prion	Sheep, goats, mice	Months to years	Spongiform encephalopathy
Bovine spongiform encephalopathy	Prion	Cattle	Months to years	Spongiform encephalopathy
Transmissible mink encephalopathy	Prion	Mink, other animals	Months	Spongiform encephalopathy
Chronic wasting disease	Prion	Mule deer, elk	Months to years	Spongiform encephalopathy

Slow Virus Infections

VISNA

Visna and progressive pneumonia (maedi) viruses are closely related agents that cause slowly developing infections in sheep. These viruses are classified as retroviruses (genus *Lentivirus*; see Chapter 44).

Visna virus infects all the organs of the body of the infected sheep; however, pathologic changes are confined primarily to the brain, lungs, and reticuloendothelial system. Inflammatory lesions develop in the central nervous system soon after infection, but there is usually a long incubation period (months to years) before observable neurologic symptoms appear. Disease progression can be either rapid (weeks) or slow (years).

Virus can be recovered for the life of the animal, but viral expression is restricted in vivo so that only minimal amounts of infectious virus are present. Antigenic variation occurs during the long-term persistent infections.

Many mutations occur in the structural gene that codes for viral envelope glycoproteins. Infected animals develop antibodies to the virus.

SUBACUTE SCLEROSING PANENCEPHALITIS

This is a rare disease of young adults caused by measles virus, with slowly progressive demyelination in the central nervous system ending in death (see Chapter 40). Large numbers of viral nucleocapsid structures are produced in neurons and glial cells. There is restricted expression of the viral genes that encode envelope proteins, so the virus in persistently infected neural cells lacks proteins needed for the production of infectious particles. Patients with subacute sclerosing panencephalitis have high titers of antimeasles antibody except that antibody to the M protein is frequently lacking. Reduced efficiency of measles virus transcription in differentiated brain cells is important in maintaining the persistent infection that leads to subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.

PROGRESSIVE MULTIFOCAL LEUKOENCEPHALOPATHY

JC virus (JCV), a member of the family Polyomaviridae (see Chapter 43), is the etiologic agent of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, a central nervous system complication that occurs in some immunosuppressed individuals. Once exceedingly rare, the disease is now seen in a significant proportion (about 5%) of patients with AIDS; however, as antiviral drugs slow the progression of human immunodeficiency virus infections, fewer patients develop this disease. Demyelination in the central nervous system of patients with progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy results from oligodendrocyte infection by polyomaviruses.

Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies (Prion Diseases)

Degenerative central nervous system diseases—kuru, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome, fatal familial insomnia of humans, scrapie of sheep, transmissible encephalopathy of mink, bovine spongiform encephalopathy of cattle, and chronic wasting disease of deer—have similar pathologic features. These diseases are described as transmissible spongiform encephalopathies. The causative agents are not conventional viruses; infectivity is associated with proteinaceous material devoid of detectable amounts of nucleic acid. The term "prion" is used to designate this novel class of agents.

The different types of prions appear to have common mechanisms of pathogenesis. Species barriers exist for all transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, but some prions have crossed such barriers.

These agents are unusually resistant to standard means of inactivation. They are resistant to treatment with formaldehyde (3.7%), urea (8 M), dry heat, boiling, ethanol (50%), proteases, deoxycholate (5%), and ionizing radiation. However, they are sensitive to phenol (90%), household bleach, ether, NaOH (2 N), strong detergents (10% sodium dodecyl sulfate), and autoclaving (1 hour, 121 °C). Guanidine thiocyanate is highly effective in decontaminating medical supplies and instruments.

There are several distinguishing hallmarks of diseases caused by these unconventional agents. Although the etiologic agent may be recoverable from other organs, the diseases are confined to the nervous system. The basic features are neurodegeneration and spongiform changes. Amyloid plaques may be present. Long incubation periods (months to decades) precede the onset of clinical illness and are followed by chronic progressive disease (weeks to years). The diseases are always fatal, with no known cases of remission or recovery. The host shows no inflammatory response and no immune response (the agents do not appear to be antigenic); no production of interferon is elicited; and there is no effect on host B cell or T cell function. Immunosuppression of the host has no effect on pathogenesis; however, chronic inflammation induced by other factors (viruses, bacteria, autoimmunity) may affect prion pathogenesis. It has been observed that prions accumulate in organs with chronic lymphocytic inflammation. When coincident with nephritis, prions were excreted in urine.

SCRAPIE

Scrapie shows marked differences in susceptibility of different breeds of animal. Susceptibility to experimentally transmitted scrapie ranges from zero to over 80% in various breeds of sheep, whereas goats are almost 100% susceptible. The transmission of scrapie to mice and hamsters, in which the incubation period is greatly reduced, has facilitated study of the disease.

Infectivity can be recovered from lymphoid tissues early in infection, but high titers of the agent are found only in the brain, spinal cord, and eye (the only places where pathologic changes are observed). Maximum titers of infectivity are reached in the brain long before neurologic symptoms appear. The disease is characterized by the development of amyloid plaques in the central nervous system of infected animals. These areas represent extracellular accumulations of protein; they stain with Congo red.

A protease-resistant protein of molecular mass 27–30 kDa can be purified from scrapie-infected brain and is designated prion protein PrP. Preparations containing only PrP and no detectable nucleic acid are infectious. PrP is derived from a larger host-encoded protein, PrP^{Sc}, that is an altered version of a normal cellular protein (PrP^{C}). The protein is a glycolipid-anchored membrane protein. The level of PrP^{Sc} is increased in infected brains because the protein becomes resistant to degradation. Genetic susceptibility to scrapie infection is associated with point mutations in the PrP^{C} gene, and mice genetically altered to be devoid of PrP^{C} are resistant to scrapie. A conformational model for prion replication proposes that PrP^{Sc} forms a heterodimer with PrP^{C} and refolds it so that it becomes like PrP^{Sc}. "Strains" of prions are speculated to reflect different conformations of PrP^{Sc}. It is still uncertain whether this protein represents the essential structural element of the infectious agent or a pathologic product that accumulates as a result of the disease; however, mouse prion protein produced in bacteria caused disease when inoculated in vivo, suggesting that prions are infectious proteins.

BOVINE SPONGIFORM ENCEPHALOPATHY AND NEW VARIANT CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE

A disease similar to scrapie, designated bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), or "mad cow disease," emerged in cattle in Great Britain in 1986. This outbreak was traced to the use of cattle feed that contained contaminated bone meal from scrapie-infected sheep and BSE-infected cattle carcasses. The use of such cattle feed was prohibited in 1988. The epidemic of "mad cow disease" peaked in Great Britain in 1993. It is estimated that over 1 million cattle were infected. BSE has also been found in other European countries. In 1996, a new variant form of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) was recognized in the United Kingdom that occurred in younger people and had distinctive pathologic characteristics similar to those of BSE. It is now accepted that the new variant forms of CJD and BSE are caused by a common agent, indicating that the BSE agent had infected humans. Through 2004, 150 people had been diagnosed with new variant CJD in England, and most had died. A particular polymorphism in the amino acid sequence of the human prion protein seems to influence susceptibility to disease.

KURU AND CLASSIC CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE

Two human spongiform encephalopathies are kuru and the classic form of CJD. Brain homogenates from patients have transmitted both diseases to nonhuman primates. Kuru occurred only in the eastern highlands of New Guinea and was spread by customs surrounding ritual cannibalism of dead relatives. Since the practice has ceased, the disease has disappeared. CJD in humans develops gradually, with progressive dementia, ataxia, and myoclonus, and leads to death in 5–12 months. Sporadic CJD occurs with a frequency of approximately one case per million population per year in the United States and Europe and involves patients over 50 years of age. The estimated incidence is less than one case per 200 million for persons under 30 years of age. However, the new variant form of CJD linked to BSE (above) has mainly affected people under the age of 30.

Two familial forms of CJD are Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome and fatal familial insomnia. These diseases are rare (10–15% of CJD cases) and are due to inheritance of mutations in the PrP gene.

Iatrogenic CJD has been transmitted accidentally by contaminated growth hormone preparations from human cadaver pituitary glands, by corneal transplant, by contaminated surgical instruments, and by cadaveric human dura mater grafts used for surgical repair of head injury. It appears that recipients of contaminated dura mater grafts remain at risk of developing CJD for at least 16 years following receipt of grafts. There is currently no suggestion of CJD transmission by blood or blood products, although the potential is there.

A protein very similar to scrapie PrP^{Sc} is present in brain tissue infected with classic CJD. It has been speculated that the agent of CJD was derived originally from scrapie-infected sheep and transmitted to humans by ingestion of poorly cooked sheep brains.

CHRONIC WASTING DISEASE

A scrapie-like disease, designated chronic wasting disease, is found in mule deer and elk in the United States. There is no evidence that it has been transmitted to humans.

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

There are some neuropathologic similarities between CJD and Alzheimer's disease, including the appearance of amyloid plaques. However, the disease has not been transmitted experimentally to primates or rodents, and the amyloid material in the brains of Alzheimer's patients does not contain PrP^{Sc} protein.

REFERENCES

Beisel CE, Morens DM: Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease and the acquired and transmissible spongiform encephalopathies. Clin Infect Dis 2004;38:697. [PMID: 14986255]

Compendium of animal rabies prevention and control, 2003. National Association of State Public Health Veterinarians, Inc. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2003;52(RR-5):1.

de Mattos CA, de Mattos CC, Rupprecht CE: Rhabdoviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Human rabies prevention—United States, 1999. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1999;48(RR-1):1.

Mabbott NA, MacPherson GG: Prions and their lethal journey to the brain. Nature Rev Microbiol 2006;4:201. [PMID: 16462753]

Mini-review: The rabies virus. J Neurovirol 2005;11:74.

Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper. Weekly Epidemiol Record 2002;77:109.

Rutala WA, Weber DJ: Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease: Recommendations for disinfection and sterilization. Clin Infect Dis 2001;32:1348. [PMID: 11303271]

Staeheli P et al: Epidemiology of Borna disease virus. J Gen Virol 2000;81:2123. [PMID: 10950968]

INTRODUCTION

Viruses are etiologic factors in the development of several types of human tumors, including two of great significanc worldwidecervical cancer and liver cancer. At least 15% of all human tumors worldwide have a viral cause. The viruses that have been strongly associated with human cancers are listed in Table 431. They include human papillomaviruses, Epstein-Barr virus, human herpesvirus 8, hepatitis B virus, hepatitis C virus, and two human retroviruses plus several candidate human cancer viruses. Many viruses can cause tumors in animals, either as a consequence of natural infection or after experimental inoculation.

Table 431. Association of Viruses with Human Cancers.[1]

Papillomaviridae
Human papillomaviruses
Genital tumors

Squamous cell carcinoma

Oropharyngeal carcinoma

Herpesviridae
EB virus
Nasopharyngeal carcinoma

Burkitt's lymphoma

Hodgkin's disease

B cell lymphoma

Human herpesvirus 8
Kaposi's sarcoma
Hepadnaviridae
Hepatitis B virus
Hepatocellular carcinoma
Retroviridae
HTL virus
Adult T cell leukemia
Human immunodeficiency virus
AIDS-related malignancies

Flaviviridae
Hepatitis C virus
Hepatocellular carcinoma

Virus Family	Virus	Human Cancer

[1] Candidate human tumor viruses include additional types of papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses SV40, JC, and Bk

EB, Epstein-Barr; HTL, human T-cell lymphoma.

Animal viruses are studied to learn how a limited amount of genetic information (one or a few viral genes) can profoundly alter the growth behavior of cells, ultimately converting a normal cell into a neoplastic one. Such studies reveal insights into growth regulation in normal cells. Tumor viruses are agents that can produce tumors when they infect appropriate animals. Many studies are done using cultured animal cells rather than intact animals, because it possible to analyze events at cellular and subcellular levels. In such cultured cells, tumor viruses can cause "transformation." However, animal studies are essential to study many steps in carcinogenesis, including complex interactions between virus and host and host responses to tumor formation.

Studies with RNA tumor viruses revealed the involvement of cellular oncogenes in neoplasia; DNA tumor viruses established a role for cellular tumor suppressor genes. These discoveries revolutionized cancer biology and provided the conceptual framework for the molecular basis of carcinogenesis.

GENERAL FEATURES OF VIRAL CARCINOGENESIS

Tenets of viral carcinogenesis are summarized in Table 432.

Table 432. Tenets of Viral Carcinogenesis.[1]

1. Viruses can cause cancer in animals and humans.
2. Tumor viruses frequently establish persistent infections in natural hosts.
3. Host factors are important determinants of virus-induced tumorigenesis.
4. Viruses are seldom complete carcinogens.
5. Virus infections are more common than virus-related tumor formation.
6. Long latent periods usually elapse between initial virus infection and tumor appearance.
7. Viral strains may differ in oncogenic potential.
8. Viruses may be either direct- or indirect-acting carcinogenic agents.
9. Oncogenic viruses modulate growth control pathways in cells.
10. Animal models may reveal mechanisms of viral carcinogenesis.
11. Viral markers are usually present in tumor cells.
12. One virus may be associated with more than one type of tumor.

[1] Reproduced from Butel JS: Viral carcinogenesis: Revelation of molecular mechanisms and etiology of human disease. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:405.

Tumor Viruses Are of Different Types

Like other viruses, tumor viruses are classified among different virus families according to the nucleic acid of their genome and the biophysical characteristics of their virions. Most recognized tumor viruses either have a DNA genom or generate a DNA provirus after infection of cells (hepatitis C virus is an exception).

DNA tumor viruses are classified among the papilloma-, polyoma-, adeno-, herpes-, hepadna-, and poxvirus groups

DNA tumor viruses encode viral oncoproteins that are important for viral replication but also affect cellular growth control pathways.

Most RNA tumor viruses belong to the retrovirus family. Retroviruses carry an RNA-directed polymerase (reverse transcriptase) that constructs a DNA copy of the RNA genome of the virus. The DNA copy (provirus) becomes integrated into the DNA of the infected host cell, and it is from this integrated DNA copy that all proteins of the viru are translated.

RNA tumor viruses are of two general types with respect to tumor induction. The highly oncogenic (direct-transforming) viruses carry an oncogene of cellular origin. The weakly oncogenic (slowly transforming) viruses do n contain an oncogene and induce leukemias after long incubation periods by indirect mechanisms. The two known cancer-causing retroviruses in humans act indirectly. Hepatitis C virus, a flavivirus, does not generate a provirus an appears to induce cancer indirectly.

Multistep Carcinogenesis

Carcinogenesis is a multistep process, ie, multiple genetic changes must occur to convert a normal cell into a malignant one. Intermediate stages have been identified and designated by terms such as "immortalization," "hyperplasia," and "preneoplastic." Tumors usually develop slowly over a long period of time. The natural history of human and animal cancers suggests a multistep process of cellular evolution, probably involving cellular genetic instability and repeated selection of rare cells with some selective growth advantage. The number of mutations underlying this process is estimated to range from five to eight. Observations suggest that activation of multiple cellular oncogenes and inactivation of tumor suppressor genes are involved in the evolution of tumors whether or n a virus is involved.

It appears that a tumor virus usually acts as a cofactor, providing only some of the steps required to generate malignant cells. Viruses are necessarybut not sufficientfor development of tumors with a viral etiology. Viruses ofte act as initiators of the neoplastic process and may do so by different mechanisms.

Interactions of Tumor Viruses with Their Hosts

PERSISTENT INFECTIONS

The pathogenesis of a viral infection and the response of the host are integral to understanding how cancer might arise from that background. The known tumor viruses establish long-term persistent infections in humans. Because of differences in individual genetic susceptibilities and host immune responses, levels of virus replication and tissue tropisms may vary among persons. Even though very few cells in the host may be infected at any given time, the chronicity of infection presents the long-term opportunity for a rare event to occur that allows survival of a cell with growth control mechanisms that are virus-modified.

HOST IMMUNE RESPONSES

Viruses that establish persistent infections must avoid detection and recognition by the immune system that would eliminate the infection. Different viral evasion strategies have been identified, including restricted expression of vira genes that makes infected cells nearly invisible to the host (Epstein-Barr virus in B cells); infection of sites relativel inaccessible to immune responses (human papillomavirus in the epidermis); mutation of viral antigens that allows escape from antibody and T cell recognition (human immunodeficiency virus); modulation of host major histocompatibility complex class I molecules in infected cells (adenovirus, cytomegalovirus); inhibition of antigen processing (Epstein-Barr virus); and infection and suppression of essential immune cells (human immunodeficiency virus).

It is believed that host immune surveillance mechanisms eliminate the rare neoplastic cells that may arise in norma individuals infected with cancer viruses. However, if the host is immunosuppressed, cancer cells may proliferate and escape host immune control. Immunosuppressed organ transplant recipients and human immunodeficiency virus-infected individuals are at increased risk of Epstein-Barr virus-associated lymphomas and of human papillomavirus-related diseases. It is possible that variations in individual immune responses may contribute to susceptibility to virus-induced tumors in normal hosts.

MECHANISMS OF ACTION BY HUMAN CANCER VIRUSES

Tumor viruses mediate changes in cell behavior by means of a limited amount of genetic information. There are two general patterns by which this is accomplished: The tumor virus introduces a new "transforming gene" into the cell (direct-acting), or the virus alters the expression of a preexisting cellular gene or genes (indirect-acting). In either case, the cell loses control of normal regulation of growth processes. DNA repair pathways are frequently affected, leading to genetic instability and a mutagenic phenotype.

Viruses usually do not behave as complete carcinogens. In addition to changes mediated by viral functions, other alterations are necessary to disable the multiple regulatory pathways and checkpoints in normal cells to allow a cell to become completely transformed. There is no single mode of transformation underlying viral carcinogenesis. At th molecular level, oncogenic mechanisms by human tumor viruses are very diverse.

Cellular transformation may be defined as a stable, heritable change in the growth control of cells in culture. No set of characteristics invariably distinguishes transformed cells from their normal counterparts. In practice, transformation is recognized by the cells' acquisition of some growth property not exhibited by the parental cell type Transformation to a malignant phenotype is recognized by tumor formation when transformed cells are injected into appropriate test animals.

Indirect-acting tumor viruses are not able to transform cells in culture.

CELL SUSCEPTIBILITY TO VIRAL INFECTIONS

At the cellular level, host cells are either permissive or nonpermissive for replication of a given virus. Permissive cel support viral growth and production of progeny virus; nonpermissive cells do not. Especially with the DNA viruses, permissive cells are not transformed unless the viral replicative cycle that normally results in death of the host cell i blocked in some way; nonpermissive cells may be transformed. In contrast, a characteristic property of RNA tumor viruses is that they are not lethal for the cells in which they replicate. Cells that are permissive for one virus may be nonpermissive for another.

Not all cells from the natural host species are susceptible to viral replication or transformation or both. Most tumor viruses exhibit marked tissue specificity, a property that probably reflects the variable presence of surface receptors for the virus, the ability of the virus to cause disseminated versus local infections, or intracellular factors necessary for viral gene expression.

Some viruses are associated with a single tumor type, whereas others are linked to multiple tumor types. These differences reflect the tissue tropisms of the viruses.

RETENTION OF TUMOR VIRUS NUCLEIC ACID IN A HOST CELL

The stable genetic change from a normal to a neoplastic cell generally requires the retention of viral genes in the ce Oftentimes but not always, this is accomplished by the integration of certain viral genes into the host cell genome. With DNA tumor viruses, a portion of the DNA of the viral genome may become integrated into the host cell chromosome. Sometimes, episomal copies of the viral genome are maintained in tumor cells. With retroviruses, the proviral DNA copy of the viral RNA is integrated in the host cell DNA. Genome RNA copies of hepatitis C virus that a not integrated are maintained in tumor cells.

In some viral systems, virus-transformed cells may release growth factors that affect the phenotype of neighboring uninfected cells, thereby contributing to tumor formation. It is also possible that as tumor cells collect genetic mutations during tumor growth, the need for the viral genes that drove tumor initiation may become unnecessary and will be lost from some cells.

RETROVIRUSES

Retroviruses contain an RNA genome and an RNA-directed DNA polymerase (reverse transcriptase). RNA tumor viruses in this family mainly cause tumors of the reticuloendothelial and hematopoietic systems (leukemias, lymphomas) or of connective tissue (sarcomas).

Important properties of the retroviruses are listed in Table 433.

Table 433. Important Properties of Retroviruses.

Virion: Spherical, 80110 nm in diameter, helical nucleoprotein within icosahedral capsid
Composition: RNA (2%), protein (about 60%), lipid (about 35%), carbohydrate (about 3%)
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, positive-sense, 711 kb, diploid; may be defective; may carry oncogene
Proteins: Reverse transcriptase enzyme contained inside virions
Envelope: Present
Replication: Reverse transcriptase makes DNA copy from genomic RNA; DNA (provirus) integrates into cellular chromosome; provirus is template for viral RNA
Maturation: Virions bud from plasma membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Infections do not kill cells
May transduce cellular oncogenes, may activate expression of cell genes
Proviruses remain permanently associated with cells and are frequently not expressed
Many members are tumor viruses

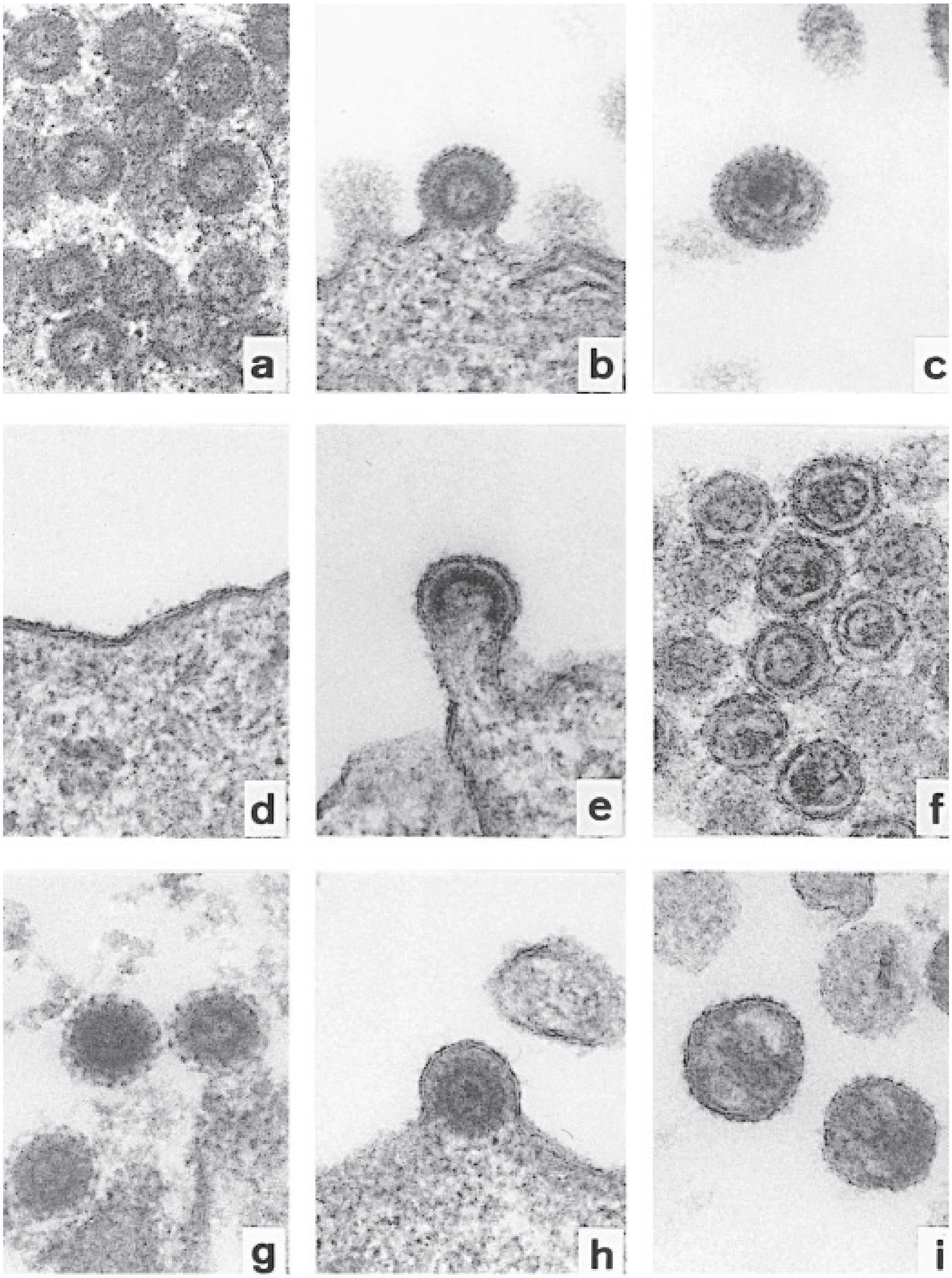
Structure & Composition

The retrovirus genome consists of two identical subunits of single-stranded, positive-sense RNA, each 711 kb in size The reverse transcriptase contained in virus particles is essential for viral replication.

Retrovirus particles contain the helical ribonucleoprotein within an icosahedral capsid that is surrounded by an outer membrane (envelope) containing glycoprotein and lipid. Type-specific or subgroup-specific antigens are associated with the glycoproteins in the viral envelope, which are encoded by the *env* gene; group-specific antigens are associated with the virion core, which are encoded by the *gag* gene.

Three morphologic classes of extracellular retrovirus particlesas well as an intracellular formare recognized, based o electron microscopy. They reflect slightly different processes of morphogenesis by different retroviruses. Examples each are shown in Figure 431.

Figure 431.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Comparative morphology of type A, B, C, and D retroviruses. a: Intracytoplasmic type A particles (representing immature precursor of budding type B virus). b: Budding type B virus. c: Mature, extracellular type B virus. d: Lack of morphologically recognizable intracytoplasmic form for type C virus. e: Budding type C virus. f: Mature, extracellular type C virus. g: Intracytoplasmic type A particle (representing immature precursor form of type D virus). h: Budding type D virus. i: Mature, extracellular type D virus. All micrographs are approximately × 87,000. Thin sections were double-stained with uranyl acetate and lead citrate.

(Courtesy of D Fine and M Gonda.)

Type A particles occur only intracellularly and appear to be noninfectious. Intracytoplasmic type A particles, 75 nm i diameter, are precursors of extracellular type B viruses, whereas intracisternal type A particles, 6090 nm in diameter, are unknown entities. Type B viruses are 100130 nm in diameter and contain an eccentric nucleoid. The prototype of this group is the mouse mammary tumor virus, which occurs in "high mammary cancer" strains of inbred mice and is found in particularly large amounts in lactating mammary tissue and milk. It is readily transferre to suckling mice, in whom the incidence of subsequent development of adenocarcinoma of the breast is high. The type C viruses represent the largest group of retroviruses. The particles are 90110 nm in diameter, and the electron dense nucleoids are centrally located. The type C viruses may exist as exogenous or endogenous entities (see below). The lentiviruses are also type C viruses. Finally, the type D retroviruses are poorly characterized. The particles are 100120 nm in diameter, contain an eccentric nucleoid, and exhibit surface spikes shorter than those or type B particles.

Classification

GENERA

The Retroviridae family is divided into seven genera: *Alpharetrovirus* (which contains avian leukosis and sarcoma viruses), *Betaretrovirus* (mouse mammary tumor virus), *Gammaretrovirus* (mammalian leukemia and sarcoma viruses), *Deltaretrovirus* (human T-lymphotropic viruses and bovine leukemia virus), *Epsilonretrovirus* (fish viruses) *Spumavirus* (which contains viruses able to cause "foamy" degeneration of inoculated cells but which are not associated with any known disease process), and *Lentivirus* (which encompasses agents able to cause chronic infections with slowly progressive neurologic impairment, including the human immunodeficiency virus; see Chapter 44).

Retroviruses can be organized in various ways depending on their morphologic, biologic, and genetic properties. Differences in genome sequences and natural host range are frequently used, but antigenic properties are not. Retroviruses may be grouped morphologically (types B, C, and D); the vast majority of isolates display type C characteristics.

HOST OF ORIGIN

Retroviruses have been isolated from virtually all vertebrate species. Most viruses of a given type are isolated from single species, though natural infections across species barriers may occur. Group-specific antigenic determinants o the major internal (core) protein are shared by viruses from the same host species. All mammalian viruses are mor closely related to one another than to those from avian species.

The RNA tumor viruses most widely studied experimentally are the sarcoma viruses of chickens and mice and the leukemia viruses of mice, cats, chickens, and humans.

EXOGENOUS OR ENDOGENOUS

Exogenous retroviruses are spread horizontally and behave as typical infectious agents. They initiate infection and transformation only after contact. In contrast to endogenous viruses, which are found in all cells of all individuals of given species, gene sequences of exogenous viruses are found only in infected cells. The pathogenic retroviruses all appear to be exogenous viruses.

Retroviruses may also be transmitted vertically through the germ line. Viral genetic information that is a constant part of the genetic constitution of an organism is designated as "endogenous." An integrated retroviral provirus behaves like a cluster of cellular genes and is subject to regulatory control by the cell. This cellular control usually results in partial or complete repression of viral gene expression. Its location in the cellular genome and the presen of appropriate cellular transcription factors determine to a great extent if (and when) viral expression will be activated. It is not uncommon for normal cells to maintain the endogenous viral infection in a quiescent form for extended periods of time.

Many vertebrates, including humans, possess multiple copies of endogenous RNA viral sequences. The endogenous viral sequences are of no apparent benefit to the animal. However, it has recently been discovered that endogenous proviruses of mammary tumor virus carried by inbred strains of mice express superantigen activities that influence the T cell repertoires of the animals.

Endogenous viruses are usually not pathogenic for their host animals. They do not produce any disease and cannot transform cells in culture. (There are examples of disease caused by replication of endogenous viruses in inbred strains of mice.)

Important features of endogenous viruses are as follows: (1) DNA copies of RNA tumor virus genomes are covalentl linked to cellular DNA and are present in all somatic and germ cells in the host; (2) endogenous viral genomes are transmitted genetically from parent to offspring; (3) the integrated state subjects the endogenous viral genomes to host genetic control; and (4) the endogenous virus may be induced to replicate either spontaneously or by treatmen with extrinsic (chemical) factors.

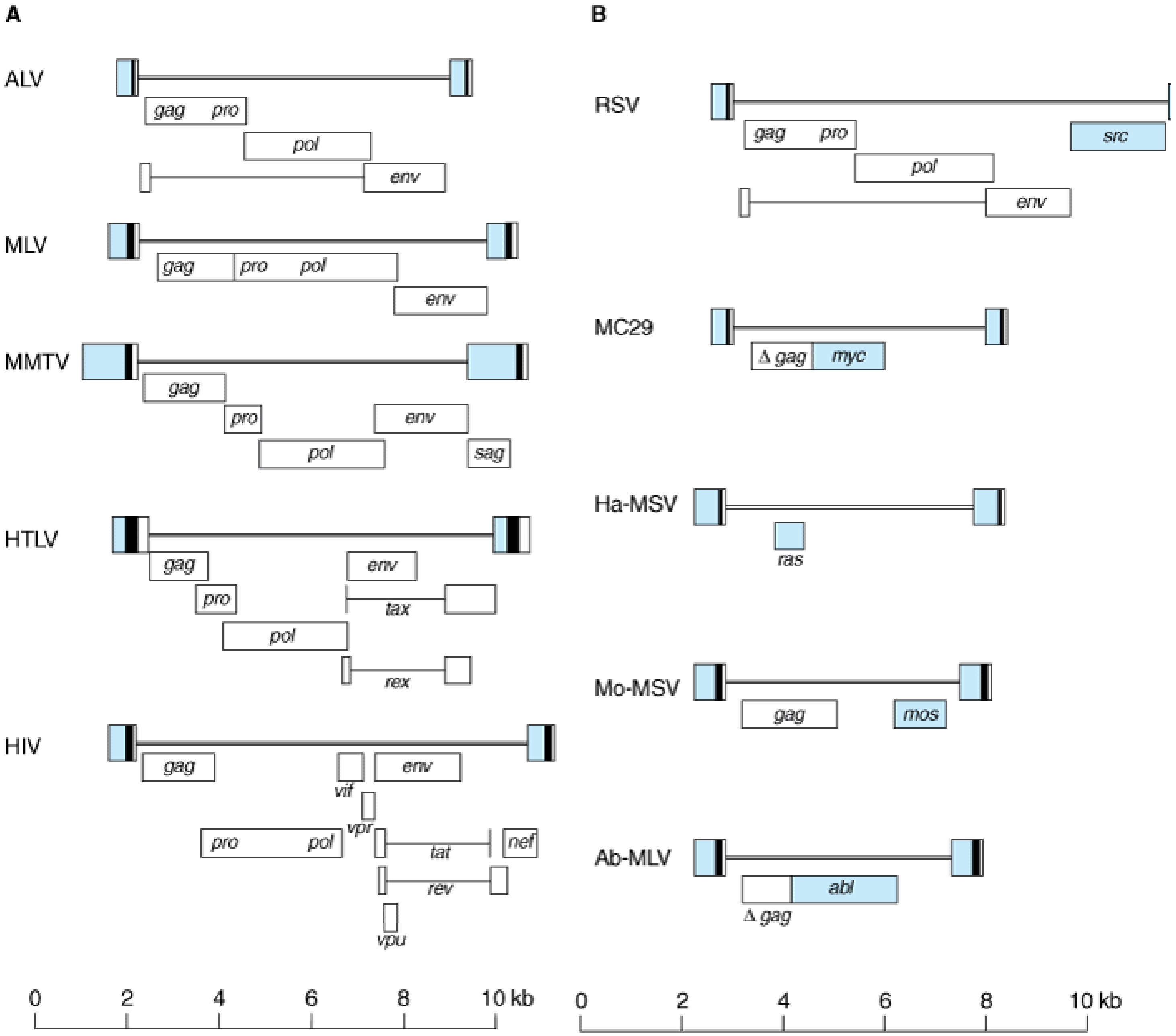
HOST RANGE

The presence or absence of an appropriate cell surface receptor is a major determinant of the host range of a retrovirus. Infection is initiated by an interaction between the viral envelope glycoprotein and a cell surface receptor Ecotropic viruses infect and replicate only in cells from animals of the original host species. Amphotropic viruses exhibit a broad host range (able to infect cells not only of the natural host but of heterologous species as well) because they recognize a receptor that is widely distributed. Xenotropic viruses can replicate in some heterologous (foreign) cells but not in cells of the natural host. Many endogenous viruses have xenotropic host ranges.

GENETIC CONTENT

Retroviruses have a simple genetic content, but there is some variation in the number and type of genes contained. The genetic makeup of a virus influences its biologic properties. Genomic structure is a useful way of categorizing RNA tumor viruses (Figure 432).

Figure 432.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genetic organization of representative retroviruses. A: Nondefective, replication-competent viruses. Examples of retroviruses with simple and complex genomes are shown. An open rectangle shows the open reading frame for the indicated gene. If the rectangles are offset vertically, their reading frames are different. Horizontal lines connecting two rectangles indicate that this segment is spliced out. Simple genomes: ALV, avian leukosis virus (*Alpharetrovirus*); MLV, murine leukemia virus (*Gammaretrovirus*); MMTV, mouse mammary tumor virus (*Betaretrovirus*). Complex genomes: HTLV, human T-lymphotrop virus (*Deltaretrovirus*); HIV, human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (*Lentivirus*). B: Viruses carrying oncogenes. Several examples are shown, with the oncogene shaded; all are defective except RSV. RSV, Rous sarcoma virus (*src* oncogene) (*Alpharetrovirus*); MC29, avian myelocytomatosis virus (*myc* oncogene) (*Alpharetrovirus*); Ha-MSV, Harvey murine sarcoma virus (*ras* oncogene) (*Gammaretrovirus*); Mo-MSV, Moloney murine sarcoma virus (*mos* oncogene) (*Gammaretrovirus*); Ab-

MLV, Abelson murine leukemia virus (*abl* oncogene) (*Gammaretrovirus*). The scale for genome sizes is shown at the bottom o each panel.

(Modified, with permission, from Vogt VM: Retroviral virions and genomes. In: *Retroviruses.* Coffin JM, Hughes SH, Varmus HE [editors]. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1997.)

The standard leukemia viruses (*Alpharetrovirus* and *Gammaretrovirus*) contain genes required for viral replication: *gag,* which encodes the core proteins (group-specific antigens); *pro,* which encodes a protease enzyme; *pol,* which encodes the reverse transcriptase enzyme (polymerase); and *env,* which encodes the glycoproteins that form projections on the envelope of the particle. The gene order in all retroviruses is 5'-*gag-pro-pol-env-* 3'.

Some viruses, exemplified by the human retroviruses (*Deltaretrovirus* and *Lentivirus*), contain additional genes downstream from the *env* gene. One is a transactivating regulatory gene (*tax* or *tat*) that encodes a nonstructural protein which alters the transcription or translational efficiency of other viral genes. The lentiviruses, including huma immunodeficiency virus, have a more complex genome and contain several additional accessory genes (see Chapte 44).

Retroviruses with either of these two genomic structures will be replication-competent (in appropriate cells). Becaus they lack a transforming (*onc*) gene, they cannot transform cells in tissue culture. However, they may have the ability to transform precursor cells in blood-forming tissues in vivo.

The directly transforming retroviruses carry an *onc* gene. The transforming genes carried by various RNA tumor viruses represent cellular genes that have been appropriated by those viruses at some time in the distant past and incorporated into their genomes (Figure 432).

Such viruses are highly oncogenic in appropriate host animals and can transform cells in culture. With very few exceptions, the addition of the cellular DNA results in the loss of portions of the viral genome. Consequently, the sarcoma viruses usually are replication-defective; progeny virus is produced only in the presence of helper viruses. The helper viruses are generally other retroviruses (leukemia viruses), which may recombine in various ways with the defective viruses. These defective transforming retroviruses have been the source of many of the recognized cellular oncogenes.

ONCOGENIC POTENTIAL

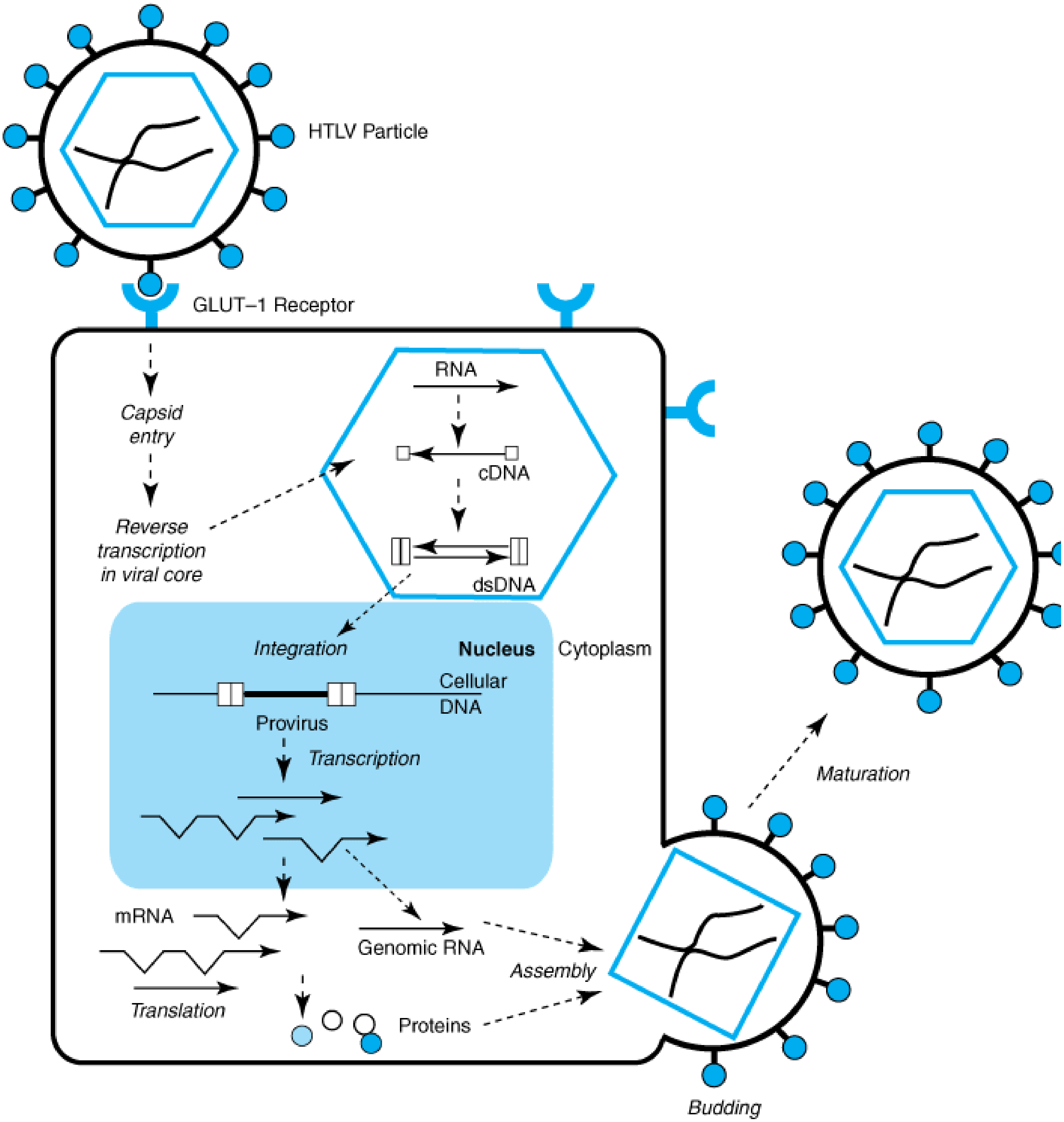
The retroviruses that contain oncogenes are highly oncogenic. They are sometimes referred to as "acute transforming" agents because they induce tumors in vivo after very short latent periods and rapidly induce morphologic transformation of cells in vitro. The viruses that do not carry an oncogene have a much lower oncogeni potential. Disease (usually of blood cells) appears after a long latent period (ie, "slow transforming"); cultured cells are not transformed.

Briefly, neoplastic transformation by retroviruses is the result of a cellular gene that is normally expressed at low, carefully regulated levels becoming activated and expressed constitutively. In the case of the acute transforming viruses, a cellular gene has been inserted by recombination into the viral genome and is expressed as a viral gene under the control of the viral promoter. In the case of the leukemia viruses, the viral promoter or enhancer element is inserted adjacent to or near the cellular gene in the cellular chromosome.

Replication of Retroviruses

A schematic outline of a typical retrovirus replication cycle, represented by human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV), is shown in Figure 433. The *pol* gene encodes the unique polymerase (reverse transcriptase) protein that has four enzymatic activities (protease, polymerase, RNase H, and integrase). After virus particles have adsorbed to and penetrated host cells, the viral RNA serves as the template for the synthesis of viral DNA through the action of the viral enzyme reverse transcriptase, functioning as an RNA-dependent DNA polymerase. By a complex process, sequences from both ends of the viral RNA become duplicated, forming the long terminal repeat located at each end of the viral DNA (Figure 434). Long terminal repeats are present only in viral DNA. The newly formed viral DNA becomes integrated into the host cell DNA as a provirus. The structure of the provirus is constant, but its integration into the host cell genome can occur at different sites. The very precise orientation of the provirus after integration is achieved by specific sequences at the ends of both long terminal repeats.

Figure 433.

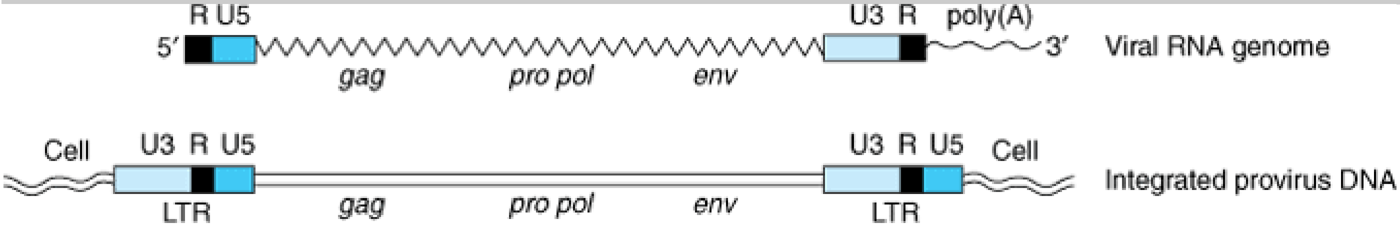


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Overview of retrovirus HTLV replication cycle. The virus particle attaches to a cell surface receptor, and the viral capsid enters the cell. The viral reverse transcriptase enzyme produces a DNA copy of the genome RNA within the capsid in the cytoplasm. The DNA enters the nucleus and is integrated at random into cell DNA, forming the provirus. The integrated provirus serves as template for the synthesis of viral transcripts, some of which are unspliced and will be encapsidated as genomic RNAs and others, some of which are spliced, will serve as mRNAs. Viral proteins are synthesized; the proteins and genome RNAs assemble; and particles bud from the cell. Capsid proteins are proteolytically processed by the viral protease producing matur infectious virions, shown schematically as conversion from a square to an icosahedral core.

(Courtesy of SJ Marriott.)

Figure 434.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Comparison of structures of retrovirus RNA genome and integrated provirus DNA. A virus particle contains two identical copies of the single-stranded RNA genome. The 5' terminal is capped, and the 3' terminal is polyadenylated. A short sequence, R, is repeated at both ends; unique sequences are located near the 5' (U5) and 3' (U3) ends. U3 contains promoter and enhancer sequences. The integrated provirus DNA is flanked at each end by the long terminal repeat (LTR) structure generated during synthesis of the DNA copy by reverse transcription. Each long terminal repeat contains U3, R, and U5 sequences. The long terminal repeats and coding regions of the retrovirus genome are not drawn to scale.

Progeny viral genomes may then be transcribed from the provirus DNA into viral RNA. The U3 sequence in the long terminal repeat contains both a promoter and an enhancer. The enhancer may help confer tissue specificity on viral expression. The proviral DNA is transcribed by the host enzyme, RNA polymerase II. Full-length transcripts (capped polyadenylated) serve as genomic RNA for encapsidation in progeny virions. Some transcripts are spliced, and the subgenomic mRNAs are translated to produce viral precursor proteins that are modified and cleaved to form the fin protein products.

If the virus happens to contain a transforming gene, the oncogene plays no role in replication. This is in marked contrast to the DNA tumor viruses, in which the transforming genes are also essential viral replication genes.

Virus particles assemble and emerge from infected host cells by budding from plasma membranes. The viral proteas then cleaves the Gag and Pol proteins from the precursor polyprotein, producing a mature infectious virion prepare for reverse transcription when the next cell is infected.

A salient feature of retroviruses is that they are not cytolytic; ie, they do not kill the cells in which they replicate. Th exceptions are the lentiviruses, which may be cytolytic (see Chapter 44). The provirus remains integrated within the cellular DNA for the life of the cell. There is no known way to cure a cell of a chronic retrovirus infection.

Human Retroviruses

Only a few retroviruses are linked to human tumors. The human T-lymphotropic (HTLV) group of retroviruses has probably existed in humans for thousands of years. HTLV-1 has been established as the causative agent of adult T cell leukemia-lymphomas (ATL) as well as a nervous system degenerative disorder called tropical spastic paraparesi It does not carry an oncogene. A related human virus, HTLV-2, has been isolated but has not been conclusively associated with a specific disease. HTLV-1 and HTLV-2 share about 65% sequence homology and display significant serologic cross-reactivity.

The human lymphotropic viruses have a marked affinity for mature T cells. HTLV-1 is expressed at very low levels ir infected individuals. It appears that the viral promoter-enhancer sequences in the long terminal repeat may be responsive to signals associated with the activation and proliferation of T cells. If so, the replication of the viruses may be linked to the replication of the host cellsa strategy that would ensure efficient propagation of the virus.

The human retroviruses are transregulating (Figure 432). They carry a gene, *tax,* whose product alters the expression of other viral genes. Transactivating regulatory genes are believed to be necessary for viral replication ir vivo and may contribute to oncogenesis by also modulating cellular genes that regulate cell growth.

There are several genetic subtypes of HTLV-1, with the major ones being subtypes A, B, and C (these do not represent distinct serotypes).

The virus is distributed worldwide, with an estimated 10 to 20 million infected individuals. Clusters of HTLV-associated disease are found in certain geographic areas (southern Japan, Melanesia, the Caribbean, Central and South America, and parts of Africa) (Figure 435). Although fewer than 1% of people worldwide have HTLV-1 antibody, more than 10% of the population in endemic areas are seropositive, and antibody may be found in 50% o relatives of virus-positive leukemia patients.

Figure 435.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Subtypes of HTLV-1 are geographically distributed in endemic foci. A: Japan, India, the Caribbean, and the Andes; B: Japan ai India; C: West Africa and the Caribbean; D: Central Africa; E: Papua New Guinea.

(Courtesy of N Mueller; reproduced from Blattner WA: Human lymphotropic viruses: HTLV-1 and HTLV-2. In: *Clinical Virology,* 2nd ed. Richman DD, Whitley RJ, Hayden FG [editors]. ASM Press, 2001.)

ATL is poorly responsive to therapy. The 5-year survival rate for patients with this cancer is < 5%.

Transmission of HTLV-1 seems to involve cell-associated virus. Mother-to-child transmission via breast feeding is an important mode. Efficiency of transmission from infected mother to child is estimated at 1525%. Such early-life infections are associated with the greatest risk of ATL. Blood transfusion is an effective means of transmission, as an sharing blood-contaminated needles (drug abusers) and sexual intercourse.

Seroepidemiology has linked infection with HTLV-1 to a syndrome called HTLV-1-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP). The primary clinical feature is development of progressive weakness of the legs and lower body. The patient's mental faculties remain intact. HAM/TSP is described as being of the same magnitude and importance in the tropics as is multiple sclerosis in Western countries.

A group of human retroviruses has been established as the cause of AIDS; see Chapter 44. The viruses are cytolytic and nontransforming and are classified as lentiviruses. However, AIDS patients are at elevated risk of several types of cancer because of the immune suppression associated with human immunodeficiency virus infection. These cancers include lymphomas and cervical cancer.

The simian foamy viruses from the *Spumavirus* genus are highly prevalent in captive nonhuman primates. Humans occupationally exposed to the primates can be infected with foamy viruses, but these infections have not resulted in any recognized disease.

CELLULAR ONCOGENES

"Oncogene" is the general term given to genes that are involved in cancer causation. Normal versions of these transforming genes are present in normal cells and have been designated proto-oncogenes.

The discovery of cellular oncogenes came from studies with acutely transforming retroviruses. It was found that normal cells contained highly related (but not identical) copies of various retrovirus transforming genes; cellular sequences had been captured and incorporated into the retrovirus genomes. Transduction of the cellular genes was probably an accident, as the presence of the cellular sequences is of no benefit to the viruses. There are many other known cellular oncogenes that have not been segregated into retrovirus vectors but have been detected using molecular methods.

Cellular oncogenes are partly responsible for the molecular basis of human cancer. They represent individual components of complicated pathways responsible for regulating cell proliferation, division, and differentiation and fo maintaining the integrity of the genome. Incorrect expression of any component might interrupt that regulation, resulting in uncontrolled growth of cells (cancer). Examples exist of tyrosine-specific protein kinases (eg, *src*), growth factors (*sis* is similar to human platelet-derived growth factor, a potent mitogen for cells of connective tissue origin), mutated growth factor receptors (*erb* -B is a truncated epidermal growth factor receptor), GTP-binding proteins (Ha-*ras*), and nuclear transcription factors (*myc, jun*).

The molecular mechanisms responsible for activating a benign proto-oncogene and converting it into a cancer gene varybut all involve genetic damage. The gene may be overexpressed, and a dosage effect of the overproduced oncogene product may be important in cellular growth changes. These mechanisms might result in constitutive activity (loss of normal regulation), so that the gene is expressed at the wrong time during the cell cycle or in inappropriate tissue types. Mutations might alter the carefully regulated interaction of a proto-oncogene protein with other proteins or nucleic acids. Insertion of a retroviral promoter adjacent to a cellular oncogene may result in enhanced expression of that gene (ie, "promoter-insertion oncogenesis"). Expression of a cellular gene also may be increased through the action of nearby viral "enhancer" sequences.

TUMOR SUPPRESSOR GENES

A second class of human cancer genes is involved in tumor development. These are the negative regulators of cell growth, tumor suppressor genes. They were identified because they form complexes with oncoproteins of certain DNA tumor viruses. The inactivation or functional loss of both alleles of such a gene is required for tumor formationin contrast to the activation that occurs with cellular oncogenes. The prototype of this inhibitory class of genes is the retinoblastoma (*Rb*) gene. The Rb protein inhibits entry of cells into S phase by binding to key transcription factors that regulate expression of S phase genes. The function of normal Rb protein is regulated by phosphorylation. The loss of *Rb* gene function is causally related to the development of retinoblastomaa rare ocular tumor of childrenand other human tumors.

Another crucial tumor suppressor gene is the *p53* gene. It also blocks cell cycle progression; p53 acts as a transcription factor and regulates the synthesis of a protein that inhibits the function of certain cell cycle kinases. It also causes cells with DNA damage to undergo apoptosis. The loss of p53 function allows cells with damaged DNA to progress through the cell cycle, leading to the eventual accumulation of genetic mutations. The *p53* gene is mutated in over half of all human cancers.

INTRODUCTION

Fundamental differences exist between the oncogenes of DNA and RNA tumor viruses. The transforming genes carried by DNA tumor viruses encode functions required for viral replication and do not have normal homologs in cells. In contrast, retroviruses either carry transduced cellular oncogenes that have no role in viral replication or the act through indirect mechanisms. The DNA virus transforming proteins complex with normal cell proteins and alter their function. To understand the mechanism of action of DNA virus transforming proteins, it is important to identify the cellular targets with which they interact. Examples of such interactions are shown in Table 434.

Table 434. Examples of DNA Virus Oncoproteins and Cellular Protein Interactions.[1]

Polyomavirus SV40
Large T antigen
p53, pRb
Small t antigen
PP2A
Human papillomavirus
E6
p53, DLG, MAGI-1, MUPP1
E7
pRb
Bovine papillomavirus
E5
PDGFβ receptor
Adenovirus
E1A
pRb
E1B-55K
p53

Virus	Viral Oncoproteins	Cellular Targets
Adenovirus 9	E4ORF1	DLG, MAGI-1, MUPP1
Herpesvirus EBV	LMP1	TRAFs

[1] Abbreviations used: p53, product of *p53* gene; pRb, retinoblastoma gene product; PP2A, protein phosphatase 2A; PDGF, platelet-derived growth factor; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; TRAF, tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated factor. DLG, MAGI-1, and MUPP1 are members of a family of cellular proteins that contain PDZ domains.

POLYOMAVIRUSES

Important properties of polyomaviruses are listed in Table 435.

Table 435. Important Properties of Polyomaviruses.[1]

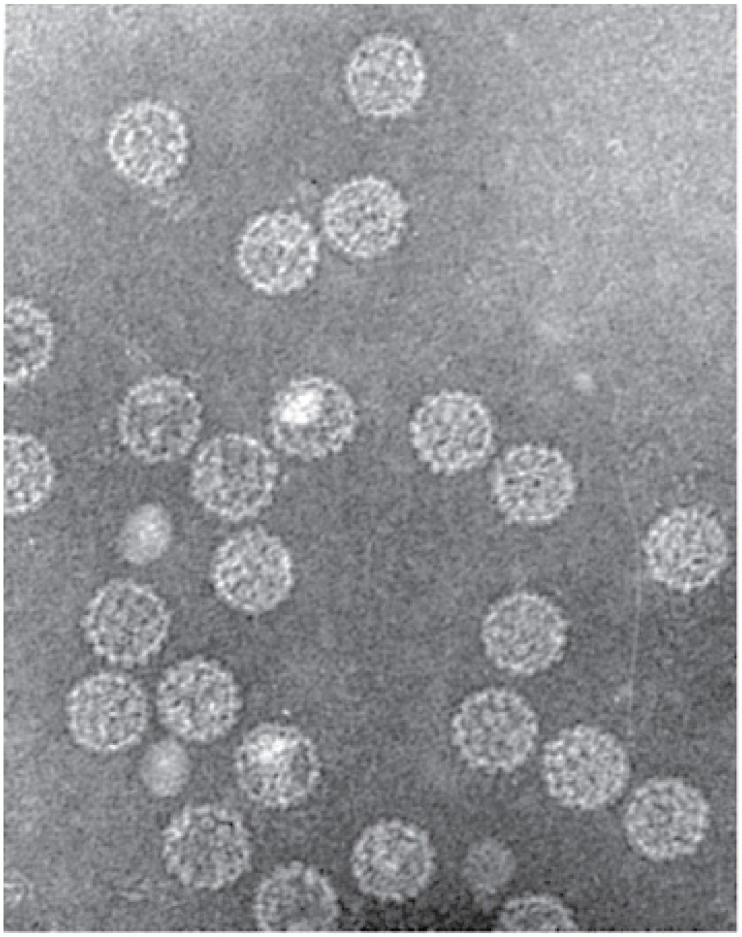
Virion: Icosahedral, 45 nm in diameter
Composition: DNA (10%), protein (90%)
Genome: Double-stranded DNA, circular, 5 kbp, MW 3 million
Proteins: Three structural proteins; cellular histones condense DNA in virion
Envelope: None
Replication: Nucleus
Outstanding characteristics:
Stimulate cell DNA synthesis
Viral oncoproteins interact with cellular tumor suppressor proteins
Important model tumor viruses
Human viruses can cause human neurologic and renal disease
May cause human cancer

[1] Formerly classified in Papovaviridae family.

Classification

The Polyomaviridae family, with a single genus designated *Polyomavirus* , used to be part of the Papovaviridae fami (which no longer exists). Polyomaviruses are small viruses (diameter 45 nm) that possess a circular genome of double-stranded DNA (5 kbp; MW 3 x 10^6) enclosed within a nonenveloped capsid exhibiting icosahedral symmetry (Figure 436). Cellular histones are used to condense viral DNA inside virus particles.

Figure 436.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Polyomavirus SV40. Purified preparation negatively stained with phosphotungstate (150,000 x).

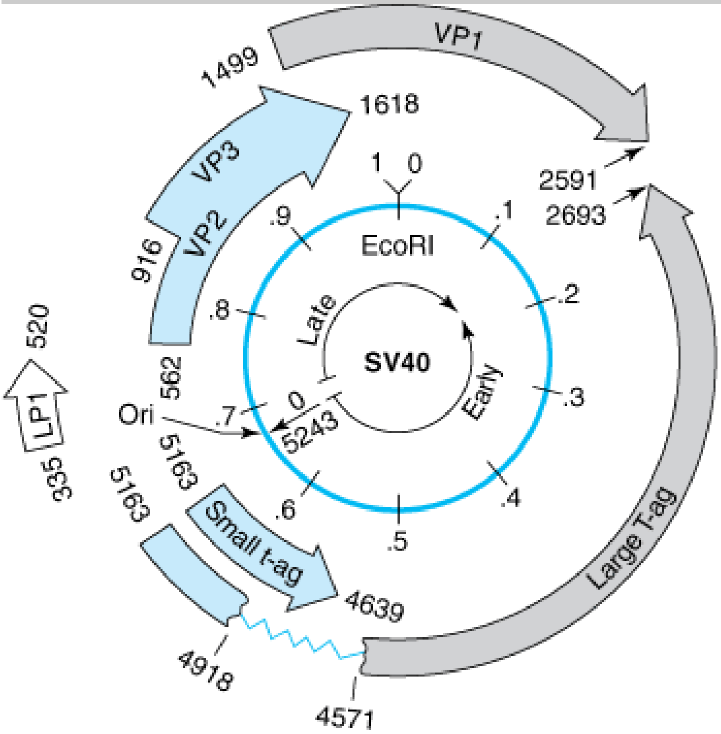
(Courtesy of S McGregor and H Mayor.)

SV40 from monkeys and humans, BK virus and JC virus from humans, and murine polyoma virus from mice are simple DNA-containing tumor viruses that possess a limited amount of genetic information (six or seven genes). Many species of mammals and some birds have been found to carry their own species of polyomavirus.

Polyomavirus Replication

The polyomavirus genome contains "early" and "late" regions (Figure 437). The early region is expressed soon after infection of cells; it contains genes that code for early proteinseg, the SV40 large tumor (T) antigen, which is necessary for the replication of viral DNA in permissive cells, and the small tumor (t) antigen. The murine polyoma virus genome encodes three early proteins (small, middle, and large T antigens). One or two of the T antigens are the only viral gene products required for transformation of cells. Usually, the transforming proteins must be continuously synthesized for cells to stay transformed. The late region consists of genes that code for the synthesis of coat protein; they have no role in transformation and usually are not expressed in transformed cells.

Figure 437.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Genetic map of the polyomavirus SV40. The thick circle represents the circular SV40 DNA genome. The unique *Eco* RI site is shown at map unit 0/1. Nucleotide numbers begin and end at the origin (Ori) of viral DNA replication (0/5243). Boxed arrows indicate the open reading frames that encode the viral proteins. Arrowheads point in the direction of transcription; the beginning and end of each open reading frame are indicated by nucleotide numbers. Various shadings depict different reading frames used for different viral polypeptides. Note that large T antigen (T-ag) is coded by two noncontiguous segments on the genome. The genome is divided into "early" and "late" regions that are expressed before and after the onset of viral DNA replication, respectively. Only the early region is expressed in transformed cells.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Butel JS, Jarvis DL: Biochim Biophys Acta 1986;865:171.)

SV40 T antigen interacts with the cellular tumor suppressor gene products, p53 and pRb family members (Table 434). Interactions of T antigen with the cellular proteins are important in the replicative cycle of the virus. Complex formation functionally inactivates the growth inhibitory properties of pRb and p53, allowing cells to enter S phase sc that viral DNA may be replicated. Likewise, functional inactivation of the cellular proteins by T antigen binding is central to the virus-mediated transformation process. As p53 senses DNA damage and either blocks cell cycle progression or initiates apoptosis, abolishing its function would lead to accumulation of T antigen-expressing cells with genomic mutations that might promote tumorigenic growth.

Pathogenesis & Pathology

The human polyomaviruses (BK and JC) are widely distributed in human populations, as evidenced by the presence of specific antibody in 7080% of adult sera. Infection usually occurs during early childhood. Both viruses may persis in the kidneys and lymphoid tissues of healthy individuals after primary infection and may reactivate when the host' immune response is impaired, eg, by renal transplantation, during pregnancy, or increasing age. Viral reactivation and shedding in urine are asymptomatic in immunocompetent persons. The viruses are most commonly isolated fro immunocompromised patients, in whom disease may occur. BK virus causes hemorrhagic cystitis in bone marrow transplant recipients. It is the cause of polyomavirus-associated nephropathy in renal transplant recipients, a seriou disease that occurs in up to 5% of recipients and which results in graft failure in up to 50% of those affected patients. JC virus is the cause of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), a fatal brain disease that occur in some immunocompromised persons, especially those with depressed cell-mediated immunity resulting from immunosuppressive therapies or infection by the human immunodeficiency virus. PML affects about 5% of AIDS patients. The two viruses are antigenically distinct, but both encode a T antigen that is related to SV40 T antigen. These human viruses can transform rodent cells and induce tumors in newborn hamsters. JC virus has been associated with human brain tumors, but an etiologic role is not yet established.

SV40 replicates in certain types of monkey and human cells; it is highly tumorigenic in experimentally inoculated hamsters and in transgenic mice and can transform many types of cells in culture. Tumor induction in the natural hostthe rhesus monkeyis rarely observed. SV40 may cause a PML-like disease in rhesus monkeys.

SV40 contaminated early lots of live and killed poliovirus vaccines that had been grown in monkey cells unknowingl infected with SV40. Millions of people worldwide received such SV40-contaminated vaccines between 1955 and 196 SV40 is detected in humans today, including in individuals too young to have been exposed via vaccination, but the prevalence of SV40 infections in humans is not known. SV40 DNA has been detected in selected types of human tumors, including brain tumors, mesotheliomas, bone tumors, and lymphomas. The role SV40 is playing in formatio of human cancers is under investigation.

The host range for polyomaviruses is often highly restricted. Usually a single species can be infected and only certai cell types within that species. Exceptions are the primate polyomaviruses SV40 and BK virus; SV40 can infect also humans and human cells and BK virus can infect some monkey cells. Cell types that fail to support polyomavirus replication may be transformed by a virus.

PAPILLOMAVIRUSES

Important properties of papillomaviruses are listed in Table 436.

Table 436. Important Properties of Papillomaviruses.[1]

Virion: Icosahedral, 55 nm in diameter
Composition: DNA (10%), protein (90%)
Genome: Double-stranded DNA, circular, 8 kbp, MW 5 million
Proteins: Two structural proteins; cellular histones condense DNA in virion
Envelope: None
Replication: Nucleus
Outstanding characteristics:
Stimulate cell DNA synthesis
Restricted host range and tissue tropism
Significant cause of human cancer, especially cervical cancer
Viral oncoproteins interact with cellular tumor suppressor proteins

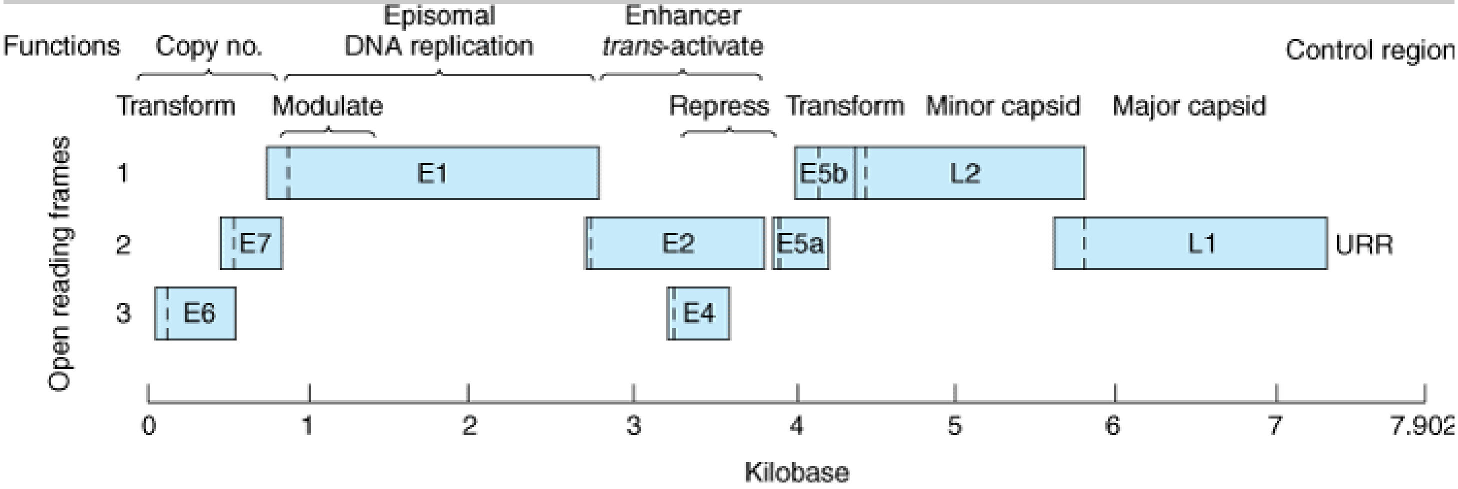
---

[1] Formerly classified in Papovaviridae family.

Classification

The Papillomaviridae family is a very large virus family currently divided into 16 genera, of which five contain members that infect humans (*Alpha* -, *Beta* -, *Gamma* -, *Mupa* -, and *Nupapapillomavirus*). The papillomaviruses ar former members of the Papovaviridae family. Although papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses share similarities in morphology, nucleic acid composition, and transforming capabilities, differences in genome organization and biolog led to their separation into distinct virus families. The papillomaviruses are slightly larger in diameter (55 nm) than the polyomaviruses (45 nm) and contain a larger genome (8 kbp versus 5 kbp). The organization of the papillomavirus genome is more complex (Figure 438). Properties of the papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses are compared in Table 437. There is widespread diversity among papillomaviruses. Because neutralization tests cannot be done since there is no in vitro infectivity assay, papillomavirus isolates are classified using molecular criteria. Vir "types" are at least 10% dissimilar in the sequence of their L1 genes. More than 100 distinct human papillomavirus (HPV) types have been recovered.

Figure 438.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Map of the human papillomavirus genome (HPV-6, 7902 base pairs). The papillomavirus genome is circular but is shown linearized in the upstream regulatory region (URR). The upstream regulatory region contains the origin of replication and enhancer and promoter sequences. Early (E1E7) and late (L1, L2) open reading frames and their functions are shown. All the open reading frames are on the same strand of viral DNA. Biologic functions are extrapolated from studies with the bovine papillomavirus. The organization of the papillomavirus genome is much more complex than that of SV40 (compare with Figure 437).

(Reproduced, with permission, from Broker TR: Structure and genetic expression of papillomaviruses. Obstet Gynecol Clin Nor Am 1987;14:329.)

Table 437. Comparison of Properties of Polyomaviruses and Papillomaviruses.[1]

Virion
Capsid structure
Icosahedral, no envelope
Icosahedral, no envelope
Size (diameter)

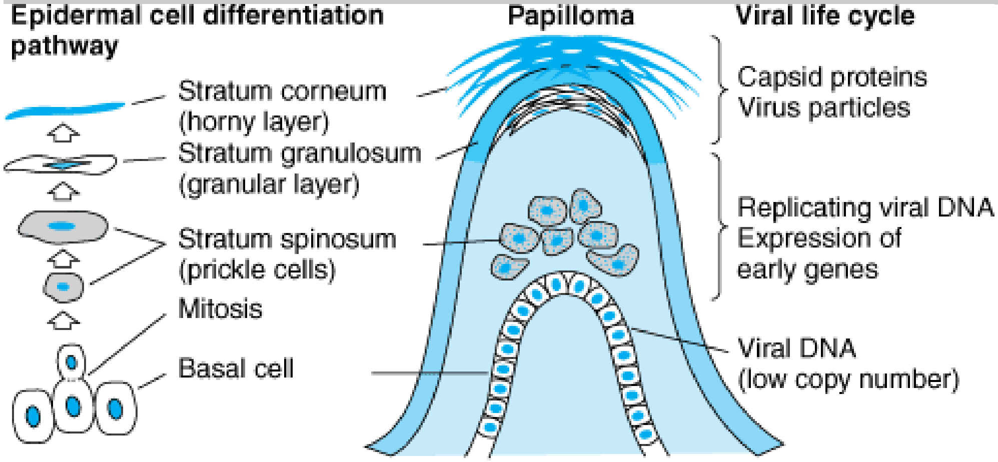
Characteristic	Polyomavirus	Papillomavirus
	45 nm	55 nm
Genome		
Type, structure of nucleic acid	Circular, double-stranded DNA	Circular, double-stranded DNA
Size: number of base pairs	5 kbp	8 kbp
Coding information	On both strands	On one strand
Oncogenic potential		
Tumors in natural hosts	Uncommon	Yes
Result of natural infection	Usually inapparent	Benign lesions
Target tissue	Internal organs	Surface epithelia
Transform cells in vitro	Yes	Rarely
Genome in transformed cells	Usually integrated	Episomal in some, integrated in others
Individual members		
Viruses infecting humans	BK and JC viruses; SV40	Human papillomaviruses, > 100 types
Most significant human illness	Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy; nephropathy in transplant recipients	Skin warts, genital warts, laryngeal papillomas, cervical carcinoma
Important animal isolates	Polyoma virus (mouse), SV40 (monkey)	Papillomaviruses from cows and rabbits

[1] Formerly both groups were classified in the Papovaviridae family.

Papillomavirus Replication

Papillomaviruses are highly tropic for epithelial cells of the skin and mucous membranes. Viral nucleic acid can be found in basal stem cells, but late gene expression (capsid proteins) is restricted to the uppermost layer of differentiated keratinocytes (Figure 439). Stages in the viral replicative cycle are dependent on specific factors that are present in sequential differentiated states of epithelial cells. This strong dependence of viral replication on the differentiated state of the host cell is responsible for the difficulties in propagating papillomaviruses in vitro.

Figure 439.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Schematic representation of a skin wart (papilloma). The papillomavirus life cycle is tied to epithelial cell differentiation. The terminal differentiation pathway of epidermal cells is shown on the left. Events in the virus life cycle are noted on the right. La events in viral replication (capsid protein synthesis and virion morphogenesis) occur only in terminally differentiated cells.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Butel JS: Papovaviruses. In: *Medical Microbiology,* 3rd ed. Baron S [editor]. Churchill Livingstone, 1991.)

Pathogenesis & Pathology

Transmission of viral infections occurs by close contact. Viral particles are released from the surface of papillomatou lesions. It is likely that microlesions allow infection of proliferating basal layer cells at other sites or within different hosts.

Papillomaviruses cause infections at cutaneous and mucosal sites, sometimes leading to the development of differe kinds of warts, including skin warts, plantar warts, flat warts, genital condylomas, and laryngeal papillomas (Table 438). The multiple types of human papillomavirus isolates are preferentially associated with certain clinical lesions, though distribution patterns are not absolute. HPV genital infections are sexually transmitted and represent the mos common sexually transmitted disease in the United States. Cervical cancer is the second most frequent cancer in women worldwide (about 500,000 new cases annually) and is a major cause of cancer deaths in developing countries.

Table 438. Examples of Association of Human Papillomaviruses with Clinical Lesions.

1	Plantar warts	Benign
2, 4, 27, 57	Common skin warts	Benign

Human Papillomavirus Type	Clinical Lesion	Suspected Oncogenic Potential
3, 10, 28, 49, 60, 76, 78	Cutaneous lesions	Low
5, 8, 9, 12, 17, 20, 36, 47	Epidermodysplasia verruciformis	Mostly benign, but some progress to malignancy
6, 11, 40, 4244, 54, 61, 70, 72, 81	Anogenital condylomas; laryngeal papillomas; dysplasias and intraepithelial neoplasias (mucosal sites)	Low
7	Hand warts of butchers	Low
16, 18, 30, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 5153, 56, 58, 59, 66, 68, 73, 82	High-grade dysplasias and carcinomas of genital mucosa; laryngeal and esophageal carcinomas	High correlation with genital and oral carcinomas, especially cervical cancer

Based on the relative occurrence of viral DNA in certain cancers, HPV types 16 and 18 are considered to be high cancer risk; less common high-risk types are 30, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 5153, 56, 58, 59, 66, 68, 73, and 82. Types 6, 11, 40, 4244, 54, 61, 70, 72, and 81 are classified as low risk mucosal HPV types. Many HPV types are considered benign.

Integrated copies of viral DNA are usually present in cervical cancer cells, though HPV DNA is generally not integrated (episomal) in noncancerous cells or premalignant lesions. Skin carcinomas appear to harbor HPV genome in an episomal state. Viral early proteins E6 and E7 are synthesized in cancer tissue. These are HPV transforming proteins, able to complex with Rb and p53 and other cellular proteins (Table 434).

The behavior of HPV lesions is influenced by immunologic factors. Cell-mediated immunity is important. Nearly all HPV infections are cleared and become undetectable within 23 years.

Cervical cancer develops slowly, sometimes taking years to decades. It is thought that multiple factors are involved in progression to malignancy; however, persistent infection with a high-risk HPV is a necessary component to the process.

Clinical Findings & Epidemiology

An estimated 660 million people worldwide have HPV genital infections, the most common viral infection of the reproductive tract. An estimated 6.2 million new infections occur annually in the United States. The peak incidence HPV infections occurs in adolescents and young adults under 25 years of age.

HPVs are accepted as the cause of anogenital cancers. Over 99% of cervical cancer cases are linked to genital infections with HPVs. Papillomaviruses illustrate the concept that natural viral strains may differ in oncogenic potential. Although many different HPV types cause genital infections, HPV-16 or HPV-18 is found most frequently i cervical carcinomas, though some cancers contain DNA from other types, such as HPV type 31. Epidemiologic studie indicate that HPV-16 and HPV-18 are responsible for more than 70% of all cervical cancers. HeLa cells, a widely use tissue culture cell line derived many years ago from a cervical carcinoma, contain HPV-18 DNA.

Anal cancer is associated with high-risk HPV infection. Immunocompromised patients are especially at risk, as are men who have sex with men. Oropharyngeal cancers, a subset of head and neck squamous cell carcinomas, are als linked to HPV infections, especially by type 16.

The role of men as carriers of HPV as well as vectors for transmission of infections is well documented; however, most penile HPV infections in men are subclinical and do not result in HPV-associated disease.

Laryngeal papillomas in children, also called recurrent respiratory papillomatosis, are caused by HPV-6 and HPV-11, the same viruses that cause benign genital condylomas. The infection is acquired during passage through the birth canal of a mother with genital warts. While laryngeal papillomas are rare, the growths may obstruct the larynx and must be removed repeatedly by surgical means. About 3000 cases of this disease are diagnosed annually; up to 3% of children will die.

There is a high prevalence of HPV DNA in normal skin from healthy adults. It appears that these asymptomatic HPV infections are acquired early in infancy. A great multiplicity of HPV types are detected in normal skin. Transmission i thought to occur from those in close contact with the child, with a high concordance (about 60%) between types detected in infants and their mothers.

Immunosuppressed patients experience an increased incidence of warts and cancer of the cervix. All HPV-associate cancers occur more frequently in persons with HIV/AIDS.

Prevention & Control

Vaccines against HPV are expected to be a cost-effective way to reduce anogenital HPV infections, the incidence of cervical cancer, and the HPV-associated health care burden. A quadrivalent HPV vaccine was approved in the United States in 2006. It is a noninfectious recombinant vaccine produced in yeast and containing virus-like particles composed of HPV L1 proteins. The vaccine contains particles derived from HPV types 6, 11, 16, and 18. The vaccine is effective at preventing persistent infections by the four HPV types and the development of HPV-related genital precancerous lesions. It is not effective against established HPV disease. Adolescent and young adult females make up the initial target population for vaccination. It is not known how long vaccine-induced immunity lasts.

ADENOVIRUSES

The adenoviruses (see Chapter 32) comprise a large group of agents widely distributed in nature. They are medium sized, nonenveloped viruses containing a linear genome of double-stranded DNA (2645 kbp). Replication is species-specific, occurring in cells of the natural hosts. Adenoviruses commonly infect humans, causing mild acute illnesses, mainly of the respiratory and intestinal tracts.

Adenoviruses can transform rodent cells and induce the synthesis of virus-specific early antigens that localize in bot the nucleus and the cytoplasm of transformed cells. The E1A early proteins complex with the cellular Rb protein as well as with several other cellular proteins. Other early proteins, E1B and E4ORF1, bind p53 and other cellular signaling proteins (Table 434). The adenoviruses are important models for studying the molecular mechanisms by which DNA tumor viruses usurp cellular growth control processes. Different serotypes of adenoviruses manifest varying degrees of oncogenicity in newborn hamsters. No association of adenoviruses with human neoplasms has been found.

HERPESVIRUSES

These large viruses (diameter 125200 nm) contain a linear genome of double-stranded DNA (125240 kbp) and hav a capsid with icosahedral symmetry surrounded by an outer lipid-containing envelope. Herpesviruses (see Chapter 33) typically cause acute infections followed by latency and eventual recurrence in each host, including humans.

In humans, herpesviruses have been linked to several specific types of tumors. Epstein-Barr (EB) herpesvirus cause acute infectious mononucleosis when it infects B lymphocytes of susceptible humans. Normal human lymphocytes have a limited life span in vitro, but EB virus can immortalize such lymphocytes into lymphoblast cell lines that gro indefinitely in culture.

EB virus is etiologically linked to Burkitt's lymphoma, a tumor most commonly found in children in central Africa; to nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC), more common in Cantonese Chinese and Alaskan Eskimos than other populations to posttransplant lymphomas; and to Hodgkin's disease. These tumors usually contain EB viral DNA (both integrate and episomal forms) and viral antigens.

EB virus encodes a viral oncogene protein (LMP1) that mimics an activated growth factor receptor. LMP1 is able to transform rodent fibroblasts and is essential for transformation of B lymphocytes (Table 434). Several EB virus-encoded nuclear antigens (EBNAs) are necessary for immortalization of B cells; EBNA1 is the only viral protein consistently expressed in Burkitt's lymphoma cells. EB virus is very successful at avoiding immune elimination; this may be due in part to the function of EBNA1 in inhibition of antigen processing to allow infected cells to escape killi by cytotoxic T lymphocytes.

Malaria may be a cofactor of African Burkitt's lymphoma. Most of those tumors also show characteristic chromosoma translocations between the c-*myc* gene and immunoglobulin loci, leading to the constitutive activation of *myc* expression. Consumption of salted or dried fish may be a dietary cofactor in EB virus-related NPC.

Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus, also known as human herpesvirus 8 (KSHV/HHV8), is not as ubiquitous a most other human herpesviruses. It is suspected of being the cause of Kaposi's sarcoma, primary effusion lymphoma, and a particular lymphoproliferative disorder. KSHV has a number of genes that may stimulate cellular proliferation and modify host defense mechanisms.

Some herpesviruses are associated with tumors in lower animals. Marek's disease is a highly contagious lymphoproliferative disease of chickens that can be prevented by vaccination with an attenuated strain of Marek's disease virus. The prevention of cancer by vaccination in this case establishes the virus as the causative agent and suggests the possibility of a similar approach to prevention of human tumors with a virus as a causative agent. Othe examples of herpesvirus-induced tumors in animals include lymphomas of certain types of monkeys and adenocarcinomas of frogs. The simian viruses cause inapparent infections in their natural hosts but induce malignan T cell lymphomas when transmitted to other species of monkeys.

POXVIRUSES

Poxviruses (see Chapter 34) are large, brick-shaped viruses with a linear genome of double-stranded DNA (130375 kbp). Yaba virus produces benign tumors (histiocytomas) in its natural host, monkeys. Shope fibroma virus produce fibromas in some rabbits and is able to alter cells in culture. Molluscum contagiosum virus produces small benign growths in humans. Very little is known about the nature of these proliferative diseases, but the poxvirus-encoded growth factor that is related to epidermal growth factors and to transforming growth factor may be involved.

HEPATITIS B VIRUS & HEPATITIS C VIRUS

Hepatitis B virus (see Chapter 35), a member of the Hepadnaviridae family, is characterized by 42-nm spherical virions with a circular genome of double-stranded DNA (3.2 kbp). One strand of the DNA is incomplete and variable in length. Studies of the virus are hampered because it has not been grown in cell culture.

In addition to causing hepatitis, hepatitis B virus is a risk factor in the development of liver cancer in humans.

Epidemiologic and laboratory studies have proved persistent infection with hepatitis B virus to be an important caus of chronic liver disease and the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatitis B virus infections occurring in adults are usually resolved, but primary infections in neonates and young children tend to become chronic in up to 90% of cases. It is these persistent hepatitis B virus infections established early in life that carry the highest risk of hepatocellular carcinoma later in life. The mechanism of oncogenesis remains obscure. Persistent viral infection lead to necrosis, inflammation, and liver regeneration which over time result in cirrhosis; hepatocellular carcinoma usuall arises out of this background. The hepatitis B virus transactivator protein, X protein, is a potential viral oncoprotein. A dietary carcinogen, aflatoxin, may be a cofactor for hepatocellular carcinoma, especially in Africa and China.

The advent of an effective hepatitis B vaccine for the prevention of primary infection raises the possibility of prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma, particularly in areas of the world where infection with hepatitis B virus is hyperendemic (eg, Africa, China, Southeast Asia). Because of the long latent period before cancer development, however, the effects of vaccination will not be apparent for at least 20 years.

Woodchucks are an excellent model for hepatitis B virus infections of humans. A similar virus, woodchuck hepatitis virus, establishes chronic infections in both newborn and adult woodchucks, many of which develop hepatocellular carcinomas within a 3-year period.

Hepatitis C virus (see Chapter 35), a member of the Flaviviridae family, contains a genome of single-stranded RNA 9.4 kb in size. It appears that the majority of infections become persistent, even in adults. Chronic infection with hepatitis C virus is also considered to be a causative factor in hepatocellular carcinoma. Most probably, hepatitis C virus acts indirectly in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma.

There are currently over 250 million people worldwide persistently infected with hepatitis B virus and over 170 million chronic carriers of hepatitis C virusa large pool of individuals at risk of developing liver cancer.

HOW TO PROVE THAT A VIRUS CAUSES HUMAN CANCER

It is clear that viruses are involved in the genesis of several types of human tumors. Proving a causal relationship between a virus and a given type of cancer is, in general, very difficult.

If a virus is the only etiologic agent of a specific cancer, the geographic distribution of viral infection should coincide with that of the tumor; the presence of viral markers should be higher in cases than in controls; and viral infection should precede the tumor. These criteria can be difficult to establish if other environmental or genetic factors cause some cases of the same type of cancer. Only if the continued expression of a viral function is necessary for maintenance of transformation will viral genes necessarily persist in every tumor cell. If the virus provides an early step in multistep carcinogenesis, the viral genome may be lost as the tumor progresses to more altered stages. Conversely, a virus may be found associated frequently with a tumor but be there simply as a passenger because of an affinity for the cell type.

Tumor viruses are usually not replicating in transformed cells, so it is necessary to use very sensitive methods to search for viral nucleic acids or proteins in cells to detect virus presence. Viral structural proteins are frequently not expressed, but virus-encoded nonstructural proteins may be expressed as markers of virus presence.

Tumor induction in laboratory animals and transformation of human cells in culture are good circumstantial lines of evidence that a virus is tumorigenic, and those systems can provide models for molecular analyses of the transformation process. However, they do not constitute proof that the virus causes a particular human cancer.

The most definitive proof of a causal relationship is decreased tumor incidence by prevention of viral infection.

Intervention methods should be effective in reducing the occurrence of the cancer even if the virus is only one of several cofactors.

REFERENCES

Bosch FX et al: The causal relation between human papillomavirus and cervical cancer. J Clin Pathol 2002;55:244. [PMID: 11919208]

Brechot C (guest editor): Hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncogene Rev 2006;25:3753. [Entire issue.]

Butel JS: Viral carcinogenesis: Revelation of molecular mechanisms and etiology of human disease. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:405. [PMID: 10688861]

Coffin JM, Hughes SH, Varmus HE (editors): *Retroviruses.* Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1997.

Cole CN, Conzen SD: Polyomaviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

de Villiers EM et al: Classification of papillomaviruses. Virology 2004;324:17. [PMID: 15183049]

Frazer IH et al: Advances in prevention of cervical cancer and other human papillomavirus-related diseases. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2006;25(Suppl 2):S65. [PMID: 16462611]

Goff SP: Retroviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins 2001.

Jeang KT, Yoshida M (guest editors): HTLV-1 and adult T-cell leukemia: 25 years of research on the first human retrovirus. Oncogene Rev 2005;24:5923. [Entire issue.]

Khalili K, Raab-Traub N (editors): Cancer viruses. Oncogene Rev 2003;22 (No. 2). [Entire issue.]

Khalili K, Stoner GL (editors): *Human Polyomaviruses: Molecular and Clinical Perspectives.* Wiley-Liss, 2001.

Lowy DR, Howley PM: Papillomaviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Mnger K et al: Mechanisms of human papillomavirus-induced oncogenesis. J Virol 2004;78:11451. [PMID: 15479788]

Parsonnet J (editor): *Microbes and Malignancy: Infection as a Cause of Human Cancers.* Oxford Univ Press, 1999.

Trottier H, Franco EL: The epidemiology of genital human papillomavirus infection. Vaccine 2006;24(Suppl 1):S1/4. [PMID: 16406225]

INTRODUCTION

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) types, derived from primate lentiviruses, are the etiologic agents of AIDS. The illness was first described in 1981, and HIV-1 was isolated by the end of 1983. Since then, AIDS has become a worldwide epidemic, expanding in scope and magnitude as HIV infections have affected different populations and geographic regions. Millions are now infected worldwide; once infected, individuals remain infected for life. Within a decade, if left untreated, the vast majority of HIV-infected individuals develop fatal opportunistic infections as a result of HIV-induced deficiencies in the immune system. AIDS is one of the most important public health problems worldwide at the start of the 21st century.

PROPERTIES OF LENTIVIRUSES

Important properties of lentiviruses, members of a genus in the Retroviridae family, are summarized in Table 44–1.

Table 44–1. Important Properties of Lentiviruses (Nononcogenic Retroviruses).

Virion: Spherical, 80–100 nm in diameter, cylindric core
Genome: Single-stranded RNA, linear, positive-sense, 9–10 kb, diploid; genome more complex than that of oncogenic retroviruses, contains up to six additional replication genes
Proteins: Envelope glycoprotein undergoes antigenic variation; reverse transcriptase enzyme contained inside virions; protease required for production of infectious virus
Envelope: Present
Replication: Reverse transcriptase makes DNA copy from genomic RNA; provirus DNA is template for viral RNA. Genetic variability is common.
Maturation: Particles bud from plasma membrane
Outstanding characteristics:
Members are nononcogenic and may be cytocidal
Infect cells of the immune system
Proviruses remain permanently associated with cells
Viral expression is restricted in some cells in vivo
Cause slowly progressive, chronic diseases
Replication is usually species-specific
Group includes the causative agents of AIDS

Structure & Composition

HIV is a retrovirus, a member of the *Lentivirus* genus, and exhibits many of the physicochemical features typical of the family (see Chapter 43). The unique morphologic characteristic of HIV is a cylindrical nucleoid in the mature virion (Figure 44–1). The diagnostic bar-shaped nucleoid is visible in electron micrographs in those extracellular particles that happen to be sectioned at the appropriate angle.

Figure 44–1.

Electron micrographs of HIV-infected lymphocytes, showing a large accumulation of freshly produced virus at the cell surface (top, 46,450 x, bar = 100 nm); newly formed virus budding from cytoplasmic membrane (lower left, 49,000 x, bar = 100 nm); two virions about to be cast off from cell surface (lower right, 75,140 x, bar = 100 nm).

The RNA genome of lentiviruses is more complex than that of transforming retroviruses (Figure 44–2). The virus contains the four genes required for a replicating retrovirus—*gag, pro, pol,* and *env* (see Chapter 43). Up to six additional genes regulate viral expression and are important in disease pathogenesis in vivo. Although these auxiliary genes show little sequence homology among lentiviruses, their functions are conserved. (The feline and ungulate viruses encode fewer accessory genes.) One early-phase replication protein, the Tat protein, functions in "transactivation," whereby a viral gene product is involved in transcriptional activation of other viral genes. Transactivation by HIV is highly efficient and may contribute to the virulent nature of HIV infections. The Rev protein is required for the expression of viral structural proteins. Rev facilitates the export of unspliced viral transcripts from the nucleus; structural proteins are translated from unspliced mRNAs during the late phase of viral replication. The Nef protein increases viral infectivity, facilitates activation of resting T cells, and downregulates expression of CD4 and MHC class I. The *nef* gene is necessary for simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) to be pathogenic in monkeys. The Vpr protein increases transport of the viral preintegration complex into the nucleus and also arrests cells in the G2 phase of the cell cycle. The Vpu protein promotes CD4 degradation. The Vif protein promotes viral infectivity by suppressing the effects of an inhibitory cellular protein present in some human cells.

Figure 44–2.

HIV genome and virion structure. The HIV-1 genome is shown at the top. Viral proteins are synthesized as precursor polyproteins (Gag-Pol [Pr160], Gag [Pr55], and Env [gp160]), which are enzymatically processed to yield mature virion proteins. Gag-Pol and Gag are cleaved by the viral protease PR to produce the indicated smaller proteins. Env is cleaved by a cellular PR, producing SU gp120 and TM gp41. The placements of virion proteins in the virus particle are indicated by symbols (bottom of figure). Exact positions of the proteins PR, RT, and IN in the viral core are not known. HIV-2 and SIV lack the *vpu* gene but contain a *vpx* gene.

(Reproduced from Peterlin BM: Molecular biology of HIV. In: *The Viruses.* Vol 4: *The Retroviridae.* Levy JA [editor]. Plenum, 1995. Modified there from Luciw PA, Shacklett BL in: *HIV: Molecular Organization, Pathogenicity and Treatment.* Morrow WJW, Haigwood NL [editors]. Elsevier, 1993.)

The many different isolates of HIV are not identical but appear to comprise a spectrum of related viruses (see Classification). Heterogeneous populations of viral genomes are found in an infected individual. This heterogeneity reflects high rates of viral replication and the high error rate of the viral reverse transcriptase. The regions of greatest divergence among different isolates are localized to the *env* gene, which codes for the viral envelope proteins (Figure 44–3). The SU (gp120) product of the *env* gene contains binding domains responsible for virus attachment to the CD4 molecule and coreceptors, determines lymphocyte and macrophage tropisms, and carries the major antigenic determinants that elicit neutralizing antibodies. The HIV glycoprotein has five variable (V) regions that diverge among isolates, with the V3 region important in neutralization. The TM (gp41) *env* product contains both a transmembrane domain that anchors the glycoprotein in the viral envelope and a fusion domain that facilitates viral penetration into target cells. The divergence in the envelope of HIV complicates efforts to develop an effective vaccine for AIDS.

Figure 44–3.

HIV-1 envelope proteins. The gp160 precursor polypeptide is shown at the top. The gp120 subunit is on the outside of the cell, and gp41 is a transmembrane protein. Hypervariable domains in gp120 are designated V1 through V5; the positions of disulfide bonds are shown as connecting lines in the loops. Important regions in the gp41 subunit are the fusion domain at the amino terminal and the transmembrane domain (TM). Amino (NH_2) and carboxyl (COOH) terminals are labeled for both subunits.

(Reproduced from Peterlin BM: Molecular biology of HIV. In: *The Viruses.* Vol 4: *The Retroviridae.* Levy JA [editor]. Plenum, 1995. Modified there from Myers G et al: *Human Retroviruses and AIDS 1993: A Compilation and Analysis of Nucleic Acid and Amino Acid Sequences.* Theoretical Biology and Biophysics Group T-10, Los Alamos National Library, Los Alamos, New Mexico.)

Lentiviruses are completely exogenous viruses; in contrast to the transforming retroviruses, the lentiviral genome does not contain any conserved cellular genes (see Chapter 43). Individuals become infected by the introduction of virus from outside sources.

Classification

Lentiviruses have been isolated from many species (Table 44–2), including more than two dozen different African nonhuman primate species. There are two distinct types of human AIDS viruses: HIV-1 and HIV-2. The two types are distinguished on the basis of genome organization and phylogenetic (evolutionary) relationships with other primate lentiviruses. Sequence divergence between HIV-1 and HIV-2 exceeds 50%.

Table 44–2. Representative Members of the *Lentivirus* Genus.

Origin of Isolates	Virus	Diseases
Humans	HIV-1 (SIV_{cpz})[1] HIV-2 (SIV_{sm})	AIDS
Nonhuman primates[2]		
Chimpanzee	SIV_{cpz}	Simian AIDS
Sooty mangabey	SIV_{sm}	
Macaques[3]	SIV_{mac}	
African green monkey	SIV_{agm}	
Sykes monkey	SIV_{syk}	
Mandrill	SIV_{mnd}	
l'Hoest monkey[3]	SIV_{lhoest}	
Colobus monkey	SIV_{col}	
Nonprimates[4]		
Cat	Feline immunodeficiency virus	Feline AIDS
Cow	Bovine immunodeficiency virus	
Sheep	Visna/maedi virus	Lung, CNS disease
Horse	Equine infectious anemia virus	Anemia
Goat	Caprine arthritis encephalitis virus	Arthritis, encephalitis

[1] The origins of HIV-1 and HIV-2 were cross-species transmissions of SIV_{cpz} and SIV_{sm}, respectively.

[2] Disease not caused in host of origin by SIVs but requires transmission to a different species of monkey (rhesus are the most susceptible to disease). The Asian macaques (rhesus) show no evidence of SIV infection in the wild; SIV_{sm} was probably accidentally introduced to macaques in captivity.

[3] Indention indicates that the virus is in the same phylogenetic lineage as the one above it.

[4] Nonprimate lentiviruses cause disease in species of origin.

Based on *env* gene sequences, HIV-1 comprises three distinct virus groups (M, N, and O); the predominant

M group contains at least ten subtypes or "clades" (A–J). Recombinant forms of virus are also found in circulation in humans in different geographic regions. Similarly, five subtypes of HIV-2 (A–E) have been identified. Within each subtype there is extensive variability. The genetic clades do not seem to correspond to neutralization serotype groups, and there is currently no evidence that subtypes differ in biology or pathogenesis.

Numerous lentivirus isolates have been obtained from nonhuman primate species. The primate lentiviruses fall into six major phylogenetic lineages (Table 44–2). SIV from sooty mangabeys (a type of monkey in West Africa) and HIV-2 are considered to be variants of the same virus, as are chimpanzee isolates and HIV-1. The SIVs from African green monkeys, Sykes monkeys, mandrills, and colobus monkeys represent additional discrete lineages.

The organization of the genomes of primate lentiviruses (human and simian) is very similar. One difference is that HIV-1 and the chimpanzee virus carry a *vpu* gene, whereas HIV-2 and the SIV$_{sm}$ group have a *vpx* gene. Other SIV isolates have neither vpu nor vpx genes. The sequences of the *gag* and *pol* genes are highly conserved. There is significant divergence among the envelope glycoprotein genes; the sequences of the trans-membrane protein portion are more conserved than the external glycoprotein sequences (the protein component exposed on the exterior of the virus particle).

The SIVs appear to be nonpathogenic in their host species of origin (eg, chimpanzee, African green monkey, sooty mangabey), species known to be infected in their natural habitats. In contrast, rhesus monkeys are not infected naturally in the wild in Asia but are susceptible to induction of simian AIDS by various SIV isolates. The virus first recovered from captive rhesus monkeys (SIV$_{mac}$) is the sooty mangabey/HIV-2 strain.

The nonprimate lentiviruses establish persistent infections affecting various animal species. These viruses cause chronic debilitating diseases and sometimes immunodeficiency. The prototype agent, visna virus (also called maedi virus), causes neurologic symptoms or pneumonia in sheep in Iceland. Other viruses cause infectious anemia in horses and arthritis and encephalitis in goats. Feline and bovine lentiviruses may cause an immunodeficiency. Nonprimate lentiviruses are not known to infect any primates, including humans.

Origin of AIDS

HIV in humans originated from cross-species infections by simian viruses in rural Africa, probably due to direct human contact with infected primate blood. Current evidence is that the primate counterparts of HIV-1 and HIV-2 were transmitted to humans on multiple (at least seven) different occasions. Sequence evolution analyses place the introduction of SIV$_{cpz}$ into humans that gave rise to HIV-1 group M at about 1930. Presumably, such transmissions occurred repeatedly over the ages, but particular social, economic, and behavioral changes that occurred in the mid 20th century provided circumstances that allowed these virus infections to expand, become well-established in humans, and reach epidemic proportions.

Disinfection & Inactivation

HIV is completely inactivated (10^5 units of infectivity) by treatment for 10 minutes at room temperature with any of the following: 10% household bleach, 50% ethanol, 35% isopropanol, 1% Nonidet P40, 0.5% Lysol, 0.5% paraformaldehyde, or 0.3% hydrogen peroxide. The virus is also inactivated by extremes of pH (pH 1.0, pH 13.0). However, when HIV is present in clotted or unclotted blood in a needle or syringe, exposure to undiluted bleach for at least 30 seconds is necessary for inactivation.

The virus is not inactivated by 2.5% Tween 20. Although paraformaldehyde inactivates virus free in solution, it is not known if it penetrates tissues sufficiently to inactivate all virus that might be present in cultured cells or tissue specimens.

HIV is readily inactivated in liquids or 10% serum by heating at 56 °C for 10 minutes, but dried proteinaceous material affords marked protection. Lyophilized blood products would need to be heated at 68 °C for 72 hours to ensure inactivation of contaminating virus.

Animal Lentivirus Systems

Insights into the biologic characteristics of lentivirus infections have been gained from experimental infections, including sheep with visna virus (Table 44–2). Natural disease patterns vary among species, but certain common features are recognized.

(1) Viruses are transmitted by exchange of body fluids.

(2) Virus persists indefinitely in infected hosts, though it may be present at very low levels.

(3) Viruses have high mutation rates, and different mutants will be selected under different conditions (host factors, immune responses, tissue types). Infected hosts contain "swarms" of closely related viral genomes, known as quasi species.

(4) Virus infection progresses slowly through specific stages. Cells in the macrophage lineage play central roles in the infection. Lentiviruses differ from other retroviruses in that they can infect nondividing, terminally differentiated cells. However, those cells must be activated before viral replication ensues and progeny virus is produced. Virus is cell-associated in monocytes and macrophages, but only about one cell per million is infected. Monocytes carry the virus around the body in a form that the immune system cannot recognize, seeding other tissues. Lymphocyte-tropic strains of virus tend to cause highly productive infections, whereas replication of macrophage-tropic virus is restricted.

(5) It may take years for disease to develop. Infected hosts usually make antibodies, but they do not clear the infection, so virus persists lifelong. New antigenic variants periodically arise in infected hosts, with most mutations occurring in envelope glycoproteins. Clinical symptoms may develop at any time from 3 months to many years after infection. The exceptions to long incubation periods for lentivirus disease include AIDS in children, infectious anemia in horses, and encephalitis in young goats.

Host factors important in pathogenesis of disease include age (the young are at greater risk), stress (may trigger disease), genetics (certain breeds of animals are more susceptible), and concurrent infections (may exacerbate disease or facilitate virus transmission).

The diseases in ungulates (horses, cattle, sheep, and goats) are not complicated by opportunistic secondary infections. Equine infectious anemia virus can be spread among horses by blood-sucking horseflies, the only lentivirus known to be transmitted by an insect vector.

Simian lentiviruses share molecular and biologic characteristics with HIV and cause an AIDS-like disease in rhesus macaques. The SIV model is important for understanding disease pathogenesis and developing vaccine and treatment strategies.

Virus Receptors

All primate lentiviruses use as a receptor the CD4 molecule, which is expressed on macrophages and T lymphocytes. A second coreceptor in addition to CD4 is necessary for HIV-1 to gain entry to cells. The second receptor is required for fusion of the virus with the cell membrane (Figure 44–4). The virus first binds to CD4 and then to the coreceptor. These interactions cause conformational changes in the viral envelope, activating the gp41 fusion peptide and triggering membrane fusion. Chemokine receptors serve as HIV-1 second receptors. (Chemokines are soluble factors with chemoattractant and cytokine properties.) CCR5, the receptor for chemokines RANTES, MIP-1, and MIP-1, is the predominant coreceptor for macrophage-tropic strains of HIV-1, whereas CXCR4, the receptor for chemokine SDF-1, is the coreceptor for lymphocyte-tropic strains of HIV-1. The chemokine receptors used by HIV for cell entry are found on lymphocytes, macrophages, and thymocytes as well as on neurons and cells in the colon and cervix. Individuals who possess homozygous deletions in CCR5 and produce mutant forms of the protein may be protected from infection by HIV-1; mutations in the CCR5 gene promoter appear to delay disease progression. The requirement for a coreceptor for HIV fusion with cells provided new targets for antiviral therapeutic strategies, with the first HIV entry inhibitor licensed in the United States in 2003.

Figure 44–4.

HIV fusion with target cell. Gp120 binds to the CD4 molecule and then to the coreceptor (CCR5 or CXCR4). This causes a conformational change in the viral envelope proteins, affecting gp41 so that the fusion peptide penetrates the cell and leads to membrane fusion.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Binley J, Moore JP: The viral mousetrap. Nature 1997;387:346.)

A dendritic cell-specific lectin, DC-SIGN, appears to bind HIV-1 but not to mediate cell entry. Rather, it may facilitate transport of HIV by dendritic cells to lymphoid organs and enhance infection of T cells.

HIV INFECTIONS IN HUMANS

Pathogenesis & Pathology

OVERVIEW OF COURSE OF HIV INFECTION

The typical course of untreated HIV infection spans about a decade (Figure 44–5). Stages include the primary infection, dissemination of virus to lymphoid organs, clinical latency, elevated HIV expression, clinical disease, and death. The duration between primary infection and progression to clinical disease averages about 10 years. In untreated cases, death usually occurs within 2 years after the onset of clinical symptoms.

Figure 44–5.

Typical course of untreated HIV infection. During the early period after primary infection, there is widespread dissemination of virus and a sharp decrease in the number of CD4 T cells in peripheral blood. An immune response to HIV ensues, with a decrease in detectable viremia followed by a prolonged period of clinical latency. Sensitive assays for viral RNA show that virus is present in the plasma at all times. The CD4 T cell count continues to decrease during the following years until it reaches a critical level below which there is a substantial risk of opportunistic diseases.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Pantaleo G, Graziosi C, Fauci AS: New concepts in the immunopathogenesis of human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med 1993;328:327.)

Following primary infection, there is a 4- to 11-day period between mucosal infection and initial viremia; the viremia is detectable for about 8–12 weeks. Virus is widely disseminated throughout the body during this time, and the lymphoid organs become seeded. An acute mononucleosis-like syndrome develops in many patients (50–75%) 3–6 weeks after primary infection. There is a significant drop in numbers of circulating CD4 T cells at this early time. An immune response to HIV occurs 1 week to 3 months after infection, plasma viremia drops, and levels of CD4 cells rebound. However, the immune response is unable to clear the infection completely, and HIV-infected cells persist in the lymph nodes.

This period of clinical latency may last for as long as 10 years. During this time, there is a high level of ongoing viral replication. It is estimated that 10 billion HIV particles are produced and destroyed each day. The half-life of the virus in plasma is about 6 hours, and the virus life cycle (from the time of infection of a cell to the production of new progeny that infect the next cell) averages 2.6 days. CD4 T lymphocytes, major targets responsible for virus production, appear to have similar high turnover rates. Once productively infected, the half-life of a CD4 lymphocyte is about 1.6 days. Because of this rapid viral proliferation and the inherent error rate of the HIV reverse transcriptase, it is estimated that every nucleotide of the HIV genome probably mutates on a daily basis.

Eventually, the patient will develop constitutional symptoms and clinically apparent disease, such as opportunistic infections or neoplasms. Higher levels of virus are readily detectable in the plasma during the advanced stages of infection. HIV found in patients with late-stage disease is usually much more virulent and cytopathic than the strains of virus found early in infection. Often, a shift from monocyte-tropic or macrophage-tropic (M-tropic) strains of HIV-1 to lymphocyte-tropic (T-tropic) variants accompanies progression to AIDS.

CD4 T LYMPHOCYTES AND MEMORY CELLS

The cardinal feature of HIV infection is the depletion of T helper-inducer lymphocytes—the result of HIV replication in this population of lymphocytes as well as of the death of uninfected T cells by indirect mechanisms. The T cells express the CD4 phenotypic marker on their surface. The CD4 molecule is the major receptor for HIV; it has a high affinity for the viral envelope. The HIV coreceptor on lymphocytes is the CXCR4 chemokine receptor.

Early in infection, primary HIV isolates are M-tropic. However, all strains of HIV infect primary CD4 T lymphocytes (but not immortalized T cell lines in vitro). As the infection progresses, the dominant M-tropic viruses are replaced by T-tropic viruses. Laboratory adaptation of these primary isolates in immortalized T cell lines results in loss of ability to infect monocytes and macrophages.

The consequences of CD4 T cell dysfunction caused by HIV infection are devastating because the CD4 T lymphocyte plays a critical role in the human immune response. It is responsible directly or indirectly for induction of a wide array of lymphoid and nonlymphoid cell functions. These effects include activation of macrophages; induction of functions of cytotoxic T cells, natural killer cells, and B cells; and secretion of a variety of soluble factors that induce growth and differentiation of lymphoid cells and affect hematopoietic cells.

At any given time, only a small fraction of CD4 T cells are productively infected. Many infected T cells are killed, but a fraction survive and revert to a resting memory state. There is little or no virus gene expression in the memory cells, and they provide a long-term, stable latent reservoir for the virus. When exposed to antigen, the memory cells become activated and release infectious virus. The latent reservoir of infected memory cells decays very slowly, with a half-life of at least 43 months. It is unlikely that an HIV infection can be cured; if there were a million infected memory cells in the body, it would take about 70 years for them to decay.

MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES

Monocytes and macrophages play a major role in the dissemination and pathogenesis of HIV infection. Certain subsets of monocytes express the CD4 surface antigen and therefore bind to the envelope of HIV. The HIV coreceptor on monocytes and macrophages is the CCR5 chemokine receptor. In the brain, the major cell types infected with HIV appear to be the monocytes and macrophages, and this may have important consequences for the development of neuropsychiatric manifestations associated with HIV infection. Infected pulmonary alveolar macrophages may play a role in the interstitial pneumonitis seen in certain patients with AIDS.

Macrophage-tropic strains of HIV predominate early after infection, and these strains are responsible for initial infections even when the transmitting source contains both M-tropic and T-tropic viruses.

It is believed that monocytes and macrophages serve as major reservoirs for HIV in the body. Unlike the CD4 T lymphocyte, the monocyte is relatively refractory to the cytopathic effects of HIV, so that the virus not only can survive in this cell but can be transported to various organs in the body (such as the lungs and brain). Infected macrophages may continue to produce virus for a long period of time.

LYMPHOID ORGANS

Lymphoid organs play a central role in HIV infection. Lymphocytes in the peripheral blood represent only about 2% of the total lymphocyte pool, the remainder being located chiefly in lymphoid organs. It is in the lymphoid organs that specific immune responses are generated. The network of follicular dendritic cells in the germinal centers of lymph nodes traps antigens and stimulates an immune response. Throughout the course of untreated infection—even during the stage of clinical latency—HIV is actively replicating in lymphoid tissues. The microenvironment of the lymph node is ideal for the establishment and spread of HIV infection. Cytokines are released, activating a large pool of CD4 T cells that are highly susceptible to HIV infection. As the late stages of HIV disease progress, the architecture of the lymph nodes becomes disrupted.

NEURAL CELLS

Neurologic abnormalities are common in late stages of infection and are an AIDS-defining condition. Central nervous system disease occurs to varying degrees in 40–90% of patients. These include HIV encephalopathy, peripheral neuropathies, and—most serious—AIDS dementia complex. Both direct and indirect pathogenic mechanisms might explain the neuropsychiatric manifestations of HIV infection. The predominant cell types in the brain that are infected with HIV are monocytes and macrophages. Virus may enter the brain through infected monocytes and release cytokines that are toxic to neurons as well as chemotactic factors that lead to infiltration of the brain with inflammatory cells. HIV is present rarely, if at all, in neurons, oligodendrocytes, and astrocytes.

VIRAL COINFECTIONS

Activation signals are required for the establishment of a productive HIV infection. In the HIV-infected individual, a wide range of in vivo antigenic stimuli seem to serve as cellular activators. For example, active infection by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* substantially increases plasma viremia. Other concomitant viral infections—with EB virus, cytomegalovirus, herpes simplex virus, or hepatitis B virus—may serve as cofactors of AIDS. Hepatitis C virus coinfection, which occurs in 15–30% of HIV cases in the United States and often results in liver disease, is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in HIV-infected persons. There is also a high prevalence of cytomegalovirus infection in HIV-positive individuals.

Coinfections with two different strains of HIV can occur. There are documented cases of superinfection with a second strain in an HIV-infected individual, even in the presence of a strong CD8 T cell response to the first strain. HIV superinfection is considered to be a rare event.

Clinical Findings

Symptoms of acute HIV infection are nonspecific and include fatigue, rash, headache, nausea, and night sweats. AIDS is characterized by pronounced suppression of the immune system and development of a wide variety of severe opportunistic infections or unusual neoplasms (especially Kaposi's sarcoma). The more serious symptoms in adults are often preceded by a prodrome ("diarrhea and dwindling") that can include fatigue, malaise, weight loss, fever, shortness of breath, chronic diarrhea, white patches on the tongue (hairy leukoplakia, oral candidiasis), and lymphadenopathy. Disease symptoms in the gastrointestinal tract from the esophagus to the colon are a major cause of debility. With no treatment, the interval between primary infection with HIV and the first appearance of clinical disease is usually long in adults, averaging about 8–10 years. Death occurs about 2 years later.

PLASMA VIRAL LOAD

The amount of HIV in the blood (viral load) is of significant prognostic value. There are continual rounds of viral replication and cell killing in each patient, and the steady-state level of virus in the blood varies from individual to individual. This level reflects the total number of productively infected cells and their average burst size. It turns out that a single measurement of plasma viral load about 6 months after infection is able to predict the subsequent risk of development of AIDS in men several years later (Figure 44–6). However, more recent data suggest a gender difference in this parameter—in women, the viral load may be less predictive of progression to AIDS. Plasma HIV RNA levels can be determined using a variety of commercially available assays. The plasma viral load appears to be the best predictor of long-term clinical outcome, whereas CD4 lymphocyte counts are the best predictor of short-term risk of developing an opportunistic disease. Plasma viral load measurements are a critical element in assessing the effectiveness of antiretroviral drug therapy.

Figure 44–6.

Prognostic value of HIV-1 RNA levels in the plasma (viral load). The virologic setpoint predicts the long-term clinical outcome.

(Reproduced, with permission, from Ho DD: Viral counts count in HIV infection. Science 1996;272:1124.)

PEDIATRIC AIDS

The responses of infected neonates are different from those observed in HIV-infected adults. Pediatric AIDS—acquired from infected mothers—usually presents with clinical symptoms by 2 years of age; death follows in another 2 years. The neonate is particularly susceptible to the devastating effects of HIV because the immune system has not developed at the time of primary infection. Clinical findings may include lymphoid interstitial pneumonitis, pneumonia, severe oral candidiasis, encephalopathy, wasting, generalized lymphadenopathy, bacterial sepsis, hepatosplenomegaly, diarrhea, and growth retardation.

Children with perinatally acquired HIV-1 infection—*if untreated*—have a very poor prognosis. A high rate of disease progression occurs in the first few years of life. High levels of plasma HIV-1 load appear to predict infants at risk of rapid progression of disease. The pattern of viral replication in infants differs from that in adults. Viral RNA load levels are generally low at birth, suggesting infection acquired close to that time; RNA levels then rise rapidly within the first 2 months of life and are followed by a slow decline until the age of 24 months, suggesting that the immature immune system has difficulty containing the infection. A small percentage of infants (5%) display transient HIV infections, suggesting that some infants can clear the virus.

NEUROLOGIC DISEASE

Neurologic dysfunction occurs frequently in HIV-infected persons. Forty to 90 percent of patients have neurologic symptoms, and many are found during autopsy to have neuropathologic abnormalities.

Several distinct neurologic syndromes that occur frequently include subacute encephalitis, vacuolar myelopathy, aseptic meningitis, and peripheral neuropathy. AIDS dementia complex, the most common neurologic syndrome, occurs as a late manifestation in 25–65% of AIDS patients and is characterized by poor memory, inability to concentrate, apathy, psychomotor retardation, and behavioral changes. Other neurologic diseases associated with HIV infection include toxoplasmosis, cryptococcosis, primary lymphoma of the central nervous system, and JC virus-induced progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. Mean survival time from onset of severe dementia is usually less than 6 months.

Pediatric AIDS patients also display neurologic abnormalities. These include seizure disorders, progressive loss of behavioral developmental milestones, encephalopathy, attention deficit disorders, and developmental delays. HIV encephalopathy may occur in as many as 12% of children, usually accompanied by profound immune deficiency. Bacterial pathogens predominate in pediatric AIDS as the most common cause of meningitis.

As children born with HIV infection are living to adolescence due to antiretroviral therapy, many appear to be at high risk for psychiatric disorders. The most common problems are anxiety disorders.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTIONS

The predominant causes of morbidity and mortality among patients with late-stage HIV infection are opportunistic infections, ie, severe infections induced by agents that rarely cause serious disease in immune-competent individuals. Opportunistic infections usually do not occur in HIV-infected patients until CD4 T cell counts have dropped from the normal level of about 1000 cells/L to less than 200 cells/L. As treatments are developed for some common opportunistic pathogens and management of AIDS patients permits longer survivals, the spectrum of opportunistic infections changes.

The most common opportunistic infections in untreated AIDS patients include the following:

(1) Protozoa: *Toxoplasma gondii, Isospora belli, Cryptosporidium* species.

(2) Fungi: *Candida albicans, Cryptococcus neoformans, Coccidioides immitis, Histoplasma capsulatum, Pneumocystis jiroveci.*

(3) Bacteria: *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare, Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Listeria monocytogenes, Nocardia asteroides, Salmonella* species, *Streptococcus* species.

(4) Viruses: Cytomegalovirus, herpes simplex virus, varicella-zoster virus, adenovirus, polyomavirus, JC virus, hepatitis B virus, hepatitis C virus.

Herpesvirus infections are common in AIDS patients, and multiple herpesviruses are frequently detected being shed in saliva. Cytomegalovirus retinitis is the most common severe ocular complication of AIDS.

CANCER

AIDS patients exhibit a marked predisposition to the development of cancer, another consequence of immune suppression. AIDS-associated cancers tend to be those with a viral cofactor and include non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (both systemic and central nervous system types), Kaposi's sarcoma, cervical cancer, and anogenital cancers. EB viral DNA is found in the majority of B cell malignancies classified as Burkitt's lymphoma and those of the central nervous system (but is not found in most of the systemic lymphomas). Polyomavirus SV40 has been detected in some non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. Burkitt's lymphoma occurs 1000 times more commonly in AIDS patients than in the general population.

Kaposi's sarcoma is a vascular tumor thought to be of endothelial origin that appears in skin, mucous membranes, lymph nodes, and visceral organs. Before this type of malignancy was observed in AIDS patients, it was considered to be a very rare cancer. Kaposi's sarcoma is 20,000 times more common in untreated AIDS patients than in the general population. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus, or HHV8, appears to be causally related to the cancer (see Chapter 33). Cervical cancer is caused by high-risk papillomaviruses; the anogenital cancers also may arise as a result of coinfections with human papillomaviruses (see Chapter 43).

Some non-AIDS-defining cancers are also more common in people with HIV. These include skin cancer, Hodgkin's disease, and prostate cancer.

Effective antiretroviral drug therapy has resulted in a marked reduction in the occurrence of Kaposi's sarcomas but has had less of an effect on the incidence of non-Hodgkin's lymphomas in HIV-infected individuals.

Immunity

HIV-infected persons develop both humoral and cell-mediated responses against HIV-related antigens. Antibodies to a number of viral antigens develop soon after infection (Table 44–3).

Table 44–3. Major Gene Products of HIV that Are Useful in Diagnosis of Infection.

Gene Product[1]	Description
gp160[2]	Precursor of envelope glycoproteins
gp120[2]	Outer envelope glycoprotein of virion, SU[3]
p66	Reverse transcriptase and RNase H from polymerase gene product
p55	Precursor of core proteins, polyprotein from *gag* gene
p51	Reverse transcriptase, RT
gp41[2]	Trans-membrane envelope glycoprotein, TM
p32	Integrase, IN
p24[2]	Nucleocapsid core protein of virion, CA
p17	Matrix core protein of virion, MA

[1] Number refers to the approximate molecular mass of the protein in kilodaltons.

[2] Antibodies to these viral proteins are the most commonly detected.

[3] Two-letter abbreviation for viral protein.

Most infected individuals make neutralizing antibodies against HIV, directed against the envelope glycoprotein. However, the levels of neutralizing activity are low; many anti-envelope antibodies are nonneutralizing. It is believed that the dense glycosylation may inhibit binding of neutralizing antibody to the envelope protein. The envelope glycoprotein shows great sequence variability. This natural variation may allow the evolution of successive populations of resistant virus that escape recognition by existing neutralizing antibodies.

The neutralizing antibodies can be measured in vitro by inhibiting HIV infection of susceptible lymphocyte cell lines. Viral infection is quantified by (1) reverse transcriptase assay, which measures the enzyme activity of released HIV particles; (2) indirect immunofluorescence assay, which measures the percentage of infected cells; and (3) reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) or branched-chain DNA (bDNA) amplification assays that measure HIV nucleic acids.

Cellular responses develop that are directed against HIV proteins. Cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) recognize *env, pol, gag,* and *nef* gene products; this reactivity is mediated by major histocompatibility complex-restricted CD3–CD8 lymphocytes. The *env*-specific reactivity occurs in nearly all infected people and decreases with progression of disease. Natural killer (NK) cell activity has also been detected against HIV-1 gp120.

It is not clear which host responses are important in providing protection against HIV infection or development of disease. A problem confronting AIDS vaccine research is that the correlates of protective immunity are not known, including the relative importance of humoral and cell-mediated immune responses.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Evidence of infection by HIV can be detected in three ways: (1) virus isolation, (2) serologic determination of antiviral antibodies, and (3) measurement of viral nucleic acid or antigens.

VIRUS ISOLATION

HIV can be cultured from lymphocytes in peripheral blood (and occasionally from specimens from other sites). The numbers of circulating infected cells vary with the stage of disease (Figure 44–5). Higher titers of virus are found in the plasma and in peripheral blood cells of patients with AIDS as compared with asymptomatic individuals. The magnitude of plasma viremia appears to be a better correlate of the clinical stage of HIV infection than the presence of any antibodies (Figure 44–7). The most sensitive virus isolation technique is to cocultivate the test sample with uninfected, mitogen-stimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Primary isolates of HIV grow very slowly compared with laboratory-adapted strains. Viral growth is detected by testing culture supernatant fluids after about 7–14 days for viral reverse transcriptase activity or for virus-specific antigens (p24).

Figure 44–7.

Pattern of HIV antibody responses related to the course of HIV infection. (PBL, peripheral blood lymphocytes; CTL, cytotoxic T lymphocytes.)

(Reproduced, with permission, from Weiss RA: How does HIV cause AIDS? Science 1993;260:1273.)

The vast majority of HIV-1 antibody-positive persons will have virus that can be cultured from their blood cells. However, virus isolation techniques are time-consuming and laborious and are limited to research studies. PCR amplification techniques are more commonly used for detection of virus in clinical specimens.

SEROLOGY

Test kits are commercially available for measuring antibodies by enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA). If properly performed, these tests have a sensitivity and specificity exceeding 98%. When EIA-based antibody tests are used for screening populations with a low prevalence of HIV infections (eg, blood donors), a positive test in a serum sample must be confirmed by a repeat test. If the repeat EIA test is reactive, a confirmation test is performed to rule out false-positive EIA results. The most widely used confirmation assay is the Western blot technique, in which antibodies to HIV proteins of specific molecular weights can be detected. Antibodies to viral core protein p24 or envelope glycoproteins gp41, gp120, or gp160 are most commonly detected.

The response pattern against specific viral antigens changes over time as patients progress to AIDS. Antibodies to the envelope glycoproteins (gp41, gp120, gp160) are maintained, but those directed against the Gag proteins (p17, p24, p55) decline. The decline of anti-p24 may herald the beginning of clinical signs and other immunologic markers of progression (Figure 44–7).

Simple, rapid tests for detecting HIV antibodies are available for use in laboratories ill-equipped to perform

EIA tests and in settings where test results are desired with little delay. The simple tests can be performed on blood or oral fluid and are based on principles such as particle agglutination or immunodot reactions. The most recent developments are rapid tests that can detect HIV antibodies in whole blood specimens that require no processing. These tests can be performed outside the traditional laboratory setting.

Home testing kits are available. The procedure involves placing drops of blood from a finger prick on a specially treated card. The card is then mailed to a licensed laboratory for testing.

The mean time to seroconversion after HIV infection is 3–4 weeks. Most individuals will have detectable antibodies within 6–12 weeks after infection, whereas virtually all will be positive within 6 months. HIV infection for longer than 6 months without a detectable antibody response is very uncommon.

DETECTION OF VIRAL NUCLEIC ACID OR ANTIGENS

Amplification assays such as the RT-PCR, DNA PCR, and bDNA tests are commonly used to detect viral RNA in clinical specimens. The RT-PCR assay uses an enzymatic method to amplify HIV RNA; the bDNA assay amplifies viral RNA by sequential oligonucleotide hybridization steps. The tests can be quantitative when reference standards are used; appropriate positive and negative controls must be included with each test. These molecular-based tests are very sensitive and form the basis for plasma viral load determinations. HIV sequence heterogeneity may limit the sensitivity of these assays to detect HIV infections. The HIV RNA levels are important predictive markers of disease progression and valuable tools with which to monitor the effectiveness of antiviral therapies.

Early diagnosis of HIV infection in infants born to infected mothers can be accomplished using plasma HIV-1 RNA tests. The presence of maternal antibodies makes serologic tests uninformative.

Low levels of circulating HIV-1 p24 antigen can be detected in the plasma by EIA soon after infection. The antigen often becomes undetectable after antibodies develop (because the p24 protein is complexed with p24 antibodies) but may reappear late in the course of infection, indicating a poor prognosis.

Epidemiology

WORLDWIDE SPREAD OF AIDS

AIDS was first recognized in the United States in 1981 as a new disease entity in homosexual men. Twenty years later, AIDS had become a worldwide epidemic that continues to expand. The Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS estimated that by the end of 2005, a total of 39 million people worldwide were living with HIV/AIDS, the majority having been infected by heterosexual contact (Figure 44–8). It was estimated that in that year, 2.8 million people died of AIDS and that 4 million new infections with HIV occurred, including 500,000 babies infected perinatally. By the year 2005, the World Health Organization estimated that more than 25 million people worldwide had died of AIDS and that over 15 million children had been orphaned, 12 million of whom were living in sub-Saharan Africa.

Figure 44–8.

Adults and children estimated to be living with HIV/AIDS, by continent or region, as of December 2005. It is estimated that about 2.8 million people worldwide died of HIV/AIDS in 2005.

(Data from the Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS.)

The epidemic varies by geographic region. Based on 2005 data, sub-Saharan Africa had the highest number of HIV infections (Figure 44–8). In certain high-prevalence cities in Africa, as many as one of every three adults was infected with the virus. Infections were spreading also in southern and southeastern Asia (especially in India, China, and Russia). Because AIDS tends to strike young adults and workers in their prime, the AIDS epidemic is having devastating effects on social and economic structures in some countries.

Group M viruses are responsible for most HIV-1 infections worldwide, but subtype distributions vary. Subtype C predominates in southern Africa, subtype A in West Africa, and subtype B in the United States, Europe, and Australia. HIV-2 has remained localized primarily to West Africa.

The World Health Organization estimates that of the 4 million new HIV infections each year, 90% are occurring in developing countries. In those countries, AIDS is overwhelmingly a heterosexually transmitted disease, and there are about equal numbers of male and female cases.

It is hypothesized that the rapid dissemination of HIV globally in the latter part of the 20th century was fostered by massive migration of rural inhabitants to urban centers, coupled with international movement of infected individuals as a consequence of civil disturbances, tourism, and business travels.

UNITED STATES

The face of the AIDS epidemic has changed in the United States since 1981. At first, most of the cases occurred in homosexual men. Then the disease was identified in injecting drug users. By 2005, racial and ethnic minority communities were disproportionately affected, accounting for about two-thirds of reported HIV/AIDS cases. Heterosexual transmission was increasingly more common, and about one-quarter of new diagnoses were in women. Most heterosexually acquired AIDS cases were attributed to sexual contact with an injecting drug user or a partner with HIV infection.

By the end of 2005, over 1.5 million HIV/AIDS cases were estimated to have occurred (of which over 500,000 had resulted in death). Over 1 million persons are living with HIV/AIDS in the United States, and an estimated 40,000 new cases occur each year. The death rate decreased for the first time in 1996, reflecting the use of antiretroviral combination therapy and prevention of secondary opportunistic infections.

Pediatric AIDS increased as the number of HIV-infected women increased. It was estimated that 1650 newborns acquired the virus in 1991 in the United States. The numbers of new infections have been reduced dramatically by the development in 1994 of zidovudine antenatal, intrapartum, and neonatal therapy (see below). From transmission rates of 25–30% with no interventions, drug treatments have reduced transmission rates in the United States to less than 2%. There were only about 50 reported cases of pediatric AIDS in 2004. Mother-to-child transmission continues to occur because of undiagnosed HIV infection in the mother and lack of medical treatment.

The success in reducing perinatal HIV transmission in the United States has not been achieved in many poorer countries. Especially in sub-Saharan Africa, mother-to-child transmission rates remain high.

ROUTES OF TRANSMISSION

High titers of HIV are found in two body fluids—blood and semen. HIV is transmitted during sexual contact (including genital-oral sex), through parenteral exposure to contaminated blood or blood products, and from mother to child during the perinatal period. The presence of other sexually transmitted diseases such as syphilis, gonorrhea, or herpes simplex type 2 increases the risk of sexual HIV transmission as much as a hundredfold because the inflammation and sores facilitate the transfer of HIV across mucosal barriers. Asymptomatic virus-positive individuals can transmit the virus. Since the first description of AIDS, promiscuous homosexual activity has been recognized as a major risk factor for acquisition of the disease. The risk increases in proportion to the number of sexual encounters with different partners.

Transfusion of infectious blood or blood products is an effective route for viral transmission. For example, over 90% of hemophiliac recipients of contaminated clotting factor concentrates in the United States (before HIV was detected) developed antibodies to HIV. Injection users of illicit drugs are commonly infected through the use of contaminated needles. Injection drug use accounts for a substantial proportion of new AIDS cases.

Careful testing is necessary to ensure a safe blood supply. The World Health Organization has reported that voluntary unremunerated blood donation is far safer than paid donations. It was reported in 1996 that the risk of transfusion-transmitted HIV infection in the United States was very small (about 1:500,000).

Mother-to-infant transmission rates vary from 13% to 40% in untreated women. Infants can become infected in utero, during the birth process, or, more commonly, through breastfeeding. In the absence of breastfeeding, about 30% of infections occur in utero and 70% during delivery. Data indicate that from one-third to one-half of perinatal HIV infections in Africa are due to breastfeeding. Transmission during breastfeeding usually occurs early (by 6 months). High maternal viral loads are a risk factor for transmission.

Health care workers have been infected by HIV following a needlestick with contaminated blood. The numbers of infections are relatively few in comparison with the number of needlesticks that have occurred involving contaminated blood (estimated risk of transmission is about 0.3%). The risk of transmission is even lower after a mucous membrane exposure to infected blood (about 0.09%).

The routes of transmission (blood, sex, and birth) described above account for almost all HIV infections. There has been considerable concern that in rare circumstances other types of transmission may occur, such as through "casual" contact with HIV-infected persons or insect vectors, but there is no evidence of virus transmission under these casual conditions.

Prevention, Treatment, & Control

ANTIVIRAL DRUGS

A growing number of antiviral drugs are approved for treatment of HIV infections (see Chapter 30). Classes of drugs include both nucleoside and nonnucleoside inhibitors of the viral enzyme reverse transcriptase and inhibitors of the viral protease enzyme. The protease inhibitors are potent antiviral drugs because the protease activity is absolutely essential for production of infectious virus, and the viral enzyme is distinct from human cell proteases. The newest class of drugs—fusion inhibitors first approved in 2003—blocks virus entry into cells.

Therapy with combinations of antiretroviral drugs, referred to as highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), became available in 1996. It oftentimes can suppress viral replication to below limits of detection in plasma, decrease viral loads in lymphoid tissues, allow the recovery of immune responses to opportunistic pathogens, and prolong patient survival. However, HAART has failed to cure HIV-1 infections. The virus persists in reservoirs of long-lived, latently infected cells, including memory CD4 T cells. When HAART is discontinued or there is treatment failure, virus production rebounds.

Whereas monotherapy usually results in the rapid emergence of drug-resistant mutants of HIV, combination therapy, which targets multiple steps in virus replication, usually delays selection of HIV mutants. However, mutants that arise which are resistant to one protease inhibitor are often resistant to other protease inhibitors as well.

Transmission of drug-resistant variants may affect future therapy options. In 2004 and 2005, treatment-naïve patients with newly diagnosed HIV infections were found to carry virus with drug-resistant mutations in 8% and 10% of cases in the United States and Europe, respectively. Among perinatally infected infants in the United States in 2002, 19% had virus with drug-resistant mutations.

Results with combination therapy have been successful and have turned HIV infection into a chronic, treatable disease. Prolonged suppression of viral replication can be achieved, along with restoration of immune function. However, additional drug development is needed. Current drug regimens are often complicated and expensive, cannot be tolerated by all patients, have toxic side effects (including lipodystrophy), and lead to a number of treatment failures. The first once-daily pill that combines three HIV drugs was approved in the United States in 2006. The majority of infected persons worldwide do not have access to any HIV drugs.

Zidovudine (azidothymidine; AZT) can significantly reduce the transmission of HIV from mother to infant. A regimen of AZT therapy of the mother during pregnancy and during the birth process and of the baby after birth reduced the risk of perinatal transmission by 65–75% (from about 25% to less than 2%). This treatment decreases vertical transmission at all levels of maternal viral load. A shorter course of AZT given to infected mothers or a simple nevirapine regimen has been shown to reduce transmission by 50% and to be safe for use in developing nations. However, the high rate of HIV transmission by breastfeeding can undermine the benefits of maternal perinatal drug treatment.

VACCINES AGAINST HIV

A safe and effective vaccine offers the best hope of controlling the worldwide AIDS epidemic. As of 2006, many candidate vaccines are under development and are in different stages of testing. Viral vaccines are typically preventive, ie, given to uninfected individuals to prevent either infection or disease. Consideration is also being given to the possibility of therapeutic HIV vaccines, whereby HIV-infected individuals would be treated to boost anti-HIV immune responses, decrease the numbers of virus-infected cells, or delay the onset of AIDS. Vaccine development is difficult because HIV mutates rapidly, is not expressed in all cells that are infected, and is not completely cleared by the host immune response after primary infection. HIV isolates show a marked variation, especially in the envelope antigens—variability that probably promotes the emergence of neutralization-resistant mutants. As the correlates of protective immunity are not known, it is unclear what immune responses a vaccine should elicit.

Because of the safety concerns, vaccines based on attenuated or inactivated HIV or on simian isolates are viewed with apprehension. Recombinant viral proteins—especially those of the envelope glycoproteins—are likely candidates, whether delivered with adjuvants or with heterologous viral vectors. Many novel vaccination methods are also under investigation. Gene therapy approaches are being developed that are designed to achieve "intracellular immunization," ie, to genetically alter target cells in such a way as to make them resistant to HIV.

A large hurdle for vaccine development is the lack of an appropriate animal model for HIV. Chimpanzees are the only animals that are susceptible to HIV. Not only is the supply scarce, but chimpanzees develop only viremia and antibodies; they do not develop immunodeficiency. The SIV-macaque model of simian AIDS does develop disease and is useful for vaccine development studies.

CONTROL MEASURES

Without control by drugs or vaccines, the only way to avoid epidemic spread of HIV is to maintain a lifestyle that minimizes or eliminates the high-risk factors discussed above. No cases have been documented to result from such common exposures as sneezing, coughing, sharing meals, or other casual contacts.

Because HIV may be transmitted in blood, all donor blood should be tested for antibody. Properly conducted antibody tests appear to detect almost all HIV-1 and HIV-2 carriers. In settings with widespread screening of blood donors for viral exposure and the rejection of contaminated blood, transmission by blood transfusion has virtually disappeared.

Public health authorities have recommended that persons reported to have an HIV infection be given the following information and advice:

(1) Almost all persons will remain infected for life and will develop the disease.

(2) Although asymptomatic, such individuals may transmit HIV to others. Regular medical evaluation and follow-up are advised.

(3) Infected persons should refrain from donating blood, plasma, body organs, other tissues, or sperm.

(4) There is a risk of infecting others by sexual intercourse (vaginal or anal), by oral-genital contact, or by sharing of needles. The consistent and proper use of condoms can reduce transmission of the virus, though protection is not absolute.

(5) Toothbrushes, razors, and other implements that could become contaminated with blood should not be shared.

(6) Seropositive women or women with seropositive sexual partners are themselves at increased risk of acquiring AIDS. If they become pregnant, their offspring also are at high risk of acquiring AIDS.

(7) After accidents that result in bleeding, contaminated surfaces should be cleaned with household bleach freshly diluted 1:10 in water.

(8) Devices that have punctured the skin—eg, hypodermic and acupuncture needles—should be steam-sterilized by autoclaving before reuse or should be safely discarded. Dental instruments should be heat-sterilized between patients. Whenever possible, disposable needles and equipment should be used.

(9) When seeking medical or dental care for intercurrent illness, infected persons should inform those responsible for their care that they are seropositive, so that appropriate evaluation can be undertaken and precautions taken to prevent transmission to others.

(10) Testing for HIV antibody should be offered to persons who may have been infected as a result of their contact with seropositive individuals (eg, sexual partners, persons with whom needles have been shared,

infants born to seropositive mothers).

(11) Most persons with a positive test for HIV do not need to consider a change in employment unless their work involves significant potential for exposing others to their blood or other body fluids. There is no evidence of HIV transmission by food handling.

(12) Seropositive persons in the health care professions who perform invasive procedures or have skin lesions should take precautions similar to those recommended for hepatitis B carriers to protect patients from the risk of infection.

(13) Children with positive tests should be allowed to attend school, since casual person-to-person contact of schoolchildren poses no risk. However, a more restricted environment is advisable for preschool children or children who lack control of their body secretions, display biting behavior, or have oozing lesions.

HEALTH EDUCATION

Without a vaccine or treatment, the prevention of cases of AIDS relies on the success of education projects involving behavioral changes. The health education messages for the general public have been summarized as follows: (1) Any sexual intercourse (outside of mutually monogamous HIV antibody-negative relationships) should be protected by a condom. (2) Do not share unsterile needles or syringes. (3) All women who have been potentially exposed should seek HIV antibody testing before becoming pregnant and, if the test is positive, should consider avoiding pregnancy. (4) HIV-infected mothers should avoid breast feeding to reduce transmission of the virus to their children if safe alternative feeding options are available.

REFERENCES

Apetrei C, Robertson DL, Marx PA: The history of SIVs and AIDS: Epidemiology, phylogeny, and biology of isolates from naturally SIV infected non-human primates (NHP) in Africa. Front in Biosci 2004;9:225. [PMID: 14766362]

Desrosiers RC: Nonhuman lentiviruses. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Dybul M et al (editors): Guidelines for using antiretroviral agents among HIV-infected adults and adolescents: The Panel on Clinical Practices for HIV. Ann Intern Med 2002;137:381. [PMID: 12617573]

Freed EO, Martin MA: HIVs and their replication. In: *Fields Virology,* 4th ed. Knipe DM et al (editors). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.

Hahn BH et al: AIDS as a zoonosis: Scientific and public health implications. Science 2000;287:607. [PMID: 10649986]

Moore JP, Doms RW: The entry of entry inhibitors: A fusion of science and medicine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100: 10598. [PMID: 12960367]

Patrick MK, Johnston JB, Power C: Lentiviral neuropathogenesis: Comparative neuroinvasion, neurotropism, neurovirulence, and host neurosusceptibility. J Virol 2002;76:7923. [PMID: 12133996]

Paul ME, Schearer WT: Pediatric human immunodeficiency virus infection. In: *Pediatric Allergy: Principles and Practice*. Leung DYM, Sampson HA, Geha RS, Szefler SJ (editors). Mosby, 2003.

Schreiber GB et al: The risk of transfusion-transmitted viral infections. N Engl J Med 1996;334:1685. [PMID: 8637512]

Sepkowitz KA: AIDS—the first 20 years. N Engl J Med 2001;344: 1764.

Twenty-five years of HIV/AIDS—United States, 1981–2006. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2006;55 (No. 21).

U.S. Public Health Service guidelines for testing and counseling blood and plasma donors for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 antigen. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1996;45 (RR-2).

Updated U.S. Public Health Service guidelines for the management of occupational exposures to HIV and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2005;54(RR-9).

GLOSSARY

Conidia: Asexual reproductive structures (mitospores) produced either from the transformation of a vegetative yeast or hyphal cell or from a specialized conidiogenous cell, which may be simple or complex and elaborate. Conidia may be formed on specialized hyphae, termed **conidiophores**. **Microconidia** are small, and **macroconidia** are large or multicellular.

Arthroconidia (arthrospores): Conidia that result from the fragmentation of hyphal cells (eg, *Coccidioides immitis* , Figure 4515).

Blastoconidia (blastospores): Conidial formation through a budding process (eg, yeasts, Figure 45-1; *Cladosporium* , Figure 457).

Chlamydospores (chlamydoconidia): Large, thick-walled, usually spherical conidia produced from terminal or intercalary hyphal cells (*Candida albicans* , Figure 452).

Phialoconidia: Conidia that are produced by a "vase-shaped" conidiogenous cell termed a **phialide** (eg, *Aspergillus fumigatus* , Figure 459).

Dematiaceous fungi: Fungi whose cell walls contain melanin, which imparts a brown to black pigment.

Dimorphic fungi: Fungi that have two growth forms, such as a mold and a yeast, which develop under different growth conditions (eg, *Blastomyces dermatitidis* forms hyphae in vitro and yeasts in tissue).

Hyphae: Tubular, branching filaments (210 m in width) of fungal cells, the mold form of growth. Most hyphal cells are separated by porous cross-walls or **septa**, but the zygomycetous hyphae are characteristically sparsely septate. Vegetative or substrate hyphae anchor the colony and absorb nutrients. Aerial hyphae project above the colony and bear the reproductive structures.

Imperfect fungi: Fungi that lack sexual reproduction; they are represented only by an **anamorph**, the mitotic or asexual reproductive state. They are identified on the basis of asexual reproductive structures (ie, mitospores).

Mold: Hyphal or mycelial colony or form of growth.

Mycelium: Mass or mat of hyphae, mold colony.

Perfect fungi: Fungi that are capable of sexual reproduction, which is the **teleomorph**.

Pseudohyphae: Chains of elongated buds or blastoconidia.

Septum: Hyphal cross-wall, typically perforated.

Sporangiospores: Asexual structures characteristic of zygomycetes; they are mitotic spores produced within an enclosed sporangium, often supported by one sporangiophore.

Spore: A specialized structure with enhanced survival value, such as resistance to adverse conditions or features that promote dispersion. Spores may result from asexual (eg, conidia, sporangiospores) or sexual (see below) reproduction. During sexual reproduction, haploid cells of compatible strains mate through a process of plasmogamy, karyogamy, and meiosis.

Ascospores: Following meiosis, four to eight meiospores form within an ascus (Figure 451).

Basidiospores: Following meiosis, four meiospores usually form on the surface of a specialized structure, a club-shaped basidium.

Zygospores: Following meiosis, a large, thick-walled zygospore develops.

Yeasts: Unicellular, spherical to ellipsoid (315 m) fungal cells that usually reproduce by budding.

INTRODUCTION

Mycology is the study of fungi. Approximately 80,000 species of fungi have been described, but fewer than 400 are medically important, and less than 50 species cause more than 90% of the fungal infections of humans and other animals. Rather, most species of fungi are beneficial to humankind. They reside in nature and are essential in breaking down and recycling organic matter. Some fungi greatly enhance our quality of life by contributing to the production of food and spirits, including cheese, bread, and beer. Other fungi have served medicine by providing useful bioactive secondary metabolites such as antibiotics (eg, penicillin) and immunosuppressive drugs (eg, cyclosporine). Fungi have been exploited by geneticists and molecular biologists as model systems for the investigation of a variety of eukaryotic processes. Fungi exert their greatest economic impact as phytopathogens; the agricultural industry sustains huge crop losses every year as a result of fungal diseases of rice, corn, grains, and other plants.

All fungi are eukaryotic organisms, and each fungal cell has at least one nucleus and nuclear membrane, endoplasmic reticulum, mitochondria, and secretory apparatus. Most fungi are obligate or facultative aerobes. They are chemotrophic, secreting enzymes that degrade a wide variety of organic substrates into soluble nutrients which are then passively absorbed or taken into the cell by active transport.

Fungal infections are mycoses. Most pathogenic fungi are exogenous, their natural habitats being water, soil, and organic debris. The mycoses with the highest incidencecandidiasis and dermatophytosisare caused by fungi that are part of the normal microbial flora or highly adapted to survival on the human host. For convenience, mycoses may be classified as superficial, cutaneous, subcutaneous, systemic, and opportunistic (Table 451). Grouping mycoses in these categories reflects their usual portal of entry and initial site of involvement. However, there is considerable overlap, since systemic mycoses can have subcutaneous manifestations and vice versa. Most patients who develop opportunistic infections have serious underlying diseases and compromised host defenses. But primary systemic mycoses also occur in such patients, and the opportunists may also infect immunocompetent individuals. During infection, most patients develop significant cellular and humoral immune responses to the fungal antigens.

Table 451. The Major Mycoses and Causative Fungi.

Superficial
Malassezia species
Pityriasis versicolor
Hortaea werneckii
Tinea nigra

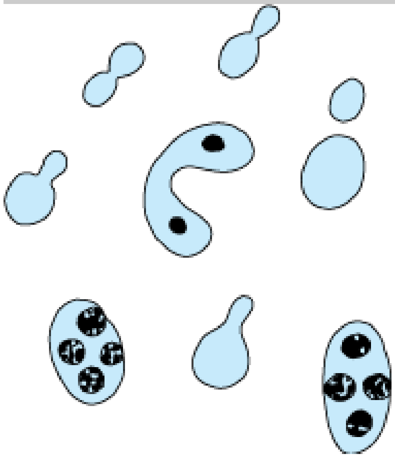
Type of Mycosis	Causative Fungal Agents	Mycosis
	Trichosporon species	White piedra
	Piedraia hortae	Black piedra
Cutaneous	*Microsporum* species, *Trichophyton* species, and *Epidermophyton floccosum*	Dermatophytosis
	Candida albicans and other *Candida* species	Candidiasis of skin, mucosa, or nails
Subcutaneous	*Sporothrix schenckii*	Sporotrichosis
	Phialophora verrucosa, Fonsecaea pedrosoi, others	Chromoblastomycosis
	Pseudallescheria boydii, Madurella mycetomatis, others	Mycetoma
	Exophiala, Bipolaris, Exserohilum, and others	Phaeohyphomycosis
Endemic (primary, systemic)	*Coccidioides immitis, C posadasii*	Coccidioidomycosis
	Histoplasma capsulatum	Histoplasmosis
	Blastomyces dermatitidis	Blastomycosis
	Paracoccidioides brasiliensis	Paracoccidioidomycosis
Opportunistic	*Candida albicans* and other *Candida* species	Systemic candidiasis
	Cryptococcus neoformans	Cryptococcosis
	Aspergillus fumigatus and other *Aspergillus* species	Aspergillosis
	Species of *Rhizopus, Absidia, Mucor,* and other zygomycetes	Mucormycosis (zygomycosis)
	Penicillium marneffei	Penicilliosis

As medical advances have significantly prolonged the survival of patients with cancer, AIDS, and stem cell or organ transplants, the incidence of opportunistic mycoses has increased dramatically. Pathogenic fungi do not produce potent toxins, and the mechanisms of fungal pathogenicity are complex and polygenic. Most mycoses are difficult to treat. Because fungi are eukaryotes, they share numerous homologous genes and gene products with their human hosts. Consequently, there are few unique targets for chemotherapy and effective antibiotics. Fortunately, there is growing interest in medically significant fungi and in the search for virulence factors and potential therapeutic targets.

GENERAL PROPERTIES & CLASSIFICATION OF FUNGI

As indicated in Chapter 1, fungi grow in two basic forms, as yeasts and molds (or moulds). Growth in the mold form occurs by production of multicellular filamentous colonies. These colonies consist of branching cylindric tubules called hyphae, varying in diameter from 2 µm to 10 µm. The mass of intertwined hyphae that accumulates during active growth is a mycelium. Some hyphae are divided into cells by cross-walls or septa, typically forming at regular intervals during hyphal growth. One group of medically important molds, the zygomycetes, produces hyphae that are rarely septated. Hyphae that penetrate the supporting medium and absorb nutrients are the vegetative or substrate hyphae. In contrast, aerial hyphae project above the surface of the mycelium and usually bear the reproductive structures of the mold. Under standardized growth conditions in the laboratory, molds produce colonies with characteristic features such as rates of growth, texture, and pigmentation. The genusif not the speciesof most clinical molds isolated can be determined by microscopic examination of the ontogeny and morphology of their asexual reproductive spores, or conidia. (See Figures 45-1, 45-2, 45-3, 45-4, 45-5, 45-6, 45-7, 45-8, and 45-9.)

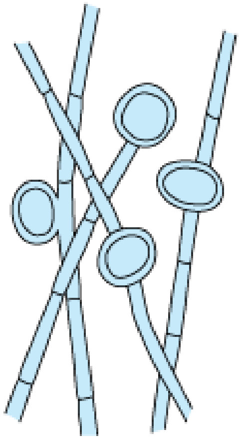
Figure 451.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Saccharomyces . Budding yeast cells or blastoconidia. Conjugating blastoconidia. Asci containing ascospores.

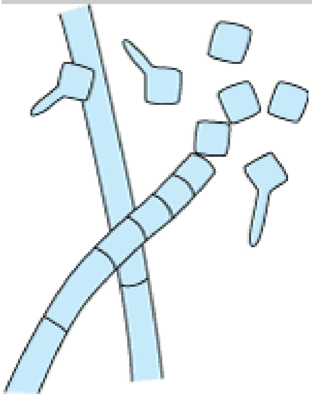
Figure 452.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Terminal and intercalary chlamydoconidia (chlamydospores).

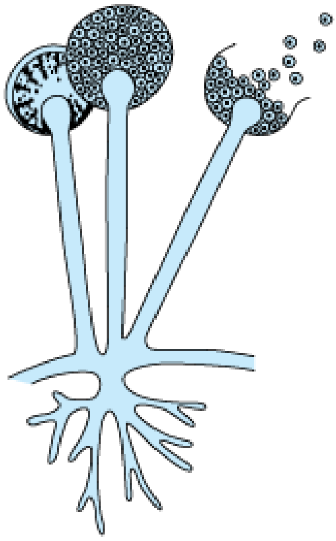
Figure 453.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Geotrichum . Arthroconidia (arthrospore) formation. Germinating arthroconidia.

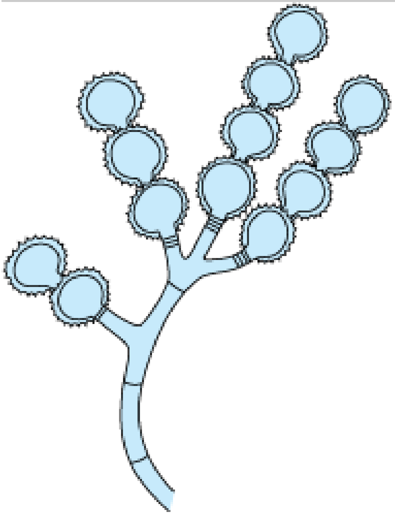
Figure 454.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Rhizopus . Developing sporangia, sporangiospores, and rhizoids.

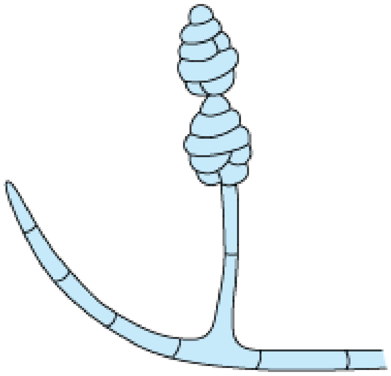
Figure 455.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Scopulariopsis . Conidiophores bear annelides that produce chains of conidia. Terminal conidium is oldest.

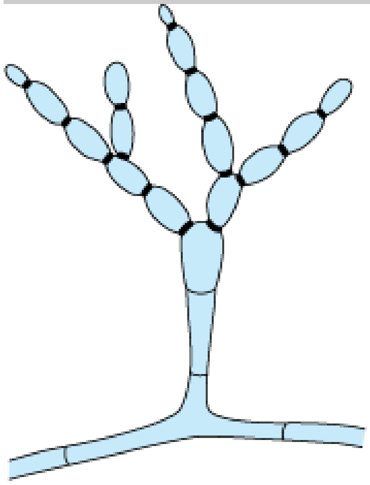
Figure 456.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Alternaria . Dematiaceous chains of multicellular macroconidia. Terminal conidium is youngest.

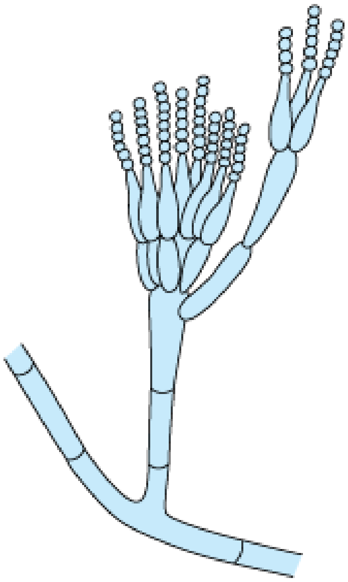
Figure 457.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Cladosporium . Chains of blastoconidia. Terminal conidium is youngest and has budded from subterminal conidium.

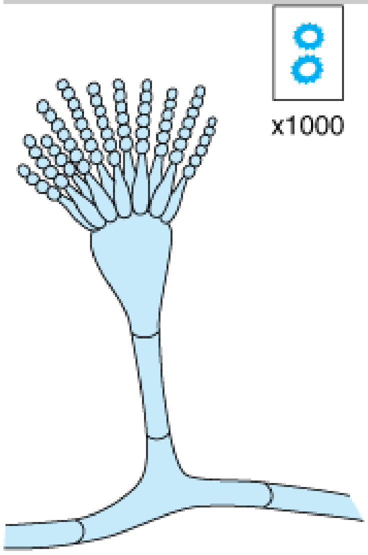
Figure 458.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Penicillium . Chains of conidia are produced by phialides, which are supported by branched conidiophores. Terminal conidium is oldest.

Figure 459.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Aspergillus fumigatus. Phialides form on top of swollen vesicle at the end of a long conidiophore. Terminal conidium is oldest. Mature conidia have rough walls.

Yeasts are single cells, usually spherical to ellipsoid in shape and varying in diameter from 3 μm to 15 μm. Most yeasts reproduce by budding. Some species produce buds that characteristically fail to detach and become elongated; continuation of the budding process then produces a chain of elongated yeast cells called pseudohyphae. Yeast colonies are usually soft, opaque, 13 mm in size, and cream-colored. Because the colonies and microscopic morphology of many yeasts are quite similar, yeast species are identified on the basis of physiologic tests and a few key morphologic differences. Some species of fungi are dimorphic and capable of growth as a yeast or mold depending on environmental conditions.

All fungi have an essential rigid cell wall that determines their shape. Cell walls are composed largely of carbohydrate layerslong chains of polysaccharidesas well as glycoproteins and lipids. During infection, fungal cell walls have important pathobiologic properties. The surface components of the cell wall mediate attachment of the fungus to host cells. Cell wall polysaccharides may activate the complement cascade and provoke an inflammatory reaction; they are poorly degraded by the host and can be detected with special stains. Cell walls release immunodominant antigens that may elicit cellular immune responses and diagnostic antibodies. Some yeasts and molds have melanized cell walls, imparting a brown or black pigment. Such fungi are dematiaceous. In several studies, melanin has been associated with virulence.

In addition to their vegetative growth as yeasts or molds, fungi can produce spores to enhance their survival. Spores can be readily dispersed, are more resistant to adverse conditions, and can germinate when conditions for growth are favorable. Spores can derive from asexual or sexual reproductionthe anamorphic and teleomorphic states, respectively. Asexual spores are mitotic progeny (ie, mitospores) and genetically identical. The medical fungi produce two major types of asexual spores, conidia, and, in the zygomycetes, sporangiospores. Informative features of spores include their ontogeny (some molds produce complex conidiogenic structures) as well as their morphology (size, shape, texture, color, and unicellularity or multicellularity). In some fungi, vegetative cells may transform into conidia (eg, arthroconidia, chlamydospores). In others, conidia are produced by a conidiogenous cell, such as a phialide, which itself may be attached to a specialized hypha called a conidiophore. In the zygomycetes, sporangiospores result from mitotic replication and spore production within a sac-like structure called a sporangium, which is supported by a sporangiophore.

Classification

The fungi are classified in four phyla: Chytridiomycota, Zygomycota, Ascomycota, and Basidiomycota. The largest phylum is the Ascomycota (or ascomycetes), which includes more than 60% of the known fungi and about 85% of the human pathogens. The remaining pathogenic fungi are zygomycetes or basidiomycetes. A fungal species is assigned to a phylum, as well as the appropriate Class, Order, and Family, based on its mode of sexual reproduction, phenotypic properties (eg, morphology and physiology), and phylogenetic relationships. The latter methods are used to classify anamorphic or asexual species. Sexual reproduction typically occurs when mating-compatible strains of a species are stimulated by pheromones to undergo plasmogamy, nuclear fusion, and meiosis, resulting in the exchange of genetic information. Asexual isolates and their spores reproduce clonally. Many species have been given different names that reflect their sexual (teleomorphic) and asexual (anamorphic) reproductive forms.

ZYGOMYCOTA (ZYGOMYCETES)

Sexual reproduction results in a zygospore; asexual reproduction occurs via sporangia. Vegetative hyphae are sparsely septate. Examples: *Rhizopus, Absidia, Mucor, Pilobolus* .

ASCOMYCOTA (ASCOMYCETES)

Sexual reproduction involves a sac or ascus in which karyogamy and meiosis occur, producing ascospores. Asexual reproduction is via conidia. Molds have septate hyphae. Examples: *Ajellomyces* (anamorphic genera, *Blastomyces* and *Histoplasma*), *Arthroderma* (anamorphic genera, *Microsporum* and *Trichophyton*), *Coccidioides* , and yeasts (*Saccharomyces* and *Candida*).

BASIDIOMYCOTA (BASIDOMYCETES)

Sexual reproduction results in four progeny basidiospores supported by a club-shaped basidium. Hyphae have complex septa. Examples: Mushrooms, *Filobasidiella neoformans* (anamorph, *Cryptococcus neoformans*).

GROWTH & ISOLATION OF FUNGI

Most fungi occur in nature and grow readily on simple sources of nitrogen and carbohydrate. The traditional mycological medium, Sabouraud's agar, which contains glucose and modified peptone (pH 7.0), has been used because it does not readily support the growth of bacteria. The morphologic characteristics of fungi used for identification have been described from growth on Sabouraud's agar. However, other media, such as inhibitory mold agar, have facilitated the recovery of fungi from clinical specimens. To culture medical fungi from nonsterile specimens, antibacterial antibiotics (eg, gentamicin, chloramphenicol) and cycloheximide are added to the media to inhibit bacteria and saprophytic molds, respectively. The specimens used for isolation of fungi and other media used to isolate them are discussed in Chapter 47.

*Associate Professor, Department of Molecular Genetics and Microbiology, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, North Carolina.

SUPERFICIAL MYCOSES

PITYRIASIS VERSICOLOR

Pityriasis versicolor is a chronic mild superficial infection of the stratum corneum caused by *Malassezia globosa, M restricta,* and other members of the *M furfur* complex. Invasion of the cornified skin and the host responses are both minimal. Discrete, serpentine, hyper- or hypopigmented maculae occur on the skin, usually on the chest, upper back, arms, or abdomen. The lesions are chronic and occur as macular patches of discolored skin that may enlarge and coalesce, but scaling, inflammation, and irritation are minimal. Indeed, this common affliction is largely a cosmetic problem.

Malassezia species are lipophilic yeasts, and most require lipid in the medium for growth. The diagnosis is confirmed by direct microscopic examination of scrapings of infected skin, treated with 1020% KOH or stained with calcofluor white. Short unbranched hyphae and spherical cells are observed. The lesions also fluoresce under Wood's lamp. Pityriasis versicolor is treated with daily applications of selenium sulfide. Topical or oral azoles are also effective. Rarely, Malassezia may cause an opportunistic fungemia in patientsusually infantsreceiving total parenteral nutrition, as a result of contamination of the lipid emulsion. In most cases, the fungemia is transient and corrected by replacing the fluid and intravenous catheter. Some individuals develop folliculitis due to Malassezia. Species of malassezia are considered part of the microbial flora and can be isolated from normal skin and scalp. They have been implicated as a cause of or contributor to seborrheic dermatitis, or dandruff. This hypothesis is supported by the observation that many cases are alleviated by treatment with ketoconazole.

TINEA NIGRA

Tinea nigra (or tinea nigra palmaris) is a superficial chronic and asymptomatic infection of the stratum corneum caused by the dematiaceous fungus *Hortaea (Exophiala) werneckii.* This condition is more prevalent in warm coastal regions and among young women. The lesions appear as a dark (brown to black) discoloration, often on the palm. Microscopic examination of skin scrapings from the periphery of the lesion will reveal branched, septate hyphae and budding yeast cells with melaninized cell walls. Tinea nigra will respond to treatment with keratolytic solutions, salicylic acid, or azole antifungal drugs.

PIEDRA

Black piedra is a nodular infection of the hair shaft caused by *Piedraia hortai.* White piedra, due to infection with *Trichosporon* species, presents as larger, softer, yellowish nodules on the hairs. Axillary, pubic, beard, and scalp hair may be infected. Treatment for both types consists of removal of hair and application of a topical antifungal agent. Piedra is endemic in tropical underdeveloped countries.

CUTANEOUS MYCOSES

Cutaneous mycoses are caused by fungi that infect only the superficial keratinized tissue (skin, hair, and nails). The most important of these are the dermatophytes, a group of about 40 related fungi that belong to three genera: *Microsporum, Trichophyton,* and *Epidermophyton* . Dermatophytes are probably restricted to the nonviable skin because most are unable to grow at 37 C or in the presence of serum. Dermatophytoses are among the most prevalent infections in the world. Although they can be persistent and troublesome, they are not debilitating or life-threateningyet millions of dollars are expended annually in their treatment. Being superficial, dermatophyte (ringworm) infections have been recognized since antiquity. In skin they are diagnosed by the presence of hyaline, septate, branching hyphae or chains of arthroconidia. In culture, the many species are closely related and often difficult to identify. They are speciated on the basis of subtle differences in the appearance of the colonies and microscopic morphology as well as a few vitamin requirements. Despite their similarities in morphology, nutritional requirements, surface antigens, and other features, many species have developed keratinases, elastases, and other enzymes that enable them to be quite host-specific. For some species of dermatophytes, a sexual reproductive state has been discovered, and all dermatophytes with a sexual form produce ascospores and belong to the teleomorphic genus *Arthroderma* .

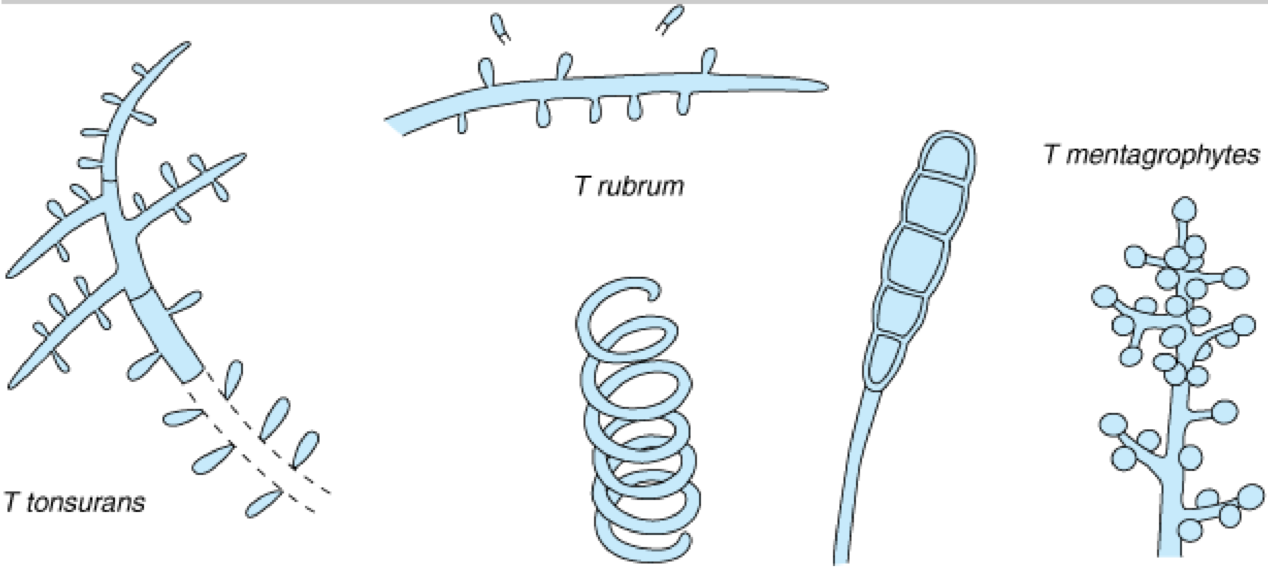
Dermatophytes are classified as geophilic, zoophilic, or anthropophilic depending on whether their usual habitat is soil, animals, or humans. Several dermatophytes that normally reside in soil or are associated with particular animal species are still able to cause human infections. In general, as a species evolves from habitation in soil to a specific animal or human host, it loses the ability to produce asexual conidia and to reproduce sexually. Anthropophilic species, which cause the greatest number of human infections, cause relatively mild and chronic infections in humans, produce few conidia in culture, and may be difficult to eradicate. Conversely, geophilic and zoophilic dermatophytes, being less adapted to human hosts, produce more acute inflammatory infections that tend to resolve more quickly. Dermatophytes are acquired by contact with contaminated soil or with infected animals or humans.

Some anthropophilic species are geographically restricted, but others, such as *Epidermophyton floccosum, Trichophyton mentagrophytes* var *interdigitale, T rubrum,* and *T tonsurans,* are globally distributed. The most common geophilic species causing human infections is *Microsporum gypseum.* Cosmopolitan zoophilic species (and their natural hosts) include *Microsporum canis* (dogs and cats), *Microsporum gallinae* (fowl), *Microsporum nanum* (pigs), *Trichophyton equinum* (horses), and *Trichophyton verrucosum* (cattle).

Morphology & Identification

Dermatophytes are identified by their colonial appearance and microscopic morphology after growth for 2 weeks at 25 C on Sabouraud's dextrose agar. *Trichophyton* species, which may infect hair, skin, or nails, develop cylindric, smooth-walled macroconidia and characteristic microconidia (Figure 4510). Depending on the variety, colonies of *T mentagrophytes* may be cottony to granular; both types display abundant grape-like clusters of spherical microconidia on terminal branches. Coiled or spiral hyphae are commonly found in primary isolates. The typical colony of *T rubrum* has a white, cottony surface and a deep red, nondiffusible pigment when viewed from the reverse side of the colony. The microconidia are small and piriform (pear-shaped). *T tonsurans* produces a flat, powdery to velvety colony on the obverse surface that becomes reddish-brown on reverse; the microconidia are mostly elongate.

Figure 4510.

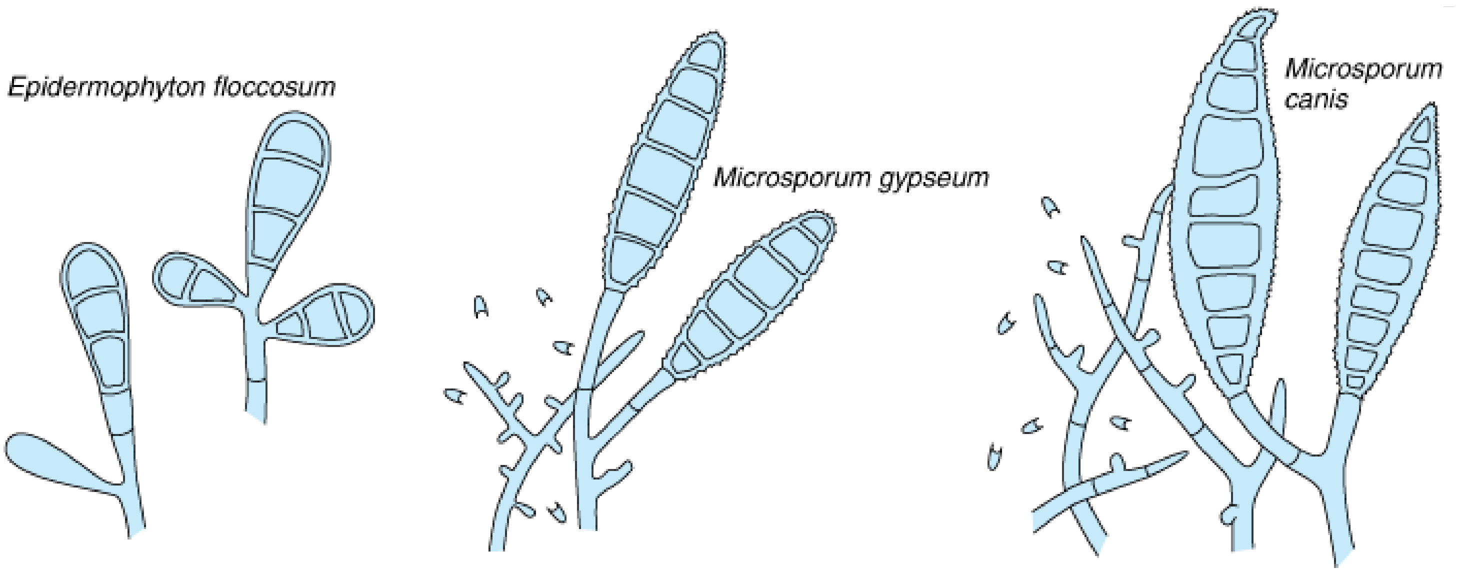


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Trichophyton species. Macroconidium, spiral hypha, and typical microconidia.

Microsporum species tend to produce distinctive multicellular macroconidia with echinulate walls (Figure 4511). Both types of conidia are borne singly in these genera. *M canis* forms a colony with a white cottony surface and a deep yellow color on reverse; the thick-walled, 8- to 15-celled macroconidia frequently have curved or hooked tips. *M gypseum* produces a tan, powdery colony and abundant thin-walled, four- to six-celled macroconidia. *Microsporum* species infect only hair and skin.

Figure 4511.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Microconidia and characteristic macroconidia.

Epidermophyton floccosum, which is the only pathogen in this genus, produces only macroconidia, which are smooth-walled, clavate, two- to four-celled, and formed in groups of two or three (Figure 4511). The colonies are usually flat and velvety with a tan to olive-green tinge. *E floccosum* infects the skin and nails but not the hair.

In addition to gross and microscopic morphology, a few nutritional or other tests, such as growth at 37 C or a test for in vitro hair perforation, are useful in differentiating certain species.

Epidemiology & Immunity

Dermatophyte infections begin in the skin after trauma and contact. There is evidence that host susceptibility may be enhanced by moisture, warmth, specific skin chemistry, composition of sebum and perspiration, youth, heavy exposure, and genetic predisposition. The incidence is higher in hot, humid climates and under crowded living conditions. Wearing shoes provides warmth and moisture, a setting for infections of the feet. The source of infection is soil or an infected animal in the case of geophilic and zoophilic dermatophytes, respectively. The conidia can remain viable for long periods. Anthropophilic species may be transmitted by direct contact or through fomites, such as contaminated towels, clothing, shared shower stalls, and similar examples.

Trichophytin is a crude antigen preparation that can be used to detect immediate- or delayed-type hypersensitivity to dermatophytic antigens. Many patients who develop chronic, noninflammatory dermatophyte infections have poor cell-mediated immune responses to dermatophyte antigen. These patients often are atopic and have immediate-type hypersensitivity and elevated IgE concentrations. In the normal host, immunity to dermatophytosis varies in duration and degree depending on the host, the site, and the species of fungus causing the infection.

Clinical Findings

Dermatophyte infections were mistakenly termed ringworm or tinea because of the raised circular lesions. The clinical forms are based on the site of involvement. A single species is able to cause more than one type of clinical infection. Conversely, a single clinical form, such as tinea corporis, may be caused by more than one dermatophyte species. The more common agents associated with particular clinical forms are listed in Table 452. Very rarely, immunocompromised patients may develop systemic infection by a dermatophyte.

Table 452. Some Clinical Features of Dermatophyte Infection.

Skin Disease	Location of Lesions	Clinical Features	Fungi Most Frequently Responsible
Tinea corporis (ringworm)	Nonhairy, smooth skin.	Circular patches with advancing red, vesiculated border and central scaling. Pruritic.	*T rubrum, E floccosum*
Tinea pedis[1] (athlete's foot)	Interdigital spaces on feet of persons wearing shoes.	Acute: itching, red vesicular. Chronic: itching, scaling, fissures.	*T rubrum, T mentagrophytes, E floccosum*
Tinea cruris (jock itch)	Groin.	Erythematous scaling lesion in intertriginous area. Pruritic.	*T rubrum, T mentagrophytes, E floccosum*
Tinea capitis	Scalp hair. Endothrix: fungus inside hair shaft. Ectothrix: fungus on surface of hair.	Circular bald patches with short hair stubs or broken hair within hair follicles. Kerion rare. Microsporum-infected hairs fluoresce.	*T mentagrophytes, M canis*
Tinea barbae	Beard hair.	Edematous, erythematous lesion.	*T mentagrophytes*
Tinea unguium (onychomycosis)	Nail.	Nails thickened or crumbling distally; discolored; lusterless. Usually associated with tinea pedis.	*T rubrum, T mentagrophytes, E floccosum*
Dermatophytid (id reaction)	Usually sides and flexor aspects of fingers. Palm. Any site on body.	Pruritic vesicular to bullous lesions. Most commonly associated with tinea pedis.	No fungi present in lesion. May become secondarily infected with bacteria.

[1] May be associated with lesions of hands and nails (onychomycosis).

TINEA PEDIS (ATHLETE'S FOOT)

Tinea pedis is the most prevalent of all dermatophytoses. It usually occurs as a chronic infection of the toe webs. Other varieties are the vesicular, ulcerative, and moccasin types, with hyperkeratosis of the sole. Initially, there is itching between the toes and the development of small vesicles that rupture and discharge a thin fluid. The skin of the toe webs becomes macerated and peels, whereupon cracks appear that are prone to develop secondary bacterial infection. When the fungal infection becomes chronic, peeling and cracking of the skin are the principal manifestations, accompanied by pain and pruritus.

TINEA UNGUIUM (ONYCHOMYCOSIS)

Nail infection may follow prolonged tinea pedis. With hyphal invasion, the nails become yellow, brittle, thickened, and crumbly. One or more nails of the feet or hands may be involved.

TINEA CORPORIS, TINEA CRURIS, AND TINEA MANUS

Dermatophytosis of the glabrous skin commonly gives rise to the annular lesions of ringworm, with a clearing, scaly center surrounded by a red advancing border that may be dry or vesicular. The dermatophyte grows only within dead, keratinized tissue, but fungal metabolites, enzymes, and antigens diffuse through the viable layers of the epidermis to cause erythema, vesicle formation, and pruritus. Infections with geophilic and zoophilic dermatophytes produce more irritants and are more inflammatory than anthropophilic species. As hyphae age, they often form chains of arthroconidia. The lesions expand centrifugally and active hyphal growth is at the periphery, which is the most likely region from which to obtain material for diagnosis. Penetration into the newly forming stratum corneum of the thicker plantar and palmar surfaces accounts for the persistent infections at those sites.

When the infection occurs in the groin area, it is called tinea cruris, or jock itch. Most such infections involve males and present as dry, itchy lesions that often start on the scrotum and spread to the groin. Tinea manus refers to ringworm of the hands or fingers. Dry scaly lesions may involve one or both hands, single fingers, or two or more fingers.

TINEA CAPITIS AND TINEA BARBAE

Tinea capitis is dermatophytosis or ringworm of the scalp and hair. The infection begins with hyphal invasion of the skin of the scalp, with subsequent spread down the keratinized wall of the hair follicle. Infection of the hair takes place just above the hair root. The hyphae grow downward on the nonliving portion of the hair and at the same rate as the hair grows upward. The infection produces dull gray, circular patches of alopecia, scaling, and itching. As the hair grows out of the follicle, the hyphae of microsporum species produce a chain of spores that form a sheath around the hair shaft (ectothrix). These spores impart a greenish to silvery fluorescence when the hairs are examined under Wood's light (365 nm). In contrast, *T tonsurans* , the chief cause of "black dot" tinea capitis, produces spores within the hair shaft (endothrix). These hairs do not fluoresce; they are weakened and typically break easily at the follicular opening. In prepubescent children, epidemic tinea capitis is usually self-limiting.

Zoophilic species may induce a severe combined inflammatory and hypersensitivity reaction called a kerion. Another manifestation of tinea capitis is favus, an acute inflammatory infection of the hair follicle caused by *T schoenleinii,* which leads to the formation of scutula (crusts) around the follicle. In favic hairs, the hyphae do not form spores but can be found within the hair shaft. Tinea barbae involves the bearded region. Especially when a zoophilic dermatophyte is involved, a highly inflammatory reaction may be elicited that closely resembles pyogenic infection.

TRICHOPHYTID REACTION

In the course of dermatophytosis, the individual may become hypersensitive to constituents or products of the fungus and may develop allergic manifestationscalled dermatophytids (usually vesicles)elsewhere on the body, most often on the hands. The trichophytin skin test is markedly positive in such persons.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

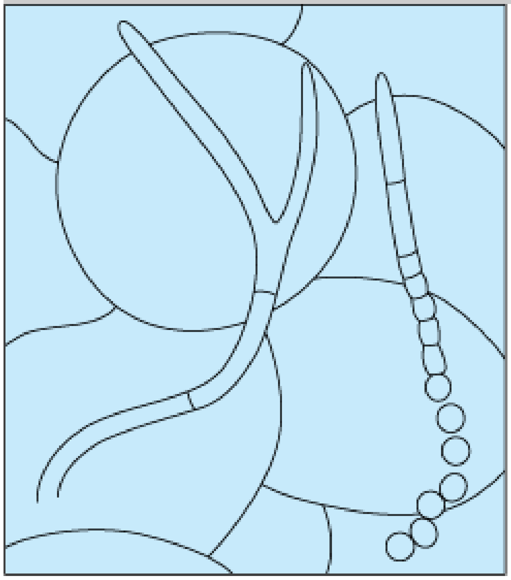
SPECIMENS

Specimens consist of scrapings from both the skin and the nails plus hairs plucked from involved areas. Microsporum-infected hairs fluoresce under Wood's light in a darkened room.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Specimens are placed on a slide in a drop of 1020% potassium hydroxide, with or without calcofluor white, which is a nonspecific fungal cell wall stain viewed with a fluorescent microscope. A coverslip is added, and the specimen is examined immediately and again after 20 minutes. In skin or nails, regardless of the infecting species, branching hyphae or chains of arthroconidia (arthrospores) are seen (Figure 4512). In hairs, most microsporum species form dense sheaths of spores around the hair (ectothrix). *T tonsurans* and *T violaceum* are noted for producing arthroconidia inside the hair shaft (endothrix).

Figure 4512.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Dermatophyte in potassium hydroxide mount of skin or nail scraping. Branching hyphae. Arthroconidia formation.

CULTURE

The identification of dermatophyte species requires cultures. Specimens are inoculated onto inhibitory mold agar or Sabouraud's agar slants containing cycloheximide and chloramphenicol to suppress mold and bacterial growth, incubated for 13 weeks at room temperature, and further examined in slide cultures if necessary. Species are identified on the basis of colonial morphology (growth rate, surface texture, and any pigmentation), microscopic morphology (macroconidia, microconidia), and, in some cases, nutritional requirements.

Treatment

Therapy consists of thorough removal of infected and dead epithelial structures and application of a topical antifungal chemical or antibiotic. To prevent reinfection, the area should be kept dry, and sources of infection, such as an infected pet or shared bathing facilities, should be avoided.

TINEA CAPITIS

Scalp infections are treated with griseofulvin for 46 weeks. Frequent shampoos and miconazole cream or other topical antifungal agents may be effective if used for weeks. Alternatively, ketoconazole, itraconazole, and terbinafine are all quite effective.

TINEA CORPORIS, TINEA PEDIS, AND RELATED INFECTIONS

The most effective drugs are itraconazole and terbinafine. However, a number of topical preparations may be used, such as miconazole nitrate, tolnaftate, and clotrimazole. If applied for at least 24 weeks, the cure rates are usually 70100%. Treatment should be continued for 12 weeks after clearing of the lesions. For troublesome cases, a short course of oral griseofulvin can be administered.

TINEA UNGUIUM

Nail infections are the most difficult to treat, often requiring months of oral itraconazole or terbinafine as well as surgical removal of the nail. Relapses are common.

SUBCUTANEOUS MYCOSES

The fungi that cause subcutaneous mycoses normally reside in soil or on vegetation. They enter the skin or subcutaneous tissue by traumatic inoculation with contaminated material. In general, the lesions become granulomatous and expand slowly from the area of implantation. Extension via the lymphatics draining the lesion is slow except in sporotrichosis. These mycoses are usually confined to the subcutaneous tissues, but in rare cases they become systemic and produce life-threatening disease.

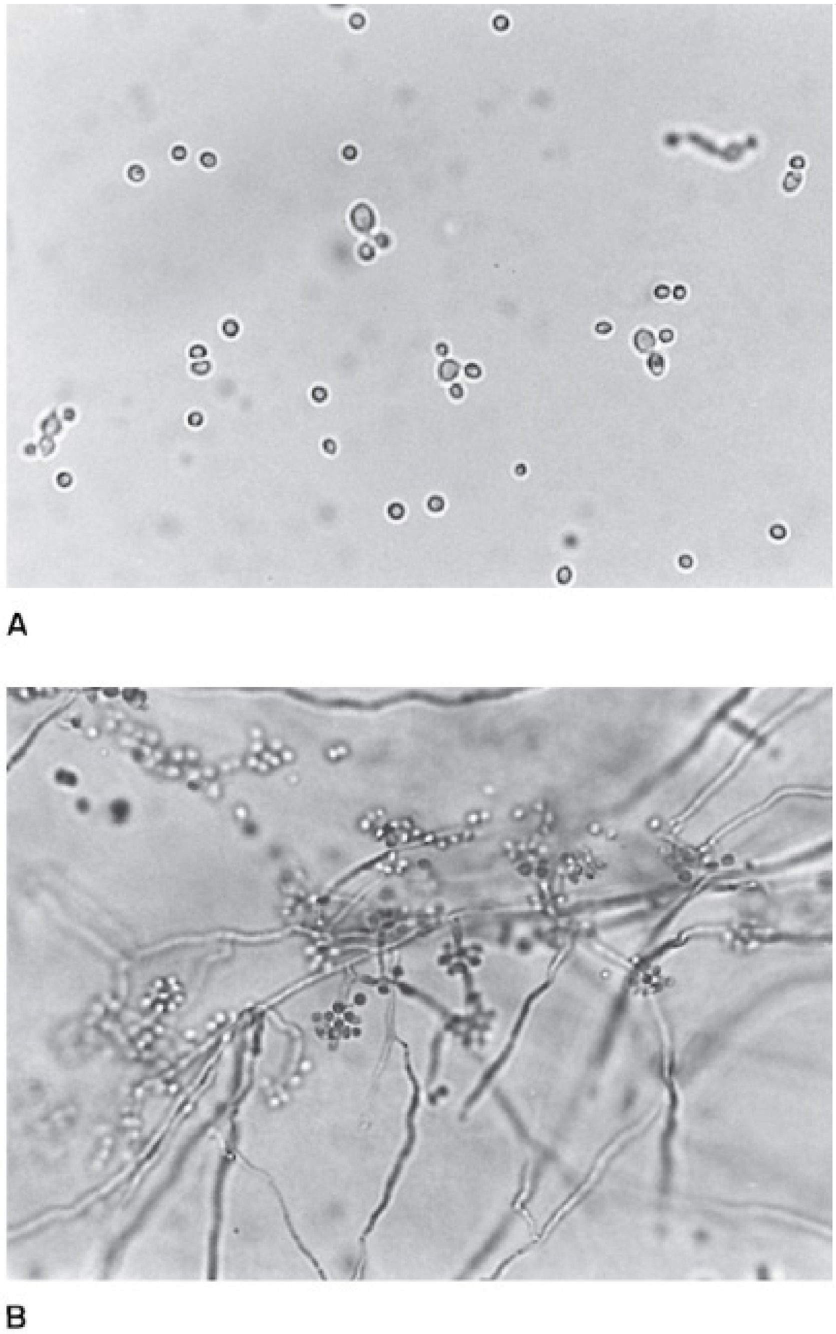
SPOROTHRIX SCHENCKII

Sporothrix schenckii is a thermally dimorphic fungus that lives on vegetation. It is associated with a variety of plantsgrasses, trees, sphagnum moss, rose bushes, and other horticultural plants. At ambient temperatures, it grows as a mold, producing branching, septate hyphae and conidia, and in tissue or in vitro at 3537 C as a small budding yeast. Following traumatic introduction into the skin, *S schenckii* causes sporotrichosis, a chronic granulomatous infection. The initial episode is typically followed by secondary spread with involvement of the draining lymphatics and lymph nodes.

Morphology & Identification

S schenckii grows well on routine agar media, and at room temperature the young colonies are blackish and shiny, becoming wrinkled and fuzzy with age. Strains vary in pigmentation from shades of black and gray to whitish. The organism produces branching, septate hyphae and distinctive small (35 µm) conidia, delicately clustered at the ends of tapering conidiophores (Figure 4513). Isolates may also form larger conidia directly from the hyphae. *S schenckii* is thermally dimorphic, and at 35 C on a rich medium it converts to growth as small, often multiply budding yeast cells that are variable in shape but often fusiform (about 13 x 310 µm), as shown in Figure 4513.

Figure 4513.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Sporothrix schenckii. A: Blastoconidia seen in tissue or 37 C culture. B: Conidia formation in 30 C culture.

Antigenic Structure

Heat-killed saline suspensions of cultures or carbohydrate fractions (sporotrichin) will elicit positive delayed skin tests in infected humans or animals. A variety of serologic tests have been developed, and most patients, as well as some normal individuals, have specific or cross-reactive antibodies.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

The conidia or hyphal fragments of *S schenckii* are introduced into the skin by trauma. Patients frequently recall a history of trauma associated with outdoor activities and plants. The initial lesion is usually located on the extremities but can be found anywhere (children often present with facial lesions). About 75% of cases are lymphocutaneous; ie, the initial lesion develops as a granulomatous nodule that may progress to form a necrotic or ulcerative lesion. Meanwhile, the draining lymphatics become thickened and cord-like. Multiple subcutaneous nodules and abscesses occur along the lymphatics.

Fixed sporotrichosis is a single nonlymphangitic nodule that is limited and less progressive. The fixed lesion is more common in endemic areas such as Mexico, where there is a high level of exposure and immunity in the population. Immunity limits the local spread of the infection.

There is usually little systemic illness associated with these lesions, but dissemination may occur, especially in debilitated patients. Rarely, primary pulmonary sporotrichosis results from inhalation of the conidia. This manifestation mimics chronic cavitary tuberculosis and tends to occur in patients with impaired cell-mediated immunity.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Specimens include biopsy material or exudate from granulous or ulcerative lesions.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Although specimens can be examined directly with KOH or calcofluor white stain, the yeasts are rarely found. Even though they are sparse in tissue, the sensitivity of histopathologic sections is enhanced with routine fungal cell wall stains, such as Gomori's methenamine silver, which stains the cell walls black, or the periodic acid-Schiff stain, which imparts a red color to the cell walls. Alternatively, they can be identified by fluorescent antibody staining. The yeasts are 35 µm in diameter and spherical to elongated.

Another structure termed an asteroid body is often seen in tissue, particularly in endemic areas such as Mexico, South Africa, and Japan. In hematoxylin and eosin-stained tissue, the asteroid body consists of a central basophilic yeast cell surrounded by radiating extensions of eosinophilic material, which are depositions of antigen-antibody complexes and complement.

CULTURE

The most reliable method of diagnosis is culture. Specimens are streaked on inhibitory mold agar or Sabouraud's agar containing antibacterial antibiotics and incubated at 2530 C. The identification is confirmed by growth at 35 C and conversion to the yeast form.

SEROLOGY

Agglutination of yeast cell suspensions or of latex particles coated with antigen occurs in high titer with sera of infected patients but is not always diagnostic.

Treatment

In some cases, the infection is self-limited. Although the oral administration of saturated solution of potassium iodide in milk is quite effective, it is difficult for many patients to

INTRODUCTION

Although all of the medically significant organisms considered in this chapter are parasitic in their human hosts, the biomedical discipline of parasitology has traditionally been concerned only with the parasitic protozoa, helminths, and arthropods. This chapter offers a brief survey of the protozoan and helminthic parasites of medical importance. The text is supplemented by tabular materials and illustrations. (The illustrations in this chapter are by the late P.H. Vercammen-Grandjean, DSc.) The books and articles listed at the end of the chapter are recommended for reference.

*Professor of Parasitology Emeritus, Department of Epidemiology and International Health, University of California, San Francisco; and Chairman, Emeritus, University of California, BerkeleyUniversity of California, San Francisco, Joint Medical Program.

CLASSIFICATION OF PARASITES

The parasites of humans in the kingdom Protozoa are now classified under three phyla: Sarcomastigophora (containing the flagellates and amebas), Apicomplexa (containing the sporozoans), and Ciliophora (containing the ciliates). Within these great assemblages are found the important human parasites, conveniently listed as subphyla.

(1) Mastigophora, the flagellates, have one or more whip-like flagella and, in some cases, an undulating membrane (eg, trypanosomes). These include intestinal and genitourinary flagellates (*Giardia, Trichomonas, Dientamoeba, Chilomastix*) and blood and tissue flagellates (*Trypanosoma, Leishmania*).

(2) Sarcodina are typically ameboid and are represented in humans by species of *Entamoeba, Endolimax, Iodamoeba, Naegleria,* and *Acanthamoeba* .

(3) Sporozoa undergo a complex life cycle with alternating sexual and asexual reproductive phases, usually involving two different hosts (eg, arthropod and vertebrate, as in the blood forms). The class Coccidia contains the human parasites *Isospora, Toxoplasma,* and others. One of these, *Cryptosporidium* , has been implicated as a cause of intractable diarrhea among the immunosuppressed. Within the class Haematozoa (blood sporozoans) are the malarial parasites (*Plasmodium* species) and members of the order Piroplasmida, which includes *Babesia* species. *Pneumocystis* has recently been shown to be a member of the Fungi rather than the Protozoa. It is another opportunistic parasite of immunosuppressed individuals.

(4) Ciliophora are complex protozoa bearing cilia distributed in rows or patches, with two kinds of nuclei in each individual. *Balantidium coli,* a giant intestinal ciliate of humans and pigs, is the only human parasite representative of this group.

A distinctive group, formerly listed with the Protozoa, often within the Sporozoa, is now considered a separate phylum, the Microspora. It includes the microsporidians, frequently seen as opportunistic parasites of immunosuppressed hosts.

The parasitic worms, or helminths, of human beings belong to two phyla:

(1) Platyhelminthes (flatworms) lack a true body cavity (celom) and are characteristically flat in dorsoventral section. All medically important species belong to the classes Cestoda (tapeworms) and Trematoda (flukes). The tapeworms of humans are band-like and segmented; the flukes are typically leaf-shaped, and the schistosomes narrow and elongate, an adaptation, along with their separate-sexed condition, for dwelling within small blood vessels. The other flukes and the tapeworms of humans are hermaphroditic. The important tissue and intestinal cestodes of humans belong to the genera *Diphyllobothrium, Spirometra, Taenia, Echinococcus, Hymenolepis,* and *Dipylidium* . Medically important trematode genera include *Schistosoma, Paragonimus, Clonorchis, Opisthorchis, Heterophyes, Metagonimus, Fasciolopsis,* and *Fasciola* .

(2) Nemathelminthes (worm-like, separate-sexed, unsegmented roundworms) include many parasitic species that infect humans.

These are listed in Table 464 together with the other parasitic helminths. An essential procedure in diagnosis of many helminthic infections is microscopic recognition of ova or larvae in feces, urine, blood, or tissues. Illustrations of diagnostically important stages are found in appropriate sections of the text; important characteristics of microfilariae are listed in Table 465.

Table 464. Diseases Due to Helminths.

Angiostrongyliasis; eosinophilic meningoencephalitis
Larvae in meninges
Eating raw shrimps, prawns; raw garden slugs; aquatic and land snails; infected lettuce
Local in Pacific, especially southwest
Mebendazole
Angiostongylus cantonensis (larval) (N), rat lungworm
Angiostrongyliasis; intestinal angiostrongyliasis
Larval stages in bowel wall, especially appendix; also regional lymph nodes in mesenteric arteries
Ingestion of infected snails, slugs, contaminated salad vegetables
Central America, Brazil
Surgical excision, thiabendazole
Angiostongylus costaricensis (N), cotton rat arterial worm
Anisakiasis
Larvae in stomach or intestinal wall, rarely penetrate
Eating raw or pickled marine fish
Around Pacific basin (Japan, California, Hawaii) among people who eat raw fish
Surgical excision, usually short-lived
Anisakiasis, Phocanema, other related genera (larval) (N)
Ascariasis
Small intestine; larvae through lungs
Eating viable eggs from feces-contaminated soil or food
Worldwide, very common
Mebendazole, pyrantel pamoate
Ascaris lumbricoides (N), common roundworm
Capillariasis

Small intestine (mucosa)
Undercooked marine fish
Philippines, Thailand
Mebendazole, albendazole
Capillaria philippinensis (N)
Clonorchiasis
Liver (bile ducts)
Undercooked freshwater fish
China, Korea, Indochina, Japan, Taiwan
Praziquantel, albendazole
Clonorchis sinensis (T), Chinese liver fluke
Cysticercosis (bladder worm)
Subcutaneous; eye, meninges, brain, etc
Ingestion of eggs or regurgitation of gravid proglottid from lower GI tract
Worldwide
Surgical excision, albendazole, praziquantel
Taenia solium (larval) (C)
Dracunculiasis
Subcutaneous; usually leg, foot
Drinking water with Cyclops
Africa, Arabia to Pakistan; locally elsewhere in Asia
Mechanical or surgical extraction, metronidazole, mebendazole
Dracunculus medinensis (N), Guinea worm
Echinococcosis, hydatidosis
Liver, lung, brain, peritoneum, long bones, kidney
Contact with dogs, foxes, other canids; eggs from feces
Worldwide but local; sheep-raising areas
Surgical aspiration and excision, albendazole
Echinococcus granulosus (larval) (C), unilocular hydatid cyst
Echinococcus multilocularis (larval) (C), alveolar (multiocular) hydatid cysts
Liver
Fox fur trappersfrom contact with fecal matter in fur
Northern temperate areas with fox-vole cycle
Surgical excision, possible albendazole or mebendazole
Echinostomiasis
Small intestine
Freshwater snails
Southeast Asia
Praziquantel
Echinostoma ilocanum (T)
Enterobiasis
Cecum, colon (lumen)
Anal-oral; self contamination and internal reinfection
Worldwide
Pyrantel pamoate, mebendazole, albendazole
Enterobius vermicularis (N), pinworm
Fascioliasis
Liver (bile ducts, after migration through parenchyma)
Watercress, aquatic vegetation

Worldwide, especially sheep-raising areas
Bithionol, triclabendazole
Fasciola hepatica (T), sheep liver fluke
Fasciolopsiasis
Small intestine
Aquatic vegetation
East and Southeast Asia
Praziquantel
Fasciolopsis buski (T), giant intestinal fluke
Filariasis
Lymph nodes; microfilariae in blood
Bite of mosquitoes; several species
Tropical and subtropical, very local but widespread
Diethylcarbamazine, ivermectin (experimental)
Wuchereria bancrofti, Brugia malayi (N), human filarial worms
Filariasis, occult
Lungs (larvae)
Infected mosquitoes
India, Southeast Asia
Diethylcarbamazine, mebendazole, ivermectin, or not treated
Dirofilaria species (N), heartworm
Gnathostomiasis
Subcutaneous, migratory
Uncooked fish
East and Southeast Asia
Surgical excision, albendazole
Gnathostoma spinigerum (N), rat stomach worm
Heterophyiasis
Small intestine
Uncooked fish (mullet)
China, Korea, Japan, Taiwan, Israel, Egypt
Praziquantel
Heterophyes heterophyes (T), intestinal fish fluke of humans
Hookworms
Small intestine; larvae through lungs
Through skin, infected soil, from drinking contaminated water (ancylostoma)
Worldwide tropics and North America (necator); temperate zones (ancylostoma)
Mebendazole, pyrantel pamoate, albendazole
Ancylostoma duodenale, Necator americanus (N)
Larva migrans:
Subcutaneous, migrating larvae
Contact with soil contaminated by dog or cat feces
Worldwide
Thiabendazole, albendazole, ivermectin
Cutaneous, creeping eruption
Ancylostoma braziliense and other domestic animal hookworms (N)
Visceral
Liver, lung, eye, brain, other viscera; migrating larvae
Ingesting soil contaminated by dog or cat feces

Worldwide
Diethylcarbamazine, mebendazole, albendazole
Toxocara species (N), cat and dog roundworms
Loiasis
Subcutaneous, migratory; surface of eye. Microfilariae in blood
Bite of deer flies, Chrysops
Equatorial Africa
Surgical removal, diethylcarbamazine, or not treated
Loa loa (N)
Mansonelliasis
Mansonella ozzardi (N), (nonpathogenic) Ozzard's filaria
Body cavities, microfilariae in blood
Bite of gnat *Culicoides*
Argentina, north coast of South America; Carribean Islands; Panama, Yucatan
Ivermectin or not treated
Mansonella perstans (N) (*Dipetalonema perstans*) (nonpathogenic?)
Peritoneal and other cavities; microfilariae in blood
Bite of gnat *Culicoides*
Equatorial Africa; north coast of South America, Argentina, Panama, Trinidad
Mebendazole or not treated
Metagonimiasis
Small intestine
Uncooked fish
As for heterophyes plus former USSR, Balkans, Spain
Praziquantel
Metagonimus yokogawai (T), intestinal fish fluke of humans
Onchocerciasis
Subcutaneous; microfilariae in skin, eyes
Bite of black fly *Simulium*
Equatorial Africa; Central and South America
Surgery, ivermectin
Onchocerca volvulus (N), nodular or blinding worm
Opisthorchiasis
Liver (bile duct)
Uncooked fish
Eastern Europe, former USSR; Thailand
Praziquantel
Opisthorchis felineus, Opisthorchis viverrini (T), Asian liver flukes
Paragonimiasis
Lung (paired worms in cyst), brain, other sites
Raw crabs and other freshwater crustaceans
Eastern and southern Asia; central Africa; South America; animals in North America
Praziquantel, bithionol
Paragonimus westermani (T), lung fluke (several species)
Schistosomiasis
Schistosoma haematobium (T), schistosomes or bilharzia worms, blood flukes; vesicular blood fluke
Venous vessels of urinary bladder, large intestine, liver
Cercariae (larvae) penetrate skin in snail-infested water
Africa, widely; Madagascar; Arabia to Lebanon

Praziquantel

Schistosoma japonicum (T), Japanese blood fluke

Venous vessels of intestine; liver

Cercariae (larvae) penetrate skin in snail-infested water

China, Philippines, Japan; potentially Taiwan

Praziquantel

Schistosoma mansoni (T), Manson's blood fluke

Venous vessels of colon, rectum; liver

Cercariae (larvae) penetrate skin in snail-infested water

Africa to Near East; parts of South America; Caribbean tropics and subtropics

Praziquantel, oxamniquine

Schistosoma mekongi (T), Mekong blood fluke

Venous vessels of intestine; liver

Cercariae (larvae) penetrate skin in snail-infested water

Mekong Delta of Thailand (Khong Island)

Praziquantel

Sparganosis

Intraorbital wound, other wounds or contusions if used as poultice; subcutaneous tissues if from ingestion of procercoid or sparganum

Native poultices such as infected raw frog flesh; drinking water with infected copepods; ingestion of raw frogs, tadpoles, snakes

Orient; occasionally other countries, including North and South America

Surgical removal

Spirometra mansonoides; Spirometra erinacei (larva) (C); pseudophyllidean larva or sparganum from frogs, snakes, some birds and mammals (adult worms in felids or canids)

Strongyloidiasis

Duodenum, jejunum; larvae through skin, lungs

Through skin and (rarely) by internal autoreinfection

Worldwide

Thiabendazole (experimental), ivermectin

Strongyloides stercoralis (N), threadworm

Tapeworm disease (see also Cysticercosis, Hydatidosis, Echinococcosis, Sparganosis); taeniasis

Diphyllobothrium latum (C), broad fish tapeworm

Small intestine

Uncooked freshwater fish

Alaska, eastern Canada, Great Lakes area, northwest Florida; parts of South America; northern Europe; eastern Mediterranean, Asiatic former USSR, Japan; Australia

Praziquantel

Dipylidium caninum (C), dog tapeworm

Small intestine

Ingestion of crushed fleas, lice from pets

Worldwide

Praziquantel

Hymenolepis diminuta (C), rat tapeworm

Small intestine

Ingestion from rats, mice via infected insects

Worldwide

Praziquantel

Hymenolepis nana (C), dwarf tapeworm

Small intestine
Anal-oral transfer of eggs or infestion of infected insects; internal reinfection
Worldwide
Praziquantel
Taenia saginata (C), beef tapeworm
Small intestine
Uncooked beef
Worldwide
Praziquantel
Taenia solium (C), pork tapeworm (see also Cysticercosis)
Small intestine
Uncooked pork
Worldwide
Praziquantel
Trichinosis
Larvae in striated muscle (coiled within enlarged fiber cell)
Uncooked pork
Worldwide
Mebendazole (plus steroids for severe symptoms)
Trichinella spiralis (N), trichina worm
Trichostrongyliasis
Small intestine
Ingestion of infective third stage from feces-contaminated food or soil; contact with herbivore feces
Eastern Europe, former USSR, Iran
Pyrantel pamoate, mebendazole, albendazole
Trichostrongylus species (N)
Trichuriasis
Cecum; colon
Ingestion of eggs from feces-contaminated soil
Worldwide
Mebendazole, albendazole
Trichuris trichura (N), whipworm

Disease and Parasite	Location in Host	Mode of Transportation	Geographic Distribution	Treatment of Choice

C = cestode (tapeworm); N = nematode (roundworm); T = trematode (fluke).

Table 465. Microfilariae.

Wuchereria bancrofti
Bancroftian and Malayan filariasis: lymphangitis, hydrocele, elephantiasis
Worldwide 41 N to 28 S
Culicidae (mosquitoes)
+

Not to tip
Nocturnal or nonperiodic
Brugia malayi
Oriental region to Japan
Culicidae (mosquitoes)
+
Two distinct
Nocturnal or subperiodic
Loa loa
Loiasis; Calabar swellings; conjunctival worms
Western and central Africa
Chrysops, deer fly, mango fly
+
Extend to tip
Diurnal
Onchocerca volvulus
Onchocerciasis: skin nodules, blindness, dermatitis, hanging groin
Africa, Central and South America
Simulium, buffalo gnat, black fly
-
Not to tip
Nonperiodic in skin fluids
Mansonella (Dipetalonema) perstans
Mansonelliasis or dipetalonemiasis (minor disturbances)
Africa and South America
Culicoides, biting midge
-
Extend to tip
Nocturnal or diurnal or nonperiodic
Mansonella streptocerca
Usually nonpathogenic
Western and central Africa
Culicoides, biting midge
-
Extend to tip
In skin only, nonperiodic
Mansonella ozzardi
Ozzard's mansonelliasis (benign), occasionally hydrocele
Central and South America
Culicoides, biting midge
-
Not to tip
Nonperiodic

				Microfilariae		
Filariid	Disease	Distribution	Vectors	Sheath	Tail Nuclei	Periodicity[1]

---

[1] Microfilariae are found in peripheral blood (in blood smear) only at night (nocturnal periodicity), largely at night

or during crepuscular hours (subperiodicity), largely during daylight hours (diurnal periodicity), or without clear distinction (nonperiodic). Periodicity appears to be correlated with the bloodsucking habits of the chief vector insect in the particular area of transmission of the filaria.

INTESTINAL FLAGELLATES

GIARDIA LAMBLIA

Giardia lamblia, a flagellate, is the only common pathogenic protozoan found in the duodenum and jejunum of humans. It is the cause of giardiasis.

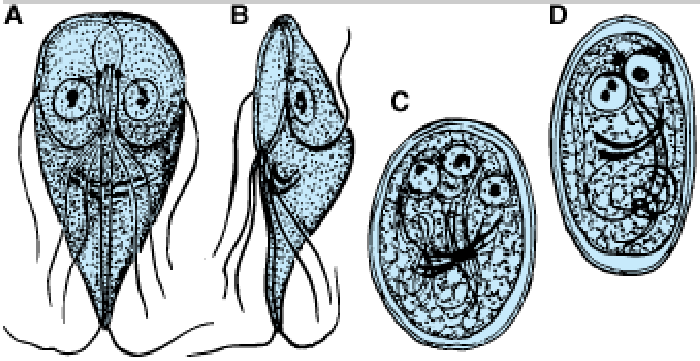
Giardia duodenalis is another name commonly ascribed to the parasite that causes human giardiasis; the term *Giardia intestinalis* is frequently used in Europe and *Lamblia intestinalis* in the former USSR. Much of the confusion is due to merging of species names now that human giardiasis is recognized as a zoonosis and species based on supposed single-host parasitism have been synonymized (see Epidemiology). Pending further taxonomic clarification, the name of the species first described, *G lamblia,* will be retained.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

The trophozoite of *G lamblia* is a heart-shaped, symmetric organism 1020 µm in length (Figure 461). There are four pairs of flagella, two nuclei with prominent central karyosomes, and two axostyles (rod-like supporting organelles). A large concave sucking disk in the anterior portion occupies much of the ventral surface. The swaying or dancing motion of *Giardia* trophozoites in fresh preparations is unmistakable. As the parasites pass into the colon, they typically encyst. Cysts are found in the stooloften in enormous numbers. They are thick-walled, highly resistant, 814 µm in length, and ellipsoid and contain two nuclei as immature, four as mature cysts.

Figure 461.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Giardia lamblia. A: "Face" and B: "profile" of vegetative forms; C and D: cysts (binucleate [D] and quadrinucleate stages). 2000 x .

CULTURE

Cultivation, though possible, is not diagnostically useful.

Pathogenesis & Clinical Findings

G lamblia is usually only weakly pathogenic for humans. Cysts may be found in large numbers in the stools of entirely asymptomatic persons. In some persons, however, large numbers of parasites attached to the bowel wall may cause irritation and low-grade inflammation of the duodenal or jejunal mucosa, with consequent acute or chronic diarrhea associated with crypt hypertrophy, villous atrophy or flattening, and epithelial cell damage. The stools may be watery, semisolid, greasy, bulky, and foul-smelling at various times during the course of the infection. Malaise, weakness, weight loss, abdominal cramps, distention, and flatulence can occur. Children are more liable to clinical giardiasis than adults. Immunosuppressed individuals are especially liable to massive infection with severe clinical manifestations. Symptoms may continue for long periods.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

Diagnosis depends upon finding the distinctive cysts in formed stools, or cysts and trophozoites in liquid stools. Development of a stool enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been shown to be both a specific and sensitive rapid diagnostic tool (Seradyn Color VueGiardia; LMD Laboratories). Examination of the duodenal contents may be necessary to establish the diagnosis, as cyst production may be sporadic and not found in the stool by an ovum and parasite fecal smear examination. A series of three or more stool examinations on alternate days is therefore recommended. Duodenal aspiration or use of the duodenal capsule technique (Entero-Test) may be needed in addition to fecal examination for diagnosis.

Treatment

Metronidazole (Flagyl) will clear over 90% of *G lamblia* infections. Oral quinacrine hydrochloride (Atabrine) and furazolidone (Furoxone) are alternatives. Tinidazole (Fasigyn), used for 1-day treatment, is widely and effectively used but is not available in the United States. Paromomycin (Humatin) may be useful in pregnancy.

Treatment may be repeated if necessary. Only symptomatic patients require treatment.

Epidemiology

G lamblia occurs worldwide. Humans are infected by ingestion of fecally contaminated water or food containing giardia cysts or by direct fecal contamination, as may occur in day care centers for children, refugee camps, institutions, or among male homosexuals. Epidemic outbreaks have been reported at ski resorts in the United States where overloading of sewage facilities or contamination of the water supply has resulted in sudden outbreaks of giardiasis. Cysts can survive in water for up to 3 months. Outbreaks among campers in wilderness areas suggest that humans may be infected with various animal giardia harbored by rodents, deer, cattle, sheep, horses, or household pets. This suggests that human infection can also be a zoonosis and that *G lamblia* has a broad spectrum of hosts, contrary to earlier views. Extensive variation occurs in the Giardia complex, and though species definitions are still unresolved, it is clear that a great number of distinct and probably variable clones exist.

TRICHOMONAS

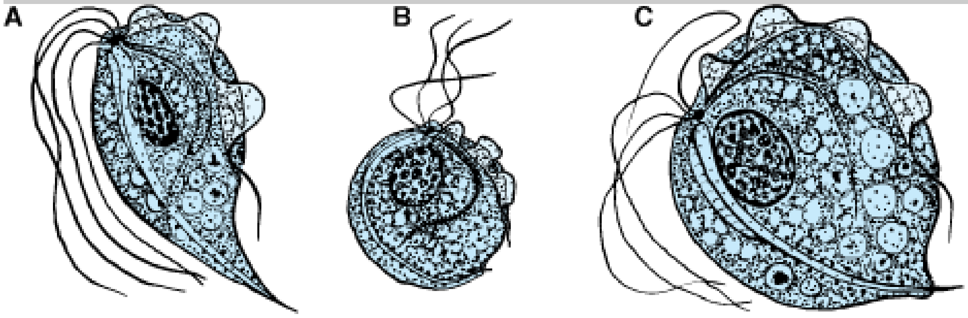
The trichomonads are flagellate protozoa with three to five anterior flagella, other organelles, and an undulating membrane. *Trichomonas vaginalis* causes the most common form of trichomoniasis in humans.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

T vaginalis is pear-shaped, with a short undulating membrane lined with a flagellum and four anterior flagella (Figure 462). It measures about 10 × 7 μm, though its length may vary from 5 to 30 μm and its width from 2 to 14 μm. The organism moves with a characteristic wobbling and rotating motion. The nonpathogenic trichomonads, *Trichomonas hominis* (Figure 463) and *Trichomonas tenax,* cannot readily be distinguished from *T vaginalis* when alive. For all practical purposes, trichomonads found in the mouth are *T tenax;* in the intestine, *T hominis;* and in the genitourinary tract (both sexes), *T vaginalis.*

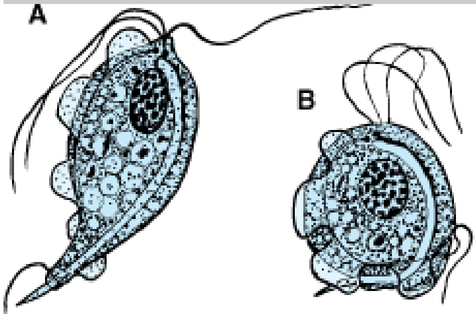
Figure 462.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Trichomonas vaginalis (found in vaginal and prostatic secretions). A: Normal trophozoite; B: round form after division; C: common form seen in stained preparation. Note that the undulating membrane extends only two-thirds of the way down the parasite, not the full length, as in the other trichomonads of humans. Cysts not found. 2000 x .

Figure 463.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Trichomonas hominis. A: Normal and B: round forms of trophozoites, probably a staining artifact. Cysts not found. 2000 x .

CULTURE

T vaginalis may be cultivated in many solid and fluid cell-free media, in tissue cultures, and in chick embryo. Simplified trypticase serum is usually used for semen cultures.

GROWTH REQUIREMENTS

T vaginalis grows best at 3537 C under anaerobic conditions, less well aerobically. The optimal pH for growth in vitro (5.56.0) suggests why vaginal trichomoniasis is more severe in women with higher than normal vaginal pH.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

T hominis and *T tenax* are generally considered to be harmless commensals. *T vaginalis* is capable of causing low-grade inflammation. The intensity of infection, the pH and physiologic status of the vaginal and other genitourinary tract surfaces, and the accompanying bacterial flora are among the factors affecting pathogenicity. The organisms do not survive at normal vaginal acidity of pH 3.84.4.

In females, the infection is normally limited to vulva, vagina, and cervix; it does not usually extend to the uterus. The mucosal surfaces may be tender, inflamed, eroded, and covered with a frothy yellow or cream-colored discharge. In males, the prostate, seminal vesicles, and urethra may be infected. Signs and symptoms in females, in addition to profuse vaginal discharge, include local tenderness, vulval pruritus, and burning. About 10% of infected males have a thin, white urethral discharge.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS AND MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Vaginal or urethral secretions or discharge should be examined microscopically in a drop of saline for characteristic motile trichomonads. Dried smears may be stained with hematoxylin or other stains for later study.

CULTURE

Culture of vaginal or urethral discharge, of prostatic secretion, or of a semen specimen may reveal organisms when direct examination is negative.

Immunity

Infection confers no apparent immunity, although over time reinfections appear to cause less severe symptoms in women, suggesting that some resistance may develop.

Treatment

Successful treatment of vaginal infection requires destruction of the trichomonads, for which topical and systemic metronidazole (Flagyl) is best. Tinidazole (Fasigyn) and ornidazole (Tiberal) are equally effective, with fewer side effects, but are not available in the United States. The patient's sexual partner should be examined and treated simultaneously. Postmenopausal patients may require treatment with estrogens to improve the condition of the vaginal epithelium. Prostatic infection can be cured with certainty only by systemic treatment with metronidazole or one of the above-mentioned nitroimidazoles.

Epidemiology & Control

T vaginalis is a common parasite of both males and females. Infection rates vary greatly but may be quite high (40% or higher). Transmission is by sexual intercourse, but contaminated towels, douche equipment, examination instruments, and other objects may be responsible for some new infections. Infants may be infected during birth. Most infections, in both sexes, are asymptomatic or mild. Control of *T vaginalis* infections always requires simultaneous treatment of both sexual partners. Mechanical protection (condom) should be used during intercourse until the infection is eradicated in both partners.

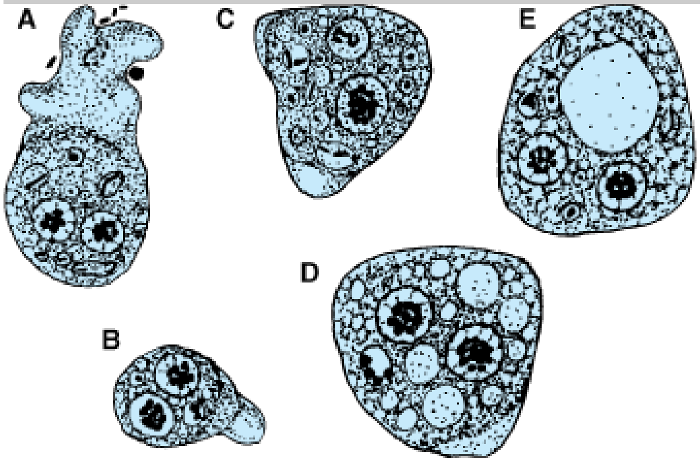
OTHER INTESTINAL FLAGELLATES

Dientamoeba fragilis

Long classified with the amebas, this occasionally pathogenic organism is now recognized as an ameboflagellate in the same order as Trichomonas. In its ameba stage it measures 418 µm, has one or two nuclei, and is often bilobate or bean-shaped (Figure 464). It is commonly found in the human colon along with the true amebas, but it contains a flagellate structure (the parabasal body) near the nuclei and, like Trichomonas, lacks a cyst stage.

Dientamoeba fragilis is a parasite of humans but has been found in apes, monkeys, and sheep as well. It is mildly pathogenic in about 25% of infected individuals, who may experience abdominal pain and flatulence, diarrhea, vomiting, weakness, and weight loss similar to giardiasis. Treatment is as for *Entamoeba histolytica* infection. Morphologic distinction from intestinal amebas is included in the section on amebiasis.

Figure 464.



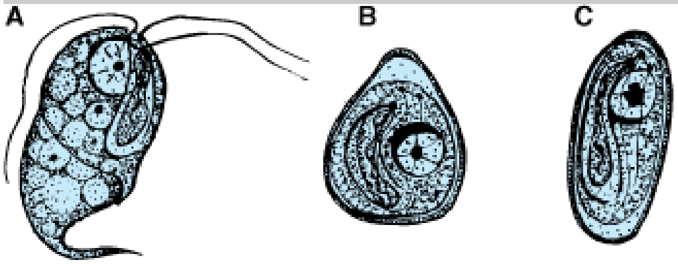
Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Dientamoeba fragilis. Trophozoites (cysts not found). A: Active; B: Small; C: Mononuclear; D and E: resting. 2000 x .

Chilomastix mesnili

This parasite can be confused with trichomonas in the laboratory. It is found throughout the world. The trophozoite is pear-shaped and resembles Trichomonas, but the spiral motion of the trophozoite is unlike that of Trichomonas. The cyst is lemon-shaped, uninucleate, and 710 µm long (Figure 465).

Figure 465.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Chilomastix mesnili. A: Trophozoite; B and C: cysts. 2000 x .

THE HEMOFLAGELLATES

The hemoflagellates of humans include the genera *Trypanosoma* and Leishmania. There are two distinct types of human trypanosomes: (1) African, which causes sleeping sickness and is transmitted by tsetse flies (*Glossina*): *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense* and *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense;* and (2) American, which causes Chagas' disease and is transmitted by conenose bugs (*Triatoma* , etc): *Trypanosoma (Schizotrypanum) cruzi.* The genus *Leishmania* , divided into a number of species infecting humans, causes cutaneous (Oriental sore), mucocutaneous (espundia), and visceral (kala-azar) leishmaniasis. All of these infections are transmitted by sandflies (*Phlebotomus* in the Old World and *Lutzomyia* in the New World).

The genus *Trypanosoma* appears in the blood as trypomastigotes, with elongated bodies supporting a longitudinal lateral undulating membrane and a flagellum that borders the free edge of the membrane and emerges at the anterior end as a whip-like extension. The kinetoplast is a darkly staining body lying immediately adjacent to the tiny node (blepharoplast) from which the flagellum arises. Other developmental forms among the hemoflagellates include (1) a leishmanial rounded intracellular stage, the amastigote; (2) a flagellated extracellular stage, the promastigote, a lanceolate form without an undulating membrane, with a kinetoplast at the anterior end; and (3) an epimastigote, a more elongated extracellular stage with a short undulating membrane and a kinetoplast placed more posteriorly, near the nucleus.

In leishmania life cycles, only the amastigote and promastigote are found, the latter being restricted to the insect vector. In *T cruzi,* all three developmental stages may occur in humans, and trypomastigote and epimastigote in the vector. In African trypanosomes, the latter two flagellated stages also occur in the tsetse fly vector, but only the trypomastigote in humans.

LEISHMANIA

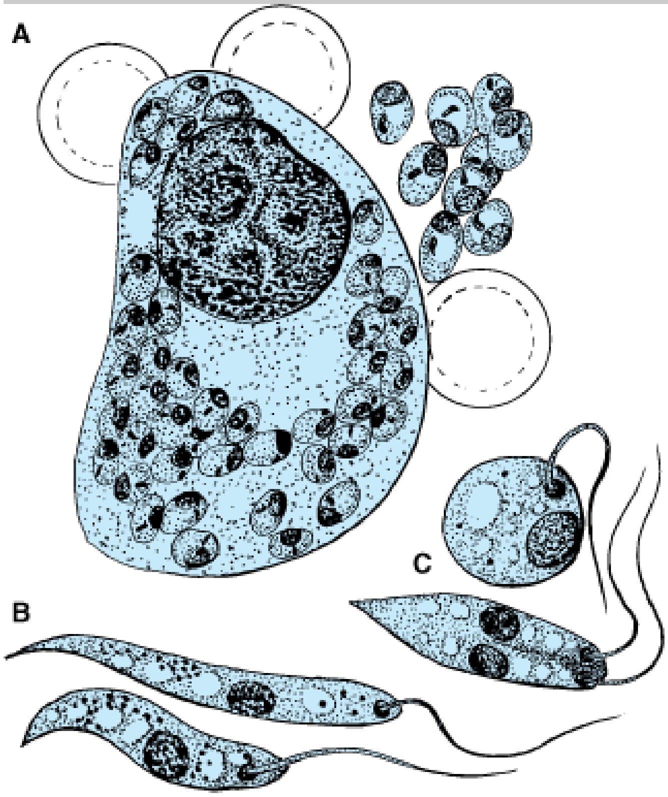
The genus Leishmania, widely distributed in nature, has a number of species that are nearly identical morphologically. Differentiation therefore is based on a number of biochemical and epidemiologic criteria: electrophoretic mobility profile of a battery of isoenzymes (zymodeme pattern); excretory factor serotyping; kinetoplast DNA restriction analysis (schizodemes); lectin conjugation patterns on the parasite surface; use of monoclonal probes to detect specific antigens; promastigote growth patterns in vitro in the presence of antisera; developmental characteristics of promastigotes in the specific sandfly vector; and vectors, reservoir hosts, and other epidemiologic factors. Clinical characteristics of the disease produced are traditional differentiating characteristics, but many exceptions are now recognized (see below). Visceral leishmaniasis results from infection with members of the *Leishmania donovani* complex, which includes many different species and subspecies. The New World forms are all carried by sandflies of the genus *Lutzomyia* . Old World leishmanias are transmitted by sandflies of the genus *Phlebotomus* . The different leishmanias present a range of clinical and epidemiologic characteristics that, for convenience only, are combined under three clinical groupings: (1) visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar), (2) cutaneous leishmaniasis (Oriental sore, Baghdad boil, wet cutaneous sore, dry cutaneous sore, chiclero ulcer, uta, and other names), and (3) mucocutaneous or naso-oral leishmaniasis (espundia). However, some species can induce several disease syndromes (eg, visceral leishmaniasis from one of the agents of cutaneous leishmaniasis or cutaneous leishmaniasis from the agent of visceral leishmaniasis). Similarly, the same clinical condition can be caused by different agents.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISM

Only the intracellular nonflagellated amastigote (Leishman-Donovan [LD] body) occurs in mammals (Figure 466). The sandfly transmits the infective promastigotes by bite. The promastigotes rapidly change to amastigotes after phagocytosis by macrophages, and then multiply, filling the cytoplasm of the macrophages. The infected cells burst, the released parasites are again phagocytosed, and the process is repeated, producing a cutaneous lesion or visceral infection depending upon the species of parasite and the host response. The amastigotes are oval, 26 x 13 µm, with a laterally placed oval vesicular nucleus and a dark-staining, rod-like kinetoplast.

Figure 466.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Leishmania donovani. A: Large reticuloendothelial cell of spleen with amastigotes. B: Promastigotes as seen in sandfly gut or in culture. C: Dividing form. 2000 x . (Simple double circles represent the size of red cells.)

CULTURE AND GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS

In NNN or Tobie's medium, only the promastigotes are found. *L donovani* usually grows slowly, the promastigotes forming tangled clumps in the fluid. *L tropica* grows more quickly, promastigotes forming small rosettes attached by their flagella in the fluid, while *L braziliensis* may produce a wax-like surface with fewer, smaller promastigotes. In contrast, *L mexicana* produces rapid growth of large organisms in simple blood agar medium. In tissue cultures, intracellular amastigotes may occur in addition to the extracellular promastigotes.

VARIATIONS

There are strain differences in virulence, tissue tropism, and biologic and epidemiologic characteristics, as well as the serologic and biochemical criteria previously noted. The New World species (or subspecies) of cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis have been placed within the *L mexicana* and *L braziliensis* complexes, respectively, and the agents of visceral leishmaniasis have been placed within the *L donovani* complex as geographically distinct species (or subspecies).

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

L donovani, which causes kala-azar, spreads from the site of inoculation to multiply in reticuloendothelial cells, especially macrophages in spleen, liver, lymph nodes, and bone marrow. This is accompanied by marked hyperplasia of the spleen. Progressive emaciation is accompanied by growing weakness. There is irregular fever, sometimes hectic. Untreated cases with symptoms of kala-azar usually are fatal. Some forms, especially in India, develop a postcure florid cutaneous resurgence, with abundant parasites in cutaneous vesicles, 12 years later (post-kala-azar dermal leishmanoid).

L tropica, L major, L mexicana, L braziliensis, and other dermotropic forms induce a dermal lesion at the site of inoculation by the sandfly: cutaneous leishmaniasis, Oriental sore, Delhi boil, etc. Mucous membranes are rarely involved. The dermal layers are first affected, with cellular infiltration and proliferation of amastigotes intracellularly and spreading extracellularly, until the infection penetrates the epidermis and causes ulceration. Satellite lesions may be found (hypersensitivity or recidivans type of cutaneous leishmaniasis) that contain few or no parasites, do not readily respond to treatment, and induce a strongly granulomatous scarring reaction. In Venezuela, a cutaneous disseminating form, caused by *L mexicana pifanoi,* is known. In Ethiopia, a form known as *L aethiopica* causes a similar nonulcerating, blistering, spreading cutaneous leishmaniasis. Both forms are typically anergic and nonreactive to skin test antigen and contain large numbers of parasites in the dermal blisters.

L braziliensis braziliensis causes mucocutaneous or nasopharyngeal leishmaniasis in Amazonian South America. It is known by many local names. The lesions are slow-growing but extensive (sometimes 510 cm). From these sites, migration appears to occur rapidly to the nasopharyngeal or palatine mucosal surfaces, where no further growth may take place for years. After months to over 20 years, relentless erosion may develop, destroying the nasal septum and surrounding regions in an often intractable, fungating, polypoid course. In such instances, death occurs from asphyxiation due to blockage of the trachea, starvation, or respiratory infection. This is the classic clinical picture of espundia, most commonly found in the Amazon basin. At high altitudes in Peru, the clinical features (uta) resemble those of Oriental sore. *L braziliensis guyanensis* infection frequently spreads along lymphatic routes, where it appears as a linear chain of nonulcerating lesions. *L mexicana* infection is more typically confined to a single, indolent, ulcerative lesion that heals in about 1 year, leaving a characteristic depressed circular scar. In Mexico and Guatemala, the ears are frequently involved (chiclero ulcer), usually with a cartilage-attacking infection without ulceration and with few parasites.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Lymph node aspirates, scrapings, and biopsies from the margin of the lesion, not the center, are important in the cutaneous forms; lymph node aspirates, blood, and spleen, liver, or bone marrow puncture are important in kala-azar. Purulent discharges are of no value for diagnosis, although nasal scrapings may be useful. An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) technique using a 70-kDa antigen has been studied as a rapid and accurate field-applied tool to detect visceral leishmaniasis (in place of splenic aspiration or the direct agglutination test [DAT], which remains positive for some years after cure, a disadvantage for current diagnosis).

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Giemsa-stained smears and sections may show amastigotes, especially in material from kala-azar and under the rolled edges of cutaneous sores.

CULTURE

NNN medium is the medium most generally used. A diphasic rabbit blood agar culture, Tobie's medium, at about 2628 C, is especially suitable. Blood culture is satisfactory for *L donovani* and *L braziliensis.* Lymph node aspirates are suitable for all forms, and tissue aspirates, biopsy material, scrapings, or small biopsies from the edges of ulcers are useful for the cutaneous forms and often for kala-azar also. However, only promastigotes can be cultivated in the absence of living cells.

SEROLOGY

The formol-gel (aldehyde) test of Napier is a nonspecific test that detects an elevated serum globulin level in kala-azar. The IHA (indirect hemagglutination antibody) test or the IFA (indirect fluorescent antibody) test may be useful, but they lack sufficient sensitivity and may cross-react with *T cruzi.* The ELISA test is promising, as noted, and the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), especially when combined with Southern immunoblotting, demonstrates both high sensitivity and high specificity. Both tests avoid the need for invasive diagnostic methods, such as spleen or bone marrow punctures, both painful and potentially hazardous procedures. A skin test (Montenegro test) is epidemiologically important in indicating past exposure to any of the leishmanias.

Immunity

Recovery from cutaneous leishmaniasis confers a solid and permanent immunity, although it usually is species-specific and may be strain-specific as well. Natural resistance varies greatly among individuals and with age and sex. Vaccination with a living inoculum from a recently isolated culture significantly reduces the incidence of Oriental sore.

Immunity to kala-azar may develop but varies with the time of treatment and condition of the patient.

Treatment

Single lesions may be cleaned, curetted, treated with antibiotics if secondarily infected, and then covered and left to heal. For larger or nonhealing forms, pentavalent antimony sodium gluconate (Pentostam, Solustibosan) is still widely used, but is now being replaced by miltefosine, an orally administered alkylphosphocholine, also used as an anti-neoplastic agent. The only FDA-approved drug for treatment of visceral leishmaniasis in the United States is liposomal amphotericin B. It is expensive but effective and well tolerated (Guerrant et al, 2006). Miltefosine is widely used in India, where it was first tested and developed for kala-azar resistant to antimony compounds. Cycloguanil pamoate in oil (Camolar) and amphotericin B (Fungizone) can be used for espundia, which is frequently quite unresponsive to treatment. Local heat with hot water compresses (3942 C) applied directly 2030 min/d for 1230 days or by exposure to ultraviolet or infrared radiation for 20 min/d may be effective against the nonresponsive recidivans form of *L tropica* infection. Ketoconazole (Nizoral), given daily for 48 weeks, has also been used successfully against cutaneous leishmaniasis.

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Kala-azar, caused by *L donovani,* is found focally in most tropical and subtropical countries. Its local distribution is related to the prevalence of specific sandfly vectors. In the Mediterranean littoral and in middle Asia and South America, domestic and wild canids are reservoirs, and in the Sudan, various wild carnivores and rodents are reservoirs of endemic kala-azar. No animal reservoirs have been found for the forms from India and Kenya. Control is aimed at destroying breeding places and dogs, where appropriate, and protecting people from sandfly bites. Oriental sore occurs mostly in the Mediterranean region, North Africa, and the Middle and Near East. The "wet" type, caused by *L major,* is rural, and burrowing rodents are the main reservoir; the "dry" type, caused by *L tropica,* is urban, and humans are presumably the only reservoir. For *L braziliensis,* there are a number of wild but apparently no domestic animal reservoirs. Sandfly vectors are involved in all forms.

TRYPANOSOMA

Hemoflagellates of the genus *Trypanosoma* occur in the blood of mammals as mature elongated trypomastigotes. A multiplying epimastigote stage precedes the formation of infective trypomastigotes in the intermediate host (an insect vector) in all species of trypanosomes that infect humans. Trypanosomiasis is expressed as African sleeping sickness; Chagas' disease of the southern United States, Mexico, and Central and South America; and asymptomatic trypanosomiasis in Central and South America.

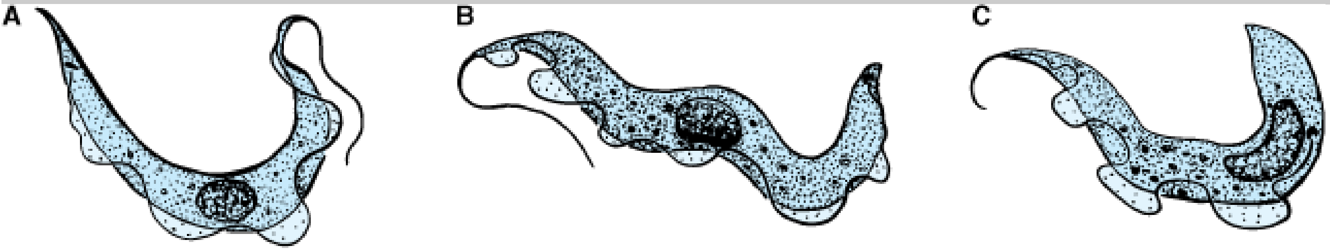
The parent form in Africa is *Trypanosoma brucei brucei,* which causes nagana in livestock and game animals; the two human forms are *T brucei rhodesiense* and *T brucei gambiense.* The three forms are indistinguishable morphologically but differ biochemically, ecologically, and epidemiologically.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

African *T b gambiense* and *T b rhodesiense* vary in size and shape of the body and length of the flagellum (usually 1530 µm) but are essentially indistinguishable (Figure 467). A "stumpy" short form is infective to the insect host and possesses a full battery of enzymes for energy metabolism. The elongated form requires host metabolic assistance and is specialized for rapid multiplication in the richly nutritious vertebrate bloodstream. The same forms are seen in blood as in lymph node aspirates.

Figure 467.

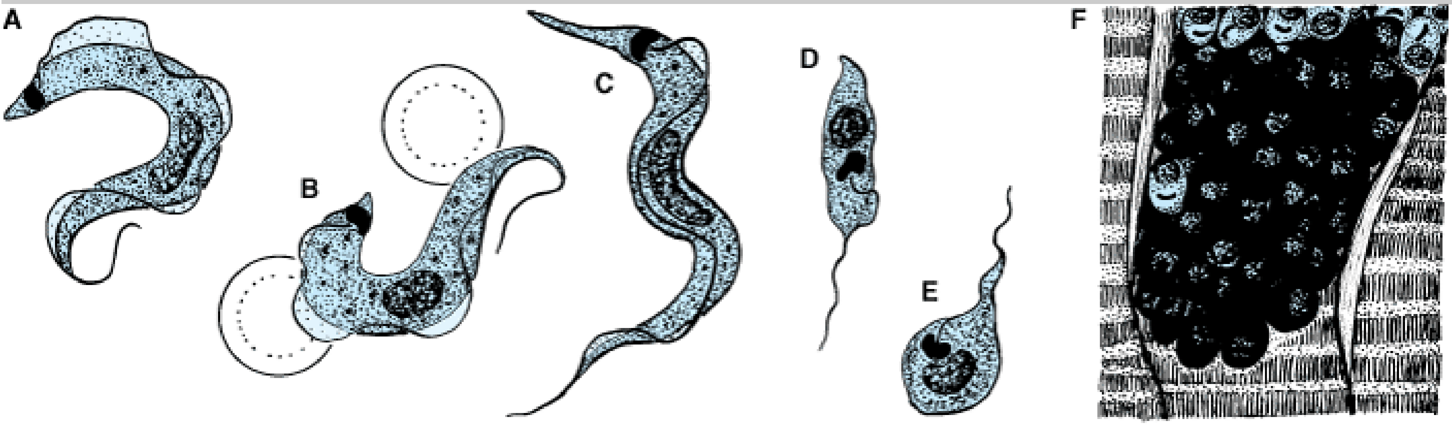


Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Trypanosoma brucei gambiense (or *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense,* indistinguishable in practice). A, B: Trypomastigotes in blood; C: epimastigote (intermediate type; kinetoplast not yet anterior to nucleus); found in tsetse fly, *Glossina* species. 1700 x .

The blood forms of American *T cruzi* (Figure 468) are present during the early acute stage and at intervals thereafter in smaller numbers. They are typical trypomastigotes, varying about a mean of 20 µm, frequently curved in a C shape when fixed and stained. A large, rounded terminal kinetosome in stained preparations is characteristic. The tissue forms, which are most common in heart muscle, liver, and brain, develop from amastigotes that multiply to form an intracellular colony after invasion of the host cell or phagocytosis of the parasite. *Trypanosoma rangeli* of South and Central America infects humans without causing disease and must therefore be carefully distinguished from the pathogenic species (Table 461).

Figure 468.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Trypanosoma cruzi. A, B, C: Trypomastigotes in blood; D, E: epimastigote (with short anterior undulating membrane); F: amastigote colony in heart muscle. 1700 x .

Table 461. Differentiation of *T cruzi* and *T rangeli* .

Blood forms
Size
20 µm
Over 30 µm
Shape
Often C-shaped in fixed preparations
Rarely C-shaped
Posterior kinetoplast
Terminal, large
Distinctly subterminal, small
Developmental stages in tissues
Amastigote to epimastigote
Not found (only trypomastigotes)
Triatomine bugs
In salivary gland or proboscis (or both)
Always absent
Usually present
In hindgut or feces
Present
Present

	T cruzi	*T rangeli*

CULTURE

T cruzi and *T rangeli* are readily cultivated (36 weeks) in the epimastigote form in fluid or diphasic media. Diagnosis of patients in the early, blood-borne phase of infection can be aided by using the multiplying powers of parasites in laboratory-reared, clean vector insects (kissing, conenose, or triatomine bugs) that have been allowed to feed on patients (see Xenodiagnosis, below).

VARIATION

There are variations in morphology (see above), virulence, and antigenic constitution. The African trypanosomes of the *T brucei* complex are remarkable in that they undergo development of a series of genetically controlled glycoprotein antigenic coats (variant surface glycoproteins, or VSGs). Successive waves of parasites in the host bloodstream are each covered with a distinct coat, one of an apparently unlimited number. This process is due to genetically induced changes in the development of the surface glycoprotein coat; it is viewed as a means of continuously escaping the host's antibody response by producing different antigenic membranes. Each population is reduced but is promptly replaced with another antigenic type before the preceding one is eliminated. Each trypanosome is thought to possess about 1000 VSG genes, an example of mosaic gene formation.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

Infective trypanosomes of *T b gambiense* and *T b rhodesiense* are introduced through the bite of the tsetse fly and multiply at the site of inoculation to cause variable induration and swelling (the primary lesion), which may progress to form a trypanosomal chancre. They spread to lymph nodes, to the bloodstream, and, in terminal stages, to the central nervous system, where they produce the typical sleeping sickness syndrome: lassitude, inability to eat, tissue wasting, unconsciousness, and death.

Infective forms of *T cruzi* do not pass to humans by triatomine bug bites (which is the mode of entry of the nonpathogenic *T rangeli*); rather, they are introduced when infected bug feces are rubbed into the conjunctiva, the bite site, or a break in the skin. At the site of *T cruzi* entry, there may be a subcutaneous inflammatory nodule or chagoma. Chagas' disease is common in infants. Unilateral swelling of the eyelids (Romaa's sign) is characteristic at onset, especially in children. The primary lesion is accompanied by fever, acute regional lymphadenitis, and dissemination to blood and tissues. The parasites can usually be detected within 12 weeks as trypomastigotes in the blood. Subsequent development depends upon the organs and tissues affected and on the nature of multiplication and release of toxins.

The African forms multiply extracellularly as trypomastigotes in the blood as well as in lymphoid tissues. *T cruzi* multiplies mostly within reticuloendothelial cells, going through a cycle starting with large agglomerations of amastigotes. In both African and American forms, multiplication in the tissues is punctuated by phases of parasitemia with later destruction by the host of the blood forms, accompanied by bouts of intermittent fever gradually decreasing in intensity. Parasitemia is more common in *T b rhodesiense* and is intermittent and scant with *T cruzi.*

The release of toxins explains much of the systemic and local reactions. The organs most seriously affected are the central nervous system and heart muscle. Interstitial myocarditis is the most common serious element in Chagas' disease. Other organs affected are the liver, spleen, and bone marrow, especially with chronic *T cruzi* infection. Invasion or toxic destruction of nerve plexuses in the alimentary tract walls leads to megaesophagus and megacolon, especially in Brazilian Chagas' disease. Megaesophagus and megacolon are absent in Colombian, Venezuelan, and Central American Chagas' disease. Central nervous system involvement is most characteristic of African trypanosomiasis. *T b rhodesiense* appears in the cerebrospinal fluid in about 1 month and *T b gambiense* in several months, but both are present in small numbers. *T b gambiense* infection is chronic and leads to progressive diffuse meningoencephalitis, with death from the sleeping syndrome usually following in 12 years. The more rapidly fatal *T b rhodesiense* produces somnolence and coma only during the final weeks of a terminal infection. All three trypanosomes are transmissible through the placenta, and congenital infections occur in hyperendemic areas.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

Blood, preferably collected when the patient's temperature rises; cerebrospinal fluid; lymph node or primary lesion aspirates; or specimens obtained by iliac crest, sternal bone marrow, or spleen puncture are used.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Fresh blood (or aspirated tissue in saline) is kept warm and examined immediately for the actively motile trypanosomes. Thick films may be stained with Giemsa's stain. Thin films stained with Giemsa's stain are necessary for confirmation. Centrifugation may be necessary. Tissue smears must be stained for identification of the pretrypanosomal stages. Centrifuged cerebrospinal fluid should be similarly examined; there is seldom more than one trypanosome per milliliter. The most reliable tests are smears of blood for *T b rhodesiense,* of lymph gland puncture specimens for *T b gambiense,* and of cerebrospinal fluid for *T b rhodesiense* and advanced *T b gambiense.*

CULTURE

Any specimens may be inoculated into Tobie's, Wenyon's semisolid, NNN, or other media for culture of *T cruzi* or *T rangeli.* The organisms are grown at 2224 C and subcultured every 12 weeks. Centrifuged material is examined microscopically for trypanosomes. Culture of the African forms is unsatisfactory.

ANIMAL INOCULATION

T cruzi and *T rangeli* may be detected by inoculating blood intraperitoneally into mice (when available, pups and kittens are animals of first choice). *T b rhodesiense* is often detectable and *T b gambiense* sometimes detectable by this procedure. Trypanosomes appear in the blood in a few days after successful inoculation.

SEROLOGY

A positive IHA, IFA, or CF (Machado's) test provides confirmatory support in *T cruzi* infection. Recently developed ELISAs using recombinant antigens now provide a highly specific and sensitive serodiagnostic tool for detection of *T cruzi.* These tests are especially useful for blood bank screening. African forms cause IFA reactions after about 12 days of infection. This is especially useful for *T b gambiense* diagnosis. A card test for direct agglutination is valuable for field use or for rural medical stations, using lyophilized trypanosome antigen.

XENODIAGNOSIS

This is the method of choice in suspected Chagas' disease if other examinations are negative, especially during the early phase of disease onset. *Because laboratory infection with* T cruzi *is a distinct hazard, the test should be performed only by workers trained in the procedure.* About six clean laboratory-reared triatomine bugs are fed on the patient, and their droppings are examined in 710 days for the various developmental forms. Defecation follows shortly after a fresh meal or may be forced by gently probing the bug's anus and then squeezing its abdomen. Xenodiagnosis is impracticable for the African forms.

Differential Diagnosis

T b rhodesiense and *T b gambiense* are morphologically identical but may be distinguished by their geographic distribution, vector species, and clinical disease in humans. The presence of specific IgM in the cerebrospinal fluid is considered pathognomonic for the encephalitic stage of African trypanosomiasis. The differentiation of *T cruzi* from *T rangeli* (Table 461) is important. A laboratory-based procedure has been described that differentiates the two species based on total parasite DNA digestant electrophoresed on agarose gels which are then stained with ethidium bromide.

Immunity

Humans show some individual variation in natural resistance to trypanosomes. Strain-specific CF and protecting antibodies can be detected in the plasma, and these presumably lead to the disappearance of blood forms. Each relapse of African trypanosomiasis is due to a strain serologically distinct from the preceding one. Apart from such relapses, Africans free from symptoms may still have trypanosomes in the blood.

Treatment

There is no effective drug treatment for American trypanosomiasis, although nifurtimox (Bayer 2502) plus gamma interferon may shorten the acute phase and may temporarily relieve some patients with trypomastigotes still present in the blood. Benznidazole (Rochagan) is a recently tested alternative drug. African trypanosomiasis is treated principally with suramin sodium (Germanin) or pentamidine isethionate (Lomidine). Late disease with central nervous system involvement requires melarsoprol (Mel B), as well as suramin or tryparsamide. A promising drug is eflornithine (difluoromethylornithine; DFbIO; [Ornidyl]), which works against both the blood and central nervous system phases of *T b gambiense* infection and the hemolymphatic stage of *T b rhodesiense.*

Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

African trypanosomiasis is restricted to recognized tsetse fly belts. *T b gambiense,* transmitted by the streamside tsetse *Glossina palpalis* and several other humid forest tsetse vectors, extends from West to central Africa and produces a relatively chronic infection with progressive central nervous system involvement. *T b rhodesiense,* transmitted by the woodland-savanna *Glossina morsitans, Glossina pallidipes,* and *Glossina fuscipes,* occurs in the eastern and southeastern savannas of Africa, with foci west of Lake Victoria. It causes a smaller number of cases but is more virulent. Bushbuck and other antelopes may serve as reservoirs of *T b rhodesiense,* whereas humans are the principal reservoir of *T b gambiense.* Control depends upon searching for and then isolating and treating patients with the disease; controlling movement of people in and out of fly belts; using insecticides in vehicles; and instituting fly control, principally with aerial insecticides and by altering habitats. Contact with reservoir animals is difficult to control, and insect repellent is of little value against tsetse bites.

Chemoprophylaxis, eg, with suramin sodium, is difficult and short-lived.

American trypanosomiasis (Chagas' disease) is especially important in Central and South America, although infection of animals extends much more widelyeg, to Maryland and southern California. A few autochthonous human cases have been reported in Texas and southern California. Certain triatomine bugs become as domiciliated as bedbugs, and infection may be brought in by rats, opossums, or armadilloswhich may spread the infection to domestic animals such as dogs and cats. Since no effective treatment is known, it is particularly important to control the vectors with residual insecticides and habitat modification, such as replacement of mud-brick (adobe) houses with thatched roofs, and to avoid contact with animal reservoirs. Chagas' disease occurs largely among people in poor economic circumstances. An estimated 2025 million persons harbor the parasite, and many of these sustain heart damage, with the result that their ability to work and their life expectancy are sharply reduced.

INTESTINAL AMEBAS

ENTAMOEBA HISTOLYTICA

Entamoeba histolytica is a common parasite in the large intestine of humans, certain other primates, and some other animals. Many cases are asymptomatic except in humans or among animals living under stress (eg, zoo-held primates).

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Three stages are encountered: the active ameba, the inactive cyst, and the intermediate precyst. The ameboid trophozoite is the only form present in tissues. It is also found in fluid feces during amebic dysentery. Its size is 1530 µm. The cytoplasm has two zones, a hyaline outer margin and a granular inner region that may contain red cells (pathognomonic) but ordinarily contains no bacteria. Iron-hematoxylin or Wheatley's trichrome staining shows the nuclear membrane to be lined by fine, regular granules of chromatin with a small central body (endosome or karyosome). Movement of trophozoites in fresh material is brisk and unidirectional. Pseudopodia are finger-like and broad.

Cysts are present only in the lumen of the colon and in mushy or formed feces. Subspherical cysts of pathogenic amebas range from 10 to 20 µm. Smaller cysts, from 10 µm ranging down to 3.5 µm, are considered nonpathogenic *Entamoeba hartmanni.* The cyst wall, 0.5 µm thick, is hyaline. The initial uninucleate cyst may contain a glycogen vacuole and chromatoidal bodies with characteristic rounded ends (in contrast to splinter chromatoidals in developing cysts of *Entamoeba coli*). Nuclear division within the cyst produces the final quadrinucleate cyst, during which time the chromatoid bodies and glycogen vacuoles disappear. Diagnosis in most cases rests on the characteristics of the cyst, since trophozoites usually appear only in diarrheic feces in active cases and survive for only a few hours, though they may be excellently preserved in polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) fixative. Stools may contain cysts with 14 nuclei depending on their degree of maturation.

CULTURE

Trophozoites are readily studied in cultures; both encystation and excystation can be controlled.

GROWTH REQUIREMENTS

Growth is most vigorous in various rich complex media or in cell culture under partial anaerobiosis at 37 C and pH 7.0with a mixed flora or at least a single coexisting species.

VARIATION

Variations in cyst size are due to nutritional differences or to the presence of the small nonpathogenic species, *E hartmanni.* The invasive or pathogenic species is now considered a species distinct from the more common lumen-dwelling nonpathogenic commensal species, given an older name, *E dispar,* with the name *E histolytica* reserved for the pathogenic form. *E dispar* and the related *E moshkovskii* are distinct species though microscopically identical, based on isoenzyme and genetic analyses. There is currently no readily available way to distinguish them except by isoenzyme electrophoresis and DNA analysis. The presence of red cells in the trophozoites, amebic antibodies in the blood, or clinical indications must therefore be relied upon in the absence of the difficult and costly biochemical analyses.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

The trophozoite emerges from the ingested cyst (metacyst) after activation of the excystation process in the stomach and duodenum. The metacyst divides rapidly, producing four amebulae (one for each cyst nucleus), each of which divides again to produce eight small trophozoites per infective cyst. These pass to the cecum and produce a population of lumen-dwelling trophozoites. The trophozoites multiply by binary fission. In the majority of infections, perhaps 90%, the infection remains luminal, and the trophozoites multiply as a bacteria-feeding colony, ultimately encyst, and pass out in the feces. These are presumed to be due to *E dispar, E moshkovskii , or E hartmanni.* Disease results when the trophozoites of *E histolytica* invade the intestinal epithelium. Mucosal invasion with the aid of proteolytic enzymes occurs through the crypts of Lieberkühn, forming discrete ulcers with a pinheadsized center and raised edges, from which mucus, necrotic cells, and amebas pass. Pathologic changes are always induced by trophozoites: *E histolytica* cysts are not produced in tissues. The mucosal surface between ulcers typically is normal. Amebas multiply and accumulate above the muscularis mucosae, often spreading laterally. Healing may occur spontaneously with little tissue erosion if regeneration proceeds more rapidly than destruction, or the amebic trophozoites may break through the muscularis into the submucosa. Rapid lateral spread of the multiplying amebas follows, undermining the mucosa and producing the characteristic "flask-shaped" ulcer of primary amebiasis: a small point of entry, leading via a narrow neck through the mucosa into an expanded necrotic area in the submucosa. Bacterial invasion usually does not occur at this time, cellular reaction is limited, and damage is by lytic necrosis. Subsequent spread may coalesce colonies of amebas, undermining large areas of the mucosal surface. Trophozoites may penetrate the muscular coats and occasionally the serosa, leading to perforation into the peritoneal cavity. Subsequent enlargement of the necrotic area produces gross changes in the ulcer, which may develop shaggy overhanging edges, secondary bacterial invasion, and accumulation of neutrophilic leukocytes. Secondary intestinal lesions may develop as extensions from the primary lesion (usually in the cecum, appendix, or nearby portion of the ascending colon). The organisms may travel to the ileocecal valve and terminal ileum, producing a chronic infection. The sigmoid colon and rectum are favored sites for later lesions. An amebic inflammatory or granulomatous tumor-like mass (ameboma) may form on the intestinal wall, sometimes growing sufficiently large to block the lumen.

Factors that determine invasion of amebas include the following: the number of amebas ingested, the pathogenic capacity of the parasite strain, host factors such as gut motility and immune competence, and the presence of suitable enteric bacteria that enhance amebic growth. Correct and prompt identification of the *Entamoeba* species remains a critical problem. Until a rapid and reliable test is available to the diagnostic laboratory, confusion and needless treatment will continue. Trophozoites, especially with red cells in the cytoplasm, found in liquid or semiformed stools are pathognomonic. Formed stools usually contain cysts only, while patients with active disease and liquid stools (flecked with blood and mucous strands containing numerous amebas) usually pass trophozoites only. Symptoms vary greatly depending upon the site and intensity of lesions. Extreme abdominal tenderness, fulminating dysentery, dehydration, and incapacitation occur in serious disease. In less acute disease, onset of symptoms is usually gradual, and often includes episodes of diarrhea, abdominal cramps, nausea and vomiting, and an urgent desire to defecate. More frequently, there will be weeks of cramps and general discomfort, loss of appetite, and weight loss with general malaise. Symptoms may develop within 4 days of exposure, may occur up to a year later, or may never occur.

Extraintestinal infection is metastatic and rarely occurs by direct extension from the bowel. By far the most common form is amebic hepatitis or liver abscess (4% or more of clinical infections), which is assumed to be due to microemboli, including trophozoites carried through the portal circulation. It is assumed that hepatic microembolism with trophozoites is a common accompaniment of bowel lesions but that these diffuse focal lesions rarely progress. A true amebic abscess is progressive, nonsuppurative (unless secondarily infected), and destructive without compression and formation of a wall. The contents are necrotic and bacteriologically sterile, active amebas being confined to the walls. A characteristic "anchovy paste" is produced in the abscess and seen on surgical drainage. More than half of patients with amebic liver abscess give no history of intestinal infection, and only one-eighth of them pass cysts in their stools. Rarely, amebic abscesses also occur elsewhere (eg, lung, brain, spleen, or draining through the body wall). Any organ or tissue in contact with active trophozoites may become a site of invasion and abscess.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

SPECIMENS

1. Fluid feces

a. Fresh and warm for immediate examination for trophozoites.

b. Preserved in polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) fixative or Merthiolate-iodine-formalin (MIF) fixative for mailing to a diagnostic laboratory (in a waterproofed or double mailing tube, the inner one of metal).

c. After a saline purge (or high enema after saline purge) for cysts and trophozoites.

2. Formed feces for cysts.

3. Scrapings and biopsies obtained through a sigmoidoscope or (more commonly) colonoscope, most frequently found by colonoscopy.

4. Liver abscess aspirates collected from the edge of the abscess, not the necrotic center. Viscous aspirates should be treated with a liquefying enzyme such as streptodornase, then cultured or examined microscopically.

5. Blood for serologic tests and cell counts.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

If possible, always examine fresh warm feces for trophozoites if the patient is symptomatic and has diarrheic stools. Otherwise, stain smears with trichrome or iron-hematoxylin stain. The stools in amebic dysentery can usually be distinguished from those in bacillary dysentery: The former contain much fecal debris, small amounts of blood with strings of nontenacious mucus and degenerated red cells, few polymorphonuclear cells or macrophages, scattered Charcot-Leyden crystals, and trophozoites. Although considerable experience is required to distinguish *E histolytica* from *E coli* (see below), it is necessary to do so because misdiagnosis often leads to unnecessary treatment, overtreatment, or a failure to treat. The problem of routinely distinguishing *E histolytica* from *E dispar* or *E moshkovskii* remains acutely unresolved.

Differentiation of *E histolytica* (H) and *E coli* (C), the most common intestinal ameba other than *E dispar,* can be made in stained smears as follows:

Trophozoites

The cytoplasm in H is glassy and finely granular and contains only red cells and spherical vacuoles. The cytoplasm in C is granular, with many bacterial and other inclusions and ellipsoid vacuoles. The nucleus of H has a very small central endosome and fine regular chromatin granules lining the periphery; the nucleus of C has a larger, eccentric endosome, and the peripheral chromatin is more coarsely beaded and less evenly distributed around the nuclear membrane. Moribund trophozoites and precysts of H and C are usually indistinguishable.

Cysts

Glycogen vacuoles disappear during successive divisions. Nuclei resemble those of the trophozoites. Rare cysts of H and C may have 8 and 16 nuclei, respectively. Cysts of H in many preparations contain many uninucleate early cysts; these are rarely seen with C. Binucleate developing cysts of C often show the nuclei pushed to opposite sides of the cell wall by the large central glycogen vacuole. Chromatoidal bodies in early cysts of H are blunt-ended bars; those of C are splinter-like and often occur in clusters.

CULTURE

Diagnostic cultures are made in a layer of fluid overlying a solid nutrient base in partial anaerobiosis. Dobell's diphasic and Cleveland-Collier media are most often used.

SEROLOGY

Serologic testing is primarily for extraintestinal amebiasis, when stools are often negative. Serodiagnosis, most commonly by IHA test, is considered sensitive and specific, though it cannot distinguish recent from past infections. Serologic testing in intestinal infections is less reliable except where considerable tissue invasion has occurred. Commercially available preparations employ the latex agglutination technique (Serameba), Ouchterlony double diffusion (ParaTek), and counterelectrophoresis (Amoebogen). Positive responses to several tests are of value in supporting a tentative diagnosis in doubtful cases of extraintestinal amebiasis. Antiamebic antibodies occur only with *E histolytica,* since the nonpathogenic species do not elicit a serologic response.

The Enzymeba test is based on the finding of histolysain (the major cysteine protease of the virulent form) in the intestine plus circulating antibodies to histolysain after tissue invasion. The test is a solid-phase enzyme immunoassay to detect histolysain in stools. This test is especially helpful in cases where cysts or trophozoites are not found microscopically. Another test to distinguish pathogenic from nonpathogenic strains in a stool specimen is an ELISA that uses monoclonal antibodies against the galactose adhesin, a pathogen-specific epitope of *E histolytica.* Amebic antigen (Tech-Lab Test) in the stool is sensitive and specific for *E histolytica* and generally does not respond to *E dispar* or other nonpathogenic amebas.

RADIATION METHODS

Hepatic abscess, usually showing as an elevation of the right dome of the diaphragm, can be observed by ultrasonography, CT, MRI, or radioisotope scanning. The round or oval hepatic lesion is clearly and often abruptly demarcated from the surrounding normal tissue. Serologic tests in these cases are usually strongly positive.

Treatment

Asymptomatic (cyst-passing) amebiasis can be treated with iodoquinol (Yodoxin), *or* diloxanide furoate (Furamide), *or* paromomycin (Humatin).

Metronidazole (Flagyl) is probably a drug of choice for symptomatic amebiasis even though it is mutagenic in bacteria. For mild to moderate intestinal disease, give metronidazole *or* tinidazole (Fasigyn) (an excellent drug of low toxicity but not available in the United States). For severe intestinal disease (amebic dysentery), give the regimen described above *or,* if the other regimens cannot be followed, dehydroemetine (*or* emetine). For hepatic or other extraintestinal involvement *or* for ameboma, give metronidazole *or* tinidazole *or* dehydroemetine (*or* emetine).

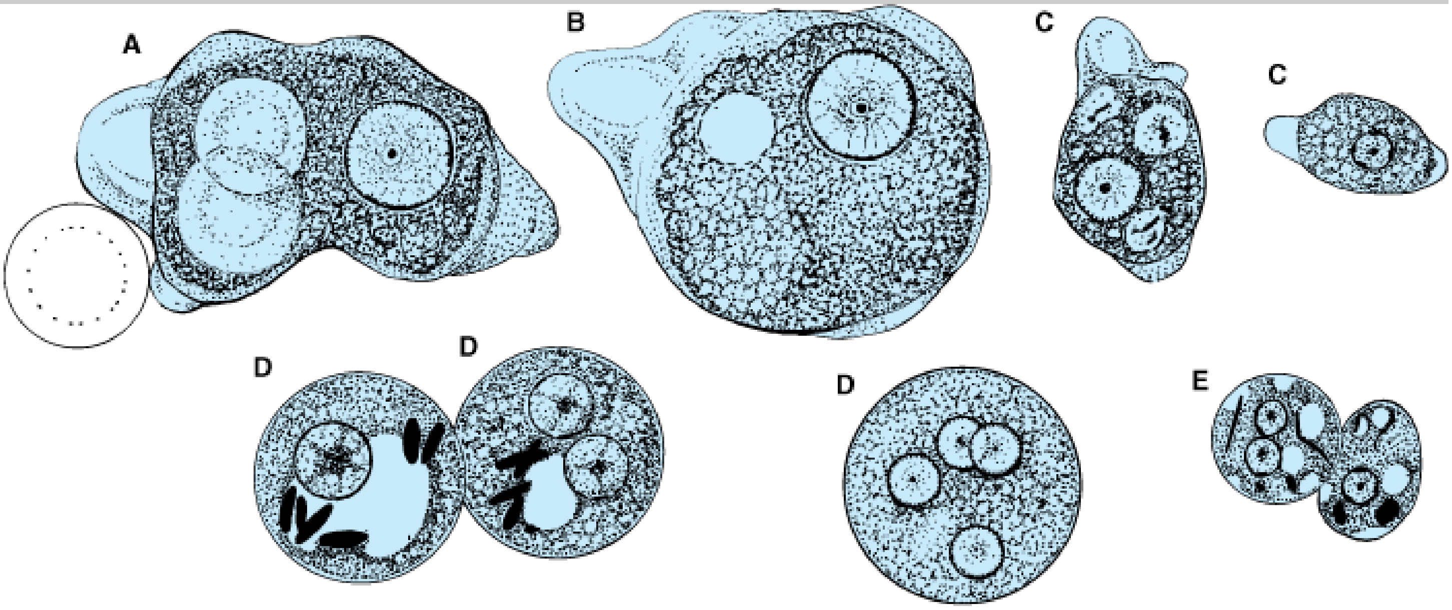
Epidemiology, Prevention, & Control

Cysts are usually ingested through contaminated water. In the tropics, contaminated vegetables and food are also important cyst sources; flies have been incriminated in areas of fecal pollution. Asymptomatic cyst passers are the main source of contamination and may be responsible for severe epidemic outbreaks where sewage leaks into the water supply or breakdown of sanitary discipline occurs (as in mental, geriatric, prison, or children's institutions). A high-carbohydrate, low-protein diet favors the development of amebic dysentery both in experimental animals and in known human cases. Control measures consist of improving environmental and food sanitation. Treatment of carriers is controversial, although it is agreed that they should be barred from food handling. Possible environmental contamination should be considered in the treatment decision for an asymptomatic cyst passer. No fully satisfactory and safe drug is yet available for chemoprophylaxis, and the mix of drugs required for therapy attests to the problems of treating amebiasis.

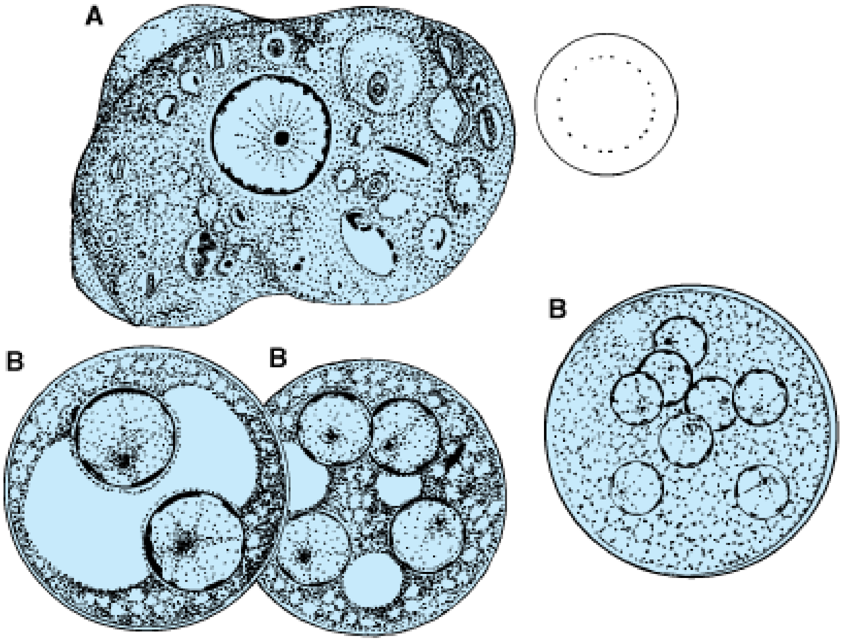
OTHER INTESTINAL AMEBAS

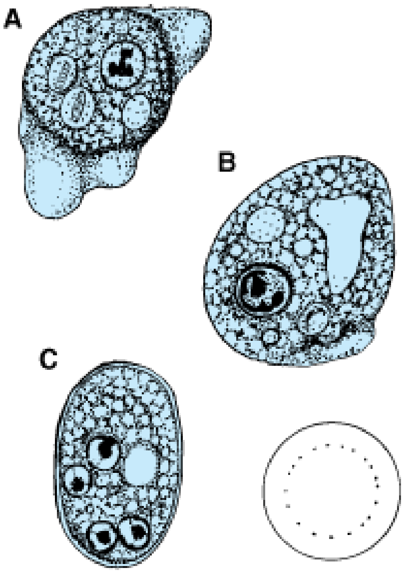
See Figure 469.

Figure 469.



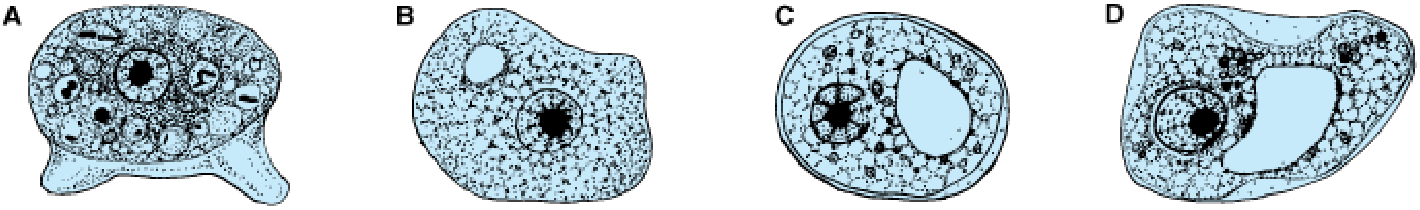
Entamoeba histolytica. **A**, **B**: Trophozoite (vegetative form) with ingested red cells in **A**; **C**: *Entamoeba hartmanni* trophozoite with food vacuoles, not red cells; **D**: cysts with 1, 2, and 4 nuclei and chromatoid bodies; **E**: *E hartmanni* binucleate cyst (left), uninucleate precyst (right).





Entamoeba coli. **A**: Trophozoite with vacuoles and inclusions; **B**: cysts with 2, 4, and 8 nuclei, the latter being mature.

Endolimax nana. **A**: Trophozoite; **B**: precystic form; **C**: binucleate cyst.



Iodamoeba bütschlii. **A**: Trophozoite; **B**: precystic form; **C** and **D**: cysts showing large glycogen vacuole (unstained in iron-hematoxylin preparation). Note variable shape of cysts.

Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Intestinal amebas. 2000 x . (Simple double circles represent the size of red cells.)

Entamoeba histolytica must be distinguished not only from *E dispar* and *E moshkovskii* but also from four other ameba-like organisms that are also intestinal parasites of humans: (1) *Entamoeba coli,* which is very common; (2) *Dientamoeba fragilis,* the only intestinal parasite other than *E histolytica* that has been suspected of causing diarrhea and dyspepsia, but not by invasion; (3) *Iodamoeba btschlii;* and (4) *Endolimax nana.* To facilitate detection, cysts should be concentrated by zinc sulfate flotation or a similar technique. Unstained, trichrome- or iron-hematoxylinstained, and iodine-stained preparations should be searched systematically. Mixed infections, including both *E histolytica* and *E dispar,* may occur. Polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) fixation is especially valuable for preservation of trophozoites. The presence of nonpathogenic amebas is strongly indicative of poor sanitation or of accidental fecal contaminationboth warnings of possible exposure to pathogenic *E histolytica* or a possible pre-AIDS immunodeficient state.

BALANTIDIUM COLI

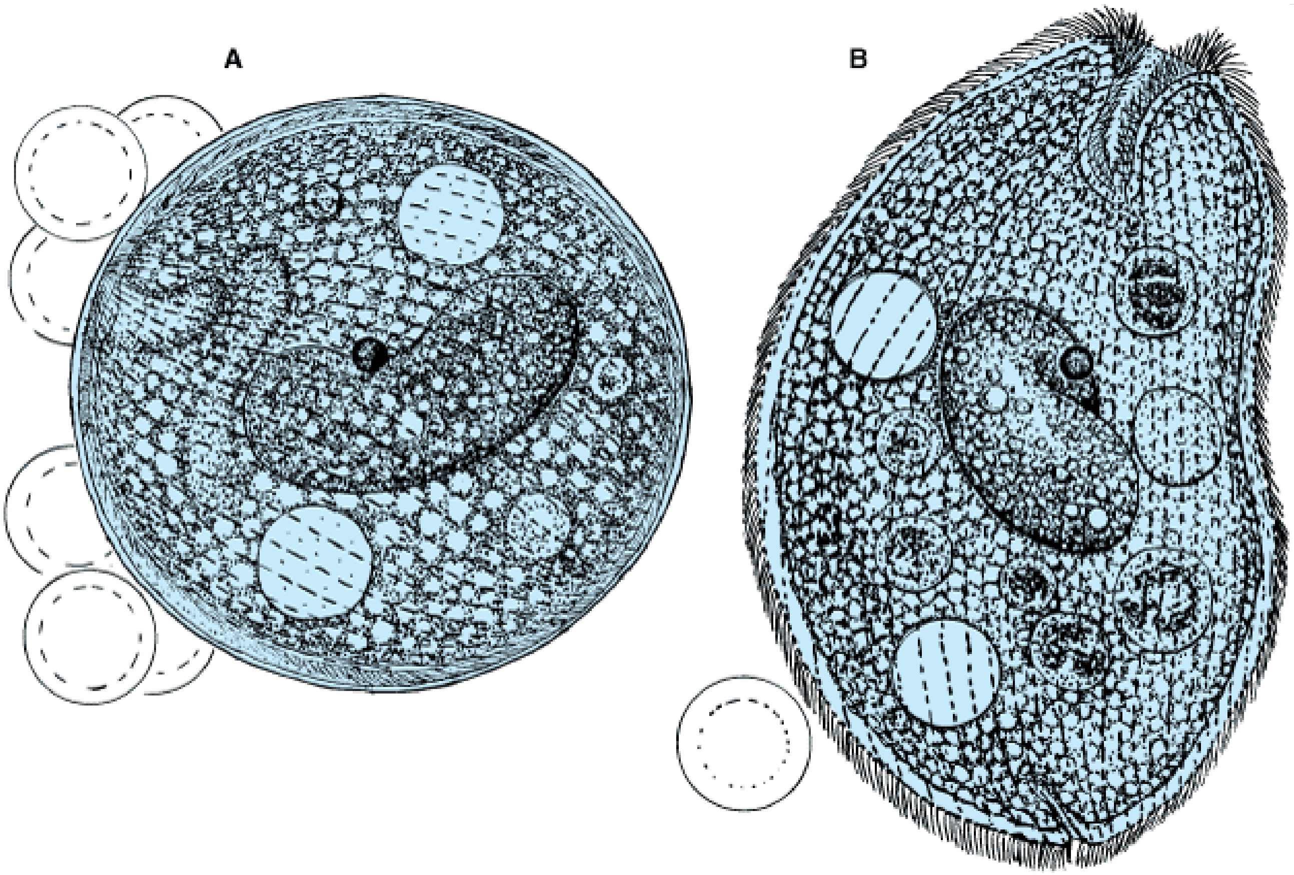
Balantidium coli, the cause of balantidiasis or balantidial dysentery, is the largest intestinal protozoan of humans. Morphologically similar ciliate parasites are found in swine and nonhuman primates.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

(Figure 4610.) The trophozoite is a ciliated, oval organism, 60 x 45 µm or larger. Its motion is a characteristic combination of steady progression and rotation around the long axis. The cell wall is lined with spiral rows of cilia. The cytoplasm surrounds two contractile vacuoles, food particles and vacuoles, and two nucleia large, kidney-shaped macronucleus and a much smaller, spherical genetic micronucleus. When the organism encysts, it secretes a double-layered wall. The macronucleus, contractile vacuoles, and portions of the ciliated cell wall may be visible in the cyst, which ranges from 40 µm to 70 µm in diameter.

Figure 4610.



Source: Brooks GF, Butel JS, Morse SA: *Jawetz, Melnick, & Adelberg's Medical Microbiology*, 24th Edition: http://www.accessmedicine.com

Balantidium coli. A: Cyst; B: trophozoite. 2000 x . (Simple double circles represent the size of red cells.)

CULTURE

These organisms may be cultivated in many media used for cultivation of intestinal amebas.

Pathogenesis, Pathology, & Clinical Findings

When cysts are ingested by the new host, the cyst walls dissolve and the released trophozoites descend to the colon, where they feed on bacteria and fecal debris, multiply both sexually and asexually, and form cysts that pass in the feces. Most infections are apparently harmless. However, rarely, the trophozoites invade the mucosa and submucosa of the large bowel and terminal ileum. As they multiply, abscesses and irregular ulcerations with overhanging margins are formed. The number of lesions formed depends upon intensity of infection and degree of individual host susceptibility. Chronic recurrent diarrhea, alternating with constipation, is the most common clinical manifestation, but there may be bloody mucoid stools, tenesmus, and colic. Extreme cases may mimic severe intestinal amebiasis, and some have been fatal.

Diagnostic Laboratory Tests

The diagnosis of balantidial infection, whether symptomatic or not, depends upon laboratory detection of trophozoites in liquid stools or, more rarely, of cysts in formed stools. Sigmoidoscopy may be useful for obtaining material directly from ulcerations for examination. Culturing is rarely necessary.

Immunity

Humans appear to have a high natural resistance to balantidial infection. Factors underlying individual susceptibility are not known.

Treatment

A course of oxytetracycline may be followed by iodoquinol or metronidazole if necessary.

Epidemiology

B coli is found in humans throughout the world, particularly in the tropics, but it is a rare infection. Infection results from ingestion of viable cysts previously passed in the stools by humans and possibly by swine. Pig farmers and slaughterhouse workers are particularly at risk, though poor sanitation and crowding in jails, mental institutions, or encampments are associated with infection. In the swine-based cultures of Papua New Guinea, infection levels of 28% have been reported.

FREE-LIVING AMEBAS

Primary amebic meningoencephalitis occurs in Europe and North America from amebic invasion of the brain. The free-living soil amebas *Naegleria fowleri, Acanthamoeba castellanii, Balamuthia mandrillaris,* and possibly species of *Hartmanella* have been implicated. Most cases have developed in children who were swimming and diving in warm, soil-contaminated pools, either indoors orusuallyoutdoors. The amebas, primarily *N fowleri,* apparently enter via the nose and the cribriform plate of the ethmoid, passing directly into brain tissue, where they rapidly form nests of amebas that cause extensive hemorrhage and damage, chiefly in the basilar portions of the cerebrum and the cerebellum. In most cases, death ensues in less than a week. Entry of *Acanthamoeba* into the central nervous system occurs from skin ulcers or traumatic penetration, such as keratitis from puncture of the corneal surface or ulceration from contaminated saline used with contact lenses. Chronic granulomatous disease from *Acanthamoeba* and *Balamuthia* may infect both immunocompetent and immunosuppressed humans and animals. Infection of the CNS from the skin lesion may occur weeks or months later. It is termed granulomatous amebic encephalitis to distinguish it from the explosive, rapid brain infection from *Naegleria* (primary amebic meningoencephalitis). Diagnosis is by microscopic examination of the cerebrospinal fluid, which contains the trophozoites and red cells but no bacteria. Amebas can be readily cultured on nonnutrient agar plates seeded with *Escherichia coli.* These soil amebas are distinguished by a large, distinct nucleus; by the presence of contractile vacuoles and mitochondria (absent in *Entamoeba*); and by cysts that have a single nucleus and lack glycogen or chromatoidal bodies. *Acanthamoeba* may encyst in invaded tissues, whereas *Naegleria* does not. Treatment with amphotericin B has been successful in a few cases, chiefly in the rare instances when diagnosis can be made quickly.

BLOOD SPOROZOANS

THE PLASMODIA

Sporozoa of the genus *Plasmodium* are pigment-producing ameboid intracellular parasites of vertebrates, with one habitat in red cells and another in cells of other tissues. Transmission to humans is by the bloodsucking bite of female *Anopheles* mosquitoes of various species.

Morphology & Identification

TYPICAL ORGANISMS

Four species of plasmodia typically infect humans: *Plasmodium vivax, P ovale, P malariae,* and *P falciparum.* The morphology and certain other characteristics of these species are summarized in Tables 462 and 463 and illustrated in Figure 4611.

Table 462. Some Characteristic Features of the Malaria Parasites of Humans (Romanowsky-Stained Preparations).

Parasitized red cells
Enlarged, pale. Fine stippling (Schffner's dots). Primarily invades reticulocytes, young red cells.
Not enlarged. No stippling (except with special stains). Primarily invades older red cells.
Not enlarged. Coarse stippling (Maurer's clefts). Invades all red cells regardless of age.[1]

Enlarged, pale. Schffner's dots conspicuous. Cells often oval, fimbriated, or crenated.
Level of usual maximum parasitemia
Up to 30,000/μL of blood.
Fewer than 10,000/μL.
May exceed 200,000/μL; commonly 50,000/μL.
Fewer than 10,000/μL.
Ring stage trophozoites
Large rings (1/31/2 red cell diameter). Usually one chromatin granule; ring delicate.
Large rings (1/3 red cell diameter). Usually one chromatin granule; ring thick.
Small rings (1/5 red cell diameter). Often two granules; multiple infections common; ring delicate, may adhere to red cells.
Large rings (1/3 red cell diameter). Usually one chromatin granule; ring thick.
Pigment in developing trophozoites
Fine; light brown; scattered.
Coarse; dark brown; scattered clumps; abundant.
Coarse; black; few clumps.
Coarse; dark yellow-brown; scattered.
Older trophozoites
Very pleomorphic.
Occasional band forms.
Compact and rounded.[1]

Compact and rounded.
Mature schizonts (segmenters)
More than 12 merozoites (1424).
Fewer than 12 large merozoites (612). Often in rosette.
Usually more than 12 merozoites (832). Very rare in peripheral blood.[1]

Fewer than 12 large merozoites (612). Often in rosette.
Gametocytes
Round or oval.
Round or oval.
Crescentic.
Round or oval.
Distribution in peripheral blood
All forms.
All forms.
Only rings and crescents (gametocytes).[1]

All forms.

	P vivax (Benign Tertian Malaria)	*P malariae* (Quartan Malaria)	*P falciparum* (Malignant Tertian Malaria)	*P ovale* (Ovale Malaria)

[1] Ordinarily, only ring stages or gametocytes are seen in peripheral blood infected with *P falciparum;* post-ring stages make red cells sticky, and they tend to be retained in deep capillary beds except in overwhelming, usually fatal infections.

Print CloseWindow

INTRODUCTION

Diagnostic medical microbiology is concerned with the etiologic diagnosis of infection. Laboratory procedures used in the diagnosis of infectious disease in humans include the following:

(1) Morphologic identification of the agent in stains of specimens or sections of tissues (light and electron microscopy).

(2) Culture isolation and identification of the agent.

(3) Detection of antigen from the agent by immunologic assay (latex agglutination, EIA, etc) or by fluorescein-labeled (or peroxidase-labeled) antibody stains.

(4) DNA-DNA or DNA-RNA hybridization to detect pathogen-specific genes in patients' specimens.

(5) Detection and amplification of organism nucleic acid in patients' specimens.

(6) Demonstration of meaningful antibody or cell-mediated immune responses to an infectious agent.

In the field of infectious diseases, laboratory test results depend largely on the quality of the specimen, the timing and the care with which it is collected, and the technical proficiency and experience of laboratory personnel. Although physicians should be competent to perform a few simple, crucial microbiologic testsmake and stain a smear, examine it microscopically, and streak a culture platetechnical details of the more involved procedures are usually left to the bacteriologist or virologist and the technicians on the staff. Physicians who deal with infectious processes must know when and how to take specimens, what laboratory examinations to request, and how to interpret the results.

This chapter discusses diagnostic microbiology for bacterial, fungal, chlamydial, and viral diseases. The diagnosis of parasitic infections is discussed in Chapter 46.

COMMUNICATION BETWEEN PHYSICIAN & LABORATORY

Diagnostic microbiology encompasses the characterization of thousands of agents that cause or are associated with infectious diseases. The techniques used to characterize infectious agents vary greatly depending upon the clinical syndrome and the type of agent being considered, be it virus, bacterium, fungus, or other parasite. Because no single test will permit isolation or characterization of all potential pathogens, clinical information is much more important for diagnostic microbiology than it is for clinical chemistry or hematology. The clinician must make a tentative diagnosis rather than wait until laboratory results are available. When tests are requested, the physician should inform the laboratory staff of the tentative diagnosis (type of infection or infectious agent suspected). Proper labeling of specimens includes such clinical data as well as the patient's identifying data (at least two methods of definitive identification) and the requesting physician's name and pertinent contact information.

Many pathogenic microorganisms grow slowly, and days or even weeks may elapse before they are isolated and identified. Treatment cannot be deferred until this process is complete. After obtaining the proper specimens and informing the laboratory of the tentative clinical diagnosis, the physician should begin treatment with drugs aimed at the organism thought to be responsible for the patient's illness. As the laboratory staff begins to obtain results, they inform the physician, who can then reevaluate the diagnosis and clinical course of the patient and perhaps make changes in the therapeutic program. This "feedback" information from the laboratory consists of preliminary reports of the results of individual steps in the isolation and identification of the causative agent.

DIAGNOSIS OF BACTERIAL & FUNGAL INFECTIONS

Specimens

Laboratory examination usually includes microscopic study of fresh unstained and stained materials and preparation of cultures with conditions suitable for growth of a wide variety of microorganisms, including the type of organism most likely to be causative based on clinical evidence. If a microorganism is isolated, complete identification may then be pursued. Isolated microorganisms may be tested for susceptibility to antimicrobial drugs. When significant pathogens are isolated before treatment, follow-up laboratory examinations during and after treatment may be appropriate.

A properly collected specimen is the single most important step in the diagnosis of an infection, because the results of diagnostic tests for infectious diseases depend upon the selection, timing, and method of collection of specimens. Bacteria and fungi grow and die, are susceptible to many chemicals, and can be found at different anatomic sites and in different body fluids and tissues during the course of infectious diseases. Because isolation of the agent is so important in the formulation of a diagnosis, the specimen must be obtained from the site most likely to yield the agent at that particular stage of illness and must be handled in such a way as to favor the agent's survival and growth. For each type of specimen, suggestions for optimal handling are given in the following paragraphs and in the section on diagnosis by anatomic site, below.

Recovery of bacteria and fungi is most significant if the agent is isolated from a site normally devoid of microorganisms (a normally sterile area). Any type of microorganism cultured from blood, cerebrospinal fluid, joint fluid, or the pleural cavity is a significant diagnostic finding. Conversely, many parts of the body have a normal microbial flora (Chapter 11) that may be altered by endogenous or exogenous influences. Recovery of potential pathogens from the respiratory, gastrointestinal, or genitourinary tracts; from wounds; or from the skin must be considered in the context of the normal flora of each particular site. Microbiologic data must be correlated with clinical information in order to arrive at a meaningful interpretation of the results.

A few general rules apply to all specimens:

(1) The quantity of material must be adequate.

(2) The sample should be representative of the infectious process (eg, sputum, not saliva; pus from the underlying lesion, not from its sinus tract; a swab from the depth of the wound, not from its surface).

(3) Contamination of the specimen must be avoided by using only sterile equipment and aseptic precautions.

(4) The specimen must be taken to the laboratory and examined promptly. Special transport media may be helpful.

(5) Meaningful specimens to diagnose bacterial and fungal infections must be secured before antimicrobial drugs are administered. If antimicrobial drugs are given before specimens are taken for microbiologic study, drug therapy

may have to be stopped and repeat specimens obtained several days later.

The type of specimen to be examined is determined by the presenting clinical picture. If symptoms or signs point to involvement of one organ system, specimens are obtained from that source. In the absence of localizing signs or symptoms, repeated blood samples for culturing are taken first, and specimens from other sites are then considered in sequence, depending in part upon the likelihood of involvement of a given organ system in a given patient and in part upon the ease of obtaining specimens.

Microscopy & Stains

Microscopic examination of stained or unstained specimens is a relatively simple and inexpensive but much less sensitive method than culture for detection of small numbers of bacteria. A specimen must contain at least 10^5 organisms per milliliter before it is likely that organisms will be seen on a smear. Liquid medium containing 10^5 organisms per milliliter does not appear turbid to the eye. Specimens containing 10^2 10^3 organisms per milliliter produce growth on solid media, and those containing ten or fewer bacteria per milliliter may produce growth in liquid media.

Gram staining is a very useful procedure in diagnostic microbiology. Most specimens submitted when bacterial infection is suspected should be smeared on glass slides, Gram-stained, and examined microscopically. The materials and method for Gram staining are outlined in Table 471. On microscopic examination, the Gram reaction (purple-blue indicates gram-positive organisms; red, gram-negative) and morphology (shape: cocci, rods, fusiform, or other; see Chapter 2) of bacteria should be noted. The appearance of bacteria on Gram-stained smears does not permit identification of species. Reports of gram-positive cocci in chains are suggestive of, but not definitive for, streptococcal species; gram-positive cocci in clusters suggest a staphylococcal species. Gram-negative rods can be large, small, or even coccobacillary. Some nonviable gram-positive bacteria can stain gram-negatively. Typically, bacterial morphology has been defined using organisms grown on agar. However, bacteria in body fluids or tissue can have highly variable morphology.

Table 471. Gram and Acid-Fast Staining Methods.

Gram stain
(1) Fix smear by heat.
(2) Cover with crystal violet.
(3) Wash with water. Do not blot.
(4) Cover with Gram's iodine.
(5) Wash with water. Do not blot.
(6) Decolorize for 1030 seconds with gentle agitation in acetone (30 mL) and alcohol (70 mL).
(7) Wash with water. Do not blot.
(8) Cover for 1030 seconds with safranin (2.5% solution in 95% alcohol).
(9) Wash with water and let dry.
Ziehl-Neelsen acid-fast stain
(1) Fix smear by heat.
(2) Cover with carbolfuchsin, steam gently for 5 minutes over direct flame (or for 20 minutes over a water bath).
(3) Wash with water.
(4) Decolorize in acid-alcohol until only a faint pink color remains.
(5) Wash with water.
(6) Counterstain for 1030 seconds with Loeffler's methylene blue.
(7) Wash with water and let dry.
Kinyoun carbolfuchsin acid-fast stain

(1) Formula: 4 g basic fuchsin, 8 g phenol, 20 mL 95% alcohol, 100 mL distilled water.
(2) Stain fixed smear for 3 minutes (no heat necessary) and continue as with Ziehl-Neelsen stain.

Specimens submitted for examination for mycobacteria should be stained for acid-fast organisms, using either Ziehl-Neelsen stain or Kinyoun stain (Table 471). An alternative fluorescent stain for mycobacteria, auramine-rhodamine stain, is more sensitive than other stains for acid-fast organisms but requires fluorescence microscopy and, if results are positive, confirmation of morphology with an acid-fast stain (Chapter 24).

Immunofluorescent antibody (IF) staining is useful in the identification of many microorganisms. Such procedures are more specific than other staining techniques but also more cumbersome to perform. The fluorescein-labeled antibodies in common use are made from antisera produced by injecting animals with whole organisms or complex antigen mixtures. The resultant polyclonal antibodies may react with multiple antigens on the organism that was injected and may also cross-react with antigens of other microorganisms or possibly with human cells in the specimen. Quality control is important to minimize nonspecific IF staining. Use of monoclonal antibodies may circumvent the problem of nonspecific staining. IF staining is most useful in confirming the presence of specific organisms such as *Bordetella pertussis* or *Legionella pneumophila* in colonies isolated on culture media. The use of direct IF staining on specimens from patients is more difficult and less specific.

Stains such as calcofluor white, methenamine silver, and occasionally periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) and others are used for tissues and other specimens in which fungi or other parasites are present. Such stains are not specific for given microorganisms, but they may define structure so that morphologic criteria can be used for identification. Calcofluor white binds to cellulose and chitin in the cell walls of fungi and fluoresces under long-wave length ultraviolet light. It may demonstrate morphology that is diagnostic of the species (eg, spherules with endospores in *Coccidioides immitis* infection). *Pneumocystis jiroveci* cysts are identified morphologically in silver-stained specimens. PAS is used to stain tissue sections when fungal infection is suspected. After primary isolation of fungi, stains such as lactophenol cotton blue are used to distinguish fungal growth and to identify organisms by their morphology.

Specimens to be examined for fungi can be examined unstained after treatment with a solution of 10% potassium hydroxide, which breaks down the tissue surrounding the fungal mycelia to allow a better view of the hyphal forms. Phase contrast microscopy is sometimes useful in unstained specimens. Darkfield microscopy is used to detect *Treponema pallidum* in material from primary or secondary syphilitic lesions.

Culture Systems

For diagnostic bacteriology, it is necessary to use several types of media for routine culture, particularly when the possible organisms include aerobic, facultatively anaerobic, and obligately anaerobic bacteria. The specimens and culture media used to diagnose the more common bacterial infections are listed in Table 472. The standard medium for specimens is blood agar, usually made with 5% sheep blood. Most aerobic and facultatively anaerobic organisms will grow on blood agar. Chocolate agar, a medium containing heated blood with or without supplements, is a second necessary medium; some organisms that do not grow on blood agar, including pathogenic neisseria and haemophilus, will grow on chocolate agar. A selective medium for enteric gram-negative rods (either MacConkey agar or eosin-methylene blue [EMB] agar) is a third type of medium used routinely. Specimens to be cultured for obligate anaerobes must be plated on at least two additional types of media, including a highly supplemented agar such as brucella agar with hemin and vitamin K and a selective medium containing substances that inhibit the growth of enteric gram-negative rods and facultatively anaerobic or anaerobic gram-positive cocci.

Table 472. Common Localized Bacterial Infections: Agents, Specimens, and Diagnostic Tests.

Cellulitis of skin
Punch biopsy
Group A β-hemolytic streptococci, *Staphylococcus aureus*
Occasionally gram-positive cocci
Blood agar
Biopsy at leading edge of erythema may yield the organism
Impetigo
Swab
As for cellulitis (above); rarely, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*
As for cellulitis (above) and pharyngitis (below)
Culture rarely indicated
Skin ulcers
Punch biopsy; deep tissue aspirate or biopsy
Mixed flora
Mixed flora
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobe media
Skin ulcers below the waist often contain aerobes and anaerobes like gastrointestinal flora
Meningitis
CSF
Neisseria meningitidis
Gram-negative intracellular diplococci
Chocolate agar[1] and blood agar for CSF cultures

Latex agglutination (bacterial antigen detection) is a poor test to diagnose the cause of meningitis
Haemophilus influenzae
Small gram-negative coccobacilli
Chocolate agar[1]

Latex agglutination (bacterial antigen detection) is a poor test to diagnose the cause of meningitis
Streptococcus pneumoniae
Gram-positive cocci in pairs
Blood agar
Latex agglutination (bacterial antigen detection) is a poor test to diagnose the cause of meningitis; immunochromatographic assay is more sensitive
Group B streptococci
Gram-positive cocci in pairs and chains
Blood agar
Latex agglutination (bacterial antigen detection) is a poor test to diagnose the cause of meningitis
Escherichia coli and other Enterobacteriaceae
Gram-negative rods
Blood agar
Mainly in newborns; no need for selective media in CSF culture
Listeria monocytogenes

Gram-positive rods
Blood agar
β-Hemolytic
Brain abscess
Pus
Mixed infection; anaerobic gram-positive and gram-negative cocci and rods, aerobic gram-positive cocci
Gram-positive cocci or mixed flora
Blood agar, chocolate agar,[1] anaerobe media

Specimen must be obtained surgically and transported under strict anaerobic conditions
Perioral abscess
Pus
Mixed flora of mouth and pharynx
Mixed flora
Blood agar, chocolate agar,[1] MacConkey or EMB agar; anaerobic media

Usually mixed bacterial infection; rarely, actinomycosis
Pharyngitis
Swab
Group A streptococci
Not recommended
Blood agar or selective medium
β-Hemolytic
C diphtheriae
Not recommended
Loeffler's or Pai's medium, then cysteine-tellurite or Tinsdale's medium
Granular rods in "Chinese character" patterns in smears from culture; toxicity testing required
Whooping cough (pertussis)
Swab
Bordetella pertussis
Not recommended
Regan-Lowe agar
Fluorescent antibody test identifies organisms from culture and occasionally in direct smears; PCR is more sensitive than culture
Epiglottitis
Swab
H influenzae
Usually not helpful
Chocolate agar[1] (also use blood agar)

H influenzae is part of normal flora in nasopharynx
Pneumonia
Sputum
S pneumoniae
Many PMNs, gram-positive cocci in pairs or chains. Capsule swelling with omniserum (quellung test)
Blood agar; also MacConkey, EMB, and chocolate agars
S pneumoniae is part of normal flora in nasopharynx. Blood cultures specific (positive) in 1020%
S aureus
Gram-positive cocci in pairs, tetrads, and clusters

Blood agar; also MacConkey, EMB, and chocolate agars
Uncommon cause of pneumonia. Usually β-hemolytic, coagulase-positive
Enterobacteriaceae and other gram-negative rods
Gram-negative rods
Blood agar; MacConkey or EMB agar
Causes of hospital-associated pneumonia
Mixed anaerobes and aerobes
Mixed respiratory tract flora; sometimes many PMNs
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobe agar
Specimens must be obtained by bronchoscopy using a protected brush or transtracheal aspiration; expectorated sputum is unsatisfactory for anaerobes
Chest empyema
Pus
Same as pneumonia, or mixed flora infection
Mixed flora
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobe media
Usually pneumonia; mixed aerobic and anaerobic flora derived from oropharynx
Liver abscess
Pus
E coli; Bacteroides fragilis; mixed aerobic or anaerobic flora
Gram-negative rods and mixed flora
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobe media
Commonly enteric gram-negative aerobes and anaerobes; consider *Entamoeba histolytica* infection
Cholecystitis
Bile
Gram-negative enteric aerobes, also *B fragilis*
Gram-negative rods
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobic conditions
Usually gram-negative rods from gastrointestinal tract
Abdominal or perirectal abscess
Pus
Gastrointestinal flora
Mixed flora
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobe media
Aerobic and anaerobic bowel flora; often more than five species grown
Enteric fever, typhoid
Blood, feces, urine
Salmonella Typhi
Not recommended
MacConkey, Hektoen, bismuth sulfite agars; others
Multiple specimens should be cultured; lactose-negative. H_2 S produced

Enteritis, enterocolitis, bacterial diarrheas, "gastroenteritis"
Feces
Salmonella species other than *S* Typhi
Gram stain or methylene blue stain may show PMNs
MacConkey, Hektoen, bismuth sulfite agars; others
Non-lactose-fermenting colonies onto TSI[1] slants: Nontyphoid salmonellae produce acid and gas in butt, alkaline slant, and H_2 S

Shigella species
Gram stain or methylene blue stain may show PMNs
MacConkey, Hektoen, bismuth sulfite agars; others
Non-lactose-fermenting colonies onto TSI[1] slants: Shigellae produce alkaline slant, acid butt without gas

Campylobacter jejuni
"Gull wing-shaped" gram-negative rods and often PMNs
Campy BAP or similar medium
Incubate at 42 C; colonies oxidase-positive; smear shows "gull wing-shaped" rods
Vibrio cholerae
Not recommended
Thiosulfate citrate bile salts (TCBS) sucrose agar; others. Taurocholate-peptone broth for enrichment
Yellow colonies on TCBS. *V cholerae* is oxidase-positive
Other vibrios
Not recommended
As for *V cholerae*
Differentiate from *V cholerae* by biochemical and culture tests
Yersinia enterocolitica
Not recommended
MacConkey, CIN[2]

Enrichment at 4 C helpful; incubate cultures at 25 C
Hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic uremic syndrome
Feces
E coli O157:H7
Not recommended
Sorbitol MacConkey medium
Look for sorbitol-negative colonies; type with antisera for O antigen 157 and flagellar antigen 7
Urinary tract infection
Urine (clean-catch midstream specimen or one obtained by bladder catheterization or suprapubic aspiration)
E coli; Enterobacteriaceae; other gram-negative rods
Gram-negative rods seen on stained smear of uncentrifuged urine indicate more than 10^5 organisms/mL

Blood agar; MacConkey or EMB agar
Gray colonies that are β-hemolytic and give a positive spot indole test are usually *E coli;* others require further biochemical tests
Urethritis/cervicitis
Swab
Neisseria gonorrhoeae
Gram-negative diplococci in or on PMNs. Specific for urethral discharge in men; less reliable in women
Modified Thayer-Martin or similar antibiotic-containing selective medium
Positive stained smear diagnostic in men. Culture needed in women. Gonococci are oxidase-positive
Chlamydia trachomatis
PMNs with no associated gram-negative diplococci
Culture in McCoy cells treated with cycloheximide
Crescent-shaped inclusions in epithelial cells by stains or immunofluorescence. Direct EIA[3] or fluorescent antibody tests can be helpful; LCR[4] or PCR[5] is more sensitive

Genital ulcers
Swab
Haemophilus ducreyi (chancroid)
Mixed flora
Chocolate agar with IsoVitaleX and vancomycin
Differential diagnosis of genital ulcers includes herpes simplex infection
Treponema pallidum (syphilis)
Darkfield or fluorescent antibody examination shows spirochetes
None
Pus aspirated from suppurating lymph nodes
C trachomatis (lymphogranuloma venereum)
PMNs with no associated gram-negative diplococci
Culture pus in cell culture (as for urethritis)
Pelvic inflammatory disease
Cervical swab
N gonorrhoeae
PMNs with associated gram-negative diplococci; mixed flora may be present
Modified Thayer-Martin or similar antibiotic-containing selective medium; nucleic acid amplification test preferred
Causative organisms may be gonococci, anaerobes, others. Anaerobes always present in endocervix; thus, endocervical specimen not suitable for anaerobic culture
C trachomatis
See above; nucleic acid amplification test preferred
Cell culture (as for urethritis)
Aspirate from cul-de-sac or by laparoscope
N gonorrhoeae
Gram-negative diplococci in or on PMNs
Modified Thayer-Martin medium
C trachomatis
See above
Cell culture (as for urethritis)
Mixed flora
Mixed flora
Blood, MacConkey, or EMB agar; anaerobic medium
Usually mixed anaerobic and aerobioc bacteria
Arthritis
Joint aspirate, blood
S aureus
Gram-positive cocci in pairs, tetrads, and clusters
Blood agar; chocolate agar[1]

Occurs in both children and adults; coagulase-positive; usually β-hemolytic
N gonorrhoeae
Gram-negative diplococci in or on PMNs
Modified Thayer-Martin medium
Most common cause of septic arthritis in young adults
Others
Morphology depends upon organisms
Blood agar, chocolate agar;[1] anaerobic medium

Includes streptococci, gram-negative rods, and anaerobes
Osteomyelitis
Pus or bone specimen obtained by aspiration or surgery
Multiple; often *S aureus*
Morphology depends upon organisms
Blood agar, MacConkey, EMB agar; anaerobic medium
Usually aerobic organisms; *S aureus* is most common; gram-negative rods frequent; anaerobes less common

Disease	Specimen	Common Causative Agents	Usual Microscopic Findings	Culture Media	Comments

[1] A chemical supplement such as IsoVitaleX enhances growth of *Haemophilus* and *Neisseria* species.

[2] TSI = triple sugar iron agar; CIN = Cefsulodin-Irgasan-Novobiocin medium.

[3] EIA = enzyme immunoassay.

[4] LCR = ligase chain reaction.

[5] PCR = polymerase chain reaction.

Many other specialized media are used in diagnostic bacteriology; choices depend on the clinical diagnosis and the organism under consideration. The laboratory staff selects the specific media on the basis of the information in the culture request. Thus, freshly made Bordet-Gengou or charcoal-containing medium is used to culture for *B pertussis* in the diagnosis of whooping cough, and other special media are used to culture for *Vibrio cholerae, Corynebacterium diphtheriae, Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* and *Campylobacter* species. For culture of mycobacteria, specialized solid and liquid media are commonly used. These media may contain inhibitors of other bacteria. Because many mycobacteria grow slowly, the cultures must be incubated and examined periodically for weeks (see Chapter 24).

Broth cultures in highly enriched media are important for back-up cultures of biopsy tissues and body fluids such as cerebrospinal fluid. Broth cultures may give positive results when there is no growth on solid media because of the small number of bacteria present in the inoculum (see above).

Many yeasts will grow on blood agar. Biphasic and mycelial phase fungi grow better on media designed specifically for fungi. Brain-heart infusion agar, with and without antibiotics, and inhibitory mold agar have largely replaced the traditional use of Sabouraud's dextrose agar to grow fungi. Media made with plant and vegetable materials, the natural habitats for many fungi, also grow many fungi that cause infections. Cultures for fungi are commonly done in paired sets, one set incubated at 2530 C and the other at 3537 C. Table 473 outlines specimens and other tests to be used for the diagnosis of fungal infections.

Table 473. Common Fungal Infections: Agents, Specimens, and Diagnostic Tests.

Invasive (deep-seated) mycoses
Aspergillosis: *Aspergillus fumigatus,* other *Aspergillus* species
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
Serum galactomannan assays are availablesensitivity and specificity are variable
Serology seldom useful
Disseminated

Biopsy specimen, blood
As above
Aspergillus is difficult to grow from blood of patients with disseminated infection.
Blastomycosis: *Blastomyces dermatiditis*
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
Complement fixation (CF); Enzyme immunoassays (EIA)
CF test usually negative and therefore not very useful. EIAs more sensitive but less specific. Culture is the best diagnostic test; serology seldom done. Urine antigen cross-reacts with other fungi.
Oral and cutaneous ulcers
Biopsy or swab specimen
CF, EIA, urine antigen
Bone
Bone biopsy
CF, EIA, urine antigen
Coccidioidomycosis: *Coccidioides immitis*
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
CF, immunodiffusion, precipitation, latex agglutination, EIA, DNA probe (culture confirmation)
C immitis will grow on routine blood agar cultures; positive cultures pose a serious hazard for laboratory workers. Culture confirmed by DNA probe. Serology often more useful than culture.
Disseminated
Biopsy specimen from site of infection, eg, skin, bone
As above except that skin test with coccidioidin may be negative
Histoplasmosis: *Histoplasma capsulatum*
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
CF, immunodiffusion, antibody tests, histoplasma antigen test on urine (most sensitive) serum and broncho-alveolar lavage fluid
Serology very useful, but less sensitive in immunosuppressed patients. Culture with DNA probe confirmation
Disseminated
Bone marrow, blood, biopsy specimen from site of infection
As above
Nocardiosis: *Nocardia asteroides*
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
Modified acid-fast stain
Nocardiae are bacteria that clinically behave like fungi. Weakly acid-fast, branching, filamentous gram-positive rods are nocardia. Serology seldom used.
Subcutaneous
Aspirate or biopsy of abscess
Brain
Material from brain abscess
Paracoccidioidomycosis (South American blastomycosis): *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*

Biopsy specimen from lesion
Immunodiffusion, CF, skin test (paracoccidioidin) is not reliable for diagnosis
Immunodiffusion test 95% sensitive and specific; CF test and skin test cross-react with histoplasmin. Positive skin test is of prognostic value.

Sporotrichosis: *Sporothrix schenckii*
Skin and subcutaneous nodules
Biopsy specimen
Agglutination
Culture more useful than serology
Disseminated
Biopsy specimen from infected site
As above
Zygomycosis (phycomycosis, mucormycosis): *Rhizopus* species, *Mucor* species, others
Rhinocerebral
Nasal-orbital tissue
None
Nonseptate hyphae seen in microscopic sections
Cutaneous; pulmonary and disseminated
Respiratory secretions, biopsy specimens
None
Culture useful
Yeast infections
Candidiasis: *Candida albicans* and similar yeasts[1]

Mucous membrane
Secretions
KOH wet mount useful for microscopy in localized infection
Usually easy to culture from clinical material
Skin
Swab specimen
Systemic
Blood, biopsy specimen, urine
Immunodiffusion, skin test
Serology seldom helpful. Skin test used to screen for anergy, not to diagnose infection
Cryptococcosis: *Cryptococcus neoformans*
Pulmonary
Respiratory secretions
Cryptococcal antigen rarely detected
Antibodies to *C neoformans* rarely found
Meningitis
CSF
Cryptococcal antigen detection is most useful
Repeated examination of CSF may be necessary to diagnose meningitis
Disseminated
Bone marrow, bone, blood, other
Cryptococcal antigen on serum
Primary skin infections
Dermatophytosis: *Microsporum* species, *Epidermophyton* species, *Trichophyton* species

Hair, skin, nails from infected sites
None

	Specimen	Serologic and Other Tests	Comments

	Specimen	Serologic and Other Tests	Comments

[1] *C tropicalis, C parapsilosis, C glabrata,* and other *Candida* species.

Antigen Detection

Immunologic systems designed to detect antigens of microorganisms can be used in the diagnosis of specific infections. IF tests (direct and indirect fluorescent antibody tests) are one form of antigen detection and are discussed in separate sections in this chapter on the diagnosis of bacterial, chlamydial, and viral infections and in the chapters on the specific microorganisms.

Enzyme immunoassays (EIA), including enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA), and agglutination tests are used to detect antigens of infectious agents present in clinical specimens. The principles of these tests are reviewed briefly here.

There are many variations of EIAs to detect antigens. One commonly used format is to bind a capture antibody, specific for the antigen in question, to the wells of plastic microdilution trays. The specimen containing the antigen is incubated in the wells followed by washing of the wells. A second antibody for the antigen, labeled with enzyme, is used to detect the antigen. Addition of the substrate for the enzyme allows detection of the bound antigen by colorimetric reaction. A significant modification of EIAs is the development of immunochromatographic membrane formats for antigen detection. In this format, a nitrocellulose membrane is used to absorb the antigen from a specimen. A colored reaction appears directly on the membrane with sequential addition of conjugate followed by substrate. In some formats, the antigen is captured by bound antibody directed against the antigen. These assays have the advantage of being rapid and also frequently include a built-in positive control. An example of this type of assay is the Binax NOW *Streptococcus pneumoniae* urinary antigen test. In some EIAs, the initial antibody is not necessary, because the antigen will bind directly to the plastic of the wells. EIAs are used to detect rotavirus in stool specimens (see Chapter 37), *Chlamydia trachomatis* (Chapter 28), and a few bacteria.

In latex agglutination tests, an antigen-specific antibody (either polyclonal or monoclonal) is fixed to latex beads. When the clinical specimen is added to a suspension of the latex beads, the antibodies bind to the antigens on the microorganism forming a lattice structure, and agglutination of the beads occurs. Coagglutination is similar to latex agglutination except that staphylococci rich in protein A are used instead of latex particles; coagglutination is less useful for antigen detection compared with latex agglutination but is helpful when applied to identification of bacteria in cultures.

Latex agglutination tests are primarily directed at the detection of carbohydrate antigens of encapsulated microorganisms. Antigen detection is used most often in the diagnosis of group A streptococcal pharyngitis. Detection of cryptococcal antigen is useful in the diagnosis of cryptococcal meningitis in patients with AIDS or other immunosuppressive diseases.

The sensitivity of latex agglutination tests in the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis may not be better than that of Gram stain, which is approximately 100,000 bacteria per milliliter. For that reason, the latex agglutination test is not recommended.

Another form of EIA, to detect antibody, is immunoblotting ("Western blot"), whereby defined antigens are placed on strips of nitrocellulose paper. Following incubation with the test antibody-containing specimen, the strip is further treated with an enzyme-labeled antibody, usually from another animal, against the test antibody. Addition of the substrate for the enzyme allows detection of the antigen-specific bound antibody by colorimetric reaction. Western blot tests are used as the specific tests for antibodies in HIV infection and Lyme disease.

Molecular Diagnostics

The principle behind early molecular assays is the hybridization of a characterized nucleic acid probe to a specific nucleic acid sequence in a test specimen followed by detection of the paired hybrid. For example, single-stranded probe DNA (or RNA) is used to detect complementary RNA or denatured DNA in a test specimen. The nucleic acid probe typically is labeled with enzymes, antigenic substrates, chemiluminescent molecules, or radioisotopes to facilitate detection of the hybridization product. By carefully selecting the probe or making a specific oligonucleotide and performing the hybridization under conditions of high stringency, detection of the nucleic acid in the test specimen can be extremely specific. Such assays are currently used primarily for rapid confirmation of a pathogen once growth is detected, eg, the identification of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in culture using the Gen-Probe Inc. (San Diego, CA) DNA-probe.

IDENTIFYING BACTERIA USING 16S RRNA

The 16S rRNA of each species of bacteria has stable (conserved) portions of the sequence. Many copies are present in each organism. Labeled probes specific for the 16S rRNA of a species are added, and the amount of label on the double-stranded hybrid is measured. This technique is widely used for the rapid identification of many organisms. Examples include the most common and important *Mycobacterium* species, *Coccidioides immitis, Histoplasma capsulatum,* and others.

Portions of the 16S rRNA are conserved across many species of microorganisms. Amplifying the 16S rRNA using primers to these conserved regions allows isolation and sequencing of the variable regions of the molecules. These variable sequences are genus- or species-specific markers that allow identification of microorganisms. Pathogens that are difficult or impossible to culture in the laboratory have been identified using this technique. One example is *Tropheryma whipplei,* the cause of Whipple's disease.

Molecular diagnostic assays that use amplification techniques have become widely used and are evolving rapidly. These amplification systems fall into several basic categories as outlined below. These assays, including the polymerase chain reaction, are properties of the companies that developed or own them.

TARGET AMPLIFICATION SYSTEMS

In these assays, the target DNA or RNA is amplified many times. The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used to amplify extremely small amounts of specific DNA present in a clinical specimen, making it possible to detect what were initially minute amounts of the DNA. PCR uses a thermostable DNA polymerase to produce a twofold amplification of target DNA with each temperature cycle. The DNA extracted from the clinical specimen along with sequence-specific oligonucleotide primers, nucleotides, thermostable DNA polymerase, and buffer are heated to 9095 C to denature (separate) the two strands of the target DNA. The temperature in the reaction is lowered, usually to 4560 C depending upon the primers, to allow annealing of the primers to the target DNA. Each primer is then extended by the thermostable DNA polymerase by adding nucleotides complementary to the target DNA yielding the twofold amplification. The cycle is then repeated 3040 times to yield amplification of the target DNA segment by as much as 10^5 - to 10^6 -fold. The amplified segment often can be seen in an electrophoretic gel or detected by Southern blot analysis using labeled DNA probes specific for the segment or by a variety of proprietary commercial techniques.

PCR can also be performed on RNA targets, which is called reverse transcriptase PCR. The enzyme reverse transcriptase is used to transcribe the RNA into complementary DNA for amplification.

PCR assays are available commercially for identification of *Chlamydia trachomatis, Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* cytomegalovirus, enteroviruses, and many others. An assay is available for HIV-1 viral load testing also. There are many other "in-house" PCRs that have been developed by individual laboratories to diagnose infections. Such assays are the tests of choice to diagnose many infectionsespecially when traditional culture and antigen detection techniques do not work well. Examples include testing of cerebrospinal fluid for herpes simplex virus to diagnose herpes encephalitis and testing of nasopharyngeal wash fluid to diagnose *Bordetella pertussis* infection (whooping cough).

A major consideration for laboratories that perform PCR assays is to prevent contamination of reagents or specimens with target DNA from the environment, which can obscure the distinction between truly positive results and falsely positive ones because of the contamination.

The transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) and the nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (NASBA) systems amplify large quantities of RNA in isothermal assays that coordinately use the enzymes reverse transcriptase, RNase H, and RNA polymerase. An oligonucleotide primer containing the RNA polymerase promoter is allowed to bind to the RNA target. The reverse transcriptase makes a single-stranded cDNA copy of the RNA. The RNase H destroys the RNA of the RNA-cDNA hybrid, and a second primer anneals to the segment of cDNA. The DNA-dependent DNA polymerase activity of reverse transcriptase extends the DNA from the second primer, producing a double-stranded DNA copy, with intact RNA polymerase. The RNA polymerase then produces many copies of the single-stranded RNA. Detection of *C trachomatis, N gonorrhoeae,* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and quantitation of HIV-1 load are examples of the use of these types of assays.

Strand displacement assays (SDA) are isothermal amplification assays that employ use of restrictive endonuclease and DNA polymerase.

PROBE AMPLIFICATION SYSTEMS

The ligase chain reaction (LCR) is an amplification system different from PCR. LCR uses thermostable DNA polymerase and thermostable DNA ligase. LCR uses four oligonucleotide probes of 2024 bases each. Each pair of oligonucleotides is designed to bind to the denatured target DNA only a few bases apart. The oligonucleotides are mixed with extracted target DNA from the specimen and other reagents and then heated to denature the target DNA. The reaction is then cooled to allow binding of the oligonucleotide probes to the target DNA. The short gap between the two probes is filled in by the DNA polymerase and linked by the DNA ligase, yielding double-stranded DNA molecules 4050 bp in length. The cycle is repeated 3040 times, yielding a large number of DNA molecules. This commercially available system includes automated detection of the amplified DNA. It can be used to detect *C trachomatis* and *N gonorrhoeae.* It is available only outside of the United States.

SIGNAL AMPLIFICATION TECHNIQUES

These assays strengthen the signal by amplifying the label (eg, fluorochromes, enzymes) that is attached to the target nucleic acid. The branched DNA (bDNA) system has a series of primary probes and a branched secondary probe labeled with enzyme. Multiple oligonucleotide probes specific for the target RNA (or DNA) are fixed to a solid surface such as a microdilution tray. These are the capture probes. The prepared specimen is added, and the RNA molecules are attached to the capture probes on the microdilution tray. Additional target probes bind to the target but not to the tray. The enzyme-labeled bDNA amplifier probes are added and attach to the target probes. A chemiluminescent substrate is added, and light emitted is measured to quantitate the amount of target RNA present. Examples of the use of this type of assay include the quantitative measurement of HIV-1, hepatitis C virus, and hepatitis B virus.

Technologic advances, which have lead to "real-time amplification," have streamlined nucleic acid amplification platforms, improved the sensitivity of amplification tests, and have drastically reduced the potential for contamination. Real time instruments have replaced the solid block used in conventional thermocyclers with fans that allow more rapid PCR cycling. Dramatic improvements in the chemistry of nucleic acid amplification reactions have resulted in homogeneous reaction mixtures in which fluorogenic compounds are present in the same reaction tube in which the amplification occurs. A variety of fluorogenic molecules are used. These include nonspecific dyes such as SYBR green which binds to the minor groove of double stranded DNA and amplicon specific detection methods using fluorescently labeled oligonucleotide probes, which fall into three categories: TaqMan, or hydrolysis probes; fluorescence energy transfer (FRET) probes; and molecular beacons. A complete discussion of these methods is beyond the scope of this chapter. The reader is referred to the review by Espy et al listed in the reference section. All of the methods allow for measurement of fluorescence with each amplification cycle, that is, "real-time" assessment of results. Since the reaction tube does not need to be opened to analyze the PCR products on a gel, there is much less risk of amplicon carry-over to the next reaction.

THE IMPORTANCE OF NORMAL BACTERIAL & FUNGAL FLORA

Organisms such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Salmonella* Typhi, and *Brucella* species are considered pathogens whenever they are found in patients. However, many infections are caused by organisms that are permanent or transient members of the normal flora. For example, *E coli* is part of the normal gastrointestinal flora and is also the most common cause of urinary tract infection. Similarly, the vast majority of mixed bacterial infections with anaerobes are caused by organisms that are members of the normal flora.

The rela

Introduction

The management of infectious diseases requires an understanding of the presenting clinical manifestations and a knowledge of microbiology. Many infections present with constellations of focal and systemic signs and symptoms which in typical cases are highly suggestive of the diagnosis, though the disease might be caused by any of several different organisms. Making a clinical diagnosis with subsequent laboratory confirmation is part of the art of medicine. This chapter presents 19 cases and brief discussions of the differential diagnosis and management of those infections. An additional two cases and two outbreaks of naturally occurring diseases caused by agents associated with biologic warfare are presented.

The reader is referred to earlier chapters of this book for characterizations of the organisms; to Chapter 47 for information about diagnostic microbiology tests; and to textbooks of medicine and infectious diseases for more complete information about the clinical entities. One such book is Tierney LM Jr, McPhee SF, Papadakis MA (editors): *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment,* updated annually.

Central Nervous System

CASE 1: MENINGITIS

A 3-year-old girl was brought to the emergency room by her parents because of fever and loss of appetite for the past 24 hours and difficulty in arousing her for the past 2 hours. The developmental history had been normal since birth. She attended a day care center and had a history of several episodes of presumed viral infections similar to those of other children at the center. Her childhood immunizations were current.

Clinical Features

Temperature was 39.5 C, pulse 130/min, and respirations 24/min. Blood pressure was 110/60 mm Hg.

Physical examination showed a well-developed and well-nourished child of normal height and weight who was somnolent. When her neck was passively flexed, her legs also flexed (positive Brudzinski sign, suggesting irritation of the meninges). Ophthalmoscopic examination showed no papilledema, indicating that there had been no long-term increase in intracranial pressure. The remainder of her physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Findings

Minutes later, blood was obtained for culture and other laboratory tests, and an intravenous line was placed. Lumbar puncture was performed less than 30 minutes after the patient arrived in the emergency room. The opening pressure was 350 mm of CSF (elevated). The fluid was cloudy. Several tubes of CSF were collected for culture, cell counts, and chemistry tests. One tube was taken immediately to the laboratory for Gram staining. The stain showed many polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells with cell-associated (intracellular) gram-negative diplococci suggestive of *Neisseria meningitidis.*

Blood chemistry tests were normal. The hematocrit was normal. The white blood cell count was 25,000/µL (markedly elevated), with 88% PMN forms and an absolute PMN count of 22,000/µL (markedly elevated), 6% lymphocytes, and 6% monocytes. The CSF had 5000 PMNs/µL (normal, 05 lymphocytes/µL). The CSF protein was 100 mg/dL (elevated), and the glucose was 15 mg/dL (low, termed hypoglycorrhachia)all consistent with bacterial meningitis. Cultures of blood and CSF grew serogroup B *N meningitidis.*

Treatment

Intravenous cefotaxime therapy was started within 3540 minutes of the patient's arrival; dexamethasone was also given. The patient was treated with the antibiotic for 14 days and recovered without obvious sequelae. Further neurologic examinations and hearing tests were planned for the future. Rifampin prophylaxis was given to the other children who attended the day care center.

Comment

Clinical features of bacterial meningitis vary with the age of the patient. In the older child and the adult, bacterial meningitis usually presents with fever, headache, vomiting, photophobia, altered mental status ranging from sleepiness to coma, and neurologic signs ranging from abnormalities of cranial nerve function to seizures. However, subtle signs such as fever and lethargy are consistent with meningitis, particularly in infants. Meningitis is considered to be acute with signs and symptoms of less than 24 hours' duration and subacute when signs and symptoms have been present for 17 days. Lumbar puncture with examination of the CSF is indicated whenever there is any suspicion of meningitis.

Acute meningitis is most often caused by bacteria of a few species (Table 481): Lancefield serogroup B streptococci *(Streptococcus agalactiae)* and *Escherichia coli* in neonates; *Haemophilus influenzae* in unvaccinated children between the ages of 46 months and 6 years; *N meningitidis* in children and young adults; and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* occasionally in children and increasing in incidence in middle-aged and elderly persons. Many other species of microorganisms less commonly cause meningitis. *Listeria monocytogenes* causes meningitis in immunosuppressed patients and normal persons. The yeast *Cryptococcus neoformans* is the most common cause of meningitis in AIDS patients and can cause meningitis also in other immunosuppressed patients as well as in normal persons. Meningitis due to listeria or cryptococcus can be acute or insidious in onset. Gram-negative bacilli cause meningitis in acute head trauma and neurosurgical patients. *S pneumoniae* is found in recurrent meningitis in patients with basilar skull fractures. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* can have a slow onset (chronic; > 7 days) in immunologically normal persons but progresses more rapidly (subacute) in immunosuppressed persons such as AIDS patients. *Naegleria* species, free-living amebas, occasionally cause meningitis in persons with a recent history of swimming in warm fresh water. Viruses usually cause milder meningitis than bacteria. The viruses that most commonly cause meningitis are the enteroviruses (echoviruses and coxsackieviruses) and mumps virus.

Table 481. Common Causes of Meningitis.

Serogroup B streptococci *(Streptococcus agalactiae)*
Neonates to age 3 months
As many as 25% of mothers have vaginal carriage of serogroup B streptococci. Ampicillin prophylaxis during labor of women at high risk (prolonged rupture of membranes, fever, etc) or of known carriers reduces the incidence of infection in babies.
15
Escherichia coli

Organism	Age Group	Comment	Chapter
	Neonates	Commonly have the K1 antigen.	16
Listeria monocytogenes	Neonates; elderly; immunocompromised children and adults	Not unusual in patients with cell mediated immune deficiency	
Haemophilus influenzae	Children 6 months to 5 years	Widespread use of vaccine greatly reduces the incidence of *H influenzae* meningitis in children.	19
Neisseria meningitidis	Infants to 5 years and young adults	Polysaccharide vaccines against serogroups A, C, Y, and W135 are used in epidemic areas and in association with outbreaks.	21
Streptococcus pneumoniae	All age groups; highest incidence in the elderly	Often occurs with pneumonia; also with mastoiditis, sinusitis, and basilar skull fractures.	15
Cryptococcus neoformans	AIDS patients	Frequent cause of meningitis in AIDS patients.	45

The diagnosis of meningitis requires a high degree of suspicion when appropriate signs and symptoms are observed plus lumbar puncture without delay followed by examination of CSF. Findings in the spinal fluid typically include white blood cells in hundreds to thousands per microliter (PMNs for acute bacterial meningitis and lymphocytes for tuberculous and viral meningitis); glucose of < 40 mg/dL, or less than 50% of the serum concentration; and protein of > 100 mg/dL (see Table 482). In bacterial meningitis, Gram stain of cytocentrifuged sediment of CSF shows PMNs and bacterial morphology consistent with the species subsequently cultured: *N meningitidis,* intracellular gram-negative diplococci; *H influenzae,* small gram-negative coccobacilli; and serogroup B streptococci and pneumococci, gram-positive cocci in pairs and chains. Blood cultures should be done along with the CSF cultures.

Table 482. Typical Cerebrospinal Fluid Findings in Various Central Nervous System Diseases.

Normal[1]

05 lymphocytes
4585
1545
70180 mm H_2O

Purulent meningitis (bacterial)[2]

20020,000 PMNs
Low (< 45)
High (> 50)
++++
Granulomatous meningitis (mycobacterial, fungal)[2,3]

1001000, mostly lymphocytes
Low (< 45)
High (> 50)
+++
Aseptic meningitis, viral or meningoencephalitis[3,4]

1001000, mostly lymphocytes
Normal
Moderately high (> 50)
Normal to +
Spirochetal meningitis (syphilis, leptospirosis)[3]

252000, mostly lymphocytes
Normal or low
High (> 50)
+
"Neighborhood" reaction[5]

Variably increased
Normal
Normal or high
Variable

Diagnosis	Cells (per µL)	Glucose (mg/dL)	Protein (mg/dL)	Opening Pressure

[1] CSF glucose level must be considered in relation to blood glucose level. Normally, CSF glucose level is 2030 mg/dL lower than blood glucose level, or 5070% of blood glucose normal value.

[2] Organisms in smear or culture of CSF.

[3] PMNs may predominate early.

[4] Virus isolation from CSF early; antibody titer rise in paired specimens of serum.

[5] May occur in mastoiditis, brain abscess, epidural abscess, sinusitis, septic thrombus, brain tumor, CSF culture usually negative.

Acute bacterial meningitis is fatal if untreated. Initial therapy for bacterial meningitis in infants < 1 month of age should consist of parenteral therapy known to be effective against the pathogens listed in Table 481 and including *Listeria monocytogenes* . Ampicillin plus cefotaxime or ampicillin in combination with an aminoglycoside is recommended. For children between the ages of 1 month and 18 years of age and for the adult > 50 years of age, the recommended therapies are vancomycin plus a third generation cephalosporin because of the prevalence of multi-drug resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* , reports of rising MICs to penicillin among meningococci, and the prevalence of beta-lactamase production among *H influenzae* . Since adults over the age of 50 years are also susceptible to *Listeria monocytogenes* , the addition of ampicillin to the regimen for older children and adults as listed above is recommended.

Available evidence supports administration of adjunctive dexamethasone 1020 min prior to or concomitant with the first antimicrobial dose to children with *H influenzae* meningitis and in the adult with pneumococcal meningitis with continuation of steroids for the first 24 days of therapy.

Several vaccines are currently available and are recommended for the prevention of the more serious causes of bacterial meningitis. The *H influenzae* type B conjugate vaccine and the heptavalent conjugate pneumococcal vaccine are currently part of the routine vaccination series for infants and young children. The 23-valent polysaccharide pneumococcal vaccine is recommended for prevention of invasive pneumococcal disease in certain high risk groups over the age of two years. These include patients who are elderly, who have chronic underlying diseases such as cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus, chronic pulmonary problems, CSF leaks, and asplenia, among others. A quadrivalent conjugated meningococcal vaccine is currently recommended for all healthy 1119-year-olds and for 2055-year-old persons at risk such as travelers to endemic areas. For at-risk children, 210 years of age and adults over 55, the meningococcal polysaccharide vaccine is currently recommended pending evaluation of the conjugate vaccine in those age groups.

References

Chavez-Bueno S et al: Bacterial meningitis in children. Pediatr Clin North Am 2005;52:795

Tunkel AR et al: Practice guidelines for the management of bacterial meningitis. Clin Infect Dis 2004;39:1267.

Van de Beek D et al: Community acquired bacterial meningitis in adults. N Engl J Med 2006;354:44.

CASE 2: BRAIN ABSCESS

A 57-year-old man presented to the hospital with seizures. Three weeks earlier he had developed bifrontal headaches that were relieved by aspirin. The headaches recurred several times, including the day prior to admission. On the morning of admission he was noted to have focal seizures with involuntary movements of the right side of his face and arm. While in the emergency room, he had a generalized seizure that was controlled by intravenous diazepam, phenytoin, and phenobarbital. Additional history from the patient's wife indicated that he had had a dental extraction and bridge work approximately 5 weeks earlier. He did not smoke, drank only socially, and took no medications. The remainder of his history was not helpful.

Clinical Features

The temperature was 37 C, the pulse 110/min, and respirations 18/min. The blood pressure was 140/80 mm Hg.

On physical examination, the patient was sleepy and had a decreased attention span. He moved all his extremities, though the right arm moved less than the left. There was slight blurring of the left optic disk, suggesting possible increased intracranial pressure. The remainder of his physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Findings & Imaging

Laboratory tests were all normal, including hemoglobin and hematocrit, white blood cell count and differential, serum electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen, serum creatinine, urinalysis, chest x-ray, and ECG. Lumbar puncture was not done and cerebrospinal fluid was not examined because of possible increased intracranial pressure due to a mass lesion. Blood cultures were negative. CT scan of the patient's head showed a 1.5-cm localized ring-enhancing lesion in the left parietal hemisphere suggestive of brain abscess.

Treatment

The patient had a neurosurgical procedure with biopsy of the lesion, which was completely removed. Culture of necrotic material from the lesion yielded *Prevotella melaninogenica* and *Streptococcus anginosus.* Pathologic examination of the tissue suggested that the lesion was several weeks old. The patient received antibiotic therapy for 4 weeks. He had no more seizures and no subsequent neurologic deficits. One year later, anticonvulsant medications were discontinued and a follow-up CT scan was negative.

Comment

A brain abscess is a localized pyogenic bacterial infection within the brain parenchyma. The major clinical manifestations are related to the presence of a space-occupying mass in the brain rather than the classic signs and symptoms of infection. Thus, patients commonly present with headache and a change in mental status from normal to lethargy or coma. Focal neurologic findings related to location of the abscess occur in less than half of patients; one-third have seizures, and less than half have fever. Occasionally, patients present with signs and symptoms suggesting acute meningitis. Initially, the clinician must differentiate brain abscess from other central nervous system processes, including primary or metastatic cancers, subdural or epidural abscesses, viral infections (herpes simplex encephalitis), meningitis, stroke, and a variety of other diseases.

Significant predisposing factors for brain abscess include distant site infections with bacteremia, such as endocarditis, lung infections, or other occult infections. Many patients have had relatively recent dental work. Brain abscess can also occur via spread from contiguous sites of infection such as in the middle ear, mastoid, or sinuses or following penetrating trauma. However, 20% of patients with brain abscesses have no discernible predisposing factors.

Brain abscess can be caused by a single species of bacteria, but more than one species are often isolatedin general, an average of two species. Of the facultative and aerobic bacteria, the viridans streptococci (including nonhemolytic and alpha- and beta-hemolytic strains, the *S anginosus* group [milleri], *S mitis,* etc; see Chapter 15) are most common, occurring in one-third to one-half of patients. *Staphylococcus aureus* (Chapter 14) is isolated in 1015% and when present is often the only isolate found. Enteric gram-negative rods occur in about 25%, often in mixed cultures. Many other facultative or aerobic bacteria (eg, *S pneumoniae, Nocardia asteroides, Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and nontuberculous Mycobacteria) also occur in brain abscesses. Anaerobic bacteria are found in 50% or more of cases (Chapter 22). *Peptostreptococcus* is most common, followed by *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* species. *Fusobacterium* , actinomyces, and *Eubacterium* are less common, followed by other anaerobes. Fungi are seen almost exclusively in immunocompromised patients. *Candida* species are the most prevalent fungi, but opportunistic molds such as *Aspergillus* sp. and *Scedosporium apiospermum* are increasing in frequency. Dimorphic fungi such as *Coccidioides immitis* may also cause brain abscesses. *Cryptococcus neoformans* is an important pathogen in AIDS patients. Parasites responsible for brain abscesses include *Toxoplasma gondii* , the most common protozoal cause, particularly among AIDS patients, neurocystercercosis (larval form of *T solium*), *Entamoeba histolytica, Schistosoma* sp., and *Paragonimus* .

Lumbar puncture to obtain CSF is generally not indicated in patients with brain abscess (or other mass lesions in the brain). The increased intracranial pressure makes the procedure life-threatening, because herniation of the brain through the tentorium cerebelli can result in midbrain compression. The findings in CSF are not specific for brain abscess: White blood cells, predominantly mononuclear cells, are often present; the glucose level may be moderately low and the protein concentration elevated. Thus, when fever and signs suggesting acute meningitis are absent and brain abscess is suspected, the clinician should obtain a CT scan. Brain abscesses typically show ring-enhanced uptake of contrast material on CT scan, though similar findings can be found in patients with brain tumors and other diseases. MRI may be helpful in differentiating brain abscesses from tumors. Definitive differentiation between brain abscess and tumor is done by pathologic examination and culture of tissue from the lesion obtained by a neurosurgical procedure.

Untreated brain abscesses are fatal. Surgical excision provides the initial therapy as well as the diagnosis of brain abscess. Needle aspiration using stereotactic technique is an alternative to surgical excision. Antibiotic therapy should be parenteral and should include high-dose penicillin G for streptococci and many anaerobes, metronidazole for anaerobes resistant to penicillin G, plus a third-generation cephalosporin for enteric gram-negative rods. Vancomycin or another drug specific for *S aureus* should be included in the initial therapy if the patient has endocarditis or is known to have staphylococcal bacteremia, or the abscess yields staphylococci. Initial therapy with antibiotics rather than surgery can be instituted in some patients whose brain abscesses are small (< 2 cm), multiple, or difficult to reach surgically, but deteriorating neurologic functions indicate the need for surgery. Once culture results from the abscess material are known, initial antibiotic therapy should be modified to be specific for the bacteria isolated from the lesion. Antibiotic therapy should be continued for at least 34 weeks when surgical excision has been done or for 8 weeks or longer when there has been no surgery. Nonbacterial causes of brain abscesses generally require definitive diagnoses and specific therapy. Steroids to decrease swelling should be used only when there is mass effect.

References

Bernardini GL: Diagnosis and management of brain abscess and subdural empyema. Curr Neurol and Neurosci Reports 2004;4:448.

Tunkel AR: Brain abscess. In *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* 6th ed. Mandell GL, Bennett JE and Dolin R (editors). Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia, PA, 2005.

Yogev R et al: Management of brain abscesses in children. Pediatr Infect Dis 2004;23:157.

Chest

CASE 3: BACTERIAL PNEUMONIA

A 35-year-old man came to the emergency room because of fever and pain in his left chest when he coughed. Five days earlier he had developed signs of a viral upper respiratory infection with sore throat, runny nose, and increased cough. The day before presentation he developed left lateral chest pain when he coughed or took a deep breath. Twelve hours before coming to the emergency room he was awakened with a severe shaking chill and sweating. Further history taking disclosed that the patient drank moderate to heavy amounts of alcohol and had smoked one package of cigarettes daily for about 17 years. He worked as an automobile repair man. He had a history of two prior hospitalizations4 years ago for alcohol withdrawal and 2 years ago for acute bronchitis.

Clinical Features

Temperature was 39 C, pulse 130/min and respirations 28/min. Blood pressure was 120/80 mm Hg.

Physical examination showed a slightly overweight man who was coughing frequently and holding his left chest when he coughed. He produced very little thick rusty-colored sputum. His chest examination showed normal movement of the diaphragm. There was dullness to percussion of the left lateral posterior chest, suggesting consolidation of the lung. Tubular (bronchial) breath sounds were heard in the same area along with dry crepitant sounds (rales), consistent with lung consolidation and viscous mucus in the airway. The remainder of his physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Findings & Imaging

Chest films showed a dense left lower lobe consolidation consistent with bacterial pneumonia. The hematocrit was 45% (normal). The white blood cell count was 16,000/μL (markedly elevated) with 80% PMN forms with an absolute PMN count of 12,800/μL (markedly elevated), 12% lymphocytes, and 8% monocytes. Blood chemistry tests, including electrolytes, were normal. Sputum was thick, yellow to rusty-colored, and purulent in appearance. Gram stain of the sputum showed many PMN cells and lancet-shaped gram-positive diplococci. Twenty-four hours later, the blood cultures were positive for *Streptococcus pneumoniae.* Cultures of sputum grew numerous *S pneumoniae* and a few colonies of *H influenzae.*

Treatment

The initial diagnosis was bacterial pneumonia, probably pneumococcal. Parenteral aqueous penicillin G therapy was begun, and the patient was given parenteral fluids. Within 48 hours, his temperature was normal and he was coughing up large amounts of purulent sputum. Penicillin G was continued for 7 days. At follow-up 4 weeks after admission to the hospital, the lung consolidation had cleared.

CASE 4: VIRAL PNEUMONIA

A 31-year-old man presented with complaints of skin rash, cough, and shortness of breath. Four days previously he had begun to feel sick and developed a fever of 38 C. The next day he developed a skin rash that initially appeared as "bumps" but soon became vesicular. Several more crops of intensely pruritic skin lesions have subsequently appeared. Two hours before admission, the patient first experienced right-sided chest pain when he took a deep breath or coughed.

Two weeks before admission, the patient's 8-year-old daughter had developed chickenpox and he had helped take care of her. The patient did not know if he had had chickenpox as a child.

Clinical Features

The temperature was 39 C, pulse 110/min, and respirations 30/min. Blood pressure was 115/70 mm Hg. The patient appeared to be acutely uncomfortable. He had a skin rash consisting of multiple crops or stages of lesions ranging from red maculopapules to vesicles that were broken and crusted over. His fingers and lips appeared to be slightly blue. Rales were heard bilaterally throughout both lung fields. The remainder of the physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Findings & Imaging

Chest films showed diffuse bilateral interstitial pulmonary infiltrates. Arterial blood gases showed a P_{O_2} of 60 mm Hg with 91% hemoglobin saturation. The hematocrit, white blood cell count, and serum electrolytes and liver tests were normal.

Treatment & Hospital Course

The patient was hospitalized and placed on oxygen therapy, which improved his hypoxia. He was given high-dose intravenous acyclovir. Over the next several days, his respiratory status improved, and on day 6 oxygen therapy was discontinued. The acyclovir was changed to oral therapy on day 3 and continued for a total of 10 days. The patient was discharged to home care on day 7.

Comment

Acute bacterial pneumonia commonly presents with an abrupt onset of chills and fever, cough, and often pleuritic chest pain. The cough frequently is productive of purulent sputum, but many patients with pneumonia are not adequately hydrated and do not produce sputum until they receive fluids, as in this case. Pleuritic chest pain occurs when the inflammatory process of the pneumonia involves the pleural lining of the lung and chest cavity; movement of the pleura, as occurs with coughing or deep breathing, yields localized pain. Patients with acute pneumonia appear ill and usually have tachypnea (rapid breathing) and tachycardia (rapid heart rate). Many patients with pneumonia have predisposing factors (congestive heart failure, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, etc), which become exacerbated before or in association with the pneumonia.

The findings on physical examination are those associated with consolidation of the lung tissue, purulent mucus (sputum) in the airway, and, in some patients, fluid in the chest cavity. On percussion, there is dullness over the area of consolidation (or fluid). When consolidation occurs, the small airways are closed, leaving only the large airways open; on auscultation, there are tubular breath sounds over the area. If all the airways are blocked, no breath sounds are audible. Dry crepitant sounds (rales) or crackling sounds on auscultation indicate fluid or mucus in the airways; these sounds may change when the patient coughs.

Viral pneumonia is characterized by interstitial inflammation of the lung tissue and hyaline membrane formation in the alveolar spaces, often accompanied by bronchiolitis and sloughing of the ciliated cells of the small airways with peribronchial inflammation. The viruses that most commonly cause pneumonia are respiratory syncytial virus, parainfluenza viruses (typically type 3), influenza viruses, adenoviruses, measles virus, and varicella-zoster virus. Cytomegalovirus causes pneumonia in allogeneic bone marrow and solid organ transplant patients; varicella-zoster virus may cause pneumonia in these patients as well. Emerging viral pathogens such as Metapneumovirus and newly discovered Coronaviruses may cause disease that mimics that of the more common viral respiratory pathogens. SARS Coronavirus was responsible for epidemic fatal respiratory disease in several countries. Many other infectious agents (and noninfectious agents also) can cause interstitial pneumonitis with or without focal consolidation in the lung. Examples include *Legionella pneumophila, Mycoplasma pneumoniae,* and *Pneumocystis jiroveci.* The physical findings on chest examination in viral pneumonia frequently are limited; often only rales are heard on auscultation. Some of the viruses cause characteristic rashes that may serve as clues to diagnosis. Chest films show diffuse bilateral interstitial infiltrates. Focal areas of consolidation may be present. Supportive care such as oxygen therapy and specific antiviral chemotherapy, when possible, are important.

The most common causes of community-acquired pneumonia are *S pneumoniae, Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (atypical pneumonia in young persons), and *L pneumophila* (Table 483); collectively, these pathogens may cause as many as 75% of cases of community-acquired pneumonia. *H influenzae* pneumonia is common in association with chronic pulmonary disease. Other causes include *Chlamydophilia pneumoniae* (as much as 10% of community-acquired pneumonia), *Staphylococcus aureus* in association with influenza virus infections, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in chronic alcoholics. Other gram-negative bacilli are uncommon causes of community-acquired pneumonia. Pleural pulmonary infections with mixed anaerobic bacteria are associated with predisposing factors such as periodontal disease, seizure disorders, stupor or coma, and aspiration of oropharyngeal bacteria into the lung. Pneumonia, lung abscesses, and infection of the pleural space (empyema, or pus in the chest cavity) occur with mixed anaerobic infections.

Table 483. Characteristics and Treatment of Selected Pneumonias.

Streptococcus pneumoniae
Chronic cardiopulmonary disease; follows upper respiratory tract infections
Gram-positive diplococci
Lobar consolidation
Gram-staining smear of sputum; culture of blood, pleural fluid; urinary antigen

Bacteremia, meningitis, endocarditis, pericarditis, empyema
Penicillin G (or V, oral); fluoroquinolones or vancomycin for highly penicillin resistant
15
Haemophilus influenzae
Chronic cardiopulmonary disease; follows upper respiratory tract infections
Small gram-negative coccobacilli
Lobar consolidation
Culture of sputum, blood, pleural fluid
Empyema, endocarditis
Ampicillin (or amoxicillin) if β-lactamase-negative; cefotaxime or ceftriaxone
19
Staphylococcus aureus
Influenza epidemics; nosocomial
Gram-positive cocci in clumps
Patchy infiltrates
Culture of sputum, blood, pleural fluid
Empyema, cavitation
Nafcillin[3]

14
Klebsiella pneumoniae
Alcohol abuse, diabetes mellitus; nosocomial
Gram-negative encapsulated rods
Lobar consolidation
Culture of sputum, blood, pleural fluid
Cavitation, empyema
A cephalosporin; for severe infection, add gentamicin or tobramycin
16
Escherichia coli
Nosocomial; rarely, community-acquired
Gram-negative rods
Patchy infiltrates, pleural effusion
Culture of sputum, blood, pleural fluid
Empyema
A third-generation cephalosporin
16
Pseudomonas aeruginosa
Nosocomial; cystic fibrosis
Gram-negative rods
Patchy infiltrates, cavitation
Culture of sputum, blood
Cavitation
Antipseudomonal cephalosporin or carbapenem or β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitor plus an aminoglycoside
17
Anaerobes
Aspiration, periodontitis
Mixed flora
Patchy infiltrates in dependent lung zones
Culture of pleural fluid or of material obtained by transthoracic aspiration; bronchoscopy with protected specimen

brush
Necrotizing pneumonia, abscess, empyema
Clindamycin
11, 48
Mycoplasma pneumoniae
Young adults; summer and fall
PMNs and monocytes; no bacterial pathogens
Extensive patchy infiltrates
Complement fixation titer[4]; cold agglutinin serum titers are not helpful as they lack sensitivity and specificity; PCR

Skin rashes, bullous myringitis; hemolytic anemia
Erythromycin, azithromycin, or clarithromycin; doxycycline, fluoroquinolones
26
Legionella species
Summer and fall; exposure to contaminated construction site, water source, air conditioner; community-acquired or nosocomial
Few PMNs; no bacteria
Patchy or lobar consolidation
Direct immunofluorescent examination of sputum or tissue; immunofluorescent antibody titer[4] ; culture of sputum or tissue[5] ; Legionella urinary antigen (*L pneumophila* serogroup 1 only); PCR

Empyema, cavitation, endocarditis, pericarditis
Erythromycin, azithromycin, or clarithromycin, with or without rifampin; fluoroquinolones
23
Chlamydophilia pneumoniae
Clinically similar to *M pneumoniae* pneumonia, but prodromal symptoms last longer (up to 2 weeks); sore throat with hoarseness common; mild pneumonia in teenagers and young adults
Nonspecific
Subsegmental infiltrate, less prominent than in *M pneumoniae* pneumonia; consolidation rare
Isolation very difficult; microimmunofluorescence with TWAR antigens is the recommended assay
Reinfection in older adults with underlying COPD or heart failure may be severe or even fatal
Doxycycline, erythromycin, clarithromycin; fluoroquinolones
28
Moraxella catarrhalis
Preexisting lung diseas; elderly; corticosteroid or immunosuppressive therapy
Gram-negative diplococci
Patchy infiltrates; occasional lobar consolidation
Gram stain and culture of sputum or bronchial aspiration
Rarely, pleural effusions and bacteremia
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or amoxicillin-clavulanic acid or second or third generation cephalosporins
21
Pneumocystis jiroveci
AIDS, immunosuppressive therapy
Not helpful in diagnosis
Diffuse interstitial and alveolar infiltrates; apical or upper lobe infiltrates on aerosolized pentamidine
Cysts and trophozoites of *P jiroveci* on methenamine silver or Giemsa stains of sputum or bronchoalveolar lavage fluid; direct immunofluorescent antibody on BAL fluid
Pneumothorax, respiratory failure, ARDS, death
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, pentamidine isethionate

45

Organism	Clinical Setting	Gram-Stained Smears of Sputum	Chest Radiograph[1]	Laboratory Studies	Complications	Preferred Antimicrobial Therapy[2]	Chapter

[1] X-ray findings lack specificity.

[2] Microbial susceptibility testing should guide therapy.

[3] Naficillin-resistant *S aureus* infections are treated with vancomycin.

[4] Fourfold rise in titer is diagnostic.

[5] Selective media are required.

Hospital-acquired (nosocomial) pneumonia is frequently caused by enteric gram-negative bacilli such as *Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* and *S aureus,* and legionella may also cause hospital-acquired pneumonia. Fungi, including *Histoplasma capsulatum, Coccidioides immitis,* and *Cryptococcus neoformans,* cause community-acquired pneumonia; *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species are more likely to cause nosocomial infections.

Blood counts in patients with pneumonia usually show leukocytosis with increased polymorphonuclear cells. Chest radiography shows segmental or lobar infiltrates. Cavities may be seen especially with mixed anaerobic infections or pneumonia due to *S aureus* or group A streptococci. Pleural effusions may also be found and, if present, may call for thoracentesis to obtain fluid for cell counts and culture. Blood cultures should be done in all patients with acute pneumonia. Sputum should be cultured as well.

Most patients with bacterial pneumonia and many patients with pneumonia due to other causes have mucopurulent sputum. Rusty-colored sputum suggests alveolar involvement and is associated with pneumococcal pneumonia but occurs with other organisms also. Foul-smelling sputum suggests mixed anaerobic infection. A purulent portion of the sputum should be chosen for Gram stain and microscopic examination; an adequate sputum specimen will have over 25 polymorphonuclear cells and fewer than 10 epithelial cells per low-power field (100 × magnification). Traditionally, microscopic examination of the sputum has been used to help determine the cause of pneumonia; however, it may be difficult to differentiate organisms that are part of the normal oropharyngeal flora from those that are causing the pneumonia. The finding of numerous lancet-shaped gram-positive diplococci strongly suggests *S pneumoniae,* but streptococci that are part of the oropharyngeal flora can have the same appearance. The major value of stained sputum smears is when organisms that would not be expected are found (eg, numerous polymorphonuclear cells along with numerous gram-negative bacilli suggesting enteric bacilli or pseudomonas, or numerous gram-positive cocci in clusters suggesting staphylococci). Sputum cultures have many of the same drawbacks as smears; it may be difficult to differentiate normal flora or colonizing bacteria from the cause of the pneumonia.

True demonstration of the cause of pneumonia comes from a limited set of specimens: a positive blood culture in a pneumonia patient with no confounding infections; a positive pleural fluid or direct lung aspirate culture; and detection of circulating antigen of a specific organism with no confounding infection (eg, *Streptococcus pneumoniae* urinary antigen). A positive culture of sputum obtained by transtracheal aspiration is very helpful, but this procedure is rarely performed. Bronchoscopy is often used to obtain material for diagnostic studies in severely ill patients with pneumonia and is recommended for health care-associated pneumonia and pneumonia in the immunocompromised host. Quantitative bacterial culture performed on a carefully collected bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) sample using 10^4 cfu/mL of a specific pathogen per sample as the cut-off for clinical significance is useful for establishing an etiology of bacterial pneumonia in patients not previously treated with antibiotics. Bronchoscopy with BAL may also yield a non-bacterial pathogen such as a filamentous mould or viral pathogen in the at-risk patient.

In the United States, several professional societies have established practice guidelines for the diagnosis and empirical and definitive treatment of community acquired pneumonia and health care-associated and ventilator-associated pneumonia. For patients with community-acquired pneumonia, a macrolide, fluoroquinolone, or doxycycline is recommended as monotherapy for previously healthy outpatients. A macrolide plus a β-lactam or a fluoroquinolone alone is recommended for initial empiric treatment of outpatients in whom resistance is an issue and for patients who require hospitalization. These regimens should be modified in the event that an etiology is established and once the susceptibility of the causative agent is determined. In the case of hospital-acquired or health care-associated pneumonia, multidrug resistance is often a major problem and targeted anti-pseudomonal therapy with third generation cephalosporins, carbapenems or β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitor combinations in conjunction with an aminoglycoside may be required.

References

ATS and IDSA Committees: Guidelines for the management of adults with hospital-acquired, ventilator-associated, and healthcare-associated pneumonia. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2005;171:388.

Mandell LA et al: Update of practice guidelines for the management of community acquired pneumonia in immunocompetent adults. Clin Infect Dis 2003:37:1405.

Heart

CASE 5: ENDOCARDITIS

A 45-year-old woman was admitted to the hospital because of fever, shortness of breath, and weight loss. Chills, sweats, and anorexia started 6 weeks before admission and increased in severity until admission. Persistent back pain developed 4 weeks prior to admission. Her shortness of breath on exertion increased to one block from her usual three blocks of walking. At the time of admission, she reported a 5-kg weight loss.

Rheumatic fever had been diagnosed in childhood, when she had swollen joints and fever and was confined to bed for 3 months. Subsequently, a heart murmur was heard.

Clinical Features

Temperature was 38 C, pulse 90/min, and respirations 18/min. Blood pressure was 130/80 mm Hg.

Physical examination showed a moderately overweight woman who was alert and oriented. She became short of breath while walking up two flights of stairs. Examination of her eyes showed a Roth spot (a round white spot surrounded by hemorrhage) in the retina of her right eye. Petechiae were seen in the conjunctiva of both eyes. Her head and neck were otherwise normal. Splinter hemorrhages were seen under two fingernails of her right hand and one finger of the left hand. Osler's nodes (tender, small, raised, red or purple lesions of the skin) were seen in the pads of one finger and one toe. Her heart size was normal to percussion. On auscultation, a low-pitched diastolic murmur consistent with mitral valve stenosis was heard at the apex; a loud mitral valve opening snap was heard over the left chest. Examination of her abdomen was difficult because of obesity; one observer felt an enlarged spleen. The remainder of her physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Findings & Imaging

The films from a chest x-ray showed a normal heart size and normal lungs. The ECG showed a normal sinus rhythm with broad P waves (atrial conduction). Echocardiography showed an enlarged left atrium, thickened mitral valve leaflets, and a vegetation on the posterior leaflet. The hematocrit was 29% (low). The white blood cell count was 9800/µL (high normal), with 68% PMNs (high), 24% lymphocytes, and 8% monocytes. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate was 68 mm/h (high). Blood chemistry tests, including electrolytes and tests of renal function, were normal. Three blood cultures were obtained on the day of admission; 1 day later, all three were positive for gram-positive cocci in chains that were viridans streptococci and subsequently identified as *Streptococcus sanguis.*

Treatment

Endocarditis of the mitral valve was diagnosed. Intravenous penicillin G and gentamicin were begun and continued for 2 weeks. The patient was afebrile within 3 days after starting therapy. Following the successful treatment of her endocarditis, she was referred for long-term management of her heart disease.

Comment

The symptoms and signs of endocarditis are quite varied because any organ system can be secondarily (or primarily) involved. Fever occurs in 8090% of patients, chills in 50%, anorexia and weight loss in about 25%, and skin lesions in about 25%. Nonspecific symptoms such as headache, backache, cough, and arthralgia are very common. Up to 25% of endocarditis patients present with neurologic signs or strokes secondary to emboli from heart valve vegetations. Backache, chest pain, and abdominal pain occur in 1020% of the patients. Physical findings typically include fever in 9095%, a heart murmur in 8090% with a new or changing heart murmur in about 15%, and splenomegaly and skin lesions in about 50% of patients. Many other symptoms and physical findings are directly related to the complications of metastatic infection and embolization from vegetations.

Streptococci cause about 70% of endocarditis cases. Viridans streptococci of several species (eg, *S sanguis, S salivarius, S mutans, S bovis;* Chapter 15) are most common, followed by enterococci (eg, *E faecalis*) and other streptococci. The streptococci usually cause endocarditis on abnormal heart valves. *S aureus* causes 2025% and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* about 5% of endocarditis (Chapter 14). *S aureus* can infect normal heart valves, is common in intravenous drug abusers, and produces more rapidly progressive disease than the streptococci. *S epidermidis* is a cause of endocarditis on prosthetic valves and only rarely infects native valves. Gram-negative bacilli occur in about 5% and yeasts such as *Candida albicans* in about 3% of cases. Emerging pathogens such as *Bartonella* sp. and *Tropheryma whipplei* have been reported with increasing frequency. Many other bacteriaindeed any speciescan cause endocarditis; a small percentage are culture-negative.

The history and physical examination are important diagnostic procedures. The diagnosis is strongly suggested by repeatedly positive blood cultures with no other site of infection. Echocardiography can be a very helpful adjunctive procedure; the presence of vegetations in a patient with unexplained fever strongly suggests endocarditis.

Antibiotic therapy is essential because untreated endocarditis is fatal. Bactericidal drugs should be used. The choice of antibiotics depends upon the infecting organism: Penicillin G plus gentamicin for 2 weeks for viridans streptococci and for 4 weeks for susceptible enterococci is recommended. Vancomycin is the drug of choice for penicillin resistant strains. Multidrug resistance among enterococci may require the use of newer agents such as linezolide and daptomycin based upon susceptibility data. *S aureus* is treated with a penicillinase-resistant penicillin (eg, nafcillin) often with the addition of gentamicin for the first 5 days of therapy. Vancomycin is substituted for the β-lactam in cases of methicillin/oxacillin-resistant staphylococci. Treatment duration for staphylococcal endocarditis is 6 weeks. Bacteria other than the streptococci and staphylococci are treated with antibiotics of demonstrated activity. Surgery with valve replacement is sometimes necessary when valvular regurgitation (eg, aortic regurgitation) results in acute heart failure even when active infection is present. Surgery is required for fungal endocarditis and with failure of medical therapy; frequently necessary with gram-negative endocarditis; and important when the infection involves the sinus of Valsalva or produces septal abscesses and when embolization recurs.

References

Baddour LM et al: Infective endocarditis: Diagnosis, antimicrobial therapy, and management of complications. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis, and Kawasaki Disease, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, and the Councils on Clinical Cardiology, Stroke, and Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia, American Heart Association: endorsed by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Circulation 2005;111:e394434; reference to these includes Correction, Circulation 2005;112:2373. (Executive Summary, Circulation 2005;111:3167, Correction, Circulation 2005;112:2374). Accessed at http://circ.ahajournals.org/cgi/content/full/111/23/e394.

Abdomen

CASE 6: PERITONITIS & ABSCESSES

An 18-year-old male student was admitted to the hospital because of fever and abdominal pain. He had been well until 3 days prior to admission, when he developed diffuse abdominal pain and vomiting following the evening meal. The pain persisted through the night and was worse the following morning. He was seen in the emergency room, where abdominal tenderness was noted; x-rays of the chest and abdomen were normal; the white blood cell count was 24,000/μL; and other laboratory tests, including tests of liver, pancreas, and renal function, were normal. The patient returned home, but the abdominal pain and intermittent vomiting persisted and fever to 38 C developed. The patient was admitted to the hospital on the third day of illness.

There was no history of use of medication, drug or alcohol abuse, trauma, or infections, and the family history was negative.

Clinical Features

The temperature was 38 C, the pulse 100/min, respirations 24/min. The blood pressure was 110/70 mm Hg.

Physical examination showed a normally developed young man who appeared acutely ill and complained of diffuse abdominal pain. The chest and heart examinations were normal. The abdomen was slightly distended. There was diffuse periumbilical and right lower quadrant tenderness to palpation with guarding (muscle rigidity with palpation). There was a suggestion of a right lower quadrant mass. Bowel sounds were infrequent.

Laboratory Findings & Imaging

The hematocrit was 45% (normal), and the white blood cell count was 20,000/μL (markedly elevated) with 90% polymorphonuclear cells (markedly elevated) and 12% lymphocytes. The serum amylase (a test for pancreatitis) was normal. Electrolytes and tests of liver and renal function were normal. X-ray films of the chest and abdomen were normal, though several distended loops of small bowel were seen. CT scan of the abdomen showed a fluid collection in the right lower quadrant with extension into the pelvis.

Treatment

The patient was taken to the operating room. At surgery, a perforated appendix with a large periappendiceal abscess extending into the pelvis was found. The appendix was removed, about 300 mL of foul-smelling abscess fluid was evacuated, and drains were placed. The patient was treated with gentamicin, ampicillin, and metronidazole for 2 weeks. The drains were advanced daily and totally removed 1 week after surgery. Culture of the abscess fluid revealed at least six species of bacteria, including *Escherichia coli, Bacteroides fragilis,* viridans streptococci, and enterococci (normal gastrointestinal flora). The patient recovered uneventfully.

Comment

Pain is the usual primary manifestation of peritonitis and intra-abdominal abscess formation. The localization and intensity of the pain are related to the primary disease of the abdominal viscera. Perforation of a peptic ulcer quickly yields epigastric pain that rapidly spreads throughout the abdomen with the spillage of gastric contents. A ruptured appendix or sigmoid colon diverticulum often produces more localized right or left lower quadrant pain, respectively, associated with the focal peritonitis and abscess formation. Nausea, vomiting, anorexia, and fever accompany the pain.

The signs and symptoms following acute spillage of bowel contents into the abdomen tend to take two phases. The first is the peritonitis stage, with acute pain associated with infection by *E coli* and other facultative anaerobic bacteria; this occurs over the first 12 days and if untreated is associated with a high mortality rate. The second stage is abscess formation associated with infection with *B fragilis* and other obligately anaerobic bacteria.

Physical examination during the acute phase shows abdominal rigidity and diffuse or local tenderness. Often the tenderness is pronounced when palpation of the abdomen is released, termed rebound tenderness. Later, abdominal distention and loss of bowel motility (paralytic ileus) occur.

The bacteria that make up the normal gastrointestinal flora (Chapter 11) are the causes of acute peritonitis and abscesses associated with bowel rupture: *E coli* and other enteric gram-negative rods, enterococci, viridans streptococci, *B fragilis* and other anaerobic gram-negative rods, and anaerobic gram-positive cocci and rods of many species.

The history and physical examination are the important initial steps in the diagnosis, to determine the acuteness and localization of the problem. Laboratory tests, such as white blood cell counts, yield nonspecific abnormal results or help rule out diseases such as pancreatitis, as in this case. X-ray films of the abdomen are very useful diagnostic adjuncts and may show gas and fluid collections in the large and small bowel. More definitive information indicating focal abnormalities is obtained using CT scans. When fluid is present, needle aspiration and culture yield a diagnosis of infection but do not define the underlying disease process.

Surgery may be necessary to obtain a definitive diagnosis, while at the same time it provides the definitive step in therapy. The underlying disease process, such as a gangrenous bowel or ruptured appendix, can be corrected and the localized infection drained. Antimicrobial drugs are important adjunctive therapy. The selection of drugs might include an antimicrobial active against the enteric gram-negative rods, one active against the enterococci and streptococci, and a third against the anaerobic gram-negative rods that are often resistant to penicillin G. Many regimens have been described; one regimen includes gentamicin, ampicillin, and metronidazole.

CASE 7: GASTROENTERITIS

Four members of a migrant farm worker family came to the hospital because of diarrhea and fever starting 612 hours earlier. The father was 28, the mother 24, and the children 6 and 4 years of age. The previous day, the family had a meal of mixed green salad, ground meat, beans, and tortillas prepared by another person in the encampment. Another child in the family, 8 months old, had not eaten the same meal and remained well. Approximately 24 hours after the meal, the children developed abdominal cramps, fever, and watery diarrhea.

These symptoms had persisted for the preceding 12 hours, and in both children the diarrhea had become bloody. The parents had developed similar symptoms 6 and 8 hours earlier but did not have blood visible in their stools.

The parents stated that several other people in the camp had similar illnesses during the previous 2 weeks. The sanitation facilities in the camp were primitive.

Clinical Features

On physical examination, the children had temperatures of 3939.5 C and the parents 38 C. All had tachycardia and appeared acutely ill. Both children appeared dehydrated.

White blood cell counts ranged from 12,000 to 16,000/µL, with 5576% polymorphonuclear cells. Multiple white blood cells were seen in the fecal wet mounts. Stools from the children were grossly bloody and mucoid. Cultures of the stools from each of the patients subsequently grew *Shigella flexneri.*

Treatment

Both children were admitted to the hospital and given intravenous fluids and ampicillin. The parents were treated as outpatients, with oral fluids and oral ciprofloxacin. All recovered uneventfully. Public health follow-up led to improved sanitation conditions at the camp.

Comment

Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhea, and fever are the major clinical findings in gastrointestinal infections. The predominant symptoms are dependent upon the etiologic agent and whether it is toxigenic or invasive or both. When preformed toxins are in food, they often are associated with nausea and vomiting. For example, *S aureus* and *Bacillus cereus* produce enterotoxins in food; nausea and vomitingand to a much lesser extent diarrheaoccur a few hours following ingestion of the food. Organisms that produce enterotoxins affect the proximal small bowel and tend to cause watery diarrhea (eg, enterotoxigenic *E coli, Vibrio cholerae*). Agents such as rotaviruses, Norwalk virus, and *Giardia lamblia* cause watery diarrhea through the mechanism of mucosal irritation or destruction. Invasive or cytotoxin-producing bacteria infect the colon and cause abdominal pain, frequent diarrhea often with blood and mucus, fever, and dehydration, as in this case; this group of signs and symptoms is called dysentery. Organisms that cause dysentery include salmonellae of many serotypes, shigellae, *Campylobacter jejuni,* enteroinvasive *E coli, Clostridium difficile,* and *Entamoeba histolytica.* Enteric fever is a life-threatening infection characterized by fever, headache, and variable abdominal symptoms; *Salmonella typhi* (and also *S paratyphi* A and B, and *S choleraesuis*) and *Yersinia enterocolitica* cause enteric fever. The agents that commonly cause toxin-induced gastroenteritis invasive and noninvasive gastrointestinal infections are listed in Table 484.

Table 484. Agents that Commonly Cause Gastroenteritis.

Staphylococcus aureus
18 hours (rarely, up to 18)
Nausea and vomiting
Staphylococci grow in meats, dairy, and other foods and produce enterotoxin.
Enterotoxin acts on receptors in the gut that transmit impulse to medullary centers that control vomiting.
Very common, abrupt onset, intense vomiting for up to 24 hours, regular recovery in 2448 hours. Occurs in persons eating the same food. No treatment usually necessary except to restore fluids and electrolytes.
14
Bacillus cereus
216 hours
Vomiting or diarrhea

Reheated fried rice is common vehicle.
Enterotoxin formed in food or in gut from growth of *B cereus.*
With incubation period of 28 hours, mainly vomiting. With incubation period of 816 hours, mainly diarrhea.
12
Clostridium perfringens
816 hours
Watery diarrhea
Clostridia grow in rewarmed meat dishes. Huge numbers ingested.
Enterotoxin produced during sporulation in gut, causes hypersecretion.
Abrupt onset of profuse diarrhea; vomiting occasionally. Recovery usual without treatment in 14 days. Many clostridia in cultures of food and feces of patients.
12
Clostridium botulinum
1824 hours
Paralysis
C botulinum grows in anaerobic food and produces toxin.
Toxin absorbed from gut blocks acetylcholine at neuromuscular junction.
Diplopia, dysphagia, dysphonia, difficulty breathing. Treatment requires ventilatory support and antitoxin. Diagnosis confirmed by finding toxin in blood or stool.
12
Escherichia coli (enterotoxigenic; ETEC)
2472 hours
Watery diarrhea
Most common cause of "traveler's diarrhea."
ETEC in the gut produces heat-labile (HL) or heat-stable (HS) enterotoxins. Toxins[1] cause hypersecretion in small intestine.

Usually abrupt onset of diarrhea; vomiting rare. Serious infections in newborns. In adults, usually self-limiting in 13 days.
9, 16
Escherichia coli (enteroinvasive; EIEC)
4872 hours
Dysentery
Occasional outbreaks of dysentery; infrequent cause of sporadic infection.
Inflammatory invasion of the colonic mucosa; similar to shigellosis. EIEC is closely related to *Shigella* .
Acute bloody diarrhea with malaise, headache, high fever, and abdominal pain. Severe disease in poorly nourished children. WBC present in stool.
9, 16
Escherichia coli (shiga-toxin producing; STEC)
2472 hours
Watery, bloody diarrhea
Bloody diarrhea associated with undercooked hamburgers in fast-food restaurants.
STEC produces shiga-like toxins. Often serotype O157:H7
Causes bloody diarrhea, hemorrhagic colitis, and the majority of causes of hemolytic-uremic syndrome. Culture stool for sorbitol-negative *E coli* and serotype isolates with antisera for O157:H7. Other serotypes may be detected by toxin production using enzyme immunoassays that contain antibodies to the shiga-like toxins.
9, 16
Escherichia coli (enteropathogenic; EPEC)
Slow onset

Watery diarrhea
Common cause of diarrhea in neonates in developing countries. Classically, cause of epidemic diarrhea in newborn nurseries with high mortality rates; less common now in developed countries.
EPEC attaches to mucosal epithelial cells and produces cytoskeletal changes; may invade cells. Different from other *E coli* that are enteroadherent or enteroaggregative and cause diarrhea.
Insidious onset over 36 days with listlessness, poor feeding, and diarrhea. Usually lasts 515 days. Dehydration, electrolytic imbalance, and other complications may cause death. Antimicrobial therapy is important.
9, 16
Vibrio parahaemolyticus
696 hours
Watery diarrhea
Organisms grow in seafood and in gut and produce toxin, or invade.
Toxin causes hypersecretion; vibrios invade epithelium; stools may be bloody.
Abrupt onset of diarrhea in groups consuming same food, especially crabs and other seafood. Recovery is usually complete in 13 days. Food and stool cultures are positive.
18
Vibrio cholerae
2472 hours
Watery diarrhea
Organisms grow in gut and produce toxin.
Toxin[1] causes hypersecretion in small intestine. Infective dose > 10^5 organisms.

Abrupt onset of liquid diarrhea in endemic area. Needs prompt replacement of fluid and electrolytes IV or orally. Stool cultures positive. Use selective media.
9, 18
Shigella species (mild cases)
2472 hours
Dysentery
Organisms grow in superficial gut epithelium.
Organisms invade epithelial cells; blood, mucus, and PMNs in stools. Infective dose < 10^3 organisms.

Abrupt onset of diarrhea; can have blood and pus in stools, cramps, tenesmus, and lethargy. WBC in stool. Stool cultures are positive. Often mild and self-limiting. Restore fluids.
16
Shigella dysenteriae type 1 (Shiga's bacillus)
2472 hours
Dysentery, bloody diarrhea
Causes outbreaks in developing countries.
Produces cytotoxin and neurotoxin.
Severe bloody diarrhea in children in developing countries; high fatality rate. Rare in the United States.
16
Salmonella species
848 hours
Dysentery
Organisms grow in gut. Do not produce toxin.
Superficial infection of gut, little invasion. Infective dose > 10^5 organisms.

Gradual or abrupt onset of diarrhea and low-grade fever. WBC in stool. Stool cultures are positive. No antimicrobials unless systemic dissemination is suspected or patient is immuno-compromised. Prolonged carriage is frequent.

16

Salmonella Typhi (*S* paratyphi A and B; *S choleraesuis*)

1014 days

Enteric fever

Humans are the only reservoir for *S* typhi.

Invades intestinal mucosa and multiplies in macrophages in intestinal lymph follicles; enters mesenteric lymph glands to blood and dissemination.

Insidious onset of malaise, anorexia, myalgias, and headache; high remittent fever; may have constipation or diarrhea. Hepatosplenomegaly in about 50% of patients. Diagnosis by culture of *S* typhi from blood, stool, or other site. Antibiotic therapy is important.

16

Yersinia enterocolitica

47 days

Enteric fever

Fecal-oral transmission. Food-borne. Animals infected.

Gastroenteritis or mesenteric adenitis. Occasional bacteremia. Toxin produced occasionally.

Severe abdominal pain, diarrhea, fever; PMNS and blood in stool; polyarthritis, erythema nodosum, especially in children. Keep stool specimen at 4 C before culture.

20

Clostridium difficile

Days to weeks after antibiotic therapy

Dysentery

Antibiotic-associated pseudomembranous colitis.

Makes enterotoxin (toxin A) and cytotoxin (toxin B), which cause diarrhea and epithelial cell necrosis.

Abrupt onset of bloody diarrhea and fever. Toxin in stool. Patient typically received antibiotics in previous days to weeks.

12

Campylobacter jejuni

210 days

Dysentery

Infection via oral route from food, pets. Organisms grow in small intestine.

Invasion of mucous membrane. Toxin production uncertain.

Fever, diarrhea; PMNs, and fresh blood in stools, especially in children. Usually self-limited. Special media needed for cultures at 42 C. Patients usually recover in 58 days.

18

Rotavirus

4896 hours

Watery diarrhea, vomiting, mild fever

Virus is the major cause of diarrheal disease in infants and young children worldwide.

Induces histopathologic changes in intestinal mucosal cells.

Fever and vomiting usually precede abdominal distress and diarrhea. Death in infants in developing countries follows dehydration, and electrolyte imbalance. Typical course is 39 days. Diagnosis by immunoassay detection of rotavirus antigen in stool.

37

Norovirus

2448 hours

Watery diarrhea, vomiting

Major cause of epidemic diarrhea especially in closed settings like cruise ships; high secondary attack rate

Induces histopathologic change in intestinal mucosa such as blunting of microvilli

Abrupt onset of abdominal pain followed by nausea, vomiting and diarrhea. Low grade fever may occur; malaise, myalgias, and headache are described. Typical course is 23 days. Diagnosis requires RT-PCR or other assays not readily available.

37

Giardia lamblia

12 weeks

Watery diarrhea

Most commonly identified intestinal parasite. Frequent pathogen in outbreaks of water-borne diarrhea.

Complex and poorly understood interaction of parasite with mucosal cells and patient's immune response.

Diarrhea self-limiting in 13 weeks; chronic symptoms of intermittent diarrhea, malabsorption, and weight loss may last 6 months. Diagnosis by finding trophozoites or cysts in stool or duodenal contents, or by immunoassay detection of giardia antigen in stool.

46

Entamoeba histolytica

Gradual onset 13 weeks

Dysentery

Highest prevalence in developing counties; 10% of world's population may be infected.

Invades colonic mucosa and lyses cells, including leukocytes.

Diarrhea, abdominal pain, weight loss, and fever are common. Can give rise to many complications, including fulminant colitis, perforation, and liver abscess. Diagnosis by finding trophozoites or cysts in stool.

46

Organism	Typical Incubation Period	Signs and Symptoms	Epidemiology	Pathogenesis	Clinical Features	Chapter

---

[1] Cholera toxin and *E coli* heat-labile toxin stimulate adenylyl cyclase activity, increasing cAMP concentration in gut, yielding secretion of chloride and water, and reduced reabsorption of sodium. *E coli* heat-stable toxin activates intestinal guanylyl cyclase and results in hypersecretion.

Gastrointestinal infections are very common, especially in developing countries, where the associated mortality rate is high in infants and young children. Public health prevention through fostering good hygiene and providing sanitary water and food supplies is of the utmost importance.

In only a small percentage of cases is the etiologic agent demonstrated by means of stool culture or immunoassay. Finding white blood cells on fecal wet mounts is highly suggestive of infection

Maintaining adequate hydration is the most important feature of treatment, especially in infants and children. Antimicrobial therapy is necessary in treatment of enteric fever (typhoid fever) and shortens the duration of symptoms in shigella, campylobacter, and *V cholerae* infections, but it prolongs the symptoms and fecal shedding of salmonella.

There is no specific therapy for infection due to rotaviruses, the most common viral cause of diarrhea.

References

Clark B, McKendrick M: A review of viral gastroenteritis. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2004;17:461.

Guerrant RL et al: Practice guidelines for the management of infectious diarrhea. Clin Infect Dis 2001;32:331.

Guerrant RL, Bobak DA: Bacterial and protozoal gastroenteritis. N Engl J Med 1991;325:327.

Urinary Tract

CASE 8: ACUTE UNCOMPLICATED BLADDER INFECTION

A 21-year-old woman presented to the university student health service with a 2-day history of increasing urinary frequency along with urgency and dysuria. Her urine had been pink or bloody for about 12 hours. She had no history of prior urinary tract infection. The patient had recently become sexually active and was using a diaphragm and spermicide.

Clinical Features

The temperature was 37.5 C, pulse 105/min, and respirations 18/min. The blood pressure was 105/70 mm Hg.

On physical examination, the only abnormal finding was mild tenderness to deep palpation in the suprapubic area.

Laboratory Findings

Laboratory tests showed a slightly elevated white blood cell count of 13,000/μL; 66% were PMNs, also elevated. Blood urea nitrogen, serum creatinine and glucose, and serum electrolytes were normal. The urine sediment contained innumerable white cells, moderate numbers of red cells, and many bacteria suggestive of urinary tract infection. Culture yielded more than 10^5 colony-forming units (CFU)/mL of *E coli* (diagnostic of a urinary tract infection). Antimicrobial susceptibility tests were not done.

Treatment

The patient was cured by 3 days of oral sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim therapy.

Comment

See below.

CASE 9: COMPLICATED URINARY TRACT INFECTION

A 67-year-old man developed fever and shock 3 days after a transurethral resection of his enlarged prostate gland. Two weeks earlier he had urinary obstruction with retention secondary to the enlargement; benign prostatic hypertrophy had been diagnosed. Urinary bladder catheterization had been necessary. Following the surgery, an indwelling urinary bladder catheter attached to a closed drainage system was left in place. Two days after surgery, the patient developed fever to 38 C; on the third postoperative day, he became confused and disoriented and had a shaking chill.

Clinical Features

The temperature was 39 C, the pulse was 120/min, and the respirations were 24/min. The blood pressure was 90/40 mm Hg.

On physical examination, the patient knew his name but was disoriented to time and place. His heart, lungs, and abdomen were normal. There was mild costovertebral tenderness over the area of the left kidney.

Laboratory Findings

Laboratory tests showed a normal hematocrit and hemoglobin but an elevated white blood cell count of 18,000/μL; 85% were PMNs (markedly elevated). Blood urea nitrogen, serum creatinine, serum glucose, and electrolytes were normal. Urine was obtained from the catheter port using a needle and syringe. The urine sediment contained innumerable white cells, a few red blood cells, and numerous bacteria, indicating a urinary tract infection. Urine culture yielded more than 10^5 CFU/mL of *Klebsiella pneumoniae,* confirming the diagnosis of urinary tract infection. Blood culture also yielded the *K pneumoniae,* which was susceptible to third-generation cephalosporins, gentamicin, and tobramycin.

Treatment & Hospital Course

The patient had urinary tract infection associated with the bladder catheter. The left kidney was presumed to be involved based on the left costovertebral angle tenderness. He also had secondary bacteremia with shock (sometimes termed gram-negative sepsis and shock). He was treated with intravenous fluids and antibiotics and recovered. The same strain of *K pneumoniae* had been isolated from other patients in the hospital, indicating nosocomial spread of the bacteria.

Comment

Urinary tract infections may involve just the lower tract or both the lower and upper tracts. Cystitis is the term used to describe infection of the bladder with signs and symptoms including dysuria, urgency, and frequency, as in Case 8. Pyelonephritis is the term used to describe upper tract infection, often with flank pain and tenderness, and accompanying dysuria, urgency, and frequency, as in Case 9. Cystitis and pyelonephritis often present as acute diseases, but recurrent or chronic infections occur frequently.

It is generally accepted that 10^5 or more CFU/mL of urine is significant bacteriuria, though the patients may be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Some young women have dysuria and other symptoms of cystitis with less than 10^5 CFU/mL of urine; in these women, as few as 10^3 CFU/mL of a gram-negative rod may be significant bacteriuria.

The prevalence of bacteriuria is 12% in school-age girls, 13% in nonpregnant women, and 38% during pregnancy. The prevalence of bacteriuria increases with age, and the sex ratio of infections becomes nearly equal. Over the age of 70 years, 2030% or more of women and 10% or more of men have bacteriuria. Upper urinary tract infections routinely occur in patients with indwelling catheters even with optimal care and closed drainage systems: 50% after 45 days, 75% after 79 days, and 100% after 2 weeks. Sexual activity and use of spermicides increase the risk for UTIs in young women.

E coli (Chapter 16) causes 8090% of acute uncomplicated bacterial lower tract infections (cystitis) in young women. Other enteric bacteria and *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* cause most of the other culture-positive bladder infections in this patient group. Some young women with acute dysuria suggesting cystitis have negative urine cultures for bacteria. In these patients, selective cultures for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* and evaluation for herpes simplex infection should be considered.

In complicated upper tract infections, in the setting of anatomic abnormality or chronic catheterization, the spectrum in infecting bacteria is larger than in uncomplicated cases. *E coli* is frequently present, but other gram-negative rods of many species (eg, *Klebsiella* , *Proteus* , and *Enterobacter* [Chapter 16] and pseudomonads [Chapter 17]), enterococci, and staphylococci are also common. In many cases two or more species are present, and the bacteria are often resistant to antimicrobials given in association with prior therapy.

The presence of white blood cells in urine is highly suggestive but not specific for bacterial upper tract infections. White blood cells can be detected by microscopic examination of urine sediment or, indirectly, by dipstick detection of leukocyte esterase. The presence of red blood cells also is found on microscopy of the urine sediment, or indirectly by dipstick detection of hemoglobin. Proteinuria also is detected by dipstick. The presence of bacteria on Gram stain of noncentrifuged urine is strongly suggestive of 10^5 or more bacteria per milliliter of urine.

The presence of bacteriuria is confirmed by quantitative culture of the urine by any one of several methods. One frequently used method is to culture urine using a bacteriologic loop calibrated to deliver 0.01 or 0.001 mL followed by counting the number of colonies that grow.

Acute uncomplicated cystitis is usually caused by *E coli* susceptible to readily achievable urine concentrations of antibiotics appropriate for treatment of urinary tract infections. Thus, in the setting of the first such infection in a young woman, definitive identification and susceptibility testing of the bacteria are seldom necessary. Such cases can be treated by a single dose of appropriate antibiotic, but a 3-day course of therapy yields a lower relapse rate. Pyelonephritis is treated with 1014 days of antibiotic therapy. Recurrent or complicated upper tract infections are best treated with antibiotics shown to be active against the infecting bacteria; definitive identification and susceptibility testing are indicated. Therapy for 14 days is appropriate and for 1421 days if there is recurrence. Patients with complicated upper tract infections should have evaluations for anatomic abnormalities, stones, etc.

References

McLaughlin SP, Carson CC: Urinary tract infection in women. Med Clin N Am 2004;88:417.

Ronald AR, Harding GK: Complicated urinary tract infections. Infect Dis Clin N Am 1997;11:583.

Bone & Soft Tissue

CASE 10: OSTEOMYELITIS

A 34-year-old man suffered an open fracture of the middle third of his tibia and fibula when his motorized three-wheel vehicle tipped over in a field and fell on him. He was taken to a hospital and promptly to the operating room. The wound was cleaned and debrided, the fracture was reduced, and the bone aligned. Metal plates were placed to span the fracture, align it, and hold it in place. Pins were placed through the skin and bone proximal and distal to the fracture to allow splinting and immobilization of the leg. One day after surgery, the leg remained markedly swollen; a moderate amount of serous drainage was present on the dressings. Two days later, the leg remained swollen and red, requiring opening of the surgical wound. Cultures of pus in the wound grew *Staphylococcus aureus* resistant to penicillin G but susceptible to nafcillin. The patient was treated with intravenous nafcillin for 10 days, and the swelling and redness decreased. Three weeks later, pus began to drain from a small opening in the wound. Cultures again grew *S aureus.* Exploration of the opening showed a sinus tract to the site of the fracture. An x-ray film of the leg showed poor alignment of the fracture. Osteomyelitis was diagnosed, and the patient was returned to the operating room, where the fracture site was debrided of necrotic soft tissue and dead bone; the pins and plates were removed. Bone grafts were placed. The fracture was immobilized by external fixation. Cultures obtained during surgery grew *S aureus.* The patient was treated with intravenous nafcillin for 1 month followed by oral dicloxacillin for 3 additional months. The wound and fracture slowly healed. After 6 months, there was no x-ray evidence of further osteomyelitis, and the patient was able to bear weight on the leg.

Comment

Osteomyelitis follows hematogenous spread of pathogenic bacteria from a distant site of infection to bone or, as in this case, direct inoculation of the bone and soft tissue, as can occur with an open fracture or from a contiguous site of soft tissue infection. The primary symptoms are fever and pain at the infected site; swelling, redness, and occasionally drainage can be seen, but the physical findings are highly dependent upon the anatomic location of the infection. For example, osteomyelitis of the spine may present with fever, back pain, and signs of a paraspinous abscess; infection of the hip may show as fever with pain on movement and decreased range of motion. In children, the onset of osteomyelitis following hematogenous spread of bacteria can be very sudden, while in adults the presentation may be more indolent. Sometimes osteomyelitis is considered to be chronic or of long standing, but the clinical spectrum of osteomyelitis is broad, and the distinction between acute and chronic may not be clear either clinically or on morphologic examination of tissue.

S aureus (Chapter 14) is the primary agent of osteomyelitis in 6070% of cases (90% in children). *S aureus* causes the infection after hematogenous spread or following direct inoculation. Community-acquired methicillin-resistant *S aureus* that contains the Panton-Valentine leukocidin causes acute hematogenous osteomyelitis affecting multiple sites, often in association with vascular complications. Streptococci cause osteomyelitis in about 10% of cases, and enteric gram-negative rods (eg, *E coli*) and other bacteria such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in 2030%. *Kingella kingae* is a common etiologic agent in infants and children. Anaerobic bacteria (eg, *Bacteroides* species) are also common, particularly in osteomyelitis of the bones of the feet associated with diabetes and foot ulcers. Any bacteria that cause infections in humans have been associated with osteomyelitis.

Definitive diagnosis of the etiology of osteomyelitis requires culture of a specimen obtained at surgery or by needle aspiration of bone or periosteum through uninfected soft tissue. Culture of pus from the opening of a draining sinus tract or superficial wound associated with the osteomyelitis commonly yields bacteria that are not present in the bone. Blood cultures are often positive when systemic symptoms and signs (fever, weight loss, elevated white blood cell count, high erythrocyte sedimentation rate) are present.

Early in the course of osteomyelitis, x-ray films of the infected site are negative. The initial findings noted radiologically usually are soft tissue swelling, loss of tissue planes, and demineralization of bone; 23 weeks after onset, bone erosions and evidence of periostitis appear. Bone scans with radionuclide imaging are about 90% sensitive. They become positive within a few days after onset and are particularly helpful in localizing the site of infection and determining if there are multiple sites of infection; however, bone scans do not differentiate between fractures, bone infarction (as occurs in sickle cell disease), and infection. CT and MRI also are sensitive and especially helpful in determining the extent of soft tissue involvement.

Antimicrobial therapy and surgical debridement are the mainstays of treatment of osteomyelitis. The specific antimicrobial should be selected after culture of a properly obtained specimen and susceptibility tests and continued for 68 weeks or longer, depending on the infection. Surgery should be done to remove any dead bone and sequestra that are present. Immobilization of infected limbs and fixation of fractures are important features of care.

References

Calhoun JH, Manring MM: Adult Osteomyelitis. Infect Dis Clin N Amer 2005;19:265.

Kaplan SL: Osteomyelitis in children. Infect Dis Clin N Amer 2005;19:787.

CASE 11: GAS GANGRENE

A 22-year-old man fell while riding his new motorcycle and suffered an open fracture of his left femur and severe lacerations and crushing injury to the thigh and less extensive soft tissue injuries to other parts of his body. He was rapidly transported to the hospital and immediately taken to the operating room, where the fracture was reduced and the wounds debrided. At admission, results of his blood tests included a hematocrit of 45% and a hemoglobin of 15 g/dL. The immediate postoperative course was uneventful, but 24 hours later pain developed in the thigh. Fever was noted. Pain and swelling of the thigh increased rapidly.

Clinical Features & Course

The temperature was 40 C, the pulse 150/min, and respirations 28/min. The blood pressure was 80/40 mm Hg.

Physical examination showed an acutely ill young man who was in shock and delirious. The left thigh was markedly swollen and cool to touch. Large ecchymotic areas were present near the wound, and there was a serous discharge from the wound. Crepitus was felt, indicative of gas in the tissue of the thigh. An x-ray film also showed gas in the tissue planes of the thigh. Gas gangrene was diagnosed, and the patient was taken to the operating room for emergency extensive debridement of necrotic tissue. At the time of surgery, his hematocrit had fallen to 27% and his hemoglobin to 11 g/dL; his serum was red-brown in color, indicating hemolysis with free hemoglobin in his circulation. Anaerobic cultures of the specimen obtained at surgery grew *Clostridium perfringens.* The patient developed renal failure and heart failure, and died 3 days after his injury.

Comment

Case 11 illustrates a classic case of clostridial gas gangrene. *C perfringens* (or occasionally other *Clostridium* species) are inoculated into the traumatic wound from the environment; the clostridia are discussed in Chapter 12. The presence of necrotic tissue and foreign body material provides a suitable anaerobic environment for the organisms to multiply. After an incubation period usually of 23 days but sometimes only 812 hours, there is acute onset of pain, which rapidly increases in intensity associated with shock and delirium. The extremity or wound shows tenderness, tense swelling, and a serosanguineous discharge. Crepitus is often present. The skin near the wound is pale but rapidly becomes discolored, and fluid-filled blebs form in the nearby skin. Skin areas of black necrosis appear. In severe cases, there is rapid progression.

In patients such as this one, Gram stain of fluid from a bleb or of a tissue aspirate shows large gram-positive rods with blunt ends and is highly suggestive of clostridial infection. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes are rare. Anaerobic culture provides the definitive laboratory confirmation. The differential diagnosis of clostridial gas gangrene includes anaerobic streptococcal myonecrosis, synergistic necrotizing myonecrosis, and necrotizing fasciitis. These clinically overlapping diseases can be differentiated from clostridial gas gangrene by Gram stain and cultures of appropriate specimens.

X-ray films of the infected site show gas in the fascial planes. Abnormal laboratory tests include a low hematocrit. The hemoglobin may be low or normal even when the hematocrit is low, consistent with hemolysis and cell-free circulating hemoglobin. Leukocytosis is usually present.

Extensive surgery with removal of all the dead and infected tissue is necessary as a lifesaving procedure. Penicillin G is the antibiotic of choice. Antitoxin is of no help. When shock and circulating free hemoglobin are present, renal failure and other complications are common and the prognosis is poor.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

CASE 12: URETHRITIS, ENDOCERVICITIS, & PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE

A 19-year-old woman came to the clinic because of lower abdominal pain of 2 days' duration and a yellowish vaginal discharge first seen 4 days previously on the day following the last day of her menstrual period. The patient had had intercourse with two partners in the previous month, including a new partner 10 days before presentation.

Clinical Features

Her temperature was 37.5 C; other vital signs were normal. Physical examination showed a yellowish mucopurulent discharge from the cervical os. Moderate left lower abdominal tenderness was present. The bimanual pelvic examination showed cervical motion tenderness and adnexal tenderness more severe on the left than on the right.

Laboratory Findings

Culture of the endocervix for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* was negative. Culture for *Chlamydia trachomatis* was positive.

Treatment

A diagnosis of pelvic inflammatory disease was made. The patient was treated as an outpatient with a single dose of ceftriaxone plus doxycycline for 2 weeks. Both of her partners came to the clinic and were treated.

Comment

In men, urethral discharge is classified as gonococcal urethritis, caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* or nongonococcal urethritis, caused usually by either *Chlamydia trachomatis* (1555% of cases) or *Ureaplasma urealyticum* (2040% of cases) and infrequently by *Trichomonas vaginalis.* The diagnosis is based on the presence or absence of gram-negative intracellular diplococci on stain of the urethral discharge. All patients with urethritis should be tested using nucleic acid amplification methods for both *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* . Ceftriaxone is frequently used to treat gonococcal urethritis, but quinolones may be used in areas that report low resistance. Doxycycline or azithromycin is used to treat nongonococcal urethritis. It is highly recommended that men with gonococcal infection also be treated for chlamydial infection because of the likelihood that both infections may be present.

In women, the differential diagnosis of endocervicitis (mucopurulent cervicitis) is between gonorrhea and *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection. The diagnosis is made by culture of the endocervical discharge or nucleic acid amplification tests for *N gonorrhoeae* and molecular diagnostic testing for *C trachomatis.* There are three major treatment options: (1) Treat for both *N gonorrhoeae* and *C trachomatis* before the culture results are available; (2) treat for *C trachomatis* only, if the prevalence of *N gonorrhoeae* infection is low but the likelihood of chlamydial infection is high; or (3) await culture results if the prevalence of both diseases is low and the likelihood of compliance with a recommendation for a return visit is high. Recommended treatments are the same as those mentioned above for urethritis.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), also called salpingitis, is inflammation of the uterus, uterine tubes, and adnexal tissues that is not associated with surgery or pregnancy. PID is the major consequence of endocervical *N gonorrhoeae* and *C trachomatis* infections, and well over half of the cases are caused by one or both of these organisms. The incidence of gonococcal PID is high in inner city populations, while chlamydial PID is more common in college students and more affluent populations. Other common bacterial causes of PID are enteric organisms and anaerobic bacteria associated with bacterial vaginosis. Lower abdominal pain is the common presenting symptom. An abnormal vaginal discharge, uterine bleeding, dysuria, painful intercourse, nausea and vomiting, and fever also occur frequently. The major complication of PID is infertility due to uterine tubal occlusion. It is estimated that 8% of women become infertile after one episode of PID, 19.5% after two episodes, and 40% after three or more episodes. A clinical diagnosis of PID should be considered in any woman of childbearing age who has pelvic pain. Patients often have classic physical findings in addition to the presenting signs and symptoms, including lower abdominal, cervical motion, and adnexal tenderness. A clinical diagnosis can be confirmed by laparoscopic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes, but this procedure is not practical and is infrequently performed; however, only about two-thirds of women with a clinical diagnosis of PID will have the disease when the uterine tubes and uterus are visualized. The differential diagnosis includes ectopic pregnancy and appendicitis as well as other diseases. In PID patients, hospitalization with intravenous therapy often is recommended to decrease the possibility of infertility. Inpatient drug regimens include cefoxitin and doxycycline or gentamicin and clindamycin. Outpatient regimens include cefoxitin or ceftriaxone in single doses plus doxycycline, or ofloxacin plus metronidazole.

References

Beigi RH, Wiesenfeld HC: Pelvic inflammatory disease: new diagnostic criteria and treatment. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 2003;30:777.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines. MMWR 2002;51:1.

Ross JD: An update on pelvic inflammatory disease. Sex Transm Infect 2002;78:18. [PMID: 11872852]

CASE 13: VAGINOSIS & VAGINITIS

A 28-year-old woman came to the clinic because of a whitish-gray vaginal discharge with a bad odor, first noted 6 days previously. She had been sexually active with a single partner who was new to her in the past month.

Clinical Features

Physical examination showed a thin, homogeneous, whitish-gray discharge that was adherent to the vaginal wall. There was no discharge from the cervical os. The bimanual pelvic examination was normal, as was the remainder of the physical examination.

Laboratory Findings

The pH of the vaginal fluid was 5.5 (normal, < 4.5). When KOH was added to vaginal fluid on a slide, an amine-like ("fishy") odor was perceived. A wet mount of the fluid showed many epithelial cells with adherent bacteria (clue cells). No polymorphonuclear cells were seen. The diagnosis was bacterial vaginosis.

Treatment

Metronidazole twice daily for 7 days resulted in rapid clearing of the disorder. The decision was made not to treat her male partner unless she had a recurrence of vaginosis.

Comment

Bacterial vaginosis must be differentiated from a normal vaginal discharge and from *Trichomonas vaginalis* vaginitis and *Candida albicans* vulvovaginitis. (See Table 485.) These diseases are very common, occurring in about one-fifth of women seeking gynecologic health care. Most women have at least one episode of vaginitis or vaginosis during their childbearing years.